UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG BULLETIN

BRIGHAM YOUNG UNIVERSITY

1998-99

LIBRARY
Brigham Young University

BYU
378
B76
1998-99

GIFT OF

BRIGHAM YOUNG UNIVERSITY

3 1197 23158 1445

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2010 with funding from
Brigham Young University

http://www.archive.org/details/undergraduatecat19981999brig

378
B76

BRIGHAM YOUNG UNIVERSITY BULLETIN

1998–99 UNDERGRADUATE CATALOG

USPS No. 065-120

Catalog at a Glance

Admission to the University 10
Calendar viii
Continuing Student Ecclesiastical Endorsement 9
Courses Offered 73
Dress and Grooming Standards 8
Financial Aid 17
General Education 45
Grading and Records 35
Graduation Requirements 40
Honor Code 6
Honors Education 50
Housing 23
Major, On Choosing a 25
Majors, Alphabetical List of Undergraduate 26
Map of Campus 460
Minors, Alphabetical List of Undergraduate 29
Registration 32
Scholarships 17
Services Available on Campus 413
Tuition and Fees 14

Obtaining Catalogs

To order a copy of either the BYU Undergraduate Catalog or the BYU Graduate Catalog, please contact Mail Services, Brigham Young University, 296 UPB, Provo, UT 84602-1930, telephone (801) 378-3658. Within the United States, catalogs mailed second class cost $10* each, and those mailed first class cost $12.50 each. These prices include postage and handling. VISA, MasterCard, check, or money order is accepted in payment. On campus, both catalogs can be purchased at the BYU Bookstore: $6 for the BYU Undergraduate Catalog and $5 for the BYU Graduate Catalog. The undergraduate and graduate catalogs, as well as the class schedules, are also available on the Web at http://ar.byu.edu/catalog/ugrad_catalog.html or through BYU's home page at http://www.byu.edu.

*Subject to change.

Directory

Please refer to last page for a campus map and key to building abbreviations. Complete the following addresses with *Provo, UT 84602-*, inserting the last four digits of the PO box after the hyphen in the zip code.

Information: Campus directory assistance, (801) 378-INFO.

ADVISEMENT CENTERS: Raylene J. Hadley, Director, B-238 ASB, PO Box 21222, (801) 378-3641.

- **Open Major,** 2590 ELWC, PO Box 25548, (801) 378-3826 (Susan Wilkins, Coordinator).
- **College of Biology and Agriculture,** 380 WIDB, PO Box 25189, (801) 378-3042 (Audrey L. Megerian, Director).
- **David O. McKay School of Education,** 120 MCKB, PO Box 25096, (801) 378-3426 (LuJeanne Peters, Director).
- **College of Engineering and Technology,** 264 CB, PO Box 24101, (801) 378-4325 (Pamela Williamson, Supervisor).
- **College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences,** 2254 SFLC, PO Box 26797, (801) 378-3541 (Larry K. Taylor, Supervisor).
- **College of Fine Arts and Communications,** D-444 HFAC, PO Box 26333, (801) 378-3537 (Brenda Butterfield, Supervisor).
- **College of Health and Human Performance,** 205 RB, PO Box 22117, (801) 378-3638 (Shirlene Hindmarsh, Supervisor).
- **College of Humanities,** 3078 JKHB, PO Box 26101, (801) 378-4789 (Mary Anne Rich, Supervisor).
- **College of Nursing,** 551 SWKT, PO Box 25531, (801) 378-4173 (Linda Stevens, Supervisor).
- **College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences,** 1147 TMCB, PO Box 24578, (801) 378-6270 (Merle T. White, Supervisor).
- **Marriott School of Management,** 460 TNRB, PO Box 23185, (801) 378-4285 (Eldon Bott, Supervisor).

Admission/Readmission: B-183 ASB, PO Box 21110, (801) 378-2507.

Alumni Association: 133 ALUM, PO Box 22400, (801) 378-4663.

Campus Visits and Tours: Guest Relations/Campus Tours, PO Box 23200, (801) 378-4678.

Academic Support: 2500 ELWC, PO Box 25548, (801) 378-2723

Discontinuance Office: B-150 ASB, PO Box 21114, (801) 378-7705.

Employee Relations Office: A-285 ASB, PO Box 21220, (801) 378-4486

Employment Office: C-40 ASB, PO Box 21004, (801) 378-3561.

Equal Opportunity Office: A-289 ASB, PO Box 21220, (801) 378-6878

Evening Classes: 105 HCEB, PO Box 21513, (801) 378-2872.

Financial Aid: A-41 ASB, PO Box 21009, (801) 378-4104.

General Education: 302 MSRB, PO Box 22600, (801) 378-3038.

Graduate Studies, Office of: B-356 ASB, PO Box 21341, (801) 378-4091.

Graduation Evaluation: B-238 ASB, PO Box 21222, (801) 378-3641.

Health Center: McDonald Health Center, PO Box 24800, (801) 378-2771.

Honor Code Office: 350 SWKT, PO Box 25537, (801) 378-2847

Honors Program: 302 MSRB, PO Box 22600, (801) 378-5497.

Housing: 100 SASB, PO Box 21820, (801) 378-2611.

Independent Study: 206 HCEB, PO Box 21514, (801) 378-2868.

International Services: 350 SWKT, PO Box 25520, (801) 378-2695.

Library: 3226 HBLL, PO Box 26800, (801) 378-2926.

Multicultural Personal Counseling: 1500 ELWC, PO Box 25548, (801) 378-3065.

Ombudsman: 449 ELWC, PO Box 27908, (801) 378-4132.

Personal Counseling: 1500 ELWC, PO Box 25548, (801) 378-3035.

Records: B-150 ASB, PO Box 21114, (801) 378-2631.

Registration: B-130 ASB, PO Box 21114, (801) 378-2824.

Scholarships and Awards: Financial Aid, A-41 ASB, PO Box 21009, (801) 378-4104.

Services for Students with Disabilities: 160 SWKT, PO Box 25548, (801) 378-2767.

Traffic Division: 700 East 1430 North, PO Box 20300, (801) 378-3906.

Transfer Evaluation: B-238 ASB, PO Box 21222, (801) 378-3641

Tuition and Fees: Cashiers' Office, D-155 ASB, PO Box 21128, (801) 378-7808.

Veterans Support: B-150 ASB, PO Box 21113, (801) 378-2768.

Women's Services and Resources: 173 SWKT, PO Box 25548, (801) 378-4877

Statement of Nondiscrimination

Admission to Brigham Young University is nondiscriminatory. The university admits persons regardless of race, color, national origin, religion, age, gender, veteran status, or disability who meet university and department academic requirements and agree to abide by the university's standards of conduct and behavior.

Reservation of Right to Change Courses

The university makes every reasonable effort to provide accurate information in the contents of this catalog but reserves the right to make changes at any time without prior notice. This catalog is not a contract between Brigham Young University and present or prospective students. The university reserves the right to change or discontinue graduation requirements, department majors, individual courses, instructors, and all other aspects of university operations. If colleges or majors are discontinued, or if substantial changes in requirements for degrees are made, the university will endeavor to allow students disadvantaged by the change to continue under existing programs and requirements.

The university may place a hold on a student's registration privileges if the student neglects academic work or makes unsatisfactory progress toward graduation.

Volume 95, Number 3 April 1, 1998 Provo, Utah 84605
BRIGHAM YOUNG UNIVERSITY BULLETIN (USPS #065-120). Published by Brigham Young University, Provo, Utah 84602, eight times a year: monthly during January, March, August, and December and twice in April and September. Periodicals postage paid at Provo, Utah 84605, and additional offices. POSTMASTER: Send address correction to BRIGHAM YOUNG UNIVERSITY, Provo, UT 84602-1930.

Front cover: Architectural drawing of remodeled Ernest L. Wilkinson Center, scheduled for completion late 1998.

Back cover: Photo of Ernest L. Wilkinson Center under construction, about 1962.

© Brigham Young University, 1998

3-98 98-750/26102 18.5M
BYU Publications & Graphics/BYU Print Services

Contents

Using This Catalog vi
University Calendar viii
The Mission of Brigham Young University xii
The Aims of a BYU Education xiii
Statement on Academic Freedom at Brigham Young University xvii
Brigham Young University: A Unique Environment 1
Religious Environment 1
Academic Environment 1
Cultural Environment 4
Recreational Environment 5
Brigham Young University Honor Code 6
General Honor Code Statement 6
Academic Honesty Policy 6
Dress and Grooming Standards 8
Residential Living Standards 8
Continuing Student Ecclesiastical Endorsement 9
Admissions 10
Tuition and Fees 14
Financial Aid and Scholarships 17
Housing 23
On Choosing a Major 25
Alphabetical List of Undergraduate Majors at Brigham Young University 26
Alphabetical List of Undergraduate Minors at Brigham Young University 29
Registration 32
Academic Standards 34
Grading and Records 35
Discontinuance and Student Academic Record Appeals Committee 39
Graduation 40
Graduation Information 40
Scholastic Recognition 40
Graduation Requirements 40
Religious Education 43
General Education 45
University Honors Education 50
Colleges and Schools
College of Biology and Agriculture 55
College of Engineering and Technology 57
College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences 59
College of Fine Arts and Communications 61
College of Health and Human Performance 62
College of Humanities 63
College of Nursing 65
College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences 66
J. Reuben Clark Law School 67
Marriott School of Management 68
David O. McKay School of Education 69
Graduate Studies 71
Academic Departments, Degrees, and Courses 73
Accountancy and Information Systems, School of 73
Aerospace Studies (Air Force ROTC) 77
Agronomy and Horticulture 79
American Heritage 85
Animal Science 86
Anthropology 91
Asian and Near Eastern Languages 96
Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology 105
Biology 108
Botany and Range Science 110
Chemical Engineering 118
Chemistry and Biochemistry 122
Civil and Environmental Engineering 129
Clothing and Textiles 134
Communications 136
Computer Science 142
Counseling and Special Education 146
Dance 148
Economics 155
Educational Leadership and Foundations 159
Electrical and Computer Engineering 160
Engineering and Technology Education 166
English 167
Family Sciences 174
Fine Arts 180
Food Science and Nutrition 181
French and Italian 185
Geography 190
Geology 194
Germanic and Slavic Languages 198
Health Sciences 208
History 212
Native American Studies 217
Charles Redd Center for Western Studies 219
Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature 220
Instructional Psychology and Technology 228
Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies 229
Kennedy Center for International Studies, David M. . . . 231
African Studies 233
American Studies 234
Asian Studies 234
Canadian Studies 236
European Studies 236
International Development 237
International Studies 238
Latin American Studies 239
Near Eastern Studies 240
Linguistics 243
Marriott School of Management 248
Business Management 251
Organizational Leadership and Strategy 255
Romney Institute of Public Management 256
Institute of Marketing: Retail, Sales, and Service 257
Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology 258
Electronics Engineering Technology 259
Manufacturing Programs:
Manufacturing Engineering (MFE) and Manufacturing Engineering Technology (MET) 261
Mathematics 266
Mechanical Engineering 271
Microbiology 276
Military Science (Army ROTC) 280
Molecular Biology 283
Music, School of 285
Nursing 299
Philosophy 303

Physical Education 306
Physical Science 314
Physics and Astronomy 315
Political Science 320
Psychology 328
Recreation Management and Youth Leadership 333
Religious Education 336
Ancient Scripture 336
Church History and Doctrine 337
Social Work, School of 340
Sociology 343
Spanish and Portuguese 347
Statistics 355
Student Development 360
Teacher Education 361
Early Childhood Education (ECE) 361
Elementary Education 362
Secondary Education 365
Technology Education and Construction Management . . 371
Theatre and Media Arts 377
Visual Arts 388
Women's Research Institute 400
Zoology 401
Division of Continuing Education 409
Services Available on Campus 413
Academic Support Office 413
Alumni Association 413
Bookstore 413
Campus Life 413
Campus Visits 414
Comprehensive Clinic 414
Computer Support 414
Computers 414
Counseling and Career Center 414
Dining Services 415
Equal Opportunity Office 415
ID Center 415
Multicultural Student Services 415
Preprofessional Programs 416
Risk Management and Safety 417
Services for Single Parents 417
Signature Card 418
Student Center: Ernest L. Wilkinson Center 418
Student Employment Services 418
Student Health Center 419
Telecommunication Services 419
University Police, Parking, Traffic, and Security 419
Veterans Support 420
Accreditation and Affiliations 421
Administration 426
Church Board of Education and BYU Board of Trustees . . 426
Office of the Church Commissioner of Education 426
University Administrative Officers 426
Chairs and Professorships 429
Maeser Professorships and Alcuin Fellows 429
Harold B. Lee Library Personnel 431
Faculty Index 433
Index 445
Map of Campus 460

Using This Catalog

Semester System

Courses of study at Brigham Young University are offered, and credit for satisfactory completion is granted, on a semester basis.

Course Numbering System

A course's level of instruction is shown by the number assigned to it:

Course Number	Type of Course
1 to 99	Preparatory and remedial (noncredit)
100 to 299	Lower-division
300 to 499	Upper-division
500 to 599	Advanced undergraduate or graduate
600 to 799	Graduate

Credit-Hour Designations

One semester hour of credit represents a minimum of one hour of instruction per week in a semester or two hours of instruction per week in a term (e.g., a three-hour class will meet at least three hours per week). The three-number code that appears in parentheses immediately after each course title has the following significance:

First number	Semester hours of credit
Second number	Class hours of lecture, recitation, or seminar meeting per week
Third number	Laboratory hours required per week or hours of field study or individual research per week, beyond the hours shown in the second number

Abbreviations and Symbols

Course Listings

The following abbreviations and symbols are used in the course listings:

Arr.	Credit, class, or laboratory hours arranged
ea.	Credit-hour designation applies to each registration
H	Designates an Honors course that carries GE credit
M	Designates an Honors course that does not carry GE credit
R	Designates a course that may be repeated for credit. Two R courses with the same number on a transcript are treated as two independent courses. If an R course is repeated to raise the grade received, the grade will be averaged, because it is assumed that the subject matter varies from time to time.
+	Cross-referenced course—one that originates in one department but may count for credit in another.

When Courses Are Offered

The following abbreviations are used following the credit hour designation on each course to indicate when the course is offered:

F	Fall semester
W	Winter semester
Sp	Spring term
Su	Summer term
Alt. sem.	Alternate semester
Alt. term	Alternate term
Alt. yr.	Alternate year
Even yr.	Even year
Odd yr.	Odd year
1st blk.	First block
2d blk.	Second block
On dem.	On demand

Departments

Aerospace Studies	Aeros
Agronomy and Horticulture	AgHrt
American Heritage	AHtg
American Sign Language	ASL
Animal Science	AnSc
Anthropology	Anthr
Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology	ASLP
Biology	Biol
Botany and Range Science	Botny, Range
Business Management	BusM
Managerial Economics	ManEc
Chemical Engineering	ChEn
Chemistry and Biochemistry	Chem
Civil and Environmental Engineering	CEEn
Clothing and Textiles	ClTx
Communications	Comms
Computer Science	CS
Counseling and Special Education	CSE
Dance	Dance
Economics	Econ
Educational Leadership and Foundations	EdLF
Electrical and Computer Engineering	ECEn
Engineering and Technology Education	EngT
English	Engl
Family Sciences	FamSc
Fine Arts	FnArt
Food Science and Nutrition	FSN
Geography	Geog
Geology	Geol
Health/Physical Education	HEPE
Health Sciences	Hlth
History	Hist
Honors Program	HonP
Humanities	Hum
Classics	Clscs
Classical Civilization	ClCv
Comparative Literature	CLit
Instructional Psychology and Technology	IP&T

International Studies, David M. Kennedy Center for:	
American Studies	AmSt
Asian Studies	Asian
European Studies	Europ
International and Area Studies	IAS
International Relations	IntR
Latin American Studies	LtAm
Near Eastern Studies	NES
Languages:	
Afrikaans	Afrik
Arabic	Arab
Bulgarian	Bulgn
Cantonese	Cant
Chinese	Chin
Czech	Czech
Danish	Dansh
Dutch	Dutch
Estonian	Eston
Finnish	Finn
French	Fren
German	Germ
Greek	Greek
Greek Modern	GrkM
Hebrew	Heb
Hindi	Hindi
Hungarian	Hung
Icelandic	Iclnd
Italian	Ital
Japanese	Japan
Korean	Korea
Latin	Latin
Latvian	Latvi
Lithuanian	Lithu
Norwegian	Norwe
Polish	Polsh
Portuguese	Port
Romanian	Rom
Russian	Russ
Scandinavian	Scand
Serbo-Croatian	SrbCr
Spanish	Span
Swedish	Swed
Thai	Thai
Ukrainian	Ukrai
Vietnamese	Viet
Law School	Law
Linguistics:	Ling
American Sign Language	ASL
Austronesian Languages	AstLg
Computers and the Humanities	CHum
English as a Second Language	ESL
North, Central, and South American Indian Languages	AmILg
Welsh	Welsh
Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology:	
Electronics Engineering Technology	EET
Manufacturing Engineering	MFE
Manufacturing Engineering Technology	MET
Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology	MFET
Mathematics	Math
Mechanical Engineering	MeEn
Microbiology	Mcbio
Military Science	MilS
Molecular Biology	MolB
Music	Music
Native American Studies	NAS
Nursing	Nurs
Organizational Leadership and Strategy	OrgB
Management Communication	MCom
Philosophy	Phil
Physical Education	PE
Physical Science	PhyS
Physics and Astronomy	Phscs
Psychology	Psych
Political Science	PlSc
Public Management, Institute of	PMgt
Recreation Management and Youth Leadership	RMYL
Religious Instruction:	
Ancient Scripture	RelA
Church History and Doctrine	RelC
School of Accountancy and Information Systems:	
Accounting	Acc
Information Systems	ISys
Social Work	SocW
Sociology	Soc
Statistics	Stat
Student Development	StDev
Teacher Education	
Early Childhood Education	ECE
Elementary Education	ElEd
Secondary Education	ScEd
Technology Education and Construction Management	TecE, CM
Theatre and Media Arts	TMA
Visual Arts:	
Art History and Curatorial Studies	ArtHC
Visual Arts Core	VACor
Visual Arts Design	VADes
Visual Arts Education	VAEdu
Visual Arts Studio	VAStu
Women's Studies	WS
Zoology	Zool

Interdisciplinary Courses

Interdisciplinary courses are taught in several areas.

500-Level Graduate Courses

Available to advanced undergraduates.

University Calendar

The annual calendar at BYU includes two semesters and two terms. Fall semester 1998 begins the last monday in August and ends before the Christmas holidays. Winter semester is from early January to late April. Spring and summer terms begin in late April and late June, respectively. Registering for spring and summer terms allows students to accelerate their progress in many degree programs.

Fall Semester 1998

S	Jan 10, 1998	Departmental application deadlines for fall semester 1998 entry to graduate study may be as early as January 10, 1998. For specific program and department deadlines and requirements, refer to the department listing in the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog or check with the department.
Th	Jan 15	Last day new freshmen may submit the Gordon B. Hinckley Scholarship application
Su	Feb 15	Last day new freshmen may submit undergraduate applications for summer term 1998 or fall semester 1998 admission, academic scholarship, and talent awards.
Su	Mar 1	Last day continuing undergraduate students may apply for scholarships for fall semester 1998 or winter semester 1999
Su	Mar 15	Last day transfer and former BYU students (including international students) may submit undergraduate admission/scholarship applications for summer term 1998 or fall semester 1998
M	Jun 1	Financial aid priority processing date for Pell Grants, Stafford Loans, and BYU loans for fall semester 1998, winter semester 1999
M	Aug 3	Last day to apply for BYU short-term loans to pay fall semester 1998 tuition by the deadline
F	Aug 14	Tuition payment deadline for fall semester 1998 to avoid late fee ($50, August 15–28; $90, August 31–September 14)
F	Aug 21	First day summer term 1998 grades are available via Touch-tone telephone system and AIM
MTW	Aug 24–26	Annual University Conference
ThFSa	Aug 27–29	Orientation
F	Aug 28	Last day to pay tuition with $50 late fee (increased to $90 after this date)
M	Aug 31	Classes begin
M	Aug 31	Late registration begins for all students who did not use the advance registration system
T	Sep 1	Last day to drop classes without a fee per class
M	Sep 7	Labor Day holiday
M	Sep 14	Last day to late register or add classes
M	Sep 14	Last day to pay late tuition
M	Sep 14	Last day to drop a class without a W (official withdrawal) appearing on the transcript
Th	Sep 17	Last day to drop a first block class for academic reasons
F	Sep 25	Last day for graduates and undergraduates to apply and pay fee for December 1998 graduation
Th	Oct 1	Last day new freshmen, transfer, and former BYU students (including international students) may submit undergraduate admission/scholarship applications for winter semester 1999
M	Oct 5	Last day to officially discontinue from first block classes for nonacademic emergencies
M	Oct 5	Last day to drop a semester class for academic reasons
M	Oct 5	Last day to officially discontinue from the university without being graded
T	Oct 20	Last day of first block classes
W	Oct 21	Second block classes begin
W	Oct 28	Last day to add second block classes
W	Oct 28	Last day to drop a second block class without a W (official withdrawal) appearing on the transcript
F	Nov 6	Last day graduate students in dissertation, thesis, or selected project programs may schedule a final oral examination (defense of their work) and submit one copy of their work to the Reserve Library for December 1998 graduation
F	Nov 6	Last day to drop a second block class for academic reasons
M	Nov 16	Full payment due on BYU short-term loans for fall semester 1998
F	Nov 20	Last day graduate students in dissertation, thesis, or selected project programs may have a final oral examination (defense of their work) for December 1998 graduation
F	Nov 20	Last day undergraduates may submit to the Records Office all incompletes, T grades, special exams, GE challenges, military credit, official transcripts of work completed at other schools, and any other information pertaining to December 1998 graduation
T	Nov 24	Last day to officially discontinue from the university or drop a class for nonacademic emergencies
W	Nov 25	Last day Independent Study course work and final exams may be submitted for December 1998 graduation
W	Nov 25	No classes held
ThF	Nov 26–27	Thanksgiving holiday
T	Dec 1	Last day to apply for BYU short-term loans to pay winter semester 1999 tuition by the deadline

F	Dec 4	Last day graduate students may submit their dissertation, thesis, or selected project to the dean of their college for December 1998 graduation
Th	Dec 10	Last day of class instruction
FSa	Dec 11–12	Reading days
F	Dec 11	Last day graduate students may submit final copies of their dissertation, thesis, or selected project to the library copy center for binding; complete remaining degree requirements; pay fees; and submit exam results and I and T grade changes to the Office of Graduate Studies for December 1998 graduation
M–F	Dec 14–18	Final exams
F	Dec 18	Graduation (no exercises)
M	Dec 28	Last day instructors may submit fall semester 1998 grade rolls to the Records Office
T	Dec 29	Fall semester 1998 grades available on the Touch-tone telephone system and AIM

Winter Semester 1999

Sa	Jan 10, 1998	Departmental application deadlines for winter semester 1999 entry to graduate study may be as early as January 10, 1998. For specific program and department deadlines and requirements, refer to the department listing in the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog or check with the department.
Th	Oct 1	Financial aid priority deadline for Pell Grants, Stafford Loans, and BYU loans for winter semester 1999
Th	Oct 1	Last day new freshmen, transfer, and former BYU students (including international students) may submit undergraduate admission/scholarship applications for winter semester 1999
Su	Nov 15	Last day for undergraduates to apply and pay fee for April 1999 graduation
T	Dec 1	Last day to apply for BYU short-term loans to pay winter semester 1999 tuition by the deadline
T	Dec 15	Tuition payment deadline for winter semester 1999 to avoid late fee ($50, December 16–30; $90, December 31–January 15)
W	Dec 30	Last day to pay tuition with $50 late fee (increased to $90 after this date)
M	Jan 4, 1999	Classes begin
M	Jan 4	Late registration begins for all students who did not use the advance registration system
T	Jan 5	Last day to drop classes without a fee per class
F	Jan 15	Last day new freshmen (including international students) may submit applications for the Gordon B. Hinckley Scholarship
F	Jan 15	Last day to late register or add classes
F	Jan 15	Last day to pay late tuition
F	Jan 15	Last day to drop a class without W (official withdrawal) appearing on the transcript
M	Jan 18	Martin Luther King Day holiday
Th	Jan 21	Last day to drop a first block class for academic reasons
F	Jan 22	Last day for graduates to apply and pay fee for April 1999 graduation
M	Feb 8	Last day to officially discontinue from a first block class for nonacademic emergencies
M	Feb 8	Last day to drop a semester class for academic reasons
M	Feb 8	Last day to officially discontinue from the university without being graded
M	Feb 15	Last day new freshmen may submit undergraduate admission/scholarship applications for spring term 1999, summer term 1999, or fall semester 1999
M	Feb 15	Last day all international students (new freshman, transfer, and former) may submit admission/scholarship applications for spring term 1999
M	Feb 15	Last day new freshmen may submit applications for academic scholarships and for performance and talent awards for fall semester 1999
M	Feb 15	Presidents' Day holiday
T	Feb 16	Monday class instruction. No Tuesday classes
W	Feb 24	Last day of first block classes
Th	Feb 25	Second block classes begin
F	Feb 26	Last day graduate students in dissertation, thesis, or selected project programs may schedule a final oral examination (defense of their work) and submit one copy of their work to the Reserve Library for April 1999 graduation
M	Mar 1	Last day continuing undergraduate students may apply for scholarships for fall semester 1999 and winter semester 2000
Th	Mar 4	Last day to add second block classes
Th	Mar 4	Last day to drop a second block class without a W (official withdrawal) appearing on the transcript
F	Mar 12	Last day graduate students in dissertation, thesis, or selected project programs may have a final oral examination (defense of their work) for April 1999 graduation
M	Mar 15	Last day transfer and former BYU students may submit undergraduate admission/scholarship applications for spring term 1999, summer term 1999, or fall semester 1999.
M	Mar 15	Last day international transfer and former students may submit undergraduate admissions/scholarship applications for summer term 1999 or fall semester 1999.
M	Mar 15	Last day to drop a second block class for academic reasons
M	Mar 15	Full payment due on BYU short-term loans for winter semester
F	Mar 19	Last day graduate students may submit their dissertation, thesis, or selected project to the dean of their college for April 1999 graduation

F	Mar 26	Last day graduate students may submit final copies of their dissertation, thesis, or selected project to the library copy center for binding; complete remaining degree requirements; pay fees; and submit exam results and I and T grade changes to the Office of Graduate Studies for April 1999 graduation
F	Mar 26	Last day undergraduates may submit to the Records Office all incompletes, T grades, special exams, GE challenges, military credit, official transcripts of work completed at other schools, and any other information pertaining to April 1999 graduation
W	Mar 31	Last day to officially discontinue from the university or drop a class for nonacademic emergencies
F	Apr 2	Last day Independent Study course work and final exams may be submitted for April 1999 graduation
T	Apr 13	Last day of class instruction
WTh	Apr 14–15	Reading days
FSa,M–W	Apr 16–17, 19–21	Final exams
Th	Apr 22	Graduation—university commencement
F	Apr 23	Graduation—college convocations
W	Apr 28	Last day instructors may submit winter semester 1999 grade rolls to the Records Office
Th	Apr 29	Winter semester 1999 grades available on the Touch-tone telephone system and AIM

Spring Term 1999

T	Sep 15, 1998	Departmental application deadlines for spring term 1999 entry to graduate study may be as early as September 15, 1998. For specific program and department deadlines and requirements, refer to the department listing in the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog or check with the department.
M	Feb 15, 1999	Last day new freshmen may submit undergraduate admission/scholarship applications for spring term 1999, summer term 1999, or fall semester 1999
M	Feb 15	Last day all international students (new freshman, transfer, and former) may submit admissions/scholarship applications for spring term 1999
M	Mar 1	Last day continuing undergraduate students may submit scholarship applications for spring or summer terms 1999
M	Mar 15	Last day transfer and former BYU students may submit undergraduate admission/scholarship applications for spring term 1999, summer term 1999, or fall semester 1999
M	Mar 15	Last day international transfer and former students may submit undergraduate admissions/scholarship applications for summer term 1999 or fall semester 1999
Th	Apr 1	Last day to apply for BYU short-term loans to pay spring term tuition by the deadline
W	Apr 21	Tuition payment deadline for spring term 1999 to avoid $25 late fee
T	Apr 27	College advisement center meeting for new students
W	Apr 28	Classes begin
W	Apr 28	Late registration begins for all students who did not use the advance registration system
Th	Apr 29	Last day to drop classes without a fee per class
W	May 5	Last day to late register or add classes
W	May 5	Last day to pay late tuition
W	May 5	Last day to drop a class without a W (official withdrawal) appearing on the transcript
F	May 14	Last day to drop a class for academic reasons
F	May 14	Last day to officially discontinue from the university without being graded
F	May 21	Last day for graduates and undergraduates to apply and pay fee for August 1999 graduation
M	May 31	Memorial Day holiday
T	Jun 1	Full payment due on BYU short-term loans for spring term
Th	Jun 3	Last day to officially discontinue from the university or drop a class for nonacademic emergencies
T	Jun 15	Last day of class instruction
W	Jun 16	Reading day
ThF	Jun 17–18	Final exams
F	Jun 18	Last day graduate students in dissertation, thesis, or selected project programs may schedule a final oral examination (defense of their work) and submit one copy of their work to the Reserve Library for August 1999 graduation
F	Jun 25	Last day instructors may submit spring term 1999 grade rolls to the Records Office
M	Jun 28	Spring term 1999 grades available on the Touch-tone telephone system and AIM
W	Jun 30	Last day federal government will accept need analysis for processing federal financial aid for 1998–1999 academic year

Summer Term 1999

T	Sep 15, 1998	Departmental application deadlines for summer term 1999 entry to graduate study may be as early as September 15, 1998. For specific program and department deadlines and requirements, refer to the department listing in the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog or check with the department.
F	Feb 15, 1999	Last day new freshmen (including international students) may submit undergraduate admission/scholarship applications for summer term 1999 or fall semester 1999 admission
M	Mar 15	Last day transfer and former BYU students may submit undergraduate admission/scholarship applications for summer term 1999 or fall semester 1999

M	Mar 15	Last day international transfer and former students may submit undergraduate admissions/scholarship applications for summer term 1999 or fall semester 1999
Th	Apr 15	Last day for undergraduates to apply and pay fee for August 1999 graduation
Sa	May 1	Last day continuing undergraduate students may apply for scholarships for summer term 1999
F	May 21	Last day for graduates to apply and pay fee for August 1999 graduation
T	Jun 1	Last day to apply for BYU short-term loans to pay summer term 1999 tuition by the deadline
M	Jun 14	Tuition payment deadline for summer term 1999 to avoid $25 late fee
F	Jun 18	Last day graduate students in dissertation, thesis, or selected project programs may schedule a final oral examination (defense of their work) and submit one copy of their work to the Reserve Library for August 1999 graduation
FSa	Jun 18–19	Orientation
M	Jun 21	Classes begin
M	Jun 21	Late registration begins for all students who did not use the advance registration system
T	Jun 22	Last day to drop classes without a fee per class
M	Jun 28	Last day to late register or add classes
M	Jun 28	Last day to pay late tuition
M	Jun 28	Last day to drop a class without a W (official withdrawal) appearing on the transcript
W	Jun 30	Last day federal government will accept need analysis for processing federal financial aid for 1998–1999 academic year
F	Jul 2	Last day graduate students in dissertation, thesis, or selected project programs may have a final oral examination (defense of their work) for August 1999 graduation
M	Jul 5	Independence Day holiday
Th	Jul 8	Last day to drop a class for academic reasons
Th	Jul 8	Last day to officially discontinue from the university without being graded
F	Jul 9	Last day graduate students may submit their dissertation, thesis, or selected project to the dean of their college for August 1999 graduation
F	Jul 16	Last day graduate students may submit final copies of their dissertation, thesis, or selected project to the library copy center for binding; complete remaining degree requirements; pay fees; and submit exam results and I and T grade changes to the Office of Graduate Studies for August 1999 graduation
F	Jul 16	Last day undergraduates may submit to the Records Office all incompletes, T grades, special exams, GE challenges, military credit, official transcripts of work completed at other schools, and any other information pertaining to August 1999 graduation
Th	Jul 22	Last day Independent Study course work and final exams may be submitted for August 1999 graduation
F	Jul 23	Pioneer Day holiday
W	Jul 28	Last day to officially discontinue from the university or drop a class for nonacademic emergencies
M	Aug 2	Full payment due on BYU short-term loans for summer term 1999
M	Aug 9	Last day of class instruction
T	Aug 10	Reading day
WTh	Aug 11–12	Final exams
Th	Aug 12	Graduation—university commencement
F	Aug 13	Graduation—college convocations
Th	Aug 19	Last day instructors may submit summer term 1999 grade rolls to the Records Office
F	Aug 20	Summer term 1999 grades available on the Touch-tone telephone system and AIM

The Mission of Brigham Young University

The mission of Brigham Young University—founded, supported, and guided by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints—is to assist individuals in their quest for perfection and eternal life. That assistance should provide a period of intensive learning in a stimulating setting where a commitment to excellence is expected and the full realization of human potential is pursued.

All instruction, programs, and services at BYU, including a wide variety of extracurricular experiences, should make their own contribution toward the balanced development of the total person. Such a broadly prepared individual will not only be capable of meeting personal challenge and change but will also bring strength to others in the tasks of home and family life, social relationships, civic duty, and service to mankind.

To succeed in this mission the university must provide an environment enlightened by living prophets and sustained by those moral virtues which characterize the life and teachings of the Son of God. In that environment these four major educational goals should prevail:

- All students at BYU should be taught the truths of the gospel of Jesus Christ. Any education is inadequate which does not emphasize that His is the only name given under heaven whereby mankind can be saved. Certainly all relationships within the BYU community should reflect devout love of God and a loving, genuine concern for the welfare of our neighbor.
- Because the gospel encourages the pursuit of all truth, students at BYU should receive a broad university education. The arts, letters, and sciences provide the core of such an education, which will help students think clearly, communicate effectively, understand important ideas in their own cultural tradition as well as that of others, and establish clear standards of intellectual integrity.
- In addition to a strong general education, students should also receive instruction in the special fields of their choice. The university cannot provide programs in all possible areas of professional or vocational work, but in those it does provide the preparation must be excellent. Students who graduate from BYU should be capable of competing with the best in their fields.
- Scholarly research and creative endeavor among both faculty and students, including those in selected graduate programs of real consequence, are essential and will be encouraged.

In meeting these objectives BYU's faculty, staff, students, and administrators should also be anxious to make their service and scholarship available to The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints in furthering its work worldwide. In an era of limited enrollments, BYU can continue to expand its influence both by encouraging programs that are central to the Church's purposes and by making its resources available to the Church when called upon to do so.

We believe the earnest pursuit of this institutional mission can have a strong effect on the course of higher education and will greatly enlarge Brigham Young University's influence in a world we wish to improve.

—Approved by the BYU Board of Trustees
November 4, 1981

The Aims of a BYU Education

Education is the power to think clearly, the power to act well in the world's work, and the power to appreciate life.
— Brigham Young[1]

The mission of Brigham Young University is "to assist individuals in their quest for perfection and eternal life" ("The Mission Statement of Brigham Young University" [hereafter Mission Statement]). To this end, BYU seeks to develop students of faith, intellect, and character who have the skills and the desire to continue learning and to serve others throughout their lives. These are the common aims of all education at BYU. Both those who teach in the classroom and those who direct activities outside the classroom are responsible for contributing to this complete educational vision.

The statement that follows reaffirms and expands on the earlier and more general Mission Statement adopted in 1981. As the quotations under each heading suggest, this document also draws on the religious and educational teachings of the university's founding prophet, Brigham Young. Quotations within the text come from the scriptures and from the counsel of modern prophets, whose teachings about BYU lay the foundation of the university's mission.

The following four sections discuss the expected outcomes of the BYU experience. A BYU education should be (1) spiritually strengthening, (2) intellectually enlarging, and (3) character building, leading to (4) lifelong learning and service. Because BYU is a large university with a complex curriculum, the intellectual aims are presented here in somewhat greater detail than the other aims. Yet they are deliberately placed within a larger context. The sequence flows from a conscious intent to envelop BYU's intellectual aims within a more complete, even eternal, perspective that begins with spiritual knowledge and ends with knowledge applied to the practical tasks of living and serving.

Spiritually Strengthening

Brother Maeser, I want you to remember that you ought not to teach even the alphabet or the multiplication tables without the Spirit of God. — Brigham Young[2]

The founding charge of BYU is to teach every subject with the Spirit, It is not intended "that all of the faculty should be categorically teaching religion constantly in their classes, but . . . that every . . . teacher in this institution would keep his subject matter bathed in the light and color of the restored gospel."[3]

This ideal arises from the common purpose of all education at BYU—to build testimonies of the restored gospel of Jesus Christ. A shared desire to "seek learning, even by study and also by faith" (D&C 88:118) knits BYU into a unique educational community. The students, faculty, and staff in this community possess a remarkable diversity of gifts, but they all think of themselves as brothers and sisters seeking together to master the academic disciplines while remaining mastered by the higher claims of discipleship to the Savior.

A spiritually strengthening education warms and enlightens students by the bright fire of their teachers' faith while enlarging their minds with knowledge. It also makes students responsible for developing their own testimonies by strenuous effort. Joseph Smith's words apply equally to faculty and students at BYU: "Thy mind, O man! if thou wilt lead a soul unto salvation, must stretch as high as the utmost heavens, and search into and contemplate the darkest abyss, and the broad expanse of eternity—thou must commune with God."[4] Students need not ignore difficult and important questions. Rather, they should frame their questions in prayerful, faithful ways, leading them to answers that equip them to give "a reason of the hope that is in" them (1 Peter 3:15) and to articulate honestly and thoughtfully their commitments to Christ and to his Church.

Intellectually Enlarging

Every accomplishment, every polished grace, every useful attainment in mathematics, music, and in all science and art belong to the Saints, and they should avail themselves as expeditiously as possible of the wealth of knowledge the sciences offer to every diligent and persevering scholar. —Brigham Young[5]

The intellectual range of a BYU education is the result of an ambitious commitment to pursue truth. Members of the BYU community rigorously study academic subjects in the light of divine truth. An eternal perspective shapes not only *how* students are taught but *what* they are taught. In preparing for the bachelor's degree, students should enlarge their intellects by developing skills, breadth, and depth: (1) skills in the basic tools of learning, (2) an understanding of the broad areas of human knowledge, and (3) real competence in at least one area of concentration. Further graduate studies build on this foundation.

Undergraduate

1. Skills. BYU undergraduates should acquire the basic tools needed to learn. The essential academic learning skills are the abilities to think soundly, to communicate effectively, and to reason proficiently in quantitative terms. To these ends, a BYU bachelor's degree should lead to:

- *Sound thinking*—reasoning abilities that prepare students to understand and solve a wide variety of problems, both theoretical and practical. Such skills include the ability to keep a proper perspective when comparing the things that matter most with things of lesser import. They also include the ability to engage successfully in logical reasoning, critical analysis, moral discrimination, creative imagination, and independent thought.
- *Effective communication*—language abilities that enable students to listen, speak, read, and write well; to communicate effectively with a wide range of audiences in

one's area of expertise as well as on general subjects. For many students this includes communicating in a second language.

- *Quantitative reasoning*—numerical abilities that equip students with the capacity to understand and explain the world in quantitative terms; to interpret numerical data; and to evaluate arguments that rely on quantitative information and approaches.

2. Breadth. BYU undergraduates should also understand the most important developments in human thought as represented by the broad domains of knowledge. The gospel provides the chief source of such breadth because it encompasses the most comprehensive explanation of life and the cosmos, supplying the perspective from which all other knowledge is best understood and measured. The Lord has asked his children to "become acquainted with all good books, and with languages, tongues, and people" (D&C 90:15); to understand "things both in heaven and in the earth, and under the earth; things which have been, things which are, things which must shortly come to pass; things which are at home, things which are abroad; the wars and the perplexities of the nations . . . ; and a knowledge also of countries and of kingdoms" (D&C 88:79).

"Because the gospel encourages the pursuit of all truth, students at BYU should receive a broad university education [that will help them] understand important ideas in their own cultural tradition as well as that of others" (Mission Statement). Specifically, BYU undergraduate students should be educated in the following broad areas of human knowledge:

- *Religion*—the doctrines, the covenants, the ordinances, the standard works, and the history of the restored gospel, as well as an awareness of other religious traditions.
- *Historical perspective*—the development of human civilization, appreciation for the unique contributions of America to modern civilization, and a general historical perspective, including perspective on one's own discipline.
- *Science*—The basic concepts of the physical, biological, and social sciences, and a recognition of the power and limitations of the scientific method—preferably through laboratory or field experience.
- *Arts and letters*—lively appreciation of the artistic, literary, and intellectual achievements of human cultures—including Western culture and, ideally, non-Western as well.
- *Global awareness*—informed awareness of the peoples, cultures, languages, and nations of the world.

3. Depth. BYU undergraduates should develop competence in at least one area of concentration. Competence generally demands study in depth. Such in-depth study helps prepare students for their life's work; it also teaches them that genuine understanding of any subject requires exploring it fully. Students normally acquire such depth from their major and minor fields. BYU's religion requirement also asks all students to develop depth in scriptural studies and religion.

Depth does not result merely from taking many courses in a field. Indeed, excessive course coverage requirements may discourage rather than enhance depth. Depth comes when students realize "the effect of rigorous, coherent, and progressively more sophisticated study." Depth helps students distinguish between what is fundamental and what is only peripheral; it requires focus, provides intense concentration, and encourages a "lean and taut" degree that has a "meaningful core" and a purposefully designed structure (Memorandum to the Faculty No. 13). In addition to describing carefully structured academic majors, this description applies to well-designed BYU courses of all kinds.

The chief result of depth is competence. BYU's students should be "capable of competing with the best students in their field" (Mission Statement). Even so, undergraduate study should be targeted at entrance-level, not expert-level, abilities. The desire for depth should not lead to bachelor's degrees that try to teach students everything they will need to know after graduation. Students should be able to complete their degrees within about four years.

Undergraduate programs should prepare students to enter the world of work or to pursue further study. Often this requires educational activities that help upperclassmen culminate their studies by integrating them in a capstone project, honors thesis, senior seminar, or internship. By the time they graduate, students should grasp their discipline's essential knowledge and skills (such as mathematical reasoning, statistical analysis, computer literacy, foreign language fluency, laboratory techniques, library research, and teaching methods), and many should have participated in scholarly or creative activities that let them demonstrate their mastery.

Graduate

Building on the foundation of a strong bachelor's degree, graduate education at BYU asks for even greater competency. Graduate studies may be either academic or professional and at either the master's or doctoral level. In all cases, BYU graduate programs, like undergraduate programs, should be spiritually strengthening as well as intellectually enlarging.

Graduate programs should help students achieve excellence in the discipline by engaging its primary sources; mastering its literature, techniques, and methodologies; and undertaking advanced systematic study—all at a depth that clearly exceeds the undergraduate level. In addition, graduate programs should prepare students to contribute to their disciplines through their own original insights, designs, applications, expressions, and discoveries. Graduate study should thereby enable a variety of contributions—such as teaching complex knowledge and skills, conducting original research, producing creative work that applies advanced learning in the everyday world, and extending professional service to the discipline and to society.

These intellectual aims of a BYU education are intended to give students understanding, perspective, motivation, and interpersonal abilities—not just information and academic skills. BYU should furnish students with the practical advantage of an education that integrates academic skills with abstract theories, real-world applications, and gospel perspectives. Such an education prepares students who can make a difference in the world, who can draw on their academic preparation to participate more effectively in the arenas of daily life. They are parents, Church leaders, citizens, and compassionate human beings who are able to improve the moral, social, and ecological environment in which they and their families live. They are scientists and engineers who can work effectively in teams and whose work reflects intellectual and moral integrity; historians who write well and whose profound understanding of human nature and of divine influences informs their interpretation of human events; teachers whose love for their students as children of God is enriched by global awareness and foreign language skill; artists whose performances seek to be flawless in both technique and inspiration; business leaders whose economic judgments and management styles see financial reward not as an end but as a means to higher ends. BYU graduates thus draw on an educated intellect to enhance not only what they *know* but also what they *do* and, ultimately, what they *are*.

Character Building

A firm, unchangeable course of righteousness through life is what secures to a person true intelligence. —Brigham Young[6]

Because it seeks to educate students who are renowned for what they are as well as for what they know, Brigham Young University has always cared as much about strong moral character as about great mental capability. Consequently, a BYU education should reinforce such moral virtues as integrity, reverence, modesty, self-control, courage, compassion, and industry. Beyond this, BYU aims not merely to teach students a code of ethics but to help them become partakers of the divine nature. It aspires to develop in its students character traits that flow from the long-term application of gospel teachings to their lives. This process begins with understanding humankind's eternal nature and ends with the blessing of eternal life, when human character reflects in fully flowered form the attributes of godliness. Along the way, the fruits of a well-disciplined life are augmented and fulfilled by the fruits of the spirit of Jesus Christ—such as charity, a Christlike love for others, which God "hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ" (Moroni 7:48). Students thus perfect their quest for character development by coming unto Christ through faith, repentance, and righteous living. Then their character begins to resemble his, not just because they think it should but because that is the way they are.

President David O. McKay taught that character is the highest aim of education: above knowledge is wisdom, and above wisdom is character. "True education," he explained, "seeks to make men and women not only good mathematicians, proficient linguists, profound scientists, or brilliant literary lights, but also honest men with virtue, temperance, and brotherly love."[7] Consequently, a BYU education should bring together the intellectual integrity of fine academic discipline with the spiritual integrity of personal righteousness. The result is competence that reflects the highest professional and academic standards—strengthened and ennobled by Christlike attributes.

Thus understood, the development of character is so important that BYU "has no justification for its existence unless it builds character, creates and develops faith, and makes men and women of strength and courage, fortitude, and service—men and women who will become stalwarts in the Kingdom and bear witness of the . . . divinity of the gospel of Jesus Christ. It is not justified on an academic basis only."[8] Rather, it fulfills its promise when "the morality of the graduates of this University provide[s] the music of hope for the inhabitants of this planet."[9]

Every part of the BYU experience should therefore strengthen character—academic integrity in taking a test or writing a research paper; sportsmanship on the playing field; the honest reporting of research findings in a laboratory; careful use of university funds derived from the tithes of Church members; treating all other people with dignity and fairness; and wholehearted acceptance of commitments made to bishops and parents. Character is constructed by small decisions. At this personal level of detail, BYU will realize its hope of teaching "those moral virtues which characterize the life and teachings of the Son of God" (Mission Statement).

Lifelong Learning and Service

We might ask, when shall we cease to learn? I will give you my opinion about it; never, never. . . . We shall never cease to learn, unless we apostatize from the religion of Jesus Christ. —Brigham Young[10]

Our education should be such as to improve our minds and fit us for increased usefulness; to make us of greater service to the human family. —Brigham Young[11]

Well-developed faith, intellect, and character prepare students for a lifetime of learning and service. By "entering to learn" and continuing to learn as they "go forth to serve," BYU students strengthen not only themselves—they "also bring strength to others in the tasks of home and family life, social relationships, civic duty, and service to mankind" (Mission Statement).

1. Continual Learning. BYU should inspire students to keep alive their curiosity and prepare them to continue learning throughout their lives. BYU should produce careful readers, prayerful thinkers, and active participants in solving family, professional, religious, and social problems. They will then be like Abraham of old, who had been "a follower of righteousness, desiring also to be one who possessed great knowledge, and to be a greater follower of righteousness, and to possess a greater knowledge, . . . desiring to receive instructions, and to keep the commandments of God." In this lifelong quest, they, like Abraham, will find "greater happiness and peace and rest" (Abraham 1:2). Thus a BYU diploma is a beginning, not an end, pointing the way to a habit of constant learning. In an era of rapid changes in technology and information, the knowledge and skills learned this year may require renewal the next. Therefore, a BYU degree should educate students in how to learn, teach them that there is much still to learn, and implant in them a love of learning "by study and also by faith" (D&C 88:118).

2. Service. Since a decreasing fraction of the Church membership can be admitted to study at BYU, it is ever more important that those who are admitted use their talents to build the kingdom of God on the earth. Hence, BYU should nurture in its students the desire to use their knowledge and skills not only to enrich their own lives but also to bless their families, their communities, the Church, and the larger society. Students should learn, then demonstrate, that their ultimate allegiance is to higher values, principles, and human commitments rather than to mere self-interest. By doing this, BYU graduates can counter the destructive and often materialistic self-centeredness and worldliness that afflict modern society. A service ethic should permeate every part of BYU's activities—from the admissions process through the curriculum and extracurricular experiences to the moment of graduation. This ethic should also permeate each student's heart, leading him or her to the ultimate wellspring of charity—the love for others that Christ bestows on his followers.

Conclusion

Education is a good thing, and blessed is the man who has it, and can use it for the dissemination of the Gospel without being puffed up with pride. —Brigham Young[12]

These are the aims of a BYU education. Taken together, they should lead students toward wholeness: "the balanced development of the total person" (Mission Statement). These aims aspire to promote an education that helps students integrate all parts of their university experience into a fundamentally sacred way of life—their faith and reasoning, their knowledge and conduct, their public lives and private

convictions. Ultimately, complete wholeness comes only through the Atonement of him who said, "I am come that they might have life, and that they might have it more abundantly" (John 10:10). Yet a university education, guided by eternal principles, can greatly "assist individuals in their quest for" that abundant "eternal life" (Mission Statement).

A commitment to this kind of education has inspired the prophets of the past to found Church schools, like BYU, on the principle that "to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God" (2 Nephi 9:29). These prophets have known the risks of such an enterprise, for "that happiness which is prepared for the saints" shall be hid forever from those "who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom" (see 2 Nephi 9:42–43). Yet they have also known that education plays a vital role in realizing the promises of the Restoration; that a broad vision of education for self-reliance and personal growth is at the very heart of the gospel when the gospel is at the heart of education. To the degree that BYU achieves its aims, the lives of its students will confirm Brigham Young's confidence that education is indeed "a good thing," blessing all those who humbly and faithfully use it to bless others.

Notes

1. Brigham Young, quoted by George H. Brimhall in "The Brigham Young University," *Improvement Era*, vol. 23, no. 9 (July 1920), p. 831.

2. Brigham Young, in Reinhard Maeser, *Karl G. Maeser: A Biography* (Provo: Brigham Young University, 1928), p. 79.

3. Spencer W. Kimball, "Education for Eternity," Preschool Address to BYU Faculty and Staff, 12 September 1967, p. 11.

4. Joseph Smith, *Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith*, sel. Joseph Fielding Smith (Salt Lake City: Deseret Book Company, 1972), p. 137.

5. Brigham Young, *Journal of Discourses* (hereafter *JD*), vol. 10 (London: Latter-day Saints' Book Depot, 1854–86), p. 224.

6. Brigham Young, *JD* 8:32.

7. David O. McKay, "Why Education?" *Improvement Era*, vol. 70, no. 9 (September 1967), p. 3.

8. Spencer W. Kimball, "On My Honor," in *Speeches of the Year, 1978* (Provo: Brigham Young University Press, 1979), p. 137.

9. Spencer W. Kimball, "Second Century Address and Dedication of Carillon Tower and Bells," Brigham Young University, 10 October 1975, p. 12.

10. Brigham Young, *JD* 3:203.

11. Brigham Young, *JD* 14:83.

12. Brigham Young, *JD* 11:214.

Approved by the BYU Board of Trustees on March 1, 1995.

Statement on Academic Freedom at Brigham Young University

[The following "Statement on Academic Freedom at Brigham Young University" applies principally to the relationship between the university and its faculty. This policy is made available here to students because it expresses important dimensions of BYU's unique institutional identity and educational mission.]

Preface

At Brigham Young University, faculty and students are enjoined to "seek learning . . . by study and also by faith" (D&C 88:118). This integration of truth lies at the heart of BYU's institutional mission.[1] As a religiously distinctive university, BYU opens up a space in the academic world in which its faculty and students can pursue knowledge in light of the restored gospel as taught by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. For those who have embraced the gospel, BYU offers an especially rich and full kind of academic freedom. To seek knowledge in the light of revealed truth is, for believers, to be free indeed.

The freedom to form religiously distinctive intellectual communities is protected not only by the principle of religious freedom but also by long-established principles of academic freedom.[2] The BYU community embraces traditional freedoms of study, inquiry, and debate, together with the special responsibilities implicit in the university's religious mission. These include the duty to exemplify charity and virtue, to nurture faith, and to endeavor to teach all subjects with the Spirit of the Lord.

This document articulates in clear but general terms how BYU's unique religious mission relates to principles of academic freedom. BYU regards the following approach not as *narrowing* the scope of freedom but as *enabling* greater (or at least different) and much prized freedoms.

I. Individual and Institutional Academic Freedom at BYU. The concept of academic freedom at BYU is grounded in a distinction, often blurred but vital and historically based, between *individual* and *institutional* academic freedom.[3] These two facets of academic freedom have been described as "the freedom of the individual scholar to teach and research without interference" and "the freedom of the academic institution from outside control."[4] Both individual and institutional academic freedom are necessary to maintain the unique intellectual climate of BYU. What follows is an attempt to define why both individual and institutional academic freedom are valuable at BYU and how they must be protected.

A. Individual Freedom. Individual freedom lies at the core of both religious and academic life. Freedom of thought, belief, inquiry, and expression are crucial no less to the sacred than to the secular quest for truth. Historically, in fact, freedom of conscience and freedom of intellect form a common root, from which grow both religious and academic freedom. It is no wonder then that both the Church and the academy affirm the need for individual freedom—the Church through the doctrine of individual "agency," the academy through the concept of individual academic freedom.

1. Individual Agency. The Church teaches that "moral agency" (which encompasses freedom and accountability) is basic to the nature and purpose of mortality (see 2 Nephi 2:26, D&C 93:30–31; D&C 101:77–78). In LDS theology, individual freedom is essential to intellectual and spiritual growth. Every Latter-day Saint is enjoined to know truth for himself or herself. We claim it as our privilege to seek wisdom, like the Prophet Joseph Smith, for ourselves. Teachers and institutions play a crucial role in making truth available and discoverable. But neither testimony, nor righteousness, nor genuine understanding is possible unless it is freely discovered and voluntarily embraced.

2. Individual Academic Freedom. Perhaps no condition is as important to creating a university as is the freedom of the individual faculty member "to teach and research without interference,"[5] to ask hard questions, to subject answers to rigorous examination, and to engage in scholarship and creative work. The academy depends on untrammelled inquiry to discover, test, and transmit knowledge. This includes the traditional right to publish or present the results of original research in the reputable scholarly literature and professional conferences of one's academic discipline. Although all universities place some restraints on individual academic freedom, every institution that qualifies for the title of university allows ample room for genuine exploration of diverse ideas.

3. Integration of Individual Agency and Academic Freedom. Latter-day Saint scholars are thus doubly engaged to learn truth for themselves because both the Church and the academy bid them undertake a personal quest for knowledge. BYU aspires to be a host for this integrated search for truth by offering a unique enclave of inquiry, where teachers and students may seek learning "by study and also by faith" (D&C 88:118; cf. "The Mission of Brigham Young University").

4. Scope of Integration. Because the gospel encompasses all truth and affirms the full range of human modes of knowing, the scope of integration for LDS scholars is, in principle, as wide as truth itself. Brigham Young eloquently articulated this gospel-based aspiration, proclaiming

> it is our duty and calling . . . to reject every error . . . to gather up all the truths in the world pertaining to life and salvation, to the gospel we preach . . . to the sciences, and to philosophy, wherever it may be found in every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.[6]

Similarly, modern revelation instructs Latter-day Saints to learn:

> Of things both in heaven and in the earth, and under the earth; things which have been, things which are, things which must shortly come to pass; things which

> are at home, things which are abroad; the wars and perplexities of the nations, and the judgments which are on the land; and a knowledge also of countries and of kingdoms (D&C 88:79).

Further, Latter-day Saints believe, as an article of faith, "all that God has revealed, all that He does now reveal, and . . . that He will yet reveal many great and important things" (9th Article of Faith), and they are encouraged to use all their faculties—including heart, mind, and spirit—in their quest for truth (cf. D&C 4:2; 9:7–9).

5. Summary. At BYU, individual academic freedom is based not only on a belief (shared by all universities) in the value of free inquiry, but also on the gospel principle that humans are moral agents who should seek knowledge in the sacred as well as in the secular, by the heart and spirit as well as by the mind, and in continuing revelation as well as in the written word of God. BYU students and their parents are entitled to expect an educational experience that reflects this aspiration.

B. Institutional Academic Freedom.

1. BYU's Mission. BYU has always defined itself as an openly and distinctively LDS university. BYU is wholly owned by the Church, which provides the university's principal source of funding from the tithing funds paid to the Church by its members. BYU draws its faculty and students principally from Church members. Everyone who works and studies at BYU subscribes to an Honor Code in order that the university may "provide a university education in an atmosphere consistent with the ideals and principles of the Church."[7] New faculty are interviewed by Church General Authorities as a condition of employment, and Church members are subsequently expected, as part of their university citizenship, to "live lives of loyalty to the restored gospel."[8] Faculty of other faiths agree to respect the LDS nature of the university and its mission, while the university in turn respects their religious convictions.

Thus BYU defines itself as having a unique religious mission and as pursuing knowledge in a climate of belief. This model of education differs clearly and consciously from public university models that embody a separation of church and state. It is not expected that the faculty will agree on every point of doctrine, much less on the issues in the academic disciplines that divide faculties in any university. It *is* expected, however, that a spirit of Christian charity and common faith in the gospel will unite even those with wide differences and that questions will be raised in ways that seek to strengthen rather than undermine faith. It is also expected that faculty members will be sensitive to the difference between matters that are appropriate for public discussion and those that are better discussed in private. In short, BYU defines itself as an intellectual community of faithful Latter-day Saints, and those sympathetic to their convictions, who pursue knowledge from the baseline of religious belief.

2. Definition of Institutional Academic Freedom. BYU claims the right to maintain this identity by the appropriate exercise of its institutional academic freedom. "Institutional academic freedom" is the term used to express the privilege of universities to pursue their distinctive missions. This concept harks back to well-established early definitions of academic freedom that sought to guarantee institutional autonomy. The concept of institutional academic freedom is tacitly sanctioned in AAUP and NASC limitation clauses referred to in the Preface. It is also implicit in principles and practices of other church-related universities.[9] BYU likewise affirms that its relationship to The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints is essential to its unique institutional identity.[10]

3. Benefits of Institutional Freedom. The religious university constitutes an endangered species in today's academic ecosystem.[11] To force religious institutions to comply with narrowly secular definitions of academic freedom is to further imperil the survival of these distinctive intellectual communities. There are at least three reasons why the institutional academic freedom of religious institutions should be protected: to maintain institutional pluralism, to be consistent with the antidogmatic principles of academic freedom, and to safeguard religious freedom.[12] Each argument is sufficiently important to bear brief summary:

- *Pluralism:* Religious colleges and universities contribute to our diverse "ethical, cultural, and intellectual life."[13] Few enough to pose no threat of sectarian domination, religious institutions provide important alternatives to prevailing secular modes of thought. This "makes them better able to resist the popular currents of majoritarian culture and thus to preserve the seeds of dissent and alternative understandings that may later be welcomed by the wider society."[14] Furthermore, to impose a definition of academic freedom that disallows creedal and philosophical considerations "is to randomize every faculty with respect to creed and philosophy. This increases diversity within each faculty, but it eliminates the diversity among faculties."[15]
- *Antidogmatism:* Academic freedom is grounded in the Enlightenment's opposition to dogmatism; it presupposes that truth is discovered not through revelation but rationally, through the "clash of competitive ideas." "But this idea, too, must be subject to testing."[16] Historically, the most thorough challenge to narrowly rationalist methodologies has come from religion. Religion offers venerable alternative theories of knowledge by presupposing that truth is eternal, that it is only partly knowable through reason alone, and that human reason must be tested against divine revelation. President J. Reuben Clark, Jr., stated that one "cannot rationalize the things of the spirit, because first, the things of the spirit are not sufficiently known and comprehended, and secondly, because finite mind and reason cannot comprehend nor explain infinite wisdom and ultimate truth."[17] It is simply inconsistent with the antidogmatic principles of academic freedom not to permit its own premises about knowledge to be tested against such claims as these. "It is important that a principle born of opposition to dogmatism not itself become dogmatic and authoritarian."[18]
- *Religious Freedom:* Religiously distinctive colleges and universities are "an important means by which religious faiths can preserve and transmit their teachings from one generation to the next, particularly nonmainstream religions whose differences from the predominant academic culture are so substantial that they risk annihilation if they cannot retain a degree of separation."[19] This right to religious freedom should "override whatever exiguous benefit to society might be achieved by forcing religiously distinctive institutions to conform to secular academic freedom."[20]

4. Abuses of Institutional Freedom. Institutional academic freedom, important for *any* college or university, is indispensable for institutions with distinct religious missions. Nevertheless, institutional freedom is a prerogative that, if regarded as absolute, would invite abuse. Therefore, academic freedom must include not only the institution's freedom to claim a religious identity but also the individual's freedom to ask genuine, even difficult questions. Learning can be unsettling. There is

no such thing as risk-free genuine education, just as according to LDS theology there is no risk-free earthly experience. At any religious university, including at BYU, there always will be the possibility of friction between individual and institutional academic freedom.

There is no way to eliminate these tensions altogether, except by eliminating the claims of one kind of freedom or the other. But to do so would result in a net loss to the Church, the university, and to the family of universities to which BYU belongs. To eliminate BYU's right to define and preserve its institutional identity would threaten to transform BYU into a university like any other. At the same time, to override the very concept of individual academic freedom would threaten the vitality of BYU as a university. Either move would lessen the value of BYU to its faculty and students, to the Church, and to the academic community at large. Therefore, the task is to establish principles and procedures that help minimize conflict and that guide the board of trustees, faculty, and administration through differences that may arise.

II. Relationship Between Individual and Institutional Academic Freedom.

A. Neither Freedom Is Unlimited. Neither individual nor institutional academic freedom can be unlimited. The reasons for this have been suggested already. To elaborate:

1. Limits on Individual Academic Freedom. There can be no unlimited individual academic freedom. Were there no constraints on individual academic freedom, religious universities could converge toward a secular model and lose their distinctive character, thus diminishing pluralism in academia. Furthermore, absolute individual freedom would place the individual faculty member effectively in charge of defining institutional purpose, thereby infringing on prerogatives that traditionally belong to boards, administrations, and faculty councils. Such arrogation of authority is particularly intolerable when the disagreement concerns Church doctrine, on which BYU's board of trustees claims the right to convey prophetic counsel. Yet even secular universities, whose boards claim no special religious authority, do not empower individual faculty members with absolute individual freedom relative to the university mission. For example, universities have censured professors for racist, anti-Semitic, or otherwise offensive expression. In addition, state universities have prohibited the advocacy of religious values to protect a separation of church and state. Every university places some limitations on individual academic freedom.[21]

2. Limits on Institutional Academic Freedom. Neither can there be unlimited institutional academic freedom. If institutional freedom were limitless, BYU could cease to be a genuine university, devoid of the exploratory environment vital to intellectual endeavor and with little room for disagreement and questioning. At BYU, the Church enjoys a special, deeply appreciated relation to the university, but its relation is not simply that of employer to employee—for a university faculty constitutes a special kind of employee. While each faculty member is fully accountable to the university, he or she also works in a space that is open to inquiry, discovery, and discussion. Any limitations in this space must be narrowly drawn so as not to impede the robust interchange of ideas, because the board and administration wish to set policy for an institution that legitimately may be called a university.

B. Reasonable Limitations. It follows that the exercise of individual and institutional academic freedom must be a matter of reasonable limitations. In general, at BYU a limitation is reasonable when the faculty behavior or expression *seriously and adversely affects* the university mission or the Church.[22] Examples would include expression with students or in public that:

1. contradicts or opposes, rather than analyzes or discusses, fundamental Church doctrine or policy;

2. deliberately attacks or derides the Church or its general leaders; or

3. violates the Honor Code because the expression is dishonest, illegal, unchaste, profane, or unduly disrespectful of others.

Reasonable limits are based on careful consideration of what lies at the heart of the interests of the Church and the mission of the university. A faculty member shall not be found in violation of the academic freedom standards unless the faculty member can fairly be considered aware that the expression violates the standards.

These principles shall be interpreted and applied with persuasion, gentleness, meekness, kindness, and love unfeigned—in the spirit of D&C 121:41–~~41~~—and through established procedures that include faculty review. The ultimate responsibility to determine harm to the university mission or the Church, however, remains vested in the university's governing bodies—including the university president and central administration and, finally, the board of trustees.

C. Synthesis. Reasonable limitations mediate the competing claims of individual and institutional academic freedom. In practice, instances in which limitations are invoked against individual faculty conduct or expression are few and infrequent. This is because:

1. Individual Academic Freedom Is Presumptive, While Institutional Intervention Is Exceptional. Individual freedom of expression is broad, presumptive, and essentially unrestrained except for matters that seriously and adversely affect the university mission or the Church. By contrast, institutional intervention is exceptional and limited to cases the university's governing bodies deem to offer compelling threats to BYU's mission or the Church. The board and administration most effectively exercise their freedom to preserve BYU's institutional identity by setting general policies.

2. University Posture Is One of Trust. The faculty is entrusted with broad individual academic freedom to pursue truth according to the methodologies and assumptions that characterize scholarship in various disciplines. This trust necessarily encompasses the freedom to discuss and advocate controversial and unpopular ideas. However, the board and administration reserve the right to designate, in exceptional cases, restrictions upon expression and behavior that, in their judgment, seriously and adversely affect BYU's mission or the Church.

3. Faculty Posture Is One of Loyalty. Faculty members, for their part, agree to be loyal university citizens according to the guidelines set forth in the BYU Handbook. It is expected that the faculty will strive to contribute to the unique mission of BYU. This expectation, which aims at the fulfillment of university aspirations rather than merely at the absence of serious harm, properly figures in advancement and continuing status decisions.

4. Tone of the BYU Community Is Charitable. The faculty, administration, and the board should work together in a spirit of love, trust, and goodwill. The

faculty rightly assumes its work is presumptively free from restraint, but at the same time it assumes an obligation of dealing with sensitive issues sensitively and with a civility that becomes believers. BYU rightly expects LDS faculty to be faithful to, and other faculty to be respectful of, the Church and BYU's mission. Thus both the university's governing bodies and the faculty obligate themselves to use their respective academic freedom responsibly, within the context of a commitment to the gospel. As Elder B. H. Roberts said, "In essentials let there be unity; in non-essentials, liberty; and in all things, charity."[23]

Conclusion

It is the intent of Brigham Young University to reaffirm hereby its identity as a unique kind of university—an LDS university. BYU intends to nourish a community of believing scholars, where students and teachers, guided by the gospel, freely join together to seek truth in charity and virtue. For those who embrace the gospel, BYU offers a far richer and more complete kind of academic freedom than is possible in secular universities because to seek knowledge in the light of revealed truth is, for believers, to be free indeed.

Notes

1. See the Mission of Brigham Young University in [this catalog or the] University Electronic Handbook.

2. Both the American Association of University Professors (AAUP) and the Northwest Association of Schools and Colleges (NASC) have traditionally provided for special treatment of academic freedom issues in religious institutions, whose existence contributes to genuine pluralism in an overwhelmingly secular modern academia. The AAUP's "1940 Statement of Principles on Academic Freedom and Tenure" provides that "limitations of academic freedom because of religious or other aims of the institution should be clearly stated in writing at the time of appointment" (*AAUP Policy Documents & Reports* [Washington, D.C.: AAUP, 1990], 3). Similarly, the NASC *Accreditation Handbook* "allows 'reasonable limitations on freedom of inquiry or expression which are dictated by institutional purpose' as long as they are 'published candidly'" (1988 ed.), 9–10; see also 133.

3. See Michael W. McConnell, "Academic Freedom in Religious Colleges and Universities," *Law and Contemporary Problems* 53.3 (1990): 303–24; David M. Rabban, "A Functional Analysis of 'Individual' and 'Institutional' Academic Freedom under the First Amendment," *Law and Contemporary Problems* 53.3 (1990): 227–301.

4. McConnell, "Academic Freedom," 305.

5. Ibid.

6. *Journal of Discourses* (Liverpool: Amasa Lyman, 1860), 7:283–84.

7. See policy on Honor Code, University Electronic Handbook.

8. Faculty Rank and Status: Professorial Policy, Policy and Procedures Section, University Electronic Handbook (rev. 1 June 1992), sec. 3.0.

9. For example, the Catholic church's major statement on academic freedom in Catholic universities, *Ex Corde Ecclesiae*, affirms, among other things, that "every Catholic university, without ceasing to be a university, has a relationship to the church that is essential to its institutional identity" (John Paul II, "Apostolic Constitution on Catholic Universities [*Ex Corde Ecclesiae*]," paragraph 27 [1990]).

10. For a discussion of "the Greater Institutional Academic Freedom of Private Universities," see Rabban, "A Functional Analysis," 266–71.

11. See, for example, several articles appearing in *First Things*: James Nuechterlein, "The Death of Religious Higher Education" (January 1991): 7–8; George M. Marsden, "The Soul of the American University" (January 1991): 34–47; James Tunstead Burtchaell, "The Decline and Fall of the Christian College" (April 1991): 16–29 and (May 1991): 30–38; David W. Lutz, "Can Notre Dame Be Saved?" (January 1992): 35–40.

12. See McConnell, "Academic Freedom," 311—18.

13. Ibid., 312.

14. Ibid.

15. Ibid., 313. Similarly, Rabban argues that private universities may be granted greater latitude to establish educational policies than state institutions because "The resulting pluralism within the academic world . . . may provide more tolerance for diverse and unpopular views than a rule that would subject all universities to the commitment to diversity of thought that the first amendment imposes on public ones" ("A Functional Analysis," 268–69).

16. McConnell, "Academic Freedom," 313.

17. J. Reuben Clark, Jr., "The Charted Course of the Church in Education," in *Messages of the First Presidency*, ed. James R. Clark (Salt Lake City: Bookcraft, 1975), 6:49.

18. McConnell, "Academic Freedom," 314.

19. Ibid., 316.

20. Ibid.

21. As George S. Worgul, Jr., states in the "Editor's Preface" to *Issues in Academic Freedom* (Pittsburgh: Duquesne Univ. Press, 1992): "'academic freedom' at any university—whether public, private, church-related or church-sponsored—is never unlimited or absolute. Every university has an identity and mission to which it must adhere. . . . Freedom is always a situated freedom and a responsible freedom" (viii–ix).

22. This document does not address policies, common to all universities, that govern the orderly maintenance of the institution, the disruption of classes, or the university endorsement of personal actions. This document speaks only to limitations arising from BYU's mission.

23. Conference Reports, Oct. 1912, 30. The source of Roberts's citation is the Latin maxim, *"In necessariis unitas, in non-necessariis* (or, *dubiis*) *libertas, in utrisque* (or, *ominibus*) *caritas"* (see Philip Schaff, *History of the Christian Church*, 2nd ed. [New York: Scribners, 1915], 6:650–53).

Statement dated September 14, 1992.

Brigham Young University: A Unique Environment

Religious Environment

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints sponsors BYU to provide a university education in an atmosphere that nurtures spiritual growth and a strong testimony of the divinity of Jesus Christ. Church programs are closely correlated at all levels with the activities of the university, and students will find many opportunities to grow spiritually.

BYU Stakes and Wards

To give students maximum opportunity to participate, the Church is organized into a number of BYU stakes composed of several wards of approximately 150 members each. All single students living away from home who are members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints become members of a BYU ward. Married students not living in university housing may attend either the BYU ward or the residential ward in which they live.

Other Religious Denominations

Approximately twenty-five other religious denominations are represented in the BYU student body. These students are encouraged to attend the congregation of their faith.

Religion Classes

All students at BYU should include regular gospel study as a continuous part of their university experience. Full-time undergraduate students need to take the equivalent of one religion class each semester of enrollment until a total of 14 semester hours in religion has been earned toward a bachelor's degree. See the Religious Education section of this catalog for more information.

Devotionals and CES Firesides

Each Tuesday at 11:00 a.m. throughout the year, University Devotionals are conducted in the Marriott Center with General Authorities, other Church leaders, and selected representatives from the university community as speakers. The timely messages of these devotional programs remind students of the importance of the spiritual dimension in education and encourage commitment, faith, and moral behavior. In addition, Church leaders from among the General Authorities speak to students each month at a Church Educational System fireside for college-age young adults, scheduled in the Marriott Center, usually on the first Sunday at 7:00 p.m.

Academic Environment

The academic environment extends beyond the four walls of a university classroom. Serious students seek enrichment in the library, at university forums and lectures, and through research. Some students may choose to become involved in the Honors Program or live in one of the "quiet halls" on campus—and everyone benefits from drawing on the resources available at college advisement centers.

Harold B. Lee Library

The Harold B. Lee Library contains a collection that includes over three million volumes, including an extensive collection of pamphlets, titles on microform, and nonprint materials. Numerous electronic databases and indexes, professional journals, and other current serials, as well as local, regional, and national newspapers, are also available. The library is a depository for United States and Canadian government documents and regularly receives publications of state and local governments. In addition, the BYU Regional Family History Library accesses the approximately 100,000 books and more than 800,000 rolls of microfilm contained in the Church's Family History Library in Salt Lake City.

The general collection and subject reference materials are on open shelves on four of the five levels—two below and two above the ground floor. The library's special collections, many of which are confined to specific subject areas, are on the fourth level, and the Manuscripts/Archives Division is located on the fifth floor. To help library users find these materials, an information booklet and library guide leaflets are available at the information desk.

The general library facilities are available to students, faculty, alumni, and other interested persons. Regularly enrolled students present their identification cards to borrow books; others may obtain a permit from the circulation librarian. The library is open during fall and winter semesters from 7:00 a.m. to 12:00 p.m. Monday through Friday, and from 8:00 a.m. to 12:00 p.m. Saturday. During spring and summer terms the library is open from 7:00 a.m. to 10:00 p.m. Monday through Friday, and from 8:00 a.m. to 10:00 p.m. Saturday.

BYU library patrons may also use the facilities of other Utah college and university libraries and other major research libraries in the United States. These cooperative arrangements were instituted by the Utah College Library Council (UCLC) and the Research Libraries Group (RLG). The BYU Library is a participating member of both organizations.

Libraries operated by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints are also available to Brigham Young University students. For instance, advanced scholars may do research in the library of the Church Historical Department. Located in the LDS Church Office Building in Salt Lake City, the library is open from 8:30 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Monday through Friday.

Learning Resource Centers (LRCs)

The learning resource centers provide an optimal learning environment for specialized, out-of-class instructional activities, usually on an individual or small-group basis, and thereby offer a wide variety of instructional alternatives to students and faculty. The library LRC serves the campus generally, and other LRCs are located in specific academic areas to serve the areas' particular needs.

University Forums

University Forums, held throughout the year on selected Tuesdays at 11:00 a.m., form an integrative and stimulating part of the general education experience. Speakers are noted authorities in the arts, sciences, humanities, media, and government, chosen for their contributions to their field and their ability to communicate their insights. Participation in these assemblies (and in the sessions that may accompany them) prompts our inquiry into significant intellectual, cultural, and social issues and extends our understanding of them.

New Student Orientation

The overall purpose of New Student Orientation is to assist new and transfer students to become familiar with the academic, social, and personal challenges and opportunities of Brigham Young University. Similarly, Orientation provides new students several learning opportunities to become acquainted with the resources available to them on campus. Stated another way, Orientation's purpose at BYU is to assist new students to form an identity with the university community.

New students begin their Orientation experience at BYU by attending New Student Commencement, which introduces them to the meaning of a university education and the purpose of higher education. In this assembly students also learn about BYU's unique mission of blending spiritual growth with intellectual development.

In smaller meetings and seminars, new students are informed of academic disciplines and such university resources and programs as the library, academic advising, scholarships, financial aid, and honors education.

New Student Orientation also promotes the interaction of new students with peers, upperclassmen, and faculty. Y Groups, led by upperclassmen, are formed to provide more individualized attention for new students and to introduce them to the university environment. One of the many Y Group activities involves a tour of campus to acquaint new students with university facilities and traditions. As part of the Orientation program, select faculty visit with students at different locations around campus. Mingling with these faculty gives new students insight to the teaching-learning experiences of a BYU education.

Orientation at BYU attempts to balance the social, personal, and academic needs of students by carefully combining appropriate resources, activities, and personnel. It is designed to acquaint, educate, and stimulate the new student regarding the myriad opportunities available at BYU to succeed academically.

Academic Advisement

Academic advising is an essential component of a BYU education. The university is committed to providing the assistance students need at every step throughout their degree program. A successful system of academic advising is highly dependent upon a shared commitment of faculty, staff, and students, as illustrated below.

Students are responsible to

- prepare for and keep appointments with their academic advisor, preferably at least once a semester;
- establish and follow an academic plan for graduation;
- use university resources such as Major Academic Plans (MAPs), Academic Information Management (AIM), and GE and major progress advisement by computer (ABC Report);
- read the undergraduate catalog and become familiar with their basic academic program and requirements;
- review academic progress each semester;
- attend and participate in class;
- form study groups;
- establish relationships with faculty by meeting with one or two of them each semester; and get involved in the campus community by attending cultural, sports, and community events, campus devotionals, and forum assemblies.

Ultimately, students are responsible for making their own decisions based on the best information and advisement available.

Advisors are responsible to stay abreast of major and general education requirements, assist students by making appropriate recommendations for registration, and monitor the students' progress. Advisors will be available to meet with students at a specified time, help in establishing and maintaining their academic plan for graduation, assist students with career options, and make referrals to other campus resources when appropriate. Advisors are expected to look for academic potential in students—where they can succeed yet still be challenged—motivate students to take responsibility for their own academic and career goals and decisions, focus on the rewards of education such as fulfillment and achievement, and exhibit trust and confidence in students.

The university pledges to support a campuswide network of faculty, staff, and student peer advisors by providing them with a clear and firm foundation of information regarding policies, procedures, resources, and programs. The university will publish accurate and timely information on general education and major requirements; provide academic and career counseling services; provide the necessary resources to assist students with a plan for graduation; maintain and update MAPs; provide access to a campuswide information system, i.e., ABC Report; and provide registration services through the touch-tone telephone (TTT), AIM, and the kiosk. The university is committed to assist advisors in developing effective advising skills and to regularly evaluate academic advising systems on campus.

Five major components—college advisement centers, the ABC Report, AIM, MAPs, and faculty advisors—form a multidimensional advisement program designed to address the specific academic needs of students, to track and support their progress to graduation, and to enhance their overall experience at BYU.

College advisement centers exist in every academic college. At these centers students receive personal assistance in meeting their educational goals as quickly as possible. Timely advice from the centers can help students avoid complications or misunderstandings regarding major and unversity requirements to graduate; the centers also provide career counseling. Students should contact their advisement center every semester.

Complementing the personal assistance available at college advisement centers is the university's **ABC Report**, which tracks a student's progress toward graduation. Each semester or term all undergraduate students should review their comprehensive computerized advisement report, which indicates what classes they have completed, where they stand academically, and what courses they have left to complete. Students should carefully review each ABC Report to monitor their own academic progress.

Another computer aid to advisement is **AIM.** Available at a number of locations across campus, AIM provides students with easy access to up-to-the-minute information on their academic progress and other vital information. At AIM terminals students can change their address and phone numbers, access their class schedule, determine course availabilities and instructor schedules, monitor their ABC Report, look at their grades and BYU credit, make PIN changes, check on transfer and AP credit and grades, and handle registration.

MAP, a supplement to the BYU Undergraduate Catalog, is also a valuable academic resource for students as they plan and prepare their academic schedules. The MAP includes information on general education and major requirements, semester-by-semester recommendations for course selection, and course availability.

Finally, **faculty advisors** play a key role in BYU's advising program. Students should seek out faculty advisors early in

their university experience. Faculty advisors can help students understand the purposes of a university education, explore the expectations of their major, and crystalize plans for a career or further study.

Academic Support Office

(2500 ELWC, PO Box 25548, [801] 378-2723, e-mail address: Academic_Support@byu.edu)

All students admitted to the university are capable of succeeding academically; however, many students have difficulties achieving the level of success required. The mission of the Academic Support Office is to assist students in maintaining that level of academic success. Administered through the Counseling and Career Center, a department of Student Life, the Academic Support Office uses the combined resources of Student Life to help students resolve most academic problems.

Students with academic problems usually have difficulties in one or more of the following areas: (1) They can experience situations outside the academic realm (i.e., adjustment problems, illness, relationship concerns, etc.) that distract from academic goals and may need help focusing on those goals. (2) Some students come to the university less academically prepared than other students and may need study skills training. (3) At times a student's learning style, which worked for them in high school, will not work in the university's academic environment; learning style assessment and counseling may help identify and use academic strengths more successfully. (4) Many students lack clearly defined career goals and find themselves floundering within the university; with career guidance they can move toward a more timely graduation.

Counselors are trained to assist students with time management, study skills, learning style, career choice, and other academic concerns. Students who experience academic difficulties are encouraged to contact the Academic Support Office.

Career Planning Services

(2500 ELWC, PO Box 25548, [801] 378-2723)

Many services are available to assist students with the tasks of major and career exploration and decision making. These services include individual career counseling to help explore academic majors, career options, and long-term career development. Interest inventories, computer-guided career assistance, and career workshops are also available. Another significant resource is Student Development (StDev) 117 (Career Exploration), a credit course that allows students to spend a full semester exploring their interests, abilities, and values and gathering information regarding university majors and subsequent careers. This class is designed to assist students in making career-related decisions and articulating a plan for graduation. Printed, audiovisual, and computer-generated information about career options is available in the Career and Learning Information Center (CLIC) in 2590 ELWC, (801) 378-2689.

Cooperative Education and Internships

Cooperative education and internships formally integrate university-level academic study with work experience in cooperating organizations. The combined study-work experiences are offered by academic departments as an extension of regular day school programs. They are designed to complement and strengthen the student's major field of study. In addition to cooperative education internships within the United States, internships in international settings are also available for students who are pursuing majors that focus on international curricula.

Most departments offer cooperative education and internship opportunities that give full-time students a combination of academic learning with a work practicum. Students desiring to register for cooperative education must receive prior departmental approval and complete registration before commencing an internship.

Course offerings vary according to student needs and may include registration in 199R, 299R, 399R, 496R, or 599R courses depending upon department and student objectives. Credit varies according to academic expectations and may range from 1 to 9 semester units. Pass/fail and/or letter grades are based upon academic as well as work performance and course enrollment. In certain circumstances, in addition to or in place of a grade, work performance will be posted in the memorandum section of the student transcript.

Most colleges and departments have cooperative education coordinators. However, for further information concerning the opportunities and benefits of this academic area, contact the university director of Cooperative Education and Internships (110 FOB, [801] 378-3337).

Graduate Studies

To the student seeking advanced study, Brigham Young University offers a variety of graduate degree opportunities. Excellent graduate programs can be found in each of the colleges and schools, and successful completion of one results in the awarding of a master's, doctoral, or professional degree.

The doctoral degree requires the student to demonstrate an impressive scholarly competence, which includes the ability to conduct and report research in a highly effective manner. Advanced systematic study in a discipline is also essential and is followed by comprehensive examinations that require students to integrate and understand the collective knowledge of their disciplines. A dissertation resulting from independent research is defended in a concluding oral examination.

The master's degree requires advanced course work, demonstrated mastery in vital aspects of a discipline, skill in research methodology and theory, and preparation for future creative work. Integrative examinations, a major culminating piece of written work or performance, and an accompanying oral defense of that work are also required. The professional degree likewise demands a high-level performance of students, blending scholarly insight with technical knowledge and skill.

Students who are interested in pursuing advanced degrees are encouraged to become involved in research and creative activities during their undergraduate experience.

Research and Creative Activities at BYU

One of the most exciting and valuable learning experiences available to both undergraduate and graduate students at BYU is the opportunity to participate in original research and creative activities. BYU has accomplished faculty members in all areas, many of whom enjoy international reputations for the quality of their creative endeavors. Many professors enlist the help of undergraduate students, who work side by side with faculty mentors and graduate students in a laboratory or studio setting. Some departments offer class credit for participation in these projects, and in other situations it is possible to receive remuneration.

A wide variety of research experiences are available in many departments across campus. For example, the student might be involved in the synthesis of a new medicinal drug in the chemistry laboratory or participate in the discovery of a new species of dinosaur on a Colorado mesa. Other examples of programs involving student participation include the study of robotics systems, computer architecture, battery technology, high-energy physics, international business methods, child

psychology, drug-induced birth defects, educational methodology, molecular genetics, social implications of drug use, stability and satisfaction in marriage, Church history, and a host of other topics. Students who are interested in participating in research programs are encouraged to contact their major department chair or speak directly with individual professors.

The university offers both recognition and support for undergraduate resarch or creative activities. An annual competition for special research and creative activities scholarships is held each fall semester.

Student Development Course Work

Brigham Young University offers credit course work that applies to the personal concerns and tasks facing college students. Courses cover such topics as study skills, learning in college, major/career exploration, life planning and decision making, career transitions, and individual development. See the Student Development departmental section of this catalog and the current class schedule for course descriptions and meeting times, respectively. For further information, contact the Department of Student Development (1503 ELWC, [801] 378-6021).

Cultural Environment

Students can immerse themselves in culture at BYU. Dance, theatre, music, art exhibits, museums—all await to nourish the soul seeking after "anything virtuous, lovely, or of good report or praiseworthy."

BYU sponsors performance groups in folk dance, ballroom dance, ballet, modern dance, and precision marching. Each year these groups perform major concerts on campus and tour throughout the world.

Popular and classical plays and films, as well as original compositions, are offered by the Department of Theatre and Media Arts, the College of Humanities sponsors a weekly International Cinema Program, and from September through March the School of Music presents several recitals and concerts weekly.

Museum of Art

The Museum of Art was completed and opened during fall 1993. Funded by private donors, the 100,000-square-foot museum is located directly north of the Harris Fine Arts Center. A sculpture garden separates the two buildings, and together they form a striking visual and performing arts center. The museum houses the university's superb collection of paintings, sculpture, decorative arts, works on paper, and historical musical instruments. Major bodies of work the university owns are by such eminent artists as Mahonri Y. Young, J. Alden Weir, Maynard Dixon, C. C. A. Christensen, and Minerva Teichert. Besides its rich array of American art, the collection includes rare prints by Rembrandt, Dürer, and Daumier.

Major traveling exhibitions and exhibitions from the museum's permanent collections are scheduled on a rotating basis. The museum offers a variety of educational programs for campus and community audiences as well. Included in the Horne Center for the Study of Art are a multimedia theatre, a print study room, a library, a didactic gallery, a seminar room, and classrooms. The museum also features a café and bookstore.

Performing Arts Series

The BYU Performing Arts Series presents some of the most celebrated artists in the world. Concerts and productions are scheduled throughout each year in the Harris Fine Arts Center. Season or individual event tickets are available at reduced prices for students, faculty, and staff. For further information contact the Fine Arts Ticket Office at (801) 378-HFAC (4322).

In recent years the Performing Arts Series has included:
Winter Solstice
James Galway
Wynton Marsalis
Alvin Ailey Repertory Dance Ensemble
Lar Lubovitch Dance Company
Chanticleer
Peking Opera
Ballet West
King's Singers
Utah Symphony
Ani and Ida Kavafian
Canadian Brass
Ballet Folklorico de Mexico

M. L. Bean Life Science Museum

290 MLBM, PO Box 20200

H. Duane Smith, Director
Douglas C. Cox, Assistant Director

The Monte L. Bean Museum is a fully functional, professional museum. Its vast teaching and research collections include nearly two million arthropods, fish, amphibians, reptiles, mammals, birds, and prepared shells, and more than 500,000 plants and lichens. Specimens for these collections, which represent creative work by university faculty and students, have been gathered throughout the world, making the museum one of the major repositories of scientific material in the western United States.

The museum and its collections are utilized by university classes in botany, zoology, education, art, and other disciplines. The Monte L. Bean Life Science Museum also maintains and manages the Lytle Nature Preserve for the university. Located in the northernmost extension of the Mojave Desert southwest of St. George, Utah, this 462-acre desert classroom is in a part of Utah that is unique not only for its plant and animal communities but also for its setting.

Public programs include changing, rotating, and permanent exhibits of natural communities that illustrate the fascinating relationships between plants, animals, and their physical environment. Educational programs serve more than 200,000 annual visitors and provide classes and programs for public and private schools and many other kinds of organizations. Museum hours are Monday through Friday from 10:00 a.m. to 9:00 p.m. and Saturday from 10:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. The museum is closed on Sunday. Admission is free.

The Great Basin Naturalist, a nationally recognized natural history journal, is published from the museum. Other museum publications include professional and popular works such as *A Utah Flora* and *Snakes of Utah*.

Museum of Peoples and Cultures

Joel C. Janetski, Director (118 ALLN, PO Box 25522)
Marti Lu Allen, Associate Director (105 ALLN, PO Box 23600)

The Museum of Peoples and Cultures (MPC) houses, cares for, and performs research on archaeological and ethnographic collections from around the world. The strengths of the museum's holdings are in prehistoric Utah, the American Southwest, Mesoamerica, and Polynesia. An approved state and federal archaeological repository, the museum holds a noncirculating library and a photographic archive documenting BYU archaeological research and artifactual materials. The Office of Public Archaeology, an archaeological contracting unit, is administered and housed by the MPC. Research space for the New World Archaeological Foundation and Department of Anthropology faculty is provided by the museum as well.

Institutional objectives are to interpret and help elucidate the history and culture of the peoples of the world and to convey that knowledge to the scholarly community as well as to the general public. The museum's strongest commitment lies in serving the teaching and research functions of the university. MPC staff are adjunct to the Department of Anthropology, and museology classes are normally offered (through approval) each fall and winter semester. The principal objectives of the classes are to provide students the broadest possible range of museum experience (e.g., collections management, registration, outreach, curatorial research) and to advise students in formulating realistic career objectives.

The museum's galleries in Allen Hall accommodate a program of changing student exhibitions, which are normally developed through the curriculum of the graduate museum practices course. The museum also produces occasional satellite exhibits at other university locations, such as the Museum of Art. Free tours of the Allen Hall galleries can be arranged by calling (801) 378-6112. Because scheduling is based on student availability, it is advisable to book tours from one to three weeks in advance. Visitors may also choose to guide themselves through the galleries, but groups larger than fifteen people should contact the museum in advance for special instructions.

The MPC has created anthropology teaching kits that are available for loan to classrooms and inbound populations. The kits explore the native cultures of various geographical areas and include replica artifacts, handicrafts, and educational books and videos. For information, or to reserve one of the kits, call (801) 378-6112.

Located at 700 North 100 East in Provo (one block south of the Brick Oven restaurant), the museum is open from 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Monday through Friday. Admission is free, and guided tours are offered free by arrangement. The MPC is closed on holidays and for two weeks between fall and winter semesters. Office and library hours vary according to student schedules but are generally open only half a day.

Faculty and Student Performances, Exhibitions, and Showcases

Throughout the year the faculty of the Departments of Visual Arts, Dance, Theatre and Media Arts, and the School of Music are featured in exhibitions, plays and other productions, and music performances.

As part of their educational experience, students, both individually and in groups, present concerts, exhibitions, films, plays, recitals, and productions. Theatre Ballet, The Dancers' Company, International Folk Dance Ensemble, Ballroom Dance Company, Philharmonic and Chamber Orchestras, Young Ambassadors, Living Legends, University Singers, and Synthesis Jazz Ensemble are but a few of the groups that perform in the various university venues. Plays, musical theatre, and opera, as well as art and design exhibitions, are also a part of the outstanding student fare available to the university community.

For further information contact the Fine Arts Ticket Office at (801) 378-HFAC (4322).

Recreational Environment

Students can enjoy the small-town friendliness of Provo or drive 45 miles to the north for the cosmopolitan diversity that Salt Lake City offers. Whereas Salt Lake City is home to Ballet West, the Mormon Tabernacle Choir, and the Utah Symphony, the Provo area prides itself on its own Utah Valley Symphony and several talented community choirs and theatre groups.

A Great Outdoors

The Wasatch Mountains overlook BYU on the east, and to the west lies Utah Lake. Within an hour's drive are several canyons and ski resorts; six national parks are only a half day away. Outdoor gear can be rented on campus for everything from skiing to windsurfing.

Athletic Facilities

BYU's athletic facilities are among the best in the nation. Complementing the major sports complexes—the Marriott Center, football stadium, baseball diamond, softball diamond, indoor tennis pavilion, and track and field stadium—are the Richards Building and the Smith Fieldhouse. The Richards Building has facilities for racquetball, volleyball, basketball, aerobics, dance, and swimming, and the Smith Fieldhouse houses ball courts, weight rooms, an indoor track, and a west annex big enough for spring batting practice.

Intramural Activities

The campus intramural program, consisting of more than sixty events involving thousands of participants in both men's and women's activities, is one of the largest and most comprehensive in the United States. Students may participate in team activities through a BYU ward or by forming their own team. In individual events students may enter independently or represent a ward. The intramural program offers divisions for different skill levels in each activity and provides awards for the winners in each division. Numerous employment opportunities are available as game supervisors and officials.

Intercollegiate Competition

BYU is a charter member of the Western Athletic Conference (WAC), and both the men's and women's teams participate in it. The schools composing the WAC are: Brigham Young University, University of Hawaii, U.S. Air Force Academy, San Diego State University, Colorado State University, University of New Mexico, University of Texas at El Paso, University of Utah, University of Wyoming, Tulsa University, Texas Christian University, Rice University, Southern Methodist University, San Jose State University, University of Nevada—Las Vegas, and Fresno State University. The men's intercollegiate program at BYU consists of twelve sports: basketball, baseball, cross country, football, golf, gymnastics, indoor track, tennis, outdoor track and field, swimming, volleyball, and wrestling. Women at BYU compete in ten intercollegiate sports: basketball, cross country, golf, gymnastics, indoor track, soccer, swimming and diving, tennis, outdoor track and field, and volleyball. BYU has been nationally ranked in many sports and has won national championships in football, golf, and track. BYU's overall athletic program was ranked sixteenth nationally by the National Association of Collegiate Directors of Athletics in 1997.

Extramural Competition

The extramural sports program at BYU provides opportunities for students to participate on an intercollegiate level throughout the United States and Canada in team sports not designated NCAA.

One of the best organized and most respected programs in the country, BYU's extramural sports program offers four sports for men (soccer, racquetball, lacrosse, and rugby) and two sports for women (softball and racquetball). Many of the teams have been nationally ranked during the last several years.

Brigham Young University Honor Code

Members of the faculty, administration, staff, and student body at Brigham Young University are selected and retained from among those who voluntarily live the principles of the gospel of Jesus Christ. Observance of such is a specific condition of employment and admission. Those who are not members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints are also expected to maintain the same standards of deportment. All who represent BYU to the campus community and to the world are to maintain the highest standards of honor, integrity, morality, and consideration of others in personal behavior. By accepting appointment on the faculty, continuing in the employment of the university, or continuing class enrollment, members of the campus community evidence their commitment to observe this code of conduct.

An honor code has been adopted for the university that applies to students and personnel. It is expected that all members of the campus community will observe the following Honor Code standards approved by the BYU Board of Trustees on 6 March 1991:

General Honor Code Statement

We believe in being honest, true, chaste, benevolent, virtuous, and in doing good to all men. . . . If there is anything virtuous, lovely, or of good report or praiseworthy, we seek after these things (Thirteenth Article of Faith).

Brigham Young University exists to provide a university education in an atmosphere consistent with the ideals and principles of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. That atmosphere is created and preserved through commitment to conduct that reflects those ideals and principles.

As a matter of personal commitment, students, faculty, and staff of Brigham Young University seek to demonstrate in daily living on and off campus those moral virtues encompassed in the gospel of Jesus Christ, and will:

Be honest
Live a chaste and virtuous life
Obey the law
Use clean language
Respect others
Abstain from alcoholic beverages, tobacco, tea, coffee, and substance abuse
Encourage others in their commitment to comply with the BYU Honor Code

Specific policies embodied in the Honor Code include: the Academic Honesty Policy, the Dress and Grooming Standards, the Residential Living Standards, and the Continuing Student Ecclesiastical Endorsement Requirement.

Academic Honesty Policy

The first injunction of the BYU Honor Code is the call to "be honest." Students come to the university not only to improve their minds, gain knowledge, and develop skills that will assist them in their life's work, but also to build character. "President David O. McKay taught that character is the highest aim of education" (The Aims of a BYU Education, p. 6). It is the purpose of the BYU Academic Honesty Policy to assist in fulfilling that aim.

BYU students should seek to be totally honest in their dealings with others. They should complete their own work and be evaluated based upon that work. They should avoid academic dishonesty and misconduct in all its forms, including but not limited to plagiarism, fabrication or falsification, cheating, and other academic misconduct:

Plagiarism

Intentional plagiarism is a form of intellectual theft that violates widely recognized principles of academic integrity as well as the Honor Code. Such plagiarism may subject the student to appropriate disciplinary action administered through the university Honor Code Office, in addition to academic sanctions that may be applied by an instructor. Inadvertent plagiarism, whereas not in violation of the Honor Code, is nevertheless a form of intellectual carelessness that is unacceptable in the academic community. Plagiarism of any kind is completely contrary to the established practices of higher education, where all members of the university are expected to acknowledge the original intellectual work of others that is included in one's own work. In some cases, plagiarism may also involve violations of copyright law.

Intentional Plagiarism—Intentional plagiarism is the deliberate act of representing the words, ideas, or data of another as one's own without providing proper attribution to the author through quotation, reference, or footnote.

Inadvertent Plagiarism—Inadvertent plagiarism involves the inappropriate, but nondeliberate, use of another's words, ideas, or data without proper attribution. Inadvertent plagiarism usually results from an ignorant failure to follow established rules for documenting sources or from simply being insufficiently careful in research and writing. Although not a violation of the Honor Code, inadvertent plagiarism is a form of academic misconduct for which an instructor can impose appropriate academic sanctions. Students who are in doubt as to whether they are providing proper attribution have the responsibility to consult with their instructor and obtain guidance.

Examples of plagiarism include:

Direct Plagiarism—The verbatim copying of an original source without acknowledging the source.

Paraphrased Plagiarism—The paraphrasing, without acknowledgment, of ideas from another that the reader might mistake for your own.

Plagiarism Mosaic—The borrowing of words, ideas, or data from an original source and blending this original material with one's own without acknowledging the source.

Insufficient Acknowledgment—The partial or incomplete attribution of words, ideas, or data from an original source.

Plagiarism may occur with respect to unpublished as well as published material. Acts of copying another student's work and submitting it as one's own individual work without proper attribution is a serious form of plagiarism.

Fabrication or Falsification

Fabrication or falsification is a form of dishonesty where a student invents or distorts the origin or content of information used as authority. Examples include:

1. Citing a source that does not exist.
2. Attributing to a source ideas and information that are not included in the source.
3. Citing a source for a proposition that it does not support.
4. Citing a source in a bibliography when the source was neither consulted nor cited in the body of the paper.
5. Intentionally distorting the meaning or applicability of data.
6. Inventing data or statistical results to support conclusions.

Cheating

Cheating is a form of dishonesty where a student attempts to give the appearance of a level of knowledge or skill that the student has not obtained. Examples include:

1. Copying from another person's work during an examination or while completing an assignment.
2. Allowing someone to copy from you during an examination or while completing an assignment.
3. Using unauthorized materials during an examination or while completing an assignment.
4. Collaborating on an examination or assignment without authorization.
5. Taking an examination or completing an assignment for another, or permitting another to take an examination or to complete an assignment for you.

Other Academic Misconduct

Academic misconduct includes other academically dishonest, deceitful, or inappropriate acts that are intentionally committed. Examples of such acts include but are not limited to:

1. Inappropriately providing or receiving information or academic work so as to gain unfair advantage over others.
2. Planning with another to commit any act of academic dishonesty.
3. Attempting to gain an unfair academic advantage for oneself or another by bribery or by any act of offering, giving, receiving, or soliciting anything of value to another for such purpose.
4. Changing or altering grades or other official educational records.
5. Obtaining or providing to another an unadministered test or answers to an unadministered test.
6. Breaking and entering into a building or office for the purpose of obtaining an unauthorized test.
7. Continuing work on an examination or assignment after the allocated time has elapsed.
8. Submitting the same work for more than one class without disclosure and approval.

Procedures for Handling Incidents of Academic Dishonesty or Other Academic Misconduct

Faculty are responsible to establish and communicate to students their expectations of behavior with respect to academic honesty and the student's conduct in the course. The responsible instructor shall investigate the incident, determine and take appropriate action, and report to the Honor Code Office the final disposition of any incident of academic dishonesty by completing an Academic Dishonesty Student Violation Report. If the incident of academic dishonesty involves the violation of a public law, e.g., breaking and entering into an office or stealing an examination, the act should also be reported to University Police. If an affected student disagrees with the determination or action and is unable to resolve the matter to the mutual satisfaction of the student and the instructor, the student may have the matter reviewed through the university's grievance process (Student Academic Grievance Procedure).

Applicable Actions

A wide range of possible actions exists for cases of academic dishonesty. Instructors should take actions that are fair and equitable under the circumstances and should attempt to reach an understanding with the affected student on the imposition of an appropriate action. In some cases, the department, the college, or the university may also take actions independent of the instructor. Examples of possible actions include but are not limited to the following:

For instructors, programs, departments, and colleges:

Reprimanding the student orally or in writing.

Requiring work affected by the academic dishonesty to be redone.

Administering a lower or failing grade on the affected assignment, test, or course.

Removing the student from the course.

Recommending probation, suspension, or dismissal.

For the university:

The university may elect to place an affected student on probation or to suspend or dismiss the student, and to place a temporary or permanent notation on the student's permanent academic transcript that he or she was suspended or dismissed due to academic misconduct.

The university may report an incident of academic misconduct to appropriate law enforcement officials and may prosecute an affected student if the act in question involves the commission of a crime (e.g., breaking into an office or building, stealing an examination, etc.).

Honor Code Office Involvement

The Honor Code Office will maintain a record of all violations of the Academic Honesty Policy reported to it by the faculty. If the occurrence is sufficiently egregious or if a pattern of dishonesty or misconduct is discovered, the Honor Code Office may take additional action on behalf of the university based upon the nature of the infraction(s). The Honor Code Office, in consultation with the involved academic personnel, may determine to place a student on probation or to suspend or dismiss a student for academic dishonesty and other forms of academic misconduct.

Shared Responsibility Policy Statement

Students are responsible not only to adhere to the Honor Code requirement to be honest but also to assist other students in fulfilling their commitment to be honest.

Faculty Academic Integrity

The substantive standards of academic honesty stated in this policy apply *a fortiori* to faculty. Indeed, all members of the BYU community are expected to act according to the highest principles of academic integrity.

Sources

A large number of publications and policies of colleges and universities were reviewed in creating BYU's Academic Honesty Policy. Some of the content and structure of this policy were adapted from the following sources:

1. "Academic Honesty," a brochure produced by the Office of Judicial Affairs, University of Florida.
2. "Academic Honesty and Dishonesty," a brochure produced by the Office of the Dean of Students, University of Delaware.
3. "Academic Honesty and Dishonesty," a brochure produced by the Dean of Students Office, Louisiana State University.
4. "A Statement on Plagiarism," a committee report from the October 1994 Conference on the Center for Academic Integrity, Tom Langhorne, Binghamton University (chair).
5. "Definition of Plagiarism," by Harold C. Martin, taken from *The Logic and Rhetoric of Exposition*, by Harold C. Martin, Richard M. Ohmann, and James H. Wheatly, 3rd ed. (New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1969).
6. *Legal Aspects of Plagiarism*, by Ralph D. Mawdsley (Topeka, Kansas: National Organization on Legal Problems of Education, 1985).
7. "Plagiarism—The Do's and Don'ts," a brochure produced by the Office of Student Judicial Affairs of the University of California—Davis.

Dress and Grooming Standards

The dress and grooming of both men and women should always be modest, neat, and clean, consistent with the dignity of representing Brigham Young University and The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.

Modesty and cleanliness are important values that reflect personal dignity and integrity, through which students, staff, and faculty of BYU represent the principles and standards of the Church. These members of the BYU community commit themselves to observe the standards, which reflect the direction of the BYU Board of Trustees and the Church publication *For the Strength of Youth*. The BYU Dress and Grooming Standards are as follows:

Clothing should be modest in fabric, fit, and style, and appropriate for the occasion. Clothing should be knee-length or lower. Clothing that is sleeveless, strapless, or revealing is not acceptable. Shoes should be worn in public campus areas.

A clean and well-cared-for appearance should be maintained. Hairstyles should be clean and neat, avoiding extreme styles. Men's hair should be trimmed above the collar, leaving the ear uncovered. Men's sideburns should not extend below the earlobe or onto the cheek. If worn, mustaches should be neatly trimmed. Men are expected to be clean-shaven; beards are not acceptable, except for documented medical or religious reasons. Earrings for men are unacceptable.

Residential Living Standards

As stated in its Code of Honor, Brigham Young University is committed to providing a learning atmosphere consistent with the principles of the Church. The university is likewise committed to creating such an atmosphere for students residing in approved student housing on and off campus. To achieve this, BYU has established living standards to help students learn some of the high ideals and principles of behavior expected at Brigham Young University. Therefore, the university requires students to adhere to the following standards:

Campus Visiting Hours

Deseret Towers and Helaman Halls

Visitors of the opposite sex are permitted in the lobbies but not in the bedroom area, except during an established open house or home evening time, at which times room doors must remain open. Lobby visiting hours begin after 8:00 a.m. and extend until 12:00 midnight. On Friday night, lobby visiting hours extend until 1:30 a.m.

Heritage Halls

Visitors of the opposite sex are permitted in the lobbies and apartment kitchens but not in bedrooms or bathrooms. Lobby visiting hours are from 8:00 a.m. to 12:00 midnight daily. Apartment visiting hours are from 10:00 a.m. to 11:00 p.m. Saturday through Thursday and extend until 12:00 midnight on Friday.

Off-Campus Visiting Hours

Visitors of the opposite sex are permitted in living rooms and kitchens but not in the sleeping-room area in off-campus living units. Visiting hours may begin at 9:00 a.m. and extend until 12:00 midnight. Friday night visiting hours may extend until 1:30 a.m. Landlords may establish a shorter visiting period if proper notice is given to residents. This policy applies to all housing units occupied by single students.

Conduct

All students shall be required to conduct themselves in a manner consistent with the principles of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints and the BYU Honor Code. Furthermore, all students living in university-approved housing are required to abstain from possessing, serving, or consuming alcoholic beverages, tobacco, tea, coffee, or harmful drugs. Involvement with gambling; pornographic, erotic, or indecent material; disorderly, obscene, or indecent conduct or expressions; or with other offensive materials, expressions, or conduct or disruption of the peace that, in the sole discretion and judgment of the university, is inconsistent with the principles of the Church and the BYU Honor Code is not permitted in student housing. All guests of students must comply with the Residential Living Standards while on the premises of university-approved housing.

Dress and Grooming Standards

All students in university-approved housing are required to know the dress and grooming standards and abide by them.

Violations

Maintaining the Standards: Students are expected to help their guests and other residents understand and fulfill their responsibility under the BYU Residential Living Standards and the BYU Honor Code. BYU students failing to maintain the BYU Residential Living Standards will be subject to disciplinary action by the university. Violations of these standards may be reported to the Honor Code Office (350 SWKT, [801] 378-2847) or the Off-Campus Housing Office (255 ELWC, [801] 378-5066).

Continuing Student Ecclesiastical Endorsement Requirement

All enrolled, continuing undergraduate and graduate students are required to obtain a Continuing Student Ecclesiastical Endorsement for each new academic year.

LDS students must be endorsed by the bishop of the ward (1) in which they live and (2) that holds their current Church membership record.

Non-LDS students are to be endorsed by (1) the local leader of their religious preference or (2) the bishop of the LDS ward in which they currently reside.

Requirements

Whether on or off campus, all students are expected to abide by the Honor Code, which includes: the Academic Honesty Policy, the Dress and Grooming Standards, and the Residential Living Standards.

LDS students must fulfill their duty in The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, attend Church meetings, and abide by the rules and standards of the Church on and off campus.

Withdrawn Ecclesiastical Endorsement

A student's endorsement may be withdrawn at any time if the ecclesiastical leader determines that the student is no longer eligible for the endorsement. Students without endorsements, except in unusual circumstances, must discontinue enrollment. Excommunication, disfellowshipment, or disaffiliation from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints results in the withdrawal of the student's endorsement. The decision to withdraw an endorsement may be appealed through the appropriate ecclesiastical channels and then through the university's administrative review process.

Admissions

Admissions Office (A-183 ASB, PO Box 21110, [801] 378-2507)

All Applicants

Admissions Policy: Students of either sex and of any race, creed, religion, age, or national origin are accepted for admission to BYU provided they maintain ideals and standards in harmony with those of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints and meet the university's academic requirements. High standards of honor, integrity, and morality; graciousness in personal behavior; application of Christian ideals in everyday living; and abstinence from tobacco, alcohol, and harmful drugs are required of every student.

Excommunicated, disfellowshipped, or disaffiliated members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints are generally not admitted to Brigham Young University. Applicants with an excommunicated, disfellowshipped, or disaffiliated status may, under very limited circumstances, request an exception to this policy. Undergraduate applicants may obtain an application for exception and the implementing policy and procedures from the dean of Admissions, A-185 ASB. Graduate applicants may obtain these from the dean of Graduate Studies, B-380 ASB.

Important Notice: When admission applications reach the maximum number allowed by the BYU Board of Trustees (even if this occurs before the semester or term deadline date), the Admissions Office will only consider applications for the next possible semester or term.

Social Security Number: Each applicant is requested to have a social security number for identification on student records. Numbers may be obtained at the nearest social security office or local post office. The Admissions Office will assign an appropriate identification number to international students.

Full Disclosure: Failure to disclose and submit all documents required for admission, including transcripts from each institution in which the applicant has or is currently enrolled, or any falsification of information required for admission consideration may result in immediate suspension and loss of all credit earned at BYU.

Admissions Status and Academic Standing: Admissions status (admit or deny) and academic standing (good, warning, or probation) will be determined by the Admissions Committee. This review is for all applicants, including former BYU students.

Official Notice of Admissions Committee Action: Applicants will receive written notice of the official action taken by the Admissions Committee. (Oral communication does not constitute a valid offer of admission.) Admission can be granted only by the Admissions Office and not by any other BYU department. A letter of acceptance is valid only for the semester or term indicated. Students who wish to change the entry date specified in their letter of acceptance must request permission to do so from the Admissions Committee before the designated deadline for the entry date they desire.

Admission Deadlines: All materials must be received by the BYU Admissions Office on or before the deadline date for the semester or term in which the applicant intends to register. These dates are as follows:

Fall Semester
New freshman applicants: February 15
Transfer or former applicants: March 15

Winter Semester
All applicants: October 1

Spring Term
New freshman and all international applicants: February 15
Transfer, former, or graduate nondegree applicants: March 15

Summer Term
New freshman applicants: February 15
Transfer, former, or graduate nondegree applicants: March 15

International students are encouraged to submit application materials ***at least one month before the deadline dates listed.*** This will allow sufficient time for the preparation of visa documents.

New Freshman Applicants—U.S.

Application: The biographical information (part A), ecclesiastical endorsement (part B), high school information and official transcripts from each school attended (part C), activities and essay (part D), and letter of recommendation (part E) are required of each applicant.

Application Fee: A $25 nonrefundable application fee must accompany all applications for admission. Checks or money orders should be made payable to Brigham Young University (do not send cash through the mail). The BYU Admissions Office does not accept credit cards.

High School Graduation: Applicants should be graduates of fully accredited high schools. Those who complete their secondary education through the General Education Development Test (GED), home study, home school, or other programs will be reviewed individually by the Admissions Committee to determine admissibility. Additional information (achievement tests, personal interview, etc.) may be required as part of the application process.

High School Preparation: Students are encouraged to complete high school courses from the following list of college-preparation courses. Of particular importance are English and mathematics. Writing and math skills are basic for critical thinking. Completing courses on the list will assist in preparing students for university study and will be given additional consideration in admission decisions. Students who perform well in Advanced Placement, International Baccalaureate (IB), and college preparatory classes enhance their possibility of admission.

Four years of English: composition, grammar, and courses that encourage "writing to learn."

Three to four years of mathematics (two or three years beyond algebra 1): geometry, intermediate algebra, precalculus, trigonometry, calculus.

Two years of laboratory science: chemistry, physics, biology, physiology, anatomy, genetics, botany, zoology.

Two years of history or government: U.S. history, U.S. constitution, U.S. government, Civil War, world history, medieval history, ancient history.

Two or more years of foreign language (advanced skill in one language is preferred).

Two years of literature or writing: Shakespeare, classics, mythology, American literature, creative writing.

Courses such as computer science, the arts (music, drama, painting, etc.), and other worthwhile choices can prove beneficial for students, although they are not given additional weight in the admission process. Students should be careful to take classes with substantial content that challenge them. In today's world typing and computer skills are valuable assets. These skills should be learned in high school or independently.

LDS Seminary: Students are encouraged to participate in LDS Seminary during each year of high school. Brigham Young University is committed to the concept that thoughtful and consistent study of the scriptures is vital to the preparation of those desiring to enter BYU. The number of years of LDS Seminary completed (released time, early morning, or home study) will receive additional consideration in admission decisions.

American College Test (ACT): All new freshman applicants and transfer students who have completed fewer than 32 semester (48 quarter) hours of college credit at the time of application are required to take the ACT. The ACT is administered nationally five times each year (October, December, February, April, and June). Students are encouraged to take the test during the last semester of their junior year in high school. The test should be taken early enough for the results to be in the Admissions Office before the deadline for the semester in which a student intends to enroll. Test results arrive at the university approximately four weeks after the test is given. Applicants must register for the ACT at least one month in advance of the test date. Registration materials can be obtained from most high school or college counseling offices or from the American College Testing Program, PO Box 414, Iowa City, IA 52243, (319) 337-1270.

Other Considerations for Admission: The Admissions Committee also considers applicants with special talent, exceptional creativity, or other unusual preparation for university study not otherwise revealed in standard admission data. In evaluating these criteria, the Admissions Committee relies on scholarship recommendations from a BYU department as a demonstration of the required talent, creativity, or unusual preparation. The Admissions Committee also uses part D (activities and essays) and part E (letter of recommendation) of the application in making an evaluation. The committee may also consider such matters as mission, military service, career choices, and personal circumstances.

Early Admission

High school students who would like to be considered for admission to Brigham Young University before high school graduation must:

1. Have a cumulative high school grade point average of 3.6 (B+) or higher on all work to date.
2. Achieve a composite ACT score of 27 or higher.
3. Submit a letter of unconditional recommendation for early admission from their high school counselor or principal. This letter must verify the student can no longer benefit from high school attendance since high school courses do not properly challenge and motivate the student. The counselor or principal must also state that the student is academically prepared and has the emotional and social maturity to benefit from attendance at BYU.
4. Submit a letter of unconditional recommendation for early admission from the applicant's parent or guardian.
5. Complete all application requirements (see application procedures for freshman applicants).

Application deadline dates for early admission are the same as for new freshman applicants.

Concurrent Enrollment at BYU

High school students who would like to be considered for admission to Brigham Young University as part-time students while still enrolled in high school must:

1. Have a cumulative high school grade point average of 3.6 or higher on all work to date.
2. Submit a BYU concurrent enrollment voucher signed by the applicant, the parent, and a high school counselor.
3. Have completed at least the junior year of high school.
4. Complete parts A and B of the admission application.

Concurrent Credit Transfer Policy: Many students are now receiving enriched high school experiences by enrolling concurrently in college courses while completing their high school curricula. BYU will consider these students for freshman admission and scholarships provided they complete no more than 31 semester/47 quarter hours of concurrent work before enrollment at BYU. This means that they may receive consideration for BYU-sponsored Heritage Scholarships.

Students who accumulate 32 semester/48 quarter hours of concurrent work before enrollment will be considered as transfer students for admission and scholarships.

Students admitted to BYU as freshmen who before enrollment complete 32 semester/48 quarter hours of concurrent course work or who enroll at a college or university other than BYU following high school graduation will be redesignated as transfer students. Their admission and scholarship status will be reevaluated based on BYU's transfer student criteria. Such reevaluation may result in the withdrawal of a previously awarded freshman scholarship.

College credit received for successfully completed AP examinations, IB examinations, CLEP examinations, or concurrent work taken at BYU is excluded from the 31 semester/47 quarter hours limit.

Concurrent course work that may receive credit at BYU includes:

1. College courses taken at a college or university campus.
2. College courses taken at extension centers.
3. College courses taken at high schools after regular hours.

Credit awarded by other institutions for classes taught in the high schools during the regular high school day will *not* transfer to BYU.

Transfer Applicants—U.S.

Application: The biographical information (part A), ecclesiastical endorsement (part B), activities and essay (part D), and letter of recommendation (part E) are required of each applicant.

Students with fewer than 32 semester hours (48 quarter hours) of transfer credit at the time of application must also submit official high school transcripts (part C) and the results of the American College Test (ACT).

Application Fee: A $25 nonrefundable application fee must accompany all applications for admission. Checks or money orders should be made payable to Brigham Young University (do not send cash through the mail). The BYU Admissions Office does not accept credit cards.

Admissions Criteria: To be most competitive for admission, an applicant should earn a cumulative grade point average and a general education grade point average *above* the B range. In addition, the majority of the transfer course work should be general education subjects (English, math, history, science, etc.). It is recommended that students transfer before beginning their junior year of college. Additional consideration may be given to applicants with special talent, exceptional creativity, or other unusual preparation for university study not otherwise revealed in standard admissions data. In evaluating these criteria, the Admissions Committee relies on scholarship recommendations from a BYU department as a demonstration of the required talent, creativity, or unusual preparation. The Admissions Committee may also consider such matters as completing an LDS mission, attending an LDS institute of religion, military service, major selection, personal circumstances, and the response to part D of the application (activities and essay). Transfer students are encouraged to receive the associate degree before transferring to BYU.

Evaluation of Transfer College Credit: All college transcripts will be evaluated to determine admissibility of an applicant even if all or any of that credit is not accepted for transfer.

Factors that can affect the transfer of credit include:

1. The institution is accredited by one of the following regional associations or is an institution sponsored by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.

   Middle States Association of Colleges and Schools
   New England Association of Colleges and Schools
   North Central Association of Colleges and Schools
   Northwest Association of Colleges and Schools
   Southern Association of Colleges and Schools
   Western Association of Colleges and Schools

   Credit from institutions that are candidates for accreditation by one of the associations will be reviewed on a case-by-case basis, but credit is generally not transferable.
2. Military courses are evaluated using the ACE recommendations in the upper-division baccalaureate category from the Guide to the Evaluation of Educational Experiences in the Armed Services.
3. Most Advanced Placement scores of 3, 4, 5, IB scores of 5, 6, or 7, and CLEP scores of 610 or higher. Credit will be awarded according to BYU standards.
4. Credit awarded by other institutions for classes taught in the high schools during the regular high school day will not transfer to BYU.
5. Credit earned more than eight years before admission or readmission (including transfer credit) will be accepted to meet general education and university graduation requirements, as well as major requirements at the discretion of the university. Courses should be applicable to BYU general education and university graduation requirements as well as to major requirements. Furthermore, transfer courses with grades below C– will not be used to fill BYu general education requirements and in most instances will not fill major requirements.

The BYU Admissions Office will determine the transferability of undergraduate credit to BYU. A written evaluation of transfer credits is mailed to each student by the Academic Advisement Office soon after the student is accepted for admission. The evaluation indicates which classes have transferred and will fill general education and university graduation requirements as well as major requirements.

Former Student Applicants

Students who interrupt their studies without processing a deferment form with the BYU Admissions Office must reapply for admission.

Application: The biographical information (part A) and ecclesiastical endorsement (part B) are required of each applicant.

Transcript: Official transcripts from each school attended since the student's last enrollment at BYU must be provided and identified. Students will be evaluated for readmission based on their post-BYU transfer GPA and their BYU academic standing.

Transfer classes will be evaluated on a course-by-course basis. The course must be substantially equivalent to a BYU course, with a grade of C– or higher, to apply toward appropriate university or major graduation requirements.

Clearance: All holds (i.e., financial, Honor Code) placed on the student's record by BYU must be cleared before the deadline for the application to be considered. Additionally, the student must reimburse BYU for any fees incurred to collect the student's past debts.

Note: International students must also provide proof of current finances.

Deferment

BYU day students can interrupt their studies for one semester (fall or winter) by submitting a Continuing Student Enrollment and Scholarship Deferment Application. Students who elect to serve an LDS mission can defer their admission status by submitting the LDS Missionary Admission and Scholarship Deferment Application soon after the mission call has been received. Both forms are available from the Admissions Office. Any unused portion of a university-awarded scholarship will also be deferred as long as all deferment requirements have been met.

International Student Applicants

A separate application is required for all applicants who are not citizens of the United States. Please contact the Admissions Office for international application materials.

Admissions Considerations: Criteria used by the university Admissions Committee to evaluate international students' admission to Brigham Young University are:

1. Academic performance
2. Level of education completed
3. TOEFL test results
4. ACT or SAT test scores
5. Ability to finance desired education
6. Ecclesiastical endorsement

In addition to the above, factors considered in granting admission to international transfer students are the grades or marks of all previous university and college work. If the applicant has less than one year's work at a university, secondary school marks will also be reviewed.

An entering freshman student must send official documents showing all secondary school marks and final diploma. An official English translation of the documents is also required.

Application: The biographical information (part A), ecclesiastical endorsement (part B), activities and essay (part D),

letter of recommendation (part E), official transcripts, and financial information are required of each applicant. TOEFL test results are required for nonnative English speakers, including U.S. citizens and permanent residents.

Application Fee: A $25 nonrefundable application fee must accompany all applications for admission. This fee cannot be waived. Checks or money orders (U.S. funds drawn on U.S. banks) should be made payable to Brigham Young University (do not send cash through the mail). The BYU Admissions Office does not accept credit cards.

American College Test (ACT) or Scholastic Aptitude Test (SAT) Scores: The results of these tests must be sent as part of the application materials. Test information can be obtained by writing to:

American College Test Information
PO Box 414
Iowa City, IA USA 52243
(319) 337-1270

or

Scholastic Aptitude Test
Educational Testing Service
Princeton, NJ USA 08540
(212) 713-8000

Note: The SAT is accessible in most foreign countries.

English: All nonnative English-speaking applicants must send official results of the TOEFL exam to BYU. Applicants need to have a total TOEFL score of 500 or higher, with no section score below 50. Tests must be on official international test dates. Institutional tests are not acceptable.

Bilingual students who are admitted to BYU must take an English diagnostic examination during the orientation period. Based on the results of the test, a student may be required to register for one or more specific English courses, designed to improve areas of low proficiency.

Registration and Completion Requirements: All international students in attendance must register for and complete at least 12 hours of daytime credit per semester (6 hours per term).

Official University Visa Policy: Applicants entering the United States on a B visa are ineligible to attend Brigham Young University. Students should not attempt to enter the United States to attend BYU as a full-time student without presenting a Form I-20 from BYU (Certificate of Eligibility), a valid passport, and a valid F-1 visa.

Note: All international students must report to International Services (350 SWKT, [801] 378-2695) within one week after arrival on campus.

Teacher Certification (For Students with a Baccalaureate Degree)

Elementary Education Certification

Applicants who have graduated with a baccalaureate degree and who are interested in obtaining initial teacher certification must have at least a 3.0 (B) grade point average to be considered.

Students desiring to certify as elementary teachers should contact Dane S. Rigby at (801) 273-3430 for application procedures. Applications are handled through the Elementary Education Department rather than the BYU Admissions Office. All elementary education certification classes are held at the BYU Salt Lake City Center. For transcript evaluation, please contact John Udarbe at (801) 378-4855 in the College of Education Advisement Center.

Secondary Education Certification

Due to an overwhelming number of students currently enrolled in teacher certification programs, Brigham Young University will no longer extend admission to graduated students for the purpose of secondary education certification.

Graduate Nondegree Applicants

Applicants who have a baccalaureate degree who are interested in attending BYU as a graduate nondegree student should have at least a 3.0 (B) grade point average. Because of enrollment constraints, graduate nondegree applicants must limit their registration to spring and summer terms only.

Registration for courses will be on a space-available basis. Applicants should complete an undergraduate application and attach a statement explaining the purpose in seeking enrollment and the courses to be taken. For application procedures, please refer to the preceding Transfer Applicants—U.S. and Former Student Applicants sections.

Note: International applicants (unless permanent residents of the United States) cannot attend BYU as nondegree students.

Second Degree (Second Major/ Additional Major)

Students who have already received a baccalaureate degree or higher from any institution, including BYU, are not eligible for admissions consideration to pursue another associate or baccalaureate degree or major.

Advanced Placement (AP) Credit

Students who complete a full year of an AP subject and score 3 or higher on the AP test will receive a minimum 6 semester hours of college credit in that subject. Students completing a half year of an AP subject with a score of 3 or higher on the AP test will receive a minimum 3 semester hours of credit in that subject. AP credit posted to another institution's transcript is reevaluated based on BYU's standard. Most AP subjects fill a BYU general education graduation requirement and in some instances fill graduation requirements in the major.

International Baccalaureate (IB) Credit

Students who complete the International Baccalaureate examinations may receive college credit. An IB course at the subsidiary level will normally be given 3 hours of general credit. An IB course completed at the higher level may receive 6 hours of general credit and possibly fill a general education requirement.

College Level Examination Program (CLEP) Credit

BYU will grant 3 semester hours of credit in each general examination in which a student scores 610 or higher. CLEP credit posted to another institution's transcript is reevaluated based on BYU's standard.

Tuition and Fees

Cashiers' Office (D-155 ASB, PO Box 21128, [801] 378-7808)

Students are expected to pay tuition and class fees before beginning class attendance. See the current class schedule for deadline dates for avoiding late-payment fees. Students who fail to pay tuition by the scheduled final day to register will jeopardize their eligibility to enroll for subsequent semesters or terms.

Any prior unpaid student account charges must be cleared before a new registration may be completed. Tuition and fees payment must be tendered in U.S. dollars.

Once students register for classes, they are officially enrolled and committed to attend. Students who decide not to come must withdraw from classes since registration will remain on their record until discontinuance is accomplished.

Classes may be dropped using the discontinuance action code (see the inside front cover of the current class schedule for instructions) until midnight of the day before classes begin. On the first day of classes and thereafter students will need to contact the Discontinuance Office (B-150 ASB, [801] 378-7705). Those who do not drop their classes will retain them on their records and *will be charged tuition*. Tuition will be charged from the first day of classes to the date of discontinuance at the percentage rate listed under the Refund Rate Schedule that follows on the next page.

Students who anticipate receiving financial aid will be held responsible to pay tuition charges incurred whether or not financial aid is available or forfeited.

Students are responsible to determine their correct enrollment status for tuition charges. Questions regarding tuition and fee assessment should be addressed to Financial Services (D-148 ASB). The university reserves the right to change tuition and fees without notice.

When total credit hours include a fraction, it is rounded up to the next whole hour for tuition assessment. The tuition paid as a part-time undergraduate student does not entitle the student to health service, student activity privileges, or physical education suit and facility privileges.

The charge for noncredit courses or for auditing courses is the same as for credit courses. Noncredit courses taken by part-time students will be assessed on the basis of hours involved in lecture classes. For example, 3 hours of lecture a week would be considered 3 semester hours and would be charged for accordingly. Therefore, students taking 7 credit hours plus a noncredit class involving 2 or more lecture hours per week would be considered full-time students for tuition purposes only and be charged accordingly. For courses in which no lecture hours are involved—for example, dissertations and theses—tuition and fees will be based on hours being carried during the semester, as determined by the supervising professor.

Graduate students (for tuition assessment) are those who have received their first bachelor's degree (or will have received it by the beginning of the semester for which they are registering) and are not students of the Law School or the Graduate School of Management.

Full-time status (for tuition assessment) for all students is registration for 8.5 or more credit hours per semester or for 4.5 or more credit hours per term.

Tuition and General Fees*

Per Semester (fall or winter)		Per Term (spring or summer)	
LDS	Non-LDS	LDS	Non-LDS
Undergraduate Students			
Full-Time			
$1,360	$2,040	$520	$780
Part-Time (per credit hour)			
$140	$210	$100	$150
Graduate Students (other than students in the Law School and Graduate School of Management)			
Full-Time			
$1,600	$2,400	$800	$1,200
Part-Time (per credit hour)			
$178	$266	$178	$266
Graduate School of Management and Law School Students			
Full-Time			
$2,560	$3,840	$1,280	$1,920
Part-Time (per credit hour)			
$285	$425	$285	$425

*A significant portion of the cost of operating the university is paid from the tithes of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Therefore, students and families of students who are tithe-paying members of the Church have already made a contribution to the operation of the university. Because others will not have made this contribution, they are charged a higher tuition, a practice similar in principle to that of state universities charging higher tuition to nonresidents.

**Non-degree-seeking students pay graduate tuition.

Tuition Adjustment—Status Change Between Part-Time and Full-Time

After classes begin, a part-time student who increases the number of credit hours and remains a part-time student must pay tuition for these additional hours *on the day they are added.* If this is not done, a late fee may be assessed. A change to full-time status requires that additional tuition be paid, plus the late fee.

A full-time student dropping to part-time or a part-time student who decreases credit hours may be entitled to a tuition refund. A refund request must be initiated by the student through the Financial Services Office (D-151 ASB). A full refund of the difference between full-time assessment and part-time

assessment will be allowed until the scheduled last day for adding classes. Refunds for courses dropped after that date will be subject to the refund rate schedule listed under Tuition Charge/Refund—Discontinuance.

Late Tuition Payment Fee

Late tuition payment fees will be assessed full-time and part-time students for failure to pay tuition by scheduled deadlines. The late fee will also be assessed students who pay less than full-time tuition by the deadline but who are then or later become registered for full-time status. (See current class schedule for deadline dates.)

Semester
- Before semester begins $50
- After semester begins 90

Term
- After tuition deadline 25

Students whose tuition check is dishonored by the bank will be charged the late fee in effect at the time the check is redeemed.

Tuition Charge/Refund—Discontinuance

When a student officially discontinues from the university, a partial refund of tuition and fees paid may be appropriate. Any refund due will be paid by check, through the mail, approximately 10 days from the date on which the student requests discontinuance. Any unpaid university charges will be deducted from the refund amount.

Refunds will not be paid to students whose tuition has been paid by a loan, scholarship, or benefit.

If a student discontinues or drops in status from full-time to part-time and has received a Stafford Loan, federal regulations require the school to return a portion of any institutional refund due the student to the lending institution through which the student received the loan.

Note: Late fees are nonrefundable.

The amount of the refund a student will receive is based on the date a student reports such discontinuance to the Discontinuance Office (B-150 ASB). The following rates apply to both tuition and class fee refunds:

Refund Rate Schedule

See current class schedule for specific dates.

	Tuition Charged	Tuition Refunded
Before first day of classes	None	100%
First week of classes	10%	90%
Second week of classes	15%	85%
Third week of classes	20%	80%
Fourth week of classes	25%	75%
Fifth week of classes	30%	70%
Sixth week of classes	35%	65%
Seventh week of classes	40%	60%
Eighth week of classes	45%	55%
Ninth week of classes	50%	50%
Tenth week of classes	55%	45%
Thereafter	100%	None

Note: Exception by petition to the above refund schedule will be considered for students forced to discontinue because of medical incapacitation after the 85 percent refund period. Petition forms are in D-208 ASB.

Refunds for Class Fees

Class fee refunds are based on the same schedule as listed for tuition refunds. Those with an asterisk (*) are exceptions to this schedule and must be applied for at the respective academic department.

Class Fees

- AgHrt 112 . . . . . $ 90
- AgHrt 312 120
- AnSc 124, 231R, 331R (equitation) 150
- Army ROTC Leadership Laboratory 40
- *Chemistry deposit (all labs except 353, 354, 455) 30
- *Chemistry deposit for Chem 353, 354, 455 40
- CHum 98 25
- ClTx 285 40
- CM 311 10
- *Geol 410 500
- ISys 98 25
- Math 97 75
- MCom 98 25
- MilS 120, 121, 131, 220, 221, 320, 321, 420, 421 40
- Music 160R, 260R, 360R, 460R, 560R, 660R 260
- PE 116, 117 (bowling) 35
- PE 124 (equitation) 150
- PE 150 (payable to skating rink) 55
- PE 161, 162, 164 (skiing) 35
- RMYL 199R 80

Student Teaching/Practicum Fees

- CSE 380R 20
- CSE 480R, 481R 10
- CSE 496R, 581R, 582R, 584R, 586R, 680R 60
- ECE 423, 424 30
- ECE 425 55
- ElEd 358, 362 20
- ElEd 360 10
- ElEd 400 60
- ElEd 496R 75
- ScEd 476R, 496R 100

Because of pending changes in Utah State certification fees, the student-teaching and practicum fees will probably be increased sometime in the 1998–99 academic year.

Materials/Service Fees

Fee payment cards are available in the following classes for materials and services used:

ClTx 488.
CM 105, 155, 210, 211, 217, 241, 320, 411, 412, 426, 494R.
ECEn 220, 311.
EET 103, 136, 231, 240, 328, 343, 345, 443, 447.
TecE 120, 140, 149, 150, 160, 200, 209, 229, 240, 250, 270, 281, 300, 301, 315, 319, 325, 386, 387, 388, 400, 405, 450, 477, 489, 490R, 505, 535, 593R.
TMA 285, 385, 475R.
VACor 133.
VAStu 104, 105, 106, 204R, 205R, 206R, 216, 217, 218, 219, 349R, 350R, 351R, 354R, 355R, 356R, 358R, 359R, 450R, 451R, 456R, 459R, 656R, 659R.

Miscellaneous Fees and Fines

- Admission evaluation fee (nonrefundable) . . . . . $ 25
- Bicycle registration (Provo City license) 3
- Change of registration fee (for each class dropped)
  - First day of classes . . . . . Free
  - Second day of classes . . . . . Free

Third day of classes	3
Fourth day of classes	4
Fifth day of classes	5
Sixth day of classes	6
Seventh day of classes	7
Eighth day of classes	8
Ninth day of classes	9
Tenth day and thereafter	10
Dishonored check charge	15
Duplicate activity card	10
Ecclesiastical endorsement late fee	20
Examination through Testing Center (to exempt a student from taking a required class)	10
Examination, special equivalency, nonrefundable fee to take exam	20
FSN-dietetics insurance and ADA dues	48
Graduation fee (nonrefundable)	
Bachelor's degree	15
Master's degree	20
Doctoral degree	25
Identification photo	3
Incomplete grade contract fee	10
National League of Nursing Diagnostic Exam	30
Physical education locker	5
Records search fee (Cashier's Office)	1
Spouse activity card (nonrefundable) per semester	6
Thesis binding (four copies)	11–15
Traffic violation fines, variable according to violation	10–50
Transcript fee (pay at Records Office)	2

Health Insurance Requirement

BYU requires all full-time students to carry adequate medical insurance. This applies the entire time a student has continuing status, including students taking a semester or term off. All participants in groups on tour, Study Abroad, or internships are required to carry adequate medical insurance.

Enrollment in the BYU Student Health Plan satisfies the university's insurance requirement, as does enrollment in a group medical plan provided by an employer or a spouse's or parent's employer. Any other medical insurance plan must meet the following requirements:

- provide at least 70 percent coverage for all major medical expenses, including physician, hospital, and ancillary services;
- have an individual annual deductible of no more than $500; and
- have an annual plan limit of no less than $25,000.

Students must enroll in the BYU Student Health Plan or provide verification of other adequate insurance coverage when first enrolling at BYU and prior to the beginning of fall semester each year thereafter. Students who do not return a properly completed waiver form to the BYU Insurance Office will be automatically enrolled in and assessed the appropriate premium (single or married student rate) for the BYU Student Health Plan. The insurance premium will be charged to the students' account after the tuition payment deadline each semester and term. The insurance fee payment is due by the first day of class each semester and term.

Debt Collection Fees

Students' past-due debts are referred to Financial Services for collection. If the BYU collection officer is unable to collect the debt within a reasonable time, the debt will be referred to an outside collection agency. In addition to paying the debt, the student debtor will be required to pay the collection agency fees before obtaining a release of a financial hold on his or her transcript or before being considered for readmission. Also, eligibility for graduation may be delayed or denied.

Estimated College Expenses

Educational expenses have been deliberately kept at a minimum at BYU. At a time when yearly costs at public universities average about $5,000 and private university expenses average about $12,000, BYU continues to offer a unique, high-quality education for much less. This is possible because of Church financial support, which covers a significant portion of the university's total expenses. A single undergraduate student at BYU may expect the following approximate basic costs:

Fall Semester	Winter Semester	Spring Term	Summer Term
*Tuition and fees			
$1,360	$1,360	$520	$ 520
Board and room			
2,150	2,150	1,075	1,075
Books and supplies			
515	515	260	260
Personal expenses			
725	725	360	360
Transportation			
650	650	325	325
Totals			
$5,400	$5,400	$2,540	$2,540

*Tuition for non-LDS undergraduate students is $2,040 for each of the fall and winter semesters and $780 for each of the spring and summer terms.

On entering the university, students are responsible for making arrangements to cover enrollment expenses and should have sufficient funds on hand for at least the first semester. University financial aid is available to supplement savings only through one or more of the following programs: scholarships and awards, student loans, Pell Grants, and student employment.

Financial Aid and Scholarships

Financial Aid and Scholarship Offices (A-41 ASB, PO Box 21009, [801] 378-4104)

Over the past decade the cost of obtaining an excellent university education has increased considerably. As a result, many students and their families have found it difficult to obtain the funds to pursue an education. The university is sensitive to this situation and to those students who are hard-pressed to finance their studies. Major changes have been made by the university to improve the delivery system through which students can receive financial aid. There is a firm commitment to assist those who truly need the resources to further their studies.

Financial aid at BYU comes from various federal, state, and university programs in the form of loans, scholarships, and grants. The Financial Aid and Scholarship Offices coordinate these financial aid programs and assist students in identifying the financial resources for which they might qualify. Because the number of students applying for financial assistance usually exceeds the funds available through university and federal programs, the distribution of financial aid at BYU is based on an assessment of the student and family's financial need. There are some exceptions to need-based awarding; e.g., BYU academic scholarships, performance and talent and athletic awards, and BYU short-term loans are not based on need.

The process of determining a student's eligibility for financial aid is called *need analysis*. In a need analysis, income and asset information from both student and parents is examined to determine the family's ability to contribute toward educational costs. This figure, called the *family contribution*, is subtracted from what it will cost the student to attend BYU for a specific length of time (typically, one academic year). If the cost of education is more than the family can contribute, the student has *financial need*.

BYU uses the government need analysis form, Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA), in determining how much the student and family should contribute. All students applying for financial aid must complete this form and the BYU Financial Aid Application. The application process is not complete until the results of the FAFSA have been received by the BYU Financial Aid Office.

Even though a standard formula is used to analyze a student's financial situation, the Financial Aid Office carefully considers the individual circumstances of each student applying for aid.

Applying for financial aid is complicated and time consuming. Considerable delays and frustrations can arise from filling out forms incorrectly or failing to submit the proper documents in a timely manner. Students and their parents are encouraged to read instructions carefully and to complete all forms and documents correctly. Professional counselors in the Financial Aid Office are available and eager to assist in answering questions and helping with the application process.

Eligibility Requirements

Any student who is admitted to BYU day school, who is in a degree-seeking program, and who is making satisfactory academic progress is eligible to apply for financial aid. Students who have their baccalaureate degree and are returning to receive a teaching certificate may also apply for financial aid if they have a 2.0 GPA and are admitted to the teacher certification program. Applicants for federal financial aid (Pell Grants, Stafford Loans, and PLUS) must be U.S. citizens or eligible noncitizens. Contact the Financial Aid Office if you have any questions as to your eligibility.

Scholarships

Brigham Young University offers scholarships to select students who have demonstrated a serious and diligent commitment to spiritual preparation and academic excellence as an investment in their education. Scholarship funds are provided through the tithes of the LDS Church and the offerings of generous individuals. They are given to encourage continued commitment to spiritual and intellectual growth. The gift of a scholarship assumes an obligation on the part of the recipient to use that investment to prepare for expanded and purposeful service in the Lord's kingdom.

Although the contributions of the Church and others have been generous, our funds are still insufficient to invest in all students. Consequently, we have established policies and procedures to better ensure fairness in awarding available scholarship funds consistent with the university's aims and donors' wishes. For additional information about our policies and procedures, please contact the Scholarship Office, A-41 ASB, Provo, UT 84602-1009, telephone (801) 378-4104; e-mail: scholarships@byu.edu; URL; http://ar.byu.edu/dept_scholarships/scholar.html.

Academic

The majority of BYU scholarships are awarded to students based on academic merit. After the scholarship application deadline, students are ranked by their academic preparation and performance. Beginning at the top of the ranked order, scholarships are awarded until funds are exhausted.

BYU scholarships are not renewable, and most are awarded for two semesters only. Unless students receive a four-year award, *they must reapply every year by the appropriate deadline to be considered.* Recipients must also officially declare a major by the end of their sophomore year.

Gordon B. Hinckley Presidential Scholarships are the most prestigious awards offered by Brigham Young University to incoming LDS freshman students who are currently enrolled in their final year of high school. Named for the president of the Church, these scholarships pay full LDS tuition and an additional stipend for eight semesters. To be considered, applicants must have a minimum—

- composite ACT score of 33 or 1430 SAT score
- high school unweighted GPA of 3.90 or ranking in the top 5 percent of their senior class

Interested applicants must submit a **separate application,** available upon request from the Scholarship Office. The deadline for the Gordom B. Hinckley Presidential Scholarship is **January 15.**

Heritage Scholarships are eight-semester, full LDS tuition awards to incoming freshman students. These scholarships honor the intellectual, spiritual, and cultural heritage of the Church and the university.

National Merit Scholarships are eight-semester, full LDS tuition awards sponsored by BYU for a number of the incoming freshman students who qualify as finalists in this competition. To be considered, finalists must inform National Merit Corporation that BYU is their first-choice university. National Merit Corporation will then forward necessary materials to BYU. *Because funds are limited, finalists are not guaranteed a BYU-sponsored National Merit Scholarship.* .

University Scholarships are generally two-semester awards that cover either half or full LDS tuition. Students must reapply each year to be considered for future scholarships.

New Freshman Students

Academic scholarships are based on an in-depth review of a student's academic preparation in high school. Areas evaluated include ACT scores, grades, the types of courses completed, and LDS Seminary participation. College preparatory classes such as English, mathematics, American history, biology, chemistry, physics, and foreign languages, along with Advanced Placement (AP) or honors courses taken in these areas, carry additional weight. Generally, freshman scholarship recipients have ACT scores in the high 20s or above and GPAs of at least 3.70. They also have completed a substantial number of the college prep classes listed above.

New Transfer Students

Academic scholarships are evaluated according to academic performance at the previous institution(s). Primary factors in the evaluation include grade point average in general education and major courses; the number of courses completed per enrollment; and whether the applicant attended a junior or community college or a four-year college or university. Generally, candidates must have a GPA of 3.85 or higher to be considered. Those transferring to BYU with fewer than 32 semester hours (48 quarter hours) of college credit will also be evaluated on their high school credentials.

Former Students

Academic scholarships are based on overall academic performance. Primary considerations include BYU and total grade point average and the number of hours completed per enrollment. Candidates will be considered in the same applicant pool as continuing students.

Continuing Students

Academic scholarships are based on overall scholastic performance. Primary considerations include grade point average (GPA) and the number of hours completed per enrollment.

Fall/Winter

The Scholarship Committee will consider the GPA earned at BYU through winter semester 1998 and course loads during previous enrollments. Generally, only full-time students are eligible. To qualify for an academic scholarship, both the BYU GPA and the cumulative GPA, including any transfer work, must be within the awarding range.

Spring/Summer

The committee will consider academic performance through fall semester 1998. Applications for summer term only will include grades through winter semester 1999.

Alumni Association

Generations of BYU students have benefited from the generous support of Church and private individuals. With that support they have received a first-rate education that has helped them "go forth to serve." Part of that service includes providing for the education of future generations.

The Alumni Replenishment Grants consider not only need and eligibility in its applicants but also a moral commitment to repay the amount of the grant, so that future students can receive and continue such financial assistance.

Alumni Association Replenishment

The Alumni Association Replenishment Grant is available to junior, senior, and graduate students whose total costs of education may not be met through other financial aid programs. Up to thirty scholarships are awarded annually in amounts equal to half or full LDS tuition. The scholarship recipients will be eligible for membership in the Society of Alumni Scholars and will be asked to replenish the fund once they are in a financial position to do so.

To be considered, both the cumulative and BYU GPA must be at least 3.0 by the end of winter semester 1998. Applicants must also demonstrate financial need and be willing to replenish the scholarship fund at a later date. Potential candidates must complete a separate Alumni Association Replenishment Grant Application and the Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA), both of which are available from the Scholarship Office; the Office of Graduate Studies, B-356 ASB, Provo, UT 84602-1339, e-mail: gradstudies@byu.edu; and all college advisement centers.

Alumni Association Regional Replenishment

Some of the regional chapters of the BYU Alumni Association offer scholarships to students whose permanent residence lies within their boundaries.

For applications, deadlines, and additional information, contact the Alumni Association, ALUM, telephone (801) 378-4663 or 1-800-437-4663.

Athletic

The university awards grants-in-aid to outstanding athletes who qualify under the rules and regulations of the Western Athletic Conference (WAC) and the National Collegiate Athletics Association (NCAA).

Female Athletes

Applicants should contact the women's intercollegiate athletic director, 228-B SFH, Provo, UT 84602-2240, telephone (801) 378-4225, e-mail: karen_marshall@byu.edu.

Male Athletes

Applicants should apply directly to the coach of the sport in which they wish to participate or the director of intercollegiate athletics, 106 SFH, Provo, UT 84602-2241, telephone (801) 378-2096, e-mail: james_kimmel@byu.edu.

Jennie Clyde

The Jennie Clyde Scholarship is designated for BYU students majoring in early childhood, elementary, or secondary education. Students minoring or specializing in special education may also apply. Recipients will be chosen on

academic achievement, financial need, and demonstrated ability in the field of education. Candidates must complete a separate Jennie Clyde Scholarship Application (available from the David O. McKay School of Education Advisement Center, 120 MCKB, or from the Scholarship Office, A-41 ASB) and the Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA).

College and Departmental

In addition to the scholarship programs described in this bulletin, other private scholarships are available through the colleges and some departments. A listing of many of these scholarships is available from the Scholarship Office's home page at http://ar.byu.edu/dept_scholarships/catalog.html. Students can check with their college or department for additional information and applications.

Disabled Students

Generous donors have established a few private scholarships to assist disabled students. For information regarding these awards, refer to the current BYU Financial Aid and Scholarship Bulletin.

Edwin Smith Hinckley and Abrelia Clarissa Seely Hinckley

The Edwin S. and Abrelia C. S. Hinckley Scholarships are directed to junior and senior students who have made a personal commitment to academic excellence and community service. Applicants must have junior or senior status, as determined by total number of earned credits, and a minimum 3.85 BYU and total grade point average, and they must demonstrate commitment to service. Candidates must submit a separate written application available upon request from your college advisement center or the Scholarship Office, A-41 ASB and the *Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA).*

International

In addition to university academic scholarships, international students may be eligible for a few private scholarships established by donors specifically for students from certain areas of the world, including Armenia, Bulgaria, Canada, Central America, Italy, Mexico, Scotland, South America, and Serbia. For information regarding these scholarships, refer to the current BYU Financial Aid and Scholarship Bulletin.

Jerusalem Center

The Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies offers financial aid to undergraduate and graduate students participating in the various Jerusalem Center study programs. This financial aid is administered under the following categories:

Grants are awarded primarily on the basis of financial need. These grants will vary according to the length of the program, the applicant's financial need, and the funds available.

Scholarships are awarded primarily on the basis of academic performance and will vary as stated above. A minimum GPA of 3.70 is required to be considered.

For program applications, deadlines, and additional information, contact the Jerusalem Center Office, 309 HCEB, Provo, UT 84602-1524, telephone (801) 378-6017, e-mail: deborah_peterson@byu.edu.

Multicultural

A number of scholarships and grants are offered on the basis of, among other things, scholastic merit, economic circumstances, and personal factors to African American, Mexican American and Latino, Native American, Polynesian, and Southeast Asian refugee undergraduate students who are United States citizens or permanent residents. Applicants must submit a Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA). Additional information may be requested.

Native American

The Native American Educational Outreach Program offers scholarships to Native American students in graduate and undergraduate programs.

To be considered, applicants must be in good academic standing and demonstrate financial need. Applications are available upon request from the Scholarship Office, A-41 ASB.

Need-Based

While the majority of its scholarships are merit-based, BYU budgets a limited number of need-based awards for United States citizens and permanent residents. Each applicant's circumstances and resources are reviewed and evaluated; unfortunately, there is always more need than available funding.

Other Private

Generous friends of the university have contributed a number of private scholarships. Many of these scholarships carry specific stipulations and restrictions. A listing of many of these scholarships is available from the Scholarship Office's home page at the following URL: http://adm5.byu.edu/ar/dept_scholarships/catalog.html. Students who apply for a scholarship will automatically be considered for most of these private scholarships.

Research

The following scholarships promote and reward research:

The *Undergraduate Scholarship Awards* are given to a select number of students, generally juniors and seniors, in good academic standing to fund research projects. To obtain the application instructions and guidelines, deadlines, and additional information, contact the Office of Research and Creative Work, A-261 ASB, Provo, UT 84602-1231, telephone (801) 378-3841.

The Joseph L. and Madeline B. Wirthlin Scholarship is awarded to one junior and one senior student each year who have an interest in pursuing a career in the attitudinal or survey research industry. Contact the Scholarship Office, A-41 ASB, for an application.

Students should also contact their department and college to learn about other research opportunities and awards.

ROTC

Both the Army ROTC and the Air Force ROTC offer competitive scholarships to qualified students enrolling in their programs. ROTC scholarship recipients may receive full tuition, fees, books, and associated costs. In addition, both scholarship and nonscholarship students enrolled in courses numbered in the 300- and 400-series may apply for a $100 monthly subsistence allowance. For further information and application requirements, contact the Military Science Department (Army ROTC), 320 Wells ROTC Building, Provo, UT 84602-8301, telephone (801) 378-3601, e-mail: armyrotc@byu.edu; or the Aerospace Studies Department (Air Force ROTC), 380 Wells ROTC Building, Provo, UT 84602-8301, telephone (801) 378-2671, e-mail: csbrewerton@byu.edu.

Study Abroad

Study Abroad offers scholarships and grants to assist BYU undergraduate and graduate students participating in Study

Abroad programs. The following private scholarships are offered:

The *Mae Covey Gardner Scholarship* has been established exclusively for those participating in the London and Vienna programs.

The *Howard B. and Mary D. Nelson Award* assists students majoring or minoring in French, Spanish, or Italian. These programs are offered only during the months of May and June. Applicants who have served a French-, Spanish-, or Italian-speaking mission are ineligible.

The *Study Abroad Scholarship* is available for students on any program except London or Vienna.

The *International Field Studies and Internships (IFSI) Scholarship* is awarded to qualified students receiving university credit for field research or internships in an overseas setting.

All applicants must have a minimum 3.0 GPA. Applicants must show financial need by having a current Free Application for Federal Student Aid (FAFSA) on file at the Financial Aid Office, A-41 ASB, (801) 378-4104. The Internet URL is http://www.fafsa.ed.gov. Students must complete the scholarship essay page of the Study Abroad Application and submit it with the rest of the application to the Study Abroad Office by the applicable application deadline. For program applications, deadlines, and additional information, contact Study Abroad, 204 HRCB, Provo, UT 84602-4540, telephone (801) 378-3308, e-mail: studyabroad@byu.ed.

Talent

BYU offers talent awards in the areas of communications, dance, music, theatre and media arts, and visual arts. For these awards, demonstrated talent is a more important criterion than scholastic achievement. Awards range in value from $100 to full tuition and fees for one year. For further information and application materials, contact the appropriate department directly:

Communications: Department of Communications, E-509 HFAC, Provo, UT 84602-6403, (801) 378-2077, e-mail: powellb@ucs.byu.edu.

Dance: Department of Dance, 294 RB, Provo, UT 84602-2005, (801) 378-5086, e-mail: virginia_miner@byu.edu.

Music: School of Music, C-550 HFAC, Provo, UT 84602-6410, (801) 378-4784, e-mail: sheila_jensen@byu.edu.

Theatre and Media Arts: Department of Theatre and Media Arts, D-581 HFAC, Provo, UT 84602-6405, (801) 378-6645, e-mail: cornelia_wilson@byu.edu.

Visual Arts: Department of Visual Arts, 210 BRMB, Provo, UT 84602-2500, (801) 378-2064, e-mail: staigera@byu.edu.

General University Scholarship Policies

Students granted university scholarships must do the following to remain eligible for their award:

1. Abide by the Honor Code and adhere to the dress and grooming standards of BYU.
2. Attend at least two semesters in each academic year. Scholarships may be applied to approved Study Abroad and Travel Study programs but may not be used for Independent Study or Continuing Education courses nor on other campuses.
3. Register as a full-time student and complete a minimum 28 credit hours during the two semesters of the award.

   If the scholarship is for one enrollment only, the student must complete 14 hours for a semester or 6 hours for a term.

   Only 8.5 hours are required in the final semester before graduation.

   Courses repeated within the same academic year will count only once toward the hour requirement.

   Credit must be earned within the classroom. Credit earned through special examination or Independent Study and audited classes may not be used to meet the requirement.

   Courses completed at the Salt Lake Center may be included in the hour requirement if the student registers for at least 8.5 hours on the Provo campus. The student is responsible for any additional tuition assessed by the Salt Lake Center.

Additional provisions:

1. Undergraduate students who have acquired more than 160 hours of credit or who have received scholarships for a total of eight semesters are ineligible for future scholarships.
2. In any given semester or term, undergraduate students may receive in BYU scholarship assistance (including private funds donated to the university) no more than 80 percent of the Gordon B. Hinckley Scholarship stipend, which equals one and one-half times LDS tuition.

Discontinuance

A student claims a scholarship by registering for classes and using the scholarship to pay tuition. If the student then does not attend school or, once enrolled, discontinues for nonemergency reasons, the scholarship will be cancelled and the student will be billed for the appropriate tuition and discontinuance fees. Students who need to discontinue because of illness, injury, or extenuating circumstances should contact the Scholarship Office as well as the Discontinuance Office for appropriate action.

Note: Exceptions to these policies may sometimes be granted according to individual needs and circumstances. Students wanting an exception must submit a formal written petition to the Scholarship Office prior to the necessary change.

BYU Short-Term Loan

A short-term loan is available to full- or part-time day students or full-time evening students admitted to day school. A student may borrow up to the cost of tuition only, and because the loan is "short-term" the loan must be repaid during the same semester or term in which the money is borrowed. The loan is not available for Independent Study, Study Abroad, Travel Study, job interviewing, or debt payments.

Federal Programs

Federal Pell Grant

A Federal Pell Grant is awarded by the U.S. Department of Education and is based on financial need. A Federal Pell Grant is not a loan and does not have to be repaid. Only undergraduate students who haven't already earned a bachelor's degree are eligible for a Federal Pell Grant. (Students who pay graduate tuition are not eligible.) In addition, students must meet other eligibility requirements (see preceding Eligibility Requirements). Full-year Federal Pell Grants are based on an eligibility index determined by a federal formula and range between $400 and $2,700. Federal Pell Grant payments are disbursed to BYU students for only one semester at a time and vary with the number of hours for which a student is enrolled per semester (spring and summer terms combined are considered one semester).

- 12.0 or more semester hours equal a full-time payment.
- 9.0–11.5 semester hours equal a three-quarter-time payment.
- 6.0–8.5 semester hours equal a half-time payment.
- Fewer than 6.0 semester hours equal a less-than-half-time payment.

In determining hours for Federal Pell Grant payments, please note that:

1. Audit hours, special courses and conferences, and hours obtained by challenging classes may not be used.
2. Continuing Education, Salt Lake Center, Study Abroad, and Travel Study classes, etc., may be used only during the term or semester for which the student is admitted to BYU day school.
3. Independent Study courses may be used only if the course is begun and completed during the term or semester for which the student is requesting payment.

Federal Subsidized Stafford Loan

A subsidized Federal Stafford Loan is a low-interest, federally subsidized loan based on financial need. It is available to undergraduate and graduate students who meet the eligibility requirements (see preceding Eligibility Requirements) and the federal government requirements for need as calculated by the FAFSA. Subsidized Federal Stafford Loan recipients must be enrolled in at least 6 credit hours per semester (or 3 credit hours per term) during the entire period of their loan. No audit hours, Independent Study hours, nor Conferences and Workshop hours may be used to meet the minimum hour requirement.

To avoid the burden of excessive debt, students should consider other forms of financial aid such as grants, scholarships, awards, part-time employment, and family assistance. Students should also contact their state educational agency to apply for state grants and other state aid that may be available. High school counselors and employers may also provide information regarding sources of financial aid. An unsubsidized Federal Stafford Loan is also available to students who do not qualify for a fully subsidized Federal Stafford Loan. Contact the Financial Aid Office for details.

Federal Parent Loan for Undergraduate Students (PLUS)

A Federal PLUS Loan is an educational loan that parents may obtain to meet the educational expenses of their dependent children who meet the eligibility requirements above and are enrolled in at least 6 credit hours per semester (or 3 credit hours per term) during the entire loan period.

A Federal PLUS Loan is neither need based nor federally subsidized. It requires credit approval by the lender. PLUS Loans must be disbursed to the school by Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) or by checks made copayable to the parent and the school. Monthly payments generally begin sixty days after the loan is disbursed. A student may receive a Federal PLUS Loan in addition to a Federal Stafford Loan.

Federal Unsubsidized Stafford Loan

An unsubsidized Federal Stafford Loan is an educational loan that students may obtain to meet their educational expenses. To be considered for an unsubsidized Federal Stafford Loan, students must meet the eligibility requirements and be enrolled in at least 6 credit hours per semester (or 3 credit hours per term) for the entire loan period.

Although the unsubsidized Federal Stafford Loan is neither need based nor federally subsidized, a student must first complete the FAFSA to determine eligibility for a Federal Pell Grant or subsidized Federal Stafford Loan. Payments generally begin sixty days after the loan is disbursed. A student may receive an unsubsidized Federal Stafford Loan in addition to a subsidized Federal Stafford Loan.

Satisfactory Academic Progress

Federal regulations require schools to establish, publish, and apply reasonable standards for determining whether a student receiving financial aid is maintaining satisfactory academic progress in his or her course of study. Two separate standards for measuring satisfactory academic progress are required: one is based on academic grades and the other is based on rate of progress toward a degree or certificate. In keeping with these regulations, Brigham Young University has established and will apply the following policies governing satisfactory academic progress for financial aid.

Evaluation Measures

Newly admitted students (both entering freshmen and transfer students) are eligible for financial aid during their first academic year at BYU. At the end of the first academic year, and at the end of each winter semester thereafter, the status of all students will be evaluated to determine if they are making satisfactory academic progress in each of these areas.

1. Academic Standing: Students who are on academic probation after winter semester will be ineligible for federal financial aid for the following academic year.
2. Rate of Progress: Students who fail to successfully complete at least 70 percent of the courses for which they register each academic year will be ineligible for financial aid for the following academic year. For purposes of this policy, the following are "nonprogress" grades: E, I, IE, NS, UW, W, and WE. Courses repeated in the same academic year are also nonprogress.

   Students not meeting the 70 percent completion rate will remain ineligible for federal financial aid until they:
   a. Improve their completion rate for the academic year to 70 percent, or
   b. Successfully complete 12 hours (with no "nonprogress" grades) during regular terms or semesters at BYU, through Independent Study, or at another college or university.

Undergraduate students with over 180 total credit hours are generally ineligible for financial aid.

Appeals and Requalifying for Aid

Students may appeal to receive aid if there were unusual, extenuating circumstances that prevented them from making satisfactory academic progress. Possible reasons for an appeal might be accident or injury, medical or family emergency, or other similar circumstance.

Students may petition to receive aid for future semesters or terms in the same academic year, after improving their academic standing or rate of progress, as indicated above. Students requesting an override of the 180-hour limit must file a copy of their approved graduation plan with their appeal.

Important Tax Information

Under the Tax Reform ACT of 1986 any funds received from scholarships, benefits, fellowships, and grants from BYU or any other source, which combined exceed the cost of tuition, fees, books, and required equipment and supplies, are considered taxable income. These include Federal Pell Grants but not BYU or federal loans.

Since a student is required to report these awards as income to the Internal Revenue Service, it is vital to keep a detailed record (including canceled checks and/or receipts) of all

expenditures for tuition, fees, books, and required equipment and supplies. Housing and food are considered nonexempt, so money spent on these items is subject to income tax.

The university is not required to withhold any amounts from award payments, so the student will be entirely responsible for any taxes that may be due the government. The law concerning taxation of scholarships and fellowships is complex. For more detailed information, students should consult with their personal tax advisor.

Exception to University Financial Aid Policy

Students desiring an exception to University Financial Aid Policy must petition the Financial Aid Committee in writing, stating the reason for the requested exception. The committee meets on a regular basis to review petitions. Forms may be obtained from the Financial Aid Office (A-41 ASB, [801] 378-4104).

Additional Information Regarding Financial Aid

A detailed description and application instructions for each of these financial aid programs can be found in the BYU Financial Aid Bulletin, available on request. Students with questions regarding financial aid at Brigham Young University are invited to contact the Financial Aid Office.

Housing

Housing Office (100 SASB, PO Box 21820, [801] 378-2611)
Fax number: (801) 378-6939
E-mail address: housing@byu.edu
Internet URL: http://www.byu.edu/stlife/sas/hs

Quality residential living is an important, indeed an integral, part of the total educational experience at BYU, and students should carefully consider the accommodations available in view of the type of living experience they desire, the time they have available for activities within their housing situation, and their economic needs. Housing is available on campus and in the surrounding communities, and programs have been established within campus residence halls and with off-campus landlords to integrate living experiences with the total university educational program.

On-Campus Housing

On-campus housing includes room-and-board residence halls for men and women, each directed by a competent resident adult; apartment-style living for women and men; and family apartments. Assisting the hall advisor in the room-and-board areas and the apartment-style living are several resident assistants—mature, advanced students who reside with the student group. Students are known personally by the staff and have someone available to assist with normal student problems.

The residence hall program is designed to provide experiences in self-government, sharing relationships, and other responsibilities that encourage maturity and independence.

All residents have access to CougarNet, which provides them with an e-mail address, Internet access, printing capabilities on campus network printers, file storage, and access to the library (BYLINE) and registration (AIM) databases.

Residence Halls for Men and Women

Board and room in **Helaman Halls and Deseret Towers** is provided for both men and women. Each hall contains student lounges; study rooms; shower and restroom areas; laundry and storage facilities. Reading and writing labs, as well as math and computer labs, are also provided in the central buildings and are staffed by teaching assistants. The central buildings for each complex feature spacious cafeterias, dining rooms, reception areas, offices, and mail service for the entire residence area. Recreational facilities include a swimming pool, sports courts, and large lawn areas.

Apartment Living for Men and Women

Heritage Halls provides apartment-style housing for both men and women. Most apartments have a combination kitchen-dining-study room, three bedrooms (designed for two people each), and a bath. Each building has a large lobby/living area, recreation room, laundry, and storage facilities. Apartments are furnished, except for bedding and kitchen items.

The Heritage Halls Central Building includes a resource center, staffed with specialists who are available to provide information and equipment for residents, and a computer lab, staffed by teaching assistants.

Residences for Families

Accommodations for 1,324 student families are provided at Wymount Terrace and Wyview Park, and each apartment is furnished with an electric or gas range, refrigerator, blinds, and garbage disposal. A limited amount of rental furniture is available from the Student Family Housing Office. Sports courts, access to the Deseret Towers and Helaman Halls swimming pools, children's playgrounds, and large lawn areas are also available. Thesé apartments do not have washer/dryer hookups, but they do have self-service laundry facilities. A dairy products outlet is located at both Wymount Terrace and Wyview Park, and the Housing Office at Wymount Terrace has a computer lab.

Wymount Terrace is located on the northeast side of campus and has 898 one-, two-, and three-bedroom apartments. **Wyview Park** is located northwest of campus on University Avenue and has 426 two- and three-bedroom apartments.

Foreign Language Student Residence

The College of Humanities sponsors the Foreign Language Student Residence, located near the Missionary Training Center. Students pledge to speak only the foreign language in their apartment while they live and study together under the supervision of a faculty advisor and a native speaker.

All rooms are double rooms, and male and female students eat together, with the cost of some meals included in the fees. For details, write to one of the foreign language departments listed in this catalog or to the coordinator of the Foreign Language Student Residence, 1102 JKHB, PO Box 26114, e-mail flsrsec@jkhbrc,byu,edu.

Applications for Campus Housing

Students who plan to enroll at BYU and live in a university residence hall are advised to contact the Housing Business Office (100 SASB, PO Box 21820) about a year in advance. As soon as the housing agreement is received, students should complete it, enclose the $50 housing application fee and $100 security deposit, and mail it back. The application fee is nonrefundable unless the student is not admitted to the university or campus housing. The *security deposit* is refundable (1) if the student is not admitted to the university or campus housing, (2) if cancellation is received before the deadline shown on the agreement, or (3) at the end of the agreement if there is no debt owing the university.

Agreements are processed according to the date they are received by the Housing Business Office. Students should be prepared to live by the terms of the agreement once they have acquainted themselves with its terms, signed it, and returned it to the Housing Business Office; this will avoid any possible misunderstanding or financial loss. Agreements are made for the academic school year.

For student family housing, the completed application must be returned with a nonrefundable $25 application fee. Placement

into on-campus housing is made according to the date the application or agreement is received by the Housing Business Office.

Acceptance to the University: Validation of any campus housing reservation is contingent on the student's official acceptance and admission to the university.

Time of Arrival: Residence halls are not open to students before the announced opening date, which is usually the day before Orientation begins. The university does not advise students who are going to live on campus to arrive before that date.

Off-Campus Housing

(255 ELWC, PO Box 27905, [801] 378-5066)

Brigham Young University is committed to creating an atmosphere conducive to intellectual and spiritual development for all of its students, including those who live off campus. The BYU Off-Campus Housing Office was established to assist in this task by:

1. Aiding students in locating off-campus housing.
2. Encouraging landlords to maintain and improve rental facilities.
3. Advising and giving counsel to students and landlords in their relationships with one another.
4. Attempting to assure that BYU living standards are maintained off campus.

To help achieve these ends, single BYU students are required to live in university-approved housing (see below). At present, more than 18,000 rental spaces have been approved by the university for single students living off campus. For further information concerning off-campus rentals and BYU regulations, contact the Off-Campus Housing Office between 8:00 a.m. and 5:00 p.m. Monday through Friday.

BYU Housing Referral Service

The BYU Off-Campus Housing Office maintains a referral service for all university-approved rental facilities. Thousands of rental units of all types have been approved. There are large apartment complexes, condominiums, duplexes, houses, basement apartments, and sleeping rooms. Family housing is not subject to university approval, but rental listings are maintained for married students.

Information about current vacancies is available at the Off-Campus Housing Office. Copies of the latest vacant rental listings and a guide with essential rental data on the large apartment complexes are available in a display case outside the office door. These lists and the guide are also available for mailing upon request. The vacancy lists can be faxed. The "Housing Hotline" provides daily updates of newly listed vacant rentals—call (801) 378-3440. These listings are also available on the Internet. Visit our web site at http://www.byu.edu/sasb/hs/offc/offc.htm. Counselors are also available to help students who have exceptional problems finding suitable off-campus housing.

University-Approved Housing

All BYU students are required to provide the local address where they reside (not a post office box) as part of the registration process. Unless specifically excused by the Off-Campus Housing Office, all single BYU students are required to live in university-approved housing either on or off campus. The requirement may be waived by the Off-Campus Housing Office for the following students:

1. Single parents with children.
2. Single students living with parents.
3. Single students who are in graduate school or 25 years of age or older.
4. Under certain conditions, as determined by the Off-Campus Housing Office, the university housing requirement may be waived for other students. For example, such conditions include living with families that are relatives or friends; rendering service in exchange for room and board; and living with and caring for invalid, disabled, or elderly persons.

Hotels, motels, and studio apartments are not approved housing for single students. A studio apartment is a living unit that does not provide a separate bedroom but combines the living and sleeping area.

Students who do not provide their local address or who live in housing not approved by the university and who are not excused by the BYU Off-Campus Housing Office are subject to the following sanctions:

1. Future registration may be stopped and activity card privileges may be withheld until the student verifies that he or she is living in or will be living in university-approved housing.
2. Students falsifying their addresses will be subject to the above consequences as well as disciplinary action by the university for Honor Code violations.

When a student has contracted to live in a facility not approved by the university and has not been excused from the university housing requirement, these sanctions will be applied even though the student's tenancy extends beyond the current semester or term in which the student is enrolled. A student in this situation will have to either move from the unapproved housing unit, regardless of the consequences, or forego registration and other privileges at the university until complying with this policy.

The university approves off-campus living units whose owners have agreed to:

1. Adequately separate single men and women.
2. Exercise reasonable efforts to maintain BYU residential living standards.
3. Maintain the facilities in good repair.
4. Not abuse basic tenant rights.

The university cannot guarantee that owners and managers are employing their best efforts to maintain our standards, that all residents are complying with BYU standards, or that approved living units always meet our physical criteria. Thus, students are individually responsible to carefully choose an acceptable apartment and compatible roommates. Students should, of course, inform the BYU Off-Campus Housing Office if they suspect that the standards and the physical criteria are not being maintained.

Because a student's living environment has a profound influence on academic performance and spiritual growth, BYU promotes an environment in approved off-campus housing facilities that is consistent with its mission and with the moral virtues taught by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Specifically, the BYU off-campus housing program *sets guidelines* for landlords and students, which, if followed, will cultivate that desired moral climate. BYU Housing personnel attempt to rectify any deviations from these standards and policy guidelines.

On Choosing a Major

1. **Identify Areas You Want to Know and Understand**

   Success in a major depends on the right combination of interests, skills, efforts, and aptitudes. If you choose a major only because of its job possibilities and fail to look at your own interests and aptitudes, you will probably be disappointed. Broaden your horizons, explore what you find interesting—what excites you most.

2. **Choose a Major on Criteria Other than Current Job Opportunities**

   Many college students, unfortunately, see college only as a vehicle for gaining economic security and mobility. Thus, they try to choose majors and a career on the basis of current job opportunities. Become educated, not merely trained.

3. **Develop Flexibility and Adaptability**

   The only things you can really count on in the future are change and a continued knowledge explosion. Some futurists have estimated that today's high school graduates will be in five to seven different careers during their lifetime. Flexibility and adaptability, learning how to learn, and learning to think carefully and critically are the aims of a strong liberal arts education such as that available at BYU.

   For some jobs, employers do not require a degree in a particular major. In these cases, employers respond favorably to applicants who have developed analytical skills and the ability to reason abstractly and who have learned to communicate effectively.

Below are commonly asked questions followed by a list of resources where you can find answers. **Unless otherwise noted, you can access all of these resources through the Counseling and Career Center (2500 ELWC, [801] 378-2723).**

How Do I Choose a Major?

What majors are offered at BYU and what are their requirements?

- Career counseling.
- Career and Learning Information Center: 2590 ELWC, (801) 378-2689.
- Open Major Advisement Center: (801) 378-3826; e-mail: open_major@byu.edu.
- College advisement centers: See listing in current class schedule or the Directory section of this catalog.

How do I find out what majors best fit me?

- Career counseling.
- Career and Learning Information Center: 2590 ELWC, (801) 378-2689.
- Counseling Center workshops.
- Career Calendar: Pick up a copy in 151 SWKT.
- Student Development (StDev) 110, 115, 117: See current class schedule.

What kind of career opportunities are available in my major?

- Career and Learning Information Center: 2590 ELWC, (801) 378-2689.
- Placement Center: 2400 ELWC, (801) 378-3000.
- Campus departments.

What Do I Do When I Get Stuck?

Now that I've got my information, how do I make a decision?

- Career counseling.
- Student Development 115, 117: See current class schedule.
- Talk with an expert in the field: Contact that department.

I know what I want, but do I qualify?

- Open Major Advisement Center: (801) 378-3826.
- Career counseling.
- Student Development (StDev) 110, 117: See current class schedule.
- College advisement centers: See listing in current class schedule or the Directory section of this catalog.

I Know My Major. Now What?

How do I find out my major requirements?

- Career and Learning Information Center: 2590 ELWC, (801) 378-2689.
- College advisement centers: See listing in current class schedule or the Directory section of this catalog.

How do I declare my major?

- Open Major Advisement: (801) 378-3826.
- College advisement centers: See listing in current class schedule or the Directory section of this catalog.

How Do I Prepare for Life after Graduation?

How do I find employment?

- Career counseling.
- Career Calendar: Pick up a copy in 2590 ELWC.
- Student Development (StDev) 317: See current class schedule.
- Placement Center: 2400 ELWC, (801) 378-3000.
- College advisement centers: See listing in current class schedule or the Directory section of this catalog.

Do I want to consider further professional training?

- Career counseling.
- Student Development (StDev) 317: See current class schedule.
- Placement Center: 2400 ELWC, (801) 378-3000.
- College advisement centers: See listing in current class schedule or the Directory section of this catalog.

Alphabetical List of Undergraduate Majors at Brigham Young University

Academic Programs and Degrees Offered	Departments	Colleges/Schools
Accounting—BS	School of Accountancy and Information Systems	Marriott School of Management
Acting—BFA	Theatre and Media Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Agronomy—BS	Agronomy and Horticulture	Biology and Agriculture
American Studies—BA	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Animal Science—BS	Animal Science	Biology and Agriculture
Anthropology—BA	Anthropology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Anthropology (Sociocultural)—BA	Anthropology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Art—BA, BFA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Art Education—BA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Art History—BA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Asian Studies—BA	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Audiology—BS	Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology	David O. McKay School of Education
Biochemistry—BS	Chemistry and Biochemistry	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Biology—BS (combined degree program)	Biology	Biology and Agriculture
Biology Composite Teaching—BS	Botany and Range Science; Microbiology; Zoology	Biology and Agriculture
Botany—BS	Botany and Range Science	Biology and Agriculture
Chemical Engineering—BS	Chemical Engineering	Engineering and Technology
Chemistry—BA, BS	Chemistry and Biochemistry	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Chemistry Education—BA	Chemistry and Biochemistry	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Chinese—BA	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Chinese Teaching—BA	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Civil Engineering—BS	Civil and Environmental Engineering	Engineering and Technology
Classical Studies—BA	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Clinical Laboratory Science—BS	Microbiology	Biology and Agriculture
Communications—BA	Communications	Fine Arts and Communications
Comparative Literature—BA	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Computer Engineering—BS	Electrical and Computer Engineering	Engineering and Technology
Computer Science—BS	Computer Science	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Conservation Biology—BS	Botany and Range Science; Zoology	Biology and Agriculture
Construction Management—BS	Technology Education and Construction Management	Engineering and Technology
Dance—BA	Dance	Health and Human Performance
Dance Education—BA	Dance	Health and Human Performance
Design—BA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Dietetics—BS	Food Science and Nutrition	Biology and Agriculture
Early Childhood Education	Teacher Education	David O.McKay School of Education
Earth and Space Science Education—BA	Geology	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Economics—BA, BS	Economics	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Electrical Engineering—BS	Electrical and Computer Engineering	Engineering and Technology
Electronics Engineering Technology—BS	Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology	Engineering and Technology
Elementary Education—BS	Teacher Education	David O. McKay School of Education
Engineering Geology—BS	Geology	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
English—BA	English	Humanities
English Teaching—BA	English	Humanities
European Studies—BA	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities

Facilities Management—BS	Technology Education and Construction Management	Engineering and Technology
Family History-Genealogy—BA	History	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Family Sciences—BS	Family Sciences	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Food Science—BS	Food Science and Nutrition	Biology and Agriculture
French—BA	French and Italian	Humanities
French Teaching—BA	French and Italian	Humanities
Geographic Information Systems—BS	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Geography—BS	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Geography Teaching—BS	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Geology—BS	Geology	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
German—BA	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
German Teaching—BA	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
Graphic Design—BFA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Health Promotion—BS	Physical Education; Health Sciences	Health and Human Performance
Health Sciences—BS	Health Sciences	Health and Human Performance
History—BA	History	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
History Teaching—BA	History	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Horticulture—BS	Agronomy and Horticulture	Biology and Agriculture
Humanities—BA	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Humanities Composite Teaching—BA	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Illustration—BFA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Independent Studies—BIS	Independent Studies	Division of Continuing Education
Industrial Design—BFA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Interior Design—BFA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
International Politics—BA	Political Science	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
International Studies—BA	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Italian—BA	French and Italian	Humanities
Japanese—BA	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Japanese Teaching—BA	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Korean—BA	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Latin American Studies—BA	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Latin Teaching—BA	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Linguistics—BA	Linguistics	Humanities
Management—BS	Marriott School of Management	Marriott School of Management
Manufacturing Engineering—BS	Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology	Engineering and Technology
Manufacturing Engineering Technology—BS	Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology	Engineering and Technology
Mathematics—BS	Mathematics	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Mathematics Education—BA	Mathematics	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Mechanical Engineering—BS	Mechanical Engineering	Engineering and Technology
Microbiology—BS	Microbiology	Biology and Agriculture
Molecular Biology—BS	Collegewide program in Biology and Agriculture; Chemistry and Biochemistry	Biology and Agriculture; Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Music—BA	School of Music	Fine Arts and Communications
Music Composition—BM	School of Music	Fine Arts and Communications
Music Dance Theatre—BFA	Dance; School of Music; Theatre and Media Arts	Fine Arts and Communications; Health and Human Performance
Music Education—BM	School of Music	Fine Arts and Communications
Near Eastern Studies—BA	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Nursing—BS	Nursing	Nursing
Nutritional Science—BS	Food Science and Nutrition	Biology and Agriculture
Performance—BM	School of Music	Fine Arts and Communications
Philosophy—BA	Philosophy	Humanities
Photography—BFA	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Physical Education—BS	Physical Education	Health and Human Performance
Physical Science Teaching—BS	Teacher Education	David O. McKay School of Education
Physics—BS	Physics and Astronomy	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Physics, Applied—BS	Physics and Astronomy	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Physics-Astronomy—BS	Physics and Astronomy	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Physics Teaching—BA	Physics and Astronomy	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Planning and Resource Management—BS	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences

Plant Genetics and Breeding—BS	Agronomy and Horticulture; Botany and Range Science	Biology and Agriculture
Political Science—BA	Political Science	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Political Science Teaching—BA	Political Science	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Portuguese—BA	Spanish and Portuguese	Humanities
Psychology—BS	Psychology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Psychology Teaching—BS	Psychology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Public Policy—BA-MA	Political Science	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Range Science—BS	Botany and Range Science	Biology and Agriculture
Recreation Management and Youth Leadership—BS	Recreation Management and Youth Leadership	Health and Human Performance
Russian—BA	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
Russian Teaching—BA	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
Social Science Teaching—BS	Teacher Education	David O. McKay School of Education
Social Work—BS	School of Social Work	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Sociology—BS	Sociology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Sociology Teaching—BS	Sociology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Spanish—BA	Spanish and Portuguese	Humanities
Spanish Teaching—BA	Spanish and Portuguese	Humanities
Spanish Translation—BA	Spanish and Portuguese	Humanities
Speech-Language Pathology—BS	Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology	David O. McKay School of Education
Statistics—BS	Statistics	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Technology Teacher Education—BS	Technology Education and Construction Management	Engineering and Technology
Theatre and Media Arts—BA	Theatre and Media Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Theatre and Media Arts Education—BA	Theatre and Media Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Wildlife and Range Resources—BS	Botany and Range Science	Biology and Agriculture
Zoology—BS	Zoology	Biology and Agriculture

Alphabetical List of Undergraduate Minors at Brigham Young University

Minors Offered	Departments	Colleges/Schools
Aerospace Studies	Aerospace Studies (Air Force ROTC)	Marriott School of Management
African Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Agronomy	Agronomy and Horticulture	Biology and Agriculture
Analytic Thinking	Philosophy	Humanities
Ancient Near Eastern Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Animal Science	Animal Science	Biology and Agriculture
Anthropology	Anthropology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Arab-Islamic Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Arabic	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Art	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Art Education	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Art History	Visual Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Asian Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Astronomy	Physics and Astronomy	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Audiology	Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology	David O. McKay School of Education
Ballroom Dance	Dance	Health and Human Performance
Biology Teaching	Botany and Range Science; Microbiology; Zoology	Biology and Agriculture
Botany	Botany and Range Science	Biology and Agriculture
Canadian Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Chemistry	Chemistry and Biochemistry	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Chemistry Education	Chemistry and Biochemistry	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Chinese	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Chinese Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Chinese Teaching	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Classical Studies	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Coaching and Teaching Physical Education	Physical Education	Health and Human Performance
Communications	Communications	Fine Arts and Communications
Computer Science Teaching	Computer Science	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Computers and the Humanities	Linguistics	Humanities
Conservation Biology	Botany and Range Science	Biology and Agriculture
Driver and Safety Education	Health Sciences	Health and Human Performance
Economics	Economics	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Electronics Engineering Technology	Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology	Engineering and Technology
Elementary Physical Education	Physical Education	Health and Human Performance
English	English	Humanities
English Teaching	English	Humanities
European Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Family History—Genealogy	History	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Family Sciences	Family Sciences	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Folk Dance	Dance	Health and Human Performance
Food Science and Nutrition	Food Science and Nutrition	Biology and Agriculture
French	French and Italian	Humanities

French Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
French Teaching	French and Italian	Humanities
Geographic Information Systems	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Geography	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Geography Teaching	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Geology	Geology	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Geology Teaching	Geology	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
German	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
German Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
German Teaching	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
Gerontology	Family Sciences	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Health Education	Health Sciences	Health and Human Performance
Hebrew	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
History	History	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
History Teaching	History	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Horticulture	Agronomy and Horticulture	Biology and Agriculture
Humanities	Humanities, Classics, and Compartive Literature	Humanities
International Development	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
International Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Italian	French and Italian	Humanities
Italian Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Japanese	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Japanese Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Japanese Teaching	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Jewish Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Korean	Asian and Near Eastern Languages	Humanities
Korean Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Language and Computers	Linguistics	Humanities
Latin American Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Latin Teaching	Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature	Humanities
Linguistics	Linguistics	Humanities
Logic	Philosophy	Humanities
Management	Marriott School of Management	Marriott School of Management
Manufacturing	Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology	Engineering and Technology
Mathematics	Mathematics	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Mathematics Education	Mathematics	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Media Arts Studies	Theatre and Media Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Microbiology	Microbiology	Biology and Agriculture
Military Science	Military Science (Army ROTC)	Marriott School of Management
Modern Dance	Dance	Health and Human Performance
Modern Near Eastern Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Molecular Biology	Collegewide program in Biology and Agriculture	Biology and Agriculture
Multicultural Education (Asian Studies, Latin American Studies, Near Eastern Studies)	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Music	School of Music	Fine Arts and Communications
Native American Studies	History	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Philosophy	Philosophy	Humanities
Physics	Physics and Astronomy	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Physics Teaching	Physics and Astronomy	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Political Science	Political Science	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Political Science Teaching	Political Science	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Portuguese	Spanish and Portuguese	Humanities
Psychology	Psychology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Psychology Teaching	Psychology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Public Management	Institute of Public Management	Marriott School of Management
Range Science	Botany and Range Science	Biology and Agriculture

Russian	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
Russian Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Russian Teaching	Germanic and Slavic Languages	Humanities
Scandinavian Studies	Germanic and Slavic languages	Humanities
Sociology (General)	Sociology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Sociology Teaching	Sociology	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Spanish	Spanish and Portuguese	Humanities
Spanish Studies	David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies	Humanities
Spanish Teaching	Spanish and Portuguese	Humanities
Special Education	Counseling and Special Education	David O. McKay School of Education
Speech-Language Pathology	Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology	David O. McKay School of Education
Statistics	Statistics	Physical and Mathematical Sciences
TESOL	Linguistics	Humanities
TESOL (K–12)	Linguistics	Humanities
Theatre and Media Arts Education	Theatre and Media Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Theatre Studies	Theatre and Media Arts	Fine Arts and Communications
Travel and Tourism Studies	Geography	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Women's Studies	Women's Research Institute	Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Zoology	Zoology	Biology and Agriculture

Registration

Registration Office (B-130 ASB, PO Box 21114, [801] 378-2824)

Who May Register?

Students are eligible to register if they are either continuing BYU students or new students who have received a letter of acceptance from the Admissions Office for the semester they wish to attend.

Continuing student status ends if a student does not complete day school classes the previous full semester (fall or winter) or if a student has graduated from BYU. Students who have lost continuing student status must be readmitted by the Admissions Office (A-153 ASB) before registration materials will be processed.

An individual who has disaffiliated from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints or has been excommunicated or disfellowshipped is not eligible for enrollment at Brigham Young University until he or she is once again in good standing in the Church. If a current student disaffiliates or is excommunicated or disfellowshipped from the Church, the Continuing Ecclesiastical Endorsement is always immediately withdrawn, and the student is discontinued. Every student must have a current Continuing Ecclesiastical Endorsement for continued enrollment.

The Registration Process

Complete registration instructions and deadlines are listed in the current class schedule for each semester or term. New students receive a current class schedule in the mail, and continuing students may buy one at the BYU Bookstore or the Registration Office.

Registration is based on a priority system that allows students to begin registration according to their class standing and number of completed hours. Priority begins with graduate students and seniors, then juniors, sophomores, and freshmen. Non-degree-seeking graduates will be given access after continuing freshmen. Newly admitted freshmen will register together in a separate priority.

All eligible students will be mailed a Registration Notice for fall and winter semesters that will inform students of their beginning registration times. Following the instructions in the current class schedule, students may begin registering for fall semester in April and for winter semester in October. Spring and summer term registration will not be based on a priority system. Schedules become available sometime in January, and eligible students can register for spring and summer terms beginning in February. Students have continuous access to the registration system. However, once school begins some classes must be added with an instructor's signature.

A Tuition Billing Statement with a listing of classes will be mailed to each student who has registered for at least one class by mid-July for fall semester, mid-November for winter semester, mid-March for spring term, or mid-May for summer term. The tuition payment deadline is August 15 for fall semester 1998, December 15 for winter semester 1999, and mid-April and mid-June for spring 1999 and summer 1999 terms, respectively. Students who fail to meet tuition deadlines will lose access to the Touch-tone telephone system.

Late Registration

Students who fail to pay by the tuition payment deadline will be assessed a late fee. When a student's tuition is received before the first day of class, the Touch-tone telephone system will be made available. Beginning the first day of school, students may register for their classes by following the adding and dropping procedures outlined below. For fall and winter semesters the late tuition fee is $50 (effective after the tuition deadline and before the first day of classes) and $90 (starting on the first day of classes). For spring and summer terms the fee is $25 (effective after the tuition deadline).

Adding and Dropping Classes

Students may use the touch-tone telephone (TTT) or the AIM (Academic Information Management) computer on-line system to add and drop classes before school begins. Each academic department determines how classes are added. The add method of each class is noted in either the current class schedule or on AIM with a **T** (touch-tone telephone or AIM from five to ten days into the semester or from three to six days into the term), **S** (can only be added through the department), **Y** (touch-tone telephone or AIM until classes start—instructor signature thereafter), or **G** (Freshman Academy students only by touch-tone telephone).

To add a class that requires a signature:

1. Obtain a change of registration (add/drop) card from the Registration Office, a college advisement center, or a department (also available in Smith Family Living Center [SFLC] step-down lounge during the add period).
2. Obtain a signature of approval from the instructor or department as shown in the current class schedule.
3. Take the add card to the Smith Family Living Center step-down lounge during the first ten school days of a semester (first six days of a term).
4. For classes not officially added before the add deadline, petition for acceptance through the Registration Office (B-150 ASB) and pay a $10 fee per class.

To drop a class once school begins:

1. During the first two days of a semester or term, use the TTT or AIM system.
2. Beginning the third class day, obtain a Change of Registration (add/drop) Card from the Registration Office, college advisement center, or a department (also available in the Smith Family Living Center step-down lounge during the add period).
   a. Indicate the class(es) to be dropped (no signature is required).
   b. Take the drop card to the SFLC during the first ten school days of a semester (first six days of a term).
   c. Pay the appropriate fee. (The amount of the fee increases each day. The charge per day is printed on the add/drop card.)
   d. From the third week of classes through the fifth week (seventh through thirteenth day of a term) pay the fees at the Cashiers' Office in the ASB and return the card to

the Registration Office (B-130 ASB). A W will appear for classes dropped during this time.

e. To drop a class after the drop deadline, petition for acceptance through the Registration Office (B-150 ASB) and pay a $10 fee per class.

Note: A student can be registered for more than one section of an R-suffix course and therefore must drop each unwanted section.

Full- or Part-Time Status

A student who registers for more than 8 credit hours a semester or more than 4 credit hours a term is full-time for tuition purposes. Registration for 8 or fewer credit hours a semester (4 or fewer credit hours a term) gives the student part-time status. International students and students receiving financial assistance may be required to register for more hours to be considered full-time.

Verification of Full-Time Status for Graduate Students

Graduate students (master's and doctoral students) who are enrolled for at least 2 credit hours per semester and who can be certified by their department as being engaged full-time in pursuit of their degrees can petition for graduate full-time status. Requests for such an exception should be directed to the Office of Graduate Studies.

Withdrawal from Classes

Students who choose to withdraw from (drop) a class must do so officially. Students who do not officially withdraw before the published deadline will receive a failing grade. Refer to the current class schedule for the appropriate procedure and deadlines.

Auditing Classes

Students who wish to audit a class (take a course without receiving any credit for it) must add the class, listing it as an audit course, on an add/drop card within the first ten class days. Audited classes do not appear on transcripts and do not count for verification purposes. *Students must be officially enrolled either for credit or audit to be eligible to attend class.*

Class Preparation Time

The expectation for undergraduate courses is three hours of work per week per credit hour for the average student who is appropriately prepared; much more time may be required to achieve excellence. These three hours may include one hour of lecture plus two hours of work outside class, three hours in a laboratory with little outside work, or any other combination appropriate to a particular course.

Maximum Hours per Semester/Term

An undergraduate student in good standing may register for as many as 18 credit hours in any one semester (9 per term) by following the regular registration procedure. The college advisement center may authorize a student who has demonstrated superior academic ability to register for a maxiumum of 21 hours per semester (11 per term). Registering for classes through Continuing Education or auditing classes constitutes a part of the total registration. Through a petition process, exceptions to these rules may be granted by the university registrar (B-150 ASB).

Final Examinations

The university schedules reading and examination periods. An examination period occurs at the end of each semester and term. The examination period is preceded by reading days, which give time for conscientious review, study, and synthesis of the semester's work. The reading and the examination periods are firmly scheduled parts of the semester; students must not make plans that interfere with these important academic activities. Students may not take final examinations early. If illness or other uncontrollable circumstances prevent a student from taking an examination at the scheduled time, that student is responsible to inform the class instructor as soon as possible.

The instructor may give the grade *Incomplete*, depending on the circumstances. The incomplete cannot be given unless the student and instructor together prepare a contractual agreement. In cases where a student has conflicting examinations or more than three examinations in one day, individual arrangement for alternative test times may be made by the instructor.

Registration Holds

The university may place a hold on a student's records that will block registration privileges. The hold will be indicated on the registration system. It is the student's responsibility to contact the appropriate office to clear any holds before attempting to register for classes.

Academic standards:
Academic Support Office ([801] 378-2723).

Ecclesiastical endorsement:
Honor Code Office ([801] 378-2847).

Financial status (prior balance):
Student Accounts ([801] 378-5415).

Graduate school:
Office of Graduate Studies ([801] 378-4091).

Loans:
Collections Office ([801] 378-7648)
Financial Aid Office ([801] 378-4104).

College advisement centers (CAC holds):
Biology and Agriculture ([801] 378-3042)
Education ([801] 378-3426)
Engineering and Technology ([801] 378-4325)
Family, Home, and Social Sciences ([801] 378-3541)
Fine Arts and Communications ([801] 378-3537)
Health and Human Performance ([801] 378-3638)
Humanities ([801] 378-4789)
Marriott School of Management ([801] 378-4285)
Nursing ([801] 378-4173)
Physical and Mathematical Sciences ([801] 378-2095)
Open Major ([801] 378-3826)

Academic Standards

Your academic standing in the university is determined according to the grades that you earn. The following outline shows the conditions and expectations according to a student's academic standing.

Academic Status	Under These Conditions	Expectations
SATISFACTORY STANDING	Occurs when your most recent semester/term GPA and your BYU cumulative GPA are 2.0 or above.	Continue to maintain a BYU cumulative GPA of 2.0 or higher until graduation.
PREVIOUS	Same as satisfactory status but used to indicate those students who have been on Probation or Suspension in the past.	Same as satisfactory status. Students on previous status will go directly to probation if in the future they have a semester below 2.0.
WARNING	Occurs when your most recent semester/term GPA falls below 2.0.	Contact the Academic Support Office (2500 SWKT) for assistance.
WARNING with REGISTRATION BLOCK	Occurs when your BYU cumulative GPA falls below 2.0 and you have completed more than one semester/term at BYU OR Occurs when your semester/term GPA falls below 1.0.	Contact the Academic Support Office (2500 SWKT) to review your academic status. You **will not** be allowed to register for future semesters/terms until you have obtained clearance through the Academic Support Office.
PROBATION with REGISTRATION BLOCK	Occurs when you are on warning status and your next semester/term GPA falls below 2.0 OR Occurs if at any previous time you have been on probation or suspension status at BYU and your semester/term GPA again falls below 2.0 OR Occurs if your semester/term GPA is 2.0 or above and your BYU cumulative GPA remains below 2.0 and you have been moved to probation status.	Contact the Academic Support Office (2500 SWKT) to review your academic status. You **will not** be allowed to register for future semesters/terms until you have obtained clearance through the Academic Support Office. **Note:** If you are receiving university or federal financial aid, you must also contact the Financial Aid Office (A-41 ASB). Students on probation usually are not eligible for financial aid.
SUSPENSION	Occurs when you are on probation status and your next semester/term GPA falls below 2.0 OR Occurs when you fail to comply with the conditions prescribed by the Academic Support Office.	1. Suspended students are denied continued enrollment. If you are suspended and desire to return to BYU at some future point, you must qualify for readmission. If you wish to appeal your suspension, you must contact the Academic Support Office (2500 SWKT). 2. If you have preregistered and/or paid any fees for a subsequent semester or term, you **must** withdraw (discontinue) and arrange for a tuition refund. Contact the Academic Support Office (2500 SWKT) for assistance. 3. Suspension will be noted on your official BYU transcript.
DISMISSAL	Occurs when you are suspended a second time from the university.	Academic dismissal is noted on your official BYU transcript. You will need to seek other options to continue formal education.

Note: Registration blocks may also be set by college advisement centers on students not progressing toward graduation in timely ways. In such cases, students must also meet with their college advisement center to have this block removed.

Grading and Records

Grading

Grade point averages are computed by assigning numeric values to the letter grades:

Letter Grade Values

A	4.0	C	2.0
A–	3.7	C–	1.7
B+	3.4	D+	1.4
B	3.0	D	1.0
B–	2.7	D–	0.7
C+	2.4	E, UW, I, IE, WE	0.0

The grade given in a course is the teacher's evaluation of the student's performance, achievement, and understanding in that subject as covered in the class. The following adjectives indicate the meaning of the letter grades:

A	Excellent
B	Good
C	Satisfactory
D	Minimum passing
E	Unacceptable

Hence, the grade **A** means that the student's performance, achievement, and understanding were excellent in the portion of the subject covered in the class.

There are prerequisites that qualify students to be admitted to the more advanced classes offered by a department. A senior has added experience, understanding, and preparation and, consequently, progresses in courses that would have been impossible when the student was a freshman. The level of performance, achievement, and understanding required to qualify for each grade that carries credit (any grade other than E, UW, I, IE, or WE) is higher in a more advanced class than in those classes that precede it, and the student is prepared to work at this higher level.

If a student withdraws officially from a class during the first ten class days of a semester or the first six class days of a term, the permanent record will not show a registration for that class. If the student properly withdraws from a class between the eleventh and twenty-fifth class days of a semester or between the seventh and thirteenth class days of a term, the record will be marked **W** (official withdrawal).

A **WE** grade will be given if a student petitions to withdraw from a class after the deadline and he or she is failing the class at that time.

A **UW** grade indicates that a student unofficially withdrew or stopped attending a class and did not officially withdraw with the Registration Office. An instructor should give a UW when a student stops attending a class before the nonacademic emergency deadline of a semester and does not take the final exam. In addition, if an instructor fails to assign a student a letter grade on the grade roll, the student will automatically receive the grade UW. The UW is calculated in the GPA as a failing grade.

A grade of **P** indicates a passing grade. It has no effect on the GPA.

The letter grade **I** (Incomplete) is given on a contractual basis with the instructor to students who are unable to complete the work in the prescribed period of time. An incomplete grade may be given for nonacademic extenuating circumstances (serious illness, personal injury, death in the immediate family, etc.) that may arise *after* the nonacademic emergency deadline (the twelth week of a semester or the sixth week of a term). To be eligible for an incomplete, the student must have attended up until the nonacademic emergency deadline and be passing the class. If extenuating circumstances arise before the twelfth week of a semester or the sixth week of a term, the student should discontinue or petition through the Registration Office to be officially withdrawn from the class(es). The Incomplete Grade Contract must be completed and signed by the instructor and the $10 fee paid before submission of the official grade roll at the end of the semester. A copy of the Incomplete Grade Contract must accompany the grade roll or the grade will be changed to an E grade.

Class attendance in a subsequent semester or reregistration is not permitted to make up the incomplete. In some special instances, such as a lab class, attendance may be required for the portion of the class or lab section missed. Once the work has been completed, the instructor should complete the portion of the Incomplete Grade Contract, showing the grade earned, and submit the form to the Records Office (B-150 ASB).

The instructor may designate the specific length of time the student has to complete the course requirements (not to exceed one year). In designating the length of time, both the student and instructor should be aware that *the I grade is calculated as a neutral grade for the first four months after it is posted.* If the work is not completed and the new grade submitted by the instructor within the first four months, the I grade will be changed to an IE (the IE grade is considered and calculated as a failing grade even though the work may still be in progress). The IE grade will be changed if the course work is completed by the contract deadline and the official grade is submitted by the instructor. (Petitions for an exception to this policy may be obtained from the Records Office, B-150 ASB.)

A grade of **T** indicates course work in progress and is only used in certain approved courses in which work may extend beyond the semester. The T grade may be changed to A, B, C, D, E, or P, depending on the grade rule for the course, when the work is completed.

The grade **NS** is placed on the student record when a grade roll has not been submitted to the Records Office by the grade processing deadline. After the deadline, individual Grade Change Authorization forms must be used to submit a new grade to change the NS grade. The NS will not be considered in calculating the grade point average.

Grade Changes

Once grade rolls have been submitted to the Records Office, final grades may be changed for the following reasons only:

- making a calculating error in computing the grade
- posting the wrong grade to the grade roll
- changing a T grade after the course work is completed
- posting a grade if no grade was submitted

- reevaluation of the previous grade with no additional work submitted

When such corrections need to be made, an official Grade Change Authorization Form must be completed and sent directly to the Records Office.

If a student completes any additional work beyond the end of the semester or term (original T grades excluded), grade changes should not be made. Instead, the student should request to have an Incomplete Grade Contract.

A previous grade cannot be changed to a W (Official Withdrawal). If the student had a nonacademic emergency, he or she should file a petition for withdrawal with the Records Office.

Numeric Grade Values (Law School)

In fall semester 1987 the Law School was granted permission to grade their courses on the numeric grading system. In fall semester 1994 the Law School was granted permission to change the numeric grading system to a new numeric scale. All Law School students with previously earned numeric grades had their grades converted to the new numeric scale:

1987–1994	Description	Fall 1994
80–90	Superior	3.7–4.0
75–79	Excellent	3.3–3.6
71–74	High pass	3.0–3.2
66–70	Pass	2.7–2.9
59–65	Low pass	2.2–2.6
50–58	Fail	1.6–2.1

Resolving Academic Grievances

Despite the well-meaning efforts of students and faculty alike, there may be times when students feel that they have been treated unjustly or that their work has been evaluated unfairly or inadequately by an instructor. Such occasions can be even more frustrating if students are unsure of the procedure for presenting their grievance. The following guidelines should help successfully resolve the problem.

1. Ideally, the student should first bring the grievance to the attention of the instructor involved, who is better acquainted with the situation than any other member of the faculty. Most instructors are anxious to work through differences with their students in a sensitive and fair-minded manner.

   If (a) the instructor is not available, (b) the student feels strongly that the instructor will not deal with the grievance fairly, or (c) bringing the grievance to the attention of the instructor does not resolve the problem to the student's satisfaction, the student may appeal to the chair of the instructor's academic department.

   The chair will consider the grievance and within thirty days will notify the student, the instructor, and the college dean of the decision. The decision can include a recommended grade change.
2. If the student is dissatisfied with the department chair's decision, the student may appeal *in writing* to the dean of the college within which the department is housed no later than thirty days after the date of the chair's notification letter. The written appeal should include the details of the grievance and an outline of the student's efforts to resolve it prior to making this appeal to the college dean.
3. The college dean will give the student the choice of having the grievance resolved directly by the dean or by a three-member committee chaired by a full-time member of the faculty selected by the dean. Should the student choose to have the grievance appeal heard by the three-person committee, the other two committee members will be appointed by the student and the instructor, respectively. Each must either be a full-time student or a full-time faculty member.
4. When the grievance is heard by the dean or the committee, both the student and the instructor may call witnesses to be questioned by the other party and by the dean or committee members. The number of witnesses and the conduct of the hearing will be determined by the dean or the committee chair.
5. The dean's or committee's decision (its majority vote) will be final and not subject to appeal. The decision can include a grade change. The student will be notified in writing of the decision within thirty days of the hearing date.
6. Please realize that the same appeal process is available to the instructor. In other words, if the instructor is not satisfied with the department chair's decision, he or she may appeal to the college dean.
7. The student must bring the grievance to the attention of the instructor or the department chair within one calendar year from the last day of the examination period in the semester or term in which the problem originated. For example, if the grievance occurred in the course offered winter semester, the student must initiate the grievance procedure before the final day of the following year's winter semester examination period. Where military service or an LDS mission makes it difficult to bring the problem to the attention of the instructor or department chair, a later consideration may be permitted.

Questions regarding these guidelines should be directed to the Office of the Dean of Student Life (380 SWKT, [801] 378-4668).

Scholastic Recognition Each Semester

The dean of each academic college at the close of each semester will post a list of names of undergraduate students who are ranked in the top 5 percent of their college for the given semester, who have earned a minimum of 14 credit hours, and who have earned a minimum grade point average of at least 3.5 for the semester.

Grade Reports

Grade reports are available at no charge for all day and evening school students after the semester has concluded. Grade reports will be mailed to students who leave self-addressed, stamped envelopes containing their social security number at the Records Office.

Grades can also be obtained by the student using the Touch-Tone Telephone Information System or by using an AIM terminal.

Records

Records Office (B-150 ASB, PO Box 21114, [801] 378-2631)

The Records Office is the official guardian of all permanent records of all academic work done at the university. The office is also responsible for issuing official transcripts of credit. Official transcripts include only courses completed through BYU.

Classification of Students

At the beginning of each semester, students are classified for that semester as follows:

Credit Hours Earned	Classification
1–31.9	Freshman
32–63.9	Sophomore
64–95.9	Junior
96 and over	Senior

Student Records Policy

Student educational records at BYU are generally accessible to eligible students according to the provisions of the Family Educational Rights and Privacy Act (FERPA). BYU has adopted

an Access to Student Records Policy that explains in detail student rights relating to their educational records. A copy of the policy is available at the Office of the Registrar, B-150 ASB, Provo, UT 84602-1114.

The following is notice of student rights to their educational records, a summary of the procedures for exercising those rights, and a description of student directory information that may be disclosed to the public without the student's consent as required by law:

Eligible students, admitted and enrolled at BYU, generally have the right to:

1. Inspect and review their educational records within a reasonable period of time upon submitting to the appropriate department managing their educational records a written request, with proof of identification, specifying the records to be inspected. The department will notify the student of the time and place the records may be inspected.
2. Petition BYU to amend or correct any part of the education record believed to be inaccurate, misleading, or in violation of their privacy rights. Students may submit a written request to the department holding the record, clearly identifying the part of the record they want changed, and specify why it is inaccurate or misleading. If the department decides not to amend the record as requested, the department will notify the student of the decision and advise them of their right to a hearing regarding the request for amendment. Additional information regarding the hearing procedures as outlined in university policy will be provided to the student when notified of the right to a hearing.
3. Consent to disclosure of personally identifiable information contained in the student's educational record, except as otherwise authorized by law. Examples of exceptions to consent of disclosure include:
   a. Access of educational records by BYU officials and agents having a legitimate educational interest in the records. This category generally includes any BYU official or agent who accesses student educational records for the purpose of performing a task or responsibility relating to his or her employment or professional responsibility at the university. These individuals may include faculty, administration, staff, and other university agents who manage student educational record information including, but not limited to, student education, discipline, or financial aid.
   b. Parents who establish the student's dependency for federal income tax purposes.
   c. Upon request, BYU will disclose educational records without consent to officials of another college or university to which the student seeks or intends to enroll.
4. File a complaint with the U.S. Department of Education concerning failures by BYU to comply with the requirements of FERPA. The name and address of the office that administers FERPA is Family Policy and Compliance Office, U.S. Department of Education, 400 Maryland Avenue SW, Washington, DC 20202-4605.

BYU has designated the following student information as directory information that it may disclose to the public without the consent of the student:

Name
Addresses and telephone numbers
Month, date, and place of birth
Names of parents or spouse
Major and minor fields of study
Participation in officially recognized activities and sports
Weight and height of members of athletic teams
Current class schedule
Pictures
Dates of attendance (current and past)
Number of months/semesters enrolled
Class standing (freshman, sophomore, etc.)
Total hours earned
Enrollment status (full-time, part-time, less than half-time)
Degrees and awards received
Previous educational institutions attended
Anticipated future enrollments
Course registrations prior to the beginning of a semester or term
Expected date of graduation
Deferred registration eligibility
Religious affiliation to a student's local church or congregation

Students have the right to restrict disclosure of the above directory information. To request restriction of disclosure, students must file a written request on or before the tenth day of a semester or the sixth day of a term. Forms for this request are available in the Office of the Registrar.

Transcript Record Holds

A hold will be placed on a student's record for failure to meet university obligations (fees outstanding, university standards violations, etc.). Until the obligation is fulfilled, no copy of the academic record or diploma or information about the record will be released, and graduation may be delayed or denied.

Special Notations on Transcript

Grade suspension and academic dismissal appear on a student's transcript when action has been taken by the Academic Support Office (see the Academic Support section of this catalog). University suspension or university dismissal may appear on a transcript as determined by the Honor Code Office. Generally these notices do not place a hold on a student's record but do give notice to another university of action taken against the student.

Credits

Students earn approved university credit in the following ways:

1. Complete work in regular courses offered at BYU.
2. Complete college-level courses through Independent Study, Evening Classes, or other Continuing Education programs.
3. Transfer credit for college-level courses completed at an accredited college or university and transferred to Brigham Young University. (See the Admissions section of this catalog for further explanation on transfer college credit.)
4. Pass a separate examination in undergraduate courses offered by the university. Once a student has graduated, they are not eligible for challenging any additional credit at BYU unless it is specific to the graduate program to which the student has been admitted. (See current BYU Graduate Catalog for information on how to challenge graduate courses.) The courses offered in religion, cooperative education, physical education activity classes, and other activity participative courses, such as dance, music, youth leadership, and ROTC, may not be challenged. The department reserves the right to determine whether or not a course may be challenged.

   Arrangements for challenging a course are made through the chair of the department offering the course. A $20 nonrefundable fee is charged before each separate examination.

   Students who successfully pass the examination must submit the form to the Records Office (B-150 ASB) within *one* year of the examination. Only students who are currently enrolled or have completed at least one course at BYU other than Independent Study courses are eligible for this option. Students who are suspended or dismissed from the university are not eligible for it.

5. Complete the Advanced Placement (AP) examinations. Students who score a composite grade of 5, 4, or 3 in any subject may receive up to 8 semester hours of college credit in that subject.
6. Complete the College Level Examination Program (CLEP). BYU will grant 3 semester hours of credit in each general exam in which a student scores 610 or higher. The university will also grant credit equivalent to the course that is taught at BYU for most of the CLEP subject examinations. For additional information, contact the Admissions Office (A-183 ASB).
7. Serve in the armed forces. Students who have been on active duty in the service for more than one year can receive 1 semester hour of physical activity, 0.5 semester hour of physical fitness, and 4 semester hours in military science. Additional credit may be granted for college-level training and experience in the service. To receive credit, bring the military service DD-214 form to the Academic Advisement Office (B-268 ASB).
8. Students who complete the International Baccalaureate (IB) examinations will receive college credit. An IB course at the subsidiary level will normally be given 3 hours of general credit. An IB course completed at the higher level may receive 6 hours of general credit and possibly fill a general education requirement.

Earning BYU Credit While on Suspension: Students who have been suspended from Brigham Young University are not eligible to enroll in courses through day school, evening school, or any of the Continuing Education programs offered by the university except those courses offered through Independent Study. Students should consult their advisement center to determine which Independent Study courses to take.

Repeating Classes

To have a previously completed course marked *repeated*, the new course must be equal or greater in credit hours. When a class has been repeated, the credit used in computing the grade point average is the grade and credit hours earned the last time the repeated class was taken. Students may repeat classes in the following ways:

1. Repeat Brigham Young University courses at Brigham Young University (except for R-suffix courses—see Abbreviations and Symbols in the Using This Catalog section).
2. Repeat at Brigham Young University courses initially taken at another university. (A statement of equivalency must be supplied by the appropriate BYU department chair.)
3. Repeat at another institution courses taken there and have the credit transferred to Brigham Young University.

Note: A course repeated at an institution other than the one at which it was taken originally and other than at BYU will not be counted as a repeat.

Discontinuance and Student Academic Record Appeals Committee

Discontinuance

Discontinuance Office (B-150 ASB, PO Box 21114, [801] 378-7705)

To withdraw from the university, day students who have registered for classes must officially discontinue. Before the first day of class, students may use the Touch-tone telephone discontinuance feature (see current class schedule for instructions). After classes begin students must discontinue through the Discontinuance Office.

Students who have registered for classes and paid tuition must officially discontinue to drop classes and initiate a tuition refund. (Refer to the Tuition and Fees section of this catalog for refund information.) Students who have registered for classes but *have not* paid tuition must also discontinue. If these students do not withdraw before the start of classes, they will be billed for tuition up to the official date of discontinuance.

The discontinuance process includes the following:

1. Before classes begin students may use the Touch-tone discontinuance feature (see current class schedule).
2. After classes begin consult with the Discontinuance Office representative and complete discontinuance forms available from the Discontinuance Office.
3. If discontinuing during or after the sixth week of the semester (or third week of the term or block), obtain signatures of individual class instructors (student is now responsible for grades earned in class). The instructor will indicate an official withdrawal (W) or an academically failing (WE) withdrawal grade.
4. Submit discontinuance forms and be signed out by a Discontinuance Office representative.
5. Upon discontinuance, the student's ID will be electronically voided.

All undergraduate students who discontinue during a major semester (fall or winter) or during the term for which they were accepted should contact the Admissions Office about future readmission eligibility. To withdraw after the twelfth week of the semester (or fifth week of a block or term), students must file a petition with the Registration/Records petition secretary (B-150 ASB) rather than contacting the Discontinuance Office.

Those students registered as Evening Classes students only must discontinue through the Office of Evening Classes (120 HCEB). Law School students must initiate their discontinuance through the office of the Law School dean (348-AJRCB).

Students who leave the university under emergency conditions and subsequently do not return still have the responsibility to discontinue before the discontinuance deadline. Official termination can be completed by contacting the Discontinuance Office at the earliest possible time.

Student Academic Record Appeals Committee

The Student Academic Record Appeals Committee has been established for students who encounter situations involving non-academic extenuating circumstances or emergencies potentially affecting their educational records that fall outside the realm of normal university policy and procedure. The petition process must be initiated within *one* year from the semester or term in question. It is the student's responsibility to obtain the necessary supporting information from the instructor, physician, employer, etc., to accompany the request. Petition forms may be obtained in the Records Office (B-150 ASB).

Graduation

Graduation Evaluation Office (B-238 ASB, PO Box 21222, [801] 378-3641)

Graduation Information

Adherence to University Standards

Graduation may be delayed or denied for students who violate the BYU Honor Code, whose ecclesiastical endorsement has been withdrawn, or who have unmet financial obligation with the university.

Application for Graduation

All who wish to graduate must officially apply for graduation. Students who are applying for the bachelor's degree should do so during their junior year. Application forms are available at the college advisement centers. Submit the completed application form and the graduation fee of $15 for a bachelor's degree to the Cashiers' Office (D-155 ASB, PO 21128) no later than September 25, 1998, for December graduation; November 15, 1998, for April graduation; and April 15, 1999, for August graduation.

Students who apply after the deadline dates will automatically be considered for the next graduation. The Graduation Evaluation Office (B-238 ASB) will notify students in writing of the general education and university requirements remaining. The application fee is a one-time fee. Should a student not graduate on the date shown on the application, the evaluation will be held for future graduation.

Attendance at Commencement

All candidates for graduation are encouraged to attend the commencement and convocation exercises. Diplomas will be mailed to students after all grades are submitted and all graduation requirements are certified complete. Commencement exercises are held in April and August.

Deadlines for Transfer, Correspondence, and Incomplete Credit

All incomplete grades must be removed from the student's record, special examinations and general education requirements must be passed and recorded, and all transfer and correspondence (Independent Study) credit must be on file in the Records Office at least four weeks before commencement.

Earning Lower Degree after Receiving Higher Degree

A person who has earned a higher degree is ineligible to earn a lesser degree at BYU unless exception has been granted by the Student Academic Record Appeals Committee (B-150 ASB).

It is not permissible to receive both an associate degree and a bachelor's degree at the same commencement.

Independent Study Credit

A maximum of 36 semester hours of Independent Study credit may be applied toward the 128-semester-hour requirement for a baccalaureate degree.

Scholastic Recognition

University Honors

University Honors will be awarded to any graduating senior who

1. Completes the required course work:
   - Two honors sections of religion courses
   - Both semesters (201 and 202) of honors Civilization courses
   - HonP 200 or Phil 105H
   - Three honors elective courses (3 credit hours each)
   - Two semesters of foreign language study
   - One general education Advanced Languages in Mathematics course
2. Completes the Great Works requirement.
3. Submits a portfolio.
4. Completes an honors thesis/capstone project.
5. Has at least a 3.5 GPA.

More detailed explanations of the University Honors Program are available in 102-A MSRB and in the University Honors Education section of this catalog.

Latin Scholastic Distinctions

Latin Scholastic Distinctions at graduation are determined by GPA for the top 10 percent of the graduating seniors based on cumulative and BYU grade point averages.

Summa Cum Laude is awarded on the basis of grade point average to the top 1.0 percent of the baccalaureate candidates who have earned a minimum 45 semester hours of credit at BYU.

Magna Cum Laude is awarded on the basis of grade point average to the top 1.1 to 5.0 percent of the baccalaureate candidates who have earned a minimum 45 semester hours of credit at BYU.

Cum Laude is awarded on the basis of grade point average to the top 5.1 to 10.0 percent of the baccalaureate candidates who have earned a minimum 45 semester hours of credit at BYU.

Graduation Requirements

Staying Abreast of Changes

University graduation requirements (general education, religion, health, physical fitness, physical activity, and major) change with curriculum, program, and faculty changes. The university informs students of such modifications through its published curriculum materials (this catalog and the class schedules). Students who leave the university for an extended period of time should stay abreast of such changes through these documents.

Baccalaureate Degree Requirements

The baccalaureate degree at BYU is awarded for the equivalent of four years of dedicated university study. It marks not just achievement, but important changes in outlook that come as the result of an extended university experience. At BYU this includes not just the discipline of a major, but the foundation of religious education and the enlarged perspective of general education. A student may have more than one major, but there is only one baccalaureate degree.

General Education Requirements for the Baccalaureate Degree

See the General Education section of this catalog for complete information.

Languages of Learning	Number of Courses	Usual Credit Hours
Precollege Mathematics	0–1	0–3
First-Year Writing	1	3
Advanced Writing	1–4	3–8
Advanced Languages (Foreign Language, Mathematics, or Music)	1–4	3–20
Liberal Arts Core		
Biological Science	1–2	3–6
Physical Science	1–2	3–7
American Heritage	1–2	3–6
Wellness	1–3	1.5–2
Civilization	2	6
Arts and Sciences Electives		
Arts and Letters elective	1	3
Natural Sciences elective	1	3–4
Social and Behavioral Sciences elective	1	3

(See the GE course list in the current class schedule for all authorized GE courses.)

Total	12–24	34.5–71*

*Actual credit hours will depend on precollege preparation and course choices.

Religion Requirement for the Baccalaureate Degree

14 hours of BYU religion classes.

Religious Education Requirements: Religion requirements are listed in the Religious Education section of this catalog.

Upper-Division Requirement

A minimum of 40 semester hours of upper-division credit (classes numbered 300 to 599) is required for a bachelor's degree.

Transfer credit from junior colleges or other lower-division credit (freshman or sophomore level) from other colleges is not applicable for this graduation requirement.

A few lower-division courses at specified colleges have been accepted by major departments to substitute for upper-division BYU courses, but these will not be counted toward the upper-division requirement of 40 semester hours.

Residency Requirement

At least 30 semester hours of credit taken in residence at BYU are required for a bachelor's degree. A maximum of 10 semester hours earned at BYU Continuing Education centers or at Church institutes of religion may be applied toward this 30-hour requirement. Students must register and be on campus during two semesters—not necessarily consecutive—to satisfy the residency requirement.

Total Credit-Hour Requirement

A candidate for a bachelor's degree must complete a minimum of 128 semester hours of earned credit.

D Grade Credit

No more than 18 semester hours of D grade credit may be applied toward baccalaureate degree requirements. Excess D grade credit will be deducted from total hours completed.

Grade Point Average Requirement

To graduate from BYU students must earn a minimum 2.0 BYU grade point average and a minimum 2.0 cumulative grade point average. Students must also meet minimum grade point average requirements in their major.

Major Requirements

Students must complete at least 20 semester hours in their major department, 10 of these on the BYU campus. Students must also satisfy any additional departmental requirements.

Double Major

A class used in a student's primary major cannot also be used in a second major or a minor without the prior written approval of both the department chairs and the dean(s) of the college(s) involved. Students should see their college advisement center for details.

Note: Any hold, warning, or probation by the Honor Code Office must be properly cleared well before graduation.

Policy on "Old" Graduation Requirements and Credit

Brigham Young University is committed to providing its students with an excellent university education consisting of a broad general education that includes religious education and a strong major education. Programs of the university change and develop in the continuing effort to make learning and experience as valuable as possible. Development, growth, and improvement are expected parts both of our lives and our institutions. It is because of the commitment to a superb education that the university's programs develop and improve and that students are expected to meet the current standards of the university when they graduate, even though they may have begun their studies long ago under quite different expectations.

Students who complete a baccalaureate degree within eight academic years of enrollment at BYU qualify for graduation by meeting those religion, university, and general education requirements in effect when they initially enrolled, even though there may have been changes in general education and religion requirements since that time.

In addition, students who complete baccalaureate degrees within eight academic years of enrollment at BYU qualify for graduation by meeting those major education requirements in effect when they officially declared the major with which they graduated even though such declaration was made at some point following their original enrollment. (A student officially declares a major one of two ways: [1] by indicating the choice of major on part A of the university's Admission, Scholarship, and Housing Application or [2] by submitting a Change of Major Form to a college advisement center at a subsequent time.)

Students who have not graduated within eight years of their initial enrollment at BYU will be required to meet with the dean

and department chair in the area in which they are majoring to determine graduation requirements and the use of credit previously earned. Where general education or major requirements have changed or where credit previously earned was in an area of substantial change, students may be required to do additional work to meet graduation requirements.

This means that credit earned more than eight years before admission or readmission (including transfer credit) will be accepted to meet general education or major graduation requirements at the discretion of the university.

Advisement

An important corollary of the university's commitment to provide its students with an excellent university education is its commitment to help students find their way through their programs effectively and efficiently. Students whose educational experience has reached over many years and who find that changes in programs will require additional work and preparation should consult with department advisors for help in planning their schedules in the best and most encouraging way possible.

The university's requirement that a student graduate under current or very recent standards is meant to benefit the student and is in no way established to deter a determined person from returning to the university after years away. Good advisement can be of great help in working out a program of study at the university, taking into account individual needs, concerns, and experience.

Students who return to the university after an extended absence should contact the Graduation Evaluation Office (B-238 ASB, [801] 378-3641) and confer with their college advisement center counselors and department advisors immediately upon returning to the university, both for advice and help concerning graduation requirements and for evaluation of their credit. In many instances it will prove possible to negotiate a schedule of classes that will allow the student to move toward a degree without lost effort.

Religious Education

370 JSB, PO Box 25693, (801) 378-2735

Dean: Robert L. Millet, Professor, Ancient Scripture
Associate Dean: Paul Y. Hoskisson, Associate Professor, Ancient Scripture
Associate Dean: Brent L. Top, Associate Professor, Church History and Doctrine

The following departments are in Religious Education:

Ancient Scripture
Church History and Doctrine

Religion courses are provided so that students may progress in their religious understanding and convictions simultaneously with their educational progress in secular fields. The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints has always maintained that education is not complete without proper integration of secular and religious knowledge and values.

Religious Education administers all religion courses sponsored by the university. Courses are available in ancient and modern scripture, Church history and doctrine, and related subjects. Undergraduate majors are not offered in religion; however, some graduate offerings in the 500s and 600s are available for use as minors or supporting courses in some of the graduate degree programs of other departments at BYU.

Religion Requirements

All students at BYU should include regular gospel study as a continuous part of their university experience. Full-time undergraduate students should take one religion class at BYU each semester of enrollment until a minimum of 14 semester hours in religion has been earned toward a bachelor's degree. All students who will graduate from BYU must complete 4 hours of credit in Book of Mormon. This should be done during the first year here. Students may complete this requirement by taking RelA 121 and 122. *Returned missionaries must enroll in sections designated for returned missionaries.*

No more than 4 hours of religion credit per term, quarter, or semester, whether taken at BYU or elsewhere, may be counted toward the religion requirement. (Spring and summer terms together equal a semester.) Semester Abroad programs may require exceptions.

Part-time students and students enrolled for a term or a block must complete 2 credit hours of religion for every 16 hours of BYU registration.

Classes identified with numbers from 100 to 499 may be used to meet the religion requirement. Classes numbered in the 500s and 600s do not apply toward undergraduate religion credit.

Students Entering BYU Before Fall Semester 1985

Complete the requirements as explained above.

Students Entering BYU Fall Semester 1985 and Afterward

In addition to Book of Mormon, all students enrolled after summer term 1985 must complete one New Testament class and one Doctrine and Covenants class. The New Testament requirement may be filled by taking any one of the following: RelA 111, 200, 211, 212, 310, 311. The Doctrine and Covenants requirement may be filled by taking RelC 324 or 325.

Students who are not LDS are strongly encouraged to enroll in RelC 100, Introduction to Mormonism, during their first semester in residence. This course is designed to be informational, to introduce students to the culture, scriptures, and distinctive doctrines of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, and to prepare them for subsequent religion classes. RelC 100 may be used to fill the core requirement of either New Testament or Doctrine and Covenants.

Transfer Students

Transfer students must fulfill the BYU graduation requirement in religion according to the following four guidelines. Requirements 1 through 3 can be completed at an LDS institute of religion or one of the other Church Educational System schools, as well as at BYU. Requirement 4 can be satisfied only at BYU.

1. All students must complete the entire Book of Mormon sequence, RelA 121 and 122.
2. Students transferring with fewer than 64 semester hours (96 quarter hours) of college credit must complete one course in the Doctrine and Covenants and one course in the New Testament.
3. Students transferring with 64 or more semester hours but fewer than 96 semester hours (144 quarter hours) must complete one course in the Doctrine and Covenants.
4. *All students must complete a minimum number of religion credits at BYU* according to the following schedule, regardless of the number of religion hours completed elsewhere:

Total Transfer Credits	BYU Religion Hours Required	
0–15.9	14	Book of Mormon (121 and 122), one Doctrine and Covenants class, and one New Testament class required.
16–31.9	12	
32–47.9	10	
48–63.9	8	
64–79.9	6	Book of Mormon (121 and 122) and one Doctrine and Covenants class required.
80–95.9	4	
96 or more	2	Unless more hours needed to fill Book of Mormon requirement.

Note: The transfer credits are shown in semester hours. To convert quarter hours to semester hours, multiply the quarter hours by two and divide by three (i.e., 12 quarter hours x 2 = 24 + 3 = 8 semester hours).

Courses for Ancient Scripture and Church History and Doctrine

See Religious Education in the Academic Departments, Degrees, and Courses section of this catalog.

Students Studying Off Campus

BYU students who study off campus to fulfill degree requirements are required to register for a religion course during the semester. This can be fulfilled through Independent Study or at a BYU Continuing Education center.

Religion Credit from Non-LDS Colleges and Universities

Religion credit from non-LDS universities and colleges will not satisfy the religion requirement at BYU. The transfer credit will, however, apply as elective credit toward the total hours required for graduation.

Religion Credit Completed at Centers for Continuing Education

Students must complete 2 credit hours of religion for every 16 hours of registration at BYU Continuing Education centers.

Preparation for Church Educational System Employment

To be considered for employment as a professional seminary teacher, a student must obtain a bachelor's degree in a major of his or her choice and complete the seminary teacher training classes (RelC 370, 471). Following a student teaching experience in a local seminary, the most effective teachers are recommended for full-time assignments. Complete information is available through the Office of Seminaries and Institutes (207 JSB, [801] 378-2031).

Graduate Programs

See the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Religious Studies Center

(270 JSB, PO Box 25693)

The dean of Religious Education is also the general director of the Religious Studies Center, which promotes research in such areas as Ancient Studies, Bible, Book of Mormon, Church History, Doctrine and Covenants, Pearl of Great Price, Special Projects, and World Religions.

The center is a supporting and coordinating agency for religion-oriented research throughout the university and the Church, concentrating on research, writing, and other scholarly activities.

Richard L. Evans Chair of Religious Understanding

The Richard L. Evans Chair of Religious Understanding promotes understanding among people of different faiths. Its purpose is to articulate to a broad audience the religious values to which Elder Evans dedicated his life and to promote an enlightening exchange among Latter-day Saints, members of other faiths, and other people of good will.

General Education

302 MSRB, PO Box 22600, (801) 378-3038

Acting Dean: James E. Faulconer, Professor, Philosophy
Associate Dean: Steven Benzley, Professor, Civil and Environmental Engineering
Associate Dean: Susan Easton Black, Professor, Church History and Doctrine
Associate Dean: Douglas F. Tobler, Professor, History
Assistant Dean: Neal W. Kramer

Undergraduate Education at BYU

There are three components to an undergraduate education at Brigham Young University: religious education, major education, and general education. Religion courses are provided at BYU so that students may progress in their religious understanding and convictions simultaneously with their educational progress in secular fields. Education in the major provides students with depth in a particular academic discipline. It introduces them to the type of thinking, language, and skills that prepare them for a career or further study in postgraduate or professional programs. General education is intended to provide students with intellectual breadth. General education covers the range of human accomplishments: the development of language and civilization; the arts; and the social, behavioral, physical, and biological sciences. These three aspects of the baccalaureate degree—religious education, major education, and general education—are described briefly below.

Religious Education

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints believes secular understanding and skill are important attainments in life and will better serve the individual when accompanied by religious convictions, attitudes, and standards of behavior. Please refer to the Religious Education section of this catalog for more detail.

Major Education

BYU offers nearly 150 undergraduate major programs. Most of these programs are centered in the more than 50 academic departments, but several interdisciplinary programs are also available. The complete list of these degrees is given in the Alphabetical List of Undergraduate Majors at Brigham Young University section of this catalog. Of the 128 credit hours required as a minimum for the baccalaureate degree, the major program typically comprises between 40 and 60 credit hours, with some exceeding 60 credit hours. Requirements for major programs are detailed under specific departments in this catalog. Students need not feel undue pressure to declare a major immediately upon entering the university, and they may wish to enroll in general education courses that can introduce them to possible areas for major study. However, some majors, including those in the natural sciences, engineering, music, and visual arts, are tightly structured. Efficient graduation from these programs requires students to undertake degree requirements during the first semester of their freshman year. Students who are considering these programs are encouraged to begin them as soon as possible. The academic departments and college advisement centers can provide advice about particular degree requirements and selection of a major.

General Education

The general education (GE) program at Brigham Young University complements the other two areas of a university education. Through its perspective, we gain vantage points from which to view the development of our own culture and how it relates to others.

GE courses teach one to think critically, and they pose questions that foster the development of moral judgment and aesthetic and cultural sensitivities. At Brigham Young University these courses are taught in the context of the restored gospel and the implications that the gospel of Jesus Christ holds for knowledge, truth, and society.

The general education program was revised in 1995. Students who entered the university prior to fall 1995 have the option to continue with their original GE program or to switch to the newer program. Students enrolled prior to fall 1995 should visit their college advisement center to discuss the optimal program, given their current status.

Modifications to the 1988 GE program are:

- A music option was added to satisfy the Advanced Languages requirement.
- A combination of courses may satisfy some of the core requirements.
- The number of required Arts and Letters elective courses was reduced from four to three.
- The Physical Education and Health university requirement has been changed to the Wellness requirement and is now included as part of general education.

Students who entered BYU fall 1995 or thereafter are automatically on the GE program described on the following pages.

Description of the GE Program

The GE Program is separated into three categories called Languages of Learning, the Liberal Arts Core, and Arts and Sciences Electives.

The objectives for each of the three areas are explained below. Brief statements of the ways to satisfy GE requirements are provided in the accompanying table. Detailed information concerning the mechanisms available to complete each requirement is given in the General Education Courses section of the current class schedule.

Languages of Learning

In our modern, complex society, the ability to communicate effectively is deemed a critical skill. Under the Languages of Learning category are grouped the areas of writing, mathematics, foreign languages, and music, each of which represent an important way to convey information and understanding. Because writing at the college level is considered essential to success at the university, students are asked to complete the First-Year Writing course. Later, once

General Education Program

Note: This list is subject to change each semester. Some classes listed here have approval on a trial basis and may be removed from the list at a later date. Please consult a current class schedule each semester/term to ensure that the class you take is still approved for GE. Some requirements can also be satisfied via AP or IB credit. Check with the Academic Advisement Office, B-238 ASB, telephone (801) 378-3641, for the current mapping of AP/IB exams to GE requirements.

Requirement	Options		Total Hours Req.
LANGUAGES OF LEARNING			
Precollege Math	ACT math subscore of 22 or above; SAT math subscore of 500 or above; or Math 97, 110, 111, 112, 112H, 113, 113H, or 119.		0–3
First-Year Writing	Engl 115, HonP 200, Phil 105, or Phil 105H.		3
Advanced Writing	Prerequisite is First-Year Writing or its equivalent. See the list of approved courses in the current class schedule. Some majors require a specific course. Recommended to be taken during junior year.		3
Advanced Languages Three options: Advanced Math, Foreign Language, or Advanced Music	Requirement to be satisfied either in mathematics, in one of three music tracks, or in a foreign language. See the current class schedule for approved math, music, and foreign language classes.		3–16
***LIBERAL ARTS CORE** (Check with your college advisement center to know which courses you should take.)			
Biology	Option A	Option B	3–6
	One course: Biol 100; 130; Mcbio 130; HonP 260; or Zool 101 *and* 102	One course each from two of the three groups: Group 1: Biol 150, Botny 125 Group 2: Biol 276, Zool 205, 261, 276 Group 3: Mcbio 221	
Physical Science	PhyS 100; or PhyS 110A *and* 110B; or HonP 259	One course each from two of the three different departments: Chem 100, 101, 105, 111, 111H, 152 Phscs 100, 105, 121, 122, 127, 127H Geol 101, 101H, 103, 111, 330	3–7
American Heritage	One course: AHtg 100, 100H, or HonP 240	One of the following two-course combinations: Hist 120 and PlSc 110; or Hist 120 and Econ 110; or PlSc 110 and Econ 110; or Hist 121 and PlSc 110	3–6
Wellness	HEPE 129 or three PE or dance activity courses (see detailed information in the current class schedule)		1.5–2
Civilization	One 201 *and* one 202 course from the approved list in the current class schedule		6
***ARTS AND SCIENCES ELECTIVES**			
Natural Sciences	Choose from the approved list.**		3
Social and Behavioral Sciences	Choose from the approved list.**		3
Arts and Letters	Choose from the approved list.**		3
		Subtotal:	**34.5–61.5**

*Classes in the Liberal Arts Core under Option B cannot be used to satisfy both the Liberal Arts Core and the Natural Sciences or Social and Behavioral Sciences electives; one course or combination of courses cannot fulfill more than one requirement.

* *It is strongly recommended that the courses be taken outside the major department; please consult with your college advisement center. See the current class schedule for the approved list.

students have identified an area for major study, they are provided with an opportunity to develop writing skills in that discipline. To function in a technological society, a basic knowledge of mathematics as a means of communication and problem solving is essential. All students, upon admission, are asked to certify a basic level of numeracy, either with an appropriately high score on the Mathematics section of the ACT or SAT exams or by completion of a BYU course. We then ask that students exhibit a mastery of either mathematics, music, or a foreign language at an advanced level. At this level students achieve an exposure to cultures and to the ways in which practitioners of the language structure their knowledge.

Liberal Arts Core

A traditional university education includes introductions to the core or fundamental areas of knowledge. These typically cover the biological and physical sciences and aspects of cultures and civilizations. Here at BYU we also include as part of our core American Heritage, an introduction to the political and economic foundations of the American democratic system, and Wellness, a requirement to assist in developing one's physical and mental well-being.

For every requirement in the core, with the exception of Civilization, there are two pathways to complete the requirement—a one-course option and a multiple-course (two or three) option. The multiple-course options are structured to cover much of the same material that is included in the one-course options but in greater depth.

The options for different core requirements are independent of each other. That is, one may choose the multiple-course option to satisfy the Biological Science core requirement but choose the one-course option for the Physical Science, American Heritage, and Wellness requirements. In general, students will find it most efficient to take the one-course options for a given requirement. However, students in some majors will find that a particular core requirement can be satisfied using the multiple-course pathway with courses they are already taking for their major. Students with career or personal interests outside their major may find that the multiple-course options better serve their needs. For example, the philosophy or language major who hopes to become a physician may satisfy the Physical and/or Biological Science core requirement by virtue of the science courses required for admission to medical school.

Both the Languages of Learning and the Liberal Arts Core provide for multiple ways to satisfy individual requirements. The number of courses and credit hours needed to satisfy a requirement will vary with the particular option chosen and/or the student's previous preparation.

Arts and Sciences Electives

The Arts and Sciences Electives are divided into three categories: Arts and Letters, Natural Sciences, and Social and Behavioral Sciences. These three divisions encompass the spectrum of human endeavors. The objective of elective courses certified to satisfy this requirement is to introduce students in a little more focused way than the core courses to specific disciplines or areas of study. Students must take **one** course from each of the three areas. Unless the major program dictates a specific course, students are free to select from a large list of approved courses. These courses are certified for approval by a faculty council, and students are encouraged to check a current class schedule for an up-to-date list of approved courses.

Some courses are approved as both Arts and Sciences electives and as one of the multiple-course option to the Liberal Arts Core requirements. The same course cannot be used for both the elective requirement and to partially complete the core requirement.

Because a significant objective of general education is to provide breadth to the student's education, we recommend that elective courses be taken outside the major. However, once a course certified to satisfy an elective is completed, the GE requirement will be considered satisfied. Changes in majors will not affect the student's progress toward completion of the GE program. Nevertheless, the new major may impose additional requirements, such as a particular Advanced Writing course.

Where variable numbers of courses or credit hours are indicated, the effort required to complete the requirement depends upon the student's level of preparation. The complete list of courses currently certified to satisfy a particular requirement and additional details of how to complete the requirements are given in the General Education Courses section of the current class schedule.

GE and the Honors Program

The BYU Honors Program offers a number of courses that satisfy both GE and honors requirements. These courses provide a deeper, more intense exposure to the subject matter for the student who is interested in a challenging experience. Additional information concerning these courses may be obtained from 102A MSRB, telephone (801) 378-5976, or by consulting the University Honors Program Course Guide.

Selection and Timing of GE Classes

To gain approval to meet a GE requirement, a course is subjected to a rigorous evaluation. Such approval is not granted lightly, and students should ensure that the courses they select are, in fact, approved for GE credit. This information is updated each semester and term and is published in the current class schedule.

Although the time to complete GE requirements varies according to the major, students should complete the First-Year Writing and Precollege Mathematics requirements during the freshman year. Students planning to satisfy the Biological Science, Physical Science, and American Heritage core requirements with the one-course options (e.g., Biol 100, PhyS 100, and AHtg 100) should also complete these during the freshman year. Civilization courses are designed as sophomore-level courses, although some programs include them during the freshman year. Advice as to when to complete the other GE requirements can be obtained at college advisement centers or department offices.

Ways to Complete GE Requirements Other Than by Course Work

In addition to completing approved courses, there are several mechanisms by which students may satisfy the components of the GE program: transferring acceptable credit from other academic institutions; receiving credit from Advanced Placement (AP) and International Baccalaureate (IB) examinations or from the College Level Examination Program (CLEP); or passing special examinations at the university.

Transfer Credit

The application of transfer credit to GE requirements is handled by the Transfer Evaluation Office (B-238 ASB). Consortium agreements have been reached with several junior and community colleges to facilitate the transfer process for students who have completed certain associate degrees. The Transfer Evaluation Office can be contacted for up-to-date information regarding the status of those agreements with a particular junior or community college.

Advanced Placement and International Baccalaureate Credit

The results of some Advanced Placement (AP) and International Baccalaureate (IB) exams may be used to waive certain GE requirements and to obtain general university credit. AP or IB credit posted to a transfer institution will be evaluated upon BYU's standards and not those of the transfer institution. The Academic Advisement Office (B-238 ASB, [801] 378-3641) can be contacted for details regarding credit hours and exemption from GE requirements for both AP and IB exams.

College Level Examination Program

BYU will grant credit for the College Level Examination Program (CLEP). For each general examination on which a student scores 610 or higher, the university will grant 3 hours of credit. Students can contact the Admissions Office (A-153 ASB, [801] 378-2507) for additional information.

Exemption and Challenge Examinations

Some requirements can be accomplished by successful completion of an examination. Two types of examinations are available, the exemption exam and the challenge exam. *A student may only take an exemption or challenge exam once during each exam period.* Students do not have to be enrolled in a course to take an exemption or challenge exam. However, some of the exams are given early enough each semester/term so that students who are enrolled and pass the exam may drop the course. Students not enrolled in a course have an opportunity to take the challenge or exemption exams offered at the Testing Center during the middle of fall and winter semesters. Please consult the following table for specific exam dates.

Exemption Exams: No Credit or Grade

(Offered for select general education courses only)

Exemption exams do not earn academic credit or grades. Exemption exams are given in the Testing Center on the dates shown on the table that follows. A fee payable at the Testing Center is required for the exams. A passing score on an exemption exam is reflected on the Advisement-by-Computer (ABC) report as fulfilling the requirement. However, no academic credit will be posted on the transcript of grades. The procedure to take an exam and request exemption from a course follows.

Challenge Exams: Graded Credit

Some challenge exams for credit are offered in the Testing Center, and others are arranged through the department offering the course. A fee payable at the Testing Center is charged for exams offered in the Testing Center. A fee payable at the Cashiers' Office in D-155 ASB is required for exams that are offered through individual departments. **Check with the department to see if the exam is offered in the department or in the Testing Center.** To earn academic credit and a letter grade for the course, the student must submit a Special Examination Form, provided by the Testing Center or the department, to the Records Office, B-150 ASB. No additional fees are charged to post credits to the transcript. The student's transcript and grade point average reflect the grade earned on the exam. The procedure to take exams and request academic credit follows.

Procedure for Exemption and Challenge Exams Given at the Testing Center

A. Procedure for Exemption Exams

1. Contact the appropriate academic department for exam procedure and content before going to the Testing Center.
2. Go to the Testing Center (265 HGB) on one of the examination dates shown on the following table.
3. Pay the required fee at the Testing Center.
4. If you are enrolled in the course when you pass its exemption exam, you **must** also complete an Add/Drop Card and drop the course. Students who drop the class after the *add deadline* (ten class days after a semester starts or six class days after a term starts) will receive a W on their transcript for dropping the course, and their ABC Report will reflect fulfillment of the GE requirement. If the exempted course is not *officially* dropped before the drop deadline, the grade given by the instructor based on class performance will appear on the transcript of grades.

Note: If you pass an exemption exam at the Testing Center, your ABC Report will be updated automatically at the end of the semester. Please retain your score report for your records.

B. Procedure for Challenge Exams Given at the Testing Center.

1. Contact the appropriate academic department for exam procedure and content before going to the Testing Center.
2. Go to the Testing Center (265 HGB) on one of the examination dates shown on the following table.
3. Pay the required fee at the Testing Center.
4. After the exam is graded, if you choose to receive graded credit, obtain a Special Examination Form at the Testing Center and have it validated there. To accept the grade and receive credit for the course, turn in the Special Examination Form to the Records Office, B-150 ASB, within one year from the date the exam is taken. Graded credit will be added to your official university transcript, and the ABC Report will show any GE requirement as fulfilled. (Students taking the Physical Science exam may take the grade or an exemption if their score is 75 percent or above. If their score is between 60 and 74 percent, then they may receive graded credit.)
5. If you are enrolled in the course when you pass its challenge exam, you **must** also complete an Add/Drop Card and drop the course. Students who drop the class after the *add deadline* (ten class days after a semester starts or six class days after a term starts) will receive a W on their transcript for dropping the course, and their ABC Report will reflect fulfillment of any GE requirement. If the course is not *officially* dropped before the drop deadline, the grade given by the instructor based on class performance will appear on the transcript of grades.

Procedure for Challenge Examinations *Not* Given at the Testing Center

A. Whether or not you are enrolled in the course you are challenging:
   1. Complete the Special Examination Form available from the department.
   2. Arrange with the department to take the exam.
   3. Pay the required $20 testing fee at the Cashiers' Office, D-155 ASB, and have the form validated there ($20 fee per course except for the language exams).
   4. Present the validated form to the department examiner.
   5. Have the grade and credit recorded on the form by the examiner and obtain the necessary departmental signatures.
   6. Present the completed form to the Records Office, B-150 ASB, within one year from the date the exam is taken.

B. If you are enrolled in the course when you pass its challenge exam, you **must** also complete an Add/Drop Card and drop the course. Students who drop the class after the *add deadline* (ten class days after a semester starts or six class days after a term starts) will receive a W on their transcript for dropping the course, and their ABC Report will reflect fulfillment of any GE requirement. If the course is not *officially* dropped before

the drop deadline, the grade given by the instructor based on class performance will appear on the transcript of grades.

How Do You Get Help with Specific Questions Concerning General Education?

The essential information concerning general education is found in the this catalog. Sources of additional information include the following:

1. **College Advisement Centers**
   The recommended source of information and advice about general education requirements is your college advisement center. The ten college advisement centers, together with the Open Major Advisement Center, 2500 ELWC, provide assistance with registration, graduation requirements, policies and procedures, fields of study, changes of major, and many other aspects of academic life. Computer terminals are available in the advisement centers and other locations on campus to provide you with an up-to-date report of your academic status. In addition, Advisement-by-Computer (ABC) information will be available each semester. These list the GE courses you have completed and also the GE requirements that remain to be completed.
2. **Dean of General Education and Honors**
   Questions dealing with general education are handled in 350 MSRB, telephone (801) 378-3038.

Exemption and Challenge Examinations Given in the Testing Center

The Testing Center, 265 HGB, offers special examinations for some GE classes. Please contact the appropriate academic department **before** going to the Testing Center for specific exam information.

Course	Exemption Exam (No Credit or Grade)	Challenge Exam (Graded Credit)	Fee (Pay at Testing Center)	Department to Contact
Precollege Math (Math 97)	X (score of 64% and above)		$10	Math Lab 60 KMB
First-Year Writing (Engl 115)		X	$20	English Composition 3110 JKHB
Biological Sciences (Biol 100)		X	$20	Biol 100 Office 2276 SFLC
Physical Science (PhyS 100)	X (score of 75% and above)	X (score of 60% to 74%)	$10	PhyS 100 Office 396 CB
American Heritage (AHtg 100)		X	$20	AHtg Office 2303 SFLC

For information regarding all other special examinations, please contact the department that offers the course or exam. For information regarding other GE courses that can be challenged, please contact the General Education Office, 350 MSRB, telephone (801) 378-3036.

University Honors Education

102-A MSRB, PO Box 22600, (801) 378-5497

Acting Dean: James E. Faulconer, Professor, Philosophy
Associate Dean: Steven Benzley, Professor, Civil and Environmental Engineering
Associate Dean: Susan Easton Black, Professor, Church History and Doctrine
Associate Dean: Douglas F. Tobler, Professor, History
Assistant Dean: Neal W. Kramer

University Honors at Graduation

"University Honors" is a distinction awarded to all graduates of BYU who have met the honors requirements in general education as described below. This prestigious designation is recorded on the university diploma, on the official transcript of grades, and in the graduation program. All honors classes taken and the honors thesis title also appear on the transcript.

Participation in Honors

Honors education provides an unusually rich and challenging experience for capable and motivated undergraduate students. Honors education is not merely a more intensive general education or a more strenuous program in a major. Rather, it attempts to link the broad university perspective with the specific concentration associated with a major. Students who pursue honors education at Brigham Young University will be offered the challenge of honors courses that form a part of their general education, as well as an intensive experience in their major.

To graduate from BYU students must meet not only the requirements of a major department but also the requirements of general education and religion. Most students complete the nonmajor requirements through courses in the general university curriculum. Capable and motivated students are invited to satisfy general education and religion requirements through honors. Although it is hoped that students will choose to complete all of the requirements for the University Honors designation, those who do not intend to do so are still invited to participate in the honors curriculum to whatever extent they choose.

Honors education is open to all capable and motivated students and only requires a formal commitment of intent to (1) graduate with University Honors, (2) register for at least one honors course each semester of the first two years in the program, (3) maintain a 3.5 GPA, and (4) receive advisement from the Honors Advisement Center each year. Commitment forms may be obtained in 102A MSRB.

Indicators of "capable" include a composite ACT score of 28 or above, a high school GPA of 3.8 or above, or a university GPA of 3.5 or above. Defining "motivated" is more difficult. It would be a mistake to recommend honors courses only to those students with high scores, either GPA or ACT, since it is difficult to gauge a student's ability from scores alone. Such scores may not say much about such important inner qualities as determination, discipline, and initiative or about recent achievements that may contrast with earlier performance. All students are invited to consider honors as a way to achieve the kind of academic experiences they seek. Students may register for honors courses at any time during their undergraduate years without necessarily intending to complete all the honors graduation requirements.

Honors and Grades

Anyone may register for honors classes, but they are taught at the level of the superior student. Statistics indicate that capable and diligent students do very well in honors classes. In fact, on the average, they receive slightly higher grades in their honors classes than in their other classes in any given semester. Honors courses are not graded on a curve. Because the classes are more demanding and fulfilling, most students are motivated to perform well.

The Advantages of Honors

Faculty

The most important advantage of enrolling in honors is the opportunity to participate in demanding, high-quality courses taught by some of the university's best professors. In addition, the BYU Honors Program provides a stimulating learning environment outside formal course settings.

Curriculum

Honors offers a curriculum core consisting of an intensive writing course plus two semesters studying Civilization. Beyond this core, honors colloquia, seminars, and departmental honors courses provide a variety of experiences for honors students in the historical development of ideas, cultures, arts, letters, and the sciences; these offerings are discussed more fully below.

Honors Colloquia. Each semester, the BYU Honors Program sponsors several honors colloquia that bring together teams of the university's most respected professors from diverse disciplines to teach a variety of broadly based subjects. The colloquia are interdisciplinary in nature and taught by at least two or three professors from different fields. These courses allow a unique flexibility in methods and content and stress the complementary nature of various disciplines in dealing with our cultural heritage and modern problems. Recent colloquia include "The Daedalus Project," "Jerusalem: Past, Present, and Future," and "Memoir and Imagination."

The particular subjects and faculty differ across colloquia. Some provide an integrated approach. Others are intended primarily for students majoring in particular disciplines. All of

the colloquia, however, are centered on intensive reading, discussion in large and small groups, and careful writing. Each colloquium involves a group of approximately fifty students and two or three faculty and offers an educational experience unlike that in any other class offered at the university.

Honors Seminars. A number of honors seminars also are offered each semester. They range across subjects as diverse as "Wilderness Writing," "Postmodern Victorian Poets," "Living with Cancer," "History and Modern Perspectives in Chemistry," and "Bioethics." The seminars are centered within a discipline, but they are intended to be accessible to students who are not majors in that discipline. Like the colloquia, the seminars require critical reading, thinking, writing, and discussion. But unlike the colloquia, the seminars are more specialized, are directed by a single professor, and are usually limited in enrollment to twenty students.

Departmental Honors Sections. Departments within the university offer courses intended for honors students that are taught by their strongest faculty. Departmental honors sections of general education courses are usually smaller than regular courses and provide greater occasion for classroom discussion and additional reading and writing under the supervision of the professor.

Honors Center and Special Honors Activities

Students in honors benefit most directly from their association with fellow honors students and with honors faculty. Honors students have a center in the Karl G. Maeser Memorial Building, which provides them with a quiet study hall, a commons room for informal meetings and discussion, an advisement center staffed by honors student aides, and classrooms. An honors computer lab is available during specified hours in 1058 TMCB to students committed to graduating with University Honors.

The BYU Honors Program publishes students' scholarly work in *Insight*, an intellectual journal with an all-student staff. The Honors Program also sponsors a national College Bowl team. Besides the special lectures, retreats, banquets, and museum tours held throughout the year, honors students receive a discounted ticket price for all cultural events in the Harris Fine Arts Center and complimentary passes for each semester's International Cinema series.

Requirements for Graduation with University Honors

Graduation with University Honors first requires commitment and then completion of the course work, Great Works, portfolio, and thesis/capstone requirements. An outline of these requirements follows:

Commitment. Commit to graduate with University Honors by completing a University Honors Graduation Commitment Form (available in 102A MSRB).

Course Work. Complete the required course work:

1. Two honors sections of religion courses.
2. Both semesters (201 and 202) of honors Civilization courses.
3. HonP 200 or Phil 105H.
4. Three honors elective courses (3 credit hours each).
5. Two semesters of foreign language study.
6. One general education Advanced Languages requirement in Mathematics: Math 112, 112H, 113, 113H, 119, Stat 221, 221H, 222, 222H, or Phil 305, or an acceptable substitute.
7. Recommended course work: HonP 214R modules (focused on Great Works List of literature, music, art, and film), Hon 214R (Junior Seminar), HonP 300 (Honors Thesis Preparation).

Great Works. By the deadline listed in the following chart, submit a response for each of the specified items chosen from your Great Works Contract (ten works of literature, four works of music, four works of art, and two films).

Portfolio. Your portfolio should be submitted by the deadline on the chart. The following items should be included:

1. A one-page outline or summary, semester by semester, of the major highlights and achievements of your undergraduate experience.
2. A one-page evaluation or assessment of the most memorable service you contributed at BYU.
3. A current transcript.
4. A list of three faculty members who know and can recommend your academic record.
5. A representative collection of your best academic work, reflecting educational progression throughout the undergraduate years.
6. Twenty short responses to Great Works that were completed your junior year.

Thesis/Capstone Experience. To graduate with University Honors, a student must complete an honors thesis/capstone project (see the deadlines listed in the following chart). This requirement provides an opportunity for a student to work closely with a faculty member on a project of the student's choosing in the student's major. The thesis/capstone project represents an independent work reflecting the highest standards of achievement for undergraduates. It must receive both departmental and honors approval. Work on this requirement should commence during the junior year and be finished by the beginning of the student's last semester at the university.

Thesis Deadlines*

	For Graduation in:		
	April	*August*	*December*
Great Works responses submitted	Sep 15	Jan 15	May 15
Thesis proposal approved by honors dean	Sep 15	Jan 15	May 15
One copy of thesis and portfolio submitted to Honors Program	Feb 1	Jun 1	Oct 1
Thesis defense scheduled	Feb 10	Jun 10	Oct 10
Thesis defense completed	Mar 1	Jul 1	Nov 1
Four copies of thesis on bond paper submitted to Honors Program for binding	Mar 15	Jul 15	Nov 15

*These dates are deadlines, but most students will need to have their thesis proposals approved considerably before the deadline, preferably more than two semesters before defending the thesis. Thus, those graduating in April should usually have their thesis proposal approved no later than the previous April.

Honors Courses

The University Honors Program Course Guide contains a complete list of honors courses and detailed course descriptions. It is an essential supplement to this catalog and the current class schedule. To obtain the course guide or further information about the Honors Program, contact the Honors Advisement Center, 102A MSRB, telephone (801) 378-5497.

1. Writing Skills

200. Intensive Writing. (3:3:0)
Meets GE requirement in First-Year Writing.

300. Advanced Writing. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: completion of First-Year Writing requirement.
Approaches to advanced writing that differ from departmental offerings. Meets GE Advanced Writing requirement.

2. Arts and Sciences Core

201. History of Civilization 1. (3:3:0)
Colloquium or seminar in the history of civilization from antiquity to ca. A.D. 1500. Meets the GE core requirement for Civilization 1.

202. History of Civilization 2. (3:3:0)
Colloquium or seminar in the history of civilization from ca. A.D. 1500 to the present. Meets the GE core requirement for Civilization 2.

240. American Government and Society. (3:3:0)
Meets AHtg 100 GE core requirement.

259. Physical Science. (1–6:6:0)
Meets the PhyS 100 GE core requirement.

260. Biology. (1–6:6:0)
Meets the Biol 100 GE core requirement.

3. Honors Arts and Sciences Lower-Division Electives

Honors 203–220: Arts and Letters

203R. Literature. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in literature.

204R. Fine Arts. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in art, design, music, theatre, or cinema.

205R. Philosophy. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in philosophy or such related areas as religious and moral thought.

206R. Humanities. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in the humanities.

207R. Language. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in semantics, grammar, linguistics, or history of language.

210R. Civilization and Culture. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar on the historical development of Western civilization and culture or non-Western civilizations and cultures.

211R. Colloquium in Arts and Letters. (1–6:6:0 ea.)

218R. Epistemology. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Epistemology for GE Arts and Letters credit.

Honors 221–240: Social and Behavioral Sciences

221R. Colloquium in the Social Sciences. (1–6:6:0 ea.)

222R. History. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in history or such related areas as archaeology.

223R. Behavioral Science. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in psychology, psychiatry, organizational behavior, etc.

224R. Political Science. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in political science, international relations, jurisprudence, or political and economic geography.

225R. Sociology. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in sociology or family science.

226R. Anthropology. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in anthropology or related areas.

227R. Economics. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in economics or related areas.

228R. Education. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in education or related areas.

229R. Business. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in business or related areas.

230R. Civilization and Culture. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar on the historical development of Western civilization and culture or non-Western civilizations and cultures.

234R. Readings in the History of Ideas. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in scientific, political, and philosophical thought based on texts treating the human legacy, society, science, ethical challenges, aesthetics, etc.

238R. Epistemology. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Epistemology for GE Social Sciences credit.

Honors 241–260: Natural Sciences

241R. Colloquium in the Sciences. (1–6:6:0 ea.)

242R. Mathematics. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in mathematics.

243R. Physical Science, Elective. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in astronomy, chemistry, geology, or physics.

244R. Biological Science, Elective. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in biology, botany, microbiology, or zoology.

245R. Technology. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in computer science, engineering, technology, or related areas.

246R. Statistics. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in statistics.

250. Math Modeling—Toward a Personal Understanding of the World. (3:3:0)
Developing skills in arriving at quantitative models for the world as we see it. Some math skills reviewed and some new ones introduced.

254R. Readings in the History of Ideas. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in scientific, political, and philosophical thought based on texts treating the human legacy, society, science, ethical challenges, aesthetics, etc.

258R. Epistemology. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Epistemology for GE Natural Sciences credit.

4. Honors Arts and Sciences Upper-Division Electives

Honors 303–320: Arts and Letters

303R. Literature. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in literature.

304R. Fine Arts. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in art, design, music, theatre, or cinema.

305R. Philosophy. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in philosophy or such related areas as religious and moral thought.

306R. Humanities. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in the humanities.

307R. Language. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in semantics, grammar, linguistics, or history of language.

310R. Civilization and Culture. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar on the historical development of Western civilization and culture or non-Western civilizations and cultures.

311R. Colloquium in Arts and Letters. (1–6:6:0 ea.)

314R. Readings in the History of Ideas. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in scientific, political, and philosophical thought based on texts treating the human legacy, society, science, ethical challenges, aesthetics, etc.

315R. Readings in the Classics. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in the classics based on key literary-philosophical texts.

318R. Epistemology. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Epistemology for GE Arts and Letters credit.

Honors 321–340: Social and Behavioral Sciences

321R. Colloquium in the Social Sciences. (1–6:6:0 ea.)

322R. History. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in history or such related areas as archaeology.

323R. Behavioral Science. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in psychology, psychiatry, organizational behavior, etc.

324R. Political Science. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in political science, international relations, jurisprudence, or political and economic geography.

325R. Sociology. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in sociology or family science.

326R. Anthropology. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in anthropology or related areas.

327R. Economics. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in economics or related areas.

328R. Education. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in education or related areas.

329R. Business. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in business or related areas.

330R. Civilization and Culture. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar on the historical development of Western civilization and culture or non-Western civilizations and cultures.

334R. Readings in the History of Ideas. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in scientific, political, and philosophical thought based on texts treating the human legacy, society, science, ethical challenges, aesthetics, etc.

338R. Epistemology. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Epistemology for GE Social Sciences credit.

Honors 341–360: Natural Sciences

341R. Colloquium in the Sciences. (1–6:6:0 ea.)

342R. Mathematics. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in mathematics.

343R. Physical Science, Elective. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in astronomy, chemistry, geology, or physics.

344R. Biological Science, Elective. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in biology, botany, microbiology, or zoology.

345R. Technology. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in computer science, engineering, technology, or related areas.

346R. Statistics. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in statistics.

354R. Readings in the History of Ideas. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Upper-division seminar in scientific, political, and philosophical thought based on texts treating the human legacy, society, science, ethical challenges, aesthetics, etc.

358R. Epistemology. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Epistemology for GE Natural Sciences credit.

Other Honors Courses

214R. Readings in the History of Ideas. (1–6:6:0 ea.)
Seminar in scientific, political, and philosophical thought based on texts treating the human legacy, society, science, ethical challenges, aesthetics, etc.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:0:0 ea.)

Departmental Honors General Education Courses

Selected departments offer designated honors sections of introductory courses that meet particular general education requirements as well as honors requirements. In addition, Religious Education offers honors sections of religion courses that meet other university requirements. Approved departmental honors courses include:

Languages of Learning

First-Year Writing:
Phil 105H.

Mathematics:
Math 112H, 113H.
Stat 221H, 222H.

Advanced Writing:
Engl 311H, 312H, 313H, 315H, 316H.
MCom 320H.
Phil 311H.

Arts and Sciences

Core Requirements:
AHtg 100H.
Biol 100H.
ClCv 201H, 202H
CLit 201H, 202H.
Engl 201H, 202H.
Hist 201H, 202H.
Hum 201H, 202H.
Phil 201H, 202H, 210H, 211H.
PhyS 100H.
PlSc 201H, 202H.

Arts and Letters:
ClCv 110H.
Dance 260H.
Hum 261H, 262H.
Phil 110H, 205H, 317H, 422H.

Social and Behavioral Sciences:
- Anthr 101H, 110H.
- Econ 110H.
- FamSc 160H.
- PlSc 110H.
- Psych 111H.
- Soc 111H.

Natural Sciences:
- Chem 111H.
- Geol 101H.
- Mcbio 221H.
- Phscs 121H, 127H.
- Zool 260H, 261H.

University Requirements

Religious Education:
- RelA 121, 122, 211, 212, 301, 304, 320, 327, 421, 422.
- RelC 130, 231, 324, 325, 333, 341, 342, 351.

Students should consult the departmental listings in this catalog, the current class schedule, and the University Honors Program Course Guide for further details about these courses.

College of Biology and Agriculture

301 WIDB, PO Box 25250, (801) 378-3963

Dean: Clayton S. Huber, Professor, Food Science
Associate Dean: Richard W. Heninger, Professor, Zoology
Associate Dean: William L. Park, Professor, Economics
Assistant Dean: Steven L. Taylor

The following departments are included within the College of Biology and Agriculture:

Agronomy and Horticulture
Animal Science
Botany and Range Science
Food Science and Nutrition
Microbiology
Zoology

Courses offered in biology give students a general understanding of the fundamental principles of plant, animal, and microbial life and their relationship to the world. Specialized courses emphasizing teaching and research are offered to majors in the several branches of biological science. In addition, preprofessional training for students interested in health professions and a strong program to train secondary-level biology teachers are both available.

Agriculture has always been one of America's basic industries. Men and women engaged in agricultural research, production, and marketing must have an understanding of new scientific and technological developments and a solid foundation in the basic sciences. Students interested in agriculture may specialize by taking a four-year major that prepares for farm and ranch management, employment in related agricultural business or government, or teaching and research.

College Advisement Center

Audrey L. Megerian, Director (380 WIDB, PO Box 25189, [801] 378-3042)

The College of Biology and Agriculture Advisement Center is designed to help students with academic needs, assisting progress from the day of orientation through graduation as smoothly as possible. The center maintains student records, advises on General Education and university requirements, coordinates scholarships, provides academic information of all kinds, helps cut red tape, and much more. It is open from 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. weekdays.

Health Professions Advisement Center

Don D. Bloxham, Director (380 WIDB, PO Box 25189, [801] 378-3044)

The Health Professions Advisement Center will help preprofessional students in health-related fields (medicine, dentistry, podiatry, optometry, etc.) with any academic need, give accurate counsel, and help achieve successful transition into professional schools.

School catalogs and other pertinent materials are available in this office. The advisors will help students plan preprofessional study at BYU and apply for admission to professional schools.

The Health Professions Advisement Center also serves students planning such health-related careers as the following:

biomedical engineering
dental hygiene
dentistry
health administration
medicine
optometry
osteopathic medicine
pharmacy
podiatry
physician's assistant

Molecular Biology Programs

Students interested in preparing themselves for careers in molecular biology may do so by meeting the requirements of a molecular biology degree in the College of Biology and Agriculture. Students are expected to meet the basic requirements of the major, including a series of courses in mathematics, physics, chemistry, basic biology, and molecular and cellular biology.

Conservation Biology

Students interested in ecology, environmental awareness, wildlife management, the preservation of endangered species, and the conservation of natural resources can major with a BS degree in conservation biology in the Departments of Botany and Range Science and Zoology. See the department of your choice for details.

Biology Composite Teaching

A program is available for students interested in teaching biology at the secondary education level. Requirements are outlined in the Botany and Range Science, Microbiology, and Zoology sections of this catalog.

Agribusiness Programs

Students interested in careers in agricultural production, food marketing, and related agribusiness industries can prepare for such careers by completing a production-agribusiness emphasis under a BS degree in agronomy, horticulture, animal science, or range science. These students are expected to complete departmental core courses plus the requirements for a minor in management offered by the Marriott School of Management and three agricultural economics courses offered by the Economics Department. In addition, students can prepare themselves for agribusiness careers by completing an agricultural economics emphasis under a BS degree in economics in conjunction with selected agricultural and business courses. See departmental listings for details.

Agricultural Economics

See Department of Economics for program details.

Ezra Taft Benson Agriculture and Food Institute

N. Paul Johnston, Director (110 B-49, PO Box 25182)

The major objective of the Benson Institute is to raise the quality of life among the people of the world through improved nutrition and enlightened agricultural practices. Emphasis is on developmental research with cooperating universities in the developing world in village nutrition and agricultural production. The institute has university ties in Guatemala, Ecuador, and Bolivia.

BYU Agriculture Station

William L. Park, Director (302 WIDB)

Teaching and research in basic and applied agriculture is accomplished at BYU Agriculture Station facilities. These include animal science, agronomy, and horticulture project areas in Provo—including the Ellsworth Meat and Livestock Center. In addition, the 793-acre BYU Laboratory Farm near Spanish Fork, Utah, and the 9,388-acre BYU Skaggs Research Ranch near Malta, Idaho, are important facilities for training students.

M. L. Bean Life Science Museum

290 MLBM, PO Box 20200

H. Duane Smith, Director
Douglas C. Cox, Assistant Director

Exhibits and collections of biological specimens are housed in the M. L. Bean Life Science Museum.

The museum is open Monday through Friday from 10:00 a.m. to 9:00 p.m. and Saturday from 10:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Exhibits include representative habitats of local as well as exotic plant and animal species and a large and valuable collection of trophies from North America, Africa, and Asia.

Tours and Educational Programs. The museum offers a broad range of educational opportunities for students, from specialized graduate research in the various systematic collections housed in the museum to impromptu tours for the casual visitor. Many university classes utilize the extensive holdings, but the museum also serves the community by providing educational opportunities for elementary and secondary schools as well as civic groups. Docents and volunteers conduct educational tours and help with display preparation and general museum operation.

To make arrangements for any of the various academic opportunities, please call (801) 378-5051.

The Botanical Collection includes herbaria of vascular plants, mosses, liverworts, lichens, algae, and fungi from many parts of the world. The vascular plant collection includes more than 10,000 species represented by more than 400,000 herbarium sheets. The collection is made up principally of plants from western North America but includes many materials from the eastern states, Europe, Mexico, Australia, and the Pacific isles. Acquisitions of plants from Alaska, Greenland, Siberia, and the Canadian Arctic have added significantly to the collections of Arctic plants. Lichens and mosses number about 100,000.

The herbarium includes more than 2,000 specimens from the Mediterranean region of Europe and from the Middle Eastern countries of Iran and Afghanistan. The fossil plant collections contain more than 10,000 specimens.

The Zoological Collections consist of a large series of vertebrate and invertebrate species from North America and from many foreign countries. These materials are available to teachers, advanced students, and visiting scientists.

The invertebrate collections include more than a million specimens of insects and their near relatives as well as many representatives of other phyla of invertebrates obtained locally and from many distant places. Medically important arthropods such as fleas, lice, mites, and ticks are represented. Collections of special interest include marine shells and over one million insects (with emphasis on butterflies, flies, and beetles). Other invertebrate groups are also represented.

The vertebrate collections consist of thousands of fish, amphibian, reptile, bird, and mammal research specimens. In addition to the representative series of local species, the vertebrate collections include birds' eggs, South and Central American birds, and Hawaiian fishes. Staff members, graduate students, and friends of the university have contributed material from Mexico, South America, Africa, Formosa, Malaya, the South Pacific islands, and other areas throughout the world. The vertebrate collections also include big game trophy collections from Africa, India, and North America.

The Lytle Preserve in southwestern Utah provides a 460-acre area as an outdoor classroom in the northernmost extension of the Mojave Desert. It is managed for natural study and ecological research in a unique desert setting.

College of Engineering and Technology

270 CB, PO Box 21345, (801) 378-4326

Dean: Douglas M. Chabries, Professor, Electrical and Computer Engineering
Associate Dean: Jordan J. Cox, Associate Professor, Mechanical Engineering
Associate Dean: Linton G. Salmon, Associate Professor, Electrical and Computer Engineering

The College of Engineering and Technology is composed of the following six departments:

Chemical Engineering
Civil and Environmental Engineering
Electrical and Computer Engineering
Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology
Mechanical Engineering
Technology Education and Construction Management

As we approach the twenty-first century, the world's expectation of its engineering and technical personnel will range from providing for interplanetary exploration and travel to solving such earthly problems as pollution, transportation, efficient energy use, new materials, and new products and manufacturing processes, as well as many other exciting and challenging needs.

The solution to man's present and future problems will require people trained as craftsmen, technicians, technologists, and engineers working together as a team. Each of the departments in the College of Engineering and Technology has a faculty with special training and advanced education, including years of work experience, which qualify them to prepare students for these technical careers. Each department also has modern, well-equipped laboratories that provide exciting and valuable hands-on experience.

It is very important that students understand the differences among the various college programs and decide on a career as early as possible. This is especially true for engineers and technologists. It is also important that students understand the differences between scientists and engineers. This helpful information can be obtained from the college advisement center.

Professional Bachelor's Program

The Chemical, Civil and Environmental, Electrical and Computer, and Mechanical Engineering Departments and the Departments of Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology and Technology Education and Construction Management each offer a bachelor of science degree composed of a preprofessional program and a professional program. Approximately the first two years in these departments are considered to be preprofessional, and the remaining two years constitute the professional program. Any student who is admitted to the university may select a program in any department as a possible major, and all students are encouraged to declare their intended major on first entering the university. Facilities management and industrial arts teacher education majors may proceed into the junior year without restriction, but engineering technology and construction management majors may not register for upper-division departmental courses (300 level and above) until they are formally accepted into a professional program.

Students should refer to the department sections of this catalog for specific department requirements. Additional details and application forms may be obtained from the college advisement center.

College Advisement Center (CAC)

Pamela O. Williamson, Supervisor (264 CB, PO Box 24101, [801] 378-4325)

As a center for students, the CAC provides up-to-date records and information and help with registration, graduation requirements, policies and procedures, fields of study, changes of major, and many other aspects of the college's academic life.

College Programs

The alignment of engineering with technology and technology education and construction management makes it possible to offer, in a single college, a broad spectrum of educational opportunities within which students can prepare for a career in our challenging technological world. This offering encompasses four-year baccalaureate degree programs, one-year master of science and master of industrial education programs , and a program that leads to a doctor of philosophy degree in engineering.

The bachelor's degree program in engineering is also excellent preparation for other professional careers such as law, medicine, and business.

General Education Requirements

All students who receive a baccalaureate degree must satisfy the university's General Education requirements. Summaries of these requirements are available in the advisement center.

It is important to maintain constant progress in the major technical area because of prerequisite structure. Students are cautioned against devoting early semesters solely toward the completion of General Education requirements, thus falling behind in technical areas. Instead, follow an integrated study program of General Education and technical requirements.

Technology Education and Construction Management

The Department of Technology Education and Construction Management provides baccalaureate programs for educating industrial arts teachers for elementary, middle, junior high, and senior high schools, as well as technical education teachers for vocational and technical schools. The department also offers four-year baccalaureate programs in construction management and facilities management, and master's degree programs for supervisors, coordinators, and administrators in industrial and technical education. In addition, the Department of Technology Education and Construction Management cooperates with the College of Education to offer a minor in industrial education for the doctor of education degree.

Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology

The Department of Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology offers four-year baccalaureate programs in electronics engineering technology, manufacturing engineering technology, and manufacturing engineering. The engineering technology programs and the manufacturing engineering program are accredited by the Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology, Inc. (ABET) and are recognized by industry as among the best available.

Engineering

Engineering, with a strong emphasis on mathematics and the basic sciences, has been offered at Brigham Young University since 1952. Graduates find acceptance in the best graduate schools and in top industrial organizations. Many are in key positions in leading industries or have important assignments with government agencies. With the evident need extending well into the future for those skilled in solving technological problems, an engineering degree from BYU is a valuable professional accomplishment.

Students who plan to enroll in engineering fall semester should have successfully completed the following high school courses or their equivalents:

3 units of English
4 units of mathematics, consisting of 2.5 units of algebra, 1 unit of geometry, and 0.5 unit of trigonometry. This should qualify one to begin college mathematics with analytic geometry and calculus.
1 unit of physical science (either chemistry or physics)
1 unit of drafting or mechanical drawing

Students who have not completed these requirements should plan to enter BYU *summer term*, beginning in June. If deficiencies are not too serious, they can probably be made up by fall semester.

Each of the six engineering programs (chemical, civil and environmental, electrical, computer, manufacturing, and mechanical) leads to a four-year bachelor of science degree. Each degree program is accredited by the Engineering Accreditation Commission (EAC) of the Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology, Inc. (ABET).

To complete these programs in less total time, students can take advantage of the spring and summer terms' offerings.

International Option

Engineering and technology graduates are finding more and more job opportunities that require them to interact with foreign countries or work with companies that have an international component. To assist the graduates to prepare for these international careers, the college offers an international option within each department, except technical teacher education.

It should be recognized that the fundamental principles of engineering and technology are universal. In addition to a department's required courses, students must take a few additional courses that are intended to provide them with the knowledge of technical issues that are global in nature and that can affect them as they work in the international arena. A description of these courses may be found in the College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center. In addition to these courses, students are asked to concentrate in a particular international region by completing the following:

1. **Foreign language proficiency.** Although a foreign language is not required for the option, it is highly recommended.
2. **International 'live-in' experience.** An international live-in option may be satisfied by any one of a number of ways, including the following: (1) a semester or term work experience in a foreign country, (2) a semester or term Study Abroad program approved by the David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies and college personnel, or (3) a prior living experience such as a foreign mission.
3. **Elective courses.** By choosing appropriate GE and religion electives from an approved list, students can focus on a particular region and/or topic and thereby enhance the knowledge gained in the required courses.

See the college advisement center or specific departments for more information.

Professional Registration

Engineering graduates are encouraged to become registered professional engineers. Professional registration promotes the engineering profession, enhances employment opportunities, protects the public welfare, and in many instances is a requirement. State boards have set minimum standards of competence and conduct for engineers and have established a process whereby one may become registered. There are four steps in this process: graduation from an approved four-year engineering program, passing of the Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) exam, completion of four years of acceptable engineering experience, and passing of the Principles and Practice of Engineering (PE) exam. Offered twice a year, in April and October, the FE exam should be taken in October because the April schedule may conflict with finals. Application must be made through the State Board of Registration. Those who pass the PE exam attain the status of a registered professional engineer and earn the right to publicly represent themselves as an engineer. Further details on professional registration can be found in the departmental sections of this catalog and at the College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center.

Prearchitectural Curriculum

Because BYU does not offer an architecture degree, it is suggested that students identify an architectural school from which to receive a degree. Then, by carefully studying its program, a student can enroll in a limited number of applicable classes at BYU. Early transfer to this selected school (unless it requires a bachelor's degree for admission) will allow a minimum credit loss. A list of accredited architecture schools and additional information can be obtained in the advisement center. Interested students should talk to a faculty advisor in the construction management program within the Department of Technology Education and Construction Management.

Cooperative Education—Work While You Learn

The value of on-the-job working experience cannot be overemphasized when obtained during the learning process. It adds materially to understanding and incentive and also assists with educational expenses. Several kinds of work experiences are available. Perhaps the simplest arrangement is technical employment during the summer. Departments and the college cooperative education office work together to help students find suitable employment. BYU also has arrangements with several companies for co-op placement, wherein students work in industry for a period of time and then return to school for a period, sometimes alternating work and learning experiences several times. Students interested in work-while-you-learn opportunities should contact their major department chair or the cooperative education office within the College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center.

In addition to cooperative education internships within the United States, internships in international settings are also available for students who are pursuing majors that focus on international curricula.

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences

990 SWKT, PO Box 25535, (801) 378-2083

Dean: Clayne L. Pope, Professor, Economics
Associate Dean for Graduate Programs and Curriculum: Paul B. Pixton, Professor, History
Associate Dean for Research and Faculty Development: Dennis L Thomson, Professor, Political Science

Academic Departments and Curriculum Areas

American Heritage
Anthropology
Clothing and Textiles
David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies
(See Contents for specific areas of specialization.)
Economics
Family Sciences
Geography
History
Political Science
Psychology
Social Work
Sociology

Research and Academic Support Areas

Camilla Eyring Kimball Chair of Home and Family Life
Center for Studies of the Family
Charles Redd Center for Western Studies and Lemuel H. Redd Jr. Chair in Western History
Comprehensive Clinic
J. Fish and Lillian F. Smith Chair of Economics
Joseph Fielding Smith Institute for Church History
Museum of Peoples and Cultures
New World Archaeological Foundation
Women's Research Institute

College Advisement Center

Larry K. Taylor, Supervisor (2254 SFLC, PO Box 26797, [801] 378-3541)

Advisors are prepared to assist students in the selection of General Education offerings that will contribute to a broad education. Advisors also assist faculty in offering counsel for specific majors and in monitoring a student's progress toward graduation.

Purposes

The College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences is composed of departments whose primary focus is people.

Of particular concern is the family as the basis of human society. Each of the basic disciplines represented in the college has a special contribution to make to the family. Some are concerned with helping people to be healthy, responsible, and caring; some concentrate on helping families improve the quality of life; some focus on the home as a laboratory for family enhancement; and some explore the relationship between the family and the social systems that constitute the larger society.

The instructional program of the College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences has two major emphases. One provides a broad education that helps develop an appreciation of the values that establish and strengthen modern civilization and that prepares individuals to contribute effectively as citizens. The other prepares professionals to discover truths that reveal our heritage and to provide significant services to individuals, families, and institutions.

Degrees Offered

Bachelor's, master's, and doctoral degrees are offered in the college. See the individual department and program listings in this catalog for specific degrees offered and the requirements for each.

Scholarships and Awards

Scholarships and awards are available to qualified students. Applications may be obtained from the Financial Aid Office (A-141 ASB, PO Box 21009).

Women's Studies Minor

Bonnie Ballif-Spanvill, Director (970 SWKT, PO Box , [801] 378-4609]

The Women's Research Institute sponsors a minor in Women's Studies. This program educates students in the findings, theory, and research methodologies fundamental to the women's studies field, and fosters critical thinking and superior scholarship. The research and study of women and their viewpoints in traditional academic disciplines creates a new framework of interpretation and scholarship for our historical and cultural traditions. Courses in the minor represent many disciplines and provide a variety of perspectives on topics relating to women's experiences.

See the Women's Research Institute section of this catalog for course requirements for this minor.

Center for Studies of the Family

Alan J. Hawkins, Director (922 SWKT, PO Box 25516 [801] 378-2948)

The Center for Studies of the Family is dedicated to identifying characteristics associated with strong families and the processes by which they develop. At the heart of the center's mission is a deep and abiding desire to understand families and family members and to assist them to achieve their full potential. The center understands the important link that research can and must have to families themselves. Research that illuminates the relationship between the family and other important institutions such as governments, schools, and business, as well as social contexts including households, neighborhoods, and cultures, is germane to the center's research program. Relevant information is presented through publications, conferences, symposia, seminars, and lectures.

The center helps organizations design and implement programs to aid couples and individuals in building and sustaining stronger families. Programs are designed not only to strengthen families but also to prevent critical family problems, including family violence, child abuse and neglect, divorce, financial mismanagement, and substance abuse. In addition, public policies that strengthen families are discussed and developed.

Museum of Peoples and Cultures

Joel C. Janetski, Director (105 ALLN, PO Box 25522)

The Museum of Peoples and Cultures is located in Allen Hall at 700 North 100 East in Provo. Museum hours are from 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Monday through Friday. The modest exhibits focus on the prehistory of Utah, the American Southwest, Mesoamerica, Polynesia, and the Near East as well as early Mormon pioneer life. Tour arrangements can be made by calling the museum at (801) 378-6112.

Educational and Research Opportunities. Classes in museology designed to provide students with practical experience in collections care and management, including computer applications, are available with approval. Credit in archaeological research, both field and laboratory, is also offered with prior approval of the museum staff, who are adjunct to the Anthropology Department. Museology and archaeology course listings are found in the Anthropology section of this catalog. The museum also employs several students each semester to assist in collections work and exhibit renovation.

Research entities in the museum include the Office of Public Archaeology and the Archaeological Technical Laboratory, both of which offer part-time employment to interested and qualified students. The Office of Public Archaeology is one of the leading archaeological contracting organizations in the intermountain area, with a permanent staff of eight. The technical lab specializes in botanical and minerals analyses. The museum works closely with Anthropology Department faculty, several of whom have research offices in Allen Hall. Offices of the New World Archaeological Foundation are also in the museum.

Anthropological Collections. Museum collections contain prehistoric and ethnographic artifacts from various parts of the world. The bulk of holdings are from the Southwest, Mesoamerica, Polynesia, and the Great Basin, especially Utah Valley. The museum also cares for a collection of more than 20,000 black and white and color photographs that document BYU archaeological research and the artifactual materials. Information on this collection is now computer accessible for interested scholars. The museum encourages students to inquire about research possibilities using its collections.

Joseph Fielding Smith Institute for Church History

Ronald K. Esplin, Director (127 KMB, PO Box 24485, [801] 378-4023)

The task of the Joseph Fielding Smith Institute for Church History is the scholarly study of the history, people, institutions, and culture of the Latter-day Saints. Its mission, as a research organization, is to use the materials of history and the tools of scholarship to research, write, and publish works about the Latter-day Saint past that will be of significance to other scholars and to Latter-day Saints generally. Its personnel are historians who seek to understand and, where appropriate, emphasize the religious context of LDS history, including the vision and faith that underlie many significant events.

Under the direction of the appropriate departments, Smith Institute faculty also teach courses in history, LDS Church history, literature, and other disciplines related to their fields of expertise and advise students whose major papers, theses, and dissertations address Mormon history topics. The institute seeks to facilitate research by other scholars in LDS Church history as well. Limited support for research and publication in LDS Church history is available to faculty members from other departments within the university, based on an exchange of teaching and research assignments with institute faculty.

Joseph Fielding Smith Institute Faculty

Research Professors

Beecher, Maureen Ursenbach (1980) BS, Brigham Young U., 1958; MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1966, 1973.

Esplin, Ronald K. (1980) BA, U. of Utah, 1969; MA, U. of Virginia, 1970; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1981.

Jessee, Dean C. (1980) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1959.

Madsen, Carol Cornwall (1980) BA, MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1957, 1977, 1985.

Walker, Ronald W. (1980) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1965; MS, Stanford U., 1968; PhD, U. of Utah, 1977.

Associate Research Professors

Hartley, William G. (1980) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1969.

Jensen, Richard L. (1980) BA, Utah State U., 1968; MA, Ohio State U., 1972.

Senior Research Fellow

Allen, James B. (1963) BS, Utah State U., 1954; MA, Brigham Young U., 1957; PhD, U. of Southern California, 1963.

Emeritus

Arrington, Leonard J. (1972) BA, U. of Idaho, 1939; PhD, U. of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1952; Honorary Doctor of Humane Letters, U. of Idaho, 1982; Honorary Docor of Humanities, Utah State U., 1982.

College of Fine Arts and Communications

A-410 HFAC, PO Box 26401, (801) 378-2818

Dean: Bruce L. Christensen, Professor, Communications
Associate Dean: K. Newell Dayley, Professor, Music
Assistant Dean: Scott M. Boyter
Assistant Dean: Stephen M. Jones, Associate Professor of Music
Assistant Dean: James D. Murphy

The following departments and schools are in the College of Fine Arts and Communications:

Communications
School of Music
Theatre and Media Arts
Visual Arts

Music dance theatre is an interdisciplinary degree offered by the College of Fine Arts and Communications through the cooperative involvement of its School of Music and Department of Theatre and Media Arts and the College of Health and Human Performance's Department of Dance.

The College of Fine Arts and Communications teaches students to think, to feel, to perform, and to communicate. Its purpose is to give students the knowledge and skills requisite to a higher education in fine arts and communications. It opens the doors to the world of truth and beauty for exploration by majors and nonmajors alike. Its programs require discipline, critical analysis, research, empathy, and integrity as the means to acquire knowledge and competency in various areas of study encompassed by the college.

The college's classroom instruction is augmented by off-campus internship programs and on-campus laboratory experiences. In addition, student and faculty touring groups instruct and entertain Church members and friends across the globe. Journalism students who edit the *Daily Universe*, a student laboratory newspaper, are advised by faculty professionals. KBYU-TV, KBYU-FM, and the Museum of Art are also operated under the direction of the college.

Members of the faculty are competent, dedicated men and women who are concerned about the success of their students. The college also brings to campus distinguished professionals for special lectures and artistic performances. Housed in the Harris Fine Arts Center and the Brimhall Building, the college includes five theatres; two concert halls; three art galleries; design, journalism, advertising, broadcast, film, and music laboratories; and many music practice and rehearsal rooms.

College Advisement Center

Brenda Butterfield, Supervisor (D-444 HFAC, PO Box 26333; telephone [801] 378-3537; e-mail: cfacadvise@byu.edu; Web: www.byu.edu/cfac/advisement/index.html)

Students can receive registration help from three major sources:

1. This catalog outlines graduation requirements in the thirty-seven areas of emphasis encompassed within the disciplines of communications, music, theatre and media arts, and visual arts.
2. Assigned faculty members are available to students desiring an assessment of potential performance.
3. The college advisement center (CAC) keeps individual student records showing progress to date and courses needed to complete requirements. CAC advisors are available also for schedule-planning assistance.

Scholarships and Awards

Scholarships, performance awards, and grants-in-aid are available to qualified students.

Applications for academic scholarships can be obtained at the Scholarship Office (A-41 ASB, PO Box 21009, [801] 378-4104). Performance awards are offered by each of the five departments within the College of Fine Arts and Communications. Applications and information about auditions for performance awards can be obtained by contacting each departmental office.

For information about graduate scholarships, fellowships, and grants-in-aid, see the current BYU Graduate Catalog.

College of Health and Human Performance

212 RB, PO Box 22113, (801) 378-2645

Dean: Robert K. Conlee, Professor, Physical Education
Associate Dean: Joyce S. Harrison, Professor, Physical Education
Associate Dean: Jay H. Naylor, Professor, Recreation Management and Youth Leadership

The following departments and divisions are in the College of Health and Human Performance:

Dance
Health Sciences
Intercollegiate Athletics
Physical Education
Health and Human Performance Services
Recreation Management and Youth Leadership

The LDS Church, through its beliefs and teachings, has developed a unique reputation relative to health practices—one of active and vigorous living, leadership of youth, and wholesome use of time. Brigham Young University, in harmony with the objectives of the Church, provides its members with opportunities for both participation and active, exemplary leadership.

College Advisement Center

205 RB, PO Box 22117, (801) 378-3638

Students are able to obtain help in planning their educational programs through the College of Health and Human Performance Advisement Center and the respective departments.

Goals

The College of Health and Human Performance seeks to make three significant contributions: (1) serve students and faculty, (2) extend university programs to the public, and (3) prepare professional leaders. The college sponsors an extensive health education program, a variety of physical education activity courses, youth and recreational services, numerous intramural and extramural activities, supervised free play, and several activity clubs. High-quality intercollegiate athletic teams and dance performance groups are correlated with other programs of the college. Those majoring in one of the areas within the college find strong professional programs at both the undergraduate and graduate levels.

Health and Human Performance Services

Free play, intramurals, and scheduling of events and facilities are all coordinated by the Division of Health and Human Performance Services. Students, faculty members, and staff may use the physical education facilities during the evening and on Saturdays. The college encourages participation in these fun, wholesome activities, which give both diversion and development.

College of Humanities

2054 JKHB, PO Box 26120, (801) 378-2775

Dean: Van C. Gessel, Professor, Japanese
Associate Dean: Melvin J. Luthy, Professor, Linguistics
Associate Dean: John R. Rosenberg, Professor, Spanish

What Are the Humanities?

The humanities incorporate the study of the central expressions of human values: language, literature, philosophy, and artistic culture. But the emphasis is always on language, for language is the distinguishing mark of our humanity and the power that enables us to create a cumulative symbolic record of our experience.

A knowledge of the humanities enables students to understand the present and the future from a historical perspective that includes the most profound original works of the men and women who have helped to shape our civilizations. Students also develop skills in critical reading and interpretation, analytical thinking, and writing. These insights and skills provide a foundation for careers in many different professions and for productive and rewarding lives as educated citizens.

Academic Departments

Asian and Near Eastern Languages
English
French and Italian
Germanic and Slavic Languages
Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature
Linguistics
Philosophy
Spanish and Portuguese

Programs and Support Areas

Center for the Study of Christian Values in Literature
College Advisement Center
Collegewide graduate Language Acquisition Program
English Language Center
Humanities Research Center
International Cinema
David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies (in cooperation with the College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences)
Language credit by examination
Publications Center
Foreign Language Student Residence
Study Abroad
Summer Language Institute

College Advisement Center

Mary Anne Rich, Supervisor (3078 JKHB, PO Box 26101, [801] 378-4789)

The advisement center assists students with registration; information about majors, General Education, and changing majors; application for graduation and graduation clearance; and questions about policy and procedure. Students are encouraged to take advantage of these advisement center services.

For advisement regarding specific major requirements, substitutions within a major, career options, or graduate programs, students should consult with faculty advisors within the various departments.

Language Credit by Examination

Jerry W. Larson, Professor of Spanish; Director, Humanities Research Center (3060-A JKHB, PO Box 26094)

Any student enrolled at BYU whose native language is English may receive credit by special examination for certain foreign language courses for which he or she has acquired the equivalent skill or knowledge. However, this is possible only if no university credit has been given through AP, CLEP, or transfer of equivalent credit from another university or other institutions. Students whose native language is not English may not receive credit for their native language, but they may receive credit by special examination for courses in English offered through the TESL program of the Linguistics Department. They may also receive credit by special examination for a language other than their native language as described above.

Examinations for languages taught on the BYU campus are administered by the department concerned. Examinations for other languages are administered by the coordinator of the Foreign Language Testing Program in the Humanities Research Center.

Center for the Study of Christian Values in Literature

Richard H. Cracroft, Professor of English, Director (3134 JKHB, PO Box 26271)

The center holds symposia, conducts various writing contests, and publishes the journal *Literature and Belief.*

English Language Center

Glen W. Probst, Administrative Coordinator (2113-A JKHB, PO Box 26277)
C. Ray Graham, Academic Coordinator (2113-B JKHB, PO Box 26217)

The English Language Center is a resident program of intensive English language training.

Foreign Language Student Residence

Jeannie Welch, Coordinator (1102-A JKHB, PO Box 26116, [801] 378-7797)

Students who desire a more in-depth language study experience and practical application of the language under the direction of faculty and native residents may apply to live in the Foreign Language Student Residence. All activities in the individual apartments in the residence are conducted in the foreign language. Inquiries should be directed to the coordinator or to

the appropriate departmental advisor for detailed information concerning opportunities for men and women in French, Russian, Italian, German, Japanese, Spanish, Chinese, Arabic, Korean, and Scandinavian languages.

Humanities Research Center

Jerry W. Larson, Professor of Spanish, Director (3060 JKHB, PO Box 26094)

The Humanities Research Center provides technological and consulting resources to support research and teaching in the College of Humanities. Available in the center are audio, video, and microcomputer facilities in addition to optical scanning services.

Summer Language Institute

Hans W. Kelling, Professor of Germanic and Slavic Languages, Coordinator (2007-A JKHB, PO Box 26003)

During spring or summer term the College of Humanities offers an intensive program that allows total immersion in a foreign language. Students may receive from 6 to 10 credit hours, depending on the level at which one enters the program. The institute also provides housing for those participating, where the language can be applied on a practical level.

D Credit

No D credit in major or minor courses is accepted.

College of Nursing

500 SWKT, PO Box 25532, (801) 378-5123

Dean: Sandra Rogers, Associate Professor, Nursing
Associate Dean: Lynn C. Callister, Associate Professor, Nursing
Associate Dean: Elaine S. Marshall, Associate Professor, Nursing
Associate Dean: Mary Williams, Associate Professor, Nursing

College Advisement Center

Linda Stevens, Supervisor (551 SWKT, PO Box 25531)

For information regarding College of Nursing programs and admission application forms, contact the following:

Undergraduate students:
College of Nursing Advisement Center
(551 SWKT, PO Box 25531, [801] 378-4173)

Graduate students:
Denise Gibbons Davis, Graduate Secretary
(500 SWKT, PO Box 25426, [801] 378-4142)

Study of Nursing at Brigham Young University

The College of Nursing at Brigham Young University, established in 1952, is accredited by the National League for Nursing. The mission of the College of Nursing is to provide students with broadly based knowledge and skills necessary to become nursing professionals and informed citizens.

Baccalaureate graduates are prepared to function in generalist roles in hospital and community settings. They also have excellent preparation for entrance into graduate programs. Graduates of the MS program are prepared for a variety of advanced practice and leadership roles in the health care delivery system.

The faculty of the college are committed to creating a stimulating learning environment based on Christian principles. They maintain a broad range of research and clinical interests.

Student resources include a fully equipped learning resource center with audiovisual and computer learning aids, a physiological research laboratory, a research center, and a state-of-the-art clinical simulation laboratory. Clinical practice opportunities exist in a variety of urban and rural hospital, school, home, and community settings along the Wasatch Front. Students may gain extended experiences with specialized national and international health programs.

Scholarships and Awards

Scholarships are available for undergraduate and graduate students. Applications for scholarships and information about additional sources of funding for study are available in the College of Nursing Advisement Center. Research assistantships and teaching assistantships are also available.

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences

1147 TMCB, PO Box 24578, (801) 378-2674

Dean: Bill R. Hays, Professor, Computer Science
Associate Dean: Larry C. Christensen, Professor, Computer Science
Associate Dean: Nolan F. Mangelson, Professor, Chemistry and Biochemistry

The College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences consists of six departments:

Chemistry and Biochemistry
Computer Science
Geology
Mathematics
Physics and Astronomy
Statistics

Freshmen who are interested in the physical and mathematical sciences but are undecided about a specific major may register in science fundamentals core courses: Math 112; Chem 111 or 105; Phscs 121.

College Advisement Center

Merle T. White, Supervisor (1112 TMCB, PO Box 26587, [801] 378-6270)

The advisement center provides information and help on registration, graduation requirements, policies and procedures, fields of study, changes of major, and many other aspects of the college's academic life.

Degrees Offered

Bachelor of arts or bachelor of science degrees are offered in chemistry, computer science, geology, mathematics, physics, and statistics. No degree is offered in the physical science or science fundamentals areas.

The master of science degree is offered in chemistry, computer science, geology, mathematics, physics, and statistics. The master of arts degree is available in mathematics. The doctor of philosophy degree is offered in chemistry, computer science, mathematics, and physics.

See specific departmental sections of this catalog for baccalaureate degree requirements. Graduate programs are detailed in the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

J. Reuben Clark Law School

348-A JRCB, PO Box 28001, (801) 378-4274

Dean: H. Reese Hansen
Associate Dean: J. Clifton Fleming
Associate Dean: Constance K. Lundberg
Associate Dean: Scott W. Cameron
Assistant Dean: Kathy D. Pullins

The J. Reuben Clark Law School offers a six-semester course of graduate professional study leading to the juris doctor (JD) degree. Information about legal education, admissions standards, and related matters can be obtained from the J. Reuben Clark Law School Bulletin, which is available through the admissions office of the Law School.

To be admitted to the Law School, an applicant must be a college graduate who has excelled academically and has scored in the upper range of the nationally administered Law School Admission Test. In addition, applicants must meet the general university admission requirements, including the personal standards required of all students.

Apply for admission on forms provided by the Law School, and file before February 1 preceding the fall of expected enrollment in the Law School. Enrollment takes place only in the fall of each year.

For more information regarding prelegal education, consult the section of this catalog entitled Preprofessional Programs (Law).

Marriott School of Management

730 TNRB, PO Box 23113, (801) 378-4121

Dean: K. Fred Skousen, Professor, Accounting
Associate Dean: Kim S. Cameron, Professor, Organizational Behavior
Associate Dean: Gary C. Cornia, Professor, Public Management

Academic Departments

School of Accountancy and Information Systems
Department of Business Management
Institute of Public Management
Organizational Leadership and Strategy
Aerospace Studies (Air Force ROTC)
Military Science (Army ROTC)

Management Advisement Center

Eldon Bott, Supervisor (460 TNRB, PO Box 23185, [801] 378-4285)

Advisors are prepared to assist undergraduate students in successfully completing university, college, and major requirements. Students are encouraged to meet frequently with them. The center provides up-to-date records and information, and center personnel are available to help with registration, graduation requirements, fields of study, changes in major, and transfer evaluation and to clarify policies and procedures.

Undergraduate Programs

Two undergraduate degrees are offered by the Marriott School of Management. The first is a bachelor's degree in management, which provides a broad management education. The program is designed to assist students in acquiring knowledge, insight, maturity, competence, and a strong sense of moral and ethical character. An area of emphasis may be taken by students seeking limited specialization.

The second bachelor's degree is offered by the School of Accountancy and Information Systems to students seeking to combine accounting skills with broad management education (see the School of Accountancy and Information Systems section of this catalog for details). Accounting students interested in acquiring in-depth specialization or seeking careers in public accounting are encouraged to apply to the Master of Accountancy Program.

Graduation Application for Bachelor's Degree

When a student has completed 86–96 earned hours (usually during the junior year), application for graduation should be initiated at the Marriott School of Management Advisement Center.

Graduate Programs

The Marriott School of Management offers the following graduate degrees:

MAcc	Professional Accountancy
MAcc	Tax
MBA	Business Administration
MISM	Information Systems Management
MOB	Organizational Behavior
MPA	Public Administration

Individual program brochures are available from the Marriott School of Management, 730 TNRB, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602-3113. Also, refer to the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

David O. McKay School of Education

343 MCKB, PO Box 25095, (801) 378-3694

Dean: Robert S. Patterson, Professor, Educational Leadership and Foundations
Associate Dean: Bonnie Brinton, Professor, Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology
Associate Dean: D. Ray Reutzel, Professor, Elementary Education
Assistant Dean: Sally M. Todd, Associate Professor, Counseling and Special Education

The five departments in the David O. McKay School of Education are:

Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology
Counseling and Special Education
Educational Leadership and Foundations
Instructional Psychology and Technology
Teacher Education

The principal purposes of the David O. McKay School of Education are: (1) preparing teachers for public and private schools; (2) providing graduate programs for the preparation of school principals, counselors, school psychologists, curriculum supervisors, speech-language pathologists, clinical audiologists, and master teachers; (3) offering research-based graduate programs; and (4) researching educational processes and issues.

Education Advisement Center (EAC)

Sally M. Todd, Assistant Dean (120 MCKB, PO Box 25096, [801] 378-3426)

The Education Advisement Center assists students from the beginning of the freshman year through graduation and teacher certification. Students majoring in elementary education, early childhood education, audiology, or speech-language pathology are advised concerning general education and major requirements, student teaching and other field experiences, graduation requirements, and teacher certification procedures.

Secondary education majors in physical science or social science receive their total program advisement from the Education Advisement Center. All other secondary education majors receive certification advisement only from the EAC. The respective college advises regarding general education and major requirements. Students are encouraged to visit the EAC on a regular basis.

Acceptance into Teacher Education

Acceptance into teacher education programs in the David O. McKay School of Education is based on a student's performance on prescribed admissions tests as well as grades earned at the university. The David O. McKay School of Education seeks students who attain high educational standards and who evidence aptitude for teaching.

Students are encouraged to take ScEd 276R in their sophomore year. Elementary education students are encouraged to complete their "Exploratory Experiences in Education" packet and their application for admission before the final semester of their sophomore year, after which formal acceptance into professional programs in the David O. McKay School of Education normally occurs.

Withdrawals. Students who withdraw from the university or who otherwise interrupt their education (excepting spring and summer terms) must expect, on returning to the university, to meet the most recent requirements for teacher education programs.

Transfer Students. Students who transfer to the David O. McKay School of Education from a two-year college, another university, or another college within BYU must meet the requirements for acceptance set forth above.

Preparation of Teachers

Early Childhood Teaching. Students who want to teach young children from prekindergarten through grade 3 should register in the Department of Teacher Education. Students receive advisement from the David O. McKay School of Education Advisement Center. Prior application and acceptance are required to enroll in the professional education course sequence. Students should plan their programs and course schedules with the designated advisor in the Education Advisement Center. Elementary education majors may elect to fullfill certification requirements for teaching P–K by completing a subject area emphasis in early childhood education. Contact the Education Advisement Center for further details.

Elementary School Teaching. Education majors should check with their advisor in the EAC for modifications to the program. Both an accepted application and successful completion of the "Exploratory Experiences in Education" packet are required for admission to the teacher education program. These must be completed one semester before the student begins the professional sequence. Applicants must demonstrate and maintain established standards for personal conduct and interpersonal skills as outlined in the program guide.

Students interested in elementary school teaching register in the David O. McKay School of Education. Prior application and acceptance are required to take the professional sequence. Courses and prerequisites are listed in the Teacher Education section of this catalog. Students majoring in elementary education should plan their programs with the designated advisor in the Education Advisement Center.

Secondary School Teaching. Students who plan a career in secondary school teaching should register in the department of their academic major, except for physical science or social science majors, who register in the David O. McKay School of Education. There is no major in secondary education per se, but students must complete professional education requirements as well as an academic teaching major or composite major. Some areas require a teaching minor also. Students should begin their professional preparation (ScEd 276R) during the sophomore year to facilitate scheduling the balance of the certification program. For course listings and prerequisites, see the Department of Teacher Education section of this catalog. Students should plan their program with the designated advisor in the Education Advisement Center.

Special Education Teaching. Elementary education majors may elect to fulfill a subject area emphasis in special education. Contact the designated advisor in the Education Advisement Center.

Secondary education majors may elect a minor in special education. Contact the Department of Counseling and Special Education for further details.

The special education program will admit graduate applicants for fall 1997. Please contact the Department of Counseling and Special Education for specific information.

Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology. This academic department prepares students to be communication specialists in schools, hospitals, rehabilitation centers, and other agencies and in private practice. Certification and licensure in Utah and in most other states, as well as by the American Speech-Language-Hearing Association, require a master's degree. Students interested in audiology or speech-language pathology should plan their program with the designated advisor in the Education Advisement Center.

Student Teaching. The culminating experience for students in teacher education is a student teaching assignment in a public school classroom under the supervision of cooperating school teachers and university supervisors. The number of students accepted for student teaching depends on the number of professionally acceptable field positions available. Students must plan their programs carefully to meet requirements for student teaching.

Internships. Internship appointments are available through programs offered by the David O. McKay School of Education and may substitute for some student teaching. Internship appointments in the public schools are for a full year and carry a modest stipend. Interested students should contact the Education Advisement Center.

Application for Certification

The certification of teachers is a function of the Utah State Office of Education (USOE). Requirements for Utah certification are available in the Education Advisement Center. There are, from time to time, modifications in certification requirements. Although such modifications are not retroactive, they may still affect the uncompleted portion of a student's program.

Students who apply for Utah certification must have the recommendation of the dean of the David O. McKay School of Education. Students are encouraged to plan their programs with the assistance of advisors in the Education Advisement Center so that they will be assured of meeting requirements for certification.

Certification in Other States. Under reciprocity agreements, Utah certification is accepted in those states where such agreements are in effect. Specific information is available in the Education Advisement Center.

Graduate Studies

B-356 ASB, PO Box 21341, (801) 378-4091

Dean: Addie Fuhriman, Professor, Psychology
Associate Director, Graduate Services: Christine Tolman

For information about master's and doctoral degree programs, students should consult the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog, which may be obtained through BYU Mail Services (296 UPB, PO Box 21913) or, for those who visit the campus, the BYU Bookstore.

Application information is available through the Office of Graduate Studies and through individual departments. Applicants are invited to direct questions regarding admission to the Law School and the Marriott School of Management to 340 JRCB, PO Box 28001, and 730 TNRB, PO Box 23185, respectively.

School of Accountancy and Information Systems (SOAIS)

W. Steve Albrecht, Director
540 TNRB, PO Box 23095, (801) 378-4234

Robert L. Gardner, Associate Director
560 TNRB, PO Box 23099, (801) 378-3212

Marriott School of Management Advisement Center
460 TNRB, PO Box 23185, (801) 378-4285

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in this department carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the Marriott School of Management Advisement Center for specific details.

The Discipline

Accounting has been called the language of business. A good understanding of accounting principles and practices can serve as the basis for a career in any business field. Accountants provide critical input and guidance in profit-seeking organizations, service and charitable organizations, educational institutions, government, public accounting firms, and, indeed, in any organization that exists today.

Career Opportunities

Accounting graduates work in public accounting firms, consulting, private industry, government agencies, and retailing.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Accounting

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see the Marriott School Advisement Center.

For information on management degrees, see Management section of this catalog.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MAcc Professional Accountancy
MAcc Tax
MISM Information Systems Management

For more information see the current Marriott School of Management School of Accountancy and Information Systems program brochure and the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Program Acceptance Requirements

Acceptance into the SOAIS is limited to fall semester only, with one application deadline: June 30. Application forms and further information are available at the Marriott School of Management Advisement Center. Acceptance is competitive, with a maximum of 260 students admitted each year. Not all students who meet minimum admission requirements are guaranteed entry.

The following admission requirements apply:

1. Have concurrent or prior admission to the Marriott School.
2. Earn B grades (minimum) in Acc 200 and 210; or 201 and 202; and have a 3.0 minimum average GPA in the following four classes: Econ 110, Stat 221, MCom 320, ISys 201.

Note 1: If a student must leave the program for a mission, internship, or other reason, a leave of absence petition is required. A prompt return to the program is required. Students who have interrupted their SOAIS education for more than two years or without prior approval will be required to meet the requirements of the program in effect at readmission.

Note 2: Upper-division accounting class credits earned prior to five years before graduation may not be used to meet specific graduation requirements for the BS degree. This policy does not affect the recognition of those hours earned to satisfy total university credit.

BS Accounting, Concurrent with MAcc

The first year of the SOAIS program must be completed with a minimum 3.0 GPA to be eligible to apply for continuation into the Master of Accountancy Program. The undergraduate fourth year (Accounting Core 2) is replaced by the Marriott School graduate core. Students planning to pursue a Master of Accountancy degree should not take the Accounting Core 2 classes.

BS Accounting (72 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No grade lower than a C– will be allowed in Marriott School upper-division courses.
2. No more than 12 semester hours of upper-division transfer credit will be accepted toward the major and only 6 hours beyond Management Core 1.
3. Students are encouraged to enroll in courses outside the Marriott School. Only 45 upper-division Marriott School hours count toward graduation. (In some cases, 48 hours are allowed. Check with the Marriott School Advisement Center.)
4. Pass a computer proficiency examination. Students may demonstrate word processing and spreadsheet skills with either a passing grade in an equivalent transfer course, a passing grade on a challenge exam, or a B grade in MCom 98 and ISys 98. Both of these are noncredit courses.
5. Complete the following premanagement core courses:
   Math 119 or equivalent.
   Econ 110.
   Stat 221.
   Acc 200.

   Note: The premanagement core must be completed with at least a 2.85 GPA (no grade lower than a C–), with no more than one repeat for each class, for Marriott School admission. However, Econ 110, Stat 221, MCom 320, and ISys 201 must have a 3.0 minimum average for SOAIS admission.
6. Complete the following preaccounting core courses:
   Acc 210.
   ISys 201.
   MCom 320.
7. Be accepted into the program.
8. Complete the following Accounting Core 1 courses:
   Acc 241.
   PMgt 385.
   BusM 101, 102, 103, 104.
   And select one course from the following (Acc 453 is preferred):
   Acc 453.
   ManEc 300, 301, 353, 358, 376.
9. Complete the following accounting major courses:
   Acc 401, 402, 403, 404.
10. Complete the following Accounting Core 2 courses:
    MCom 321.
    OrgB 321.
    BusM 341, 361, 401.
11. Complete the following after Acc 401, 402:
    BusM 499.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Accounting (Acc)

Undergraduate Courses

Note: Students enrolled in nonbusiness programs requiring or recommending Acc 201 or 202 should enroll in 200.

200. Principles of Accounting. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Financial and managerial accounting principles. Basic accounting statements, processes, and management applications. Open to all students.

201. Principles of Financial Accounting. (3:3:1) Independent Study only.
First course in concepts and methods underlying financial statements.

202. Principles of Managerial Accounting. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: Acc 201. For transfer students only.
Second course in the elementary series covering managerial problems and control of business operations.

210. Principles of Accounting 2. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Acc 200.
Additional issues in financial and managerial accounting. Review of issues related to balance sheet accounts, performance evaluation and capital budgeting. For Marriott School students only.

241. Business Law in the Environment. (3:3:0)F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Marriott School major status.
Introduction to legal principles and institutions affecting business.

Note: SOAIS 300-level classes are available to Marriott School and certain other selected majors.

320. Introductory Income Tax. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Acc 200.
Measurement and concepts of taxable income. For nonaccounting majors.

343. Business Law. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Acc 241 or equivalent.
The law relating to negotiable instruments, secured transactions, real property, wills and trusts, and bankruptcy.

Note: All 400-level classes are limited to SOAIS majors.

401. Integrated Core 1. (6:6:0) Prerequisite: admission to SOAIS.
The business environment; role of accounting information in that environment; objectives of financial, managerial, and tax accounting; role of information system.

402. Integrated Core 2. (6:6:0) Prerequisite: admission to SOAIS.
Detailed analysis of major activities of a business from various accounting perspectives; accumulating information to satisfy needs of variety of users.

403. Integrated Core 3. (6:6:0) Prerequisite: admission to SOAIS.
Continuation of Acc 402.

404. Integrated Core 4. (6:6:0) Prerequisite: admission to SOAIS. Continuation of Acc 403.

453. Money, the Financial System, and the Economy. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Acc 401, 402, 403, 404.

Applications of industry analysis and microeconomic principles in the macroeconomic environment that influences individuals and financial intermediaries that transact in money and credit markets.

Graduate Courses

For 500- and 600-level courses, see the current Marriott School of Management School of Accountancy and Information Systems program brochure and the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Information Systems (ISys)

Undergraduate Courses

98. Microcomputer Spreadsheets Skills. (0:0:14)

Basic computer skills, focusing on spreadsheet and database programs. No technical background necessary. Fee.

199R. Cooperative Business Experience Internship. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: selection of information systems emphasis in Marriott School.

Approved on-the-job experience. Applying classroom theory and technology to actual problems; exploring career opportunities; learning role of information systems in business environment. P/F grade.

201. Management Information Systems. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: ISys 98, Ling 98, and declared business major.

Introduction to information systems; use of information technology to solve business problems. Hands-on use of spreadsheet, database, and telecommunications software in a business context.

440. Principles of Business Programming. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ISys 301 or Acc 401.

Introduction to computer programming using a structured paradigm and C++. Also Psuedocode, hierarchy charts, style, alternation, looping, modules, encapulation, records, arrays, and business processing patterns.

443. Information Systems Analysis. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: SOAIS core or ISys 301.

Examination of Systems Development Life Cycle (SDLC) emphasizing tools and methods of analysis and general design phases, including investigation, study, definition and systems specification/selection.

445. Database Systems. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: SOAIS core or ISys 301. Recommended: a course or experience in programming.

Concepts and techniques of database system development, focusing on object-oriented modeling and its implementation methods.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

540. Advanced Business Programming. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ISys 440 or equivalent programming experience.

Business-oriented introduction to object-oriented (OO) programming. Classes, inheritance, polymorphism, report generation, and file processing using current OO languages.

546. Fourth-Generation Programming Languages. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ISys 440 or equivalent.

Structured Query Language (SQL), application building (menus, forms, reports), and utilizing tools and programming languages of database management systems in a client/server environment.

548. Data Communications. (3:2:1) Prerequisite: SOAIS core or ISys 201 or equivalent.

Principles of data communications, local- and wide-area networks, hardware, software, media, standards, management, and business applications.

580. Information Systems Tools and Applications. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ISys 201 or equivalent.

Applying information systems tools to business situations. Tools covered are updated with changes in the industry.

590R. Seminar in Information Systems. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.)

Special topics by announcement.

599R. Information Systems Internship. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.)

Approved on-the-job experience. Applying classroom theory and technology to actual problems; exploring career opportunities; learning role of information systems in business environment.

Graduate Courses

For 600-level courses, see the current Marriott School of Management School of Accountancy and Information Systems program brochure and the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

School of Accountancy and Information Systems Faculty

Professors

Albrecht, W. Steve (1977) BS, Brigham Young U., 1971; MBA, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, 1973, 1975.

Cherrington, Jay Owen (1978) BS, Brigham Young U., 1968; MBA, PhD, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1971, 1972.

Gardner, Robert L. (1978) BA, Brigham Young U., 1969; MBA, BS, U. of Utah, 1975, 1976; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1979.

Hansen, James V. (1982) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1966; PhD, U. of Washington, 1973.

Hardy, John W. (1969) BS, Brigham Young U., 1964; MBA, Indiana U., 1966; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1972; CPA

McKell, Lynn J. (1974) BS, Brigham Young U., 1968; MSEE, MS, MS, PhD, Purdue U., 1970, 1972, 1973, 1973.

Radebaugh, Lee Howard (1980) BS, Brigham Young U., 1968; MBA, DBA, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1973.

Randall, Boyd C. (1974) BS, JD, MBA, U. of Utah, 1965, 1967, 1968; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1972.

Romney, Marshall B. (1977) BS, MAcc, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1972; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1977.

Skousen, K. Fred, Dean (1970) BS, Brigham Young U., 1965; MAS., PhD, U. of Illinois, 1966, 1968; CPA, 1968.

Stewart, Dave Nelson (1980) BA, MAcc, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1977; PhD, U. of Florida, 1980.

Stocks, Kevin D. (1983) BS, MAcc, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1978; PhD, Oklahoma State U., 1981; CPA, 1980.

Streuling, G. Fred (1976) BA, MAcc, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1964; PhD, U. of Iowa, 1971; CPA, Utah, 1965; CPA, California, 1966.

Woodfield, Leon W. (1960) BS, MBA, U. of Utah, 1956, 1957; CPA, CPA, 1959, 1960; DBA, Michigan State U., 1965.

Associate Professors

Boyer, Glen L. (1967) BS, Utah State U., 1963; MS, PhD, U. of North Dakota, 1966, 1972.

Dalebout, Richard S. (1975) BA, Brigham Young U., 1968; JD, U. of Utah, 1971.

Hansen, Gary W. (1983) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1968; PhD, Indiana U., 1974.
Howe, Keith R. (1979) BS, MBA, U. of Utah, 1972, 1976; DBA, Arizona State U., 1979.
Meservy, Raymond D. (1989) BS, MAcc, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1977; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1985.
Stice, James D. (1988) BS, MAcc, Brigham Young U., 1984, 1984; PhD, U. of Washington, 1988.

Assistant Professors

Cottrell, David M. (1992) BS, MAcc, MHA, Brigham Young U., 1984, 1984, 1985; PhD, Ohio State U., 1992.
Denna, Eric L. (1988) BS, MAcc, Brigham Young U., 1984, 1984; PhD, Michigan State U., 1989.
Glover, Steven M. (1994) BA, PhD, U. of Washington, 1987, 1994.
Jackson, Robert B. (1988) BS, MS, MBA, Brigham Young U., 1968, 1970, 1972.
Johns, Sharon K. (1997) BS, Brigham Young U., 1989; MAcc, U. of North Florida, 1993; PhD, Texas A&M U., 1997.
Liddle, Stephen W. (1995) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1989, 1995.
Palmer, Glen O. (1964) BS, MAcc, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1963; CPA, 1963.
Peterson, Fredric G. (1973) BA, MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1964, 1966, 1973.
Prawitt, Douglas F. (1993) BS, MAcc, Brigham Young U., 1988, 1988; PhD, U. of Arizona, 1993.
Quass, Dallan W. (1997) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1986, 1988; PhD, Stanford U., 1997.
Spilker, Brian C. (1993) BS, MAcc, Brigham Young U., 1987, 1987; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1993.
Swain, Monte R. (1991) BS, MAcc, Brigham Young U., 1987, 1987; PhD, Michigan State U., 1991.
Worsham, Ronald G. (1994) BS, MAcc, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1985; PhD, U. of Florida, 1994.

Teaching Professors

Livingstone, Donald H. (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1966; CPA, 1970.
Nemrow, Norman R. (1993) BS, MAcc, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1979; CPA, 1981.

Emeriti

Andersen, H. Verlan (1965) BS, Brigham Young U., 1940; JD, Stanford U., 1946; LLM, Harvard U., 1948.
Bentley, Joseph T. (1953) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1928, 1954; CPA, 1946.
Cameron, James B. (1969) BS, U. of Utah, 1956; MBA, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1958; CPA, 1960; PhD, Montana State U., 1967.
Carlson, Gary (1986) BS, MS, PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1956, 1958, 1962.
De Lassen, Jan (1981) BS, Texas A&M U., 1959.
Garrison, Ray H. (1966) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1961; CPA, 1962; DBA, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1966.
Hubbard, Ernest Dee (1959) BS, Utah State U., 1952; MBA, U. of Utah, 1959; PhD, U. of Washington, 1967.
Johnson, Eldred A. (1955) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1949, 1950, CPA, 1952; PhD, U. of Utah, 1968.
McAllister, LeRay L. (1963) BA, Brigham Young U., 1957; MS, DBA, Arizona State U., 1960, 1971; CPA, 1962.
Orton, Bryce B. (1961) BS, Brigham Young U., 1951; MBA, U. of Oregon, 1957; PhD, U. of Washington, 1962.
Skousen, Karl M. (1958) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1944, 1957; CPA, 1957; PhD, Michigan State U., 1962.
Smith, Harold T. (1963) BA, MA, Colorado State Coll., 1958, 1959; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1967.
Smith, Jay M. (1971) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1960; PhD, Stanford U., 1965; CPA, 1958.
Smith, Robert J., (1949) BS, Brigham Young U., 1948; MBA, Northwestern U., 1949; CPA, Illinois, 1949; CPA, Utah, 1950; DBA, Indiana U., 1957.
Sonderegger, Emory O. (1960) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1957; CPA, 1963.
Taylor, Dale H. (1963) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1951, 1953; CPA, 1955; PhD, Northwestern U., 1963.
White, J. Morgan (1967) BS, Brigham Young U., 1951; CPA, 1953; MS, Brigham Young U., 1958.

Aerospace Studies (Air Force ROTC)

Colonel Maurice L. Stocks, Chair
380 ROTC, PO Box 23012, (801) 378-2671

Admission to Program

Students must be accepted by the department into the program.

The Discipline

The Air Force Reserve Officer Training Corps (AFROTC) is an educational program designed to provide students the opportunity to become Air Force officers while completing requirements for an undergraduate or graduate degree. Four-year, three-year, or two-year programs are available for both men and women.

Career Opportunities

Officer in the United States Air Force.

General Information

Textbooks, Uniforms, and Allowance. All textbooks, uniforms, and uniform accessories are furnished by the Air Force, in addition to the tax-free allowance of $150 per month (about $3,000 for two years) furnished to those in the Professional Officer Course (POC) program.

Air Force ROTC Scholarship Program. Full tuition assistance is available to students in the two-year, three-year, or four-year program based on merit. By law, scholarship recipients must be under age twenty-seven as of June 30 of the calendar year during which commissioning is scheduled. Applicants with prior military service can have the age limit extended one year for each year of service, up to a maximum of four years. The scholarship includes tuition, fees, textbook allowance, and $150 per month. Contact the department for application procedures.

Field Training. All cadets wishing to enter the Professional Office Corps (last two years) must attend a field training camp during the summer prior to their junior year. This training gives an increased understanding of the Air Force mission and operation. Students receive practical experience in leadership and management while residing on an Air Force base. At field training students receive career orientation, junior officer training, aircraft and aircrew indoctrination, survival skills, physical training, and weapons experience and learn about the function of an Air Force base. Airborne training (parachute jumping instruction) is available as an extracurricular activity to selected volunteer cadets.

Medical care, housing, food, and uniforms, as well as transportation to and from the training base, are provided. Approximately $500 in pay is received for four-week training and $750 for six-week training.

Extracurricular Activities. Each Air Force ROTC student will be able to participate in a variety of extracurricular activities, including the *Arnold Air Society*, the *Color Guard*, and the *Honor Guard*.

LDS Missions. Students who desire to serve a Church mission should do so between their freshman and sophomore years. This will facilitate entrance into the advanced course. Scholarship students may have their scholarship held while they fulfill a mission as long as they do so before entering the advanced program.

Period of Nonattendance. Four-year program students in Air Force ROTC who are in a five-year university program are allowed a year of nonattendance after their senior AFROTC courses. Out-of-phase students and those who will be student teaching should consult with the department chair.

Discipline. Disciplinary training in the cadet corps is formulated and administered by the student officers. Air Force ROTC students are civilians and are not subject to military law.

Veterans. A veteran seeking a commission through Air Force ROTC may have part or all of the freshman and sophomore program waived. Allowances are paid in addition to G.I. Bill benefits.

Physical Education Requirements for Graduation. Students successfully completing eight semesters of AFROTC leadership laboratory satisfy physical education fitness and activity requirements as described in the graduation section of this catalog. Students successfully completing four semesters of AFROTC leadership laboratory satisfy the physical education activity requirement only.

Program Requirements

Four-Year Program

The more popular and preferred program is the traditional Four-Year Program. Interested freshmen register for aerospace studies in the fall term, enrolling in aerospace studies courses in the same manner as for other college courses. There is *no military obligation* for the first two years of Air Force ROTC unless on an Air Force ROTC scholarship. During this time students learn more about the Air Force and the historical development of air power. After completing the first two years, known as the General Military Course (GMC), students may *compete* for entry into the last two years, the Professional Officer Course (POC). If accepted, students will attend a four-week summer field training encampment between their sophomore and junior years before entering the POC. Cadets in the POC study leadership, management, and national defense policy while receiving a nontaxable subsistence allowance of $150 each academic month.

Three-Year Program

Students entering the program as sophmores can "dual enroll" in both the Aeros 100 and 200 cluster simultaneously. It is not necessary to sign up for more than one lab per semester. If accepted, students will attend a four-week field training the next summer.

Two-Year Program

The Air Force ROTC Two-Year Program is primarily available to junior college transfers, veterans, and those who did not take the first two years of Air Force ROTC. To be eligible, students must have at least two academic years remaining either at the undergraduate or graduate level or a combination of the two. If accepted, students will attend a six-week summer field training encampment. Two-year students normally apply early in their sophomore year, attend a six-week field training the next summer, and enter the program at the beginning of their junior year.

Qualifications

1. Be a United States citizen.
2. Be a full-time student.
3. Be eighteen years of age, or seventeen years of age with parent's or legal guardian's consent.
4. Be physically qualified.
5. Be of good moral character.
6. Be in good academic standing.
7. Successfully pass the Air Force Officer Qualifying Test.
8. Have at least two academic years remaining.
9. Be interviewed and selected by a board of Air Force officers.

10. Complete a six-week field training course if a two-year cadet, a four-week course if a four-year cadet.
11. Complete all commissioning requirements as follows:
    a. Pilot or navigator candidate: Before age twenty-six and a half.
    b. Scholarship recipient: Before age twenty-seven as of June 30 in eligible year of commissioning.
    c. Non–scholarship recipient: Before age thirty-one.

Required Courses

1. General Military Courses: complete the following: Aeros 100, 101, 110, 111, 200, 201, 210, 211.
2. Professional Officer Courses: complete the following: Aeros 300, 301, 310, 311, 400R, 401R, 410, 411.

Note: Two-year students should complete only the 300- and 400-level courses.

Minor Aerospace Studies (14 hours)

Students desiring aerospace studies as a minor must complete the 14 hours of POC course work and the Air Force ROTC requirements, as well as qualify for a commission in the United States Air Force.

Aerospace Studies (Aeros)

Undergraduate Courses

100, 101. Leadership Laboratory—Freshmen. (0.5:0:2 ea.)
Basic fundamentals of military leadership—drill, courtesy, planning, and organizing at various levels of responsibility.

110. The Air Force Today. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Aeros 100.
Development, organization, and doctrine of the U.S. Air Force, emphasizing Strategic Force Requirements.

111. Aerospace Defense, General Purpose, and Support Forces. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Aeros 101.
U.S. Air Force Defensive Forces, General Purpose Forces, and Tactical Air Forces.

200, 201. Leadership Laboratory—Sophomores. (0.5:0:2 ea.)
As listed for Aeros 100/101. Increased emphasis on performance level.

210. The Developmental Growth of Air Power. (1:1:0)
Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Aeros 200.
Development of various concepts of air power employment, emphasizing factors that have prompted research and technological change.

211. The Developmental Growth of Air Power. (1:1:0)
Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Aeros 201.
Development of various concepts of air power employment, emphasizing factors that have prompted research and technological change.

300, 301. Leadership Laboratory—Juniors. (0.5:0:2 ea.)
As listed for Aeros 100/101. Students perform as cadet officers. Emphasis on leadership development.

305R. Leadership Laboratory—Honor Guard. (1:0:3 ea.)
Prerequisite: approval of instructor.
Fundamentals of military leadership and drill with the M-1 rifle; emphasizes need for response to vested authority, with opportunity to develop confidence, military bearing, and other interpersonal skills; students perform as cadet leaders.

310. Management and Leadership. (3:3:0)
Writing, speaking, and listening as communication skills; management concepts; responsibilities and ethics for an Air Force junior officer.

311. Management and Leadership. (3:3:0)
Principles of leadership, problem solving, decisions, discipline, and human relations. Emphasis on career planning as an Air Force junior officer.

320. Jet Pilot Introduction. (2:2:0)

400R, 401R. Leadership Laboratory— Seniors. (0.5:0:2 ea.)
As listed for Aeros 100/101. Senior cadets perform in leadership positions in planning and conducting all activities of the cadet corps.

410. National Security Forces in Contemporary America. (3:3:0)
Military profession, civil-military interaction, and the forming of defense strategy.

411. National Security Forces in Contemporary America. (3:3:0)
Strategy and management of conflict and the forming and implementing of U.S. defense policy.

Aerospace Studies Faculty

Professor

Stocks, Maurice L. (1994) BA, U. of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1969; MS, U. of Tennessee, Knoxville, 1987; National War College, 1986.

Assistant Professors

Brewerton, Cortney S. (1995) BA, Brigham Young U., 1984; MA, Webster U., 1994.

Clites, Willard E. (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1983; MS, Troy State U., 1995.

Gandy, Max L. (1997) BS, Brigham Young U., 1983; MA, Webster U., 1986.

Afrikaans

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Agronomy and Horticulture

Richard E. Terry, Chair
275 WIDB, PO Box 25183, (801) 378-2760

College of Biology and Agriculture Advisement Center
380 WIDB, PO Box 25189, (801) 378-3042

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Agronomy and Horticulture are open enrollment.

The Discipline

Agronomy is the science of soil and crop management. Scientific and economic principles are applied to the conservation of soil resources and the production of food and fiber for a growing population.

Horticulture is the art and science of cultivating fruits, vegetables, and ornamental plants. Scientific, economic, and artistic principles are applied to improving the aesthetic qualities of our environment as well as to producing food and fiber for consumption.

Advances are being made in manipulation of genetic materials of living organisms. Molecular biology will play a key role in developing new crops and new uses and capabilities for old crops. This area of study combines biology and agriculture in a novel and exciting way.

Career Opportunities

Crop and Soil Science provides a strong science background that prepares students for employment in technical services, for consulting in agricultural and environmental industries, and for advanced degrees (MS and PhD).

Agribusiness-Production provides students with training and skills for employment in agribusiness management or farm and ranch management.

Environmental Science trains students in knowledge of soil, microbial, and plant systems to solve environmental problems. New technologies in recycling, waste management, and bioremediation are developing, and this major will prepare students for employment in these industries.

Horticultural Science prepares students for employment in the technical service industry, for production and management, and for advanced studies (MS and PhD).

Agribusiness prepares students for employment in agribusiness management. Students may also receive a minor in management from BYU's Marriott School of Management.

Landscape and Urban Horticulture prepares students for careers in landscape design, estate gardening, arboriculture, and nursery and golf course management. Students are also prepared for advanced studies in landscape architecture (MLA).

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements, (2) university requirements, and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course)	0–3.0 hours
(or Math ACT score of at least 22)	
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed for one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Agronomy
Emphases:
- Agribusiness-Production
- Crop and Soil Science
- Environmental Science

BS Horticulture
Emphases:
- Agribusiness
- Horticulture Science
- Landscape and Urban Horticulture

BS Plant Genetics and Breeding

Minors
- Agronomy
- Horticulture

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Note: For the molecular biology program see the Molecular Biology section of this catalog.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Agronomy
MS Horticulture
MS Molecular Biology (collegewide interdisciplinary degree)

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BS Agronomy: Agribusiness-Production Emphasis

(59–60 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in agronomy and horticulture courses.
2. No more than 4 hours of R courses will apply toward graduation.
3. At least 10 hours of agronomy and horticulture major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
4. Complete the following:
   AgHrt 100, 282, 283, 305, 361, 391, 490.
5. Select 5 hours from the following:
   AgHrt 201, 205, 220, 303, 331, 347, 402, 407, 425, 433, 441, 460, 471.
   Biol 150.
   Botny 480.
   Zool 331.
6. Select 1 hour from the following:
   AgHrt 199R, 399R, 493R, 497R.
7. Select one course from the following:
   AgHrt 240.
   CS 130, 142.
8. Complete the following:
   Acc 200†.
   Chem 101, 152.
   Comms 150.
   Econ 110†, 260.
   OrgB 320†.
   Stat 221†.
9. Select one course from the following:
   Aghrt 345.
   Econ 211.
10. Complete the following:
    BusM 300†.
11. Select one course from the following:
    BusM 340†.
    Econ 210.
12. Select one course from the following:
    BusM 371R†, 380R†, 382R†.

†Select these courses for a minor in management.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Agronomy: Crop and Soil Science Emphasis

(63–64 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in agronomy and horticulture courses.
2. No more than 4 hours of R courses will apply toward graduation.
3. At least 10 hours of agronomy and horticulture major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
4. Complete the following:
   AgHrt 100, 282, 283, 303, 305, 331, 361, 407, 491R.
5. Select 10 hours from the following major courses:
   AgHrt 201, 205, 220, 347, 390R, 391, 402, 425, 441, 459, 460, 471, 490.
   Biol 150.
6. Select 1 hour from the following:
   AgHrt 199R, 399R, 493R, 497R.
7. Select one course from the following:
   AgHrt 240.
   CS 130, 142.
8. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 107.
   Stat 221.
9. Select 14 hours from the following supporting courses:
   Biol 276.
   Botny 210, 321, 341, 342, 350, 440, 480.
   Chem 223, 351, 352, 353, 367, 481.
   Geog 101, 405.
   Geol 111, 351, 411.
   Math 112, 113.
   Mcbio 221, 222.
   Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108, 121, 122, 137.
   Zool 331.

Recommended Courses

Comms 150.
Econ 110.
OrgB 320.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Agronomy: Environmental Science Emphasis

(59 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in agronomy and horticulture courses.
2. No more than 4 hours of R courses will apply toward graduation.
3. At least 10 hours of agronomy and horticulture major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
4. Complete the following:
   AgHrt 201, 282, 283, 303, 407, 491R.
   Biol 150.
5. Select 15 hours from the following:
   AgHrt 100, 305, 347, 402, 460, 490, 514.
   Botny 350, 351.
   CEEn 351, 550, 580.
   Geol 404, 435.
   PlSc 535‡, 536‡.
   Range 215, 225.
6. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 107.
   Stat 221.
7. After consulting with an advisor, select 17 hours from the following:
   AgHrt 103**, 205, 240, 317, 320, 331, 390R, 471, 497R.
   Biol 130†.
   Botny 250, 440.
   Chem 223, 351, 352, 353, 367, 481.
   CM 155**.
   Econ 240.
   Geog 101, 212, 310, 412.
   Geol 101, 111.
   Math 112, 113, 312§, 313§.
   Mcbio 221, 222.
   Phil 205‡.
   Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108, 121, 122, 137.
   Zool 260†, 380†, 460†.

Note: Students planning graduate studies in **landscape architecture, medicine, law,** or **engineering** should include, in the 17 hours selected in this category, the courses marked by ** (landscape architecture), † (medicine), ‡ (law), and § (engineering), respectively.

Recommended Courses

Comms 150.
Econ 110.
OrgB 320.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Horticulture: Agribusiness Emphasis

(59–60 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in agronomy and horticulture courses.
2. No more than 4 hours of R courses will apply toward graduation.
3. At least 10 hours of agronomy and horticulture major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
4. Complete the following:
   AgHrt 100, 220, 282, 283, 391, 490.
5. Select 1 hour from the following:
   AgHrt 199R, 399R, 493R, 497R.
6. Select 9 hours from the following:
   AgHrt 103, 112, 201, 205, 210, 305, 317, 318, 319, 320, 331, 347, 390R, 402, 425, 433, 460, 471.
   Biol 150.
   Botny 480.
   Zool 331.
7. Select one course from the following:
   AgHrt 240.
   CS 130, 142.
8. Complete the following:
   Acc 200†.
   Chem 101, 152.
   Comms 150.
   Econ 110†, 260.
   OrgB 320†.
   Stat 221†.
9. Select one course from the following:
   AgHrt 345.
   Econ 211.
10. Complete the following:
    BusM 300†.
11. Select one course from the following:
    BusM 340†.
    Econ 210.
12. Select one course from the following:
    Bus M 371R†, 380R†, 382R†.

†Select these courses for a minor in management.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Horticulture: Horticulture Science Emphasis

(59–61 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in agronomy and horticulture courses.
2. No more than 4 hours of R courses will apply toward graduation.
3. At least 10 hours of agronomy and horticulture major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
4. Complete the following:
   AgHrt 100, 220, 282, 283, 305, 433, 491R.
5. Select 1 hour from the following:
   AgHrt 493R, 497R.
6. Select one of the following options:
   Either Chem 101, 103, 152
   Or Chem 105, 106, 107.
7. Complete the following:
   Stat 221.
8. Select 10 hours from the following:
   AgHrt 201, 205, 210, 317, 318, 319, 320, 331, 361, 390R, 391, 402, 407, 459, 460, 471.
   Biol 150.
9. Select 20 hours from the following:
   Biol 276.
   Botny 205, 210, 321, 341, 342, 350, 440, 480.
   Chem 223, 281, 351, 352, 353, 367, 481.
   Geog 101, 331.
   Geol 101.
   Math 112, 113.
   Mcbio 221, 222.
   Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108; or 121, 122, 137.
   Zool 331.

***Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.**

BS Horticulture: Landscape and Urban Horticulture Emphasis (59–60 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in agronomy and horticulture courses.
2. No more than 4 hours of R courses will apply toward graduation.
3. At least 10 hours of agronomy and horticulture major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
4. Complete the following:
   AgHrt 100, 103, 210, 220, 282, 391, 402.
5. Complete a minimum 1 hour of the following:
   AgHrt 399R.
6. Select one course from the following:
   AgHrt 317, 320.
7. After consulting with an advisor, select 8 hours from the following:
   AgHrt 283, 305, 318, 319, 320, 331, 390R, 433, 471.
   Biol 150.

8. Complete the following:
   Botny 205.
   Chem 101.
   Comms 150.
   RMYL 493.
   TecE 270.
9. After consulting with an advisor, select 16 hours from the following:
   Acc 200.
   Botny 210, 480.
   BusM 300, 371R.
   CEEn 113.
   CM 155, 217, 218, 241, 305, 311, 385, 411, 412, 415, 445.
   Econ 110.
   OrgB 320.
   RMYL 485.
   Stat 221.
   VADes 102.
   VAStu 100, 103, 203R.

Note: Students wishing to obtain a management minor for certification should consult with their departmental faculty advisor.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Plant Genetics and Breeding (60–61 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in agronomy and horticulture courses.
2. No more than 4 hours of R courses will apply toward graduation.
3. At least 10 hours of agronomy and horticulture major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
4. Complete the following core courses:
   AgHrt 282, 459.
   Biol 130.
   Botny 341, 342, 343, 440, 475, 485
5. Select one course from the following:
   AgHrt 100.
   Botny 125
6. Complete the following supporting courses:
   Chem 105, 106, 107, 351, 352.
   Math 119.
7. Select 12 hours from the following:
   AgHrt 205, 220, 283, 305, 331, 361, 433, 490, 514, 540.
   AgHrt–Botny 559.
   Biol 150 (or Botny 350).
   Botny 210, 321, 332, 480, 574.
   Chem 353, 367, 481.
   Mcbio 441, 442.
   MolB 320, 321.

Recommended Courses

Chem 223.
Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Agronomy (17 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   AgHrt 100, 282.
   Biol 150.
2. Select 8 hours of upper-division courses in crop or soil science.

Note: No R-suffix courses are accepted.

Minor Horticulture (17 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   AgHrt 100, 220, 282.
2. Select 8 hours of upper-division courses in horticulture.

Note: No R-suffix courses are accepted.

Agronomy and Horticulture (AgHrt)

Undergraduate Courses

100. Living With Plants. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp
Physiological, morphological, and ecological characteristics of plants used for food, fiber, and aesthetic enhancement.

103. Residential Landscape Design. (3:3:0) W
Design and composition as applied to development of residential grounds.

112. Floral Design. (2:1:2) F, W, Sp
Principles of design and practical methods of arranging flowers and other plant materials for home and professional use. Fee.

†Biology 150. Environmental Biology. (3:3:0) W

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Prerequisite: consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

201. Environmental Agriculture Issues. (1:1:0) W
Current issues relating to food crop production and urban agriculture.

203. (AgHrt-AnSc-FSN) Latin American Food Production and Nutrition. (1:Arr.:0) F
Historical and present indigenous agricultural and nutritional practices throughout Latin America; successes, failures, problems, and solutions.

205. World Food Crops. (3:3:0) F, W Recommended: Biol 100 or 130.
World food crops and their utilization by man; emphasizes origin, biology, ecology, production, and importance of crops as human food sources.

210. Herbaceous Plant Materials. (2:1:2) W
Identification and landscape use of flowers and groundcovers.

†Economics 211. Economics of Agricultural Production. (3:3:0)

220. Plant Growth and Reproduction. (3:2:2) W
Propagation of plants by seeds, cuttings, budding, and grafting.

240. (AgHrt-AnSc) Computer Applications to Agriculture. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp
Personal computer use in agriculture; emphasizes use of tools, languages, and system development.

282. Introduction to Soil Science. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: concurrent registration in AgHrt 283 for all majors. Recommended: one semester of college chemistry and Math 100.
Physical, chemical, and microbiological properties of soils that affect plant growth and crop production.

283. Introduction to Soil Science Laboratory. (1:0:3) F, W Prerequisite: concurrent registration in AgHrt 282. Recommended: Chem 103, Math 100, or equivalent.
Laboratory techniques in determining soil's physical, chemical, and fertility properties.

303. Soil Genesis and Taxonomy. (4:2:4) F Prerequisite: AgHrt 282. Recommended: Geol 111.
Genesis and taxonomy of world soils, including field description and laboratory characterization of soil profiles. Field trips required.

305. Soil Fertility and Plant Nutrition. (4:3:3) W Prerequisite: AgHrt 100, 282, Chem 105 (or 101), Math 110.
Nutrient-supplying power of soils, recognition of nutrient deficiencies/toxicities, adaptation of plants to nutritional stresses, and safe use of fertilizer and soil amendments.

312. Advanced Floral Design. (3:2:3) Prerequisite: AgHrt 112 or instructor's consent.
Theory and principles of artistic design using plant materials. Emphasis on post-harvest physiology and the floral industry network. Fee.

317. Urban Horticulture. (2:2:0) W odd yr. Prerequisite: AgHrt 100.
Selection, ecology, and appraisal of plant material for the urban environment.

318. Greenhouse Management. (4:4:0) F Prerequisite: AgHrt 100.
Construction and management of commercial greenhouses, emphasizing production of major greenhouse crops.

319. Turf Science. (2:1:2) F odd yr Prerequisite: AgHrt 100.
Management of turf relative to climate, soil, and use on the golf course, park, and private areas.

320. Urban Forestry. (3:3:0) W even yr. Prerequisite: AgHrt 100; Botny 205.
Biology and culture of woody plants for use in urban landscapes.

330. (AgHrt-Range) Range and Pasture Plant Ecology. (3:3:3) W
Identification, characteristics, phenology, distribution, site adaptation, forage value, and response to management of significant range and pasture plants.

331. Weed Science. (3:2:3) F Recommended: AgHrt 100, 282.
Principles of weed science; ecology; economic losses; cultural, mechanical, biological, and chemical controls; herbicide characteristics and use.

345. (AgHrt-AnSc-Range) Farm and Ranch Planning and Management. (3:2:2) W
Planning, implementation, and control principles and procedures for managing farm and ranch businesses; accounting and business analysis, budgeting, economic principles, structure; adjusting for risk and uncertainty.

347. (AgHrt-AnSc-Range) Environmental and Agricultural Law. (2:2:0) W
Legal matters that affect agriculture and the environment, including torts, contracts, water, and real property.

361. Crop Science: Production and Management. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: AgHrt 100, 282.
Integration of plant science, crop production, and management principles for optimum yields in cropping systems.

390R. Special Topics in Agriculture. (1–3:1–3:0 ea.) F, W
Various topics of importance in agriculture.

391. Junior Seminar. (1:1:0) F
Current information on internships and career options.

399R. Cooperative Education. (1–4:1–4:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: departmental approval.
Off-campus internship.

402. Water Conservation, Utilization, and Quality. (3:3:0) F
Conserving water in urban and agricultural settings; use of irrigation systems, mulches, low-water-use plants, and waste water recycling; impact of water quality and water pollutants on plants.

407. Environmental Soil Physics. (3:3:0) W odd yr. Prerequisite: AgHrt 282, Chem 101, Math 110.
Soil physical properties, emphasizing principles that govern movement of energy, liquids, solids, and gases into and through soils. Practical applications in agricultural science, emphasizing irrigated soils.

425. Farm and Ranch Appraisal. (3:3:0) F
Principles and concepts of valuation and appraising as they apply to farms and ranches, including a study of the cost, sales comparison, and income approaches.

433. Pomology and Olericulture. (4:4:0) F Prerequisite: AgHrt 100, 220.
Fundamentals of selection, cultural practices, harvesting, storing, and marketing of fruits and vegetables in temperate zones.

441. (AgHrt-Range) Harvested Forage Crops. (2:2:0) F odd yr.
Principles of production, mechanical harvesting, storage, and utilization of forage crops.

459. (AgHrt-Botny) Plant Breeding. (3:3:0) F odd yr. Prerequisite: Biol 276 or Botny 341.
Genetics and methods of plant breeding related to improving agronomic and horticultural crops.

460. Sustainable Agriculture. (3:3:0) W Recommended: AgHrt 282 or equivalent.
Agronomic and environmental principles in relation to soil and water conservation. Applying best management practices of conventional, maximum yield, and other sustainable systems.

466. (AgHrt-Range) Rangeland Vegetation Improvement. (3:2:3) F odd yr. Recommended: Range 330, 354.
Habitat improvement for domestic and wild animals. Plant control by mechanical equipment, herbicides, and prescribed fire. Revegetation and reclamation of disturbed lands. Field trips required.

471. Pest Management. (2:2:0) W Recommended: AgHrt 100.
Cultural, chemical, and biological control of pests of horticultural and field crops; emphasizes safe use of pesticides.

485. (AgHrt-Botny) Plant Biotechnology. (3:2:3) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Biol 130.
Introduction to methodology of modern plant biotechnology.

490. Case Studies—Management and Environment. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: Departments of Agronomy and Horticulture, Animal Science, and Range core courses. Recommended: only for senior students in the Agribusiness and Environmental Science Emphases.
Contemporary agriculture and environmental problems using case studies dealing with industry structure, technology, global competition, cost-profit relationships, and interacting environmental issues.

491R. Undergraduate Seminar. (1:1:0 ea.) W
Current information in agronomy and horticulture.

493R. Selected Agricultural Production Practices. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) W odd yr. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Extended field course to acquaint students with economic and production problems and practices in important commercial agricultural areas.

497R. Special Problems. (1–2:2:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Seniors specializing in agronomy or horticulture conduct research on a selected problem.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

501R. (AgHrt-AnSc-FSN) Village Agriculture and Nutrition in Latin America. (1:Arr.:0 ea.) W Prerequisite: experience in Latin American and/or in issues relative to the seminar.
Problems, successes, failures, and challenges facing those who work in agricultural research, training, and development related to small-scale farmers.

511. Soil Physics. (3:3:0) W even yr. Prerequisite: AgHrt 282, Chem 105, Math 112 or 119; or equivalent. Recommended: Phscs 105 or 121, or equivalent.
Physical relationships of water, heat, and gases in soils; physical and chemical properties of clays. Mathematical modeling of physical properties and transport processes.

514. Soil Microbiology. (3:2:3) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Chem 106, 107, or equivalent.
Ecology and role of soil microorganisms in nutrient cycling, decomposition of organic matter and waste materials, and degradation of agricultural chemicals in soil.

520. Saline and Sodic Soils. (3:2:3) F even yr. Prerequisite: AgHrt 305, Chem 105, 106, 107, or equivalent.
Physical and chemical properties of saline and sodic soils and irrigation waters—their diagnosis, reclamation, and management for sustainable crop production.

540. Crop Physiology. (3:3:0) F even yr. Prerequisite: Botny 440 or equivalent.
Plant-soil-climate relationships; crop management practices related to physiological processes in plants.

550. Developmental Plant Physiology. (3:3:0) F odd yr. Prerequisite: Botny 440 or equivalent.
Developmental phenomena in higher plants, emphasizing seed physiology, plant growth regulation, and plant stress responses.

559. (AgHrt-Botny) Advanced Plant Breeding and Biotechnology. (3:3:0) W even yr. Prerequisite: Botny 341 or equivalent; AgHrt/Botny 459 or equivalent. Recommended: AgHrt/Botny 485 or equivalent.
Genetics and methods of plant breeding and biotechnology related to improving agronomic and horticultural crops.

560. Soil and Plant Analysis. (3:2:4) W Prerequisite: AgHrt 282 or equivalent.
Laboratory chemical analysis of soils and plant materials in soil and plant research.

573. (AgHrt-Botny) Plant Cytogenetics. (3:2:3) F odd yr. Prerequisite: Botny 341, 342, 343; AgHrt-Botny 559; or equivalent.
Plant chromosome morphology and structure, polyploidy, aneuploidy, replication and endoreduplication, classical and molecular cytogenetic analytical methods, chromosome evolution, and chromosome engineering.

595. Agricultural Experimentation: Design and Analysis. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: Stat 221 or 510 or equivalent.
Planning, experimental design, and techniques of analysis in agricultural research.

598R. Advanced Topics in Agronomy and Horticulture. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.)

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Agronomy and Horticulture Faculty

Professors
Horrocks, Rodney Dwain (1978) BS, Brigham Young U., 1962; MS, PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1964, 1967.
Jeffery, Larry S. (1984) BS, Utah State U, 1962; PhD, North Dakota State U., 1966.
Jolley, Von Dale (1977) BS, Brigham Young U., 1970; MS, PhD, Iowa State U. of Science and Technology, 1974, 1976.
Nelson, Sheldon D. (1972) BS, Brigham Young U., 1967; PhD, U. of California, Riverside, 1971.
Terry, Richard Ellis (1980) BS, Brigham Young U., 1972; MS, PhD, Purdue U., 1974, 1976.
Williams, C. Frank (1971) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1967, 1968; PhD, Oregon State U., 1971.

Associate Professor
Allen, Phil S. (1990) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1985; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1990.
Ellsworth, D. Delos (1975) BS, Arizona State U., 1958; MS, Cornell U., 1959.

Assistant Professors
Jellen, Eric N. (1996) BS, Brigham Young U., 1986; MS, PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1988, 1992.
Stevens, Mikel R. (1994) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1983; PhD, U. of Arkansas, 1993.

Senior Scientist
Webb, Bruce L. (1978) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1978.

Part-Time Faculty
Hunter, Norah T. (1983) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1982, 1992.

Adjunct Professors
Brown, Seeley, Thorup, Walker, Wallace

Emeriti
Allred, R. Chase (1955) BS, Brigham Young U., 1948; MS, Kansas State U., 1949; PhD, U. of Nebraska, Lincoln, 1952.
Ashton, Clarence D. (1951) BS, Brigham Young U., 1929.
Reimschussel, Ernest F. (1941) BA, MS, Brigham Young U., 1940, 1951.
Robison, Laren R. (1971) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1959; PhD, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1962.

American Heritage (AHtg)

100. American Heritage. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also.

Synthesis of American constitutional and economic principles, and patterns of historical development.

American Indian Languages

See Linguistics.

American Sign Language

See Linguistics.

American Studies

See Kennedy Center for International Studies, David M.

Ancient Scripture

See Religious Education in Academic Departments, Degrees, and Courses section of this catalog.

Animal Science

Richard N. Thwaits, Chair
375 WIDB, PO Box 25182, (801) 378-4294

College of Biology and Agriculture Advisement Center
380 WIDB, PO Box 25189, (801) 378-3042

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Animal Science are open enrollment.

The Discipline

Agribusiness-Production provides both breadth and depth in science and business for farm and ranch management and related agribusiness vocations, e.g., sales, banking institutions, state and federal government agencies, etc.

Veterinary Technology combines science and technology to prepare students for careers at veterinary clinics, research laboratories, etc.

Science–Preveterinary Medicine and **Molecular Biology** are the emphases for students needing a strong science background as they prepare for professional schools and advanced degrees.

Career Opportunities

The various curricula in the Department of Animal Science offer specialization and employment opportunities for the following: (1) livestock management and production; (2) meat, dairy, and food processing; (3) sales consulting and representing agricultural businesses; (4) animal health technology, assisting the veterinary practice and related fields; (5) advanced study to graduate and veterinary schools; and (6) working with federal and state agencies (extension, meat grading and inspection, etc.).

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements, (2) university requirements, and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed for one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Animal Science
Emphases:
- Agribusiness-Production
- Cellular Physiology and Genetics
- Veterinary Technology
- Science–Preveterinary Medicine

Minor Animal Science

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Note: For the molecular biology program see the Molecular Biology section of this catalog.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Animal Science
MS Molecular Biology (collegewide interdisciplinary degree)
PhD Molecular Biology (collegewide interdisciplinary degree)

For more information see the 1998–99 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

1. Transfer students majoring in animal science must earn at least half their credits in their major field while in residence at Brigham Young University. Transfer students should see an advisor before enrolling in lower-division courses.
2. Preveterinary students will find special instructions listed in the Preprofessional Programs section of this catalog.
3. Students planning to attend a veterinary school or graduate school after completing their work at BYU may select either the science or molecular biology major. Fulfilling the required courses for these majors will usually meet the science requirements for postgraduate work. Please note, however, that each school has its own specific course requirements for admission. Students should check with their advisor for details.
4. Students who desire horsemanship skills in handling, grooming, health management, feeding, equipment, judging and selection, hauling, trail riding, breeding, training, showing, and organizing and directing horse shows may obtain a suggested course sequence from the Department of Animal Science.

BS Animal Science: Agribusiness-Production Emphasis (66 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Only 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses is allowed.
3. Complete the following:
   AnSc 100, 121, 122, 207, 212, 240, 307, 492.
4. Complete 2 hours from the following:
   AnSc 399R.
5. Select two courses from the following:
   AnSc 310, 312, 315, 321, 325.
6. Complete the following:
   Econ 110, 210, 260.
   Acc 200.
   Stat 221.
   BusM 300, 340.
   OrgB 320.
7. Complete the following:
   Chem 101, 152, 281.
8. Select one course from the following:
   AnSc 345.
   Econ 211.
9. Select one course from the following:
   BusM 371R, 380R, 382R.
10. Select 4 hours from the following:
    AnSc 400, 405, 410, 415, 425, 430.

Recommended Courses

AgHrt 282.
AnSc 221, 347.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Animal Science: Cellular Physiology and Genetics (60 hours*)

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Only 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses is allowed.
3. Complete the following:
   AnSc 121, 122, 207, 212, 310, 315, 492.
   Biol 130.
4. Complete the following:
   Either Zool 371, 372, 373, 374
   Or Botny 341, 342, 343.
5. Select 4 hours from the following:
   AnSc 400, 405, 415, 420, 425, 430.
6. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 351, 352.
   Math 119.
7. Select 9 hours from the following:
   AnSc 307, 312, 321, 325, 464, 510.
   AnSc-Botny 574.
   AgHrt-Botny 559.
   Chem 107, 353, 367, 481.
   Mcbio 441, 442.
   MolB 320, 321.
   Stat 221.

Recommended Courses

AnSc-AgHrt 240.
Chem 223.
Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Animal Science: Veterinary Technology Emphasis (68–71 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Only 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses is allowed.
3. Complete the following:
   AnSc 100, 121, 122, 207, 212, 240, 492.
4. Select two courses from the following:
   AnSc 310, 312, 315, 321, 325.
5. Select one course from the following:
   AnSc 400, 405, 410, 415, 420, 425, 430.
6. Complete the following:
   AnSc 308.
   Mcbio 221, 222.
   Zool 318.
7. Complete 4 hours from the following:
   AnSc 359R.
8. Complete the following:
   Chem 101, 152, 281.
9. Complete the following:
   AnSc 250, 251, 353, 355, 356, 357, 358, 391, 480, 481.
10. Select one course from the following:
    Biol 100, 130.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Animal Science: Science–Preveterinary Medicine Emphasis (66.5–69.5 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Only 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses is allowed.
3. Complete the following:
   AnSc 100, 121, 122, 207, 212, 240, 291R, 492.
4. Complete the following:
   Either Zool 371, 372, 373
   Or Botny 341, 342.
5. Complete the following:
   Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108.
6. Select two courses from the following:
   AnSc 310, 312, 315, 321, 325.
7. Select one course from the following:
   AnSc 400, 405, 410, 415, 420, 425, 430.
8. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 351, 352, 353, 481.
9. Select one course from the following:
   AnSc 307, 308.

10. Complete the following:
    Mcbio 221, 222.
    Stat 221.

Recommended Courses

Note: The following courses are required by several veterinary colleges:
AnSc 251.
Chem 107.
Comms 150.
Zool 204, 318, 484.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Animal Science (15 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   AnSc 121, 122, 207.
2. Select two classes from the following:
   AnSc 307, 308, 310, 312, 315, 321.
3. Select one class from the following:
   AnSc 325, 400, 405, 410, 415, 420, 425.

Animal Science (AnSc)

Undergraduate Courses

100. Agricultural Orientation. (1:1:0) F
Planning a successful career in agriculture: selecting curriculum, setting goals, and developing study habits and personal traits. Historical review of American agricultural education and research.

121. Principles of Animal Production. (3:3:0) F, W
Introduction to principles and practices of livestock and animal product industries, including small animals.

122. Principles of Animal Production Laboratory. (1:0:3) F, W Prerequisite: AnSc 121 or concurrent registration.
Laboratory demonstrations of principles and practices of livestock and animal product industries, including small animals. Veterinary skills emphasized.

124. (AnSc-PE) Equitation (Horsemanship). (0.5:0:2) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: rider weight limit of 200 lbs. or instructor's consent.
Handling, grooming, saddling, and suppling horse and rider. Western and English theory used, emphasizing the independent seat and use of aids. Fee.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: consent of cooperative education coordinator.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

203. (AnSc-AgHrt-FSN) Latin American Food Production and Nutrition. (1:Arr.:0) F
Historical and present indigenous agricultural and nutritional practices throughout Latin America; successes, failures, problems and solutions.

207. Principles of Animal Nutrition. (3:3:0) F
Digestive system, digestive physiology, and nutrient metabolism of animals.

212. Comparative Animal Physiology and Anatomy. (4:3:2) F
Structure and functions of the animal body.

221. Livestock and Meat Evaluation and Selection. (3:2:4) F
Live animal and carcass evaluation of beef cattle, sheep, and swine; live dairy cattle and horse judging.

231R. Intermediate Equitation. (1:0.5:3 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: AnSc 124.
Schooling movements; use of aids; horse show and gymkhana events. Training techniques using Western and English theory. Fee.

240. (AnSc-AgHrt) Computer Applications to Agriculture. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp
Personal computer use in agriculture; emphasizes use of tools, languages, and system development.

250. Applied Office Procedures. (1:1:0) F
Veterinary terminology, animal breed identification, client relations, and office procedures for the veterinary technician.

251. Animal Restraint and First Aid. (1:0:1) W
Restraint and first aid techniques for pet, laboratory, domestic, and wild animals.

291R. Veterinary Medicine Seminar. (0.5:1:0 ea.) W
Preview into veterinary medicine as a profession. Application procedure and preparation for veterinary school.

307. Applied Animal Nutrition. (3:2:2) F even yr. Prerequisite: AnSc 207.
Principles of formulating feeds.

308. Pet and Laboratory Animal Nutrition. (2:2:0) F odd yr. Prerequisite: AnSc 207.
Nutrition and feeding principles of dogs, cats, horses, and laboratory animals.

310. Reproductive Physiology. (3:2:2) F Prerequisite: AnSc 212 or Zool 204 or equivalents.
Overview of biological principles and mechanisms regulating reproduction in animals.

312. Principles of Animal Disease. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: AnSc 212 or equivalent.
Principles of disease in domestic animals with emphasis on organ systems affected; prevention and control measures.

315. Genetics of Domestic Animals. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Math 100 or equivalent; Biol 100 or equivalent.
Molecular genetics, gene regulation, Mendelian genetics, genes in population, livestock improvement, and systems of breeding.

321. Growth, Composition, and Products. (3:2:2) W Prerequisite: AnSc 207, 212.
Physiological mechanisms and principles that explain growth and composition, lactation, and fiber production in domestic animals.

325. Principles of Meat. (3:2:3) F, Sp
Eating quality, grades, selection, preparation, and preservation of meat. Laboratory experiences in slaughtering, retail cutting, and further processing.

328. Meat Processing Methods. (3:2:3) W
Science and techniques of meat preservation, including cured products; varieties of fresh, cooked, and dry sausages; jerky.

331R. Advanced Equitation. (1:0.5:3 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: AnSc 231R or instructor's consent.
Learning and teaching western horsemanship skills and all aspects of handling and training horses. Fee.

345. (AnSc-AgHrt-Range) Farm and Ranch Planning and Management. (3:2:2) W
Planning, implementation, and control principles and procedures for managing farm and ranch businesses; accounting and business analysis, budgeting, economic principles, structure; adjusting for risk and uncertainty.

347. (AnSc-AgHrt-Range) Environmental and Agricultural Law. (2:2:0) W
Legal matters that affect agriculture and the environment, including torts, contracts, water, and real property.

353. Diseases of Companion and Laboratory Animals. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: AnSc 212, 250.
Emphasis on infectious diseases of dogs and cats, rabbit and rodent husbandry, pet herd health and care.

355. Veterinary Diagnostic Imaging. (2:1:3) F Prerequisite: AnSc 212, 250, 251.
Application of radiology, ultrasound, endoscopy, and electrocardiography, as it pertains to the veterinary technologist.

356. Veterinary Pharmacology. (2:1:3) F Prerequisite: concurrent registration in AnSc 355.
Application of the drugs commonly used in veterinary medicine with emphasis on calculating dosages, mechanisms of action, toxicity and interactions.

357. Veterinary Anesthesiology. (2:1:3) W Prerequisite: AnSc 356.
Application of injectables and inhalant anesthetic agents with emphasis on preanesthetic agents, monitoring the patient, regulation of controlled substances, and maintenance of equipment.

358. Veterinary Surgical Assistance. (2:1:3) W Prerequisite: concurrent registration in AnSc 357.
Surgical technology, operating room etiquette, instrument identification, surgical preparation and sterilization techniques for the veterinary technologist.

359R. Veterinary Technology Preceptorship. (1–4:0:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Supervised on-the-job training in a veterinary clinic.

391. Veterinary Technology Laboratory Methods. (3:2:2) W Prerequisite: AnSc 353, Mcbio 221, 222.
Laboratory procedures for veterinary technicians; specimen collection, handling, processing, and evaluation.

392R. Preveterinary Preceptorship. (1–2:0:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Supervised on-the-job exposure to veterinary medicine under a clinical setting, supplemented with academic assignments.

399R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: consent of cooperative education coordinator.
On-the-job experience in livestock or meat production practices, veterinary medicine, or research. On- and off-campus opportunities.

400. Beef Production and Management Systems. (2:1:3) F Prerequisite: core courses or instructor's consent.
Developing beef management systems.

405. Dairy Production and Management Systems. (3:2:3) W Prerequisite: core courses or instructor's consent.
Developing dairy management systems.

410. Horse Production and Management Systems. (3:2:2) W Prerequisite: AnSc 124, core courses, or instructor's consent.
Developing horse management systems.

415. Poultry Science. (2:2:1) F even yr. Prerequisite: core courses or instructor's consent.
Genetics, physiology, breeding, nutrition, diseases, management systems, and marketing of poultry products.

420. Sheep and Wool Production and Management Systems. (2:1:2) W Prerequisite: core courses or instructor's consent.
Developing sheep and wool management systems.

425. Swine Production and Management Systems. (2:1:3) F odd yr. Prerequisite: core courses or instructor's consent.
Developing swine management systems.

430. Comparative Livestock Production. (4:3:2) W Prerequisite: AnSc 207, 212.
Compares genetic selection, breeding, reproduction, nutrition, health, and products of the swine, beef, dairy, sheep and poultry industries.

431R. Advanced Topics in Livestock and Meat Evaluation. (1–2:0:3 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
In-depth work in livestock evaluation and selection and meat judging. Includes animal and carcass grading and participation in intercollegiate livestock and meat judging contests. Field trips required.

432R. Dairy Cattle Evaluation and Selection. (1–2:0:3 ea.) F, Sp Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Evaluation and selection of cows and heifers of the five major U.S. breeds. Identification of superior sires by record analysis. Participation in intercollegiate dairy cattle judging contests. Field trips required.

463. Artificial Insemination of Farm Animals. (2:1:2) F Prerequisite: AnSc 310.
Advantages and disadvantages of various techniques of artificial insemination of farm animals presented, discussed, and practiced. Collecting, processing, and care of semen.

464. Reproductive Management of Farm Animals. (3:1:6) W Prerequisite: AnSc 310.
Application of management principles associated with artificial insemination, estrus synchronization, embryo transfer, pregnancy detection, and record management.

480. Senior Clinics. (3:1:6) F, Sp Prerequisite: AnSc 353, 358, 391.
Advanced techniques for the veterinary technologist with emphasis on equine, dairy, beef, sheep, swine and companion animals.

481. Senior Preceptorship. (3:1:6) W, Su Prerequisite: AnSc 480.
Advanced training in either a clinical setting, research facility, or diagnostic laboratory.

491R. Advanced Topics of Animal Science. (0.5–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su on dem. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Advanced topics in nutrition, genetics, reproduction, animal diseases, livestock production management, laboratory animal studies, and biotechnology.

492. Seminar. (1:1:0) F, W
Critical examination of current literature in animal science and industry.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

+Statistics 501, 502. Statistics for Research Workers 1, 2. (5:5:0 ea.)

+Zoology 503. Research Orientation. (1:1:0)

+Zoology 504. Research Methodology. (1:0:3)

501R. (AnSc-AgHrt-FSN) Village Agriculture and Nutrition in Latin America. (1:Arr.:0 ea.) W Prerequisite: experience in Latin America and/or in issues relative to the seminar.
Problems, successes, failures, and challenges facing those who work in agricultural research, training, and development related to small-scale farmers.

507. Advanced Animal Nutrition. (4:3:3) W Prerequisite: AnSc 207; Chem 152, 181.
Functions of nutrients in metabolism; methods for assessing nutrient utilization and requirements.

510. Advanced Reproductive Physiology. (4:4:0) F Prerequisite: AnSc 310 or equivalent.
Molecular, biochemical, and hormonal regulation of processes controlling reproduction in mammalian species.

520. Case Studies in Animal Production. (3:2:2) W 1st blk. Prerequisite: BS in animal science, with agribusiness emphasis.
Case studies that require students to solve problems in animal production dealing with nutrition, reproduction, genetics, health, and product processing.

525. Case Studies in International Animal Production. (3:2:2) F Prerequisite: BS in animal science, with agribusiness emphasis.
Case problems in international animal production both in villages and on large-scale farms dealing with nutrition, reproduction, genetics, health, and product processing.

530. Management of National Animal Industries. (2:2:0) W 1st blk. Prerequisite: BS in animal science, with agribusiness emphasis.
Principles of accounting, finance, marketing, and human relations incorporated with animal science principles in solving management problems in animal industries.

535. Management of International Animal Industries. (2:2:0) W 1st blk. Prerequisite: BS in animal science, with agribusiness emphasis.
Principles of accounting, finance, marketing, and human relations incorporated with animal science principles in solving management problems in international animal agriculture.

545. Essentials for Animal Research. (1:1:Arr.) F, Sp Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Regulations for use of laboratory animals. Animal care and use relative to husbandry, blood sampling, drugs, and anesthesia.

571. Animal Biotechnology. (2:0:6) W Prerequisite: Zool 373 or Botny 342 or Mcbio 441; Chem 481; or equivalents.
Applying molecular biology to animal science. Practical experience in laboratory techniques related to biotechnology.

574. (AnSc-Botny) Introduction to Population Genetics. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: introductory courses in genetics and statistics.
Quantitative study of factors influencing changes in gene frequencies in natural and domestic animal and plant populations.

591R. Selected Topics in Animal Science. (0.5–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

595R. Special Problems in Animal Science. (0.5–2:0:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

599R. Cooperative Education. (2–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: approval from department cooperative education coordinator.
On-the-job experience in livestock or meat production practices, veterinary medicine, or research. On- or off-campus opportunities.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Animal Science Faculty

Professors

Johnston, N. Paul (1971) BA, Brigham Young U., 1966; MS, Oregon State U., 1967; MBA, U. of Utah, 1969; PhD, Oregon State U., 1971.

Orme, Leon E. (1969) BS, Utah State U., 1953; MS, U. of Tennessee, Knoxville, 1955; PhD, Michigan State U., 1958.

Roeder, Beverly L. (1990) BA, Wittenberg U., 1978; DVM, Ohio State U., 1982; MS, Kansas State U., 1986; PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1990.

Thwaits, Richard N. (1990) BS, MS, New Mexico State U., 1974, 1977; DVM, Colorado State U., 1981; PhD, U. of Georgia, 1991.

Associate Professor

Kellems, Richard O. (1986) BS, Brigham Young U., 1969; MS, PhD, Oregon State U., 1975, 1976.

Assistant Professors

Kooyman, David L. (1997) BS, MS, California State Polytechnic U., Pomona, 1982, 1986; PhD, Ohio U., 1993.

Knowles, John E. (1993) BS, DVM, MS, Colorado State U., 1987, 1991, 1993.

Robinson, Todd F. (1996) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1986, 1988; PhD, Cornell U., 1996.

Silcox, Roy W. (1992) BS, Brigham Young U., 1981; MS, PhD, North Carolina State U., 1984, 1986.

Special Instructor

Hawkins, Ernest W. (1976) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1984; PhD, U. of Wyoming, 1988.

Adjunct Professors

Bagley, Clark, Cole, Davis, DeGering, Moody

Emeriti

Gardner, Robert W. (1966) BS, Utah State U., 1958; MS, PhD, Cornell U., 1962, 1964.

Hoopes, Keith H. (1957) BS, Utah State U., 1957; DVM, Washington State U., 1956.

Pace, Ronald T. (1961) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1958.

Park, Robert L. (1965) BS, Brigham Young U., 1956; MS, PhD, Cornell U., 1958, 1962.

Shumway, R. Phil (1949) BS, Utah State U., 1947; MS, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1949; PhD, Utah State U., 1959.

Shupe, Merrill Grant (1980) DVM, Washington State U., 1956.

Wallentine, Max V. (1962) BS, Utah State U., 1955; MS, PhD, Cornell U., 1956, 1960.

Anthropology

John P. Hawkins, Chair
945 SWKT, PO Box 25522, (801) 378-3058

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
2254 SFLC, PO Box 26797, (801) 378-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All undergraduate degree programs in the Department of Anthropology are open enrollment.

The Discipline

Anthropology's central aims are to describe, interpret, and make meaningful human behavior in sociocultural systems. It also seeks to explain the similarities and differences in human behavior patters among all peoples and cultures, both in the present and the past. Social and cultural anthropology study human society in the present, using participant-observation, interviewing, and other techniques to understand the full round of life in a single culture, a subculture, or a multicultural system. Archaeology provides methods for learning about the world's peoples who are no longer living; thus it is an important part of the anthropological family of special skills and interests.

Career Opportunities

Distinctive contributions are made by both anthropology and archaeology majors, and therefore jobs are available wherever social and cultural differences or social system complexity create difficulties. Social services, businesses, schools, development projects, medicine, and law all offer significant careers, and recent concern with environmental protection has opened up others. University teaching and research positions are limited in growth, but highly qualified students can find positions after obtaining the PhD degree from first-rank schools.

For archaeology majors, both legal and societal interest in understanding and preserving the past have resulted in increased job opportunities in state and national agencies required to observe recent preservation laws and in private corporations serving this end.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements, (2) university requirements, and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed for one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA	Anthropology
BA	Anthropology (Sociocultural double major)
Minor	Anthropology

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA Anthropology

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

1. Each student wishing to major in anthropology should arrange through the department office to counsel with a faculty advisor and prepare a proposed sequence of study. Following this, the student should meet with the department chair for final approval of the program.
2. Undergraduate students are allowed some, but not excessive, specialization.
3. All degrees are in the field of anthropology.
4. No D credit is applicable to any degree program.

Special Opportunities for Field Study

The department offers a number of unusual curriculum and field study opportunities. Students interested in Pacific Island studies are encouraged to spend a semester or two at BYU—Hawaii, where this area of study is well represented. Selected courses are regularly counted toward BYU's major. Consult with the department chair or your faculty advisor about equivalences.

The department offers several field school opportunities. Archaeology students complete their requirement in the field school held in Capitol Reef National Park. Cultural anthropology students complete their field project individually (in the U.S. or out of the country) or they may attend field schools held in Guatemala, India, or Namibia.

BA Anthropology (48 hours*)

Major Requirements for Archaeology Option

1. Complete the following:
   Anthr 101, 110, 215, 300, 309.
2. Complete the following:
   Anthr 205, 305, 405.
3. Select 3 hours from the following:
   Anthr 351, 378, 385, 390R, 580, 590R.
4. Select 3 hours from the following:
   Anthr 350, 355, 365, 372, 374, 380, 390R, 530, 535, 540, 562, 564, 565, 566, 572, 574, 590R.
5. Select 9 hours from the following:
   Anthr 349, 430, 431, 432, 435, 436, 438, 439, 440, 447, 490R, 515, 520, 575.
6. Complete the following:
   Anthr 454R, 455R, 456R.

Major Requirements for Sociocultural Option

1. Complete the following:
   Anthr 101, 110, 300, 309.
2. Complete the following:
   Anthr 205, 305, 405.
3. Select 6 hours from the following:
   Anthr 317, 326, 330, 335, 340, 343, 345, 346, 390R, 566, 568.
4. Select 12 hours from the following:
   Anthr 349, 430, 431, 432, 435, 436, 438, 439, 440, 447, 490R, 515, 520, 575.
5. Select 3 additional hours from items 3 or 4 above.
6. Complete the following:
   Anthr 442, 495.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Anthropology (Sociocultural Double Major) (33 hours*)

The 33-hour sociocultural major is designed to accommodate the varying interests of students from a range of other disciplines, but it is only available to students completing an additional major in another field. Its purpose is to allow students with other majors to add the perspectives that anthropology is uniquely qualified to provide.

Major Requirements

1. Complete all requirements of a primary major or the premedical or predental track. Double counting courses between primary major and anthropology will not be allowed.
2. Complete the following:
   Anthr 101, 309, 442, 495.
3. Select 9 hours from the following:
   Anthr 205, 305, 405, 505.
4. Select 6 hours from the following:
   Anthr 317, 326, 330, 340, 343, 345, 390R, 568, 585.
5. Select 6 hours from the following:
   Anthr 349, 430, 431, 432, 435, 436, 438, 439, 440, 447, 490R, 520.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Anthropology (16 hours)

Complete 16 hours of department courses, with no more than two courses in addition to Anthr 108R from lower-division courses offerings.

Anthropology (Anthr)

Undergraduate Courses

101. Social/Cultural Anthropology. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Aspects of society and culture: kinship, beliefs, economy, and political order among peoples worldwide. Methods and perspectives used in social/cultural anthropology.

108R. Anthropological Films. (1:0:2 ea.) F, W
Examination of other cultures through ethnographic or archaeological film. Can be taken separately or concurrently with Anthr 101 or 110.

110. Introduction to Archaeology. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Review of great archaeological discoveries about the ancient world. Overview of world prehistory.

205. Foundations of Anthropological Theory. (3:3:0) W
Founders of social and cultural theory and their thought: Darwin, Marx, Weber, Durkhem, Freud, or others up to circa 1920.

207. Experiments in Ancient Technology. (3:1:2) F odd yr.
Processes by which tools and other objects were produced anciently; experimental reproduction and use of ancient tools.

215. Introduction to Archaeology: Method and Theory. (3:3:0) W
Field and analytic methods and their relevance to data acquisition; use of theory and the relation of theory to methods.

280. Archaeology and the Scriptures. (3:3:0) Evening Classes only.
The Bible and the Book of Mormon compared with archaeological findings on early civilizations.

300. Biological Anthropology. (3:3:0) W
Relationships between human biology, environment, social structure, and culture. Concepts and data on race, primates, evolution, population genetics, growth, and sociobiology.

301. Human Osteology. (2:1:2) F even yr.
Identification and treatment of skeletal material found in archaeological excavations.

305. Anthropological Theory 2. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Anthr 205.
Major contributions to development of anthropological theory, circa 1920–1950.

309. Language in Culture and Society. (3:3:0) F
Sociocultural categories and processes as expressed through, and determined by, language. Semiotics: language as sign system. Ethnosemantics, syntactic analysis, translation problems, ethnography of speaking/communication.

312. Intercultural Communication. (3:3:0) F, W
Communication processes as affected by proxemic, kinesic, linguistic, social, institutional, worldview, and value differences and other aspects of culture. Seminar/workshop: theory, research methods, applications.

317. Native Peoples of North America. (3:3:0) F
Indian groups at the time of the European arrival; social organization, beliefs, values, economy, and adaptation to environment.

326. Central American Society. (3:2:Arr.) F
History, culture, society, and life among peoples of Mexico and Central America.

330. Peoples of Africa. (3:3:0) F and W odd yr.
Political, economic, and social organization, family life, language, worldview, religion, ritual, artistic expression, ecological adaptation, and contemporary development issues among rural and urban sub-Saharan peoples.

335. Peoples of India. (3:3:0) Sp
Society and culture on Indian subcontinent. Stratification, kinship, marriage, religion, politics, economics.

340. Peoples of the Middle East. (3:3:0) W
Ecology, social organization, and beliefs of nomadic, rural, and urban groups between western Africa and Pakistan.

343. Chinese Culture and Society. (3:3:0) F
Cultural and social institutions of traditional and modern China, including Mainland China, Taiwan, Hong Kong, or other areas of Chinese impact.

345. American Culture. (3:2:Arr.)
Unity and diversity in U.S. life. Social/cultural change processes illustrated and analyzed. Anthropological study of complex cultures. Seminar-type course involves substantial reading, writing, discussion.

346. Anthropology of Mormonism. (3:3:0) W even yr.
Intensive analysis of Mormon society and culture using a range of anthropological perspectives.

349. Museums and Culture. (3:3:0) W odd yr.
Museums in society. Cultural foundations of museum content and sociology of museum use. Analyzing museum studies literature with on-site visits to area museums.

350. Archaeological Cultures of North America. (3:3:0) W
Cultural developments of North American Indians (Canada, U.S., and northern Mexico) before Columbus.

351. Archaeology and the Bible. (3:3:0) F even yr.
Setting and context of the Bible as clarified and supplemented from archaeology, history, and related studies. Archaeological methods.

355. Mesoamerican Archaeology. (3:2:Arr.) F
Cultural-environment bases of ancient civilizations in Mexico and Central America. Olmec, Maya, Toltec, and Aztec cultures.

365. South American Archaeology. (3:3:0) F odd yr.
Archaeological history of South America: Peru, Bolivia, and Ecuador.

372. Ancient Mayan Writing 1. (3:3:0) F even yr.
Nature and content of Mayan hieroglyphic writing, from A.D. 100 to 1600. Methods of decipherment, introduction to textual analysis, and application to interpreting Mayan language, art, world view, and society. Literacy and the Mesoamerican background of Mayan script.

374. Ancient Mayan Writing 2. (3:3:0) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Anthr 372.
Advanced study of Mayan hieroglyphic writing. Guided workshop focusing on inscriptions, rituals, dynastic history, and linguistic records from major Mayan cities. Archaeological setting and preparation of technical commentaries emphasized.

378. Near Eastern Archaeology. (3:2:Arr.) W odd yr.
Peoples and culture history in Mesopotamia, Syria, Palestine, Egypt, 3500–500 B.C. Substantial reading, writing, discussion.

380. Historical Archaeology. (3:2:Arr.) W odd yr.
Archaeological study, excavation, and restoration of sites like Nauvoo and Williamsburg. Substantial reading, writing, and discussion.

385. Ancient Peoples and Cultures of Europe: The Origins of European Civilization. (3:3:0) F odd yr.
European culture and archaeology from initial settlement to Vikings. Agriculture, political organization, urban settlement, population movement, early astronomy, religious development. Bronze and Iron Ages, Roman expansion.

390R. Special Topics in Regional Anthropology. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) On dem.
Subjects related to a particular area or people. Offered when unique opportunities or needs arise.

405. Anthropological Theory 3. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Anthr 205, 305.
Major contributions to development of anthropological theory, circa 1950–1980.

420. Language and Cultural Insight. (3:3:0) F, W
Students will demonstrate language competence and increase cultural awareness using an "uncommon language." Interview, analysis, and writing skills emphasized. Document will be in uncommon language with translation and report in English.

430. Moral and Ritual Institutions. (3:3:0) F even yr.
Anthropological approaches to religion; its content and relation to other social institutions in societies ranging from gatherers to industrialists.

431. The Family, Marriage, and Kinship. (3:3:0) W
Nature of kinship; parent-child, sibling, grandparental relationships. Genealogical basis of society: family, lineage, clan, kindred organization. Marital status; in-law relations; joking and avoidance behavior; divorce.

432. Political and Legal Institutions. (3:3:0) F odd yr.
Power, politics, law, the state, rebellion and revolution, warfare, hegemony, etc., in simple and complex societies as approached from social theory and anthropology.

435. The Anthropology of Art: Images, Ideas, and Craft in the Non-Western World. (3:3:0) W odd yr.
Comparative study of Western and non-Western traditions of beauty, artistic creation, images, myth, and ritual. Social, semiotic, and political functions of art. Colonial and modern interactions.

436. Symbolic Anthropology. (3:3:0)F odd yr.
Social use and understanding of semiotics, signs, symbols, and other meaningful forms as critically constitutive of culture.

438. Social Stratification. (3:3:0)
Anthropological consideration of organized social inequality, focusing on class, caste, gender, and ethnicity.

439. Theory of Complex Societies. (3:3:0)
Anthropological approaches to complex societies—from those historically of at least state level to the modern integrated world system.

440. Small-Scale Societies. (3:3:0) W even yr.
Ethnographic and archaeological studies of band and tribal societies (hunter-gatherers and simple farmers) from around the world.

442. Ethnographic Skills. (3:2:Arr.) F
Methods, rationale, limitations, and ethical issues of participant observation, interviewing, quantitative measurement, and other procedures of ethnographic fieldwork. Local field project.

447. Applying Anthropology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: 12 hours of anthropology credit.
Seminar-workshop. Anthropological principles and methods applied to business, education, communications, development projects, health sciences. Careers, ethics.

454R. Field School Preparation. (1:1:1 ea.) W

455R. Field School of Archaeology. (1–6:0:Arr. ea.) Sp or Su
Training and experience in excavation at a BYU-sponsored dig.

456R. Lab Skills for Anthropology. (2–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F Prerequisite: Anthr 455R.
Analytical and laboratory techniques as part of a BYU-sponsored archaeological project.

470. Museology. (3:1:4)
Philosophy, methods, and techniques of the planning, operation, and promotion of museums as educational and research institutions.

475. Introduction to Museum Practices. (3:2:4) W Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Broadest possible range of experience in museum disciplines (registration, curation, exhibition, museum law and ethics, etc.) Career paths.

490R. Special Topics in Theory and System. (3:3:0 ea.) On dem.
Subjects related to anthropological theory or the operation of social systems. Offered when unique opportunities or needs arise.

495. Ethnographic Field Project. (3:0:Arr.)
Individual field project approved by two faculty: conduct field work, maintain field notes, and write a paper incorporating both descriptive and analytic components.

496R. Research. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: supervising instructor's consent.
Field or library research.

497. Directed Readings. (3:Arr.:0) Prerequisite: supervising instructor's consent.
Reading 2,500 pages on a stated topic.

499R. Senior Thesis. (1–5:0:0 ea.)

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

Undergraduate BYU anthropology students may enroll for the following courses if they have completed 30 hours in their major.

505. Anthropological Theory. (3:3:0) F
Major contributions to development of anthropological theory, circa 1970 to present.

510. History of Archaeology. (3:3:0) W
Historical approach to development of archaeological knowledge, method, and theory, emphasizing North America and individual contributions.

515. Settlement, Trade, and Urbanism: Understanding the Ancient Landscape. (3:3:0) F even yr.
Comparative study of beginnings of settled life, systems of exchange, and city life. Special attention to theory as applied to evidence from the new and old worlds.

520. Economic Anthropology. (3:3:0) F
Social context of production, distribution, and consumption in nonindustrial societies; technology; exchange and redistribution of resources. Currency, property rights, capital, recruitment, and rewards of labor.

525. Museum Registration and Collections Management. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Anthr 349 or equivalent.
Instruction and hands-on projects in managing anthropological collections: object-handling, object-tracking, accessing, deaccessioning, cataloging, collections databases, loans, conservation environments, museum law, and ethical practices.

526. Museum Curation and Programming. (3:Arr.:Arr.) W Prerequisite: Anthr 525.
Research and connoisseurship of anthropological collections, curatorial writing, law, and ethics as regards curatorial concerns. Current thought and literature in museum education.

530. Great Basin Archaeology. (3:3:0) F odd yr. Prerequisite: Anthr 350.
Overview of Great Basin ethnography and prehistory, emphasizing current issues in archaeological research.

535. Southwest Seminar. (3:3:0) F even yr. Prerequisite: Anthr 350.
Current issues in archaeological research in American Southwest.

540. Issues in Historic Archaeology. (3:3:0) W even yr. Prerequisite: Anthr 380.
In-depth review of issues, trends, and methods of historic archaeology.

550. (Anthr-Ling) Sociolinguistics. (3:3:0) W
Research and theory in anthropological linguistics and sociolinguistics.

551. (Anthr-Ling) Anthropological Linguistics. (3:3:0) F
Language in culture and society: development, typology, and description.

560. Comparative Mayan Linguistics. (3:3:0) F
Grammatical, semantic, lexical, and phonological issues in comparative Mayan. Historical linguistics of Mayan language family. Languages relevant to understanding classic Mayan language and script emphasized.

562. Formative Mesoamerica. (3:3:0) F
Topics and issues concerning beginnings and development of Mesoamerican civilizations. Mexican and Mayan antecedents of classic Mayan civilization and culture.

564. Classic Mayan Civilization. (3:3:0) W
Topics and issues concerning archaeological and cultural aspects of classic Mayan civilization and society.

565. Mayan Ceramic Analysis. (3:3:0)
Current approaches to classification and analysis of archaeological ceramics, particularly Maya Lowland pottery. Laboratory study of actual pottery collections from the Maya area.

566. Mayan Ethnohistory. (3:3:0) F odd yr.
Topics and issues of cultural change, colonization, and documentation of change processes in the Mayan region, from postclassic period and independence from Spain.

568. Modern Mayan Society. (3:3:0) W
Advanced analysis of cultural process issues among the Maya, from their independence from Spain to present.

572. Ancient Mayan Writing 1. (3:3:0) F even yr.
Nature and content of Mayan hieroglyphic writing, from A.D. 100 to 1600. Methods of decipherment, introduction to textual analysis, and application to interpreting Mayan language, art, world view, and society. Literacy and the Mesoamerican background of Mayan script.

574. Ancient Mayan Writing 2. (3:3:0) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Anthr 372 or 572.
Advanced study of Mayan hieroglyphic writing. Guided workshop focusing on inscriptions, rituals, dynastic history, and linguistic records from major Mayan cities. Archaeological setting and preparation of technical commentaries emphasized.

575. Writing Systems. (3:3:0) W even yr.
Comparative study of writing around the world, emphasizing ancient scripts. Topics include: linguistic concepts; social, political, and economic function of early script; ancient literacy; development and extinction of script.

580. Near East Seminar. (3:3:0) F even yr.
Current issues in Near Eastern archaeological research.

585. Current Issues in African Ethnography. (3:3:0) Sp
Prerequisite: Anthr 330 or instructor's consent.
Current anthropological issues: rise of markets and labor systems; statism and nationalism; change in domestic life; globalization of African culture; tradition amid change.

590R. Seminar. (2–3:Arr.:0 ea.) On dem.
Special topics in archaeology.

596. Museum Projects. (3:2:4) F, W Prerequisite: Anthr 475 or equivalent; instructor's consent.
One or more supervised museum projects, such as producing an exhibition, developing educational materials, or accessing collections.

599R. Federal Agency Internship. (1–6:0:0 ea.) On dem.
Earning credit while employed in federal agency archaeology. Agencies include the BLM and U.S. Forest Service.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Anthropology Faculty

Professors
Berge, Dale L. (1968) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1964; MA, PhD, U. of Arizona, 1967, 1968.
Forsyth, Donald W. (1979) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1972; PhD, U. of Pennsylvania, 1979.
Hawkins, John P. (1974) BS, Brigham Young U., 1970; MA, PhD, U. of Chicago, 1972, 1978.
Houston, Stephen D. (1994) BA, U. of Pennsylvania, 1980; MA, PhD, Yale U., 1983, 1987.
Janetski, Joel C., (1983) BA, Brigham Young U., 1965; MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1977, 1983.
Matheny, Ray T. (1964) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1962; PhD, U. of Oregon, 1968.

Associate Professor
Clark, John E. (1990) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1976, 1979; PhD, U. of Michigan, 1994.
Johnson, David J. (1987) BA, MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1972, 1982, 1987.

Assistant Professor
Crandall, David P. (1994) BA, Brigham Young U., 1986; MPhil, DPhil, Oxford U., England, 1989, 1993.

Adjunct Assistant Professors
Allen, Marti Lu (1992) BA, U. of Missouri, Columbia, 1975; AM, PhD, U. of Michigan, 1978, 1985.
Andrus, Edwin K. (1981) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1973.
Olsen, Steven L. (1992) BA, Brigham Young U., 1975; AM, PhD, U. of Chicago, 1978, 1985.

Emeriti
Jakeman, M. Wells (1946) BA, U. of Utah, 1931; MA, U. of Southern California, 1932; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1938.
Sorenson, John L. (1971) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1951, 1952; MS, California Inst. of Technology, 1952; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1961.

Arabic

See Asian and Near Eastern Languages.

Art

See Visual Arts

Asian and Near Eastern Languages

Dilworth B. Parkinson, Chair
4052 JKHB, PO Box 26027, (801) 378-3396

College of Humanities Advisement Center
3078 JKHB, PO Box 26101, (801) 378-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages are open enrollment. Some special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

The many countries of Asia and the Near East are among the oldest civilizations in the world. The study of the languages and cultures of these nations gives students access to some of the richest and most varied traditions of thought, belief, and behavior to be found in the world. A large percentage of the vast, essentially non-Christian segment of the world's population resides in these two zones: Asia—with its diverse heritage of belief in Hinduism, Buddhism, Taoism, Confucianism, and other systems of thought—continues to retain its "exotic" image for most Westerners, even though many nations in the region are at the forefront of contemporary politics and economics. The Near East, birthplace of Christianity, Judaism, and Islam, remains a little-understood, often stereotyped area of considerable economic, strategic, and religious importance today.

The languages of these regions are themselves generally difficult, with complex writing systems that require diligent study. But exposure to these languages and the cultures they express will enable students to look at the world from new perspectives and deepen their understanding of peoples whose history and practices are widely divergent from their own.

Courses in the department equip students with verbal and written facility in the languages of their chosen area, whereas linguistics courses offer an understanding of how the languages are structured and acquired. A study of the literature reveals old and sophisticated traditions no less important than that of English or any other major language.

Majors are available in Chinese, Japanese, and Korean. Students can obtain a minor in Arabic and Hebrew. Each major discipline is briefly described below.

Chinese (Cantonese and Mandarin): The study of Chinese accesses the literature, thought, culture, and society of the world's largest population with the longest cultural continuum; moreover, since the civilizations of Japan, Korea, and Vietnam are founded on traditional Chinese Confucianism, a major in Chinese opens up much of the wider world of modern Asia. You will communicate in spoken and written Mandarin, gain skills in analyzing and appreciating both traditional and modern literature, acquire effective research strategies, and learn to write clearly and persuasively. All the personal enrichment and interpersonal understanding that results from a liberal arts education in the humanities is offered through the study of Chinese.

Japanese: Although Japan's current economic successes are widely recognized and often criticized in the U.S. today, few people know much about the rich cultural heritage of Japan in literature, thought, painting, music, and the other arts. The study of Japanese language and literature will introduce you to many of the major aspects of that heritage while providing the kind of training in language and social skills that will prepare you to undertake careers in a wide variety of fields. The study of Japanese at the university level is aimed at providing you with superior language skills—in both speaking and reading—and a sophisticated understanding of Japan and its people acquired through an examination of the literature and culture.

Korean: Korean is a difficult language, and at BYU we emphasize reading and writing the language as well as speaking and listening. Basic course work emphasizes linguistic skill and the language's literary value and tradition.

Note: Instruction is also regularly available in Hebrew, Arabic, and Thai.

Career Opportunities

Students who major or minor in the languages and cultures of Asia and the Near East will find that, as will any other humanities-centered course of study, they have been well provided with tools to communicate both in the target language and in English and have broadened and deepened their knowledge of the region of their choice. Career options are many and varied for such students, but those who do not plan to continue on in the academic study of the language are strongly urged to consider a second major or a strong minor in a practical field that can be combined with their language skills. In the competitive world of today, language ability alone no longer provides the competitive advantage it once offered on the job market. Students are urged to consult the College of Humanities Advisement Center, Career Placement Services, and their academic advisors for the best ways to make use of their language as they begin to seek employment.

Chinese: Chinese majors have all of the advantages of the liberal arts graduate (who claims effective communication and interpersonal skills) with the added edge of knowing the language and culture behind a leading world economy. Therefore, graduates enter the work force in a wide variety of occupations, such as journalism, insurance, business, travel, investment, and government service. They not only are marketable as trained linguists, translators, and cultural advisors, but are vigorously recruited as personnel managers and business representatives by companies with overseas interests.

Japanese: In recent years, graduates from the Japanese major at BYU have gone on to law or MBA programs, others have continued on to medical school, and a few have pursued graduate work in a variety of academic fields at some of the most prestigious universities in the country. Others have gone directly to work in government service, in the military, and in American or Japanese business firms where their language ability and cultural background are in high demand.

Korean: There are virtually no jobs available for students with only a Korean major to offer. However, Korean as a second major makes employability in the area of a student's first major even stronger. Korean, as a second major, is complementary and supportive of practically all other BYU majors. Korean combined with English or history, for example, makes an excellent prelaw or pre-MBA program. Korean with accounting or business prepares for a career in international business. Korean and political science or international relations help prepare for the foreign service. Korean and a technical major prepare to compete for employment in the international arena of computers and other scientific advancements currently focused in Pacific Rim locations.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements, (2) university requirements, and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed for one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA	Chinese
BA	Chinese Teaching
BA	Japanese
BA	Japanese Teaching
BA	Korean
Minors	Chinese
	Chinese Teaching
	Japanese
	Japanese Teaching
	Korean
	Arabic
	Hebrew

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA	Language Acquisition (Arabic, Chinese, Japanese, or Korean)

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Language Credit by Examination

Credit by examination is available for many lower-division courses of the above-listed languages. Enrollment in an advanced class is prerequisite to taking the examination.

The following languages are *not* taught on a regular basis but may be offered if sufficient demand exists. Credit by examination is available for some of the languages listed below.

Asian Languages	Near Eastern Languages
Hindi	Akkadian
Vietnamese	Aramaic
	Egyptian
	Persian (Farsi)
	Syriac
	Turkish
	Ugaritic

Chinese

BA Chinese (41 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit will be accepted in major courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Chin 202, 301, 302, 321, 322, 495.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Chin 343, 344.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Chin 325, 326.
5. Select three courses from the following:
   Chin 441, 442, 443, 444.
6. Complete 6 additional hours required from upper-division Chinese. It is mandatory that students consult with their advisor to determine supporting courses appropriate to professional goals.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Chinese Teaching (80–86 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit will be accepted in major courses.
2. Complete an approved teaching minor (approximately 16–21 hours).
3. Complete the following:
   Chin 202, 301, 302, 321, 322, 325, 326, 344, 377, 441.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Chin 343, 345.
5. Select one course from the following:
   Chin 443, 444.
6. Complete the Professional Education Component (25–26 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Chinese (20–22 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Chin 301, 302, 441.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Chin 443, 444.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Chin 321, 322.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Chin 343, 344.
5. Complete one additional class above 301.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Chinese Teaching (27 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Chin 301, 302, 326, 377, 441.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Chin 321, 322.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Chin 443, 444.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Hist 343, 348R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Chinese—Mandarin (Chin)

Undergraduate Courses

100A. Beginning Mandarin, Slow Paced. (2:2:1)
Easy conversation and vocabulary building.

100B. Beginning Mandarin, Slow Paced. (2:2:1) Prerequisite: Chin 100A.
Writing system, vocabulary, and easy conversation and composition. Chin 100A and B together are equivalent of 101.

101. First-Year Mandarin. (4:5:2)
Basic grammar, vocabulary building, speaking.

102. First-Year Mandarin. (4:5:2) Prerequisite: Chin 101 or equivalent.
Continuation of Chin 101.

112. First-Year Chinese Reading. (2:2:0) Prerequisite; equivalent of one year spoken Mandarin skills.
Chinese writing system, reading, and basic composition using Chinese characters.

200. Chinese Calligraphy. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: Chin 101 or equivalent.
Training in the art of writing Chinese characters with a brush.

201. Second-Year Mandarin. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Chin 102.
Advanced grammar, the writing system, reading and writing, speaking.

202. Second-Year Mandarin. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Chin 201.
Advanced grammar, the writing system, reading and writing, speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:1 ea.) Prerequisite: Chin 102.
Emphasis on fluency and vocabulary building.

301. Third-Year Mandarin. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Chin 202.
Discourse grammar, advanced reading.

302. Third-Year Mandarin. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Chin 301.
Advanced-level Mandarin skills, especially discourse and reading.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:1 ea.) Prerequisite: Chin 202 or equivalent.
Emphasis on sophistication of speech.

321, 322. Selected Readings of Modern Chinese. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Chin 302.
Complements overall language competency through reading modern texts selected from a wide range of styles and genres.

325. Structure of Chinese. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Chin 202.
Sound, syntax, meaning, and word structure of Mandarin Chinese and its implications to problems of learning Chinese.

326. Introduction to Chinese Linguistics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Chin 202.
Dialectology, phonology, syntax, semantics, discourse, morphology, and sociolinguistics.

327. Chinese Translation and Interpretation. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Chin 301.
Translation techniques, with practice in oral and written translation either from Chinese to English or from English to Chinese.

343. Chinese Literature in Translation— Poetry. (3:3:0)
All readings in English; topics vary.

344. Chinese Literature in Translation— Prose. (3:3:0)
All readings in English; topics vary.

345. Chinese Culture. (3:3:0)
Introduction to the institutions, culture, religions, and fine arts of China. All texts read in English.

346. Introduction to Chinese Philosophy. (3:3:0) W Alt. yr.
Introduction to native Chinese philosophies of Confucianism and Taoism. Readings in translation of *Lun-yu, Meng-tsu, Lao-tzu,* and *Chuang-tzu.* Themes include self, society, and cosmos.

347. Business Chinese. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Chin 301 or instructor's consent.
Introduction to terminology and format of business writing in Chinese, emphasizing both reading and writing of various forms of business communication.

377. Chinese Language Teaching Procedures. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Chin 325 or 326 or instructor's consent.
Acquiring knowledge and skills specific to teaching Chinese as a foreign language. Conducted in Chinese and English.

399R. Cooperative Education: Internship. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Chin 202.
On-the-job cultural and/or language experience.

441, 442. Classical and Literary Chinese. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: for 441: Chin 301 or equivalent; for 442: Chin 441.
Introduction to syntax and stylistic patterns.

443. Modern Chinese Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Chin 321 or 322.
Authors, themes, and writing styles of the period 1915–1949.

444. Contemporary Chinese Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Chin 321 or 322.
Contemporary literature of Taiwan and the PRC. Texts in Chinese.

445R. Chinese Poetry. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Chin 343, 441.
Readings in Chinese poetry. Topics vary from classical and modern poetry. Various themes and genres introduced, emphasizing shi poetry.

490R. Individual Study in Chinese. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: project approval by instructor.
Assignments to fit individual needs of the advanced student.

495. Senior Seminar for Majors. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: advanced knowledge of Chinese.
Research methods in Chinese language sources. Paper required.

500-Level Graduate Course (available to advanced undergraduates)

599R. Cooperative Education: Internship. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: coordinator's and department's consent.
On-the-job cultural and/or language experience.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Japanese

BA Japanese (38 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Students will be required to sit a comprehensive language exam covering grammar and Joyo Kanji as part of Japan 322.
2. A required reading list must be completed, evidenced by successful completion of Japan 492, normally during the last semester before graduation.
3. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
4. Counsel with advisor to determine supporting courses appropriate to your professional goals.
5. Select one course from the following:
   Japan 202, 221.
6. Complete the following:
   Japan 301, 311R, 321, 322, 441, 443, 444, 492.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Japan 325, 326.
8. Select one course from the following:
   Japan 343, 344, 353.
9. Select 6 hours from the following:
   Japan 325, 326, 343, 344, 345, 353, 377. (Optionally, one of the following may be substituted for Japan 345: Hist 345, 346, PlSc 354, 384.)

Recommended Courses

It is recommended that students complete Engl 311 or similar courses before enrolling in advanced literature courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Japanese Teaching (85–91 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. Students will be required to sit a comprehensive language exam covering grammar and Joyo Kanji as part of Japan 322.
2. A required reading list must be completed, evidenced by successful completion of Japan 492, normally during the last semester before graduation.
3. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
4. Complete an approved teaching minor (approximately 16–21 hours).
5. Select one course from the following:
   Japan 202, 221.
6. Complete the following:
   Japan 301, 311R, 321, 322, 377, 441, 443, 444, 492.
   Ling 230.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Japan 325, 326.
8. Select one course from the following:
   Japan 343, 344, 353.
9. Select 6 hours from the following:
   Japan 325, 326, 343, 344, 345, 353. (Optionally, one of the following may be substituted for Japan 345: Hist 345, 346, PlSc 354, 384.)
10. Complete the Professional Education Component (25–26 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Japanese (16 hours*)

1. Select one course from the following:
   Japan 202, 221.
2. Complete the following:
   Japan 301, 311R, 321, 322.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Japanese Teaching (25 hours*)

1. Select one course from the following:
   Japan 202, 221.
2. Complete the following:
   Japan 301, 311R, 321, 322, 377.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Japan 325, 326.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Japan 343, 344, 345, 353.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Japanese (Japan)

Undergraduate Courses

100A. Beginning Japanese, Slow Paced 1. (3:3:1)
Writing system, grammar, and vocabulary. Easy conversation and composition.

100B. Beginning Japanese, Slow Paced 2. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: Japan 100A.
Continuation of Japan 100A.

101, 102. First-Year Japanese. (4:5:1 ea.) Prerequisite: for 102, Japan 101, or equivalent.
Writing systems, grammar and vocabulary-building fundamentals, easy conversation and composition.Includes introduction to Chinese characters in 102.

201. Second-Year Japanese. (4:5:2) Prerequisite: Japan 102 or equivalent.
Further practice in conversation; basic reading and writing skills.

202. Second-Year Japanese. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Japan 201 or equivalent.
Further practice in conversation, reading, and writing; introducing culture through short stories, articles. Not for returned missionaries.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Japan 102 or equivalent. For Japan Study Abroad or Foreign Language Student Residence students only.

221. Japanese Reading, Grammar, and Culture. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Japan 201 or equivalent.
Reading and writing emphasizing essential characters, vocabulary, grammar, and culture. First course for returned missionaries.

301. Readings in Japanese History and Literature. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Japan 202, 221, or instructor's consent.
Readings in Japanese history and literature with essential characters, vocabulary, and grammatical principles.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Japan 301 or equivalent.
May be repeated for Study Abroad in Japan.

321. Selected Readings and Grammar. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Japan 301 or equivalent.
Readings in modern documentary styles, emphasizing grammar, reading comprehension, and vocabulary building.

322. Selected Readings and Grammar. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Japan 321 or instructor's consent.
Readings in modern short fiction, emphasizing grammar, reading comprehension, vocabulary building, and stylistic analysis.

325. Japanese Morphology, Syntax, and Semantics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Japan 301.
General overview of grammar and its practical application in composition.

326. Contrastive Analysis of Japanese and English. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Japan 301.
Contrastive overview of Japanese and English phonology, syntax, semantics, and discourse.

343. Japanese Literature in Translation— Poetry, Drama. (3:3:0)
Reading and discussion of selected topics in Japanese poetry and drama. All readings in English.

344. Japanese Literature in Translation— Prose. (3:3:0)
Reading and discussion of selected topics in early Japanese prose. All readings in English.

345. Japanese Culture. (3:3:0)
General survey emphasizing aesthetics, religion, and value systems. All readings in English.

353. Modern Japanese Novel in Translation. (3:3:0)
Several major twentieth-century Japanese novels. All readings in English.

377. Japanese Language Teaching Procedures. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Japan 301 or instructor's consent.
Acquiring knowledge and skills specific to teaching of Japanese as a foreign language. Conducted in Japanese and English.

390. Japanese for Special Purposes. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Japan 321 or equivalent.
Readings, video materials, discussions, and projects in content areas related specifically to business, science, and technology.

399R. Cooperative Education: Internship. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Japan 301.
On-the-job cultural and/or language experience.

441. Introduction to Classical Japanese. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Japan 322.
Reading of premodern texts, emphasizing grammar and syntax, and showing differences from and influences on the modern idiom.

443. Advanced Readings and Grammar. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Japan 322 or equivalent.
Reading and discussion of modern expository texts; developing advanced listening skills using authentic materials.

444. Modern Japanese Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Japan 322 or equivalent.
Fictional texts from major twentieth- century authors. Texts primarily in Japanese.

490R. Individual Study in Japanese. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: consent of advisor and instructor.
Topics vary. Assignments to fit individual needs of the advanced student.

492. Majors' Reading List. (1:1:Arr.) Prerequisite: department approval.
Guided reading course to meet reading list requirement. Required of all majors.

500-Level Graduate Course (available to advanced undergraduates)

599R. Cooperative Education: Internship. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Japan 301.
On-the-job cultural and/or language experience.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Korean

BA Korean (39 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Korea 202, 301, 495.
   Hist 342.
3. Select one of the following:
   Korea 325, 326.
4. Select one of the following options:
   Either
   Korea 303, 321, 441.
   Or
   Korea 315, 340, 443.
5. Select 12–14 hours from the option not selected above and/or the following (depending on selection of options, elective hours should be adjusted so that the major totals 39 hours):
   Korea 311R, 325, 326, 344R, 345, 399R, 411, 427, 441, 471, 490R, 599R.

Recommended

Prospective majors are urged to have a concurrent major in another standard discipline.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Korean (14 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Korea 301.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Korea 303, 315.
3. Complete 7 hours beyond Korea 301.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Korean (Korea)

Undergraduate Courses

101. First-Year Korean. (4:5:0)
Basic language skills.

102. First-Year Korean. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Korea 101.
Basic language skills.

201. Second-Year Korean. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Korea 101, 102.
Grammar, vocabulary, reading, and conversation.

202. Second-Year Korean. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Korea 201 or equivalent.
Reading and writing emphasizing essential vocabulary and grammatical principles.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Korea 201 or foreign residence experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

301. Intermediate Korean. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Korea 202 or instructor's consent.
Reading, writing, grammar, and vocabulary.

303. Introduction to Sino-Korean Characters. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Korea 301 or instructor's consent.
Most common Chinese characters used in Korean mixed script writings.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Korea 211R or foreign residence experience.
Advanced conversational skills.

315. Selected Readings and Composition. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Korea 301.
Improving reading and writing skills. Readings include minimal amounts of Sino-Korean characters.

321. Sino-Korean Readings and Composition. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Korea 303.
Readings in Sino-Korean mixed script texts, including newspapers. Some composition.

325. Applied Korean Linguistics and Grammar. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Korea 301 or instructor's consent.
Applying linguistics to the problems of learning Korean; overview of Korean phonology, morphology, syntax, and semantics.

326. Contrastive Analysis of Korean and English. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Korea 325.
Contrastive overview of phonology, syntax, semantics, and discourse.

340. Introduction to Traditional Korean Literature. (4:4:0) Prerequisite: Korea 301.
Korean literature from earliest forms to modern period, emphasizing basic literary concepts.

344R. Korean Literature in Translation. (3:3:0 ea.)
Topics vary.

345. Korean Culture and Society. (3:3:0)
Understanding Korean peoples and culture through examining social, political, economic, and belief systems as well as literature. All readings in English.

399R. Cooperative Education: Internship. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Korea 301.
On-the-job cultural and/or language experience.

411. Advanced Conversation. (2:2:0)
Advanced conversation and listening comprehension.

427. Korean Translation and Interpretation. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Korea 301.
Translation techniques with practice in oral and written translation both from Korean to English and from English to Korean.

441. Korean Documents. (4:4:0) Prerequisite: Korea 321 or Chin 441.
Introduction to readings in Chinese texts written as part of Korea's historic tradition, such as genealogies and the Yi Dynasty Annals. Also current political and economic materials.

443. Modern Korean Literature. (4:4:0) Prerequisite: Korea 340.
Survey emphasizing improvement of reading and translation skills. Criticism of literature as well as translations.

471. Advanced Readings in Korean Language and Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Korea 325.
Readings in current linguistic journals and contemporary literature and criticism.

490R. Individual Study in Korean. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.)
Directed readings and individual assignments appropriate to individual needs of advanced students.

495. Senior Seminar. (2:2:0)
Individual research, with seminar paper the primary objective. Required for Korean majors.

500-Level Graduate Course (available to advanced undergraduates)

599R. Cooperative Education: Internship. (1–9:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: coordinator's and department's consent.
On-the-job cultural and/or language experience. Students must meet departmental requirements and consult coordinator before enrollment. Report required.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Asian Languages Course (AsLa)

490R. Individual Study in Asian Literature. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: lower-division courses, mission or commensurate experience, and instructor's consent.
Assignments to fit individual needs of advanced students.

Cantonese Courses (Cant)

101. First-Year Cantonese. (4:5:0)
Basic language skills.

102. First-Year Cantonese. (4:5:0)
Basic language skills.

201. Second-Year Cantonese. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Cant 102 or foreign residence experience.
Grammatical patterns and vocabulary of spoken and written Cantonese.

202. Second-Year Cantonese. (4:5:0) W Prerequisite: Cant 201 or equivalent.
Intermediate to advanced skills in reading, writing, listening, and speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Cant 201 or foreign residence experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Cant 211 or foreign residence experience.
Advanced conversational skills.

Hindi Courses (Hindi)

100A, B. Beginning Hindi, Slow Paced. (2:Arr.:0 ea.) On dem.
Equals first and second halves of Hindi 101. For those preparing for future Hindi studies or field work.

101, 102. First-Year Hindi. (4:5:0 ea.)
Basic language skills.

Thai Courses (Thai)

101. First-Year Thai. (4:5:0)
Basic language skills.

102. First-Year Thai. (4:4:0 ea.)
Continuation of Thai 101.

201. Second-Year Thai. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Thai 101 and 102 or foreign residence experience.
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Thai 201 or foreign residence experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

301. Intermediate Modern Thai. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Thai 201 or foreign residence experience.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Thai 211R or foreign residence experience.
Advanced conversational skills.

Vietnamese Courses (Viet)

101A, B. First-Year Vietnamese. (2:3:0 ea.)
Basic language skills. Credit only by examination.

102. First-Year Vietnamese. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Viet 101.
Basic language skills. Credit only by examination.

201. Second-Year Vietnamese. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Viet 101 and 102 or foreign residence experience.
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading. Credit only by examination.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Viet 201 or foreign residence experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills. Credit only by examination.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Viet 211 or foreign residence experience.
Advanced conversational skills. Credit only by examination.

Near Eastern Languages and Literature (NeLg)

Language Courses

Modern: Near Eastern Course

321R. Studies in Modern Near Eastern Languages. (4:4:2 ea.)
Grammar, reading, writing, and conversational skills.

Ancient: Akkadian, Aramaic, Coptic, Egyptian, Hittite, Sumerian, Syriac, and Ugaritic Course

511R. Studies in Ancient Near Eastern Languages. (2–4:4:0 ea.)
Grammar and reading skills.

Literature Courses

340. Ancient Near Eastern Mythology. (3:3:0)
Major themes in mythological literature of Egypt, Canaan, Mesopotamia, Anatolia, and ancient Iran. All readings in English.

345. Texts and Ancient Temples. (3:3:0)
Major ancient Near Eastern texts dealing with the temple; analysis of primary elements of ancient temple type as a place of worship.

521R. Special Topics in Ancient Near Eastern Literature. (2–3:3:0 ea.)
Historical and comparative studies of ancient Near Eastern literature.

Arabic

Minor Arabic (15–18 hours*)

Prerequisite

Arab 101, 102, 201, 211R, 301.

Minor Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   Arab 311R.
2. Select 13 additional hours of upper-division Arabic classes from one of the options below:
   a. For students who do not attend the Intensive Arabic Program in Jerusalem, select 13 hours from the following:
      Arab 451, 452, and 5 more hours of upper-division credit.
   b. For students who do attend the Intensive Arabic Program in Jerusalem, select 13 hours from the following:
      Arab 331, 452, and 5 more hours of upper-division credit (usually the Arabic New Testament course and the Arabic history or sociology course taught as part of the Jerusalem program).
3. Select one survey course, taught in English, from the following (unless already taken in conjunction with the Near Eastern Studies major):
   Hum 242.
   Arab 361, 362.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Arabic (Arab)

Undergraduate Courses

100. Introduction to Arabic. (1:1.5:0)
Beginning Arabic. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

101. First-Year Arabic. (4:5:0)
Basic skills of spoken and written Arabic. Suggested first class for students learning Arabic.

102. First-Year Arabic. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Arab 101.
Second-semester Arabic. Basic language skills, both spoken and written.

201. Second-Year Arabic—Standard, Written. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Arab 102 or equivalent experience and concurrent registration in Arab 211R.
Reading, grammar review, and vocabulary building in written Arabic.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Arab 102 or equivalent experience and concurrent registration in Arab 201.
Intermediate spoken Arabic.

301. Intermediate Arabic—Standard, Written. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Arab 201 and concurrent registration in Arab 311R.
Continuation of Arab 201.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Arab 201, 211R, or equivalent experience, and concurrent registration in Arab 301.
Advanced conversation skills.

331. Spoken Arabic. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Arab 311R or equivalent experience.
Intensive study of the spoken language.

361. Introduction to Modern Arabic Literature in Translation. (3:3:0)
Reading and discussion of representative sample of modern Arabic short stories, novels, plays, and poetry. All readings in English.

362. Introduction to Medieval Arabic Literature in Translation. (3:3:0)
Reading and discussion of representative sample of medieval Arabic literature. All readings in English.

431. Spoken Arabic—Egyptian Dialect. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Arab 331 or equivalent experience.
Introduction to colloquial literature.

451. Advanced Grammar Review. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Arab 301.
Intensive vocabulary building and grammar review.

452. Newspaper Arabic. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Arab 451.
Extensive reading of Arabic newspapers and magazines, with appropriate vocabulary building.

453. Readings in the Social Sciences. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Arab 452.
Reading of original Arabic sources in political science, history, international relations, and other social science fields.

461. Survey of Modern Arabic Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Arab 452.
Reading and discussion of representative sample of modern Arabic short stories, novels, plays, and poetry.

462. Survey of Medieval Arabic Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Arab 452.
Reading and discussion of representative sample of medieval Arabic literary works, including poetry, 'Adab literature, Maqaamaat, folk literature, travel literature, biography, philosophy, and history.

471. The Structure of Arabic. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Arab 452.
Arabic phonology, morphology, syntax, and semantics, with a review of current scholarship in Arabic linguistics.

490R. Independent Readings. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Independent readings of Arabic materials.

500-Level Graduate Course (available to advanced undergraduates)

531R. Advanced Topics in Arabic. (1–3:5:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Advanced studies in Arabic language and literature.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Hebrew

Minor Hebrew (20 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Heb 201, 331, 431.
2. Select one of the following:
   Heb 202, 312.
3. Select 4 hours from the following:
   Heb 311R, 341, 411R, 441, 442, 443, 444.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Hebrew (Heb)

Undergraduate Courses

100. Introduction to Hebrew. (1:1.5:0)
Beginning Hebrew; offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

101, 102. First-Year Hebrew. (4:5:2 ea.)
Modern Hebrew as spoken in Israel today.

111M, 112M. Honors Hebrew and the Old Testament. (3:3:0 ea.)
Rapid survey of biblical Hebrew. Must be taken in conjunction with specified Honors section of RelA 301 and 302.

131, 132. First-Year Biblical Hebrew. (4:5:0 ea.) Independent Study also.
Old Testament Hebrew. Provides foundation in grammar and vocabulary; reading Hebrew prose texts in Bible.

201. Second-Year Modern Hebrew. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Heb 102 or equivalent.

202. Intermediate Readings. (4:4:0) Prerequisite: Heb 201 or equivalent.

311R. Intermediate Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Heb 201.

312. Hebrew Media. (4:4:4) Prerequisite: Heb 101, 102.
Emphasizes reading, aural comprehension, and speaking Hebrew. Includes newspaper reading, listening to local news on radio and television, and in-class discussion of current events. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

313. Readings in the Old Testament. (4:5:0)
Readings in the Old Testament in Hebrew. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

321. Intermediate Conversation and Media. (3:3:0) W alt yr. Prerequisite: Heb 101, 102.
Capitalizing on daily life in Jerusalem to increase speaking, reading, writing, and listening comprehension in modern Hebrew. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

331. Readings in the Hebrew Scriptures 1. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Heb 132, 201, or equivalent.
Grammar review and vocabulary building through reading historical and prophetic books.

341. Introduction to Hebrew Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Heb 132 or 331; 202.
Survey of 3,000 years of Hebrew literature; in Hebrew.

411R. Advanced Conversation. (4:4:4) Prerequisite: Heb 311R or equivalent.
Emphasizes conversation in everyday situations. Students role play various situations in class and then apply their learning in Jerusalem. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

421. Readings in the Hebrew Translation of the New Testament. (3:3:0)
Readings in the New Testament in Hebrew translation. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

431. Readings in the Hebrew Scriptures 2. (4:4:0) Prerequisite: Heb 331.
Readings in the poetic and wisdom literature.

441. Postbiblical Hebrew: Mishnah. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: Heb 331.
Introduction to the grammar of Mishnaic Hebrew. Readings from various tractates of the Mishnah.

442. Postbiblical Hebrew: Talmud. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: Heb 331.
Selected readings from the Talmud.

443. Postbiblical Hebrew: Medieval Rabbis. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: Heb 331.
Readings in medieval rabbinic commentaries on the Hebrew scriptures.

444. Postbiblical Hebrew: Modern Hebrew Biblical Commentaries. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: Heb 331.
Readings in commentaries on the Hebrew scriptures in modern Hebrew.

500-Level Graduate Course (available to advanced undergraduates)

531R. Studies in Hebrew. (1–3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Heb 331.

Asian and Near Eastern Languages Faculty

Professors
Gessel, Van C. (1990) BA, U. of Utah, 1973; MA, PhD, Columbia U., 1975, 1979.
Parkinson, Dilworth B. (1980) BA, Brigham Young U., 1975; MA, PhD, U. of Michigan, 1976, 1982.
Ricks, Stephen David (1981) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1974, 1976; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, and Graduate Theological Union, 1982.

Associate Professors
Belnap, R. Kirk (1990) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1986; PhD, U. of Pennsylvania, 1991.
Bourgerie, Dana S. (1991) BA, U. of Minnesota, 1982; MA, PhD, Ohio State U., 1987, 1990.
Honey, David B. (1987) BA, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1980; MA, PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1984, 1988.
Miller, J. Scott (1994) BA, Brigham Young U., 1982; MA, PhD, Princeton U., 1986, 1988.
Peterson, Daniel C. (1986) BA, Brigham Young U., 1977; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1990.
Peterson, Mark A. (1983) BA, Brigham Young U., 1971; MA, PhD, Harvard U., 1973, 1987.
Russell, Robert A. (1982) BA, U. of Utah, 1968; PhD, Harvard U., 1977.
Watabe, Masakazu (1977) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1973; PhD, U. of Southern California, 1978.
Williams, Gary S. (1966) BA, Brigham Young U., 1962; PhD, U. of Washington, 1973.

Assistant Professors
Christensen, Matthew B. (1995) BA, Brigham Young U., 1988; MA, PhD, Ohio State U., 1990, 1994.
Kim, Cha Bong (1997) BA, Kyung Hee U., Korea, 1965; MA, Yonsei U., Korea, 1973; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1990.
Parry, Donald W. (1992) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1986; PhD, U. of Utah, 1992.
Perkins, George W. (1975) BA, Brigham Young U., 1962; MA, PhD, Stanford U., 1967, 1977.
Warnick, J. Paul (1996) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1989; PhD, Ohio State U., 1996.

Teaching Professor
Rhee, Honam (1987) BA, Hankuk U. of Foreign Studies, Korea, 1959; MA, Yonsei U., Korea, 1977, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1997.

Assistant Teaching Professor
Pack, Melvin Deloy (1974) BS, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1965; MA, Brigham Young U., 1973; PhD, U. of Pennsylvania, 1981.

Emeriti
Beaman, Bruce W. (1970) BA, Brigham Young U., 1959; MA, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1969.
Lee, Tsaifeng (Mazie) (1965) BA, MA, U. of Hawaii, 1960, 1972.

Asian Studies

See Kennedy Center for International Studies, David M.

Astronomy

See Physics and Astronomy.

Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology

David L. McPherson, Chair
136 TLRB, PO Box 28605, (801) 378-4318

David O. McKay School of Education Advisement Center
120 MCKB, PO Box 25096, (801) 378-3426

Admission to Degree Program

Both degree programs in the Department of Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology are open enrollment.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements, (2) university requirements, and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed for one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS	Audiology
BS	Speech-Language Pathology
Minor	Audiology
	Speech-Language Pathology

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS	Audiology
MS	Speech-Language Pathology

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BS Audiology (57 hours*)

The Discipline

Audiology is a relatively new discipline that relies on technology to deal with its primary concern, the measurement of hearing and hearing loss. Audiology includes studying the nervous system to learn how we sense, perceive, and derive information from the sense organs. Audiology students also learn about the development of speech and language, the anatomy and physiology of the ear, a variety of electronic test instruments that reveal the function of the intricate processes involved in hearing, and disorders and diseases of hearing. Physicians use audiological findings to diagnose and treat hearing problems. This information is also used in counseling the hearing impaired and for prescribing hearing aids. Teachers use the knowledge to understand and help children with hearing impairments.

Career Opportunities

This is a preprofessional program leading to a master's degree that is required for entrance into the profession.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   ASLP 133, 230, 320, 321, 330, 331, 334, 350, 351, 434, 438, 444, 450.
   ASL 101.
   Math 110.
   Phscs 167.
   Stat 221.
   Zool 260.
2. Complete 1 hour from the following:
   IP&T 286.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Speech-Language Pathology (58 hours*)

The Discipline

The discipline of speech-language pathology emerged to help people who have lost or have never had the ability to speak normally. It serves persons with speech and language disorders such as stuttering, articulation problems, aphasia, voice problems, language delay, and similar disabilities. Students

learn about speech and language development, the anatomy and physiology of the speech mechanism, the neurology of perception and production of speech and language, impairments that cause speech and language disorders, and communication disorders remediation. Professionals work in public schools, hospitals, private or community clinics, or private practice.

Career Opportunities

This is a preprofessional program leading to a master's degree that is required for entrance into the profession.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   ASLP 133, 230, 320, 321, 330, 331, 334, 350, 351, 438, 444, 450, 458, 459.
   Math 110.
   Phscs 167.
   Stat 221.
   Zool 260.
2. Complete 1 hour from the following:
   IP&T 286.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Audiology

Contact the Department of Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology (136 TLRB) for information.

Minor Speech-Language Pathology (15 hours)

1. Linguistics majors:
   a. Complete the following:
      ASLP 133, 330, 350, 351 (after taking phonetics).
   b. Select one course from the following:
      ASLP 320 (after taking Zool 260), 321, 444, 458.
2. Majors in other departments:
   a. Complete the following:
      ASLP 133, 230, 330, 331.
   b. Select one course from the following:
      ASLP 350, 351.

Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology (ASLP)

Undergraduate Courses

133. Introduction to Speech-Language Pathology and Audiology. (3:3:1) F, W, Alt. term
Overview of communication disorders, assessment strategies, and treatments.

230. Language Science. (3:3:1) F, W
Morphology, syntax, and semantic roles in language of children and adults; uses both manual and computer-assisted methods.

320. Speech Anatomy. (3:3:1) F, W Prerequisite: Zool 260.
Basic anatomy and physiology of speech mechanisms.

321. Speech Science. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: ASLP 320, Phscs 167.
Laboratory investigation of scientific bases of normal and disordered speech perception and production; for audiologists and speech language pathologists.

330. Language Development. (3:3:1) F
Overview of how children learn language, including its relationship to cognitive, neural, and social development; language development in bilingual, minority, and handicapped persons.

331. Phonology. (3:3:1) F
Transcription and analysis of normal and disordered sound production.

334. Basic Hearing Science. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Phscs 167.
Hearing anatomy, physiology, and science.

350. Language Disorders. (3:3:1) W Prerequisite: ASLP 330, 331.
Causes and characteristics of language impairment; techniques for diagnosis, assessment, and treatment of language disorders.

351. Disorders of Articulation and Phonology. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: ASLP 331.
Causes and characteristics of phonological disorders; techniques for diagnosis, assessment, and treatment.

434. Pediatric Audiology. (2:2:1) W Prerequisite: ASLP 438.
Basic principles utilized in assessing hearing sensitivity of children from birth to eight years.

438. Hearing Tests and Measures. (3:3:1) F Prerequisite: ASLP 334.
Theory and practice of auditory assessment.

444. Speech and Language for the Hearing Impaired. (3:3:3) F, W
Overview of aural habilitation and rehabilitation in children and adults.

450. Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology in the Schools. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: ASLP 350, 351, 438.
Overview of issues related to clinical practice in public schools and other settings.

458. Fluency Disorders. (3:3:1) F
Assessment and treatment of fluency disorders, including stuttering.

459. Diagnosis in Speech-Language Pathology. (3:3:3) W Prerequisite: ASLP 350, 351.
Appraisal and diagnosis of speech and language problems.

485R. Clinical Observation in Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology. (1:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su

493R. Readings. (1–2:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

500. Clinical Data Acquisition and Analysis. (3:3:0) F, Alt. term Prerequisite: Stat 221.
Research methods in audiology and speech-language pathology. Applying statistical techniques; professional literature and writing.

544. Psychoacoustics. (3:3:1) Alt. term
Advanced studies in human psychoacoustics and hearing science.

573. Aphasia. (3:3:0) W
Perspectives on the neurology, clinical assessment, and rehabilitation of aphasic language disturbances in adults.

574. Communicative Disorders of Individuals with Severe Disabilities. (3:3:0) F
Assessment and treatment of persons with multiple handicaps, including augmentive communication training.

575. Motor Speech Disorders. (3:3:0) F
Neuropathology, symptomology, clinical assessment, and treatment of adult motor speech disorders.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology Faculty

Professors
Brinton, Bonnie (1990) BA, U. of Utah, 1975; MA, San Jose State U., 1977; PhD, U. of Utah, 1981.
Fujiki, Martin (1990) BS, U. of Idaho, 1972; MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1974, 1980.
Harris, Richard (1982) BS, North Dakota State U., 1973; MS, U. of Wisconsin, 1974; PhD, Purdue U.,1978.
Hilton, Laurence M. (1985) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1969, 1970; PhD, Northwestern U., 1973.
McPherson, David L. (1991) BS, Brigham Young U., 1967; MA, George Washington U., 1969; PhD, U. of Washington, 1972.

Associate Professor
Channell, Ron W. (1983) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1979; PhD, U. of Utah, 1983.

Assistant Professors
Hanks, Wendy (1992) BS, MCD, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1981; PhD, Wichita State U., 1985.
Lucido, Bonnie Rae (1979) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1966; PhD, U. of Utah, 1994.

Instructor
Friend, Tressa J. (1993) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1985.

Clinical Instructor
Bartholomew, Karen (1986) BS, U. of Utah, 1983; MCD, Brigham Young U., 1985.

Emeriti
Allred, Mildred T. Ravsten (1973) BA, MCD, Brigham Young U., 1952, 1971.
Low, Gordon M. (1964) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1949, 1950; PhD, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1955.
Newman, Parley W. (1966) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1950, 1951; PhD, U. of Iowa, 1954.

Austronesian Languages

See Linguistics.

Biochemistry

See Chemistry and Biochemistry.

Biology

College of Biology and Agriculture Advisement Center
380 WIDB, PO Box 25189, (801) 378-3042

Don D. Bloxham, Coordinator, BS Biology
380 WIDB, PO Box 25176, (801) 378-3044

Richard R. Tolman, Coordinator, Composite Teaching Program
591 WIDB, PO Box 25254, (801) 378-4398

Admission to Degree Program

The degree program in the Department of Biology carries special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

BYU's College of Biology and Agriculture offers programs leading to the BS degree in biology from BYU and a DDS/DMD (dentistry), OD (optometry), or DPM (podiatry) from cooperating professional schools. Interested students declare the combined degree as their major and spend three years at BYU completing all BYU general education requirements and required degree course work. After all BYU requirements are fulfilled, these students attend dental, optometry, or podiatry school for four years. The first year of course work at the professional school is transferred back to BYU, and the BS degree in biology is granted.

Career Opportunities

Dentistry, optometry or podiatry are careers available upon completion of this degree program.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements, (2) university requirements, and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed for one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Program and Degree

BS Biology (combined degree program)

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

BS Biology (combined degree program) (52–55 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Students with required GPA and DAT, OAT, or MCAT scores may obtain admission to specified dental, optometry, chiropractic, or podiatry schools after three years of preprofessional education at BYU. After completion of the first year of dental, optometry, chiropractic, or podiatry school, these students will receive a bachelor's degree in biology from BYU. Details are available in 380 WIDB.
2. Please go to the college advisement center and fill out a required contract when you declare this major.
3. Complete the following:
   Biol 130.
   Zool 204, 350, 371, 372, 373, 374, 380.
4. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 107, 351, 352, 353 (2 hours).
5. Complete the following (Physics not on DAT):
   Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108.
6. Complete an interview with your preprofessional committee.
7. Predental students complete the following:
   Math 110.
   Zool 229, 329, 429.
   Take DAT and apply through AADSAS.
8. Preoptometry students complete the following:
   Math 110; 112 or 119.
   Zool 227.
   Take OAT and apply to schools.
9. Prepodiatry and prechiropractic students complete the following:
   Math 110.
   Zool 339.
   Take MCAT and apply through AACPMAS.
10. Apply for graduation and be sure all general education requirements are completed before leaving BYU.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Biology Composite Teaching

See Departments of Botany and Range Science, Microbiology, Zoology, or Secondary Education for information about these degree programs.

Biology Teaching Minor

See Departments of Botany and Range Science, Microbiology, or Zoology for information about this minor.

Biology Courses (Biol)

100. Principles of Biology. (3:3:1) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also.
Introductory course for General Education students.

101. Principles of Biology Laboratory. (1:0:2) F, W, Sp, Su
Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Biol 100. Required of all elementary education and early childhood education majors; enrollment limited to elementary education or early childhood education majors.

130. Introduction to Biology. (4:4:1) F, W, Sp
Principles of biology for majors and minors.

150. Environmental Biology. (3:3:0) W
Conservation and management of natural resources concurrent with increasing socioeconomic and human population demands; factors such as soil, water, and air pollution, resources management, bioremediation, nutrient cycles, and global climate changes.

190R. Biology and Agriculture Seminar. (1:1:0) F, W
Exploration of issues in biology and agriculture; presentations by faculty and guest lecturers.

276. Heredity and Reproduction. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: any biology course.
Principles of inheritance.

398R. Biology Teaching Seminar. (1–2:0:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Students in an academic team assist instructor in design and/or implementation of a class.

Botany and Range Science

Bruce A. Roundy, Chair
401 WIDB, PO Box 25129, (801) 378-2582

College of Biology and Agriculture Advisement Center
380 WIDB, PO Box 25189, (801) 378-3042

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Botany and Range Science are open enrollment.

The Discipline

Plants play a crucial role in the maintenance of life on this planet. The programs in the Department of Botany and Range Science address the historical, current, and future importance of plants in three broad areas: botany, conservation biology, and education.

Career Opportunities

Botany includes biotechnology, genetics, molecular biology, physiology, morphology, systematics, and ecology. Traditional fields are combined with recent areas of specialization that qualify students for a wide range of careers in the study, culture, and utilization of plants. Graduates find employment with private industry, state, and federal agencies and are well prepared for graduate programs.

Conservation biology deals with the protection, maintenance, and restoration of biodiversity on earth through study of plants and the animals with which they interact, as well as the processes of global change that affect their populations. The broad approach of the conservation biology program prepares students for employment in governmental and private agencies charged with managing our human environment, watersheds, wildlife populations, rangelands, wetlands, forests, deserts, coastlines, seas, and other critical natural resources. In addition, this program prepares students for postgraduate training in conservation biology, wildlife, ecology, evolutionary biology, systematics, and range science.

The Biological Science Education Program reaffirms our commitment to provide rewarding courses for students in general education, honors, and science education. Faculty and students are involved in the development of excellent curricula, laboratory, and field experiences to enhance the appreciation and understanding of biotic systems by all students and to provide excellent training for future teachers.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements, (2) university requirements, and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed for one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Botany
BS Conservation Biology
  Emphases:
    Conservation
    Wildlife Biology
BS Plant Genetics and Breeding
BS Range Science
  Emphases:
    Production-Agribusiness
    Rangeland Ecology
BS Wildlife and Range Resources
BS Biology Composite Teaching
Minors Biology Teaching
  Botany
  Conservation Biology
  Range Science

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Note: For the molecular biology program see the Molecular Biology section of this catalog.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Biological Science Education
MS Botany
MS Molecular Biology (collegewide interdisciplinary degree)
MS Range Science
MS Wildlife and Range Resources
PhD Botany
PhD Molecular Biology (collegewide interdisciplinary degree)
PhD Wildlife and Range Resources

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BS Botany (52–55 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Only 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses and no grades lower than C– in any botany or range science course will be accepted for graduation.
2. Complete the following:
   AgHrt 282, 283.
   Biol 130.
   Botny 210, 321, 331, 332, 341, 342, 343, 350, 351, 440, 475, 491.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Math 119.
   Phscs 100.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Stat 221, 510.
5. Select one of the following options:
   Either Chem 101, 103, 152
   Or Chem 105, 106, 107.

Recommended Courses

Botny 205, 407, 480, 485, 500.
Chem 481.
Mcbio 221, 222.
Range 455.

Recommended Courses for Graduate School and Premedical/Predental Preparation

Botany majors may be interested in attending medical school. Those seeking acceptance to professional schools should complete the following:

Chem 351, 352, 353 (preceded by 105, 106, 107).
Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108.
Zool 260; 261 or 460; 380.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Conservation Biology: Conservation Emphasis (58–60 hours*)

The conservation emphasis is designed to provide students with a broad scientific background in preparation for a career in conservation fields. Graduates will be equipped to deal with the issues and problems of sustainable resource usage, conservation of endangered biota, long-term preservation of biodiversity, development and preservation of natural resources, and management and conservation of ecosystems. This track is recommended for those contemplating graduate school.

Major Requirements

1. Only 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses and no grades lower than C– in any botany, range science, or zoology course will be accepted for graduation.
2. Select one of the following options:
   Either Biol 130.
   Or Zool 101, 102.
3. Complete the following:
   Botny 105, 210.
   Botny-Zool 350, 351, 407, 475.
   Zool 204.
4. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 107, 152.
5. Complete the following:
   Math 119.
6. Select one of the following options:
   Either Botny 341.
   Or Zool 371, 372.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Stat 221, 510.
8. Select one course from the following:
   Botny 400.
   PlSc 535.
9. Select one course from the following:
   Botny 440.
   Chem 281.
   Zool 460.
10. Complete an additional 8 hours in botany, range science, or zoology courses, 300-level or above.

Recommended Courses and Substitutions for Graduate School Preparation

Chem 351, 352, 353 rather than 152.
Phscs 105, 106.
Stat 510 rather than 221.
Zool 373.

Federal Register Requirements

The federal register requirements for botany or zoology can be met by registering under botany or zoology listings respectively when taking the core courses. The major fills the ecology requirements for the Federal Register.

GIS Applications

Students interested in GIS applications should consider a minor in geographic information systems (18–21 hours). See Geography Department for details.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Conservation Biology: Wildlife Biology Emphasis (61–63 hours*)

This emphasis focuses on the educational requirements suggested by the Wildlife Society for its Professional Wildlife Biologist Certification Program. Students with this emphasis can meet the Federal Register requirements for wildlife biologists. Students are also prepared for employment with state wildlife agencies as well as a number of federal and international agencies.

Major Requirements

1. Only 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses and no grades lower than C– in any botany, range science, or zoology course will be accepted for graduation.
2. Select one of the following options:
   Either Biol 130.
   Or Zool 101, 102.
3. Complete the following:
   Botny 210.
   Botny-Zool 350, 351, 407, 475.
   Range 225, 505.
   Zool 204.
4. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 107.
5. Complete the following:
   Math 119.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Botny 440.
   Chem 281.
   Zool 460.

7. Select one of the following options:
   Either Botny 341.
   Or Zool 371, 372.
8. Select one course from the following:
   Stat 221, 510.
9. Select one course from the following:
   Botny 120, 205, 331, 332, 510, 515, 527.
   Range 330.
10. Select two courses from the following:
    Zool 445, 446, 447.
11. Select one course from the following:
    Range 565.
    Zool 457.

Recommended Courses

Students interested in pursuing post graduate studies should consider the following:
Chem 351, 352, 353.
Stat 510 instead of 221.
Wildlife Society Certification has additional requirements which need to be filled if certification is desired. The following are the recommended courses for filling these requirements:
Physical Science 1: complete the following:
Either Chem 152.
Or Chem 351, 352, 353.
Physical Science 2: complete one course from the following:
AgHrt 282.
Geol 101, 111.
Phscs 105 *and* 106.
PhyS 100.
Quantitative 2: complete one course from the following:
AgHrt 240.
Botny 551.
CS 130, 142.
Communications: select 6 hours from the following:
Comms 150, 307, 310, 495R.
Policy, Administration, and Law: complete one course from the following:
Pl Sc 535, 536, 539R.
Humanities and Social Sciences: complete the following:
Econ 240.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Plant Genetics and Breeding (60–61 hours*)

The plant genetics and breeding program focuses on the principles of genetics and applied aspects of plant genetic improvement. Students in this option take a variety of courses in both basic and applied biological sciences and gain firsthand experience in plant molecular biology, breeding, and genetics, including procedures in the greenhouse and field. This major will prepare students for employment following completion of the BS degree or for graduate studies in plant genetics, breeding, and biotechnology.

Major Requirements

1. Only 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses and no grades lower than C– in any botany or range science course will be accepted for graduation.
2. Complete the following core courses:
   AgHrt 282, 459.
   Biol 130.
   Botny 341, 342, 343, 440, 475, 485
3. Select one course from the following:
   AgHrt 100.
   Botny 125
4. Complete the following supporting courses:
   Chem 105, 106, 107, 351, 352.
   Math 119.
5. Select 12 hours from the following:
   AgHrt 205, 220, 283, 305, 331, 361, 433, 490, 514, 540.
   AgHrt–Botny 559.
   Biol 150 (or Botny 350).
   Botny 210, 321, 332, 480, 574.
   Chem 353, 367, 481.
   Mcbio 441, 442.
   MolB 320, 321.

Recommended Courses

Chem 223.
Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Range Science: Production-Agribusiness Emphasis (79–80 hours*)

This emphasis not only includes basic range science courses but also expands training into production agriculture and agribusiness. Additional courses are taken in animal production, forages, and agricultural economics. Besides meeting the requirements of the federal range conservationist and soil conservationist positions, the courses prepare for private-sector careers in ranching, agricultural services, and consulting.

Major Requirements

1. Only 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses and no grades lower than C– in any botany or range science course will be accepted for graduation.
2. Complete the following:
   Range 191, 215, 330, 351, 354, 455, 466, 470.
   AgHrt 282, 283, 303.
   AnSc 207.
   Botny 440.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Biol 100, 130.
4. Select one course from the following:
   BusM 371R, 380R, 382R.
5. Complete the following:
   Math 110.
   Engl 316.
   Stat 221.
6. Complete the following:
   Chem 101, 103, 152.
7. Natural resources electives: Select three of the following courses or course combinations:
   Range 225, 469, 561.
   †Econ 210, 211, 260.
   AgHrt 441 and RMYL 425 (must take both to fill one course).
8. Complete the following:
   Acc 200.
   BusM 300, 340.
   Econ 110.
   OrgB 320.

†Only one of these economics classes will count toward the Federal Register.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Range Science: Rangeland Ecology Emphasis

58–64 hours*)

This emphasis provides the broad ecological background and natural resource training necessary for the multiple-use management of range and related wildlands. Students are trained to manage livestock and big game grazing and correlate this with watershed, timber, recreation, and energy resources in the federal, state, and private sector. Students are not only highly qualified for federal range conservationist and ecologist positions but also for related state and private employment.

Major Requirements

1. Only 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses and no grades lower than C– in any botany or range science course will be accepted for graduation.
2. Complete the following:
   Range 215, 330, 351, 354, 455, 466, 470.
   Botny 210, 341, 440, 475.
   AgHrt 282, 283.
3. Select one of the following courses:
   Chem 101, 105.
4. Select three courses from the following:
   Botny 400, 407, 500, 515, 551, 552.
   Range 225, 469, 561, 565, 568.
5. Select four courses from one of the following disciplines:
   Agronomy/Soils:
   AgHrt 303, 305, 361, 407, 511, 514, 520, 560.
   Archaeology:
   Anthr 110, 215, 350, 454R, 455R, 510, 530.
   Botany:
   Botny 205, 321, 331, 332, 405, 554.
   Geographic Information Systems (GIS):
   Geog 211, 212, 313, 412, 515, 517, 519.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Wildlife and Range Resources (75–77 hours*)

This emphasis satisfies the requirements of the Federal Register in three professional areas: wildlife biology, range conservation, and soil conservation. It prepares students for eventual professional affiliations with state wildlife agencies as well as a number of federal agencies, including the U.S. Forest Service, Bureau of land Management, Fish and Wildlife Service, and Park Service. Graduates are well prepared to deal with complex issues involving wildlife management, range management, and the overall conservation of natural resources. Students are also prepared for graduate programs.

Major Requirements

1. Only 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses and no grades lower than C– in any botany or range science course will be accepted for graduation.
2. Complete the following:
   Range 191, 215, 225, 330, 351, 354, 455, 466, 469, 470, 505, 561.
   AgHrt 240, 282, 283, 303.
   AnSc 207.
   Botny 210, 341, 440.
   Zool 204, 446, 447, 475.
3. Complete the following:
   Either Chem 101, 103, 152.
   Or Chem 105, 106, 107.

Recommended Courses

Econ 240.
Range 500, 515, 527, 565, 568.
RMYL 423, 425.
Zool 457.

Recommended Courses for Premedical/Predental Students

Wildlife and range resources majors may be interested in attending medical school. Those seeking acdeptance to professional schools should complete the following:
Chem 351, 352, 353 (preceded by 105, 106, 107).
Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108.
Zool 260; 261 or 460; 380.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Biology Composite Teaching (96–100 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. Only 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses and no grades lower than C– in any botany or range science course will be accepted for graduation.
2. Complete the following:
   Biol 130, 276.
   Botny 105, 205, 475.
   Zool 204, 261, 350, 493.
3. Select one of the following options:
   Either Chem 101, 152, 281
   Or Chem 105, 106, 107, 351.
4. Complete the following:
   Geol 101.
   Math 110.
   Phscs 105, 106.
5. Complete the following (botany track):
   Botny 210, 440, 491.
   Mcbio 221, 222.
   Zool 344.
6. Select one of the following options:
   Either Zool 338M.
   Or RelC 491, 492 (BioAg sections).
7. Complete the Professional Education Component (28–29 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

Recommended Courses

AgHrt 282, 283.
Botny 120, 321, 480, 527.
Mcbio 311.
Range 225, 565.
Zool 312, 317, 330, 334, 350, 363, 380, 443, 445, 446, 447, 460.
Geol 103, 111, 112.
Math 111, 119.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Biology Teaching (29–30 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Biol 150.
   Botny 105.
   Botny-Zool 475.
   Mcbio 221, 222.
   Zool 204, 276, 331.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Botny 205, 210.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Zool 260, 261.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Botany (18 hours*)

1. Complete 18 hours in plant science and/or genetics courses. Recommended courses are Botny 105, 341, 440. Biol 130 is accepted.
2. No more than one class may overlap with a designated major.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Conservation Biology (18–21 hours*)

1. Select one course from the following:
   Biol 100, 130.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Botny 105, 210.
   Zool 204.
3. Select one of the following options:
   Either Biol 276.
   Or Botny 341.
   Or Zool 276.
   Or Zool 371 *and* 372.
4. Complete the following:
   Botny-Zool 350, 407, 475.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Range Science (15 hours)

Select 15 hours from the following:
Botny 210.
Range 215, 225, 330, 351, 354, 455, 466, 469, 561, 565.

Botany (Botny)

Undergraduate Courses

105. Plants Through the Ages. (3:3:0) F, W Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Biol 100 or equivalent.
Comparative and evolutionary investigation of the origin and development of plants.

120. Plants and Civilization. (3:3:0) F, W
Relationships of plants to human affairs.

125. Plant Science. (2:2:0) F
Basic concepts of plant science for students not taking Biol 130.

+Biol 150. Environmental Biology. (3:3:0)

205. Field Botany. (3:2:4) F, Sp
Common trees and shrubs and their uses.

210. Plant Classification. (3:2:3) W, Sp Prerequisite: Biol 130 or equivalent.
General principles of taxonomy and use of manuals, emphasizing classification of temperate flora.

321. Plant Anatomy. (3:1:5) W even yr. Prerequisite: Biol 130 or equivalent.
Structure of cells, tissues, and organs of vascular plants.

331. Nonvascular Plants and Fungi. (3:2:3) F even yr. Prerequisite: Biol 130.
Structures, life histories, and relationships of algae, bryophytes, and fungi.

332. Vascular Plant Morphology. (2:1.5:1.5) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Biol 130.
Structures, life histories, and relationships.

341. Genetics. (4:4:1)F Prerequisite: GE Biological Science requirement; Chem 106, 152, or instructor's consent.
Molecular, transmission, population, and qualitative genetics.

342. Cell and Molecular Biology. (3:3:1) W Prerequisite: Botny 341.
Molecular biology, structure, and function of plant cells.

343. Cell and Molecular Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3) W Prerequisite: Botny 342 or concurrent registration.

350. (Botny-Zool) Ecology. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: Biol 100 or 130; Zool 204; Botny 105 or 210; Math 110.
Principles and theory of plant and animal ecology. Analyzing distribution and abundance of life on earth.

351. (Botny-Zool) Ecology Laboratory. (1:0:3) F, W Prerequisite: Botny-Zool 350 or concurrent registration.
Introduction to major ecological concepts through field or laboratory exercises, emphasizing appropriate methods for measuring variation under field conditions. Field trips and one major paper required.

399R. (Botny-Range) Cooperative Education. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: supervisor's consent.
On-the-job experience and education.

400. Ecology and Conservation of Natural Resources. (3:3:0) F
Extent, use, and abuse of global natural resources, including significant national and international laws and policies that affect natural resource issues.

405. Ethics in Conservation Biology and Ecology. (2:2:0) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Biol 150 or equivalent.
Historical and philosophical basis for a conservation ethic.

407. (Botny-Zool) Principles of Conservation Biology and Ecology. (3:3:0) F, W even yr. Prerequisite: Biol 130; Zool 204; Botny-Zool 350 or Range 354.
Scientific principles of conservation, applications of population genetic, phylogenetic, and ecological theory to preservation of biological diversity; developing sustainable ecological systems compatible with human resource use.

440. Plant Physiology. (4:3:3) W Prerequisite: GE Biological Science requirement; college chemistry. Recommended: Chem 281; or 351, 352.
Photosynthesis, respiration, water relations, mineral nutrition, growth of flowering plants.

459. (Botny-AgHrt) Plant Breeding. (3:3:0) F odd yr. Prerequisite: Biol 276 or Botny 341.
Genetics and methods of plant breeding related to improving agronomic and horticultural crops.

469. (Botny-Range) Forest Management and Ecology. (3:2:2) F odd yr.
Managing forest properties, emphasizing timber production. Field trips.

475. (Botny-Zool) Evolutionary Science. (3:3:0) F, W, Alt. term Prerequisite: Botny 210 or Zool 204; Biol 150 or Botny-Zool 350; Zool 276, 372, or Botny 341; or instructor's consent.
Observed organic change and apparent history of life on earth. Comparing study methods, interpreting data, evaluating evidence.

480. Plant Pathology. (3:2:3) F odd yr.
Important plant diseases—their identification, causes, and methods of control.

485. (Botny-AgHrt) Plant Biotechnology. (3:2:3) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Biol 130.
Introduction to methodology of modern plant biotechnology.

491. Senior Seminar. (2:2:0) W
Synthesis of major areas of botanical knowledge.

492R. Undergraduate Research Participation. (1–18:0:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: senior standing and supervisor's consent.
Independent student research under faculty supervision.

498R. Special Problems. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: supervisor's consent.
Multiple titles include: Genetics, Morphology, Ecology, Mycology, Medical Botany.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

500. (Botny-Range) Physiological and Chemical Ecology. (3:3:0) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Biol 130, Botny 350, or equivalents, or instructor's consent.
Ecophysiological response of plants to their environment.

507. International Issues in Conservation Biology. (3:3:1) W
International environmental problems, major degradational threats, and options for preservation. Environmental, political, and social costs and benefits of development in underdeveloped countries.

510. Advanced Taxonomy. (3:2:3) F on dem. Prerequisite: Botny 210 or instructor's consent.
Review of taxonomic literature and research methods. One three-day field trip arranged.

515. (Botny-Range) Agrostology: Taxonomy and Ecology of Grasses. (3:2:4) W even yr. Prerequisite: Botny 210.
Classification and ecology of grasses, emphasizing important forage species.

520. Ethnobotany. (3:2:3) F even yr. Prerequisite: Botny 120.
Use of plants by diverse human cultures. Integration of current anthropological and botanical literature, emphasizing ethnotaxonomies, survival strategies, and ethnomedicine.

521. Ethnobotany Practicum. (1–5:Arr.:Arr.) On dem. Prerequisite: Botny 520.
Ethnobotanical research. May require field trip outside continental U.S. Emphasizes participant observation, interviewing techniques, documentary video and film, botanical collecting techniques, and chemical extraction.

522. Biological Instrumentation. (2:2:0) W even yr. Prerequisite: graduate status or instructor's consent.
Theory and application of research instruments to biological problems.

523. Biological Instrumentation Laboratory. (2:0:6) W even yr. Prerequisite: Botny 522 or concurrent registration.
Operating research instruments.

524. Plant Reproductive Ecology. (3:2:3) Sp even yr. Prerequisite: Biol 130, Botny-Zool 350, or equivalents.
Plant reproductive ecological theory, floral structure, gender distribution, pollen transfer, seed dispersal, and reproductive success in plants.

525. Plant Development. (3:3:0) F odd yr. Prerequisite: Botny 342 or equivalent.
Molecular and genetic interactions in plant development.

527. (Botny-Range) Wildland Shrubs. (3:2:3) Sp odd yr.
Taxonomy and ecology of wildland shrubs. Field trip required.

530. Scanning Electron Optics. (3:2:4) F, W Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Theoretical and practical scanning electron microscopy of biological, physical science, and engineering samples, emphasizing practical applications.

531. Transmission Electron Optics. (3:2:4) W Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Theoretical and practical transmission electron microscopy of biological, physical science, and engineering samples, emphasizing practical applications.

534. Lichenology. (3:2:3) F odd yr.
Detailed study of lichens, including classification, morphology, and ecology. Field trip required.

539. Paleobotany. (3:2:3) On dem. Prerequisite: Botny 105, Geol 103.
Morphology and relationships of fossil plants.

540R. Advanced Topics in Plant Physiology. (3:3:0 ea.) W on dem. Prerequisite: Botny 440 or instructor's consent.

550. Plant Geography. (3:2:3) On dem.
Distribution of plant species and communities in light of present and past climates.

551. (Botny-Range-Zool) Quantitative Ecology. (3:2:3) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Botny- Zool 350 or equivalent; Stat 221, 510, or concurrent registration.
Practical quantitative methods necessary for ecological data analysis.

552. (Botny-Range) Terrestrial and Rangeland Ecosystems. (4:3:2) F even yr. Prerequisite: Botny-Zool 350 or equivalent; Stat 221 or 510.
Biotic communities of the earth; population dynamics; reproductive, life-form, and longevity patterns; species interactions; structure, dynamics, and evolution of communities.

554. Population and Conservation Biology. (3:3:0) F even yr. Prerequisite: Botny-Zool 350 or equivalent.
Analysis of populations in natural settings; theoretical and practical strategies for conserving endangered biota and preserving biodiversity.

559. (Botny-AgHrt) Advanced Plant Breeding and Biotechnology. (3:3:0) W even yr. Prerequisite: Botny 341; Botny-AgHrt 459; or equivalent. Recommended: Botny-AgHrt 485 or equivalent.
Genetics and methods of plant breeding and biotechnology related to improving agronomic and horticultural crops.

561. (Botny-Range) Watershed Management. (3:2:3) F even yr. Prerequisite: Range 354, Botny 350; or equivalents.
Water-producing characteristics of forests and rangelands, emphasizing laboratory and field studies of soil and vegetation.

565. (Botny-Range) Wildlife Behavioral Ecology. (3:2:3) W Prerequisite: Biol 130, Range 354, Botny 350; or equivalents.
Integration of the principles of ethology, sociobiology, and behavioral ecology using examples from wildlife and livestock. Behavioral sampling methods stressed. Field trip required.

568. (Botny-Range) Restoration Ecology. (3:3:0) W odd yr. Recommended: AgHrt 282, Range 354, 466, Botny 350; or equivalents.
Nature of ecosystem disturbance and plant succession. The developing science and practice of ecological restoration. Case studies of upland and riparian restoration. Field trips required.

573. (Botny-AgHrt) Plant Cytogenetics. (3:2:3) F odd yr. Prerequisite: Botny 341, 342, 343; AgHrt-Botny 559; or equivalent.
Plant chromosome morphology and structure, polyploidy, aneuploidy, replication and endoreduplication, classical and molecular cytogenetic analytical methods, chromosome evolution, and chromosome engineering.

574. (Botny-AnSc) Introduction to Population Genetics. (3:3:0) F odd yr. Prerequisite: introductory courses in genetics and statistics.
Quantitative study of factors influencing changes in gene frequencies in natural and domestic animal and plant populations.

598R. Directed Readings. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W
Historical and contemporary literature.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Range Science (Range)

Undergraduate Courses

191. Introduction to Wildlife, Range, and Other Applied Fields of Ecology. (1:1:0) F
Professions and curricula are discussed to help students select their individual specialization.

215. Principles of Range Management. (3:3:0) W
Overview of rangeland resources and general principles, including rangeland classification, multiple use management, natural resource policy, and grazing management.

225. Principles of Wildlife Science and Ecology. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Biol 100 or 130.
Principles of wildlife, habitat ecology, and management of natural resource uses with the intent to preserve species and biotic diversity.

330. (Range-AgHrt) Range and Pasture Plant Ecology. (3:3:3) W
Identification, characteristics, phenology, distribution, site adaptation, forage value, and response to management of significant range and pasture plants.

345. (Range-AgHrt-AnSc) Farm and Ranch Planning and Management. (3:2:2) W
Planning, implementation, and control principles and procedures for managing farm and ranch businesses; accounting and business analysis, budgeting, economic principles, structure, adjusting for risk and uncertainty.

347. (Range-AgHrt-AnSc) Environmental and Agricultural Law. (2:2:0) W
Legal matters that affect agriculture and the environment, including torts, contracts, water, and real property.

351. Range Ecology Laboratory. (1:0:3) F Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Range 354.
Introduction to major ecological concepts through field or laboratory exercises, emphasizing appropriate methods for measuring variation under field conditions. Field trips and one major paper required.

354. Range Ecology. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Biol 100 or 130 and concurrent registration in Range 351.
Principles and theory of plant and animal ecology. Analyzing distribution and abundance of life on earth.

399R. (Range-Botny) Cooperative Education. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: supervisor approval.
On-the-job experience and education.

441. (Range-AgHrt) Harvested Forage Crops. (2:2:0) F even yr. Prerequisite: Range 330.
Principles of production, mechanical harvesting, storage, and utilization of forage crops.

455. Range Inventories and Analysis. (3:2:3) F even yr. Prerequisite: Stat 221 or equivalent; Range 354 or equivalent; Engl 316.
Range site, suitability, condition and trend, production, availability, utilization, and other measurements on range lands. Field trip required.

466. (Range-AgHrt) Rangeland Vegetation Improvement. (3:2:3) F odd yr. Recommended: Range 330, 354.
Habitat improvement for domestic and wild animals. Plant control by mechanical equipment, herbicides, and prescribed fire. Revegetation and reclamation of disturbed lands. Field trips required.

469. (Range-Botany) Forest Management and Ecology. (3:2:2) F odd yr.
Managing forest properties, emphasizing timber production. Field trips.

470. Natural Resource Planning and Geographical Information Systems. (3:2:3) F odd yr. Prerequisite: Range 215, 225, 351, 354.
Development of a multiple-use natural resource plan for watershed, forestry, recreation, and wildlife and livestock grazing, using GIS for data acquisition in wildland settings.

498R. Special Problems. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: supervisor approval.
Selected range topics; includes wildlife, range management, and plant identification 1, 2, 3, and 4.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

500. (Range-Botny) Physiological and Chemical Ecology. (3:3:0) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Biol 130, Botny-Zool 350, or equivalents, or instructor's consent.
Ecophysiological response of plants to their environment.

505. Wildlife Law Enforcement. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Biol 130 or equivalent.
Current and historical principles of federal and state wildlife law enforcement, case development, evidence, evaluation, human rights, and testimony.

515. (Range-Botny) Agrostology: Taxonomy and Ecology of Grasses. (3:2:4) W even yr. Prerequisite: Botny 210.
Classification and ecology of grasses, emphasizing important forage species.

527. (Range-Botny) Wildland Shrubs. (3:2:3) Sp odd yr.
Taxonomy and ecology of wildland shrubs. Field trip required.

551. (Range-Botny-Zool) Quantitative Ecology. (3:2:3) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Botny- Zool 350 or equivalent; Stat 221, 510, or concurrent registration.
Practical quantitative methods necessary for ecological data analysis.

552. (Range-Botny) Terrestrial and Rangeland Ecosystems. (4:3:2) F even yr. Prerequisite: Botny-Zool 350 or equivalent; Stat 221 or 510.

Biotic communities of the earth; population dynamics; reproductive, life-form, and longevity patterns; species interactions; structure, dynamics, and evolution of communities.

561. (Range-Botny) Watershed Management. (3:2:3) F even yr. Prerequisite: Range 354, Botny 350; or equivalents.

Water-producing characteristics of forest and rangelands, emphasizing laboratory and field studies of soil and vegetation.

565. (Range-Botny) Wildlife Behavioral Ecology. (3:2:3) W Prerequisite: Biol 130, Range 354, Botny 350; or equivalents.

Integration of the principles of ethology, sociobiology, and behavioral ecology using examples from wildlife and livestock. Behavioral sampling methods stressed. Field trip required.

568. (Range-Botany) Restoration Ecology. (3:3:0) W odd yr. Recommended: AgHrt 282; Range 354, 466, Botny 350; or equivalents.

Nature of ecosystem disturbance and plant succession. The developing science and practice of ecological restoration. Case studies of upland and riparian restoration. Field trips required.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Botany and Range Faculty

Professors

Atwood, N. Duane (1995) BS, Weber State U., 1967; MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1971.
Brotherson, Jack D. (1969) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1967; PhD, Iowa State U. of Science and Technology, 1969.
Cates, Rex G. (1985) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1965, 1968; PhD, U. of Washington, 1971.
Cox, Paul Alan (1983) BS, Brigham Young U., 1976; MSC., U. of Wales, 1978; A.M., PhD, Harvard U., 1978, 1981.
Flinders, Jerran T. (1976) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1967, 1968; PhD, Colorado State U., 1971.
Hess, Wilford M. (1962) BS, Brigham Young U., 1957; MS, PhD, Oregon State U., 1960, 1962.
Hooper, Gary C. (1992) BS, Brigham Young U., 1963; PhD, U. of California, Riverside, 1968.
Roundy, Bruce A. (1994) BA, MS, U. Nevada, Reno, 1973, 1977; PhD, Utah State U., 1984.
Rushforth, Samuel R. (1970) BS, Weber State Coll., 1966; MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1968, 1970.
St. Clair, Larry Lee (1976) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1974, 1975; PhD, U. of Colorado, 1984.
Smith, Bruce Nephi (1974) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1959, 1962; PhD, U. of Washington, 1964.
Weber, Darrell Jack (1969) BS, MS, U. of Idaho, 1958, 1959; PhD, U. of California, Davis, 1963.
Welsh, Stanley L. (1960) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1951, 1957; PhD, Iowa State U. of Science and Technology, 1960.

Associate Professors

Anderson, Val Jo (1988) AS, Snow Coll., 1980; BS, MS, Utah State U., 1982, 1985; PhD, Texas A&M U., 1989.
Fairbanks, Daniel J. (1988) BS, Brigham Young U., 1982; MS, U. of Minnesota, 1985; PhD, U. of Arizona, 1988.

Assistant Professors

Coleman, Craig E. (1996) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1987; PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1992.
Woolstenhulme, Loreen Allphin (1996) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1991, 1992; PhD, U. of Utah, 1996.

Professional Professor

Furniss, H. Blaine (1971) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1968, 1975.

Professional Associate Professor

Gardner, John S. (1989) BS, Oregon State U., 1968; MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1976, 1978.

Adjunct Faculty

Belnap, Brough, Collins, Davis, Gunasekaran, Huffaker, Johansen, Khan, McArthur, Meyer, Monsen, Nebeker, Nelson, Pearson, Pederson, B. Pendleton, R. Pendleton, Spillett, Van Buren, Warfa

Emeriti

Allen, James Vincent (1969) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1968.
Andersen, William R. (1966) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1956, 1958; PhD, U. of California, Davis, 1963.
Harper, Kimball T. (1973) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1960; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1963.
Harrison, Bertrand F. (1931) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1930, 1931; PhD, U. of Chicago, 1937.
Liechty, William R. (1966) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1940, 1952.
Moore, Glen (1954) BS, Brigham Young U., 1949; PhD, U. of Chicago, 1954.
Stutz, Howard C. (1952) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1940, 1951; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1956.
Tidwell, William D. (1966) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1954, 1963; PhD, Michigan State U., 1966.
Vallentine, John F. (1968) BS, Kansas State U., 1952; MS, Utah State U., 1953; PhD, Texas A&M U., 1959.
VanCott, John W. (1958) BS, Utah State U., 1941.
Whitton, Leslie (1962) BS, Utah State U., 1949; MS, U. of California, Davis, 1953; PhD, Cornell U., 1964.

Bulgarian

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Business

See Management, Marriott School of.

Canadian Studies

See Kennedy Center for International Studies, David M.

Cantonese

See Asian and Near Eastern Languages.

Career Education

See Student Development.

Central American Indian Languages

See Linguistics.

Chemical Engineering

Kenneth A. Solen, Chair
350 CB, PO Box 24100, (801) 378-2586

College of Engineering Advisement Center
264 CB, PO Box 24101, (801) 378-4325

Admission to Degree Program

The degree program in the Department of Chemical Engineering carries special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

Chemical engineering deals with the development and application of manufacturing processes in which chemical and physical changes of materials are involved. Chemical engineers research and develop new methods to manage energy resources as well as commercial consumer products. They design reliable, cost-effective manufacturing plants and implement air-quality control systems. As problem solvers, chemical engineers work on the leading edge of technology—researching and developing the ideas of today for the designs, systems, and products of tomorrow.

Areas of instruction include heat transfer, fluid dynamics, chemical reaction kinetics, thermodynamics, separation operations, materials science, process control, and plant design. In addition, chemical engineering places strong emphasis on computer skills.

The BS curriculum is accredited by the Engineering Accreditation Commission of the Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology, Inc. (ABET) and the American Institute of Chemical Engineers.

Career Opportunities

The combination of knowledge about process engineering, math, and chemistry obtained in the chemical engineering curriculum is a versatile preparation that opens a wide variety of opportunities to graduates. This versatility is one reason why chemical engineers have traditionally been among the highest paid professionals in the engineering and science disciplines.

Chemical engineers make a significant difference in our quality of life. Some develop clean, new energy sources to power society. Some develop and produce fertilizers and other agricultural chemicals to feed mankind. Virtually all pharmaceuticals are produced by chemical engineers to enhance the life of millions. Others study and produce biomedical devices and artificial organs. Still others are involved in development and production of new materials for use in new high-tech products.

The petroleum industry is one of the largest employers of chemical engineers, requiring their expertise for the discovery, production, and refining of petro-chemicals including fuels, chemicals, and oils. Engineers produce chemicals ranging in use from cleaning products to medicines and from man-made fibers for clothing and textiles to plastics for construction and consumer goods.

Many chemical engineers are employed in environmentally related positions, working on ways to improve air and water quality, to reduce acid rain and smog, and to recycle and reduce garbage. Additionally, chemical engineers are employed by universities as teachers and researchers and by government agencies to provide answers for energy, environmental, and defense concerns. Chemical engineers also train to work in the medical, business, and legal professions.

Though chemical engineering career opportunities are diverse, job functions can be categorized more easily. Chemical engineers are usually involved in research, design, development, production, technical sales, or management.

In research, they develop new ideas, new products, and new ways to produce existing products more economically and with less environmental impact.

In design, they create the processes that convert raw materials into finished products with emphasis on efficiency, safety, consumer needs, and environmental protection.

The development engineer improves existing processes and technology to better meet changing needs.

Production engineering involves supervision, quality control, and testing of production processes and operations.

Management and technical sales involve decision making with regard to consumer needs and technical capabilities.

Chemical engineers are creative problem solvers. Their careers are rewarding not only from an intellectual and financial view, but also from a personal perspective. Affecting the lives of millions, their solutions provide a better lifestyle for mankind.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Chemical Engineering
Emphasis (optional):
International

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Chemical Engineering
PhD (Chemical) Engineering

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

The Chemical Engineering Department offers a professional program leading to the bachelor of science degree. The first two years of this program are considered to be preprofessional and permit unrestricted enrollment for any student who qualifies for admission to the university. The remaining two years are considered to constitute the professional program.

Any student who is admitted to the university may choose this program as a possible major. All students are urged to declare their intention to major in the department upon first entry to the university or as soon thereafter as possible by contacting the college advisement center (264 CB). Students electing to major in this program must successfully complete the minimum preprofessional program requirements that follow before applying for acceptance into the department professional program.

Transfer Students. Provisions have been made so that a qualified student transferring from a junior college or from another university, college, or department, who has completed the equivalent of the first two years of the academic program, can complete the BS degree requirements in another two years. Contact the department at the earliest date possible so that any variations can be accommodated with minimum loss of time.

Integrated Master's Program. At the end of the sophomore year or during the junior year, a student who desires to obtain a master's degree in chemical engineering may elect to enter the integrated master's program. The purpose of this program is to afford greater flexibility in scheduling course work than is normally available through the traditional BS degree followed by MS degree program. In this program students may work toward both the bachelor's and master's degrees simultaneously, either receiving the BS degree before or at the same time as the MS degree. At the end of the sophomore year students must have a cumulative GPA of 3.5 or more. All credit to be counted toward the master's degree must carry a cumulative GPA of 3.0 or better.

Before completing the final 30 hours of undergraduate course work, students should submit a formal application for admission to the Office of Graduate Studies. Additional details may be obtained from the college advisement center.

Professional Registration. The Chemical Engineering Department encourages graduates to become registered professional engineers. General qualifications for becoming registered are explained in the College of Engineering and Technology section of this catalog. Some states require this status for consulting and practice in the private sector. Successful completion of the basic chemical engineering program outline prepares graduates to pass the Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) examination. Students who wish to become registered as professional engineers are also advised to talk to their advisor about developing their own professional engineering option, which may include additional FE preparation courses.

BS Chemical Engineering (102–104 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Due to the complex prerequisite relationships and limited scheduling of these courses, students should consult with the department about their course scheduling.
2. Complete the following preprofessional courses:
   Math 112, 113, 312, 313.
   Chem 111, 112 (or 105, 106, 107).
   ChEn 170, 263, 273, 291R (twice).
   Phscs 121, 122.
3. Complete the following professional courses:
   ChEn 373, 374, 376, 378, 436, 451, 475, 476, 477, 478, 491.
4. Complete the following supporting courses:
   ECEn 301R (2 hours).
   Engl 316.
   Chem 351, 352, 461.
   Biol 100.
   And select one course from the following:
   Econ 110.
   EngT 200.
5. Complete a technical option that emphasizes particular aspects of chemical engineering and requires an additional 19 hours minimum. For each option:
   a. Obtain departmental approval of proposed option.
   b. Complete 2 hours of mathematics or statistics.
   c. Complete 5 hours of engineering.
   d. Complete 7 hours of advanced chemistry, of which at least 2 hours must be laboratory hours. Advanced chemistry is defined as being 300 level or above with the following exceptions: Chem 213 is acceptable; 367 and 391 are not; only 1 hour of 497R is acceptable.
   e. Fill remaining hours with advanced technical electives (300 level or above).
   f. No more than 2 hours of ChEn 498R or Chem 497R may be applied to the option requirements.

   Details of specific recommendations for technical options are listed in the Major Academic Plan (MAP), which is available from the college advisement center or from the Chemical Engineering Department.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Emphasis (optional): International (106.5–110.5 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the requirements for the chemical engineering program as outlined above (with the exception of Econ 110 and 3 hours of electives in the option area).
2. Complete the following additional courses:
   EngT 200, 498.
   BusM 430.
3. Select one course from the following:
   RelC 344, 351, 355, 356.

4. After consulting with the college advisement center, select a foreign literature course or a classical civilization course, or select one course from the following:
   FnArt 270R.
   Hist 312.
   Hum 240, 242.
   Music 203.
   Fren/Ital 217.
   ArtHC 260.
5. An international "live-in" experience is required. It may be satisfied by (1) a semester or term work experience in a foreign country, (2) a semester or term Study Abroad program approved by the David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies and college personnel, or (3) a prior living experience, such as a foreign mission.

Recommended

Proficiency in a foreign language is strongly suggested.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Chemical Engineering (ChEn)

Undergraduate Courses

170. Introduction to Chemical Engineering. (2:2:0) F, W
Principles of chemical processes and analyses with spreadsheets and graphics. Applying chemical engineering to current problems.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

263. Problem-Solving Techniques for Chemical Engineers. (2:2:0) F, Sp Prerequisite: ChEn 170 or concurrent registration; Math 113.
Use of spreadsheets, advanced equation-solving packages, and structured languages to solve engineering problems. Introduction to chemical process principles. College Lecture attendance required.

273. Chemical Process Principles. (3:3:0) W, Sp Prerequisite: ChEn 170 or equivalent or concurrent registration; Chem 263 or equivalent; Chem 106 or 112; concurrent registration in Phscs 121, Math 113.
Material and energy balances. College Lecture attendance required.

291R. Preprofessional Seminar. (0:1:0 ea.) F, W
Presentations by faculty, advisors, and industrial representatives. College Lecture attendance required. Required both semesters of freshman year.

310. Introduction to Fossil Fuels and Combustion. (3:3:0) F
Energy sources, demands, and processes; costs and environmental studies; case studies of various fossil fuel and alternate energy sources; introduction to combustion and flames.

373. Chemical Engineering Thermodynamics. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Chem 461; ChEn 273.
First and second laws of thermodynamics as applied to behavior of real fluids; physical and chemical equilibrium. College Lecture attendance required.

374. Fluid Mechanics. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Math 312, ChEn 273.
Basic mass, momentum, and energy relations of fluid flow; design of fluid-handling systems and equipment. College Lecture attendance required.

376. Heat and Mass Transfer. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: ChEn 374, Math 313.
Heat and mass transfer, including conduction, convection, radiation, diffusion; steady and unsteady state systems; transport analogies; design applications.

378. Science of Engineering Materials. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Chem 351 or instructor's consent.
Fundamental principles of solid materials and their properties and behavior in engineering applications of metals, polymers, ceramics, and glasses.

411. Air Pollution Control. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: instructor's consent. Recommended: junior standing or higher.
Causes and effects of air pollution; standards, criteria, and legislation; dispersion, meteorology, and atmospheric chemistry. Includes design project and use of impact statements.

412. Introductory Nuclear Engineering. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Math 313; Chem 106 or 112.
Principles and application of nuclear reactor design.

436. Process Control and Dynamics. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Math 313, ChEn 376, 478.
Process systems, associated control systems, and instrumentation. Use of Laplace transforms and complex variables.

451. Chemical Engineering Plant Design and Process Synthesis. (4:4:0) W Prerequisite: ChEn 476.
Design of chemical engineering machinery; plants and/or processes requiring application of unit operations; chemical process principles; economic analysis. Synthesis and optimization of chemical processes. College Lecture attendance required.

475. Unit Operations Laboratory 1. (2:1:6) F, Sp Prerequisite: ChEn 374, 376; Engl 316.
Experimental verification of unit operations design principles; data collection and reduction; report preparation.

476. Separations. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: ChEn 373, 376.
Stage operations, distillation, extraction, and absorption; design applications. College Lecture attendance required.

477. Unit Operations Laboratory 2. (2:1:6) W, Sp Prerequisite: ChEn 476, 478. Recommended: ChEn 475.
Experimental verification of unit operations design principles; data collection and reduction; report preparation.

478. Chemical Reaction Engineering. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: ChEn 373 or Chem 461.
Fundamental principles and equations of chemical kinetics and reactor design.

491. Senior Seminar. (1:1:0) F, W
Technical presentations by students. One semester required of all majors in the senior year.

493R. Special Topics—Undergraduate. (1–3:3:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Classroom study based on student and faculty interest.

498R. Undergraduate Research. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: faculty committee approval.
Final report required; 2 hours maximum allowed for degree credit.

499R. Undergraduate Thesis Research. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

500. Creative Skills in Chemical Engineering. (1:1:0) F
Application of creativity and technical knowledge from prior course work to solution of relevant, open-ended problems.

501. Directed Graduate Studies. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: ChEn 531, 533, 535.
Guided preparation for department's comprehensive exams and for formulation of research prospectus.

510. Principles of Reservoir Engineering. (3:3:0) On dem. Prerequisite: ChEn 373.
Reservoir and hydrocarbon classification; fluid flow; primary oil and gas recovery mechanisms; enhanced oil recovery.

518. Biomedical Engineering Principles. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: ChEn 376, Math 312.
Application of chemical engineering principles to model physiologic systems and to solve medical problems.

531. Thermodynamics of Multicomponent Systems. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: ChEn 373 or 461.
Fundamental concepts and applications in first and second laws, equilibrium and stability, phase equilibrium, and homogeneous and heterogeneous chemical equilibrium.

533. Transport Phenomena. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: ChEn 476 or concurrent registration. Recommended: Math 323.
Transport mechanisms and coefficients and fundamental field equations for momentum, heat, and mass transport, with application to system design.

534. Advanced Separations. (3:3:0) On dem. Prerequisite: ChEn 533, Math 313.
General theory of differential and stagewise diffusional and separation operations, multicomponent distillation, extraction, and absorption; applying this theory to solution of complex problems, including column design and instrumentation.

535. Kinetics and Catalysis. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: ChEn 478.
Theories and principles of chemical kinetics, including heterogeneous catalysis and reactor design.

536. Digital Process Control. (2:1:3) Alt. yr. Prerequisite: ChEn 436.
Computer application of advanced control algorithms to chemical processes.

541. Computer Design Methods. (2:1:3) Alt. yr. Prerequisite: Math 311, ChEn 376.
Computer-aided design and numerical methods of chemical engineering processes.

578. Polymer Science and Engineering. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Introductory materials engineering course.
Fundamentals of polymer chemistry and physics and their implications in engineering applications. Topics include polymerization chemistry, structure-property relationships, polymer physics, and transport properties.

583. Nuclear Reactor Engineering. (3:3:0) On dem. Prerequisite: ChEn 412.
Nuclear reactor design, including heat transfer, energy conversion, reactor materials, instrumentation and control, fuel management, economics, and comparison of principal power system concepts.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Chemical Engineering Faculty

Professors

Bartholomew, Calvin H. (1973) BES, Brigham Young U., 1968; MS, PhD, Stanford U., 1970, 1972.
Beckstead, Merrill W. (1977) BS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1961, 1965.
Fletcher, Thomas H. (1991) BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1980, 1983.
Hedman, Paul O. (1977) BS, U. of Utah, 1957; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1973.
Oscarson, John L. (1974) BES, Brigham Young U., 1968; MS, PhD, U. of Michigan, 1972, 1985.
Rowley, Richard L. (1984) BS, Brigham Young U., 1974; PhD, Michigan State U., 1978.
Smoot, L. Douglas (1967) BS, BES, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1957; MS, PhD, U. of Washington, 1958, 1960.
Solen, Kenneth A. (1976) BS, U. of California, Berkeley, 1968; MS, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1972, 1974.
Terry, Ronald E. (1987) BS, Oregon State U., 1971; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1976.

Associate Professors

Harb, John N. (1988) BS, Brigham Young U., 1983; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1988.
Hecker, William C. (1982) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1974, 1975; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1982.
Pitt, William G. (1987) BS, Brigham Young U., 1983; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1987.
Wilding, W. Vincent (1994) BS, Brigham Young U., 1981; PhD, Rice U., 1985.

Emeriti

Barker, Dee H. (1959) BS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1948, 1951.
Hanks, Richard W. (1963) BES, Yale U., 1957; PhD, U. of Utah, 1960.
Pope, Bill J. (1958) BS, U. of Utah, 1947; MS, PhD, U. of Washington, 1948, 1959.

Chemistry and Biochemistry

Francis R. Nordmeyer, Chair
C-104 BNSN, PO Box 24672, (801) 378-6269

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center
1116 TMCB, PO Box 26539, (801) 378-6270

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Chemistry and Biochemistry are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Chemistry is the study of matter, the changes undergone by matter, and the laws that govern the changes. Chemists study atoms as well as the structures and reactions of molecules. They also work to develop simplifying models (theories) that permit the correlation and explanation of observations about matter. Chemical principles are fundamental to the understanding of subjects ranging from the molecular basis of biology to the structure of rocks and minerals. Chemistry is an essential foundation in engineering disciplines, especially in chemical engineering, the electronics field, energy and environmental science, geology, pharmacy and medicine, and in virtually all manufacturing areas.

Chemistry is an active science that is vital to human existence. Energy needs, environmental concerns, and requirements for new materials all involve major contributions from chemists. Examples of the diverse areas of interest to chemists include gene splicing and DNA replication (biochemistry), synthesis of medicinal substances (organic chemistry), study of complex ions and radicals (inorganic chemistry), spectroscopic study of energy levels and molecular structures (physical chemistry), and analysis of contaminants or trace elements found in the atmosphere or the ocean (analytical chemistry).

Chemistry involves more than test tubes and beakers. It includes working with a variety of equipment and instruments such as mass spectrometers, calorimeters, chromatographs, ultracentrifuges, lasers, X-ray diffractometers, and nuclear magnetic resonance spectrometers.

Career Opportunities

Graduates in chemistry obtain positions in virtually every industry, and those who have imagination and intellectual curiosity are in particular demand. Chemistry is also an excellent preprofessional course of study for those interested in medicine, dentistry, law, and business. The chemistry curriculum is both rigorous and intellectually rewarding.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements, (2) university requirements, and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed for one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA	Chemistry
BA	Chemistry Education
BS	Chemistry
BS	Biochemistry
BS	Molecular Biology
Minors	Chemistry
	Chemistry Education

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please contact the department.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS	Chemistry
MS	Biochemistry
PhD	Chemistry
PhD	Biochemistry

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Required High School Preparation

1. It is recommended that a student complete the following courses in high school:

   3 units of English

2 units of physical science, chemistry, and physics.
4 units of mathematics, consisting of 2.5 units of algebra, 1 unit of geometry, and 0.5 unit of trigonometry. This should qualify students to begin college mathematics with Math 112, analytic geometry and calculus.

Because mathematics provides the foundation for all work in the physical and mathematical sciences, particular attention is paid to high school preparation in this subject.

To decide which mathematics course should be taken first, contact the Mathematics Department, 292 TMCB, and request a mathematics placement test.

2. All students, especially freshmen and those transferring, should contact the department between March and August each year for advisement about efficient course scheduling and opportunities for student employment.

Scholarships

Kenneth W. Brighton, Carl J. Christensen, and Ida Tanner Hamblin scholarships are available to qualified chemistry majors.

BA Chemistry (57.5 hours*)

This degree provides an excellent preparation for those individuals in preprofessional programs (e.g., medicine, dentistry, master of business administration, or law), and it also provides strong career alternatives in chemistry.

Major Requirements

1. No more than 3 hours of D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. The final 10 hours of required chemistry credit must be taken at BYU.
3. Complete the following:
   Chem 111H, 112, 213, 227, 351M, 352M, 354, 391, 461, 462, 464, 501.
4. Complete the following:
   Math 112, 113, 343.
   Phscs 121, 122, 221, 250.
5. After consulting with an advisor, select 3 hours from the following:
   Chem 455, 481, 497R, 499R, 514, 518, 521, 523, 552, 553, 561, 563, 564, 565, 569, 594R, 596R.

Recommended Courses

Biol 130.
CS 130, 142.
Math 344.
RelC 491, 492.

Note: Supporting courses suggested by most medical and dental schools are found in the Preprofessional Programs section of this catalog. The more rigorous chemistry, mathematics, and physics courses required for the chemistry majors will satisfy the minimum requirements listed there. Elective courses in biochemistry and in biological science are especially pertinent to these preprofessional programs.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Chemistry Education (83.5–89.5 hours,* including certification hours)

This degree provides preparation for professional high school teaching. High school chemistry teachers will find opportunities available and will know the satisfaction of guiding good students into essential and rewarding careers. Students should work closely with both the Department of Chemistry and Biochemistry and the David O. McKay School of Education Advisement Center and Certification Office.

Major Requirements

1. No more than 3 hours of D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. The final 10 hours of required chemistry credit must be taken at BYU.
3. Contact the Education Advisement Center for entrance requirements into the certification program.
4. A teaching minor is not required for certification. However, it is strongly recommended.
5. Complete the following:
   Chem 111H, 112, 213, 227, 351M, 391, 501.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Chem 461, 367.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Chem 352M, 462.
8. Select one course from the following:
   Chem 481.
   Math 343.
   Note: Chem 352 is prerequisite to 481. Chem 481 will also satisfy the advanced course requirements in item 12 below.
9. Complete the following:
   Biol 130.
   Math 112, 113.
   Phscs 121, 122.
10. Select one of the following four options:
    a. Biol 150.
    b. Geol 111.
    c. Math 302, Stat 341.
    d. Phscs 221, 250.
11. Select one course from the following:
    ChEn 283.
    CS 130, 142.
12. After consulting with an advisor, select 3 hours from the following:
    Chem 354, 464, 481, 497R, 499R, 514, 521, 523, 552, 553, 561, 563, 564, 565, 569, 594R, 596R.
    Phil 423.
13. Complete the Professional Education Component (28–29 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Chemistry (71.5 hours*)

This is the preferred degree for chemistry majors (approved by the American Chemical Society) and those who desire an advanced degree (MS, PhD) in chemistry.

Major Requirements

1. No more than 3 hours of D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. The final 10 hours of required chemistry credit must be taken at BYU.
3. Complete the following:
   Chem 111H, 112, 213, 227, 351M, 352M, 354, 391, 455, 461, 462, 464, 501, 514, 521, 523.
4. Complete 1 hour of the following:
   Chem 594R.
5. Complete the following:
   Math 112, 113, 343.
   Phscs 121, 122, 221, 250.
6. After consulting with an advisor, select 6 hours from the following:
   Chem 481, 497R, 499R, 518, 552, 553, 561, 563, 564, 565, 569, 582, 584, 596R.

   Note 1: Only 3 combined hours in 497R and 499R will apply to the major.

   Note 2: With approval, certain other 300-level and above courses in the allied fields of physics, statistics, engineering, and biology may be taken to satisfy this requirement. Because of the importance of biochemistry, polymer chemistry, and materials science, courses in those areas should receive serious consideration by chemistry students.

Recommended Courses

Biol 130.
CS 130, 142.
Math 344.
RelC 491, 492.

Note: Elective courses, beyond the requirements above, should be selected in consultation with an advisor. The following should be given consideration: advanced chemistry, foreign languages (especially French, German, Japanese, and Russian), biological sciences, computer science, engineering, mathematics, physics, statistics.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Biochemistry (75.5 hours*)

Students preparing for health-related fields (medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine) or those who desire an advanced degree (MS, PhD) in biochemistry, biology, or the health sciences receive excellent preparation from this degree program.

Major Requirements

1. No more than 3 hours of D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. The final 10 hours of required chemistry credit must be taken at BYU.
3. Complete the following:
   Chem 111H, 112, 213, 227, 351M, 352M, 354, 391, 461, 464, 468, 481, 501, 582, 584.
4. Complete 1 hour of the following:
   Chem 594R.
5. Complete the following:
   Math 112, 113, 343.
   Phscs 121, 122, 221, 250.
   Biol 130.
6. Select one of the following options:
   Either
   Zool 371, 372
   Or
   Botny 341.
7. After consulting with an advisor, select 3 hours from the following:
   Chem 455, 497R, 499R, 514, 518, 521, 523, 552, 553, 561, 563, 564, 565, 569, 586, 596R.

   Note: With prior approval, many 400- and 500-level courses in botany, microbiology, and zoology will fill this requirement.

Recommended Courses

CS 130, 142.
Math 344.
RelC 491, 492.

Note: Supporting courses suggested by most medical and dental schools are found in the Preprofessional Programs section of this catalog. The more rigorous chemistry, mathematics, and physics courses required for the chemistry majors will satisfy the minimum requirements listed there. Elective courses in biochemistry and in biological science are especially pertinent to these preprofessional programs.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Molecular Biology (70.5 hours*)

This degree represents an excellent preparation for the health-related fields of medicine, dentistry, and veterinary medicine, and for students who intend to pursue an advanced degree (MS, PhD) in biology, molecular biology, biochemistry, or the health sciences. The rigorous chemistry, mathematics, and physics courses required for the chemistry majors will satisfy the minimum requirements listed in the Preprofessional Programs section of this catalog.

(A molecular biology degree is also offered by the College of Biology and Agriculture. The chemistry degree provides an excellent preparation in molecular biology because of its additional emphasis in chemistry and biochemistry, which are fundamental components of modern molecular biology.)

Major Requirements

1. No more than 3 hours of D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. The final 10 hours of required chemistry credit must be taken at BYU.
3. Complete the following:
   Chem 111H, 112, 223, 351M, 352M, 354, 367, 391, 481, 501, 582, 584, 586.
4. Complete the following:
   Biol 130.
   Math 112, 113.
   Phscs 121, 122, 221.
5. Select one of the following options:
   Either
   Zool 371, 372, 373
   Or
   Botny 341, 342.
6. Complete 3 hours from the following:
   Mcbio 351.

7. After consulting with an advisor, select 3 hours from the following:
   Chem 455, 497R, 499R, 514, 518, 521, 523, 552, 553, 561, 563, 564, 565, 569, 594R, 596R.

Recommended Courses

CS 130, 142.
RelC 491, 492.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Chemistry (18–20 hours*)

1. Select one of the following options:
   Either Chem 111H, 112, 213
   Or Chem 105, 106, 107, 223.
2. Select one of the following options:
   Either Chem 351, 352
   And Chem 353 (2 hours) or 354
   Or Chem 461, 462, 464.

Note: When all of the chemistry credit required for a minor is transferred from another school, at least one course in chemistry must be taken at BYU with a grade of C or better—or the student may request to take a standardized national exam covering advanced material required for the minor. Chemistry programs at some schools have been evaluated, and their credit is acceptable for the minor. No more than one course with a grade in the D range will be allowed.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Chemistry Education (16–18 hours*)

1. Select one of the following options:
   Either Chem 111H, 112, 351
   Or Chem 105, 106, 107, 351.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Chem 213, 223.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Chem 367, 461.

Note: When all of the chemistry credit required for a minor is transferred from another school, at least one course in chemistry must be taken at BYU with a grade of C or better—or the student may request to take a standardized national exam covering advanced material required for the minor. Chemistry programs at some schools have been evaluated, and their credit is acceptable for the minor. No more than one course with a grade in the D range will be allowed.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Chemistry and Biochemistry (Chem)

Undergraduate Courses

100. Elementary College Chemistry. (3:3:0) On dem. Independent Study also. Recommended: PhyS 100 or equivalent.
Structure of matter and the chemical consequences of that structure. For nonscience and nonmedical majors.

101. Introductory General Chemistry. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Math 97 or equivalent.
Atomic and molecular structure, periodic relationships, states of matter, chemical reactions and stoichiometry, acids and bases. Primarily for nonscience majors who require a broad introduction to general chemistry.

103. Introductory Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3) W Prerequisite: Chem 101 or equivalent.
Introductory laboratory techniques required for simple classical experiments in chemistry. Fee.

105. General College Chemistry. (4:4:1) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent registration.
Atomic and molecular structure, periodic properties, states of matter, chemical bonding, stoichiometry, oxidation- reduction, kinetic-molecular theory, solutions and equilibria. Primarily for students in engineering and the biological sciences. Tutorial included.

106. General College Chemistry. (3:3:1) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Chem 105 or equivalent.
Continuation of Chem 105. Tutorial included.

107. General College Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Chem 106 or concurrent registration.
Chemical properties, chemical reactions, collection and interpretion of data, preparation of reports. Required for most students needing one year of general chemistry. Fee.

111. Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:1) F Prerequisite: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent registration. Strongly recommended: high school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent registration in Math 112.
Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics. Tutorial included.

111H. Honors Principles of Chemistry. (4:3:4) F Prerequisite: Math 110 (or equivalent) or concurrent registration. Strongly recommended: high school chemistry, physics, and introductory calculus or concurrent registration in Math 112.
Stoichiometry, kinetic-molecular theory, thermodynamics, states of matter, solutions and equilibria, electrochemistry, structure and bonding, chemical reactions, kinetics. For chemistry majors. Laboratory and tutorial included. Fee.

112. Principles of Chemistry. (3:3:2) W Prerequisite: Chem 111, 111H, or equivalent.
Continuation of Chem 111 or 111H. Tutorial included.

152. Introductory Organic Chemistry. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Chem 101 or adequate high school preparation in chemistry.
Principles of structure and reactivity, properties and reactions of compound classes, syntheses.

213. Introductory Inorganic Laboratory. (3:1:6) F, W Prerequisite: Chem 106 or concurrent registration in 112.
Principles and techniques of making precise chemical measurements. Synthesis, properties, and identification of inorganic compounds. Fee.

223. Quantitative and Qualitative Analysis. (4:2:6) F, Sp Prerequisite: Chem 106 or equivalent.
Principles of chemical equilibrium, quantitative chemical measurements, and qualitative detection of selected chemical species. Primarily for majors in molecular biology and the life sciences. Fee.

227. Introductory Analytical Chemistry. (4:2:6) F, Sp Prerequisite: Chem 213.
Principles of quantitative analysis, introductory instrumental methods, and computer applications to chemical analysis. Fee.

281. Introductory Biochemistry. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Chem 152 or equivalent.
Relationships between chemical structure and physiological function, overall correlation of metabolism. Students with more extensive preparation should register for Chem 481.

351. Organic Chemistry. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Chem 107 or 226 or equivalent.
Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses. Primarily for majors in chemistry, chemical engineering, and the biological sciences.

351M. Organic Chemistry—Majors. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Chem 107 or 226 or equivalent.
Chemical bonds and molecular structure, conformation and configuration, functional classes, reactions and mechanisms, syntheses.

352. Organic Chemistry. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Chem 351 or equivalent.
Continuation of Chem 351.

352M. Organic Chemistry—Majors. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Chem 351M or equivalent.
Continuation of Chem 351M.

353. Organic Chemistry Laboratory— Nonmajors. (1–2:0:6) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Chem 352 or concurrent registration.
Physical and chemical properties, isolation and purification, characterization, syntheses. For predentistry, premedicine, and other majors who do not intend to take Chem 455. Fee.

354. Organic Chemistry Laboratory— Majors. (2:0:6) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Chem 352 or concurrent registration.
Physical and chemical properties, manipulative skills, isolation and purification, characterization and identification, syntheses. Fee.

367. Physical Chemistry for Molecular Biology. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Chem 352, Math 112 or 119, Phscs 106 or 221.
Principles of chemical thermodynamics and kinetics with applications to biological systems; brief introduction to quantum mechanics and spectroscopy and to transport properties. For majors in molecular biology.

391. Technical Writing Using Chemical Literature. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: Chem 227, 352.
Intensive technical writing course based on chemical literature sources. Fulfills GE Advanced Writing requirement.

455. Synthesis and Qualitative Organic Analysis. (3:1:6) F Prerequisite: Chem 354; 501 or concurrent registration.
Laboratory course emphasizing isolation, purification, and characterization of major and minor products from selected syntheses. For chemistry and other science majors. Fee.

461. Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: Chem 223 or 226; Math 343, Phscs 221, or concurrent registration.
States of matter, thermodynamics and equilibria, kinetic-molecular theory, quantum mechanics, group theory, atomic and molecular structure, spectroscopy.

462. Physical Chemistry. (3:3:0) W, Sp Prerequisite: Chem 461.
Continuation of Chem 461.

464. Physical Chemistry Laboratory. (1–2:0:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Chem 227; 461, 501, or concurrent registration.
Precise data collection for classical experiments, computer manipulation of data, report preparation. Course may be continued for a second semester or term. Fee.

468. Biophysical Chemistry. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Chem 461; 481 or concurrent registration.
Application of physical chemistry to biological systems. Thermodynamics, statistical mechanics, quantum mechanics, biophysical experimental techniques. For biochemistry (BS) majors and those interested in the health professions or biochemistry.

481. Biochemistry. (4:4:1) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Chem 352 or equivalent.
First-semester biochemistry. Molecular components of cells, chemical structure and function, enzymes, metabolic transformations, photosynthesis. For chemistry majors or students in biological sciences who contemplate pursuing advanced degrees, including medicine. Tutorial included.

497R. Undergraduate Special Problems. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent and Chem 501 or concurrent registration or special safety training.
Undergraduate research experience.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent and Chem 501 or concurrent registration or special safety training.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

501. Chemical Handling and Safe Laboratory Practices. (0.5:0.5:0) F, Sp
Survey of appropriate methods in handling hazardous materials and disposing of waste; legal rights and requirements; safety in chemistry laboratory work.

514. Inorganic Chemistry. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Chem 461; 462 or 468.
In-depth treatment of theoretical concepts in inorganic chemistry and the descriptive chemistry of some of the elements.

518. Inorganic Synthesis. (2:0:6) On dem. Prerequisite: Chem 501 or concurrent registration; Chem 514.
Syntheses that demonstrate a variety of techniques and a range of inorganic materials.

521. Instrumental Analysis Lecture. (2:2:0) F Prerequisite: Chem 464 or equivalent; Chem 501 or concurrent registration.
Modern instrumental methods and basic principles of instrumentation.

523. Instrumental Analysis Laboratory. (2:0:6) W Prerequisite: Chem 464 or equivalent; Chem 521.
Continuation of Chem 521. Laboratory experience with modern analytical instrumentation. Fee.

552. Advanced Organic Chemistry. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Chem 351, 352, 461, 462.
Physical aspects of organic chemistry; mechanisms, reaction intermediates, bonding, stereochemical and stereoelectronic effects, molecular orbital theory, Lewis acidity and basicity.

553. Advanced Organic Chemistry. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Chem 351, 352.
Synthetic aspects of organic chemistry; oxidations, reductions, concerted reactions, stereoselectivity, synthetic equivalents, protecting groups. Examples of natural product total synthesis.

561. Chemical Thermodynamics. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Chem 461, 462.
Development of the principles of chemical thermodynamics, including laws, pure materials, mixtures, equilibria, and elementary statistical mechanics.

563. Reaction Kinetics. (3:3:0) W alt. yr. Prerequisite: Chem 461, 462.
Theoretical aspects of chemical kinetics in the gas phase and in solution. Rates and mechanisms in solution, rapid reactions, and other topics.

564. Nuclear Chemistry and Radiochemistry. (2–3:3:0) W alt. yr. Prerequisite: Chem 461, 462.
Introduction to nuclear structure, radioactivity, nuclear spectroscopy, and nuclear reactions, emphasizing applications in chemistry.

565. Introduction to Quantum Chemistry. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Chem 461, 462.
Introduction to physical and mathematical aspects of quantum theory, emphasizing application of the Schrodinger wave equation to chemical systems.

569. Fundamentals of Spectroscopy. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Chem 461; 462 or 468; Chem 523 or equivalent.
Atomic and molecular spectroscopy and application of group theoretical concepts. Types of experiments and interpretation of data.

582. Biochemistry of the Nucleic Acids. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Chem 481.
Second-semester biochemistry. Nucleic acid biochemistry and molecular biology: nucleotide metabolism, chromosome and chromatin structure, DNA structure and replication, RNA transcription and gene expression, protein synthesis and regulation, eukaryotic gene systems.

584. Biochemistry Lab. (2:0:6) W Prerequisite: Chem 481.
Modern research instrumentation and current biochemical research procedures. Enzyme isolation and characterization, protein sequencing, nucleic acid manipulations. Fee.

586. Recombinant DNA. (2:0:6) W Prerequisite: Chem 481.
Laboratory course covering major techniques involved in isolation, amplification, and cloning of recombinant DNA. Variety of cloning systems and methods of identification introduced. Fee.

594R. General Seminar. (0.5:1:0 ea.) F, W
Research topics presented by faculty and visiting scientists. Required every semester in residence of all senior BS majors and graduate students in chemistry and biochemistry.

596R. Special Topics in Chemistry. (1–3:3:0 ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: Chem 351, 352; Chem 367 or 461.
Subjects that may be offered include:
—Atmospheric Chemistry
—Ion Chromatography
—Organic Spectroscopic Identification

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Chemistry and Biochemistry Faculty

Professors
Bills, James L. (1963) BS, U. of Utah, 1958; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1963.
Boerio-Goates, Juliana (1981) BA, Seton Hill Coll., 1975; MS, PhD, U. of Michigan, 1977, 1979.
Bradshaw, Jerald S. (1966) BS, U. of Utah, 1955; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1963.
Dalley, Nelson Kent (1968) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1964; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1968.
Eatough, Delbert J. (1971) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1967.
Farnsworth, Paul B. (1981) BS, Brigham Young U., 1977; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison.
Goates, Steven R. (1981) BS, Brigham Young U., 1976; MS, PhD, U. of Michigan, 1977, 1981.
Grant, David M. (1986) BS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1954, 1958.
Hansen, Lee Duane (1972) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1965.
Lamb, John D. (1985) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1978.
Lee, Milton L. (1976) BA, U. of Utah, 1971; PhD, Indiana U., 1975.
Mangelson, Nolan F. (1969) AS, Snow Coll., 1959; BS, Utah State U., 1961; MS, Brigham Young U., 1963; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1967.
Nordmeyer, Francis R. (1972) BA, Wabash Coll., 1961; MA, Wesleyan U., 1964; PhD, Stanford U., 1967.
Ott, J. Bevan, Associate Academic Vice President—Research and Graduate Studies (1960) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1956; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1959.
Owen, Noel L. (1987) BSc, U. of Wales, 1960; PhD, Cambridge U., England, 1964; DSc, U. of Wales, 1983.
Pugmire, Ronald J. (1986) BS, Idaho State U., 1959; PhD, U. of Utah, 1966.
Robins, Morris J. (1986) BA, U. of Utah, 1961; PhD, Arizona State U., 1965.
Thorne, James M. (1966) BA, Utah State U., 1961; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1966.
Watt, Gerald D. (1989) BA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1966.
Woolley, Earl M. (1970) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1969.
Zimmerman, S. Scott (1978) BS, Brigham Young U., 1969; PhD, Florida State U., 1973.

Associate Professors
Berges, David A. (1994) BS, Evansville Coll., 1963; PhD, Indiana U., 1967.
Dearden, David V. (1994) BS, Brigham Young U., 1983; PhD, California Inst. of Technology, 1989.
Elton, Terry S.(1995) BS, Weber State U., 1981; PhD, Washington State U., 1986.
Fleming, Steven A. (1985) BS, U. of Utah, 1978; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1984.
Kuchar, Marvin C. J. (1979) AA, Eastern Arizona Coll., 1955; BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1963.
Shirts, Randall B. (1991) BS, Brigham Young U., 1972; AM, PhD, Harvard U., 1978, 1979.
Simmons, Daniel L. (1989) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1980; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1986.

Assistant Professors
Andrus, Merritt B. (1997) BS, Brigham Young U., 1986; PhD, U. of Utah, 1991.
Harrison, Roger G. (1995) BS, Utah State U., 1986; PhD, U. of Utah, 1993.
Kaspar, Roger L.(1995) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1986; PhD, U. Of Washington, 1991.
Peterson, Matt A.(1995) BS, Utah State U., 1987; PhD, U. Of Arizona, 1992.
Savage, Paul B. (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1988; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, 1993.
Willardson, Barry M. (1996) BA, Brigham Young U., 1984; PhD, Purdue U., 1990.
Woodfield, Brian F. (1997) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1986, 1988; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1995.

Senior Lecturer
Cannon, John Francis (1970) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1969.

Associate Teaching Professor
Hinshaw, Barbara C. (1989) BA, Westminster Coll., 1966; MS, U. of Utah, 1969.

Lecturer
Giddings, Luther D. (1995) BS, U. of Utah, 1985; PhD, Ohio State U., 1993.

Emeriti

Blackham, Angus Udell (1952) BA, Brigham Young U., 1949; MA, PhD, U. of Cincinnati, 1950, 1952.
Broadbent, H. Smith (1946) BS, Brigham Young U., 1942; PhD, Iowa State U. of Science and Technology, 1946.
Butler, Eliot A. (1956) BS, PhD, California Inst. of Technology, 1952, 1956.
Castle, Raymond N. (1970) BS, U. of Idaho, 1939; MA, PhD, U. of Colorado, 1941, 1944.
Cluff, Coran L. (1960) BS, Northern Arizona U., 1952; MS, PhD, U. of Michigan, 1955, 1961.
Goates, J. Rex (1947) BS, Brigham Young U., 1942; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1947.
Gubler, Clark J. (1958) BA, Brigham Young U., 1939; MA, Utah State U., 1941; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1945.
Hall, H. Tracy (1955) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1942, 1943, 1948.
Hawkins, Richard T. (1959) BA, Brigham Young U., 1951; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1959.
Izatt, Reed M. (1956) BS, Utah State U., 1951; PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1954.
Mangum, John H. (1963) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1959; PhD, U. of Washington, 1963.
Nelson, K. LeRoi (1956) BS, Utah State U., 1948; PhD, Purdue U., 1952.
Paul, Edward G. (1965) BS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1958, 1962.
Smith, Marvin A. (1966) BS, Utah State U., 1960; MS, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1962, 1964.
Snow, Richard L. (1957) BS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1953, 1957.
Swensen, Albert D. (1947) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1937, 1938; PhD, Louisiana State U., New Orleans, 1941.
Vernon, Leo P. (1970) BA, Brigham Young U., 1948; PhD, Iowa State U. of Science and Technology, 1951.
Wilson, Byron J. (1965) BS, Idaho State U., 1955; MA, Southern Illinois U. 1958; PhD, U. of Washington, 1961.

Chinese

See Asian and Near Eastern Languages.

Church History and Doctrine

See Religious Education.

Civil and Environmental Engineering

T. Leslie Youd, Chair
368-C CB, PO Box 24081, (801) 378-2811

College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center
264 CB, PO Box 24101, (801) 378-4325

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

Civil engineering, more than any other field of engineering, serves the basic needs of society through construction and maintenance of the public works infrastructure. Civil engineers build upon a base of science, mathematics, and fundamental engineering concepts to plan, design, construct, manage and maintain infrastructure systems for water, transportation, and civil structures. In these activities civil engineers are responsible to meet societal expectations for economy and utility, public safety, and protection of the environment. To accomplish these goals civil engineers are expected to have additional knowledge in social, economic, and managerial sciences and to be able to communicate well with the public, clients, and specialists in cooperating disciplines.

The BYU Civil and Environmental Engineering Department prepares students for professional involvement in water resources, geotechnical (soils), transportation, structural, and environmental engineering. Applied design principles are crucial elements in civil engineering education and practice. These principles are stressed throughout the degree curriculum. Students may obtain a bachelor of science degree, a master's degree, and/or a doctoral degree. The bachelor's program, which leads to a degree in civil engineering, is accredited by the Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology (ABET). This national stamp of approval assures graduates that their degree will be duly recognized nationwide and will serve as the first step toward professional registration.

Career Opportunities

As a consequence of the broad nature of this profession, civil engineers become involved at every level of government and in the private sector. Many civil engineers hold positions in national, state, or local government agencies. Others work in various industrial and engineering organizations both large and small. Because the very nature of civil and environmental engineering encourages private practice, many civil engineers establish their own firms. Since civil engineers work so closely with every level of society, it is important that they be professionally licensed. This licensure, designed to protect the public interest and safety, is a privilege extended by each state to engineers who demonstrate their qualifications through examination and performance. Civil engineers so licensed may use the title Registered Professional Engineer, a mark of competence and professional stature.

Job opportunities in civil and environmental engineering continue to be very good. Essentially all graduates are employed in engineering. Civil engineering is also an excellent preparation for advanced education and work in other professional areas such as law, medicine, and business.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Civil Engineering
Emphasis (optional):
International

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see the department.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Civil Engineering
PhD Engineering

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

The Civil and Environmental Engineering Department requires acceptance into the professional program at the beginning of the junior year. See your advisement center for details.

Qualified students from junior colleges with adequate preengineering programs can normally complete the BS degree in two additional years. Students who transfer into the department from other universities or from other departments at BYU will be placed in the civil and environmental engineering program according to an evaluation of completed work. Prospective transfer students should contact the department as soon as possible so that any variations can be accommodated with a minimum loss of time.

A maximum of 9 credit hours with D grades are allowed in Civil and Environmental Engineering Department classes. Continued enrollment in professional program courses or clearance for graduation will be denied until D credits are reduced to 9 hours or less.

Integrated Master's Program. Although abundant professional employment is available with a bachelor's degree, professional opportunities are markedly improved by completing a master's degree.

At the end of the sophomore year or during the junior year of the civil engineering curriculum, those who have been accepted to the professional program and who desire to obtain a master's degree in civil engineering (MS) may enter the integrated master's program. In this program students may work toward both the bachelor's and master's degrees concurrently. The BS degree may be received before or simultaneously with receiving the MS degree.

Applicants to the integrated program must have a cumulative GPA of 2.5 or higher. All credit to be counted toward the master's degree must carry a cumulative GPA of 3.0 or better. When students are within 30 credit hours of completing the graduate degree, they must also apply for and be admitted to graduate school.

Professional Engineer Registration. The Civil and Environmental Engineering Department encourages graduates to become Registered Professional Engineers. General qualifications for becoming registered are explained in the College of Engineering and Technology section of this catalog. This status is vital to engineering practice in the public sector and to much consulting work. The civil and environmental engineering program prepares graduates to successfully complete the Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) examination, an important step in becoming registered. Students who wish to strengthen their preparation for the FE exam should select the required engineering science course with this need in mind.

BS Civil Engineering (93 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following preprofessional courses:
   CEEn 100A,B, 103.
   Math 113.
   MeEn 173.
   Chem 105.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Chem 106.
   Phscs 221.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Chem 106, 351.
   Math 411.
   Mcbio 221.
   Phscs 221, 222.
   Stat 336.
4. Complete the following professional courses:
   CEEn 113, 200A,B, 203, 204, 205, 270, 321, 332, 341, 351, 361, 370, 391A,B, 424, 491A,B, 495.
5. Select one course from the following:
   CEEn 431, 433.
6. Complete the following supporting courses:
   Engl 316.
   Geol 330.
   Math 112, 312, 313.
   Phscs 122.
   RelC 491, 492.
7. Select one course from the following engineering science electives:
   ChEn 273, 378.
   ECEn 301R.
   MeEn 321, 401.
8. Select 6 hours of technical electives including 3 hours of approved design content. Approval of department advisor required.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Emphasis (optional): International (103.5–105.5 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the requirements for the civil engineering program as outlined above.
2. Complete the following additional courses:
   EngT 200, 498.
   BusM 430.
3. Select one course from the following:
   RelC 344, 351, 355, 356.
4. In consultation with the college advisement center, select a foreign literature course or a classical civilization course.
   Or select one course from the following:
   FnArt 270.
   Hist 312.
   Hum 240, 242.
   Music 203.
   Fren/Ital 217.
   ArtHC 260.
5. An international "live-in" experience is required. It may be satisfied by (1) a semester or term work experience in a foreign country, (2) a semester or term Study Abroad program approved by the David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies and college personnel, or (3) a prior living experience, such as a foreign mission.
6. Write a senior paper.

Recommended

Proficiency in a foreign language is strongly suggested.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Civil and Environmental Engineering (CEEn)

Undergraduate Courses

100A,B. Introduction to Civil and Environmental Engineering. (0.5:1:0 ea.) F, W

Activities of civil engineering; principles and methods involved in solving civil engineering problems. College Lecture attendance required.

103. Engineering Mechanics—Statics. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Math 113 or concurrent registration.
Concepts of mechanics: force systems in equilibrium, resultants, friction, centroids, utilization of vector algebra.

113. Engineering Measurements. (3:1:6) F, Sp Prerequisite: Math 111, MeEn 173.
Measurement of horizontal and vertical distances and angles to locate engineering projects including profiles, plane and topographical mapping, site layout, and earthwork.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200A,B. Introduction to Civil and Environmental Engineering. (0.5:1:0 ea.) F, W
Activities of civil engineering; principles and methods involved in solving civil engineering problems. College Lecture attendance required.

203. Engineering Mechanics—Mechanics of Materials. (3:3:0) F, W, Su Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Phscs 121 or CEEn 103.
Fundamental concepts of elastic stress and strain relations; cylinders and spheres; torsion; beam theory, including bending stresses; deflections; and two-dimensional elastic theory.

204. Engineering Mechanics—Dynamics. (3:3:0) F, W, Su Independent Study also. Prerequisite: CEEn 103 or Phscs 121.
Concepts of dynamics applied to particles, systems of particles, rigid bodies, vibration systems, and nonrigid particles systems.

205. Structural Engineering Materials. (3:2:3) F, W Prerequisite: CEEn 203, 270.
Characterization of structural engineering materials, including laboratory testing.

270. Computational Methods. (3:3:0) F, Sp Prerequisite: Math 113 or concurrent registration.
Use of spread sheets, C-programming, and other computer tools for solution of civil engineering problems.

302. Structures and Strength of Materials Fundamentals. (4:4:0) F Prerequisite: Phscs 105, CEEn 103.
Structural mechanics and strength of materials for soils, woods, concrete, and steel applied to practical construction situations. For nonmajors only.

321. Structural Analysis. (3:3:0) F, Sp Prerequisite: CEEn 203, 270.
Deflection analysis by the method of virtual work. Analysis of statistically indeterminate structures by the flexibility method, the stiffness method, and moment distribution. Computer analysis of structures.

332. Hydraulics and Fluid Flow Theory. (3:2:3) F, W even yr.; Sp odd yr.; Su even yr. Independent Study also. Prerequisite: CEEn 270.
Fluid properties, fluid statics and dynamics, viscous flow, boundary layers, concepts of pipe and open-channel flow.

341. Elementary Soil Mechanics. (3:2:3) F, W Prerequisite: CEEn 203, 332, Geol 330, or instructor's consent.
Determination of stresses in soils, soil strength, consolidation, and settlement. Applications in fluid flow, lateral earth pressure, bearing pressure, and slope stability.

351. Environmental Engineering. (3:3:0) W; Sp even yr.; Su odd yr. Prerequisite: Chem 105.
Environmental concerns, problems, and evaluation methodology; pollution control and engineering management approaches.

361. Highway Engineering. (3:2:3) F, Sp Prerequisite: CEEn 113.
Highway planning, geometric design, traffic engineering, highway materials, rigid and flexible pavement design.

370. Civil Engineering Systems. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: CEEn 203, 270, 332, Math 313.
System analysis and optimization including uncertainty and economic evaluation, with emphasis on civil engineering design procedure and applications.

391A,B. Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (0.5:1:0 ea.) F, W
Technical and professional activities in civil engineering. College Lecture attendance required.

424. Reinforced Concrete Design. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: CEEn 321.
Theory and design of reinforced concrete, including columns, beams, slabs, and footings; elastic and ultimate-strength methods of analysis.

431. Hydrology. (3:2:3) W; Sp even yr.; Su odd yr. Prerequisite: CEEn 332.
Waters of the earth, their occurrence, circulation, and distribution. Relationships between precipitation, evaporation, infiltration, transpiration, groundwater, and stream runoff.

433. Hydraulic Engineering. (3:3:0) F; Sp odd yr.; Su even yr. Prerequisite: CEEn 332.
Application of fluid mechanics principles to analysis and design of hydraulic structures and systems.

491A,B. Civil and Environmental Engineering Seminar. (0.5:1:0 ea.) F, W
Technical and professional activities in civil engineering. College Lecture attendance required.

493R. Civil and Environmental Engineering Practicum. (1–18:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

495. Communication in Civil and Environmental Engineering. (1:0:3) F, W Prerequisite: Engl 316.
Developing oral and writing skills related to civil engineering. Library research resulting in term paper and oral presentation required.

498R. Directed Studies in Civil and Environmental Engineering. (1–18:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

500. (CEEn-MeEn) Design and Materials Applications. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: MeEn 372 or CEEn 321.
Applied and residual stress; materials selection; static, impact, and fatigue strength; fatigue damage; surface treatments; elastic deflection and stability—all as applied to mechanical design.

501. (CEEn-MeEn) Stress Analysis and Design of Mechanical Structures. (3:3:0) Sp Prerequisite: CEEn 321 or MeEn 372.
Stress analysis and deflection of structures; general bending and torsion with computer applications to mechanical and aerospace structure design.

502. (CEEn-MeEn) Composite and Smart Structures. (3:3:0) On dem. Prerequisite: Math 313; CEEn 321 or MeEn 372..
Advanced composite structures; classical and energy approaches; design considerations; introduction to smart structures concepts.

503. (CEEn-MeEn) Theory of Elasticity. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CEEn 203, Math 313.
Tensor notation, stress and deformation tensors, constitutive equations, field equations; plane-stress/plane strain, axisymmetric, thermoelasticity, and large deformation problems.

505. Materials, Uses, and Properties of Concrete. (3:2:3) F Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Manufacturing and testing of cements; concrete materials and concrete mix design; techniques of concrete handling, placing, and treatment; laboratory work.

506. (CEEn-MeEn)Continuum Mechanics and Finite Element Analysis. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Math 313: CEEn 321 or MeEn 372.
Equilibrium and constitutive equations; closed-form elasticity solutions; beam and plate theory; finite element methodology; membrane, axisymmetric, beam, plate, shell, and solid elements. Application to heat transfer, flow-through porous media, and other problems.

507. (CEEn-MeEn) Finite Element Programming. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CEEn 321 or MeEn 372.
Development of (1) a general purpose computer program for the analysis of trusses/frames and (2) a general finite element program.

508. (CEEn-MeEn) Dynamics and Stability of Structures. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Math 313; CEEn 321 or MeEn 372.
Dynamic analysis of single degree-of-freedom, discrete multi-degree-of-freedom, and continuous systems. Static and dynamic stability of structures.

514. Engineering Applications of GIS. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: senior or graduate status.
Introduction to GIS concepts. Data acquisition and database formulation including use of GPS. GIS uses in civil engineering.

522. Structural Steel Design. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CEEn 205, 321, or equivalent.
Compression and tension of steel members, beams, and beam-columns. Elastic and inelastic lateral-torsional buckling. Structural fasteners. Emphasizes LFRD.

523. (CEEn- MeEn) Design of Aircraft Structures. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CEEn 321 or MeEn 372.
Requirements, objectives, loads, materials, and tools for design of airframe structures; static behavior of thin-wall structures; durability and damage tolerance; certification and testing. Airframe component team design project.

524. Design of Bridge Structures. (3:3:0) Sp Prerequisite: CEEn 424, 522.
Design of bridge composite; continuous beam and girder bridges including piers, abutments, floor systems, and bearings; field trips to observe bridge construction and fabrication.

526. Prestressed Concrete. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CEEn 424.
Basic theory, methods of pre- and post-tensioning, and details of design and fabrication applications to continuous structures.

529. Timber Design. (3:3:0) Sp Prerequisite: CEEn 321.
Timber species, composition, and grades; design of beams, straight and tapered glue-lam girders, columns, connections, trusses, shear walls, and structural systems.

531. Water Resources Engineering. (3:2:3) F Prerequisite: CEEn 431, 433.
Advanced hydrologic and hydraulic principles in planning and designing irrigation, drainage, flood control, and other water resource facilities.

535. Hydraulic Design of Channels and Control Structures. (3:2:3) W Prerequisite: CEEn 431, 433.
Design of water conveyance channels and control structures, including siphons, chutes, weirs, flumes, dams, spillways, and outlet works.

540. Geo-Environmental Engineering. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CEEn 341.
Geotechnical aspects of environmental engineering. Topics include municipal and hazardous solid waste landfill design and characterization and remediation techniques for contaminated soil and groundwater.

542. Foundation Engineering. (3:3:0) W; Sp odd yr. Prerequisite: CEEn 341 or equivalent.
Soil investigation, bearing capacity and settlement, design of spread footings, combined footings, mat foundations, retaining walls, pile foundations, and drilled shafts.

543. Earth- and Rock-Fill Structures. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CEEn 341 or equivalent.
Design and construction of earth- and rock-fill dams, including selecting dam sites and materials, and applying seepage and pore pressure studies, shearing strength data, stability analysis, and construction controls.

545. Geotechnical Analysis of Earthquake Phenomena. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CEEn 321, 341.
Earthquake magnitude and intensity; design ground motions, elementary dynamics of structures; response spectra; building code provisions; liquefaction and ground failure.

550. Water Quality Management. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CEEn 351.
Philosophies, objectives, and methods for water quality management, including impact of various uses on water quality and behavior of pollutants in receiving waters.

555. Sanitary Engineering Analysis. (3:1:6) F Prerequisite: CEEn 351.
Techniques for chemical and biological analysis of major organic and inorganic constituents of water, sewage, and industrial wastes.

561. Geometric Design of Highways. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: CEEn 361.
Designing visual aspects of highways: highway classification, design controls and criteria, design elements, vertical and horizontal alignment, cross section, intersections, interchanges, capacity analysis.

562. Traffic Engineering: Characteristics and Operations. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: CEEn 361.
Traffic flow theory, traffic operations, characteristics of drivers and vehicles, parking facilities, at-grade intersections, channelization, traffic control devices, signals.

563. Pavement Design. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CEEn 361.
Properties and selection of pavement components including soils, stabilized soil, base, subbase, subgrade, and bituminous materials, along with design of rigid and flexible pavements.

565. Transportation in Urban Planning. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Street classification and function; design elements of streets, intersections, and access drives; transportation planning studies; land-use transportation interrelationships, improvement alternatives for urban transportation.

570. (CEEn-MeEn) Computer-Aided Engineering Software Development. (3:3:0) F on dem. Prerequisite: MeEn 273 or C progamming.
Programming methods for the development of engineering software. Data structures, architecture, libraries, and graphical user interfaces, with applications to CAD systems.

571. Engineering Computer Graphics and Software Design. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: FORTRAN or C or similar computer language background.

Application of modern computer graphics techniques to engineering problems; 2-D and 3-D transformations, perspective, hidden surface removal, lighting and shading; graphics data structures, standards, device independency; software design methodology. Term project required.

572. (CEEn-MeEn) Computer-Aided Geometric Design. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: FORTRAN or C or similar computer language background.

Mathematical theory of free-form curves and surfaces and solid geometric modeling. Bezier and B-spline curve and surface theory, parametric and implicit forms, intersection algorithms, topics in computer algebra, free-form deformation. Several programming projects.

575. (CEEn-MeEn) Optimization Techniques in Engineering. (3:3:0) On dem. Prerequisite: Math 321 and FORTRAN, C or similar computer language.

Application of computer optimization techniques to constrained engineering design. Theory and use of state-of-the-art computer routines. Robust design methods.

580. Hazardous Waste Management and Control. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CEEn 351 or instructor's consent.

Hazardous waste statutes and regulations; introduction to hazardous waste treatment, storage, disposal, and monitoring techniques.

594R. Selected Problems in Civil and Environmental Engineering. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.)

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Civil and Environmental Engineering Faculty

Professors

Balling, Richard J. (1982) BA, BS, U. of Utah, 1978; MS, PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1979, 1982.

Benzley, Steven E. (1980) BES, MS, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1967; PhD, U. of California, Davis, 1971.

Budge, W. Don (1964) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1959, 1961; PhD, U. of Colorado, 1964.

Christiansen, Henry N. (1965) BS, Utah State U., 1957; MS, PhD, Stanford U., 1958, 1962.

Merritt, LaVere B. (1970) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1963, 1966; PhD, U. of Washington, 1970.

Miller, A. Woodruff (1974) BES, Brigham Young U., 1969; MS, ENG, PhD, Stanford U., 1970, 1972, 1975.

Thurgood, Glen S. (1967) BES, MS, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1967; PhD, Texas A&M U., 1975.

Youd, T. Leslie (1984) BES, Brigham Young U., 1964; PhD, Iowa State U., 1967.

Associate Professors

Borup, M. Brett (1987) BS, Humboldt State U., 1980; MS, Utah State U., 1982; PhD, Clemson U., 1985.

Downs, Wayne C. (1996) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1980; ME, PhD, U. of Florida, 1984, 1993.

Goodwin, Reese J. (1967) BES, MS, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1963; PhD, U. of Utah, 1976.

Jensen, David W. (1993) BS, Brigham Young U., 1980; SM, PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1981, 1986.

Jones, Norman L. (1991) BS, Brigham Young U., 1986; MS, PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1988, 1990.

Rollins, Kyle M. (1987) BS, Brigham Young U., 1982; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1987.

Saito, Mitsuru (1997) BS, Brigham Young U., 1981; MS, U. of Virginia, 1983; PhD, Purdue U., 1988.

Assistant Professor

Fonseca, Fernando (1996) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1987, 1988; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1997.

Emeriti

Calder, Glen H. (1955) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1952, 1953.

Firmage, D. Allan (1955) BS, U. of Utah, 1940; MS, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1941.

Fuhriman, Dean K. (1954) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1941, 1950; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1952.

Rollins, Ralph L. (1956) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1941, 1949; PhD, Iowa State U. of Science and Technology, 1954.

Wallace, Lynn P. (1983) BS, U. of Utah, 1963; MS, PhD, West Virginia U., 1968, 1970.

Wilson, Arnold (1957) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1962; PhD, Oklahoma State U., 1973.

Classical Civilization

See Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature.

Classical Studies or Classics

See Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature.

Clothing and Textiles

Charlene Lind, Chair
3256 SFLC, PO Box 26796, (801) 378-3943

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
2254 SFLC, PO Box 26797, (801) 378-3541

This department will be closed at the end of summer term 1999. No new students are being admitted to majors in the department programs. Students currently declared as majors in fashion merchandising, fashion design, and apparel studies have until that time to complete major classes in the department, though they can complete required courses originating outside the department and general education classes after the department is closed.

Students should be working closely with both a department faculty advisor and the College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center personnel to be sure that they are meeting all requirements. Those experiencing enrollment difficulties or former students who desire to complete their degrees should contact the department for advisement counseling at the earliest possible date.

Students may still enroll in the following minor program if they can finish the program before the department closes and have cleared it with an advisor.

Minor General Clothing (14 hours)

1. Complete at least 5 minor hours at BYU.
2. No D credit in minor courses will be accepted.
3. Complete at least one course in three of the four following areas:
   a. Construction:
      CITx 212, 285, 385, 386, 395, 487, 488, 520R.
   b. Design and selection:
      CITx 110, 225, 251, 300, 321, 323, 325, 340, 351, 415, 422, 425, 451.
   c. History and economics:
      CITx 102, 112, 330, 371, 373, 377, 430, 473, 474, 496R.
   d. Textiles:
      CITx 261, 495R.
4. Complete additional courses from the areas listed above for a total of 14 hours.

Clothing and Textiles (CITx)

Undergraduate Courses

102. Introduction to Apparel, Textiles, and Merchandising. (3:3:0)
Process of producing merchandise from fiber to consumer. Career opportunities in the field.

105. Elementary Clothing Construction. (2:2:2)
Unit method of clothing construction applied to simply designed apparel. For nonmajors with little or no sewing experience. Student-supplied materials required.

110. Aesthetics of Dress. (3:2:2)
Coordination of art principles and elements with apparel planning and buying; application to men and women. Lab required.

112. Fashion Principles. (3:3:0)
Theories of fashion change, including cycles, adoption, diffusion, and terminology.

120. CAD Basics for Apparel. (1:0:2)
Introduction to CAD environment and programs for apparel.

135R. Clothing Construction for Nonmajors. (2:2:2 ea.) Prerequisite: CITx 105 or equivalent experience.
Construction techniques for a variety of fabrics. Choice of projects adapted to student's experience. Student-supplied materials required.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: approval of faculty advisor and department chair.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student transcript.

212. Apparel Production Processes. (3:3:3)
Critical issues of successful apparel production; integrating designing, manufacturing, and merchandising.

225. Pattern Design 1. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: previous experience in clothing construction, CITx 120.
Fundamentals of pattern design using a variety of methods and materials.

251. Apparel Design 1. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: CITx 110.
Application of design principles to create multiple designs for a broad spectrum of products. Emphasis on quantity of ideas and speed in conception and production.

261. Textiles. (3:3:2) Independent Study also.
Natural and synthetic textile fibers, yarns, fabric construction, dyes and finishes; application to use and performance of textile fabrics. Lab required.

285. Apparel Construction Techniques. (3:2:4)
Comparative methods to increase apparel construction and decision making skills. Student-supplied materials. Fee.

300. Clothing and Human Behavior. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: 3 hours of social and behavioral science courses. Recommended: Engl 315 or 316.
Clothing needs of family members through the life cycle from physical, social, psychological, economic, and cultural viewpoints.

320. Intermediate CAD for Apparel. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: CITx 120.
Computer programs and processes used in apparel industry for technical drawings, presentations, markers, and data management.

321. Weaving. (3:1:4) Recommended: CITx 110.
Creative design applied to weaving methods for both floor looms and simple looms. Lab and student-supplied materials required.

323. Surface Pattern Application. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: CITx 251, 261, Des 111, 119.
Design of printed fabrics with emphasis on women's, men's, and children's apparel. Methods of designing, croquis, repeats, and color combinations using dyes and various media.

325. Pattern Design 2. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: CITx 225.
Intermediate pattern design using CAD, flat pattern, drafting, and draping techniques for standard sizes. Student-supplied materials required.

330. History of Costume. (3:3:0)
Social, economic, and political influences on dress through the ages. Costume as an expression of lifestyle and as a basis for interpreting modern fashions.

340. Fashion Illustration. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: CITx 110. Recommended: Design 111.
Layout, design, and rendering for clothing and accessories.

351. Apparel Design 2. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: CITx 251, 320, 325, 385.
Full-scale apparel design for different market segments, price levels involving problem solving across a range of garment types. Student-supplied materials required.

371. Aspects of Fashion Retailing. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CITx 112, 212.
Introduction to fashion retailing including history, macro structure of individual stores, types of stores, and influential organizations and people.

373. Global Aspects of the Fashion Industry. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: junior standing, Econ 110, CITx 112, 212, 261.
Global trade legislation and trends specific to the textile and apparel industry and the role of U.S. industry in the global economy.

377. Fashion Promotion and Merchandising. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: CITx 110, 371.
Promotion and marketing of fashion goods, including visual merchandising, ancillary operations, promotion techniques, and advertising.

385. Apparel Assembly Methods. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: CITx 285.
Comparative assembly methods applied to a range of garment types made from a variety of fabrics. Student-supplied materials required.

386. Fitting and Pattern Alteration. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: CITx 225, 385.
Principles used to adapt pattern and apparel fit for individual figure variations. Construction of fashion apparel. Student-supplied materials required.

390R. Apparel, Textiles, and Merchandising Symposium. (0.5:1:0) Prerequisite: major status.
Current topics presented by faculty and visiting professionals.

395. Apparel Entrepreneurship. (3:3:0)
Entrepreneurial skills needed to initiate and operate a private business.

415. Specialty Costume Design. (3:1:5) Prerequisite: CITx 225 or instructor's consent.
Research and application of costume construction for dance, opera, commedia del arte, Oriental theatre, and musical variety shows.

425. Pattern Design 3. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: CITx 325.
Advanced pattern design including CAD applications for grading, use of bias, and study of innovative designers.

451. Apparel Design 3. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: CITx 351.
Integration of apparel design skills in producing and presenting an original line, including sourcing and costing. Student-supplied materials required.

473. Retail Buying and Wholesale Markets. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Acc 200, CITx 373, 377.
Relationship between vendors and retail buyers, wholesale marketing tools, retail buying, merchandise planning/retail math, and prominent apparel manufacturers.

474. Field Research in Fashion Goods. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CITx 473.
Product classification research on fashion-oriented products to build and synthesize knowledge necessary in (1) managerial decision making and (2) buying for the apparel industry.

487. Tailoring. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: CITx 261, 385, 386.
Shaping and multi-layer techniques applied to women's and men's tailored clothing. Student-supplied materials required.

488. Using Designer Techniques and Specialty Fabrics. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: CITx 110, 261, 385, 386.
Creative use of decorative and structural techniques applied to a variety of specialty fabrics. Construction of samples and fashion apparel. Fee.

490. Senior Seminar. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: senior standing and 12 credit hours in major; Engl 315, 316, or MCom 320.
Reports and readings from current professional journals.

495R. Special Topics in Apparel, Textiles, and Merchandising. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: 15 semester hours in clothing and textiles and instructor's consent.
Individual study in special areas of interest.

496R. Merchandising or Design Internship. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite for merchandising: CITx 371, 377, and written departmental approval. Recommended: CITx 373, BusM 456. Prerequisite for design: CITx 320, 325, 351, 385, and written departmental approval.
Fifteen-week full-time work experience fulfilling specific training assignments.

500–Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

520R. Workshop in Clothing and Textiles. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

545. Period Pattern Making. (3:1:4) Prerequisite: CITx 225, 330, and instructor's consent.
Applying costume history and pattern making to period fashions. Hands-on experience in actual costume construction for theatre productions.

Clothing and Textiles Faculty

Associate Professors

Farahnakian, Mary (1988) BA, U. of Tehran, Iran, 1971; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1977.

Lind, Charlene (1964) BS, Utah State U., 1955; MA, U. of Maryland, College Park, 1961; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1974.

Steineckert, Della N. (1970) BS, Brigham Young U., 1954; MA, Adams State Coll. of Colorado, 1963; PhD, Florida State U., 1976.

Assistant Professors

Baugh, Dawna (1997) BS, Brigham Young U., 1980; MS, Utah State U., 1985; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1997.

Burnham, Catherine (1992) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1989; EdD, U. of Illinois, 1991.

Instructor

Thompson, Mary J. (1974) BS, Brigham Young U., 1961; MA, Washington State U., 1974.

Special Instructors

Wendy Copus, Judith Eatough, Michelle Hyde, Cheng-Hwa Zeng

Emeriti

Childs, Margaret S. (1946) BS, Brigham Young U., 1939; MS, Oregon State U., 1949.

Jorgensen, Eleanor (1949) BS, Brigham Young U., 1946; MS, Kansas State U., 1954; PhD, Texas Woman's U., 1965.

Lee, Evelyn Monson (1962) BS, MS, Montana State U., 1952, 1959.

Liechty, Elizabeth L. (1952) BS, Utah State U., 1948; MS, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1954.

Thackeray, Renee (1973) BS, Brigham Young U., 1953; MS, Oregon State U., 1960.

Wright, Doris Lewis (1976) BS, Brigham Young U., 1973; MS, Utah State U., 1977.

Communications

Laurie J. Wilson, Chair
E-509 HFAC, PO Box 26403, (801) 378-2997

College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center
D-444 HFAC, PO Box 26333, (801) 378-3537

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Department of Communications carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements, (2) university requirements, and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed for one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA Communications
Emphases:
- Broadcast Journalism
- Communications Studies
- Marketing Communications
- Print Journalism
- Public Relations

Minors Communications

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA Mass Communications

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Working under faculty direction, students in the department edit and publish the *Daily Universe* as a laboratory newspaper for the campus, produce daily radio and television newscasts on KBYU-FM and KBYU-TV, produce @BYU.Newsline for the Internet, plan advertising and public relations campaigns, solve media sales and management problems, and create multimedia presentations.

The Department of Communications sponsors the International Media Studies Program, which seeks to broaden students' awareness of worldwide communications issues and practices. Not only do students have opportunity to study the media systems of other nations through classes and on-site experiences, but media practitioners of other nations are also brought to campus as lecturers and visiting experts. International Media Studies is directed by John Hughes, Pulitzer Prize–winning journalist and former publisher of the *Christian Science Monitor*.

Departmental Requirements

1. Each student must be formally accepted into a degree program. Contact the college advisement center for admission requirements.
2. All students, including those who have received high school advanced-placement credit with a score of 2 or less, must take a campus writing class before applying for admission to the major. The following writing classes fill this requirement: Engl 115, College Writing and Reading; Phil 105, Reasoning and Writing; or HonP 200, Intensive Writing. (All these courses can fill the GE First-Year Writing requirement.)
3. The student's faculty advisor must approve his or her supporting-area program.
4. Complete 90 hours outside the department, of which at least 65 hours must be in the liberal arts and sciences.
5. Except for communication studies students, every student is required to complete an internship. Although the department operates an internship office (F-340 HFAC) that serves as a clearinghouse for internship information, the responsibility for securing an internship rests with the student. However, students should not embark on any internship without prior approval from a faculty advisor, before processing appropriate documents with the Communications Department (E-509 HFAC), and without being enrolled in Comms 199R.

BA Communications: Broadcast Journalism Emphasis (60 hours*)

This program has minimum criteria that students are required to meet for admission. Please see the college advisement center for information.

The Discipline

The study of journalism entails the mastery of working with people to present news and features in a way that reflects events accurately and fully. You will acquire skills in analytical thinking, lucid writing, and effective interviewing to be able to present a clear and forceful picture of your subject in words and images. To have a broad background, students are encouraged to earn more than 70 percent of their credits in other departments. You will develop a wide understanding of the world and the processes that make society work. In addition, you will become familiar with methods of writing that effectively reach mass audiences—that portray events and people in satisfying ways. Since a wide range of knowledge is essential within the field, you will study libel law, the process of communication, and such areas as the interaction between the mass media and society today.

Career Opportunities

In the exciting field of journalism, traditionally there has been the allure of working in a profession that has its finger on the changing pulse of society. Whether serving as reporters on television, radio, cable, on-line, daily newspapers, the community press, or in the growing magazine field, journalists find themselves rubbing shoulders with important people and recording important events.

A career in journalism implies not only skill with words, but the ability to make sound judgments and to ferret out facts. In recent times a growing demand has arisen for those with writing specializations, such as medicine or science. In addition to the obvious careers as reporters and editors, students often find their journalism skills in demand in a variety of other areas.

Many find the challenge of recording the drama of real life both satisfying and enlightening. Because of television, journalism has changed in recent years, but even though there has been a decline in the number of daily newspapers, an explosion of special interest magazines and on-line publishing has opened up innumerable jobs for writers and editors. These changes call for greater skill in writing to be able to visualize the world in an interesting way. Overall, one of journalism's great satisfactions has been the sense that one can make a difference in the world and bring about changes for the better.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit in communications or approved or supporting courses will count toward graduation.
2. Complete the following:
   Comms 101, 201, 307, 309, 311, 480.
3. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete 1 hour of the following:
   Comms 199R.
4. Complete 3 hours from the following:
   Comms 301, 310, 338, 402, 410, 461R, 481, 482.
5. Complete the following:
   Comms 243, 313, 335, 375, 475.
   TMA 185, 273R, 277R.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Stat 105, 221.
7. Complete 6 hours in the Department of English in addition to courses used to fill GE requirements.
8. Complete 3 hours of communications electives.
9. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete 6 hours of supporting course work outside communications.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Communications: Communications Studies Emphasis (58 hours*)

This program has minimum criteria that students are required to meet for admission. Please see the college advisement center for information.

The Discipline

This program is designed for the student who wants a broad, general undergraduate background in communications and does not necessarily want to specialize in advertising, broadcasting, journalism, or public relations. This may be the student who plans to pursue advanced academic degrees rather than work in industry.

Career Opportunities

This major does not lead to specific careers but is appropriate for those planning to pursue graduate degrees.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit in communications or approved or supporting courses will count toward graduation.
2. Complete the following:
   Comms 101, 201, 307, 311, 391, 480.
3. Complete the following:
   Comms 457.
4. Complete 2 hours from the following:
   Comms 495R.
5. Complete 9 hours from the following:
   Comms 301, 310, 338, 402, 410, 461R, 481, 482.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Comms 447, 449, 458.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Stat 105, 221.
8. Complete 9 hours in the Department of English in addition to courses used to fill GE requirements.
9. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete 12 hours of supporting course work outside communications.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Communications: Marketing Communications Emphasis (62–69 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The Discipline

Communications majors who choose the marketing communications emphasis (formerly known as the advertising sequence) will participate in a program that will give a strong

grounding in the liberal arts and sciences, provide a firm grasp of communications theory and principles, and teach practical workplace skills.

In marketing communications courses students will learn how to use research in studying diverse audiences, to analyze communications problems, and to evaluate communications programs. They will write problem-solving strategies and create oral and written advertising messages to specific target audiences. Students will also learn how to evaluate and select the most effective media for reaching those target audiences and gain an understanding of how broadcast, print, and other media are used in the marketing process.

Studies will culminate in the student's participation, as a team member, in creating and presenting a comprehensive and competitive integrated marketing communications campaign that includes research, advertising, and sales promotion.

Career Opportunities

This field provides career opportunities in advertising, media management, and advertising media sales as well as in its creative, research, marketing, media planning, and management functions.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit in communications or approved or supporting courses will count toward graduation.
2. Complete the following:
   Comms 101, 201, 307, 311, 391, 480.
3. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete 1 hour of the following:
   Comms 199R.
4. Complete 3 hours from the following:
   Comms 301, 310, 338, 402, 410, 461R, 481, 482.
5. Complete the following:
   Comms 230, 330, 332, 344, 432, 439.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Stat 105, 221.
7. Complete the following:
   MCom 320.
8. Complete one course from the following:
   BusM 340
   TecE 450 (or equivalent).
9. Complete a minor in management (22 hours), English (18 hours), or visual arts (15–20 hours).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Communications: Print Journalism Emphasis

(52 hours*)

This program has minimum criteria that students are required to meet for admission. Please see the college advisement center for information.

The Discipline

The study of journalism entails the mastery of working with people to present news and features in a way that reflects events accurately and fully. You will acquire skills in analytical thinking, lucid writing, and effective interviewing to be able to present a clear and forceful picture of your subject in words and images. To have a broad background, students are encouraged to earn more than 70 percent of their credits in other departments. You will develop a wide understanding of the world and the processes that make society work. In addition, you will become familiar with methods of writing that effectively reach mass audiences—that portray events and people in satisfying ways. Since a wide range of knowledge is essential within the field, you will study libel law, ways of writing for magazines, the process of communication, and such areas as the interaction between the mass media and society today.

Career Opportunities

In the exciting field of journalism, traditionally there has been the allure of working in a profession that has its finger on the changing pulse of society. Whether serving as reporters on television, radio, cable, on-line, daily newspapers, the community press, or in the growing magazine field, journalists find themselves rubbing shoulders with important people and recording important events.

A career in journalism implies not only skill with words, but the ability to make sound judgments and to ferret out facts. In recent times a growing demand has arisen for those with writing specializations, such as medicine or science. In addition to the obvious careers as reporters and editors, students often find their journalism skills in demand in a variety of other areas.

Many find the challenge of recording the drama of real life both satisfying and enlightening. Because of television, journalism has changed in recent years, but even though there has been a decline in the number of daily newspapers, an explosion of special interest magazines and on-line publishing has opened up innumerable jobs for writers and editors. These changes call for greater skill in writing to be able to visualize the world in an interesting way. Overall, one of journalism's great satisfactions has been the sense that one can make a difference in the world and bring about changes for the better.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit in communications or approved or supporting courses will count toward graduation.
2. Complete the following:
   Comms 101, 201, 307, 309, 311, 480.
3. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete 1 hour of the following:
   Comms 199R.
4. Complete 3 hours from the following:
   Comms 301, 310, 338, 402, 410, 461R, 481, 482.
5. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete the following:
   Comms 313, 323, 420.
   TMA 185, 273R.
6. Select an additional 9 hours from department offerings.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Stat 105, 221.
8. Complete 6 hours in the Department of English in addition to courses used to fill GE requirements.
9. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete 9 hours of supporting course work outside communications.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Communications: Public Relations Emphasis

(63 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The Discipline

The public relations major provides training in one of the fastest growing areas in the communications field. It prepares students with critical skills in writing, strategic program planning and management, creative problem solving, and media relations. It can be either a highly credible terminal degree or excellent undergraduate preparation for an advanced degree.

Career Opportunities

Virtually all segments of the public and private sectors throughout the world draw employees from public relations graduates. Graduates may work as technical experts or in management tracks. They may specialize in employee relations, community relations, public affairs, media relations, or several other tracks within the professional arena. They may also pursue public relations in a specific industry, such as health care or financial public relations.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit in communications or approved or supporting courses will count toward graduation.
2. Complete the following:
   Comms 101, 201, 307, 311, 391, 480.
3. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete 1 hour of the following:
   Comms 199R.
4. Complete 3 hours from the following:
   Comms 301, 310, 338, 402, 410, 461R, 481, 482.
5. Complete the following:
   Comms 235, 313, 336, 421, 435, 458.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Stat 105, 221.
7. Complete the following:
   Acc 200.
   BusM 340.
   MCom 320.
   TecE 450 (or equivalent course).
   TMA 185, 273R.
8. Complete 6 hours in the Department of English in addition to courses used to fill GE requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Communications (15 hours)

Select 15 hours from the major requirement courses. Contact the advisement center for recommendations.

Communications (Comms)

Undergraduate Courses

101. Mass Communication and Society. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Historical roles of mass media in society, emphasizing media effects on individuals and institutions.

150. Public Speaking. (3:3:0)
Principles and methods of public speaking; speaking experiences.

199R. Internship. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: must be admitted to a department major, take prerequisites, and have approval of faculty advisor and clearance by the Communications Department.
Professional field experience.

201. Communication Theory. (2:2:0) Independent Study also.
History, development, and criticism of communication theory.

230. Introduction to Advertising. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Comms 101.
Principles of advertising; critical evaluation of its role and value in American society. Experience in writing and creating ads for all media.

235. Introduction to Public Relations. (2:2:1) Prerequisite: Comms 101.
Philosophy and practice of public relations in business, government, education, and other institutions. Study of publics, media, methods, press relations, and publicity. Lab required.

243. Introduction to Electronic Media. (2:2:0)
Broadcast communication systems in modern society; influences, current practices, and social implications.

301. History of Mass Communications. (3:3:0)
Print, film, and broadcast communication media from their beginnings to the present; their roles as institutions in American society.

307. Communications Law. (3:3:0)
First Amendment philosophy underlying regulation of the mass media; libel, privacy, media relations with courts, broadcast regulation, advertising regulation, copyright, trademark.

309. Research Methods for Journalists. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: admittance to major; completion of department statistics requirement.
Information-gathering strategies and techniques: interviewing, library use, database searching, Internet use, and analyzing sources and data.

310. Rhetorical Methods. (3:3:0)
Speech composition and oral/audiovisual presentation for public and professional use.

311. Writing for Mass Audiences. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: HonP 200, Phil 105, or Engl 115 with a B– minimum and admittance to department major.
Analysis of audience, purpose, and context; selection and use of appropriate voice, structure, and techniques for effective written communication.

313. News Reporting. (4:3:Arr.) Prerequisite: Comms 309, 311, TMA 185, 273R.
Beat reporting for newspapers, online publications, radio, and television.

323. Editing. (3:2:6) Prerequisite: Comms 307, 311, 313.
Copy editing, headline writing, page makeup, photo editing, and handling wire copy. Lab required.

330. Print Advertising Copywriting. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Comms 230; 311 or concurrent registration; admittance to major.
Strategy and copywriting for print media advertising, including retail advertising.

332. Advertising Media Planning and Strategy. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: Comms 230, 311; Stat 105 or 221; computer spreadsheet competence.
Media planning, theory, and practice in context of the marketing mix. Application of computer-based models as aids to media decisions. Writing of marketing-based media plans. Case study approach to both print and broadcast media.

335. Producing and Performing for Television. (3:3:Arr.) Prerequisite: TMA 185, 273R, 277R, major status.
Theory and practice of producing and presenting information for television. Role of television news in society, nature of audiences, production techniques, and TV news management. Lab includes producing and anchoring daily cable cast.

336. Public Relations Case Studies. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Comms 235, 311, 313, or concurrent registration.
Cases selected from wide range of actual public relations problems confronting business, government, education, and other institutions.

338. Impact of New Media Technologies. (3:3:0)
Impact of computerized information delivery on traditional mass media and on society. Existing electronic systems.

344. Broadcast and Print Advertising Media Sales. (3:2:1) Prerequisite: Comms 230, 311.
Fundamentals of the media sales process. Covers both theory and application of persuasion as related to media sales.

364R. Basic News Photography. (3:2:2) F, W, Sp
Shooting, processing, selecting, and preparing photographs for use in publications.

365R. Photojournalism. (3:2:2 ea.)
Designing and producing single- and multiple-picture sequences for newspapers, magazines, and other media.

375. Broadcast Reporting. (3:3:Arr.) Prerequisite: Comms 313, TMA 185, 273R, 277R.
Principles and techniques of information gathering and visual storytelling. Includes beat coverage and recording and editing videotaped reports.

391. Communication Research Methods. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: admittance to departmental major and completion of departmental statistics requirement.
Concepts, practices, and applications of research for communication studies, marketing communications, and public relations majors.

396R. Broadcast Practicum. (1:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Practice and projects in broadcast communication; approval of task or projects required before registration.

397R. Honors Tutorial. (1–2:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's and department's consent.

398R. Projects in Communications. (1–4:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: junior standing and sequence coordinator's consent. Project approval required before registration.
Projects in communication studies.

402. Electronic Media Criticism. (2:2:0)
Criticism of electronic media systems and their products and effects; critic's role and qualifications.

410. Mass Media Administration. (2:2:0)
Basic principles of management as they relate to organizing and administering newspapers, magazines, radio stations, and television stations.

415R. Videography. (2:2:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: TMA 185.
Video production, spot news packages, commercials, and other video products.

420. Advanced Print Reporting. (3:2:1) Prerequisite: Comms 313.
Print news coverage of government, courts, education, and other institutions. Investigative reporting on major public issues and trends.

421. Public Relations Writing and Production. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: Comms 235, 311, 313, 336.
Writing and editing news releases, reports, brochures, pamphlets, newsletters, speeches, and technical materials. Writing, editing, and producing for electronic media and video news. Media spokesperson training.

427. Magazine Writing. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Comms 311 or instructor's consent.
Analysis of nonfiction magazine markets, methods of effective writing, and criticism of articles written in the course.

428. Magazine Editing and Publishing. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: Comms 311.
Layout and design for magazines and business publications. Contemporary practices in content and production.

429. Opinion Writing. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Comms 311, 313, or instructor's consent.
Function of editorials, columns, commentaries, and reviews in the mass media.

432. Strategic Advertising Research. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: Comms 391 and completion of departmental statistics requirement. For department majors only.
Development and execution of a comprehensive strategic advertising research program, including data collecting, field investigating, audience analysis, and strategy development. Emphasis on instrument development, data gathering, and interpretation.

435. Strategic Public Relations Campaigns. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Comms 235, 311, 313, 336, 391, 421.
Applying communication principles to internal and external publics; fact finding, planning, evaluating social interrelationships; major campaigns for selected clients.

438. Public Relations and Public Affairs. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Comms 235, 311, 313, 336.
Corporate-government relations, lobbying, and other public affairs in legislative and regulatory processes at federal, state, and local levels as arenas for public relations practice.

439. Strategic Advertising Campaigns. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Comms 230, 311, 330, 332, 344, 391, 432.
Researching, planning, budgeting, creating, and writing national advertising campaigns; writing and producing a complete advertising plan, accompanied by a formal client presentation.

447. Broadcast Management Problems and Practices. (3:3:0)
Current problems and practices found in commercial and noncommercial broadcasting.

449. Electronic Media Programs and Audiences. (3:3:Arr.)
Basic program forms used in electronic media, effective program structure and appeals, audience research and measurement.

457. Advanced Communications Studies. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Comms 307, 311, 391, and senior standing.
Contemporary developments in communication theory, research, and practice; preparation for senior thesis.

458. Public Relations Management. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Comms 235, 311, 313, 336, 421, and senior standing.
Principles of systems management in public relations; history, models of public relations.

461R. Symposium. (0.5:1:0 ea.)
Guest lectures from prominent media practitioners and communication educators and researchers.

475. Advanced Broadcast Reporting. (3:2:Arr.) Prerequisite: Comms 375, TMA 277R.
Broadcase news coverage of government, courts, education, and other institutions. Investigative reporting on major public issues and trends.

480. Ethics and Issues in Mass Communication. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Comms 101, 201, 307, and senior standing.
Ethical issues in mass communication; integration of moral reasoning to critical mass communication issues.

481. Comparative Mass Media Systems. (3:3:0)
Comparison of national media systems; normative theories of media organization and control.

482. Issues in International Communication. (3:3:0)
International information flow; information flow and foreign policy; international regulation; cultural imperialism; intercultural interaction.

495R. Research and Readings in Communication Practice. (1–4:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: senior standing.
Independent research projects and readings for communications majors. Projects must be approved in advance of registration.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: approval of departmental honors coordinator.
Scholarly research paper related to student's program.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Communications Faculty

Professors
Christensen, Bruce L. (1993) BA, U. of Utah, 1968; MSJ, Northwestern U., 1969.
Egan, Kathryn S. (1986) BA, U. of Utah, 1964; MSJ, Northwestern U., 1965; PhD, U. of Southern California, 1972.
Hainsworth, Brad E. (1984) BA, MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1963, 1966, 1968.
Hughes, John R. (1991)
Martin, Dennis G. (1977) BA, Brigham Young U., 1967; MS, Northwestern U., 1968; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1985.
Nelson, Jack Adolph (1977) BA, Brigham Young U., 1954; MA, U. of Utah, 1964; PhD, U. of Missouri, 1971.
Pratte, Paul Alfred (1984) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1967; PhD, U. of Hawaii, 1976.
Straubhaar, Joseph D. (1994) BA, Stanford U., 1973; MA, PhD, Tufts U., 1975, 1981.
Valenti, JoAnn M. (1992) BSJ, MA, U. of Florida, 1967, 1969; PhD, U. of Michigan, 1983.
Whiting, Gordon C. (1974) BA, U. of Minnesota, 1959; MA, U. of Utah, 1961; PhD, Michigan State U., 1967.

Associate Professors
Bartlett, Leonard L. (1987) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1989.
Griffiths, Thomas A. (1985) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1968, 1976; PhD, U. of Utah, 1992.
Kagel, Richard I. (1973) BA, Brigham Young U., 1968; MA, Fairfield U., 1973; PhD, Columbia Pacific U., 1980.
Mouritsen, Russell H. (1982) BA, Brigham Young U., 1969; MEd, PhD, U. of Utah, 1971, 1980.
Porter, William C. (1972) BA, Brigham Young U., 1961; MA, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1963; EdD, Oklahoma State U., 1985.
Rush, J. R. (1994) BS, JD, Arizona State U., 1970, 1973.
Wilson, Laurie (1989) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1980, 1982; PhD, American U., 1988.

Assistant Professors
Baker, Sherry L. (1996) BA, MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1984, 1988, 1994.
Hammond, Scott C. (1996) BS, MOB, Brigham Young U., 1984, 1987; PhD, U. of Utah, 1996.
Palmer, Allen W. (1996) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1979; PhD, U. of Utah, 1996.
Stout, Daniel A., Jr. (1985) BA, Brigham Young U., 1979; MA, U. of Georgia, 1984; PhD, Rutgers U., 1993.
Thomsen, Steven R. (1996) BA, Brigham Young U., 1982; MA, Ball State U., 1984; PhD, U. of Georgia, 1994.

Adjunct Faculty
Anthony L. Antin, Brenda Butterfield, Rodger D. Duncan, Elmer Lower, Bruce L. Olsen

Lecturers/Administrators
John Gholdston, Scott Johnson, John Kent, Dean Paynter

Emeriti
Anderson, Stephen J. (1963) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1959, 1967.
Barney, Ralph D. (1971) BS, Brigham Young U., 1957; MA, U. of Iowa, 1960; PhD, U. of Missouri, 1971.
Barrus, George S. (1967) BS, U. of Utah, 1950; MA, Brigham Young U., 1964; PhD, U. of Iowa, 1969.
Bateman, J. LaVar (1949) BA, Brigham Young U., 1941; MS, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1947, 1950.
Beckham, Raymond E. (1949) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1949, 1969; PhD, Southern Illinois U., 1972.
Burnett, M. Dallas (1958) BS, Brigham Young U., 1954; MSJ, PhD, Northwestern U., 1958, 1967.
Butterworth, Edwin (1949) BA, U. of Utah, 1950; MA, Brigham Young U., 1954.
Forsyth, David P. (1990) BA, Brigham Young U., 1954; MSJ, PhD, Northwestern U., 1958, 1962.
Haroldsen, Edwin O. (1969) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1943, 1956; PhD, Iowa State U. of Science and Technology, 1967.
Jerome, Emerald A. (1971) BS, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1950; MA, Brigham Young U., 1971.
McKinlay, Lynn A. (1955) MA, Utah State U., 1974.
Rich, Owen S. (1950) BS, Brigham Young U., 1950; MA, U. of Southern California, 1953; EdD, Pennsylvania State U., 1963.
Richards, J. Morris (1965) BA, Arizona State Coll., 1929; MA, U. of Arizona, 1937.
Richardson, Jed J. (1955) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1950, 1955.
Tarbox, Norman C. (1960) BS, U. of Utah, 1955; MS, Syracuse U., 1956; PhD, U. of Utah, 1979.
Wolsey, Heber G. (1963) BS, Brigham Young U., 1942; MA, Northwestern U., 1949; PhD, Michigan State U., 1967.

Comparative Literature

See Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature.

Computer Science

William A. Barrett, Chair
3361 TMCB, PO Box 26576, (801) 378-3027

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center
1116 TMCB, PO Box 26539, (801) 378-6270

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Department of Computer Science carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

Computer science, even though it is a relatively new field, touches virtually every area of human endeavor. It is the systematic study of the algorithmic processes—their theory, analysis, design, efficiency, implementation, and application. Fundamentally, computer science is a science of abstraction—creating the right model for a problem and devising the right computer manipulations to solve it.

The BS curriculum is accredited by the Computer Science Accreditation Commission of the Computing Sciences Accreditation Board (CSAB).

The degree programs in computer science concentrate on the fundamental techniques and knowledge used in designing and implementing information processing systems, with emphasis on systems software design and computer organization.

Career Opportunities

Graduates from the Computer Science Department find ready employment in almost any area of computer use.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements, (2) university requirements, and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed for one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS	Computer Science
Minor	Computer Science Teaching

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS	Computer Science
PhD	Computer Science

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Majors are selected on the basis of overall GPA, performance in the fundamental courses, and availability of openings in the program.

Computer science majors, especially those planning graduate work, are advised to acquire a strong background in mathematics, possibly a minor.

Personnel in the College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center will advise regarding the fundamental and core courses, major admittance, and suggested General Education. Questions regarding curriculum and career decisions should be directed to the undergraduate advisor in the Computer Science Department.

Fundamental courses to be completed by all majors are CS 142, 143, 235, Math 119, Phscs 121.

Note: All hours of credit applied toward a major in computer science must be of C– or better and must be taken within eight years of declaring the computer science fundamentals major. Any exceptions must be approved by the department. Students may choose to graduate under later requirements by updating their date of entry into the major at the college advisement center.

BS Computer Science (78–80 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following:
   CS 142, 143, 235, 236, 240, 252, 312, 330, 345, 380, 404.

3. Complete the following supporting courses:
   Engl 316.
   Math 119, 343.
   Phscs 121, 122.
   Stat 321.
4. Select two courses from the following (If you choose to take Chem 106, you must also take Chem 107 concurrently. This will only count as one class to fill this section):
   Biol 130, 276.
   Chem 105, 106 (must take 107 also).
   Geol 111.
   Phscs 221, 222.
   Zool 204, 205.
5. Select four courses from 400-level computer science courses.
6. Select two additional courses from 400- or 500-level computer science courses.

   Note: CS 598R requires senior or graduate status in computer science and departmental approval before registering.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Computer Science Teaching (20 hours)

Complete the following:
CS 142, 143, 235, 236, 240, 302.

Computer Science (CS)

Undergraduate Courses

103. Elementary Computer Applications. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su
Computer organization, problem solving, and information systems, emphasizing use of the computer for problem solving and developing programming skills.

130. Scientific Computing—C. (2:2:2) F, Su
Computer programming for engineering and science students using C.

142. Introduction to Computer Programming. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: knowledge of algebra.
Introduction to program design and development. Principles of algorithm formulation and implementation.

143. Introduction to Computer Organization. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: knowledge of algebra.
Fundamentals of computer organization and operation. Memory structure, registers, arithmetic and logical functions, instruction formats, addressing modes, machine and assembly languages, and internal-external data representation.

235. Foundations of Computer Science 1. (4:4:1) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: CS 142.
Iteration, induction, recursion, lists, trees, sets, relations, functions; mathematical analysis of algorithms and data models; object-oriented implementation of abstract data types.

236. Foundations of Computer Science 2. (4:4:1) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: CS 235.
Continuation of CS 235; relations, graphs, automata, grammars, propositional and predicate logic. Implementation of object-oriented algorithms.

240. Advanced Programming Concepts. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite for CS majors: CS 236. Prerequisite for ECEn majors: CS 235, ECEn 325.
Advanced software development with an object-oriented focus. Development and testing of several 1500 to 2000 line modules from formal specifications. UNIX and C++ environment.

252. Introduction to Computational Theory. (3:3:0) F, W, Alt. term Prerequisite: CS 236.
Finite automata, regular expressions, grammars, language, Turing machines, computability.

302. Computer Science Education. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: Math 112 or 119; CS 103 or 142.
Curriculum development and course design for the computer science teacher in secondary schools.

312. Algorithm Analysis. (3:3:0) F, W, Alt. term Prerequisite: CS 240, 252.
Analysis of algorithms including searching, sorting, graphs, and trees.

330. Concepts of Programming Languages. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: CS 240, 252.
Principles and concepts characterizing high-level computer programming languages, process and data abstraction, encapsulation, inheritance, functional programming, logic programming, scanners, and parsers.

345. Operating Systems Design. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: CS 380; or CS 240, ECEn 325.
Principles and concepts of operating systems design and the implementation of an operating system.

380. Computer Architecture. (3:3:0) F, W, Alt. term Prerequisite: ECEn 220, CS 240.
Memory and addressing, arithmetic schemes, data channels, order codes, microprogramming, and multiprocessors.

404. Ethics and Computers in Society. (3:3:0) F, W, Alt. term Prerequisite: Engl 316; junior standing.
Societal impact of computer technology, the computer scientist's place in society, ethical issues. Reading, discussion, and writing seminar.

428. Software System Design and Implementation. (3:3:0) Alt. sem., Alt. term Prerequisite: CS 312, 330.
Analysis, design, implementation, and testing of significant software systems.

429. Software Testing. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: CS 312, 330.
Strategies for testing large systems compared and critiqued, with opportunities to test actual systems.

431. Algorithmic Languages and Compilers. (3:3:0) Alt. sem., Alt. term Prerequisite: CS 312, 330.
Formal description of algorithmic languages and techniques used in their compilation: semantics, ambiguities, procedures, replication, iteration, recursion.

450. Introduction to Digital Signal and Image Processing. (3:3:0) On dem. Prerequisite: CS 312, Math 119, 343, or equivalent.
One- and two-dimensional signal-processing fundamentals, including sampling, noise, transforms, filtering, enhancement, and compression. Hands-on experimentation with speech, music, still images, and full-motion video.

452. Database Modeling Concepts. (3:3:0) F, W, Prerequisite: CS 312, 330.
Database models: relational, network, hierarchical, deductive, object-oriented. Integrity constraints, query languages, database design.

453. Advanced Data Structures. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: CS 312, 330.
File organization and management, external data structures, database implementation, including concurrency control, transaction processing, and distributed databases.

455. Computer Graphics. (3:3:0) Alt. sem., Alt. term Prerequisite: CS 312, 330, and instructor's consent.
Interactive computer graphics systems programming and architecture.

456. Introduction to User Interface Software. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CS 312, 330.
Introduction to software architectures and techniques for graphical user interfaces. Input devices, windowing systems, event-driven programming, interactive geometry.

460. Computer Communications and Networking. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: CS 312, 380.
Introduction to data communications and computer networking. Communications fundamentals, computer networks, software, architecture, telecommunications, regulation, standards.

470. Introduction to Artificial Intelligence. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: CS 312, 330.
Introduction to core areas of artificial intelligence; intelligent agents, problem solving and search, knowledge-based systems and inference, planning, uncertainty, learning, and perception.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

501R. Special Topics in Computer Science. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Special subjects as announced before each semester.

510. Formal Languages and Syntactic Analysis. (3:3:0) F, Alt. term Prerequisite: CS 431 or instructor's consent.
Definition of formal grammars and algorithms for syntactic analysis.

512. Analysis of Algorithms. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CS 252, 312, or instructor's consent.
Survey of important algorithms. Connections to theoretical computer science and the analysis of algorithms.

521. Pattern Recognition. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CS 450 or equivalent.
Design and use of pattern classifiers for recognition and classification of one- and two-dimensional signals such as voice, images, and handwriting. Emphasis on images.

525. Software Creation. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: CS 428.
Concepts of object-oriented software development and their incorporation into various object-oriented analysis and design techniques.

531. Compiler Theory and Design. (3:3:0) Alt. yr. Prerequisite: CS 431.
Theory and design of compilers and interpreters, including syntax-directed compilers and metacompilers.

532. Advanced Programming Languages and Models. (3:3:0) Alt. yr. Prerequisite: CS 431.
Definitions and implementation techniques for functional languages, logic languages, and object-oriented languages. Interactive languages and interactive programming environments.

535. (CS-Psych 577) Human-Computer Interaction. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: graduate or senior standing.
Human/machine interfaces for hardware/ software integration. Psychological principles of computer interfacing. Human engineering, ergonomics, and software design principles for user-friendly applications.

544. Advanced Operating Systems. (3:3:0) F, Alt. term Prerequisite: CS 345.
Advanced operating system concepts and design techniques, including concurrency, distributed systems, networking, synchronization, multitasking, etc.

545. Process Control Systems. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CS 345.
Concurrent and distributed real-time operating systems and programming environments for industrial automation.

550. Computer Vision 1. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: CS 450 or equivalent.
Machine vision, image segmentation, mathematical morphology, image enhancement and filtering edge detection, feature extraction, neighborhood operators, region growing, boundary detection, scene segmentation, and matching.

551. Object-Oriented Database Theory. (3:3:0) F, Alt. term Prerequisite: CS 452 or instructor's consent.
Application of model and proof theory to OODBs; theoretical foundations of analysis, specification, and design; conceptual model formalization.

552. Object-Oriented Database Systems. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CS 452.
Analysis, specification, design, and implementation of object-oriented database systems; theory of object-oriented database models and systems.

554. Distributed Databases. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CS 452 or equivalent.
Distributed DBMS design, architecture, query processing and optimization, data allocation, transaction management, concurrency control, recovery, integrity and security, deadlock handling.

555. Advanced Computer Graphics. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CS 455 or instructor's consent.
Advanced computer graphics systems programming and architecture, including ray tracing, radiosity, animator, and physically based modeling.

556. Interactive Software Systems. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CS 330, 455.
Techniques to implement human/ computer interfaces. Primitive interactive techniques. Grammar, automata, procedure, object- based dialogue descriptions. Tools for automatically generating and evaluating user interfaces. Screen layout; data presentation tools.

557. (CS-CEEn 572-MeEn 572) Computer-Aided Geometric Design. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FORTRAN or C, or similar computer language background.
Mathematical theory of free-form curves and surfaces and solid geometric modeling. Bezier and B-spine curve and surface theory, parametric and implicit forms, intersection algorithms, topics in computer algebra, free-form deformation. Several programming projects.

560. Computer Networks. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CS 460, Stat 321.
Computer networking, software architecture, organization, protocols, routing, global networks, local networks, internetworking, standards, and applications.

561. Theoretical Foundations of Computer Science. (3:3:0) W, Su Prerequisite: CS 312 or instructor's consent.
Formal languages, automata theory, sequential machines, enumerability, computability, and undecidability.

565. Data Security. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CS 404. Recommended: CS 453, 560.

Data security problems and solutions. Protection of stored or transported data. Data security principles. Hardware and software systems; mathematical, technical, and legal considerations.

572. Machine Learning. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CS 250, 270; or instructor's consent.

Algorithms; approaches and philosophy of machine learning emphasizing symbolic/AI approaches.

575. Expert Systems Design. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CS 470 or instructor's consent.

Knowledge-based systems, fundamentals of knowledge engineering, rule-based systems, tools for expert system development.

576. Intelligent Tutoring. (3:3:0) Alt. term Prerequisite: CS 575 or instructor's consent.

Taxonomy of knowledge-based computer-assisted instruction; design and evaluation of intelligent tutoring models.

578. Neural Networks and Connectionist Computing. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: CS 252, 380; or equvalent. Recommended: CS 470 or equivalent.

Neurally inspired computer architectures and methods of computation and learning using massively parallel networks.

580. High-Performance Computer Architecture. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CS 380, ECEn 425, or equivalent.

Advanced topics in computer architecture, including pipelining, superpipelining, VLIW, superscalar, branch prediction, and speculative execution.

584. Parallel Processing. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CS 380 or equivalent.

Theoretical and practical study of parallel processing, including a discussion of parallel architectures, parallel programming languages, and parallel algorithms.

586. Formal Methods in Computer System Design. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CS 236, 380, or equivalent.

Use of specification and verification in the design of computer systems. Introduction to mechanical theorem-proving environments.

598R. Special Projects. (1–3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1997–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Computer Science Faculty

Professors

Barrett, William A. (1987) BA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1974, 1978.
Burton, Robert Preece (1974) PhD, U. of Utah, 1973.
Campbell, Douglas M. (1971) BA, Harvard U., 1967; PhD, U. of North Carolina, 1971.
Christensen, Larry C. (1983) BA, Brigham Young U., 1963; MA, Central Michigan U., 1968; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1981.
Cornell, Aurel (1980) MS, PhD, Polytechnic Inst. of Timisoara, Rumania, 1960, 1971.
Embley, David W. (1982) BA, MS, U. of Utah, 1970, 1972; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1976.
Hays, Bill (1970) BS, East Texas State U., 1963; MS, U. of Iowa, 1967; PhD, Northwestern U., 1970.
Higgins, John C. (1961) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1960; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1966.
Norman, Theodore A. (1970) BS, U. of Utah, 1962; MS, PhD, Washington State U., 1968, 1970.
Olsen, Dan R. (1985) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1976, 1978; PhD, U. of Pennsylvania, 1981.
Sederberg, Thomas W. (1978) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1977; PhD, Purdue U., 1983.
Stokes, Gordon E. (1969) BS, Brigham Young U., 1961; MS, U. of Idaho, 1969; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1981.
Woodfield, Scott N. (1985) BA, MS, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1978; PhD, Purdue U., 1980.

Associate Professors

Beus, H. Lynn (1971) BA, Brigham Young U., 1961; MS, Case Inst. of Technology, 1964; PhD, Case Western Reserve U., 1967.
Martinez, Tony R. (1987) BA, Brigham Young U., 1982, MS, PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1983, 1986.
Ng, Yiu Kai (Dennis) (1991) BS, Brigham Young U., 1982; MS, Brigham Young U., 1984; PhD, Kansas State U., 1991.
Windley, Phillip J. (1993) BS, U. of Idaho, 1982; MS, PhD, U. of California, Davis, 1988, 1990.

Assistant Professors

Clement, Mark J. (1994) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1989; PhD, Oregon State U., 1994.
Egbert, Parris (1992) BS, Utah State U., 1986; MS, PhD, U. of Illinois, 1990, 1992.
Flanagan, Kelly J. (1993) BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1988, 1989, 1993.
Morse, Bryan S. (1994) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1986, 1990; PhD, U. of North Carolina, 1994.
Whitehurst, Alan (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1983; MS, Johns Hopkins U., 1985; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1995.

Lecturer

Ivie, William E. (1964) BS, Brigham Young U., 1974.

Emeriti

Burton, Robert C. (1964) BS, Brigham Young U., 1956; PhD, U. of North Carolina, 1963.
Dean, C. Edwin (1949) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1948, 1952; MS, U. of Michigan, 1955.
Ivie, Evan Leon (1979) BS, BES, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1956; MS, Stanford U., 1957; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1966.
McClurg, Lynn E. (1972) BGE, U. of Nebraska, 1966; MS, U. of Southern California, 1972; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1978.
Robison, Parley P. (1967) BS, U. of Utah, 1958.
Todd, Henry S. (1982) BES, MS, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1965; MS, U. of Rochester, 1968; PhD, U. of Arizona, 1973.
Wright, Norman Edward (1963) BS, Brigham Young U., 1951.

Adjunct Professors

Ashton, Alan C. (1972) BA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1966, 1970.
Tate, Karen E. (1989) BA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1977, 1988.
Urie, Paul McKay (1989) BS, Brigham Young U., 1971; PhD, MD, U of Utah, 1975, 1979.

James K. Archibald and Brent E. Nelson of the Electrical and Computer Engineering Department are assisting with computer science courses and graduate programs by approval of the Computer Science Department.

Construction Management

See Technology Education and Construction Management.

Counseling and Special Education

Ronald D. Bingham, Chair
328 MCKB, PO Box 25072, (801) 378-3857

David O. McKay School of Education Advisement Center
120 MCKB, PO Box 25096, (801) 378-3426

Admission to Degree Program

The undergraduate minor in special education is designed for secondary education majors. Students must apply to the Counseling and Special Education Department for admission. Applications may be obtained from the department office in 328 MCKB and will be due on June 1 for fall admission and March 1 for spring admission.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Minor Special Education

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Counseling and School Psychology
MS Special Education
PhD Counseling Psychology

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Minor Special Education (29–32 hours*)

1. Students must be admitted to a secondary education major and the special education minor. See the secretary in 328 MCKB for application information for the minor.
2. Complete the following prerequisite courses:
   CSE 400
   IP&T 301
   ScEd 276R.
3. Complete the following courses:
   CSE 403, 404R, 405, 406R, 503, 510.
4. Complete 3–8 hours of the following, depending on whether or not secondary student teaching is completed:
   CSE 586R.

Counseling and Special Education (CSE)

Undergraduate Courses

400. Exceptional Students: Principles of Collaboration. (2:1:Arr.) F, W Prerequisite: admission to early childhood, elementary, or secondary education program.

Basic principles and legislative issues in effectively communicating and collaborating with professionals, parents, and other service providers in meeting needs of individuals with disabilities in inclusive, educational environments. Lab.

403. Special Education: Introduction to Theory and Practice. (4:4:0) F, Sp Prerequisite: CSE 400, and concurrent registration in 404R.

404R. Field Experience in Special Education. (2:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, Sp Prerequisite: CSE 400, and concurrent registration in 403; prior application. Fee.

405. Special Education Advanced Theory and Practice. (4:4:0) W, Su Prerequisite: CSE 403, 404R, and concurrent registration in 406R.

406R. Prepracticum Experience—Mild/Moderate Disabilities. (2:Arr.:Arr. ea.) W, Su Prerequisite: CSE 400, 403, 404R, and concurrent registration in CSE 405; advisor's consent; prior application. Fee.

493R. Readings. (1–2:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su

496R. Internship in Special Education. (1–12:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: departmental approval of application; placement one semester in advance of registration.

Practicing individual and group skills, testing and other techniques and responsibilities consistent with advanced training. Fee.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

503. Education of Individuals with Mild and Moderate Disabilities. (3:0:0) F, W, Su Prerequisite: CSE 405, 406R, and concurrent registration in 586R.

Developing, implementing, and evaluating instructional programs for children with mild to moderate learning difficulties.

510. Education of Individuals with Emotional and Behavioral Disabilities. (3:3:2) F, W, Su Prerequisite: CSE 400, 403, instructor's consent, and prior application.

Educational implications of classification and characteristics of children with emotional and behavioral problems.

514R, 515R. Special Topics in Educational Psychology. (1–3:3:1 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

Note: No graduate credit is given for CSE 514. CSE 515R credit may count toward a graduate degree if prior approval is obtained.
—Assessing Learning and Behavior
—Changing Role of the Counselor
—Classroom Behavior Management
—Current Topics in Audiology
—Current Topics in Counseling
—Current Topics in Educational Psychology
—Current Topics in Special Education
—Current Topics in Speech Pathology
—Curriculum for Exceptional Children
—Effective Teaching
—Emotionally Handicapped
—Evaluating Student Learning
—Exceptional Children in the Regular Classroom
—Gifted and Talented
—Intellectually Handicapped
—Learning Disabled
—Microcomputers in Schools
—Motivation
—Program Evaluation
—Self-Concept
—Teaching Exceptional Children
—Understanding Exceptional Children

518. Introduction to Gifted/Talented Education. (2:2:1) F, W, Su Independent Study also.

Various approaches to educating the gifted and talented.

519. Assessment, Diagnosis, and Evaluation of Individuals with Severe/Profound Disabilities. (3:3:0) F, Sp Prerequisite: admission to teacher education; concurrent registration in CSE 583R.

Foundation course in the assessment, diagnosis, and evaluation of individuals with severe/profound disabilities.

520. Managing Teaching and Learning Environments for Individuals with Severe/Profound Disabilities. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: admission to teacher education.
Foundation course in managing learning and teaching environments for individuals with severe/profound disabilities.

521. Curriculum and Effective Instruction for Individuals with Severe/Profound Disabilities. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: admission to teacher education; concurrent registration in CSE 585R.
Developing basic skills in instructional content and practice for individuals with severe/profound disabilities.

525. Education of Students with Learning Disabilities. (3:3:3) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

545. Gifted: Creativity and Thinking Strategies. (2:2:0) W, Su
Nature of creativity and approaches to nurturing it.

546. Helping Relationships: Basic Concepts and Skills. (1–3:Arr.:Arr.) F, W
Basic interviewing and helping skills. For students interested in professional, paraprofessional, peer, or lay counseling.

580R. Directed Observation in the Schools. (1–3:0:8 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

582R. Practicum: Individuals with Emotional and Behavioral Disabilities. (1–8:0:8 ea.) F, W, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent, CSE 511, and prior application. Fee.

583R. Prepracticum Experience: Individuals with Severe/Profound Disabilities. (1–8:0:Arr. ea.) F, Sp Prerequisite: admission to teacher education; concurrent registration in CSE 519.
Prepracticum in assessment, diagnosis, and evaluation of individuals with severe/profound disabilities. Fee.

584R. Practicum: Individuals with Learning Disabilities. (2–8:0:8 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: CSE 526; departmental approval of application and placement one semester in advance of registration. Fee.

585R. Practicum: Individuals with Severe/Profound Disabilities. (1–8:0:Arr. ea.) W Prerequisite: admission to teacher education; concurrent registration in CSE 521.
Practicum in instructional content and practice for individuals with severe/profound disabilities.

586R. Practicum: Individuals with Mild and Moderate Disabilities. (1–8:0:8 ea.) F, W, Su Prerequisite: CSE 503; departmental approval of application and placement one semester in advance of registration. Fee.

587R. Student Teaching: Individuals with Severe/Profound Disabilities. (1–8:0:8 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: admission to teacher education.
Student teaching; practicum with individuals who have severe/profound disabilities. Fee.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Counseling and Special Education Faculty

Professors
Bingham, Ronald D. (1971) BS, Utah State U., 1961; MEd, PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1965, 1970.
Ingram, Cregg F. (1975) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1968, 1970; EdD, U. of Kentucky, 1974.

Associate Professors
Richards, P. Scott (1990) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1981, 1983; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1988.
Rowe, Fred A. (1972) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1963; EdD, Arizona State U., 1975.
Todd, Sally M. (1972) BS, Brigham Young U., 1959; MS, PhD, U. of Arizona, 1970, 1973.
Young, James R. (1971) BA, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1966; PhD, George Peabody Coll. of Vanderbilt U., 1970.

Assistant Professors
Allred, Keith W. (1991) BS, MS Brigham Young U., 1976, 1983; PhD, Vanderbilt U., 1988.
Brown, Gail W. (1991) BA, Brigham Young U., 1966; MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1983, 1988.
Dyches, Tina Taylor (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1986; MS, Utah State U., 1990; EdD, Illinois State U., 1995.
Fischer, Lane (1993) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1982; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1991.
Gibb, Gordon S. (1996) BS, Eastern Montana Coll., 1976; MEd, Brigham Young U., 1988; PhD, U. of Utah, 1994.

Emeriti
Bauer, Edith B. (1945) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1930, 1946; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1956.
Crandell, John M. (1970) BA, MA, Arizona State U., 1951, 1957; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1966.
Downing, Lester N. (1954) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1947, 1949; EdD, Colorado State Coll., 1951.
Gale, Darwin F. (1969) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1958, 1960; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1967.
Hammond, Ruth K. (1966) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1950, 1955; PhD, Purdue U., 1971.
Harris, James M. (1955) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1952, 1953; PhD, Cornell U., 1955.
Harrison, Betty D. (1961) BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1959, 1960, 1965.
Thomas, Glen E. (1968) BS, MEd, U. of Idaho, 1954, 1957; EdD, Colorado State Coll., 1968.
Walton, Wilbur T. (1971) BA, Brigham Young U., 1957; MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1965, 1969.
Wootton, Richard R. (1961) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1961; EdD, Utah State U., 1969.

Czech

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Dance

Sara Lee Gibb, Chair
294 RB, PO Box 22005, (801) 378-5087

College of Health and Human Performance Advisement Center
205 RB, PO Box 22117, (801) 378-3638

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Department of Dance carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

Dance is an art form expressed and communicated through human movement. Throughout history, and in every culture, people have danced. Dance incorporates the physical, mental, emotional, and spiritual aspects of each individual in creating a unique nonverbal expression of thoughts and feelings. As both process and product, dance has the power to refine neuromuscular skill, broaden understanding, increase creative potential, and expand aesthetic sensitivity. At Brigham Young University, dance celebrates the best in humankind and strives to enrich the lives of all who experience it.

Career Opportunities

The majority of career opportunities in dance are teaching and performance related. Demand for graduating BYU dance teachers in the public schools continually exceeds the supply. Teaching opportunities are also available in colleges and universities (for those with graduate degrees), private studios, health and fitness spas, special and adult education programs, day care centers, and recreation programs. Several BYU dance graduates are currently employed as performers and teachers in professional dance companies. Others find employment as performers in theatrical, television, and film production.

Less common, but equally rewarding dance careers are also available to those who desire to be choreographers, dance administrators, therapists, critics, historians, researchers, notators, and reconstructors.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements, (2) university requirements, and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed for one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA Dance
Emphases:
- Ballet
- Ballroom Dance
- Composite Dance
- Modern Dance

BA Dance Education
(secondary teacher certification)

BFA Music Dance Theatre

Minors
- Ballroom Dance
- Folk Dance
- Modern Dance

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA Dance

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

The Department of Dance is made up of four divisions: Ballet, Ballroom Dance, Folk Dance, Modern Dance. These divisions work cooperatively to provide opportunities for all students at the university to develop their potential in dance.

Besides the wide variety of courses (numbered 100–199) that apply toward the university requirement for physical education, there are professional courses that develop leadership, performance, and choreographic ability in all types of dance. Performing opportunities are provided in on-campus concerts and off-campus performances with groups that tour throughout the world.

Requirements

1. Majors are counseled to maintain the following body composition guideline for health and aesthetic body image, as measured by skin-fold caliper or hydrostatic assessment:

   Women: 22–14 percent body fat.
   Men: 15–8 percent body fat.

2. Any grade below C– in major or minor courses is not acceptable for graduation. Dance technique courses require a grade of at least B– for advancement to next level.
3. R courses may not be used more than once for major elective credit without approval.
4. Before being accepted into the major, a student must do the following:
   a. Successfully pass Dance 261.
   b. Successfully pass Dance 242 with a minimum grade of B– (prerequisite: Dance 241R or equivalent).
   c. Pass faculty proficiency evaluation held concurrently with Dance 242.

BA Dance: Ballet Emphasis (65 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

Major Requirements

1. At least 29 hours from items 3 to 9 below must be completed at BYU.
2. After consulting with an advisor, complete the following prerequisite courses:
   Zool 260, 261.
3. Complete the following (qualified students may substitute higher-level technique courses for required lower-level technique courses with permission from the Department of Dance):
   Dance 135, 231, 241R, 242, 261, 270, 280, 290, 291R, 355, 362, 364, 369, 460, 461, 469.
   PE 363.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Dance 171, 172.
5. Select one course from the following:
   Dance 184, 185.
6. Complete 16.5 hours from the following:
   Dance 293R, 390R, 391R, 393R, 490R, 493R.
7. Complete 4 hours of the following:
   Dance 498R.
8. Complete the following:
   Dance 367, 396.
9. Complete the following:
   Dance 292, 494R, 495R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Dance: Ballroom Dance Emphasis (54.5–56.5 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

Major Requirements

1. At least 24 hours from items 3 to 9 below must be completed at BYU.
2. After consulting with an advisor, complete the following prerequisite courses:
   Zool 260, 261.
3. Complete the following:
   Dance 135, 184, 185, 231, 241R, 242, 261, 270, 280, 290, 291R, 355, 362, 364, 369, 460, 461, 469.
   PE 363.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Dance 171, 172.
5. Select 7 hours from the following:
   Dance 284, 285, 380R, 382, 383, 384R, 385R, 483R, 485R.
6. Select two semesters of performance courses from the following:
   Dance 388R, 488R, 489R.
7. Complete the following:
   Dance 386.
8. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   Dance 399R.
9. Select one course from the following:
   Dance 486, 487.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Dance: Composite Dance Emphasis (61–63 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

Major Requirements

1. At least 26.5 hours from items 3 to 10 below must be completed at BYU.
2. After consulting with an advisor, complete the following prerequisite courses:
   Zool 260, 261.
3. Complete the following:
   Dance 135, 231, 241R, 242, 261, 270, 280, 290, 291R, 355, 362, 364, 369, 460, 461, 469.
   PE 363.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Dance 171, 172.
5. Select one course from the following:
   Dance 184, 185.
6. Select 10 hours from the following technique support electives:
   Dance 235, 241R, 271, 284, 285, 293R, 331, 335, 340R, 371, 380R, 384R, 385R, 390R, 391R, 393R, 440R, 483R, 485R, 490R, 493R, 494R, 495R, 540R.
7. Select two semesters of performance courses from the following:
   Dance 232R, 278R, 368R, 378R, 388R, 468R, 478R, 488R, 498R.
8. Complete the following:
   Dance 462.
9. Select 3 hours from the following methodology support electives:
   Dance 326, 336, 365, 366, 367, 376, 386, 396.
10. Select 5 hours from the following dance electives:
    Any dance class not used to fulfill other requirements from Dance 130, 133, 134R, 171, 172, 184, 185, 200 or higher (excluding Dance 260, 326, 356).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Dance: Modern Dance Emphasis (61.5–63.5 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

Major Requirements

1. At least 27 hours from items 3 to 10 below must be completed at BYU.
2. After consulting with an advisor, complete the following prerequisite courses:
   Zool 260, 261.
3. Complete the following:
   Dance 135, 231, 241R, 242, 261, 270, 280, 290, 291R, 355, 362, 364, 369, 460, 461, 469.
   PE 363.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Dance 171, 172.
5. Select one course from the following:
   Dance 184, 185.
6. Select 12.5 hours from the following:
   Dance 241R, 340R, 440R, 540R.
7. Select two semesters of performance courses from the following:
   Dance 368R, 468R.
8. Complete the following:
   Dance 462.
9. Complete the following:
   Dance 366, 367.
10. Complete the following:
    Dance 363, 390R, 464.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Dance Education (94–100 hours,* including certification hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Major Requirements

1. At least 22.5 hours from item 4 below must be completed at BYU.
2. A teaching minor is required for graduation (approximately 16–21 hours).
3. After consulting with an advisor, complete the following prerequisite courses:
   Zool 260, 261.
4. Complete the following:
   Dance 130, 132R, 241R, 242, 261, 270, 280, 290, 336, 340R, 355, 362, 363, 364, 366, 367, 369, 376, 386, 460, 461, 462, 464, 466, 469.
   PE 363.
5. Complete the Professional Education Component (30–31 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements. (Dance 242 and 261 are prerequisite to ScEd 276R for dance majors.)

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BFA Music Dance Theatre (79 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring program admissions approval. Please see the College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

The BFA in music dance theatre is an interdisciplinary degree offered by the College of Fine Arts and Communications through the cooperative involvement of its School of Music and Department of Theatre and Media Arts and the College of Health and Human Performance's Department of Dance.

Major Requirements

1. Live and taped auditions for entrance into the MDT major are held in the January preceding fall registration. Students may begin the MDT major in the fall only..
2. Pass a proficiency examination in each of the three areas at the end of each semester.
3. At least 40 hours must be completed at BYU.
4. Any grade below C– in major courses is not acceptable for graduation. Dance technique courses require a grade of B– for advancement to the next level.
5. Complete the following:
   Music 113, 161, 261, 290.
6. Complete 4 hours of the following:
   Music 260R.
7. Complete 6 hours of the following:
   Music 360R.
8. Complete the following:
   Dance 131, 134R, 135, 231, 235, 241R, 242, 290, 291R, 331, 361, 363, 390R.
9. Complete the following:
   TMA 114, 121, 123, 124, 235, 267, 323, 427.
10. Select one course from the following:
    TMA 224, 324, 329, 423, 424.
11. Complete the following MDT Seminar courses:
    Music 228.
    Dance 228.
    TMA 228.
12. Complete the following History of Music Dance Theatre courses:
    Music 300.
    Dance 300.
    TMA 300.
13. Complete the following Senior Performance Project courses:
    Music 426R.
    Dance 426R.
    TMA 426R.
14. Select 2 hours from the following (on-campus performance experience):
    Music 319R.
    Dance 229R, 429R.
    TMA 420R.
15. Select 1 hour from the following (off-campus experience):
    Music 399R.
    Dance 399R.
    TMA 399R.
16. Complete 4.5 hours of electives in music, dance, or theatre courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Ballroom Dance (18.5 hours*)

1. At least 10 hours must be completed at BYU.
2. Core courses: complete the following:
   Dance 240R, 260, 261, 270, 280, 290, 364.
3. Complete the following:
   Dance 386.
4. Select 4.5 hours from the following:
   Dance 184, 185, 284, 285, 380R, 382, 383, 384R, 385R, 483R, 485R.
5. Select 2 hours from the following:
   Dance 388R, 488R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Folk Dance (19.5 hours*)

1. At least 10 hours must be completed at BYU.
2. Core courses: complete the following:
   Dance 240R, 260, 261, 270, 280, 290, 364.
3. Complete the following:
   Dance 172, 173R, 271, 292, 371, 376, 471.
4. Select 2 hours from the following:
   Dance 278R, 378R, 478R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Modern Dance (19.5 hours)

1. At least 10 hours must be completed at BYU.
2. Core courses: complete the following:
   Dance 241R, 260, 261, 270, 280, 290, 364.
3. Complete the following:
   Dance 242, 362, 363, 366.

Dance (Dance)

Undergraduate Courses

130. Aerobic Dance. (0.5:0:2) Independent Study also.
Dance and other rigorous activities performed to music to attain cardiovascular fitness.

131. Jazz Dance, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

132R. Precision Dance, Beginning. (0.5:0:2 ea.)
Various styles including marching, jazz, military, novelty.

133. Movement for Theatre. (0.5:0:2)
Developing the body in terms of strength, flexibility, responsiveness, and freedom of movement.

134R. Specialty Dance. (0.5:0:2 ea.)

135. Tap Dance, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

140. Modern Dance, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

164. Movement for Musicians. (0.5:0:2)
Developing strength, flexibility, responsiveness, centering, breath, and freedom of movement through both fine and gross motor activities.

170. Folk Dance, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)
Dances from selected cultures at the beginning skill level.

171. Clog Dance, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)
Beginning steps and technique, emphasizing slide/drag.

172. Country Western and Square Dance. (0.5:0:2)
Fundamental dance skills in western styles of country, round, and square dance.

173R. Ethnic Dance, Beginning. (0.5:0:2 ea.)
Ethnic dances of a specific culture selected from Chinese, Irish, Polynesian, Ukranian, or others.

180. Social Dance, Beginning. (0.5:0:2) Independent Study also.
Traditional and popular ballroom dance; also social skills.

181. Country Western Social Dance, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)
Beginning popular country western dance.

184. Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)
Bronze level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

185. Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)
Bronze level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

190. Ballet, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)
Fundamentals of ballet technique for those with little or no previous training.

228. Music Dance Theatre Seminar. (1:Arr.:Arr.) Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Music 228 and TMA 228.
Intensive integration of music, dance, and theatre for the performer. For music dance theatre BFA majors only.

229R. Dance Performance 1. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: production director's consent.
Participation as dancers in concert dance production.

231. Jazz Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: Dance 131 or equivalent; 240R or 290.

232R. Precision Dance, Performance. (1:0:3 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 132R or equivalent and audition.
Cougarettes performing company.

235. Tap Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: Dance 135 or equivalent.

240R. Modern Dance Technique and Theory 1. (1.5:0:4.5 ea.)
Fundamental dance skills and basic theories.

241R. Modern Dance Technique and Theory 2. (2.5:0:7.5 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 240R or equivalent experience in modern dance.

242. Studio Workshop in Modern Dance. (3.5:0:10.5) Prerequisite: Dance 241R or equivalent.
Technique, improvisation, and composition in a workshop structure. Pass concurrent proficiency before acceptance into the major.

260. Introduction to Dance. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Critical analysis of dance as a cultural and expressive art, including relationship of dance to other art forms. No previous experience in dance required.

261. Orientation to Dance Forms. (1:2:0)
Philosophical approach to understanding current dance forms. Contemporary trends and professional opportunities within broad spectrum of dance.

270. Folk Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: Dance 170 or equivalent.
Dances from selected cultures appropriate at the intermediate skill level.

271. Clog Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: Dance 171 or equivalent.
Intermediate steps and technique; buck styling; introduction to choreography.

273R. Ethnic Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 173R or equivalent in same genre.
Ethnic dances of a specific culture will be selected from Polynesian, Ukrainian, or other groups.

278R. Folk Dance Performance, Beginning. (1:0:3 ea.) Prerequisite: audition.

280. Social Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: Dance 180 or equivalent.

281. Country Western Social Dance, Intermediate. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: Dance 172, 181, or equivalent.
Intermediate-level instruction in popular country western dances.

284. Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Intermediate. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: Dance 184 or equivalent.
Silver level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

285. Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Intermediate. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: Dance 185 or equivalent.
Silver level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

290. Ballet Accelerated Technique 1. (2.5:0:7.5) Prerequisite: dance major standing or instructor's consent.

291R. Ballet Technique 2. (1:0:3 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 290 or equivalent.

292. Character Dance. (0.5:0:2)
Male and female techniques of traditional national folk forms stylized with classical ballet discipline.

293R. Ballet Pointe, Beginning. (0.5:0:1 ea.) Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Dance 291R.

300. History of Music Dance Theatre. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Music 300 and TMA 300.
Dance in Western tradition from classical antiquity to present, emphasizing union of music, dance, theatre.

326. Rhythm and Dance. (2:1:2)
Methodology course for elementary education majors; creative dance and structured rhythmic dance forms.

331. Jazz Dance, Advanced. (1.5:0:4.5) Prerequisite: Dance 231 or equivalent; 241R, 242, or 291R.

335. Tap Dance, Advanced. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: Dance 235 or equivalent.

336. Aerobic Dance Teaching Techniques. (1:2:2) Prerequisite: Dance 130, Dance 369 or PE 362, PE 363. Recommended: FSN 100.

340R. Modern Dance Technique and Theory 3. (2.5:0:7.5 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 241R or equivalent experience in modern dance.

355. Dance Production, Introduction. (2:2:2)
Principles and practices of technical aspects of dance production.

356. Rhythmic Activities Through Dance. (2:2:2) F Prerequisite: physical education K–12 major status.
Structured dance forms for the physical education public school teacher: folk dance, aerobic dance, and American social dance styles. Methodology.

358R. Dance Improvisation Performance. (2:0:6 ea.) Prerequisite: audition.
Impulse dance company experiences in improvisation as a performing art.

361. Music Dance Theatre Choreographic Styles. (2:0:3)
Physical and conceptual aspects of dance styles as they relate to music dance theatre.

362. Dance Composition, Intermediate. (1:0.5:2.5) Prerequisite: Dance 242.
Fundamental compositional structure emphasizing visual, kinesthetic, and musical aspects.

363. Dance Improvisation, Intermediate. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: Dance 242.

364. Rhythm Analysis for Dance. (1:1:1)
Relationship of rhythm to movement, sound, and musical accompaniment.

365. Dance Movement Education for Elementary School Teachers. (1:1:2)
Theory and teaching experience in creative movement for preschool and elementary school children.

366. Modern Dance Teaching Methods. (2:2:2) Prerequisite: Dance 242 or equivalent, 261.
Planning, teaching, and evaluating lessons.

367. Children's Dance Methods. (1:2:1) Prerequisite: Dance 242.

368R. Modern Dance Choreography and Performance. (1:1:2 ea.) Prerequisite: audition.
Dancensemble dance company experiences in modern dance choreography and performance for concert settings.

369. Kinesiology for Dancers. (4:4:0) Prerequisite: Zool 260, PhyS 100 or equivalent.

371. Clog Dance, Advanced. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: Dance 271 or equivalent.
Advanced technique and steps; buck and Canadian styling and free styling.

376. Folk Dance Teaching Techniques. (1:1:2) Recommended: Dance 170 or equivalent.

378R. Folk Dance Performance, Intermediate. (1:0:3 ea.) Prerequisite: audition.

380R. Social Dance, Advanced. (1:0:3 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 280 or equivalent.

382. Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Advanced 1. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: Dance 284 or equivalent.
Gold 1 level. Waltz, tango, fox-trot, quickstep.

383. Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Advanced 1.(1:0:3) Prerequisite: Dance 285 or equivalent.
Gold 1 level. Cha-cha, samba, rumba, paso doble.

384R. Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Advanced 2. (1:0:3 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 382R or equivalent.
Gold 2 level. Waltz, fox-trot, tango, quickstep.

385R. Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Advanced 2. (1:0:3 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 383R or equivalent.
Gold 2 level. Cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

386. Social Dance Teaching Techniques. (1:1:2) Recommended: Dance 180 or equivalent.

388R. Ballroom Dance Performance, Intermediate. (1:0:3 ea.) Prerequisite: audition.
Performance techniques and experience in ballroom dance.

390R. Ballet Technique 3. (1:0:3 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 291R or equivalent.

391R. Ballet Technique 4. (1.5:0:4.5 ea.) Prerequisite: audition.

393R. Ballet Pointe, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2 ea.) Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Dance 390R and 391R.

396. Ballet Methodology. (2:2:2) Prerequisite: Dance 390R or equivalent.
Teaching classical ballet from preballet through advanced; includes analysis of Bournonville, Cecchetti, Vaganova, RAD, Kneeland, and SAB methods.

399R. Cooperative Education: Dance Internship. (1–4:0:50 ea.)

426R. Music Dance Theatre: Senior Performance Project. (1:0:5 ea.) Prerequisite: TMA 361; concurrent registration in Music 426R and TMA 426R.

429R. Dance Performance 2. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: production director's consent.
Participation as dancers in concert dance production.

440R. Modern Dance Technique and Theory 4. (2.5:0:7.5 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 340R or equivalent.

460. Dance History 1. (2:2:0)
Tribal cultures, ancient, and medieval historical periods.

461. Dance History 2. (3:3:0)
Renaissance through modern historical periods, emphasizing Western civilization's dance and music.

462. Dance Composition, Advanced. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: Dance 362.
Creation and presentation of complete choreographic works.

464. Dance Accompaniment. (1:1:1) Prerequisite: Dance 364.

466. Dance Teaching Practicum. (1:1:2)
Pre–student teaching course giving students practical teaching experience in a mentored environment. A discussion lab integrates theory and experience.

468R. Modern Dance Performance Company. (2:0:6 ea.) Prerequisite: audition.
Performance techniques and experience with The Dancers' Company.

469. Senior Seminar in Dance. (2:1:2)

471. Dance—A Reflection of Culture. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: Dance 376.
A study of dance as an expression of culture.

478R. Folk Dance Performance Company. (1:0:3 ea.) Prerequisite: audition.
Performance techniques and experience with International Folk Dance Ensemble.

483R. Ballroom Dance, International Standard, Advanced 3. (1:0:3 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 384R or equivalent.
Gold bar level: waltz, tango, fox-trot, quickstep, Viennese waltz.

485R. Ballroom Dance, International Latin, Advanced 3. (1:0:3 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 385R or equivalent.
Gold bar level: cha-cha, rumba, samba, jive, paso doble.

486. Theory and Notation of Ballroom Dance, International Standard. (2:0:4) Prerequisite: Dance 384R.
Theory and notation of International Standard Ballroom Dance and preparation for Professional Teaching Certification Examinations.

487. Theory and Notation of Ballroom Dance, International Latin. (2:0:4) Prerequisite: Dance 385R.
Theory and notation of International Latin Dance and preparation for Professional Teaching Certification Examinations.

488R. Ballroom Dance Performance Company. (2:0:3 ea.) Prerequisite: audition.
Performance techniques and experience with BYU Ballroom Dance Team.

489R. Preparation for Ballroom Dance Competitions. (1:0:2)
Creation and presentation of ballroom competitive routines, emphasizing visual and musical aspects.

490R. Ballet Technique 5. (2.5:0:2.5 ea.) Prerequisite: audition.

493R. Ballet Pointe, Advanced. (0.5:0:1 ea.) Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Dance 490R.

494R. Ballet Variations. (0.5:0:2 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 391R and 393R or equivalents.

495R. Pas de Deux. (0.5:0:1 ea.) Prerequisite: audition.
Ballet partnering techniques.

498R. Ballet Performance Company. (2:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: audition and concurrent registration in Dance 490R; 493R (females only) and 494R or 495R.
Performance technique and experience with BYU Theatre Ballet.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

500R. Workshop in Dance. (1–3:1:6 ea.)
Experience with Workshop in Dance: aerobic, ballet, ballroom, folk, modern.

540R. Modern Dance Technique and Theory 5. (2:0:5 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 340R or instructor's consent.
Advanced technique, with movement combinations emphasizing dance as a performance art.

555. Dance Production. (2:2:2) Prerequisite: Dance 355 or equivalent.
Technical aspects of dance production.

562R. Modern Dance Composition, Advanced. (1:0:4 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 362 or instructor's consent.
Development of substantive modern dance compositional works based on intent, form, and content relationships.

563R. Modern Dance Improvisation, Advanced. (1:0:4 ea.) Prerequisite: Dance 363 or instructor's consent.
Developing advanced skills of immediate movement response to enhance nonverbal communication.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Dance Faculty

Professors
Black, Catherine H. (1972) BPE, U. of Alberta, Canada, 1968; MFA, U. of Utah, 1972.
Davis, Susanne Johnson (1974) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1971.
Gibb, Sara Lee (1965) BA, MS, Brigham Young U., 1959, 1970.

Associate Professors
Allen, Sandra Birch (1969) BFA, MFA, U. of Utah, 1964, 1967.
Austin, Edwin G. (1984) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1980.
Berrett, Marilyn (1985) BA, U. of Utah, 1979; MA, Brigham Young U., 1984.
Debenham, Hadd Patrick (1976) BS, Brigham Young U., 1973; MA, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1976.
Prohosky, Caroline (1986) BS, Brigham Young U., 1972; MA, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1980.
Wakefield, Bernard Lee (1980) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1982.

Assistant Professors
Anderson, Colleen (1993) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1985.
Holman, Curt (1993) BA, Brigham Young U., 1989.

Musil, Pam (1993) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1985.
Phillips, Rebecca (1994) BA, Brigham Young U., 1987; MFA, U. of Utah, 1990.

Adjunct Assistant Professor
Sowell, Debra Hickenlooper (1990) BA, Brigham Young U., 1975; MA, Tufts U., 1980; PhD, New York U., 1990.

Part-Time Instructors

Vickie Austin, Richard Chitwood, Marci Edgington, Jeanette Geslison, Claudia Hill, Jodi Maxfield, Christine Ollerton, Delynne Peay, Kathleen Sheffield, Lynne Thompson, Graciela Torino Meyers, Linda Wakefield.

Emeriti
Jensen, Mary Bee (1952) BA, Park Coll., 1939; MA, Brigham Young U., 1963.
Lyman, Emerson S. (1973) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1968; EdS, U. of Utah, 1972.

Danish

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Design

See Visual Arts

Dutch

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Early Childhood Education

See Teacher Education.

Economics

Farrell E. Jensen, Chair
130 FOB, PO Box 22363, (801) 378-4057

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
2254 SFLC, PO Box 26797, (801) 378-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Economics are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Economics examines how societies choose to allocate scarce resources among competing uses. A broad range of contemporary policy issues are studied in fields such as: food, agriculture, and natural resource economics; economic development and growth, international trade and finance, economic history, the organization of industries, the development and efficiency of law, business cycles, labor markets, and public and private finance.

Career Opportunities

Professional economists work in three basic areas: business, government, and academics. Undergraduates generally pursue training beyond their BS/BA in economics if they wish to become professional economists.

Those in business forecast and analyze various aspects of the economy or of particular markets and most often work for banks, insurance companies, large manufacturing firms, brokerage firms, and business or economic consulting firms.

Those in government accumulate, interpret, and analyze national and international data in support of policy development and work for agencies such as the U.S. State Department, Treasury Department, Bureau of Labor Statistics, and Office of the Trade Representative; for state planning bodies and regulatory commissions; or for international bodies like the World Bank or IMF.

Academic economists teach and conduct research at colleges and universities. Entry into these positions requires training at least as far as the master's level; for the most part, the professional degree is the PhD.

Undergraduates who are not interested in postundergraduate study in economics generally pursue one of three options: graduate training in a profession (e.g., the MBA, MPA, JD, or MD); employment with a business consulting, economic consulting, brokerage, or other specialized service provider that relies to a substantial degree on economic analysis; or employment with a government agency or entity that relies on economic analysis and data. In the latter two areas, those with BAs typically gather and analyze data and provide research support under the direction of professional staff economists. A BA/BS in economics is also very good preparation for those interested in foreign service careers or work with organizations in economic development, international finance, or actuarial licensing. Many undergraduates pursue business careers, including those of finance, marketing, sales, and production.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements, (2) university requirements, and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed for one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA Economics
BS Economics
Emphasis (optional):
Agricultural Economics
Minor Economics

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

BA Economics (40–57 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No more than 3 hours of D credit are allowed in major courses.
2. Minimum residence requirement is 21 hours in the major.
3. Major courses: complete the following:
Econ 110, 378, 380, 381, 382, 388.

4. Supporting courses: complete the following:
   Math 112.

   Note: Math 113 is strongly recommended for students contemplating graduate work in economics.
5. Complete GE Foreign Language or 7 hours of mathematics in addition to Math 112.
6. Select 15 hours from the following (at least 12 hours must be from courses 410–588):
   Econ 210, 211, 215, 230, 240, 253, 257, 260, 274, 275, 410, 413R, 415, 421, 430, 440, 450, 453, 458, 459, 460, 463, 468, 474, 475, 476, 478, 486, 580, 581, 582, 586, 588.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Economics (37 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No more than 3 hours of D credit are allowed in major courses.
2. Minimum residence requirement is 21 hours in the major.
3. Major courses: complete the following:
   Econ 110, 378, 380, 381, 382, 388.
4. Supporting courses: complete the following:
   Math 112.

   Note: Math 113 is strongly recommended for students contemplating graduate work in economics.
5. Select 15 hours from the following (at least 12 hours must be from courses 410–588):
   Econ 210, 211, 213R, 215, 230, 240, 253, 257, 260, 274, 275, 410, 413R, 415, 421, 430, 440, 450, 453, 458, 459, 460, 463, 468, 474, 475, 476, 478, 486, 580, 581, 582, 586, 588.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Economics: Agricultural Economics Emphasis (37 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No more than 3 hours of D credit are allowed in major courses.
2. Minimum residence requirement is 21 hours in the major.
3. Major courses: complete the following:
   Econ 110, 378, 380, 381, 382, 388.
4. Supporting courses: complete the following:
   Math 112.

   Note: Math 113 is strongly recommended in addition to Math 112 for students contemplating graduate work in economics.
5. Complete the following:
   Econ 410, 440, 460.
6. Select 6 hours from the following (at least 3 hours must be from courses 413R–588) (Choose only one in each of the following sets: Econ 230 or 430; 257 or 458; 240 or 440):
   Econ 210, 211, 215, 230, 240, 253, 257, 260, 274, 275, 413R, 415, 421, 430, 440, 450, 453, 458, 459, 460, 463, 468, 474, 475, 476, 478, 486, 580, 581, 582, 586, 588.
7. Students interested in management careers are encouraged to also enroll in the agribusiness management minor.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Economics (18 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Econ 110, 381.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Econ 280, 380.
3. Select 9 additional hours in economics courses.
4. No more than 3 hours of D credit are allowed in courses used to fulfill minor requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Economics (Econ)

Undergraduate Courses

110. Economic Principles and Problems. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also.
Strengths and weaknesses of markets and governments for solving problems of social organization or conflict, including policy response to inflation, unemployment, pollution, poverty, growth, etc.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: faculty advisor's and department chair's prior written consent.
Not counted toward required major or minor hours.

210. Introduction to Agricultural Markets. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110 or equivalent.
Economic principles, policies, practices, and problems in marketing agricultural products.

211. Economics of Agricultural Production. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110 or equivalent.
Application of economics to the operation of agricultural production systems, including planning, decision making, and adjustments for uncertainty.

213R. Topics in Economic Analysis. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Econ 110 or equivalent.

215. History of Economic Thought. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110 or equivalent.
Development of economic doctrines from preclassical through contemporary economics. Contributions of individual writers and schools of thought.

230. Economic Development. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110 or equivalent.
Problems and processes of economic growth and development, emphasizing less-developed nations.

240. Introduction to Natural Resource and Environmental Economics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110 or equivalent.
Applying basic economic principles to the proper allocation of natural resources; our relationship to the environment.

253. Money and Banking. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110 or equivalent.
Economic principles applied to monetary analysis and policy and the banking structure.

257. International Trade and Finance. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110 or equivalent.
Economic analysis of the mechanisms, problems, institutions, and policies of trade among countries. Financial and monetary arrangements that facilitate trade.

260. Introduction to U.S. Food Policy. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110 or equivalent.
Analysis of policies affecting agricultural efficiency and distribution.

274. American Economic History. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110 or equivalent.
Impact on households, firms, and government of America's transformation from a rural, agricultural colony to a major industrial nation.

275. Public Finance. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110 or equivalent.
Economics of decision making in the public sector; cost-benefit analysis and efficiency-equity issues of taxation and expenditure policies.

280. Introduction to Economic Analysis and Reasoning. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110 or equivalent. Not for majors or major credit.
Maximizing self-interest model of behavior and the environment, and constraints within which business and household decisions are made.

378. Statistics for Economists. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110, Math 112.
Introduction to matrix algebra and statistics concluding with simple regression analysis. Other topics include: probability, random variables, density and distribution functions, estimation, hypothesis testing.

380. Intermediate Price Theory 1. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110; Math 112 or concurrent registration.
Producer, consumer, and equilibrium theories; mathematical techniques of unconstrained and constrained optimization introduced and applied extensively.

381. Intermediate Macroeconomics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110; Math 112 or concurrent registration.
Intermediate macroeconomic theory, emphasizing income, unemployment, and price-level analysis.

382. Intermediate Price Theory 2. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 380.
Welfare theory, imperfect information, imperfect competition, uncertainty, externalities, and public goods.

388. Introduction to Econometrics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380.
Mathematical and statistical techniques used in estimating, predicting, and testing hypotheses associated with quantifiable economic relationships.

410. Agricultural Markets. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380.
Application of supply and demand concepts to price determination and analysis in agricultural markets.

413R. Topics in Economic Theory. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Econ 380 and/or 381, depending on topic.

415. History of Economic Thought. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 380, 381.

421. Law and Economics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380.
Common law allocative mechanisms (contract, tort, and property law) as alternatives to collective intervention when markets fail; consideration of economic logic of law.

430. Economic Development. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 380, 381.

440. Economics and Natural Resources. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380.
Economic theory applied to issues in natural resource development and use. Rent, common property situations, time and resource conversion and depletion, market failure, public choice theory, and rudimentary benefit/cost analysis.

450. Economics of Financial Markets. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380, 382.
Theory of financial economics emphasizing capital markets, investment decisions, choice, capital asset pricing model, futures and options markets, efficient markets, and capital structures.

453. Theory of Money and Banking. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 380, 381.

458. International Trade Theory and Applications. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 380, 381.
Analysis of the theory of exchange, specialization, and trade, focusing on nature of the allocational problem when distinct economies interact.

459. International Monetary Theory. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380, 381.
Monetary and macroeconomic aspects of international relations dealing primarily with short-run balance-of-payments disequilibrium and adjustments.

460. Economics of U.S. Food Policy. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 380, 382.
Analysis of public programs, policies, issues, external forces, and institutions that affect the agricultural industry.

463. Economics of the Labor Market. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380.

468. Urban Economics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380.
Economic models relating to spatial location of economic activities and development of cities. Application of economic theory to problems and policies associated with housing, urban transportation, congestion, local government finance, and other urban problems.

474. Topics in Economic History. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380.

475. Theory of Public Finance. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380.

476. Industrial Organization. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380, 382.

478. Game Theory and Economics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380.
Application of game theory to study strategic interaction between individuals and organizations. Applications include imperfect competition, insurance markets, and bargaining.

486. Mathematical Economics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380.
Further development of optimization and comparative statics. Differential equations and dynamic analysis.

490. Senior Paper. (1:0:0) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

498R. Readings in Economics. (1–2:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
P/F grade only; maximum of 2 credit hours; 3 hours of reading per week required for each credit hour taken. Not counted toward required major hours.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

580. Advanced Price Theory. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380, 382.
Individual behavior and markets.

581. Advanced Macroeconomics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380, 381, 382.
Income, unemployment, and price-level analysis.

582. Welfare Economics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380, 382.
General equilibrium theorems and considerations that must guide applied economic work and provide quantitative information on the effects of alternative policy measures.

586. Mathematical Economics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 380, 381, 382, or equivalent.
Mathematical modeling of economic behavior.

588. Econometrics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 378, 380, 381, 382, 388.
Theory and practice of economic measurement.

599R. Cooperative Education: Supervised Management and Training. (2–6:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: course work pertinent to proposed experience.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Economics Faculty

Professors

Jensen, Farrell E. (1982) BS, Utah State U., 1964; MS, PhD, Kansas State U., 1966, 1972.
Kearl, J. R., (1975) BA, Utah State U., 1971; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1975.
Lambson, Val E. (1989) BA, Brigham Young U., 1979; MA, PhD, U. of Rochester, 1982, 1983.
McDonald, James B. (1972) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1964, 1967; PhD, Purdue U., 1970.
Park, William Laird (1977) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1957, 1958; PhD, Cornell U., 1963.
Pope, C. Arden, III (1984) BS, Brigham Young U., 1978; MS, PhD, Iowa State U., 1981.
Pope, Clayne L. (1970) BA, Brigham Young U., 1965; MA, PhD, U. of Chicago, 1968, 1972.
Pope, Rulon D. (1982) BS, Brigham Young U., 1971; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1976.
Ransom, Michael R. (1988) BA, Brigham Young U., 1977; MA, PhD, Princeton U., 1980, 1983.
Spencer, David E. (1986) BA, Brigham Young U., 1971; MS, PhD, Texas A&M U., 1973, 1974.
Wimmer, Larry T. (1963) BS, Brigham Young U., 1960; MA, PhD, U. of Chicago, 1962, 1968.

Associate Professor

Showalter, Mark H. (1991) BA, Brigham Young U., 1986; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1991.

Assistant Professors

Cardon, James H. (1996) BA, Brigham Young U., 1992; MA, PhD, Princeton U., 1995, 1996.
Eide, Eric R. (1993) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1988, 1989; PhD, U. of California, Santa Barbara, 1993.
Phillips, Kerk L. (1992) BS, Brigham Young U., 1986; MA, PhD, U. of Rochester, 1990, 1991.
Snow, Karl N. (1995) BA, Brigham Young U., 1985; MA, PhD, U. of Chicago, 1986, 1991.
Thurston, Norman K (1995) BA, Brigham Young U., 1990; MA, PhD, Princeton, 1993, 1995.
Timothy, Darren P. (1995) BA, Brigham Young U., 1990; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1996.

Emeriti

Clark, Wayne Walter (1962) BA, Brigham Young U., 1952; PhD, Texas A&M U., 1960.
Corbridge, Ivan L. (1952) BA, Utah State U., 1946; MS, U. of Chicago, 1948; PhD, Washington State U., 1952.
Dutton, Dean S. (1968) BA, U. of Utah, 1964; MA, PhD, Michigan State U., 1966, 1968.
Gardner, B. Delworth (1986) BS, MS, U. of Wyoming, 1952, 1954; PhD, U. of Chicago, 1960.
Infanger, Carlton A. (1964) PhD, Montana State U., 1964.
James, Sydney C. (1983) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1953, 1957; PhD, Oregon State U., 1960.
Nelson, Glen T. (1955) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1942, 1948; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1950.

Educational Leadership and Foundations

E. Vance Randall, Chair
310 MCKB, PO Box 26410, (801) 378-4291

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MEd	Educational Leadership
EdD	Educational Leadership
PhD	Educational Leadership

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Educational Leadership and Foundations (EdLF)

Undergraduate Course

362. International Education. (3:3:0) F, W
Introduction to international comparative education and development.

452. The Professional Teacher. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su
Professional, historical, philosophical, sociological, and financial aspects of education in the United States.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

515R. Special Topics in Education. (1–3:3:1 ea.) F, W, Su Credit earned in 515R is not counted toward graduate degrees.

517. Professional and Scholarly Writing in Education. (2:2:Arr.) F, W, Su
Refining skills for professional writing efforts, e.g., memoranda, reports, articles, theses, etc. Practice and corrective feedback.

530. School and Community Programs in Education. (2:2:0)
Examination of programs in school and community for enhancement of teaching and learning.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Educational Leadership and Foundations Faculty

Professors

Holsinger, Donald (1997) BA, Brigham Young U., 1966; MA, MS, U. of Wisconsin, 1967, 1969; PhD, Stanford U., 1972.
Muse, Ivan D. (1970) BS, Brigham Young U., 1955; MEd, U. of Arizona, 1958; EdD, U. of Utah, 1966.
Patterson, Robert S. (1961) BEd, MEd, U. of Alberta, Canada; PhD, Michigan State U., 1968.
Van Alfen, Curtis N. (1967) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1957, 1959; EdD, U. of Utah, 1967.
Wasden, F. Del (1971) BS, MEd, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1966, 1971.

Associate Professors

Flinders, Neil J. (1978) BS, MRE, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1963, 1968.
Hite, Steven (1991) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1980, 1982; EdD, Harvard U., 1985.
Randall, Vance (1992) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1978; PhD, Cornell U., 1989.
Richards, A. LeGrand (1985) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1982; MEd, Harvard U., 1976.
Webb, Clark D. (1966) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1966; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1970.

Assistant Professor

Peterson, Erlend D. (1966) BS, MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1971, 1985.

Emeriti

Andersen, Dan W. (1980) BS, U. of Utah, 1952; MS, U. of Southern California, 1955; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1961.
Butterfield, Dennie D. (1974) BA, Bri Young U., 1955; MA, Fresno State Coll., 1962; EdD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1972.
Christensen, Dean C. (1957) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1938, 1948; EdD, U. of Oregon, 1957.
Garfield, Rulon Roy (1978) BS, MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1954, 1956, 1964.
Harms, Callis R. (1960) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1952, 1956; EdD, Arizona State U., 1961.
Heaton, Israel C. (1956) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1940, 1941; EdD, DRE, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1955.
Hungerford, Curtiss R. (1977) BA, Stanford U.; MA, PhD, U. of Southern California, 1956, 1967.
Hyatt, Norman F. (1970) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1948, 1949; EdD, U. of Oregon, 1964.
Oakes, Keith R. (1957) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1940, 1948; EdD, U. of Southern California, 1954.
Ovard, Glen F. (1965) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1949, 1954; EdD, Stanford U., 1959.
Shute, R. Wayne (1974) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1959; EdD, U. of Southern California, 1964.
Smith, Ralph B. (1963) BS, Brigham Young U., 1943; MA, U. of Southern California, 1947; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1962.

Electrical and Computer Engineering

Richard L. Frost, Chair
459 CB, PO Box 24099, (801) 378-4012

College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center
264 CB, PO Box 24101, (801) 378-4325

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Department of Electrical and Computer Engineering carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

Electrical and computer engineers study phenomena, devices, and systems for information processing, communication, and systems control. These studies, grounded primarily in physics and mathematics, have enabled engineers to develop the innovative new technologies for information acquisition, processing, storage, and communication that have made possible our contemporary Age of Information.

Examples of systems developed by electrical and computer engineers include radio, television, radar, satellite communication systems, cellular telephones, laptop computers, fiber-optic communications devices, global and local computer networks, robotic systems, control systems, fax machines, medical image processing, computer modems, lasers, pagers, computer vision, programmable calculators, VLSI chips, computer-aided design tools, and medical instruments.

Although it is the goal of engineering to produce useful objects, electrical and computer engineers typically play a limited role in construction, assembly, or mass production. Instead, they focus on design, analysis, and the development of the underlying theory and knowledge applied in the design process.

Career Opportunities

Electrical and computer engineers are among the most actively recruited students graduating from a four-year program. Baccalaureate engineers typically start their careers as members of project teams with one or more of the following responsibilities: designing digital, analog, or opto-electronic circuits; creating or testing application-specific software; testing components or systems; or providing technical support for sales. Later on many engineers find themselves pursuing managerial careers, starting their own companies, or even managing entrepreneurial funds. Top graduates are also well received by medical schools, law schools, and professional and management programs.

The BS curriculum for both the electrical engineering and computer engineering degrees is accredited by the Engineering Accreditation Commission of the Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology, Inc. (ABET).

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Computer Engineering
BS Electrical Engineering
Emphasis (optional):
International

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Students interested in pursuing honors for the electrical engineering program should consult with the college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Electrical Engineering
PhD Electrical Engineering

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Preprofessional Program. All students who declare electrical and computer engineering as a major will be designated preprofessional until an application for acceptance to the professional program (available at the college advisement center, 264 CB) has been considered and approved by the

department's professional admissions committee. Preprofessional students are not allowed to enroll in electrical and computer engineering technical courses numbered 300 or above.

Academic Standards and Continuance. Proficiency in electrical and computer engineering requires dedication and certain natural abilities. It is the expectation of the department that all students accepted to the professional program have already demonstrated these qualities and will possess the abilities to successfully complete the program. Progress will be measured against professional standards.

Demonstrated integrity and a willingness to honor the highest professional standards of the engineering profession are expected.

From all technical classes being taken at the time of and after acceptance into the professional program, the student is (1) required to maintain a cumulative technical GPA of at least 2.0 and (2) permitted one technical class with an original substandard grade. If the substandard grade is at least a D– and the course is not prerequisite to a required course, credit will be given for graduation. For this discussion, the GPA computed from all technical classes, except for laboratory and seminar classes but including repeats, is called a technical GPA. An "original substandard grade" is defined as an E, UW, D, or unconverted I whether or not the course is later repeated and a higher grade received.

Permanent probationary status is automatically given at the end of the semester or term to any student whose grades fall below the bounds set above. A reasonable effort will be made to notify the student by letter at the address listed by the university. Should this fail, the student is still responsible for his probationary status.

After having been sent a letter indicating that he or she is on probation, the student is suspended from the department (1) by receiving additional original substandard grades or (2) by failing to increase his or her technical GPA to 2.0 or higher after one semester of being on probationary status. In extreme cases the student, together with the departmental standards committee, may prearrange to extend the one-semester probation period with which to increase his or her technical GPA. Appeals will be considered by the departmental standards committee.

Professional Registration. The Electrical and Computer Engineering Department provides the option for graduates to become registered professional engineers. General qualifications for becoming registered are explained in the College of Engineering and Technology section of this catalog. This status is vital to engineering practice in the public sector and to much consulting work. The basic electrical and computer engineering program outlined in this department prepares graduates to successfully complete the Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) examination. Students who wish to become registered as professional engineers are advised to discuss this matter with an advisor from the department soon after admission to the professional program.

BS Computer Engineering (93–96 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following preprofessional program as soon as possible upon entering BYU:
   a. Select at least 3 hours (other than Engl 316) from item 2 below.
   b. Complete the following (or approved equivalent courses):
      ECEn 191.
      Math 112, 113.
      Phscs 121, 122.
      Note: Although ECEn 191 is not required before application for professional status, take it as early as possible.
   c. During the semester of completing the above, obtain an application from the college advisement center and apply for professional status. (Contact the department or the college advisement center for additional details).
2. Complete the following supporting courses (either as a preprofessional or a professional student):
   a. Complete the following:
      Chem 105.
      CS 142.
      ECEn 220, 491.
      Engl 316.
      Phscs 281.
      Stat 421.
   b. Select one of the following sequences:
      (1) For the standard math sequence, complete the following:
      Math 312, 313.
      (2) For the optional math sequence, complete the following:
      Math 343, 344, 434.

      Note: The optional math sequence is recommended for honors students and those seeking an advanced degree or a minor in mathematics.
3. Complete the following professional requirements:
   a. Complete the following:
      ECEn 311, 312, 313, 317, 325, 425, 427, 451, 492A,B,C.
      CS 235, 240, 345.
   b. Select one course from the following:
      MeEn 321, 401.
   c. Select one course from the following:
      CS 428, 431, 452, 453, 455, 456, 470.
   d. Select one course from the following:
      ECEn 315, 360, 450.
   e. Select courses from the list below so the credit hours from items d and e total at least 9 (at least 8 hours with a mathematics minor):
      Math 323, 332, 411.
      Phscs 471, 561.
      Selected 400- and 500-level computer science courses.
      Any 300-level ECEn course except 301R.
      Any 400- or 500-level ECEn course.

Note: Contact the Electrical and Computer Engineering Department for current information about added and/or deleted courses, as well as information about when courses are offered.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Electrical Engineering (94–97 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following preprofessional program as soon as possible upon entering BYU:
   a. Complete at least 3 hours (other than Engl 316) from item 2 below.
   b. Complete the following (or approved equivalent courses):
      ECEn 191.
      Math 112, 113.
      Phscs 121, 122.
      Note: Although ECEn 191 is not required before application for professional status, take it as early as possible.

c. During the semester of completing the above, obtain an application from the college advisement center and apply for professional status. (Contact the department or the college advisement center for additional details).

2. Complete the following supporting courses (either as a preprofessional or a professional student):
   a. Complete the following:
      Chem 105.
      CS 142.
      ECEn 220, 491.
      Engl 316.
      Phscs 281.
      Stat 421.
   b. Complete one of the following sequences:
      (1) For the standard math sequence, complete the following:
      Math 312, 313.
      (2) For the optional math sequence, complete the following:
      Math 343, 344, 434.

      Note: The optional math sequence is recommended for honors students and those seeking an advanced degree.

3. Complete the following professional requirements:
   a. Complete the following:
      ECEn 311, 312, 313, 315, 316, 317, 325, 360, 361, 492A,B,C.
   b. Select one course from the following:
      MeEn 321, 401.

4. Complete the following advanced program and technical electives (24 hours for the standard mathematics sequence, 23 hours for the optional mathematics sequence):
   a. Complete at least 14 hours from the advanced 400-level courses (450 and 452, 460 and 461 must be taken as pairs):
      ECEn 411, 415, 425, 443, 444, 450, 451, 452, 460, 461.
   b. Select 9–10 hours of technical elective courses from the following:
      (1) Additional courses from item 4a above.
      (2) ECEn 427 or any 500-level course.
      (3) Selected 300-level and higher courses in mechanical engineering, civil and environmental engineering, mathematics, physics, and/or computer science as posted in the department office.

Note: Contact the Electrical and Computer Engineering Department for current information about added and/or deleted courses, as well as information about when courses are offered.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Emphasis (optional): International (101.5–106.5 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the requirements for the electrical engineering program as outlined above.
2. Complete the following additional courses:
   EngT 200, 498.
   BusM 430.
3. Select one course from the following:
   RelC 344, 351, 355, 356.
4. In consultation with the college advisement center, select a foreign literature course or a classical civilization course.
   Or select one course from the following:
   FnArt 270R.
   Hist 312.
   Hum 240, 242.
   Music 203.
   Fren/Ital 217.
   ArtHC 260.
5. An international "live-in" experience is required. It may be satisfied by (1) a semester or term work experience in a foreign country, (2) a semester or term Study Abroad program approved by the David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies and college personnel, or (3) a prior living experience, such as a foreign mission.
6. Write a senior paper.

Recommended

Proficiency in a foreign language is strongly suggested.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Electrical and Computer Engineering (ECEn)

Undergraduate Courses

191. Freshman Seminar. (0.5:1:0) F, W
Presentations by faculty and advisors, including design projects. College Lecture attendance required.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

220. Digital State Machines. (4:3:5) F, W, Su Prerequisite: Phscs 122 or concurrent registration.
Basic elements and technologies used to make digital logic circuits; laboratory experience in construction of synchronous and asynchronous state machines. Fee.

301R. Elements of Electrical Engineering. (1–3:3:1 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Phscs 122, Math 313.
Linear electrical circuits, computer organization, and logic circuits for nonmajors.

311. Circuits Laboratory. (1:0:3) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: EcEn. 312 or concurrent registration.
Basic electrical instrumentation and measurements. Fee.

312. Circuit Analysis. (4:4:2) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Phscs 122, Math 113, professional status.
Analysis of resistive circuits and RLC circuits in the sinusoidal-steady-state, resonance, Bode plots, and balanced three-phase circuits. To be taken semester of admittance to professional program.

313. Electronic Circuit Design 1. (4:4:2) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: ECEn 311, 312.
Analysis and design of linear and nonlinear electronic circuit building blocks.

315. Signals and Systems. (4:4:2) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: ECEn 312, Math 313 or 434.
Time and frequency domain analysis of discrete or continuous systems subjected to periodic or nonperiodic input signals.

316. Signals and Systems Laboratory. (1:0:3) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: ECEn 315 or concurrent registration.
Computer simulation of continuous and discrete systems in both the time and frequency domains.

317. Electronics Laboratory 1. (1:0:3) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: ECEn 313 or concurrent registration.
Measurement and design of basic electronic building blocks.

325. Introduction to Computer Design with Applications. (5:4:3) F, W Prerequisite: ECEn 220; CS 142 or equivalent.
Computer design, organization, architecture, and interfacing. Architectural trade-offs between hardware and software. Machine-level programming.

360. Transmission Lines and Introductory Fields. (4:4:2) F, W Prerequisite: Math 312 or 344, 313 or 434, ECEn 312.
Properties and application of transmission lines. Introduction to electric and magnetic field theory and development of Maxwell's equations.

361. Transmission Lines and Introductory Fields Laboratory. (1:0:3) F, W Prerequisite: ECEn 360 or concurrent registration.
Experiments and measurement techniques in static and time-varying fields. Transmission line design and measurements. Microwave generation, propagation, detection, and hardware components.

411. Feedback Concepts. (3:3:1) F, Sp Prerequisite: ECEn 315.
Introduction to design and analysis of continuous systems controlled by feedback.

415. Introduction to Discrete-Time Signal Processing. (3:3:1) W Prerequisite: ECEn 315.
DSP, fast Fourier transforms, digital filter design, spectrum analysis, applications in speech processing, SONAR communications, etc.

425. Computer Architecture with Applications. (4:3:4) F, W Prerequisite: ECEn 325 and C programming experience.
Advanced computer organization, function; modern computer systems design with applications. Hardware/software interface considerations: instruction set design, compilers, operating systems, caches, virtual memory.

427. Computer Input/Output Devices. (3:3:2) F, W Prerequisite: ECEn 313, 325.
Input/output interfacing of peripheral devices. Dynamic memory control; disk and graphics controllers. Computer communications; error control coding with finite fields. Selected laboratory assignments.

443. Electronic Circuit Design 2. (4:3:5) W Prerequisite: ECEn 313, 317.
Design of electronic circuits, such as multistage, power, feedback, and high frequency amplifiers, oscillators, modulators, and power supplies.

444. Analog and Digital Communication Theory. (3:3:1) F, W Prerequisite: ECEn 315, Stat 421.
Analysis and theory of communication systems, emphasizing modulation schemes and applications; information theory; introduction to nondeterministic random signals and processes in the presence of noise.

450. Introduction to Semiconductor Devices. (3:3:1) W Prerequisite: ECEn 313.
Physics of electronic and optical solid state devices; includes semiconductor materials, bipolar and FET device physics and modeling, optical properties of semiconductors, and lasers.

451. Introduction to Digital VLSI Circuits. (4:3:5) F, W Prerequisite: ECEn 313, 325.
Design of very large-scale integrated circuits for digital systems. CAD tools used extensively to simulate the design and create and verify mask circuits.

452. Experiments in Integrated Circuit Development. (1:0:3) W Prerequisite: ECEn 450 or concurrent registration.
Measurements of key silicon properties and fabrication of integrated circuits.

460. Applied Electromagnetic Theory. (3:3:1) F Prerequisite: ECEn 360.
Application of Maxwell's equations to propagating and radiating components and systems.

461. Electromagnetics Laboratory. (1:0:3) F Prerequisite: ECEn 361; 460 or concurrent registration.
Design and evaluation of microwave devices, systems, and materials.

491. Senior Seminar. (0.5:2:0) F Prerequisite: senior electrical and computer engineering standing.
Department seminars and College Lecture attendance required.

492A. Senior Seminar and Design Project Proposal. (0.5:1:0) F, W Prerequisite: senior electrical and computer engineering standing; Engl 316 or concurrent registration.
Senior seminar and proposal for senior capstone design project. College Lecture attendance required.

492B. Senior Design Project. (1:0:Arr.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: ECEn 492A.
Senior design project implementation.

492C. Senior Seminar and Design Project Report. (0.5:0:Arr.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: ECEn 492B or concurrent registration.
Report and presentation of senior design project. College Lecture attendance required.

493R. Special Topics in Electrical and Computer Engineering. (1–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Topics vary. Recent developments in electrical and computer engineering.

499A. Honors Thesis Project. (2:0:Arr.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: ECEn 492A.
Honors senior design project implementation.

499B. Honors Thesis Report. (1:0:Arr.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: ECEn 499A or concurrent registration.
Report and presentation of honors senior design project.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

510. (ECEn-Stat 545) Stochastic Processes. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Stat 441.
Review of elementary probability: expectation, characteristic functions, limit theorems. Introductory random processes: definitions and properties, covarience and spectral density, time average, stationarity, ergodicity, linear system relations, mean square estimation, Markov processes.

511. Introduction to Linear System Theory. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: ECEn 411.
Finite-dimensional linear systems. State variable realizations, canonical forms, controllability, observability, minimality. Time and frequency domain design of controllers and observers.

512. Active and Passive Filter Design. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: ECEn 315.
Design and frequency response characteristics of active and passive filters; emphasizes applications to signal processing.

517. Digital Filters and Signal Processing. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ECEn 415, 510, or equivalent.
Digital filters and their application to signal processing.

519. Digital Image Processing. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: ECEn 415, 510, or equivalent.
Digital processing techniques for two-dimensional scene analysis, classification feature enhancement, contrast enhancement deblurring, data compression, etc.

520. Error-Control Codes. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: senior or graduate standing.
Theory and implimentation of error-control techniques for digital communication, computer, and storage systems. Includes block, cyclic, and convolutional codes.

522R. Special Topics in Computer Systems. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

523. Computer Network Queueing. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: ECEn 315 or concurrent registration; Stat 421.
Queueing concepts related to computer systems and networks, resource allocation, speed, service time. Applications of random variables and probability theory.

526. Local Computer Networks. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: ECEn 427 or instructor's consent.
Local computer network coupling fundamentals.

528. Computer Systems Architecture. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: ECEn 425.
Advanced topics in computer architecture and parallel processing.

529. Advanced Computer System Design Lab. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ECEn 425, 451.
Lab experience in design and analysis of advanced computer systems.

540. Detection and Estimation Theory. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: concurrent registration in ECEn 510.
Sufficiency, completeness; Neyman Pearson and Bayes detectors; maximum likelihood, Bayes, minimum mean square, and linear estimation; Kalman filters.

542R. Special Topics in Electronics. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

544. Digital Communication Theory. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ECEn 444, 510.
Theory and design of optimal digital communication systems with noise, matched filters, correlation detectors, convolution codes, sequential coding/decoding schemes, block coding, and spread spectrum.

545. Information and Coding Theory. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: ECEn 315, Stat 421.
Mathematical development of information and coding theory applied to communication and other stochastic processes.

546. Optical Communication Components and Systems. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ECEn 460.
Fiber optic communication system components and their operating and performance characteristics.

547. Satellite Communications Systems. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ECEn 444.
Satellite communication system design including satellite transponders, microwave components, earth station hardware, link budgets, and analog and digital modulation formats.

550. Device Electronics for Integrated Circuits. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ECEn 450.
Semiconductor device analysis and simulation.
Analog-integrated circuit design.

551. VLSI Systems Design. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: ECEn 451.
Design of structured circuit systems for very large-scale integrated semiconductor chips. Architecture of digital VLSI systems.

553. VLSI Process Technology. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: senior or graduate standing in engineering or physical sciences.
Physical and chemical process steps used in fabricating very large-scale integrated circuits on monolithic silicon crystal.

555. VLSI Testing. (1:1:3) F, W Prerequisite: ECEn 451.
Testing of ICs designed previous semester in ECEn 451. Topics in VLSI-testable circuit designs.

560. Intermediate Electromagnetic Theory. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: ECEn 460. Recommended: Math 323.
Application of electromagnetic theory to nonlinear and anisotropic materials and devices. Current mathematical techniques in field theory.

561. High-Frequency Communication Circuits. (4:4:3) W Prerequisite: ECEn 360, 443.
Circuits and RF techniques used in communication systems.

563. Antenna Theory. (3:3:0) Alt. even yr. Prerequisite: ECEn 460.
Radiation, terminal, and distributed properties of antenna structures. Effects of lossy and ionized media on antenna performance. Noise temperature.

564. Radar Systems Performance. (3:3:0) WPrerequisite: ECEn 444 or 510.
Performance and evaluation of various radar systems. Range equation, signal detection, ambiguity function, system configurations, and components.

568. Microwave Remote Sensing. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Emphasis on space-borne remote sensing of the earth's atmosphere, land, and oceans. Primary methods and applications for both active (radar) and passive (radiometry).

592R. Supervised Teaching Experience. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.)
For students receiving supervised teaching experience.

593R. Special Topics in Electrical Engineering. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Topics vary. Recent developments in electrical engineering.

598R. Special Problems. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Electrical and Computer Engineering Faculty

Professors

Chabries, Douglas M. (1978) BS, U. of Utah, 1966; MS, California Inst. of Technology, 1967; PhD, Brown U., 1970.
Christiansen, Richard W. (1978) BS, Rutgers U., 1961; MS, U. of New Mexico, 1966; PhD, U. of Utah, 1976.
Comer, David J. (1981) BSEE, San Jose State U., 1961; MSEE, U. of California, Berkeley, 1962; PhD, Washington State U., 1966.
Comer, Donald T. (1995) BS, San Jose State U., 1959; MS, U. of California, Berkeley, 1961; PhD, U. of Santa Clara, 1968.
Nelson, Brent E. (1984) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1981, 1983, 1984.
Stirling, Wynn C. (1984) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1969, 1971; PhD, Stanford U., 1983.

Associate Professors

Archibald, James K. (1987) BS, Brigham Young U., 1981; MS, PhD, U. of Washington, 1983, 1987.
Bearnson, Leroy W. (1972) BS, U. of Utah, 1961; MS, Syracuse U., 1965; PhD, Auburn U., 1970.
Frost, Richard L. (1987) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1975, 1977, 1979.
Hutchings, Brad (1992) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1984, 1987, 1992.
Jeffs, Brian D. (1990) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1982; PhD, U. of Southern California, 1989.
Long, David G. (1990) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1982, 1983; PhD, U. of Southern California, 1989.
Rice, Michael D. (1991) BS, Louisiana Tech U., 1987; MS, PhD, Georgia Inst. of Technology, 1989, 1991.

Salmon, Linton G. (1990) BS, Stanford U., 1977; MS, PhD, Cornell U., 1979, 1983.
Selfridge, Richard H. (1987) BS, California State U., Sacramento, 1978; MS, PhD, U. of California, Davis, 1980, 1984.
Swindlehurst, A. Lee (1990) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1986; PhD, Stanford U., 1990.
Wilde, Doran (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1978; MS, PhD, Oregon State U., 1993, 1995.

Assistant Professors
Arnold, David V. (1992) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1987; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1992.
Beard, Randal W. (1996) BS, U. of Utah, 1991; MS, PhD, Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute, 1993, 1995.
Jensen, Michael (1994) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1990, 1991; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1994.

Adjunct Faculty
Lawton, Robert A., BS, Brigham Young U., 1960; MS, PhD, U. of Colorado, 1968, 1972.
Rose, Darrell E., BS, Brigham Young U., 1960; MS, Southern Illinois U., 1961; PhD, U. of Oklahoma, 1965.

Emeriti
Berrett, Paul O. (1964) BS, U. of Utah, 1953; MS, U. of Southern California, 1955; PhD, U. of Utah, 1965.
Bowman, Lawrence S. (1967) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1957, 1961, 1964.
Chaston, A. Norton (1957) AS, U. of Idaho, 1944; BS, U. of Utah, 1951; MS, Brigham Young U., 1963.
Clegg, John C. (1961) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1949, 1954, 1957.
Humpherys, Deverl S. (1964) BS, Brigham Young U., 1955; MS, U. of Utah, 1957; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1963.
Jonsson, Jens J. (1953) BS, BS, U. of Utah, 1944, 1947; MS, PhD, Purdue U., 1948, 1951.
Losee, Ferril A. (1965) BS, U. of Utah, 1953; MS, U. of Southern California, 1957.
Miner, Gayle F. (1960) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1959, 1960; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1969.
Ward, David M. (1964) BS, Stanford U., 1959.
Woodbury, Richard C. (1959) BS, U. of Utah, 1956; MS, PhD, Stanford U., 1958, 1965.

Electronics Engineering Technology

See Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology.

Elementary Education

See Teacher Education.

Engineering and Technology Education

Douglas M. Chabries, Coordinator
270 CB, PO Box 21345, (801) 378-4327

Engineering and Technology Education Courses (EngT)

100. Introduction to Engineering and Technology. (1–3:Arr.:Arr.) Su

Surveys of engineering and technology fields. Emphasis on communicative, mathematics, and computer technology skills. Laboratory exercises, field trips, design contests.

200. Global Technology Issues. (3:3:0) F

Interaction between the global society and technology. Global policy issues dealing with supply and demand of key commodities, economics, environment, population, and food and water resources.

498. International Project. (0.5:0.5:0) F, W

Report of a senior project that demonstrates comprehension of the international dimensions of the student's major.

502. Systems Engineering. (3:3:0)

Applying quantitative techniques to the solution of interrelated problems, optimizing the system's overall operation.

English

Jay Fox, Chair
3146 JKHB, PO Box 26280, (801) 378–3053

Gary L. Hatch, Coordinator, English Composition
3110 JKHB, PO Box 26204, (801) 378–3565

College of Humanities Advisement Center
3078 JKHB, PO Box 26101, (801) 378–4789

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of English are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

The English major at BYU is a program devoted to the development of reading, writing, and thinking abilities derived from studying and producing literary and other texts in English. Students study these works in aesthetic, historical, religious, and other contexts, including the theoretical contexts the faculty bring to the courses they teach.

The major enables students to develop knowledge, skills, and attitudes that have application in contemporary society and that are in harmony with the principles of the restored gospel of Jesus Christ.

Career Opportunities

Many opportunities for careers exist in teaching, professional and technical writing, newspaper work, editing, public relations, personnel work, and government service. The English major traditionally prepares students as teachers in secondary education, but it is excellent training for any career that requires perceptive reading, orderly and clear thinking, and persuasive and graceful expression. It is useful as an undergraduate major for careers in law, medicine, library work, organizational behavior, and publishing and editing. Some graduates work in journalism, advertising, script writing for television and movies, and public information. Local, state, and federal government agencies offer career possibilities as do business and industry.

Students would be wise to combine the English major with a minor in any field that would help prepare them for the job market.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA	English
BA	English Teaching
Minors	English
	English Teaching

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA English

For more information see the 1998–99 Graduate Studies Catalog.

BA English (42 hours)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit in English courses may be applied to major requirements.
2. Students must complete the GE Foreign Language option even if the Advanced Mathematics option has already been completed.
3. At least 21 major hours must be completed in residence at BYU.
4. Engl 195 is recommended.
5. Complete the following introductory courses:
   Engl 223, 251, 252.
6. Select one course each in five of the following six areas:
   a. Early British Literature:
      Engl 301, 341, 371, 372, 373, 385.

b. Later British Literature:
Engl 302, 333, 374, 375, 376, 380.
c. American Literature:
Engl 303, 336, 361, 362, 363, 365.
d. Contextual Studies:
Engl 345, 350, 351, 352, 355, 358R, 368, 391, 392, 396.
e. Language:
Engl 322, 324, 325, 326, 421R.
f. Rhetoric and Writing:
Engl 318R, 319R, 410, 415R, 418, 424, 425R, 426, 427, 428R.

7. Major Authors: select one course from the following:
Engl 381, 382, 383, 384R.
8. Select 12 elective hours from English 300-level or above courses except 329, 377, 378, 423, 479, 499R.
Note: No more than 3 credits of any one R course may apply toward the 42 hours required for the major.
9. Complete the following:
Engl 495.
10. The department has developed some sample advisement patterns for students who wish to focus on a particular subject or skill area. Sample advisement patterns are available in the English Department office, 3146 JKHB.

BA English Teaching (71–72 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit in English courses may be applied to major requirements.
2. Students must complete the GE Foreign Language option even if the Advanced Mathematics option has already been completed.
3. At least 24 hours of English course work must be completed in residence at BYU.
4. Engl 195 is recommended.
5. A teaching minor is not required for certification. However, it is strongly recommended.
6. ScEd 276R is prerequisite to Engl 377 and 378 (377 and 378 may be taken concurrently). Engl 377 and 378 are prerequisite to ScEd 476R.
7. Complete the following introductory courses:
Engl 223, 251, 252.
8. Complete the following area requirements:
a. Language: Complete the following:
Engl 329.
b. Early British Literature: Select one course from the following:
Engl 301, 371, 372, 373, 385.
c. Later British Literature: Select one course from the following:
Engl 302, 333, 374, 375, 376, 380.
d. American Literature: Select two courses from the following:
Engl 303, 336, 361, 362, 363, 365.
e. Genres and Authors: Complete the following:
Engl 382, 420.
f. Contextual Studies: Select one course from the following:
Engl 345, 356, 358R, 391, 392.
g. Rhetoric and Writing: Complete the following:
Engl 423.
9. Complete the following:
Engl 377, 378, 479.
10. Complete the following:
Engl 495.
11. Complete the Professional Education Component (25–26 hours). See the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor English (18 hours)

1. At least 6 hours must be from courses at the 300-level or higher.
2. At least 9 hours must be taken in residence at BYU.
3. No D credit in English courses may be applied to minor requirements.
4. Complete the following:
Engl 251 (prerequisite to all other English courses).
5. Select 15 elective hours from Engl 200-level or higher courses. At least 6 hours must be 300-level or higher.

Minor English Teaching (24 hours)

1. No D credit in English courses may be applied to minor requirements.
2. At least 12 minor hours must be completed in residence at BYU.
3. Complete the following introductory course:
Engl 251 (prerequisite to all other English courses).
4. Complete the following requirements:
a. Complete the following:
Engl 329.
b. Select one course from the following:
Engl 301, 371, 372, 373, 385.
c. Select one course from the following:
Engl 302, 333, 374, 375, 376, 380.
d. Select one course from the following:
Engl 303, 336, 361, 362, 363, 365.
e. Complete the following:
Engl 377, 382, 423.

English (Engl)

Undergraduate Courses

115. College Writing and Reading. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Basic principles of critical reading and expository writing: purpose, structure, logic, and language. Carries GE First-Year Writing credit.

195. Introduction to the English Major. (1:1:0)
Overview of the English major for the beginning student: curriculum, faculty, career options. Grading based chiefly on attendance.

201. Masterpieces of World Literature 1. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also.
Major world civilizations from antiquity through the early Italian Renaissance, approached through literature and emphasizing socioeconomic, religious, political, intellectual, and aesthetic developments.

202. Masterpieces of World Literature 2. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Engl 201.
Major world civilizations from Europe's High Renaissance to modern times, approached through literature and emphasizing socioeconomic, religious, political, intellectual, and aesthetic developments.

216. Experience in Writing. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Engl 115 or equivalent.
Skills and knowledge in writing and research beyond those developed in Engl 115.

218R. Creative Writing. (3:3:0 ea.) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Engl 115 or equivalent.
Individual sections dealing with poetry, personal essays, drama, fiction, or science fiction, or combinations of these.

220. Writing Personal History. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.

223. Introduction to the English Language. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Overview of English from linguistic point of view, emphasizing structure of English and social, biological, and psychological aspects of language.

225. Vocabulary Building. (2:2:0) Independent Study also.
Developing an effective vocabulary through study of prefixes, suffixes, and roots.

230. Introduction to Literature: Fiction, Drama, Poetry. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Introduction to various literary themes, forms, and authors. Does not fulfill English major requirements.

232. Shakespeare. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Careful reading and discussion of six to eight major plays. Does not fulfill English major requirements.

235. Masterpieces of American Literature. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Selected readings from Puritan times to the present.

236. Masterpieces of English Literature. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Selected readings from medieval times to the present.

251. Fundamentals of Literary Interpretation and Criticism. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Engl 115 or equivalent.
Introduction to concepts and practice of literary analysis; critical theories; and elements of fiction, poetry, and drama.

252. Critical Writing and Research. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Engl 115 or equivalent. Recommended: Engl 251 or concurrent registration.
Developing writing and research skills by using critical theories to interpret and analyze literary texts. For English majors and others with adequate literary background. Carries GE Advanced Writing credit.

280R. Studies in Theme and Form. (3:3:0 ea.)
Topics vary.

300R. English Literature in a Cultural Setting. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: for Study Abroad students only.

301. Perspectives in English Literature 1. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Survey of British authors from Old English to 1800.

302. Perspectives in English Literature 2. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Survey of British authors since 1800.

303. Perspectives in American Literature. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
American Puritanism, rationalism, romanticism/transcendentalism, realism, naturalism, modernism, and postmodernism approached through representative authors, genres, and works.

311. Writing About the Humanities. (3:3:0) Honors also. Prerequisite: Engl 115 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
Writing for both academic and mass audiences about the functions, meanings, values, and qualities of art and the humanities. Library research paper. Carries GE Advanced Writing credit.

312. Persuasive Writing. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Engl 115 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
Expository and persuasive writing focusing on practical reasons for evaluating audiences, generating and structuring an argument, and making stylistic decisions. Library research paper. Carries GE Advanced Writing credit.

313. Expository Writing for Elementary Education Majors. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Engl 115 or equivalent; ElEd 310R or FamSc 322; junior or senior status.
Learning to write as professional educators and to teach writing to children. Best taken before the professional sequence. Library research paper. Carries GE Advanced Writing credit.

315. Writing in the Social Sciences. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Engl 115 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
Writing characteristic of disciplines that inquire into human behavior and institutions; correspondence, proposals, library paper, empirical research, and reviews. Carries GE Advanced Writing credit.

316. Technical Writing. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Engl 115 or equivalent; junior or senior status.
Writing scientific and technical proposals, articles, reports, and memoranda. Research paper. Carries GE Advanced Writing credit.

317. Preprofessional Reading. (2:2:0)
Reading and researching in technical material; includes speed-reading skills. Preparation for technical-professional reading and reading portions of MCAT, DAT, LSAT, GRE, GMAT tests.

318R. Writing Fiction. (3:3:0 ea.) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Engl 218R or instructor's consent.
Creation of style and technique in prose fiction; discipline and practice of the writer.

319R. Writing Poetry. (3:3:0 ea.) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Engl 218R or instructor's consent.
Creation of style and technique in poetry; discipline and practice of the poet.

320R. Writing for Children and Adolescents. (3:3:0 ea.) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Engl 218R.
Theory and practice of writing prose and verse for youth readership. Specific attention to requirements of picture books, middle-grade novels, and young adult stories.

322. Modern American Usage. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Current conventions and effective use of American English.

324. History of the English Language. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Engl 223.
Basic changes from Old English to modern English, including modern American dialects.

325. Grammar and Usage. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Engl 223.
Study of grammar and usage in various applications.

326. Semantics. (3:3:0)
General semantics, emphasizing the way in which words influence thought and behavior.

329. Teaching Grammar and Usage in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0)
Language issues, particularly grammar, usage, and pedagogy, for students preparing to teach English at the secondary level.

333. The English Novel. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Novels of the past three centuries, emphasizing those of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

336. The American Novel. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Representative novels of the American tradition from the late eighteenth century to the present.

337R. Contemporary Literature. (3:3:0 ea.)
Trends, techniques, and themes in fiction, drama, or poetry since the 1950s.

341. English Drama: Beginnings to 1800, Excluding Shakespeare. (3:3:0)
Selected plays from medieval, Tudor, Stuart, Restoration, and 18th-century drama.

343. Modern English and American Drama. (3:3:0)

345. Literature and Film. (3:3:0)
Emphasis on film as an interpretation of texts.

350. The Bible as Literature. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Literary artistry, human values, and cultural significance of the Bible.

351. Literary Theory and Criticism 1: The Critical Tradition. (3:3:0)
Historical survey from Plato to the early twentieth century.

352. Literary Theory and Criticism 2: Contemporary Criticism. (3:3:0)
Introduction to issues in twentieth-century literary criticism.

355. (Engl-ClCv) Greek and Roman Classics and the English Tradition. (3:3:0)
Major works by such authors as Homer, the Greek and Roman tragedians, Thucydides, Vergil, and Petronius in English translation, emphasizing their influence on English and American literature.

356. Myth, Legend, and Folktales. (3:3:0)
Major mythic and legendary works that provide background for the literary tradition.

358R. Ethnic, Regional, and Other Literatures in English. (3:3:0 ea.)
Sections stressing Native American, African American, Chicano, third-world, regional, or other literatures in English.

359. The Short Story. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Critical study of American, English, and European short stories, emphasizing those of the twentieth century.

361. American Literature to the Mid–Nineteenth Century. (3:3:0)
Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from Puritanism through transcendentalism.

362. American Literature from the Late Nineteenth to the Early Twentieth Century. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from the late nineteenth century through naturalism.

363. American Literature from the Early to Mid–Twentieth Century. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Major and selected minor writers and literary trends from the first half of the twentieth century through modernism.

364. Literature of the American West. (3:3:0)
Literature protraying the West and the frontier.

365. American Literature from the Mid–Twentieth Century to Present. (3:3:0)
Selected writers and literary trends, including postmodernism, from the mid–twentieth century to the present.

366. Studies in Poetry. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Topics vary.

368. Literature of the Latter-day Saints. (3:3:0)
Literary study of journals, letters, sermons, personal essays, short stories, novels, poetry, and drama arising out of the Mormon experience from Joseph Smith to the present.

371. English Literature to 1500: The Medieval Period. (3:3:0)
Principal works, mainly in translation, from Old and Middle English literature.

372. English Literature from 1500 to 1603: The Early Renaissance Period. (3:3:0)
English drama, poetry, and prose of the Tudor period.

373. English Literature from 1660 to 1780. (3:3:0)
Poetry, prose, and drama of the late seventeenth and eighteenth century, including major figures such as Dryden, Swift, Pope, Fielding, Johnson, and popular female writers.

374. English Literature from 1780 to 1832: The Romantic Period. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Includes writings of Blake, Wordsworth, Coleridge, Byron, Shelley, Keats, and their contemporaries.

375. English Literature from 1832 to 1890: The Victorian Period. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Includes writings of Carlyle, Tennyson, the Brownings, Arnold, Dickens, Eliot, the Rossettis, Hopkins, and their contemporaries.

376. English Literature from 1890 to 1950: The Modern Period. (3:3:0)
Aspects of modernism from the aesthetic movement to the end of World War II, including the writings of Hardy, Shaw, Yeats, Conrad, Lawrence, Woolf, Joyce, Eliot, and their contemporaries.

377. Teaching English in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ScEd 276R.
Theories and methods of teaching English and language arts to secondary school students. Required for English teaching majors and minors before student teaching.

378. Teaching Reading in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ScEd 276R.
Theories and methods of teaching reading and reading skills to secondary students. Required before student teaching.

380. English Literature from 1950 to the Present: The Contemporary Period. (3:3:0)
Important literature and literary trends since 1950.

381. Chaucer. (3:3:0)
Intensive study of Chaucer's literature and language from medieval and modern perspectives.

382. Shakespeare. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Intensive reading, discussion, and (in some sections) viewing of plays from the comedy, tragedy, romance, and history genres. For English majors and minors.

383. Milton. (3:3:0)
Analysis of poetry and selected prose, including detailed study of *Paradise Lost*, *Paradise Regained*, and *Samson Agonistes*.

384R. Major Authors. (3:3:0)
Topics vary.

385. English Literature 1603–1660: The Late Renaissance Period. (3:3:0)
English drama, poetry, and prose of the Stuart period.

391. Introduction to Folklore. (3:3:0)
Major types of folklore (e.g., myth, legend, folktale, folksong, custom, and belief); practical experience in collecting folklore.

392. American Folklore. (3:3:0)
American folk art and literature and the historical and cultural circumstances from which they developed.

393R. Studies in Folklore. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Engl 391.
Focused themes and topics in folklore. Topics may include regional or transnational folklore, folklore genres, folk groups, ethnographic research, cross-disciplinary issues, and history of folklore studies.

395R. Studies in Literature. (3:3:0 ea.) Independent Study also.
Topics vary.

396. Studies in Women's Literature. (3:3:0)
Female-authored literary texts and literary theory concerning women. A core class for the women's studies minor.

399R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: consent of cooperative education coordinator.
On-the-job training.

410. Editing for Publication. (3:3:0) Recommended: Engl 322.
Lecture, discussion, and practice in manuscript selection, consultation with authors, editing, layout, document design, and proofreading.

415R. Professional Writing Workshop. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Engl 312, 315, or 316.
Developing proficiency in professional writing through rhetorical analysis, project management, and revision. Emphasis may vary with instructors.

418. Document Design and Portfolio. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: a GE Advanced Writing course.
Instruction in designing and preparing documents and in creating a professional portfolio of the student's technical, professional, and/or scholarly writing.

419R. Creative Writing Projects. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Engl 318R or 319R.
Individual major creative writing projects: novel, novella, play, poetry collection, short stories, or essays.

420. Literature for Adolescents. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Wide range of literature written for or read by teenagers. Required for English teaching majors.

421R. Studies in Language. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Engl 223.
Topics vary.

423. Teaching Composition in Secondary Schools. (3:3:0)
Theories and methods of teaching writing to secondary school students. Required for all English teaching majors and minors.

424. Rhetoric and Teaching Academic Writing. (3:3:0)
Principles of rhetoric and language applied to teaching academic writing at the college level. Recommended for all prospective college English teachers.

425R. Reading, Writing, Editing Internship. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Recommended: Engl 410.
Practical experience in selecting and evaluating manuscripts, consulting with authors, editing, designing documents, proofreading, and publishing.

426. History of Rhetoric 1. (3:3:0)
Theories and practices of rhetoric from ancient times through the Renaissance, with particular emphasis on Greek and Roman traditions.

427. History of Rhetoric 2. (3:3:0)
Theories and practices of rhetoric from the Renaissance to present.

428R. Studies in Rhetoric and Composition. (3:3:0)
Topics vary.

479. Secondary Student Teaching Seminar. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: Engl 377, 378.
Issues experienced during secondary student teaching practicum.

490R. Individual Readings in English. (1–3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: department chair's consent.
Language and/or literature beyond what is offered in the curriculum. May not be substituted for another catalog course.

495. The Senior Course. (3:3:0 ea.)
In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism. Content varies; requires research and writing.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:0:0 ea.)
Does not count toward English major electives.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

500R. Eminent American Writers. (1–3:3:0 ea.)
Different writers each semester.

510R. Eminent English Writers. (1–3:3:0 ea.)
Different writers each semester.

515R. Advanced Scholarly Writing. (3:3:0 ea.)
Workshop for potential graduate students, graduate students, and professionals in all disciplines in preparing the thesis, dissertation, book chapter, and article.

516. Advanced Technical Writing. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Engl 316 or instructor's consent.
Advanced concepts, including literature of technical writing, liaison with technical staff, communication networks, rhetoric of graphics, and teaching and freelancing technical writing.

518R. Advanced Creative Writing. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Engl 318R, 319R, or instructor's consent.
Writing fiction, poetry, drama, and the essay; individual consideration of manuscripts; professional orientation. May be repeated for credit with departmental approval.

520R. Studies in Theme and Form. (1–3:3:0 ea.)
Topics vary: literature and film, myth and archetype, science fiction, etc.

521R. Studies in Language and Rhetoric. (1–3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Engl 324.
Topics vary.

527. Early Modern English. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Engl 223, 324.
English language from about 1500 to 1800, with special emphasis on language of Shakespeare and the King James Bible.

528. Varieties of English. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Engl 223, 324.
Regional and social variation in English, especially standard and nonstandard national and world Englishes, including English-based pidgins and creoles.

529. Structure of Modern English. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Engl 328, Ling 325, or instructor's consent.
English syntax through modern grammars; theories underlying those grammars.

590R. Individual Readings in English. (1–3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: graduate coordinator's consent.
Language and/or literature beyond what is offered in the curriculum. May not be substituted for another catalog course.

599R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: department chair's consent.
On-the-job training.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Studies Catalog.

English Faculty

Professors

Clark, Gregory (1985) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1977; PhD, Rensselaer Polytechnic Inst., 1985.

Cracroft, Richard H. (1963) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1961, 1963; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1969.

Crisler, Jesse S. (1993) BA, Trinity U., 1969; PhD, U. of South Carolina, 1973.

Cronin, Gloria L. (1984) BA, Canterbury U., New Zealand, 1968; MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1976, 1980.

Eggington, William G. (1988) BA, Brigham Young U.—Hawaii, 1975; MA, PhD, U. of Southern California, 1981, 1985.

England, Eugene (1977) BA, U. of Utah, 1958; PhD, Stanford U., 1974.

Fox, Charles Jay (1980) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1967; PhD, Purdue U., 1971.

Geary, Edward A., Associate Dean, (1968) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1963; PhD, Stanford U., 1971.

Lambert, Neal E. (1966) BA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1961, 1966.

Murphy, John J. (1984) BA, MA, St. John's U., 1956, 1961.

Norris, Leslie, Humanitites Professor of Creative Writing (1983) DipEd, MPhil, Southampton U., England, 1956, 1958.

Skousen, Royal (1979) BA, Brigham Young U., 1969; MA, PhD, U. of Illinois, 1971, 1972.

Tanner, John S. (1982) BA, Brigham Young U., 1974; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1980.

Tanner, Stephen L., Ralph A. Britsch Humanities Professor of English (1978) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1962, 1964; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1969.

Taylor, Sally T. (1978) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1965; PhD, U. of Utah, 1975.

Thayer, Douglas H. (1957) BA, Brigham Young U., 1955; MA, Stanford U., 1959; MFA, U. of Iowa, 1962.

Walker, Steven C. (1966) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1966; PhD, Harvard U., 1973.

Lecturer

Shakespeare, William O. (1974) BA, MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1982, 1996.

Associate Professors

Ballantyne, VerDon W. (1963) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1964.

Bennion, John S. (1989) BA, Utah State U., 1977; MA, Brigham Young U., 1981; PhD, U. of Houston, 1989.

Best, Brian S. (1960) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1962; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1971.

Best, Lorna Ruth Nielsen (1958) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1962.

Boswell, Grant M. (1984) BA, Brigham Young U., 1976; MA, PhD, U. of Southern California, 1982, 1985.

Cowles, David L. (1985) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1980; PhD, U. of Chicago, 1985.

Crowe, Christopher E. (1993) BA, Brigham Young U., 1976; MEd, EdD, Arizona State U., 1980, 1986.

Duerden, Richard Y. (1988) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1981; PhD, U. of Chicago, 1989.

Hansen, Kristine (1987) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1973, 1981; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1987.

Harris, Claudia W. (1990) BA, U. of Minnesota, 1970; MEd, Georgia State U., 1975, 1978; PhD, Emory U., 1990.

Howe, Susan (1988); BA, Brigham Young U., 1971; MA, U. of Utah, 1978; PhD, U. of Denver, 1989.

Hunsaker, O. Glade (1964) BS, Utah State U., 1960; MA, Brigham Young U., 1964; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1970.

Johstoneaux, Raphael (1986) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1968; PhD, George Peabody Coll. of Vanderbilt U., 1980.

Jorgensen, B. W. (1975) BA, Brigham Young U., 1966; MA, PhD, Cornell U., 1969, 1978.

Lundquist, Suzanne E. (1984) BA, MA Brigham Young U., 1965, 1972; DA, U. of Michigan, 1985.

Nelson, Joyce (1990) BS, Utah State U., 1956; MS, Florida State U., 1971.

Oaks, Dallin D. (1990) BA, Brigham Young U., 1984; MA, U. of Utah, 1986; PhD, Purdue U., 1990.

Parry, Catherine Corman (1985) BA, California State U., Fullerton, 1976; MA, PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1978, 1985.

Paxman, David B. (1988) BA, Brigham Young U., 1971; MA, PhD, U. of Chicago, 1972, 1982.

Pedersen, Elray (1983) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1964; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1977.

Smith, Marion K. (1964) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1966; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1986.

Snyder, Phillip A. (1988) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1980; PhD, U. of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1988.

Sorensen, Peter J. (1990) BA, BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1977, 1979; PhD, Washington State U., 1988.

Thomas, Paul R. (1980) BA, Brigham Young U., 1964; MA, U. of Virginia, 1967; DPhil, U. of York, England, 1982.

Wahlquist, Elizabeth (1962) BA, Brigham Young U., 1955; MA, MLit, Middlebury Coll., 1962, 1971.

Young, Bruce W. (1983) BA, Brigham Young U., 1975; MA, Columbia U., 1976; AM, PhD, Harvard U., 1978, 1983.

Assistant Professors

Baltes, Paul J. (1993) BA, Arizona State U., 1988; MA, PhD, Purdue U., 1991, 1995.

Burton, Gideon (1994) BA, Brigham Young U., 1989; MA, MPW, PhD, U. of Southern California, 1994.

Chapman, Don W. (1995) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1987, 1990; PhD, U. of Toronto, Canada, 1995.

Christiansen, Nancy L. (1994) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1976, 1983; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1994.

Cutchins, Dennis R. (1997) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1990, 1992; PhD, Florida State U., 1997.

Cutler, Edward S. (1996) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1990, 1992; PhD, U. of California, San Diego, 1997.

Eliason, Eric A. (1997) BA, Brigham Young U., 1992; MA, PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1994, 1997.

Grierson, Sirpa T. (1997) BEd, U. of British Columbia, Canada, 1974; MLIS, Brigham Young U., 1992; PhD, U. of Southern Mississippi, 1996.

Hassett, Michael J. (1997) BA, U. of Utah, 1987; MA, Brigham Young U., 1992; PhD, Iowa State U., 1995.

Hatch, Gary L. (1992) BA, Brigham Young U., 1988; PhD, Arizona State U., 1992.

Larsen, Lance E. (1993) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1987; PhD, U. of Houston, 1993.

Lawrence, A. Keith (1992) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1980; PhD, U. of Southern California, 1987.

Muhlestein, Daniel K. (1993) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1984, 1987; PhD, Rice U., 1992.

Norton, Don E. (1967) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1959, 1961.

Paul, Danette (1996) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1987, 1989; PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1996.

Petersen, Zina N. (1995) BA, Brigham Young U., 1987; MA, PhD, Catholic U., 1990, 1997.

Plummer, Louise R. (1993) BS, MA, U. of Minnesota, 1980, 1984.

Rudy, Jill Terry (1996) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1987, 1990; PhD, Indiana U., 1997.

Siegfried, Brandie R. (1993) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1988, 1990; MA, PhD, Brandeis U., 1993.

Thursby, Jacqueline (1996) BA, Idaho State U., 1985; MS, Utah State U., 1991; PhD, Bowling Green State U., 1994.

Zimmerman, Beverly B. (1993) BA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1994.

Assistant Lecturers

Adams, Linda H. (1979) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1968.
Bird, Penny C. (1992) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1996.
Dant, Doris R. (1989) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1972.

Part-Time Instructors

Bell, Kristi
Black, Dianna
Boswell, Lisa
Clark, Linda
Cowles, Delys
Craig, Alison
Cutler, Mary Lynn
de Hoyos, Ben
Farmer, Gladys
Gorton, Terry
Gunn, Nancy
Harris, Mitch
Hawkins, Nancy
Hedengren, Elizabeth
Henderson, GaeLyn
Jackson, Matthew
Jackson, Nathan
Jackson, Sherland
Johstoneaux, Pamela
Lyman, Lovisa
Madsen, Michael
Miller, Susan
Newell, Neil
Nichols, Julie
Nickell, Samila
Pinnegar, Fred
Pollington, Mary
Preto-Bay, Ana
Ridenhour, Sherilyn
Rushforth, Nancy
Rutter, Michael
Santiago, Tessa
Walker, Brent
Wistisen, Nicole
Young, Margaret

Emeriti

Alder, Zane G. (1955) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1948, 1956.
Arnold, Marilyn (1969) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1958; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, 1968.
Beecher, Maureen Ursenbach (1980) BS, Brigham Young U., 1958; MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1966, 1973.
Bell, Elouise M. (1963) BA, U. of Arizona, 1957; MA, Brigham Young U., 1959.
Bennion, George C. (1961) BA, Brigham Young U., 1949.
Blanch, Mae (Mable) (1959) BA, Brigham Young U., 1950; PhD, U. of Colorado, 1966.
Calder, Rose Eyring (1965) BA, Brigham Young U., 1932; MA, Columbia U., 1936; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1944.
Clark, Bruce B. (1950) BA, U. of Utah, 1943; MA, Brigham Young U., 1948; PhD, U. of Utah, 1951.
Clark, Marden J. (1949) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1948, 1949; PhD, U. of Washington, 1957.
Cox, Soren F. (1955) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1952, 1956; PhD, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1964.
Craig, Marshall R. (1953) BS, Brigham Young U., 1941; MA, PhD, Columbia U., 1947, 1968.
Ellsworth, Richard G. (1958) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1951, 1952; PhD, U. of Maryland, College Park, 1959.
Evans, David Louis (1954) BA, Idaho State U., 1948; MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1953, 1968.
Farnsworth, Dean B. (1953) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1946, 1947; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1950.
Gassman, Byron W. (1960) BA, Brigham Young U., 1955; MA, PhD, U. of Chicago, 1956, 1960.
Grass, Nan Osmond (1951) BA, Brigham Young U., 1930; MA, Stanford U., 1954.
Harris, John B. (1958) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1956; PhD, Wayne State U., 1965.
Harris, John S. (1962) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1958.
Hart, Edward L. (1952) BS, U. of Utah, 1939; MA, U. of Michigan, 1941; DPhil, Oxford U., England, 1950.
Hayes, Darwin L. (1961) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1963.
Hendrickson, A. Lemar (1963) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1938, 1941.
Hooker, Joyce S. (1980) BS, U. of Idaho, 1955; MIE, Utah State U., 1979.
Horton, Frank K. (1955) BA, Brigham Young U., 1951; MA, U. of Southern California, 1957; DA, U. of Oregon, 1973.
Jacobs, Briant S. (1946) BA, Brigham Young U., 1939; PhD, U. of Iowa, 1944.
King, Arthur Henry (1971) BA, Cambridge U., England, 1931; FD, U. of Lund, Sweden, 1941; MA, Cambridge U., 1942.
Lofgreen, Charlotte D. (1970) BA, California State Polytechnic Coll., 1959; MA, Brigham Young U., 1973.
MacKay, Ruth Mary (1962) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1962.
McKellar, J. Glen (1964) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1962; PhD, U. of Colorado, 1967.
McKendrick, John E. (1953) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1942, 1949.
Monson, Samuel C. (1952) BS, Utah State U., 1941; MA, PhD, Columbia U., 1948, 1952.
Morrell, Jeannette (1956) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1933, 1935.
Ream, Susan E. (1961) BA, Brigham Young U., 1953; MA, Columbia U., 1958.
Ridenhour, Ted E. (1959) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1960.
Rigby, W. Dean (1966) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1970.
Tate, Charles D. (1960) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1954, 1958; PhD, U. of Colorado, 1966.
Taylor, Celestia J. (1959) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1925, 1953.
Thomas, Gordon K. (1976) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1959, 1960; PhD, Tulane U. of Louisiana, 1968.
Thomas, John Alfred (1962) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1954; PhD, U. of Maryland, College Park, 1962.
Thomas, Robert K. (1951) BA, Reed Coll., 1947; MA, U. of Oregon, 1949; PhD, Columbia U., 1967.
Thomson, Woodruff C. (1950) AA, Snow Coll., 1936; BA, MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1938, 1949, 1962.
Waterstradt, Jean Anne (1945) AA, Weber Coll., 1943; BA, Brigham Young U., 1945; MA, U. of Southern California, 1955.
West, Dale H. (1947) BA, Brigham Young U., 1940; MA, U. of Southern California, 1955; EdD, U. of Colorado, 1962.
Wight, Marjorie (1963) BA, Brigham Young U., 1943; MA, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1958; PhD, U. of Southern California, 1967.
Williams, Ray S. (1966) BA, Coker Coll., 1960; MA, PhD, Florida State U., 1962, 1965.
Wilson, William A., Humanities Professor of Literature and Folklore, (1984) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1962; PhD, Indiana U., 1974.

English as a Second Language

See Linguistics.

Estonian

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

European Studies

See Kennedy Center for International Studies, David M.

Evening School

See Division of Continuing Education.

Family Sciences

James M. Harper, Chair
1000 SWKT, PO Box 25308, (801) 378-2069

Bernard E. Poduska, Associate Chair
1000 SWKT, PO Box 25308, (801) 378-2069

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
2254 SFLC, PO Box 26797, (801) 378-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Family Sciences are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Family scientists examine theories, research, and practices related to the quality of life in families. The bachelor's degree, which prepares students to write and think analytically about family and society, can be a broad liberal arts major, can be a means to teacher certification, or can be a preprofessional degree for social sciences graduate study. The department's philosophy is that societal and community health centers around families.

Career Opportunities

Family sciences scholarship provides (1) frameworks by which human development and family behavior can be explained, (2) applications of principles and skills that contribute to quality family relationships and appropriate use of family resources, and (3) research that addresses optimal human development, the wise use of family resources, and the well-being of family members.

Home economics education is the emphasis leading to vocational teacher certification. Provision is also made for obtaining an occupational endorsement on the teaching certificate. This program is being revised. Please consult the advisement center (2254 SFLC) for details.

Students who wish a home economics emphasis without certifying to teach should choose the home and family emphasis.

Students with bachelor's degrees in nonteaching majors in family sciences and in the social sciences generally can be employed in settings where knowledge of human behavior, interpersonal competence, and personal use of resources is essential. However, graduate study is necessary for the most attractive opportunities within the profession. Family sciences graduates learn principles applicable to their personal as well as professional lives. The BS degree can be a springboard into graduate studies in the social sciences, law, and home economics.

Students who plan to pursue graduate work in family sciences or human development at BYU or other universities should take a statistics course. Students considering graduate work in marriage and family therapy are encouraged to consult with the graduate secretary of the department regarding the other electives that will best prepare them for admission to a graduate degree program. Generally, students will want to take statistics (and become familiar with computer statistical programs), research methods, family systems, abnormal psychology, and a pre-MFT seminar.

Beginning fall 1997, the early childhood education program will be administered by the School of Education.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Family Sciences
Emphases:
- Family Science
- Home and Family
- Home Economics Education
- Home Economics Education—Family Life
- Human Development

Minor Family Sciences
Gerontology

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Family Science and Human Development
MS Marriage and Family Therapy
PhD Family Science and Human Development
PhD Marriage and Family Therapy

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BS Family Sciences: Family Sciences Emphasis

(45 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. At least 15 hours of family sciences major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
3. Complete the following:
   FamSc 160, 210, 250, 300, 310.
4. Complete the following:
   FamSc 360, 371, 372, 460, 461.
5. Select one course from the following:
   FamSc 301, 302, 303.
6. Select 12 hours from the following:
   FamSc 304, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 318, 356, 363, 367, 395R, 399R, 403R, 404, 465.

   Note: Special admission is required for FamSc 399R. Students may not use more than 6 hours of it toward the major.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Family Sciences: Home and Family Emphasis

(41–42 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. At least 15 hours of family sciences major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
3. Complete the following:
   FamSc 160, 210, 250, 300, 310.
4. Complete the following:
   Famsc 150, 230, 371.
5. Select one course from the following:
   FamSc 304, 372.
6. Select two courses from the following:
   FamSc 301, 302, 303, 314, 360, 465.
7. Select three courses from the following:
   FamSc 335, 340.
   CITx 300.
   FSN 100.
   Any 3-hour clothing and textiles course.
   Any family science course not used above.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Family Sciences: Home Economics Education Emphasis (89–90 hours,* including certification hours)

At catalog press time requirements for the home economics emphasis were being restructured. Please see the advisement center for details. The new requirements total 65–69 hours.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. At least 15 hours of family sciences major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
3. Complete the following:
   FamSc 150, 160, 210, 230, 303, 304, 322, 335, 371, 377, 489.
   CITx 225, 261, 285, 386.
   FSN 100, 200, 344, 345.
   Nurs 288.
4. Select one course from the following:
   FamSc 250, 300.
5. Select one course from the following:
   CITx 110, 300, 487.
6. Select one course from the following:
   FamSc 340.
   FSN 374.
7. Complete the Professional Education Component (25–26 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

Note: A delay of ten years or more before completing graduation/certification requirements will necessitate taking additional courses to update subject matter.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Family Sciences: Home Economics Education—Family Life Emphasis (83–86 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. At least 15 hours of family sciences major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
3. Complete the following:
   FamSc 150, 160, 210, 303, 322, 377, 489.
   Nurs 288.
4. Select one course from the following:
   FamSc 250, 300.
5. Select 9 hours from the following:
   FamSc 301, 302, 460, 465.
   Psych 306.
6. Select one of the following options:
   a. Clothing and textiles area: complete the following:
      CITx 110, 261, 300.
      And select one course from the following:
      CITx 225, 285, 330, 386, 487.
   b. Family sciences area: select four courses from the following:
      FamSc 230, 304, 335, 371, 372, 404.
   c. Food science and nutrition area: complete the following:
      FSN 100, 200, 344, 345.

7. Select 14 additional hours from the following courses in an area *not* selected above:
   a. Clothing and textiles:
      CITx 110, 261, 300.
   b. Family sciences:
      FamSc 230, 304, 310, 314, 340, 360, 371, 372, 404.
   c. Food science and nutrition:
      FSN 100, 200, 344, 345, 374, 410.
8. Complete the Professional Education Component (25–26 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Family Sciences: Human Development Emphasis (42 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. At least 15 hours of family sciences major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
3. Students planning on graduate work in any social or behavioral science should take at least one semester of statistics.
4. Complete the following:
   FamSc 160, 210, 250, 300, 310, 312, 313, 315.
5. Select 18 hours from the following:
   ElEd 340.
   FamSc 301, 303, 311, 314, 317, 318, 371, 395R, 403R, 460, 461, 465.
   Psych 321.
   Stat 221.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Family Sciences (15 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   FamSc 160, 210, 371.
2. Select one course from the following:
   FamSc 301, 302, 303, 304.
3. Select one 3-hour family sciences course.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Gerontology (15 hours)

1. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.
2. Course list must receive approval from the director, Steven Heiner, 229-L RB.
3. Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.75.
4. Complete the following:
   Hlth 466.
5. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   Hlth 599R.
6. Select one course from the following:
   FamSc 363.
   Soc 365.
7. Complete 5–6 hours of the following:
   FamSc 363.
   FSN 100.
   Hlth 480, 599R.
   Psych 322.
   Soc 365.
   SocW 567.
8. Select 2–3 hours from the following for a total of 15 hours in the minor:
   Geog 501R.
   Hlth 320, 370, 460.
   RMYL 304.
   SocW 366.

Note: Students may propose other courses relating to their professional preparation and the field of gerontology.

Family Sciences (FamSc)

Undergraduate Courses

150. Principles of Home and Family Life. (3:3:0)
Examines home as a fundamental civilizing influence; integrates views of family science and home economics.

160. Introduction to Family Sciences. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also.
Basic concepts and principles of management and relationships.

210. Human Development. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Growth and development of the child from conception through adolescence; influences of family, peers, and schools.

230. Housing the Family. (3:3:0)
Social-psychological, economic, and political aspects of housing; selection and space planning.

250. Theories in Family Perspective. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 160, 210.
Introduction of major theoretical perspectives and of philosophical issues. Readings include representative papers applying theoretical and philosophic tenets.

300. Critical Inquiry and Research Methods. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 160, 210, or instructor's consent.
Philosophies of critical inquiry. Principles of designing, conducting, and reporting social science investigations.

301. Preparation for Marriage. (3:3:0)
Factors related to quality relationships, mate selection, and the transition into marriage.

302. Marriage Enhancement. (3:3:0)
Designed primarily for those who are married or engaged. Couples are encouraged to enroll together.

303. Parenting. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Theories and skills related to quality parent-child relationships.

304. Family Money Management 1. (3:3:0)
Principles in family science applied to family money management.

310. Advanced Human Development. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 210 or instructor's consent.
Evaluation of research on physical, mental, emotional, and social development.

311. Development in Infancy. (3:3:0)
Conception, prenatal development, pregnancy. Physical, cognitive, and social development of the first twenty-four months. Implications for guidance and care in the family.

312. Personality and Social Development. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 210 or instructor's consent.
Processes and sequences of personality and social development.

313. Cognitive Development. (3:3:0)
Development of mental abilities; effects of maturation and learning on memory, perception, attentional processes, intelligence, social cognition.

314. Moral Development. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 250.
Moral traditions, normative ethics, psychological theories, social contexts and theories of social and moral development.

315. Language Development. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 250 or 310 or instructor's consent.
Philosophical, social, intellectual, and emotional contexts of language acquisition and usage.

317. Subculture Effects on Child Development. (3:3:0)
Intellectual, social, emotional, moral, and physical factors.

318. (FamSc-Soc) Adolescent Development in the Family and Other Social Contexts. (3:3:0) F, W
Examining the developmental and social contexts of adolescents with emphasis on the importance of the family. Other contexts include peers, religion, community, schools, and cross-cultural issues.

321. Foundations of Developmentally Appropriate Practices in Programs for Young Children. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: FamSc 160, 210.
Historical, philosophical, organizational, and curricular issues related to developmentally appropriate practices in programs for young children.

322. Practicum in Developmentally Appropriate Practices. (2:0:12) F, W, on blk.; Su Prerequisite: FamSc 160, 210; FamSc 321 or concurrent enrollment; register semester in advance.
Initial practicum with young children to increase understanding of socialization and learning processes, to create meaningful learning opportunities, and to implement developmentally appropriate practices.

335. Household Equipment. (3:2:4)
Selection and performance of cookware and small and large household appliances; equipment function based on physical science principles; consumer use and energy conservation.

340. Family Meal Management. (2:1:3)
Organization and management of time, energy, finance, and nutrition in planning and preparing family meals. Lab required.

356. Interactional Interviewing Skills in Family Sciences. (3:3:1) F, W, Sp
Interactional counseling techniques, issues, and theories; skill development in dyadic and family interaction observation. Lab required.

360. Issues in Family Sciences. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 160.
Discussion of contemporary marriages and families, including sexuality, internal dynamics, and interpersonal relationships.

363. Family Life in the Middle and Later Years. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 160 or instructor's consent.
Adjustments to physical, emotional, social, and economic changes. Needs arising from changes in family relationships, living arrangements, and employment; retirement planning.

367. Women's Roles. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 160.
Educational, social, and economic context of woman's role in the family.

371. Work and Relationships in the Home. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 160.
Theoretical and practical implications of interplay between household work, family relationships, and human resource development.

372. Temporal Welfare in Families. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 160 or instructor's consent.
Assumptions, philosophy, and theory accounting for resource allocation, use, and meaning in families.

375. Family Economics and Aging. (3:3:0)
Economic challenges relating to the elderly and their families. Specifically designed for students seeking certification in gerontology.

377. Curriculum Development in Home Economics Education. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: concurrent registration in ScEd 276R.
Linkage between theory and practice in secondary classrooms.

395R. Special Topics in Family Sciences. (1–3:0:0 ea.)
Independent Study also. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Topics include the single adult in family and society, duolingual parenting, and readings in family sciences.

399R. Cooperative Education: Internship in Family Sciences. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: program coordinator's consent.
Supervised preprofessional experiences in community settings.

403R. Research Practicum. (3:1:2 ea.) Prerequisite: FamSc 300.
Research experience in a project directed by a faculty member.

404. Family Money Management 2. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 304.
Theory and practice in family science applied to family money management.

460. Theory and Research in Family Sciences. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 250, 300.
Analysis of principles used in family science. Emphasis on evidence supporting theories and applications.

461. The Family and the Law. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 160.
Legal environment of the family system, with emphasis on husband-wife and parent-child relationships, rights, and responsibilities.

465. Modifying Family Systems: Principles and Practices. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 160 and 210, or instructor's consent.
Analysis of family systems; methods of altering disturbing interaction patterns.

489. The Family and Public Policy. (3:3:0)
Investigation of public policy processes related to legislation and laws affecting home economics/home and family life. Funding and grantsmanship.

492R. Supervised Instructional Experience. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Course-related instructional experiences under supervision of faculty member.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

501R. Workshop in Family Sciences. (1–2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: 8 hours in family sciences or department chair's consent.
Intensive study in applying principles of specified family sciences, subject matter in early childhood education, child development, family relationships, family resource management, or marriage/family therapy.

510. Seminar in Intellectual Development. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 514.
Current theories and research on intellectual development.

511. Familial Influences on Children's Social Development. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 310 or equivalent.
Current theories and research on social development, peer relations, and behavior. Familial/parenting effects as moderated by beliefs, genetics, gender, social cognitions, culture, child guidance, interventions.

512. Emotional and Moral Development. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Research, theories, and educational implications; preschool through adulthood.

514. Theories of Human Development. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 310 or equivalent.
Models and concepts in dominant contemporary developmental theories.

520. Head Teachers Practicum in Preschool. (4:1:3) Prerequisite: FamSc 322, 323 or equivalent.
Head teaching proficiencies: guiding teachers of young children, techniques for involving parents, evaluating student teachers, assessing child performance, reviewing child guidance, and developing curriculum.

522R. Seminar in Early Childhood Education. (2:2:4 ea.) Prerequisite: FamSc 322 or equivalent.
Teacher skills: developing, applying, measuring, and evaluating effective techniques. Curriculum: selecting, organizing, and creating curriculum materials for young children.

540. Family Economics. (3:3:0)
Economic functioning of household; role of income, employment, and household production as determinants of family living level.

545. Family Financial Resource Management. (3:3:0) Sp; Su even yr. Prerequisite: FamSc 304 or equivalent.
Applying theories and principles in managing financial resources to meet needs of individuals and families.

550. (FamSc-Soc) Contemporary Family Theories. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 250, Soc 311, or equivalent.
Introduction to basic micro, macro, and processual approaches to study of the family; social and political theory on the family; philosophical issues and assumptions underlying family theory, research, and practice.

551. Fathering: Scholarship and Intervention. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Quality fathering across cultures and in varied family circumstances. Historical changes in fathering; challenges to good fathering; effective interventions with fathers.

555R. Beginning Practicum in Marriage and Family Therapy. (2–3:0:4 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: FamSc 650.
Introduction to clinical methods and experience in counseling individuals, premarital and marital dyads, and families. For marriage and family therapy majors only.

561. Seminar in Family Law. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: concurrent registration in FamSc 461.
Intensive investigation of issues and concepts influencing legal aspects of marriage and family life.

563. Theoretical Foundations of Family Systems. (3:3:0)
Systems theory and cybernetic approaches to family processes and epistemological issues.

564. Human and Family Development Over the Life Cycle. (3:3:0)
Interrelationships between individuals and family life cycle development, including modifying family processes and structure over time.

565. Instructional Processes in Family Sciences. (3:3:0)
Methods and curriculum of design, development, implementation, management, and evaluation related to family sciences and home economics curricula.

566R. Preparation for Teaching Practicum. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Developing curriculum in preparation for teaching an undergraduate course in family sciences. Approval of curriculum required before enrolling in FamSc 567R.

567R. Practicum in Family Life Education. (1:1:0 ea.) Prerequisite: FamSc 565, 566, or instructor's consent.
Supervised experience teaching family living courses in a university setting.

570. Paradigms in Family Process and Analysis. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 371 or equivalent.
Alternative perspectives on family management, governance, and participation, with emphasis on modernist/management vs. familial orientations affecting leadership, parenting, autonomy and choice, altruism and individualism.

590R. Readings in Family Sciences. (1–2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: FamSc 310 or 460 and instructor's consent.
Discussions and reports of current readings.

595R. Special Topics in Family Sciences. (1–2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: for family sciences major, FamSc 310 or 460 and instructor's consent.
Individual study for qualified students.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Family Sciences Faculty

Professors

Burr, Wesley R. (1969) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1961; PhD, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1967.
Crane, D. Russell (1983) BA, California State U., Hayward, 1975; MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1979.
Draper, Thomas W. (1982) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1973; PhD, Emory U., 1976.
Feinauer, Leslie L. (1984) BS, Brigham Young U., 1968; MS, U. of Utah, 1969; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1981.
Galbraith, Richard C. (1975) BS, Brigham Young U., 1971; MS, PhD, Northwestern U., 1973, 1975.
Harper, James M. (1979) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1974, 1976; PhD, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1979.
Larsen, Jean M. (1963) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1960; PhD, U. of Utah, 1972.
Larson, Jeffry H. (1987) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1974; PhD, Texas Tech. U., 1980.
Mead, D. Eugene (1967) BA, U. of Oregon, 1956; MA, San Jose State Coll., 1963; EdD, U. of Oregon, 1967.
Olson, Terrance D., (1974) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1969; PhD, Florida State U., 1972.
Peery, J. Craig (1980) BA, Columbia Coll., 1970; MA, PhD, Columbia U., 1973, 1973.
Price, Alvin H. (1966) BS, Brigham Young U., 1960; MA, PhD, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1963, 1966.
Stahmann, Robert F. (1975) BA, Macalester Coll., 1963; MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1965, 1967.
Watson, Wendy L. (1993) BA, U. of Hawaii, 1973; MS, Brigham Young U., 1975; PhD, U. of Calgary, Canada, 1984.

Associate Professors

Barlow, Brent Alvin (1977) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1968; PhD, Florida State U., 1971.
Beutler, Ivan F. (1981) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1969, 1970; MS, PhD, Purdue U., 1972, 1974.
Christensen, Maribeth (1996) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1980, 1983; PhD, Utah State U., 1995.
Dollahite, David C. (1993) BA, MS, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1985; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1988.

Hart, Craig H. (1992) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1980, 1982; PhD, Purdue U., 1987.
Hawkins, Alan J. (1990) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1984; PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1990.
Holman, Thomas B. (1985) BA, Utah State U.; MREd, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1976, 1981.
Klein, Shirley R. (1986) BS, U. of Arizona, 1966; MS Brigham Young U., 1984, PhD, U. of Utah, 1990.
McKee, Trevor R. (1974) BA, MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1962, 1973.
Poduska, Bernard E. (1983) BA, MA, California State Coll., Fullerton, 1966, 1968; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1983.
Robinson, Clyde C. (1990) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1976; PhD, U. of North Carolina, Greensboro, 1982.
Rowley, Maxine Lewis (1979) BA, Brigham Young U., 1960; BA, U. of Utah, 1974; MS, Utah State U., 1979, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1989.
Scoresby, A. Lynn (1970) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1966; PhD, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1969.

Assistant Professors

Bahr, Kathleen S.(1970) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1968, 1970; PhD, Michigan State U., 1982.
Butler, Mark H. (1996) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1986, 1990; PhD, Texas Tech U., 1996.
Garrison, Carolyn (1970) BS, Oregon State U., 1961; MS, Iowa State U. of Science and Technology, 1971; PhD, Purdue U., 1978.
McCoy, J. Kelly (1996) BA, MS, Utah State U., 1984, 1987; PhD, U. of Georgia, 1992.
Olsen, Susanne Frost (1993) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1981; PhD, U. of Georgia, 1992.
Porter, Christin L. (1996) BS, Brigham Young U., 1990; MS, PhD, Purdue U., 1992, 1996.

Emeriti

Allred, G. Hugh (1966) BA, MA,Brigham Young U., 1957, 1960; EdD, U. of Oregon, 1966.
Barlow, Frances P. (1957) BS, MEd, Utah State U., 1933, 1938.
Bastian, Beth S. (1964) BS, Utah State U., 1950; MS, Kansas State U., 1955.
Brasher, Ruth E. (1969) BS, Brigham Young U., 1951; MA, U. of Maryland, 1959; PhD, Utah State U., 1969.
Cahoon, Owen W. (1970) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1963, 1964; DEd, Pennsylvania State U., 1970.
Cannon, Kenneth Lynn (1956) BS, Brigham Young U., 1935; MS, PhD, Iowa State U. of Science and Technology, 1948, 1954.
Devey, Ottella T. (1959) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1959.
Edwards, Kay P. (1974) BS, M.S, Utah State U., 1962, 1964; PhD, Cornell U., 1969.
Ellsworth, Carol (1969) BS, Colorado State U., 1951; MA, Columbia U., 1964; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1980.
Hoopes, Margaret H. (1970) BS, Ricks Coll., 1953; MS, Brigham Young U., 1962; PhD, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1969.
Knowles, Elmer M. (1962) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1949, 1950; PhD, Cornell U., 1952.
Lewis, Stella D. (1956) BS, MHE, Brigham Young U., 1938, 1966.
Moss, J. Joel (1961) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1948, 1949; PhD, U. of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1954.
Porter, Blaine R., (1955) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1947, 1949; PhD, Cornell U., 1952.
Taylor, Barbara J. (1957) BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1960, 1971.
Vance, Barbara Jane (1967) BA, U. of Utah, 1956; MA, Brigham Young U., 1959; PhD, Stanford U., 1967.

Film

See Theatre and Media Arts.

Fine Arts (FnArt)

270R. European Fine Arts. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Art, design, music, and theatre of host countries and other European cultures.

Finnish

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Food Science and Nutrition

Lynn V. Ogden, Chair
S-221 ESC, PO Box 25184, (801) 378-3912

College of Biology and Agriculture Advisement Center
380 WIDB, PO Box 25189, (801) 378-3042

Admission to Degree Program

Some degree programs in the Department of Food Science and Nutrition carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the department for specific details.

The Discipline

As the world population grows, scientists trained in dietetics, food science, and nutrition will be in great demand. Qualified, intellectually motivated graduates with basic nutrition and food science skills are urgently needed to provide a nutritious, high-quality, and safe diet for the earth's inhabitants.

Career Opportunities

Careers vary from dietitians to positions in the food industry or as a research scientist. Students interested in premedical or predental work can prepare for professional schools with a major in either food science or nutritional sciences.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS	Dietetics
BS	Food Science
BS	Nutritional Science
Minor	Food Science and Nutrition

Coordinated Program in Dietetics: The last students in the coordinated program were accepted in March 1996. This class will graduate in 1998. The didactic program continues, but with limited enrollment.

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see the College of Biology and Agriculture Advisement Center.

Note: For the molecular biology program, see the Molecular Biology section of this catalog.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS	Food Science
MS	Molecular Biology (collegewide interdisciplinary degree)
MS	Nutrition

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BS Dietetics (86.5–96.5 hours*)

Following prerequisite courses, the Didactic Program in Dietetics (DPD) consists primarily of dietetics course work at the junior and senior level. It is approved by the American Dietetic Association (ADA), Commission on Accreditation/Approval for Dietetic Education. Following graduation, students must gain acceptance into and complete a nine- to twelve-month dietetic internship (DI) or approved practice program (APP) to qualify for the national examination required for Registered Dietitian (RD) status.

Major Requirements

1. Acceptance into the program. Effective February 1997, applicants must have at least 300 hours of work and/or volunteer experience in a dietetics-related area to be considered for acceptance.
2. No D credit in required supporting courses and no grade lower than a B– in any food science and nutrition course will be counted toward the major.
3. Complete the following core requirements:
   FSN 100, 200, 290, 300, 344, 345, 356, 374, 375, 400, 401, 424, 435, 440, 445, 458, 466, 475, 490, 491.
4. Select one of the following options:
   Either Chem 101, 152, 281.
   Or Chem 105, 106, 107, 351, 352, 481.

5. Complete the following:
   Math 110.
   Mcbio 221.
   Psych 111.
   Stat 221.
   Zool 260, 261, 361.
   Acc 200.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Soc 323, 329.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Chem 103.
   Mcbio 222.

Recommended Courses

BusM 300, 340.
Mcbio 361, 391.
FSN 410, 470.
Comms 201.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Food Science (75 hours*)

Food science is the application of chemistry, microbiology, and engineering to the production, processing, distribution, evaluation, and use of food. The many facets of food science—research, product development, processing, packaging, quality assurance, and marketing—create unique and challenging opportunities in industry, academia, and government. The food science curriculum is approved by the Institute of Food Technologists.

Major Requirements

1. No more than 3 hours of D credit in required supporting courses and no grade lower than C– in any food science and nutrition course will be counted toward the major.
2. Complete the following core requirements:
   FSN 200, 344, 345, 350, 360, 362, 450, 461, 462, 465.
3. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 107, 281, 351, 352, 353 (1 hour).
   Comms 150.
   Engl 316.
   Math 112, 113.
   Mcbio 221, 222, 361.
   Phscs 105.
   Stat 221.

Recommended Courses

Consult with a faculty advisor before selecting:
AnSc 328.
AgHrt 240.
Chem 223.
Econ 110.
FSN 100, 191.
Phscs 106, 107.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Nutritional Science (73 hours*)

This degree provides excellent preparation for those individuals in preprofessional programs (e.g., premedicine, predentistry, prelaw) or for an advanced degree (MS, PhD) in nutrition or biological sciences.

Major Requirements

1. No more than 3 hours of D credit in required supporting courses and no grade lower than C– in any food science and nutrition course will be counted toward the major.
2. Complete the following core requirements:
   FSN 100, 200, 305, 344, 345, 435, 494R (2 hours).
3. After consulting with a faculty advisor, select 8 hours from the following:
   FSN 350, 400, 410, 424, 459, 470, 531, 532.
   Hlth 478.
   Mcbio 391.
   Zool 371, 372, 373, 374, 561, 565.
4. Complete the following:
   Biol 130.
   Chem 105, 106, 107, 351, 352, 353 (1 hour), 481.
   Mcbio 221.
   Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108.
   Stat 221.
5. Select one course from the following:
   Math 112, 119.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Zool 361, 460.

Recommended Courses

Chem 223.
Zool 380.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Food Science and Nutrition (16 hours*)

Students may select specific classes to tailor the minor to meet specific needs. See a department advisor for assistance.

Select 16 hours from the following:
FSN 100, 200, 305, 344, 345, 350, 360, 362, 410, 424, 435, 450, 461, 494R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Food Science and Nutrition (FSN)

Undergraduate Courses

100. Essentials of Human Nutrition. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also.
Food-oriented study of nutrition facts and principles as a basis for dietary choices; consequences of choices; scientifically examining controversial topics.

191. Introduction to Food Science. (1:1:0) F
Guest lectures and exposure to vocations in food science.

200. Nutrient Metabolism. (3:3:0) F, Sp Prerequisite: FSN 100 and organic chemistry, or concurrent registration.
Nutrient-oriented study of nutrition facts and principles; metabolic consequences of nutrient intakes; techniques of communicating valid nutrition concepts.

203. (FSN-AgHrt-AnSc) Latin American Food Production and Nutrition. (1:Arr.:0) F
Historical and present indigenous agricultural and nutritional practices throughout Latin America; successes, failures, problems, and solutions.

290. Introduction to Dietetics. (1:1:0) F
Guest lectures and introduction to specialties in dietetics.

300. Clinical Nutrition 1. (4:4:0) F Prerequisite: FSN 200; physiology, biochemistry, or dietetics major status.
Nutritional assessment and dietary modification for treatment of disease states.

305. Clinical Nutrition Survey. (4:4:0) W Prerequisite: FSN 200; physiology, biochemistry, or nutritional science major status.
Overview of nutritional assessment, dietary modification for treatment of disease states, critical care assessment and intervention, and nutritional needs of the elderly.

†Animal Science 328. Meat Processing Methods. (3:2:3)

344. Introduction to Food Chemistry. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Mcbio 221, organic chemistry, and concurrent registration in FSN 345.
Chemical and physical properties of foods relative to preparation and processing.

345. Introduction to Food Chemistry Laboratory. (1:0:3) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: concurrent registration in FSN 344.

350. Food Analysis. (4:2:6) F Prerequisite: Chem 351, 352, 353; FSN 344, 345.
Principles, methods, and instrumentation involved in physical and chemical analysis of raw and processed foods.

356. Clinical Nutrition 2. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: FSN 300 and instructor's consent.
Nutrition in the life cycle, critical care assessment, intervention, and evaluation.

360. Techniques for Sensory Evaluation. (2:1:3) F Prerequisite: Stat 221.
Basic principles and practical techniques for sensory evaluation; planning and executing sensory experiments.

†Microbiology 361. Food and Dairy Microbiology. (3:2:3)

362. Food Commodity Processing. (4:3:3) F Prerequisite: Phscs 105, Mcbio 221, 222.
Post-harvest characteristics and physiology of raw food commodities. Processing characteristics of each commodity, including cereals, fruits, vegetables, eggs, meats, and milk.

374. Food Production Management. (2:2:0) F Prerequisite: FSN 200, 344, 345.
Managing processes and techniques of quantity food production in commercial and institutional food systems.

375. Food Production Management Laboratory. (2:0:8) F, W Prerequisite: FSN 374 or concurrent registration.

399R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
On-the-job experience.

400. Community Nutrition. (3:3:4) F Prerequisite: FSN 300 or instructor's consent.
Public health nutrition applied to community programs.

401. Community Nutrition Fieldwork. (0.5:0:2) F Prerequisite: FSN 300 and concurrent registration in 400.
Experience in public health and community nutrition programs.

410. Sports Nutrition. (2:2:0) F, W Prerequisite: FSN 100.
Basic principles and practical applications for physical education and athletics.

424. Maternal and Child Nutrition and Health. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: FSN 300 or instructor's consent.
Nutrition during pregnancy, lactation, early infancy, and childhood.

435. Nutritional Biochemistry. (4:4:0) F Prerequisite: FSN 200; Zool 361 or 460; biochemistry or equivalent.
Metabolic interrelationships among nutrients.

440. Teaching Methods in Dietetics. (3:3:0) F
Learning settings, learning theory; curriculum development and dissemination for dietetics majors.

445. Food Service Systems. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: FSN 374.
Input, transformation, and output in the food service system; emphasizes procurement, production, service, and sanitation.

450. Food Chemistry. (4:4:0) W Prerequisite: FSN 344, 345.
Chemistry of chief components of food and effects of processing and storage on them.

458. Management in Dietetics. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: FSN 445.
Management cycle and theory applied to clinical and administrative dietetics.

459. Clinical Pharmacology. (2:2:0) F, W Prerequisite: biochemistry, Zool 361, or equivalent.
Overview of pharmacological principles of therapeutics as applied to clinically significant pathophysiological states.

461. Food Process Engineering. (4:3:3) W Prerequisite: Phscs 105.
Principles of fluid statics, fluid dynamics, heat transfer and psychromatics; unit operations including thermal processing, frying, irradiation, refrigeration, freezing, and dehydration in food processing.

462. Food Regulations and Quality Assurance. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: Stat 221, Mcbio 221, 222.
Federal food regulations and methods used in quality assurance during commercial food production.

465. New Food Product Development. (3:1:6) F Prerequisite: Mcbio 361, FSN 360, 362, 450, 461, or concurrent registration.
Ingredients and methods used to develop new foods. Senior capstone project.

466. Advanced Dietetics Practice. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: FSN 356, 445.
Skills development in clinical and administrative dietetics emphasizing critical care nutrition and financial control in food service.

470. Nutritional Pharmacology. (2:2:0) F Prerequisite: organic chemistry course or instructor's consent.
Objective analysis of nutraceutical approach to therapeutic and nutritional claims made for nutrients, herbs, and other natural products. Nutritional and pharmacological viewpoints.

475. Research Methods in Dietetics. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: concurrent registration in FSN 466.
Research techniques in a variety of dietetics practice areas.

†Chemistry 481. Biochemistry. (4:4:0)

490. Professionalism Seminar. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: senior status in dietetics program.
Issues in professional practice.

491. Internship Preparation. (1:1:0) F Prerequisite: senior status in dietetics program.
Selecting internship sites and preparing dietetic internship application packet.

492. Fieldwork in Food Science and Nutrition. (1–8:0:24) Sp Prerequisite: 12–15 credit hours in food science and nutrition and instructor's consent.

494R. Undergraduate Research in Food Science and Nutrition. (1–3:0:9 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's and department chair's consent; 14 hours of food science and nutrition courses.
Applying the scientific method (literature search, hypothesis formulation, data gathering, and analysis) to conduct original research under direction of faculty advisor.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

501R. (FSN-AgHrt-AnSc) Village Agriculture and Nutrition in Latin America. (1:Arr.:0 ea.) W Prerequisite: experience in Latin America and/or issues relative to the seminar.

Problems, successes, failures and challenges facing those who work in agricultural research, training, and development related to small-scale farmers.

520R. Supervised Practice Experience. (2–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: acceptance into dietetics internship.

Supervised practice experience in clinical, management, and community dietetics settings.

531. Advanced Human Nutrition 1. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: FSN 435 or equivalent.

Nutritional status and basis of recommendations for carbohydrates, lipids, protein, and energy.

532. Advanced Human Nutrition 2. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: FSN 435 or equivalent.

Nutritional status and basis of recommendations for vitamins, minerals, and water.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Food Science and Nutrition Faculty

Professors

Hill, John M. (1971) BA, PhD, Rice U., 1961, 1965.
Huber, Clayton S., Dean (1976) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1962, 1963; PhD, Purdue U., 1968.
Rowe, Mark J. (1987) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1968, 1972.
Woolley, Bruce H. (1977) BS, U. of Utah, 1965; PharmD, U. of Southern California, 1972.

Associate Professors

Brown, Lora Beth (1983) BS, Iowa State U., 1965; MS, Cornell U., 1967; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1982.
Christensen, Merrill J. (1982) BS, Brigham Young U., 1977; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1982.
Franz, Kay B. (1968) BS, U. of California, Berkeley, 1958; MS, Brigham Young U., 1968; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1978.
Nyland, Nora K. (1982) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1974, 1981; PhD, Kansas State U., 1989.
Ogden, Lynn V. (1984) BA, MS, Utah State U., 1966, 1967; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1973.
Pike, Oscar A. (1986) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1980, 1982; PhD, Purdue U., 1986.

Assistant Professor

Steele, Frost M. (1996) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1987; PhD, Purdue U., 1990.

Assistant Teaching Professors

Fullmer, Susan (1997) BA, MS, U. of Utah, 1986, 1989.
McGuire, Diana L. (1988) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1974, 1976.

Instructor

Mitchell, Ana W. (1996) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1993, 1996.

Adjunct Faculty

Anderson, Austin, Eliason, Falk, Hawkes, Hunter, McClellan, Nielsen, Rackley, Radford, Scott, Thorne, Ware.

Emeriti

Bates, Winifred W. (1977) BS, Utah State U., 1944; MJ, U. of California, Berkeley, 1965.
Call, Ara O. (1965) BS, Iowa State U. of Science and Technology, 1933; MS, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1944.
Doxey, Ruth T. Walker (1972) BS, U. of Alberta, Canada, 1941; MS, Washington State U., 1943; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1972.
Johnson, John Hal (1969) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1957; PhD, Ohio State U., 1963.
Turner, Lavell G. W. (1963) BS, Brigham Young U., 1954; MS, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1959.

French and Italian

Madison U. Sowell, Chair
4002 JKHB, PO Box 26116, (801) 378-2542

College of Humanities Advisement Center
3078 JKHB, PO Box 26101, (801) 378-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of French and Italian are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

The study of French or Italian language and literature sharpens analytical and communicative skills. Students develop proficiency in listening, reading, writing, and speaking, and they learn to use literature as a means to discover and broaden their understanding of culturally specific as well as universal issues and values.

Career Opportunities

Italian and French are valuable research and communication tools for students in music, art, history, European studies, international relations, library science, and comparative literature. Many have chosen a major or minor in Italian or French in addition to a second major or minor in an area such as accounting or business management, or as preparation for professional programs in public administration, business administration, organizational behavior, dentistry, law, or medicine.

Many of our students have opted for a career in government service, working with an embassy, the State Department, the CIA, and other government agencies.

Other students have gone into travel and tourism, working with tour agencies, airlines, major hotel chains, or resort communities.

The computer industry also provides employment opportunity for our graduates. Many computer companies have expanded into foreign markets and hire people who can translate computer and software instruction and sales publications in a foreign language.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA	French
BA	French Teaching
BA	Italian
Minor	French
	French Teaching
	Italian

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA	French Studies
MA	Language Acquisition (French)

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Internships Abroad. Eight-week summer work abroad is available in France, Belgium, and Switzerland, where interns receive financial compensation while performing such services as clerking in grocery and department stores, doing accounting in banks, and serving as *au pairs*. Students may enroll for cooperative education credit (399R) and conversation credit (211R, 311R, or 411). The internship proves invaluable in strengthening language skills.

Oral Proficiency Interview. All *majors* and *teaching minors* are required to enroll in Fren 491 or Ital 491 and have an oral proficiency interview (OPI) during the senior year. The results of the OPI are recorded on the student's transcript. The minimum rating of *Advanced* is required of all *teaching* majors and minors. Appointments for the interviews are made through the department secretary.

When it is necessary to strengthen oral proficiency, students are offered various opportunities: conversation courses, the Foreign Language Student Residence, Study Abroad programs, summer internships abroad, and support materials in the Humanities Learning Resource Center, such as tapes, videos, and satellite broadcasts.

Instruction. All courses are taught in the target language unless indicated otherwise in this catalog.

French

General Information

Language Credit by Examination. A student enrolled full-time at BYU whose native language is English may receive credit by special examination for French for which he or she has acquired the equivalent skill or knowledge. However, this is possible only if no university credit has been given through AP, CLEP, or transfer of equivalent credit from another university or other institutions.

The French Language for Credit Examination is administered by the French and Italian Department only twice a year: in November during fall semester and in March during winter semester. Details about this examination will be given by the student's Fren 201, 202, or 321 teacher. Please note that students can test out of classes as follows, depending on a student's status:

Freshmen who start with French 201 can test out of:
Fren 101, 102, and 211R (10 hours).

Freshmen or returned missionaries from Quebec or Creole-speaking missions, etc., who start with Fren 202 (this class fulfills the GE requirement for returned missionaries from the above missions) can test out of:
Fren 101, 102, 201, and 211R (14 hours)

Returned missionaries from France, Belgium, Switzerland, etc., can test out of:
Fren 101, 102, 201, 211R, and 311R (16 hours)
For returned missionaries to be eligible to take the exam, they need to be enrolled in Fren 321.

Note: The above five classes are *not* part of a French minor. The first French minor class requirement is Fren 321.

Note: Fren 340 fulfills the GE Foreign Language option for returned missionaries from France, Belgium, and Switzerland. Fren 321 does not.

Accelerated Program. Beginning: The department offers an accelerated course in beginning French (101 and 102) every fall and winter semester. These courses are offered on the block.

Foreign Language Student Residence. An excellent alternative to or preparation for foreign residency is offered through the Foreign Language Student Residence, where participants speak, eat, and live with a *French only* rule. This program, with numerous cultural opportunities, is available each semester to women and men who have completed at least one year of college French. Residents may also receive 2 hours of conversation credit per semester by enrolling in a specially designated section of 211R or 311R.

Study Abroad Programs. All students of French are encouraged to participate in a Study Abroad program. Study Abroad typically offers during spring term a language and civilization program in Paris, France. It provides an excellent opportunity for developing language proficiency and better understanding of the history and culture of France. Study Abroad also offers a semester-long program in Paris emphasizing general education courses.

BA French (45–51 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. At least 15 major hours must be completed in residence at BYU.
2. No D credit is allowed in major or minor courses.
3. Complete a minor (approximately 16–21 hours) or 15 hours of course work in an area approved by the major advisor. Courses must be approved before the senior year.
4. Complete the following core requirements:
   Fren 321, 322, 326, 340, 420, 421.
5. Select four courses from the following:
   Fren 438, 439, 441, 442, 443, 444, 495R.

   Note: Only *one* registration of 495R will count toward the major requirements.
6. Complete Fren 491 and have an oral proficiency interview (OPI) during the senior year. The rating will be recorded on the student's transcript. The desired minimum OPI rating is *Advanced*.

Recommended

Students who need to strengthen oral skills should enroll in Fren 211R and 311R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA French Teaching (61–62 hours,* including certification hours)

1. At least 18 major hours must be completed in residence at BYU.
2. No D credit is allowed in major or minor courses.
3. A teaching minor is not required for certification. However, it is strongly recommended.
4. Complete the following:
   Fren 321, 322, 326, 340, 377, 378, 420, 421.
5. Select four courses from the following:
   Fren 438, 439, 441, 442, 443, 444, 495R.

   Note: Only *one* registration of 495R will count toward the major requirements.
6. Complete Fren 491 and have an oral proficiency interview (OPI) before enrolling in Fren 378. The rating will be recorded on the student's transcript. The required minimum OPI rating is *Advanced*; exceptions are subject to departmental approval.
7. Complete the Professional Education Component (25–26 hours: see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor French (18 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Fren 321, 322, 326, 340, 420, 421.
2. At least 9 minor hours must be taken in residence at BYU.
3. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor French Teaching (21 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Fren 321, 326, 340, 377, 378, 420, 421, 491.

   Note: Fren 377 must be taken before student teaching.
2. At least 12 minor hours must be taken in residence at BYU.
3. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

French (Fren)

Undergraduate Courses

101. First-Year French, Part 1. (4:5:2)
Development of the four language skills: understanding, speaking, reading, and writing.

102. First-Year French, Part 2. (4:5:2) Prerequisite: Fren 101 or equivalent.
Continuation of French 101.

121. Intensive Reading in French. (4:4:0) For students with little or no French.
Reading for research purposes, including reading skills in area of student's specialization or interest. Graduate students will be graded pass/fail. Undergraduates will receive letter grades. Conducted in English.

122. Intensive Reading in French. (4:4:0) Prerequisite: Fren 121.
Continuation of French 121.

201. Intermediate French, Part 1. (4:5:2) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Fren 102 or equivalent.
Reading, writing, conversation, vocabulary building, and review of grammar.

202. Intermediate French, Part 2. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Fren 201 or equivalent.
Final course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries); extensive reading in French literature and culture.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Fren 102 or equivalent. May be taken concurrently with Fren 201.

217. (Fren-Ital) French and Italian Cinema. (3:3:2)
Background for understanding and appreciating the best of motion picture art in France and Italy. Language of instruction is English; no knowledge of French or Italian required.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Fren 211R or instructor's consent. May be taken concurrently with 340.

321. Advanced Grammar. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Fren 202 or equivalent.
Systematic review of French grammar and syntax.

322. Advanced Composition. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Fren 321.
Expository writing (narration, description, dialogue, explication de texte, etc.).

326. French Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: Fren 321.
Theoretical and practical phonetics.

340. Introduction to Literary Analysis. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Fren 202 or equivalent. Recommended: Fren 321.
How to read French prose, drama, and poetry and apply methods of literary criticism. Capstone course for GE Foreign Language requirement for returned missionaries.

345. Francophone Culture. (3:1:3) Prerequisite: Fren 102 or equivalent.
Study Abroad only.

377. French Language Teaching Procedures 1. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: Fren 321, 326; 420 or 421; ScEd 276R for students planning to certify.
Mastery of teaching skills specific to foreign language instruction in beginning courses. Lectures, demonstrations, practice in instruction. Conducted in French and English.

378. French Language Teaching Procedures 2. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: Fren 377; 491 with minimum rating of *Advanced* on the proficiency exam.
Mastery of teaching skills specific to foreign language instruction in intermediate courses. Materials development, use of instructional media, testing, microteaching.

399R. Cooperative Education: French Language Field Experience. (1–6:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: program coordinator's consent.
On-the-job experience in French.

411. Fourth-Year Conversation. (2:2:1) Prerequisite: Fren 311R or equivalent.

420. French Civilization from the Beginning to 1715. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Fren 340.
Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions to the death of Louis XIV. Prerequisite to Fren 441, 442, 495R.

421. French Civilization from 1715 to the Present. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Fren 340.
Historical survey of institutions, fine arts, and social conditions. Prerequisite to Fren 439, 443, 444, 495R.

483. Francophone Literature 1. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Fren 340.
Readings from major French-speaking writers from Africa and the Caribbean.

439. Francophone Literature 2. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Fren 340.
Readings from major French-speaking writers from Canada and/or other countries outside France, such as Switzerland and French Polynesia.

441. French Literature—Middle Ages and Sixteenth Century. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Fren 340, 420.
Readings in hagiography, epic, romance, contes, fabliaux, lais, and lyric poetry.

442. French Literature—Seventeenth and Eighteenth Centuries. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Fren 340, 420.
Origins and concept of French classicism and development of "Movement Philosophique."

443. French Literature of the Nineteenth Century. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Fren 340, 421.
Significant literary movements (romanticism, symbolism, realism, and naturalism) that shaped poetry, the novel, and theatre during the nineteenth century.

444. French Literature of the Twentieth Century. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Fren 340, 421.
Readings in the modern novel, existentialism, theatre of the absurd, and the nouveau roman.

490R. Individual Study in French. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Assignments to fit individual needs of the advanced student. Not accepted for major or minor.

491. Senior Oral Proficiency Evaluation. (0:0:0)
Required of all majors and teaching minors during the senior year.

495R. Senior Seminar in French. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Fren 340, 420, 421.
In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism; content varies; requires research and writing.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:0:0 ea.)

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Italian

General Information

Language Credit by Examination. A student enrolled full-time at BYU whose native language is English may receive credit by special examination for Italian for which he or she has acquired the equivalent skill or knowledge. However, this is possible only if no university credit has been given through AP, CLEP, or transfer of equivalent credit from another university or other institutions.
The Italian Language for Credit Examination is administered by the French and Italian Department only twice a year: in November during fall semester and in March during winter semester. Details about this examination will be given by the student's Ital 321 teacher.

Returned missionaries from Italy can test out of:
Ital 101, 102, 201, 211R, and 311R (16 hours)

For returned missionaries to be eligible to take the exam, they need to be enrolled in Ital 321.

Note: The above five classes are *not* part of the Italian minor. The first class for the Italian minor is Ital 321.

Note: Ital 340 fulfills the GE Foreign Language option. Ital 321 does not.

Foreign Language Student Residence. In addition to BYU's spring or summer term in Italy, intensive "live-in" experience is available in the Foreign Language Student Residence. Besides taking regular courses in the department, students participate in lectures, discussions, films, and related extracurricular activities under the supervision of native Italian head residents. Vital to the success of the program is the 24-hour *Italian only* rule whereby students use Italian language as their only means of communication while they are at home. Participants may receive 2 credit hours per semester by enrolling in Ital 211R or 311R.

Study Abroad Program. All students of Italian are encouraged to participate in a Study Abroad program in Italy offered spring or summer term (usually every other year). This program provides excellent opportunities for developing language proficiency and understanding the rich culture of Italy.

BA Italian (45–51 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. At least 15 major hours must be completed in residence at BYU.
2. No D credit is allowed in major or minor courses.
3. Complete a minor (approximately 16–21 hours) or 15 hours of course work in an area approved by the major advisor. Courses must be approved before the senior year.
4. Complete the following core requirements:
   Ital 321, 322, 326, 340.
5. Select six courses from the following:
   Ital 420, 421, 441, 442, 443, 444, 460, 495R.
6. Complete Ital 491 and have an oral proficiency interview (OPI) during the senior year. The rating will be recorded on the student's transcript. The desired minimum OPI rating is *Advanced*.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Italian (18 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Ital 321, 322, 326, 340.
2. Select two courses from the following:
   Ital 420, 421, 441, 442, 443, 444, 460, 495R.
3. At least 9 minor hours must be completed in residence at BYU.
4. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Italian (Ital)

Undergraduate Courses

101. First-Year Italian, Part 1. (4:5:2)
Daily development of the four language skills: understanding, speaking, reading, and writing.

102. First-Year Italian, Part 2. (4:5:2) Prerequisite: Ital 101 or equivalent.
Continuation of Ital 101.

201. Intermediate Italian 1. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Ital 102 or two years of high school Italian or equivalent.
Reading, writing, conversation, vocabulary building, and review of grammar.

202. Intermediate Italian 2. (3:3:0)
Final course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries); extensive reading in Italian literature and culture.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Ital 102 or equivalent. May be taken concurrently with Ital 201.

217. (Fren-Ital) French and Italian Cinema. (3:3:2)
Background for understanding and appreciating the best of motion picture art in France and Italy. Language of instruction is English; no knowledge of French or Italian required.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Ital 211R or instructor's consent. May be taken concurrently with Ital 340.

321. Advanced Grammar. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ital 202 or equivalent.
Intensive review of grammar; vocabulary building.

322. Advanced Composition. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ital 321 or equivalent.
Italian syntax and composition.

326. Italian Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ital 321 or equivalent.
General rules of pronunciation. Introduction to history of Italian language.

340. Introduction to Italian Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ital 202 or equivalent. Recommended: Ital 321.
Basic literary concepts and terms coupled with readings of Italian works from various genres and periods. Capstone course for GE Foreign Language requirement for returned missionaries.

399R. Cooperative Education: Italian Language Field Experience. (1–6:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: program coordinator's consent.
On-the-job experience in Italian.

411. Fourth-Year Conversation. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: residency in the Foreign Language Student Residence.

420. Italian Civilization from the Beginning to 1600. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ital 340.
Survey of institutions, fine arts, and great writers that shaped the history of Italy from the barbarian invasions through the Renaissance.

421. Italian Civilization from 1600 to the Modern Era. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ital 340.
Survey of institutions, fine arts, and great writers that shaped the history of Italy from the Baroque period to the modern era.

441. Italian Literature of the Late Middle Ages and Renaissance. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ital 340.

442. Italian Literature of the Baroque and Enlightenment Periods. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ital 340.

443. Italian Literature of the Romantic Period. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ital 340.

444. Italian Literature of the Twentieth Century. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ital 340.

460. Dante's *Divine Comedy*. (3:3:0)
Intensive examination of Dante's major opus. Lectures in English with bilingual text. Italian majors and minors must read the work in the original for credit.

490R. Individual Study in Italian. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Assignments to fit individual needs of the advanced student. Not accepted for major or minor.

491. Senior Oral Proficiency Evaluation. (0:0:0)
Required of all majors during the senior year.

495R. Senior Seminar in Italian. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ital 340 or instructor's consent.
In-depth study of a limited area of literature, language, or criticism; content varies; requires research and writing.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:0:0 ea.)

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Romanian (Rom)

Undergraduate Courses

101. First-Year Romanian, Part 1. (4:5:2)
Basic language skills.

102. First-Year Romanian, Part 2. (4:5:2)
Basic language skills.

201. Second-Year Romanian. (4:5:2) Prerequisite: Rom 102 or equivalent experience.
Conversation vocabulary building; reading and writing skills, emphasizing writing.

211R. Second-Year Romanian Conversation. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: Rom 102 or equivalent experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

311R. Third-Year Romanian Conversation. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: Rom 211R or equivalent experience.
Advanced conversational skills.

340. Introduction to Romanian Literature and Culture. (3:3:0) On dem. Prerequisite: foreign residence experience in Romania.
For returned missionaries or others with extensive Romanian language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination. Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

French and Italian Faculty

Professors
Lambert, L. Gary (1969) BA, U. of California, Berkeley, 1963; MA, U. of California, Santa Barbara, 1965; PhD, Rice U., 1969.
Sowell, Madison U. (1979) BA, Brigham Young U., 1975; MA, PhD, Harvard U., 1976, 1979.

Senior Lecturers
Noble, Cinzia D. (1980) BA, Brigham Young U., 1978; Dott. in Lett., G. D'Annunzio, Italy, 1979.
Thompson, Chantal P. (1973) BA, U. of Rennes, France, 1968; BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1972.

Associate Professors
Bell, Mark E. (1991) BA, Brigham Young U., 1976; MPhil, U. of Birmingham, England, 1989; PhD, U. of Utah, 1991.
Bush, Michael D. (1992) BA, Brigham Young U., 1972; MBA, U. of Missouri, 1976; PhD, Ohio State U., 1983.
Klein, Ilona (1994) Dott. in Lett., U. of Rome, Italy, 1981; MA, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1982, 1986.

Assistant Professors
Cottle, Michaela V. (1989) BA, Brigham Young U., 1977; MA, PhD, U. of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1985, 1992.
Hurlbut, Jesse D. (1994) BA, Brigham Young U., 1980; MA, U. of California, Santa Barbara, 1982; PhD, Indiana U., 1990.
Le Bras, Yvon R. (1993) BA, MA, U. of Rennes, France, 1970, 1972; MA, Brigham Young U., 1972; PhD, Laval U., Canada, 1992.
Sprenger, Scott M. (1993) BA, MA, U. of Washington, 1983, 1986; MA, Johns Hopkins U., 1990; PhD, Emory U., 1995.
Unlandt, Nicolaas G. W. (1990) BA, MA, DLitt, U. of Amsterdam, Holland, 1983, 1985, 1992.

Instructor
Lee, Daryl P. (1997) BA, Brigham Young U., 1992; MA, MPhil, Yale U., 1993, 1995.

Emeriti
Ashford, Josette B. (1969) BA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1972.
Brown, Thomas H. (1960) BA, Brigham Young U., 1955; MA, PhD, U. of Illinois, 1957, 1960.
Clark, Hoover W. (1964) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1954, 1958; PhD, Syracuse U., 1964.
Green, John A. (1964) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1954, 1955; PhD, U. of Washington, 1960.
Jensen, Don C. (1963) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1963; PhD, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1972.
Kimball, M. Douglas (1967) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1953, 1964; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1970.
Slade, J. Keith (1963) BA, U. of Arizona, 1959; MA, Brigham Young U., 1960.
Turner, Norman C. (1970) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1958; PhD, Syracuse U., 1962.

Genealogy

See History and Church History and Doctrine.

Geography

Richard H. Jackson, Chair
690-E SWKT, PO Box 25462, (801) 378-6063

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
2254 SFLC, PO Box 26797, (801) 378-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Geography are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Geography offers a variety of programs centered around spatial analysis and tailored, so far as possible, to meet the future needs of individual students. Our modern computer laboratory allows students to gain practical experience with geographical information systems (GIS), cartography, and other programs in planning, urban, travel, and population studies.

Career Opportunities

Graduates are employed in a wide range of both private and governmental positions. Job titles include geographer; teacher of geography; city or regional planner; cartographer; photo interpreter; commodities and industrial location analyst; intelligence, travel industry, or environmental and GIS specialist; and many others.

Skills in spatial analysis make geography a valuable minor or supporting field for many other disciplines.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Geographic Information Systems
BS Geography
Emphasis (optional):
Travel and Tourism Studies
BS Geography Teaching
BS Planning and Resource Management
Minors Geographic Information Systems
Geography
Geography Teaching
Travel and Tourism Studies

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Geography

For more information, see the 1998–99 Graduate Studies Catalog.

General Information

1. Core Classes: all students pursuing an undergraduate degree in any of the majors offered by the Geography Department must complete the following core courses:
   Geog 101, 120, 211, 300, 301, 322.
2. Prerequisites: all students admitted to one of the geography majors listed above must complete the following courses within one year of declaring a major:
   Geog 101, 120, 211, 300.

BS Geographic Information Systems (46–49 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Prerequisites: Complete the following core courses within one year of declaring this major:
   Geog 101, 120, 211, 300.
3. Complete the following:
   Geog 212, 301, 312, 322, 412, 517.
   CS 130.
4. Select five courses from the following:
   Geog 313, 430, 512, 513, 515, 518R, 519.
5. Select one regional course from the following:
   Geog 450, 455, 460, 465, 470, 471, 480, 485.

6. Majors are strongly encouraged to also take course work in a systematic area such as urban studies, land use planning, or climatology.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Geography (37–39 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Prerequisites: Complete the following core courses within one year of declaring this major:
   Geog 101, 120, 211, 300.
3. Complete the following:
   Geog 212, 301, 322, 450.
4. Select two regional courses from the following:
   Geog 455, 460, 465, 470, 471, 480, 485, 502R.
5. Select three systematic courses from the following:
   Geog 302, 310, 312, 313, 331, 341, 346, 350R, 370, 371, 401, 405, 501R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Geography: Travel and Tourism Studies Emphasis (37 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Prerequisites: Complete the following core courses within one year of declaring this major:
   Geog 101, 120, 211, 300.
3. Complete the following:
   Geog 270, 301, 322, 352, 370, 371, 450.
4. Select one of the following regional courses:
   Geog 455, 460, 465, 470, 471, 480, 485.
5. Students should include appropriate courses in business, communications, and/or organizational behavior.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Geography Teaching (84–92 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. A teaching minor is required for certification (approximately 16–21 hours).
3. Prerequisites: Complete the following core courses within one year of declaring this major:
   Geog 101, 120, 211, 300.
4. Complete the following:
   Geog 212, 301, 322, 331, 450.
5. Select two regional courses from the following:
   Geog 455, 460, 465, 470, 471, 480, 485, 502R.
6. Select three systematic courses from the following:
   Geog 302, 310, 312, 313, 341, 346, 370, 371, 401, 405, 501R.
7. Complete the Professional Education Component (28–29 hours); see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Planning and Resource Management (47 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Prerequisites: Complete the following core courses within one year of declaring this major:
   Geog 101, 120, 211, 300.
3. Complete the following:
   Geog 212, 301, 302, 310, 322, 331, 410, 412, 450.
4. Select 9 hours from the following (or courses approved by advisors):
   Geog 341, 399R, 401, 405, 510, 518R.
   CM 426.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Geographic Information Systems (18–21 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   Geog 211, 212, 312, 412.
2. Select three courses from the following:
   Geog 313, 430, 512, 515, 517, 518R, 519.

Minor Geography (18 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   Geog 101, 120, 211, 301, 450.
2. Select 3 hours of electives. Electives cannot include Geog 270, 275, 300, 322, 399R, 493R, or any Geog 500 or above courses.

Minor Geography Teaching (18 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   Geog 101, 120, 211, 301, 450.
2. Select 3 hours of electives. Electives cannot include Geog 270, 275, 300, 322, 399R, 493R, or any Geog 500 or above courses.

Minor Travel and Tourism Studies (19 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   Geog 120, 270, 352, 370, 371.
2. Select one regional course from the following:
   Geog 450, 455, 460, 465, 470, 471, 480, 485.

Geography (Geog)

Undergraduate Courses

101. Introduction to Physical Geography. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also.
Physical environment, distribution and interrelationships of climates, landforms, ecosystems and their human significance.

120. Geography and World Affairs. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also.
Survey of the world, stressing geography of major political regions.

211. Maps and Air Photographs. (3:2:2) F, W, Sp or Su
Maps and air photographs as tools for spatial analysis of problems in physical and cultural geography.

212. Introduction to Geographic Information Systems. (2:1:2) F, W
Concepts in the use of small- and large-scale digital map data, emphasizing landscape interpretation and feature description.

270. Travel Planning, Rates, and Tariffs: Domestic and International. (4:4:0) F, W, Sp
Procedures of domestic and international trip planning, including ticketing, routing, fare structure, rates, and tariffs.

275. Tourism Automation. (2:1:1) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Geog 270.
Computer usage for international and domestic scheduling, reservations, and ticketing.

300. Analytical Methods in Geography. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp or Su
Methodology of spatial analysis. Theory and techniques in geographic data description and population inference.

301. Cultural Geography. (3:3:0) F, W, Alt. term
Culture distributions and their relationship to existing geographic phenomena.

302. Geography of Urban Environment. (3:3:0) F
Urban patterns, city structures, and spatial analysis of cities as they affect their residents.

310. Principles of Land Use Planning. (3:3:0) F
Land use concepts, practical and theoretical problems, activities, and techniques.

312. Cartographic Design. (4:2:4) F Prerequisite: Geog 211.
Graphic perception, layout, typography, color, statistical methods, and symbolization of thematic maps through computer-aided techniques.

313. Remote Sensing of Environment. (3:3:0) WPrerequisite: Geog 211, 212
Introduction to airborne and spaceborne sensors, including instrument characteristics, image acquisition, georeferencing, enhancement, and classification. Emphasizes land cover mapping applications appropriate for environmental monitoring.

322. Design and Methodology in Geographic Inquiry. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Geog 300.
Organizing, acquiring, and using geographic data for research purposes; emphasizes learning and applying research techniques in individual geographic projects.

331. Economic Geography. (3:3:0) F, Alt. term
Introduction to economic processes and spatial patterns, emphasizing theoretical approaches, locational strategies, and changing economic land-use patterns.

341. Political Geography. (3:3:0) F, W
Spatial analysis of global politics; focus on geopolitics, territory and conflict, nationalism, and the politics of resources.

346. Population Geography. (3:3:0) W odd yr.
Spatial perspective on wide field of population studies, focusing on distribution, development, structure, and movement of populations; introduction to basic demographic measures.

350R. Topics in Systematic Geography. (3:3:0 ea.)
Detailed investigation of selected systematic topics; emphasis on current world affairs and problems.

352. Tour Operation. (3:3:0) F, W Independent Study also.
Broad overview of tour operations; travel counseling.

370. Tourism: A Conceptual Framework. (3:3:0) F, Sp Independent Study also.
Introduction to tourism as a field of study; four elements of tourism: dynamic, service, functional, and consequential.

371. Tourism: Patterns and Analysis. (3:3:0) W, Sp Independent Study also.
Patterns in domestic and international tourism; interrelationship between geography and tourism in understanding the patterns and their impact.

399R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
On-the-job experience. No more than 3 hours total in cooperative education may be counted in major.

401. Geography of Climates. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
Elements, controls, distribution, and classification of the earth's climates.

405. Geography of Landforms. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Geog 101 or instructor's consent.
Elements of landforms: distributions and cultural significance.

410. Practices of Land Use Planning. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Geog 310.
Applications of methods and techniques commonly used in the land use planning process, emphasizing data collection and analysis, fieldwork, and writing skills.

412. Vector Methods in Geographic Information Systems. (3:2:2) W Prerequisite: Geog 212 or instructor's consent.
Theory and practice of vector GIS data acquisition, editing, and analysis.

430. Image Processing and Interpretation. (2:2:0) F odd yr. Prerequisite: Geog 313.
Computer processing of low-altitude and satellite images for geographic analysis of physical and cultural phenomena on earth.

450. United States and Canada. (3:3:0) F, W Independent Study also.
Analysis of the natural environment, historical development, cultural patterns, economic systems, and political structures of geographic regions.

455. Middle and South America. (3:3:0) W
Environmental, cultural, economic, and political parameters of Latin American societies.

460. Europe. (3:3:0) F
Systematic approach to physical base, social and political problems, economic issues, and regional summary.

465. Russia and the Former Soviet Union. (3:3:0) W
Physical features, resources, political issues, economy and industries, population concerns, and role in world affairs.

470. Asia. (3:3:0) W odd yr.
Physical, social, economic, and political influences in cultures of South, East, and Southeast Asia.

471. Middle East. (3:3:0) F even yr.
Physical and cultural geography of Southwest Asia and North Africa, emphasizing the cultural mosaic, geopolitics, environment, and resources of the region.

480. Australia and New Zealand. (2:2:0) F odd yr.
Comparison of physical patterns, historical development, and present cultural patterns.

485. Sub-Saharan Africa. (3:3:0) W even yr.
Geographical analysis with a focus on resource management, political issues, development, environmental problems, economic development, and urban-rural change; case studies from selected countries.

493R. Special Problems. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: geography major or departmental approval.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

501R. Topics in Systematic Geography. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.)
Detailed investigation of selected geographic topics.

502R. Seminar in Regional Geography. (1–3:0:0 ea.)

510. Advanced Urban Dynamics and Planning. (3:3:0) W even yr. Prerequisite: Geog 310, 410, or equivalent.
Urban geography and land use planning, emphasizing urban morphology, land use patterns, and spatial analysis; critical evaluation of models and theories.

512. Issues in Computer Cartography. (3:2:2) W Prerequisite: Geog 312 or equivalent.
Current techniques for compilation, integration, and display of digital map data..

513. Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing. (3:2:3) Sp
Using data obtained from visible range (photographs) and broader ranges (radar, microwaves, infrared, remote, etc.) of the electromagnetic spectrum to solve engineering problems with mapping procedures; photo and electronic data interpretation.

515. Decision Making in Geographic Information Systems. (3:3:0) F, W Recommended: CS 103, 130, 142, or equivalent.
Analysis of geographic information for decision making with emphasis on developing GIS applications using Visual Basic, Avenue, and AML.

517. Analytical Cartography. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: two courses in computer programming including CS 130 or other introductory course in C or C++; introductory course in trigonometry.
Geocoding, spatial data representation, and map-based transformations.

518R. Applications of GIS and Remote Sensing. (2:1:2) W even yr. Prerequisite: Geog 212 or equivalent.
Application of GIS and satellite remote sensing methods to practical problems in urban and physical environments.

519. Global Positioning Systems. (2:1:2) F Prerequisite: Geog 211 or instructor's consent.
Earth coordinate systems, map projections, and global positioning system methods.

580. Geography of the Developing World. (3:3:0) F odd yr.
Analysis and description of the developing world from a spatial perspective; emphasis on environmental challenges to development.

599R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.)
On-the-job experience. No more than 3 hours in cooperative education may count toward major requirements.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Geography Faculty

Professors

Hudman, Lloyd E. (1970) BS, U. of Utah, 1964; MS, PhD, U. of Kansas, 1968, 1970.

Jackson, Richard H (1969) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1966; PhD, Clark U., 1970.

Associate Professors

Hardin, Perry J. (1988) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1982, 1984; PhD, U. of Utah, 1989.

Shumway, J. Matthew (1991) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1984, 1987; PhD, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1991.

Assistant Professors

Davis, James A. (1990) BS, Brigham Young U., 1978; MA, California State U., Fullerton, 1987; PhD, Arizona State U., 1993.

Emmett, Chad F. (1992) BA, Utah State U., 1979, MA, Brigham Young U., 1983; PhD, U. of Chicago, 1991.

Otterstrom, Samuel M. (1997) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1990, 1994; PhD, Louisiana State U., 1997.

Plewe, Brandon (1997) BS, Brigham Young U., 1992; MS, PhD, State U. of New York at Buffalo, 1995, 1997.

Emeriti

Grey, Alan H. (1964) BA, Brigham Young U., 1959; MA, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1960, 1963.

Hinckley, Thomas K. (1972) BA, Brigham Young U., 1958; MA, U. of Pittsburgh, 1960; PhD, U. of Western Ontario, Canada, 1979.

Horiuchi, Russell N. (1961) BA, Brigham Young U., 1953; MA, U. of California, Berkeley, 1958; PhD, U. of Washington, 1975.

Layton, Robert L. (1954) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1951, 1952; PhD, Syracuse U., 1962.

Geology

Bart J. Kowallis, Chair
673 WIDB, PO Box 24653, (801) 378-3918

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center
1116 TMCB, PO Box 26539, (801) 378-6270

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Geology are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Geology is the study of the earth's origin and development and of the natural processes that have operated upon it and within it from the time the solar system was created. With the development of remote sensing technology and the exploration of the solar system by manned and unmanned spacecraft, geology has expanded to include the moon, other planets and their moons, and small bodies that orbit the sun. A student of geology will study the major features of the earth: the continents, the ocean basins, the structure of mountains, the origin of minerals, the nature of fossils, volcanic eruptions, earthquakes, and glaciers.

Career Opportunities

Graduates have the opportunity to work both in the great outdoors and in the laboratory, pursuing careers in energy, mineral, and water resources or in environmental evaluation with industry, government, or consulting firms. The substantial preparation in basic sciences and mathematics also leads to a broad spectrum of teaching opportunities.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA	Earth and Space Science Education
BS	Engineering Geology
BS	Geology
Emphasis (optional):	Environmental Geology
Minors	Geology
	Geology Teaching

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Geology

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BA Earth and Space Science Education (83–87 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Geol 111, 112, 210, 411.
3. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   Geol 491R (four enrollments).
4. Select three courses from the following:
   Geol 109, 286, 311, 351, 352, 370, 404, 420, 435, 440, 445, 451, 460, 480.
5. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 107.
   Math 119.
   Phil 423.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Engl 315, 316.
7. Select one of the following options:
   Either Phscs 121, 122, 127, 137
   Or Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108, 127, 137.
8. Complete the Professional Education Component (28–29 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Engineering Geology (86–89 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Geol 112, 210, 311, 351, 352, 370, 410.
3. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   Geol 491R (four enrollments).
4. Select three courses from the following:
   Geol 411, 435, 440, 445, 451, 460, 511, 520, 559, 560.
5. Complete the following:
   CEEn 103, 113, 203, 332, 341, 431.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Geol 111, 330.
7. Complete the following:
   Engl 316.
   Math 112, 113, 312.
   Phscs 121, 122, 221.
8. Select one of the following options:
   Either Chem 105, 106, 107
   Or Chem 111, 112.

Recommended Course

Stat 221.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Geology (69 hours*)

This basic degree in geology prepares graduates for professional employment in industry, government, or private sectors or for advanced studies in geology, business, or law.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Geol 111, 112, 210, 311, 351, 352, 370, 410.
3. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   Geol 491R (four enrollments).
4. Select three courses from the following:
   Geol 411, 435, 440, 445, 451, 460, 480.
5. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 107.
   Engl 316.
   Math 112, 113.
   Phscs 121, 122, 221.

Recommended Courses

Stat 221.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Geology: Environmental Geology Emphasis (70–73 hours*)

Increasing concern with environmental degradation and natural geologic hazards has led to a demand for geologists who are both well grounded in the fundamentals of the science of geology and specifically prepared to address environmental problems. This degree prepares students for careers either in the environmental services industry or government or for advanced studies.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Geol 111, 112, 210, 311, 351, 352, 370, 404, 410, 420, 435.
3. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   Geol 491R (four enrollments).
4. Select two courses from the following:
   AgHrt 303, 407.
   CEEn 351.
   Geog 310.
   Geol 411.
5. Complete the following:
   Engl 316.
   Math 112, 113.
   Phscs 121, 122.
6. Select one of the following options:
   Either
   Chem 105, 106, 107.
   Or
   Chem 111, 112.

Recommended Course

RelC 491.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Geology (16 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   Geol 111, 112.
2. Select 8 hours from the following:
   Geol 210, 286, 311, 351, 352, 355, 370, 404, 411, 420, 435, 440, 445, 451, 460, 480.

Minor Geology Teaching (16 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   Geol 111, 112.
2. Select 8 hours from the following:
   Geol 109, 210, 286, 311, 351, 352, 355, 370, 404, 411, 435, 440, 445, 460, 480.

Geology (Geol)

Undergraduate Courses

101. Introduction to Geology. (3:2:1) F, W, Sp Honors also.
Cultural focus on physical and environmental geology for nonscience majors; rocks and minerals. Field trips.

103. Life of the Past. (3:2:1) F, W, Sp
Cultural focus on historical geology for nonscience majors; fossils. Field trips.

109. Geology of the Planets. (3:3:0) W
Origins and distinctive histories of the planets in our solar system as revealed by study of their surface features. For nonscience and science majors.

111. Physical Geology. (4:3:2) F, W Prerequisite: Math 112 or concurrent registration.
Materials, structure, and surface features of the earth and the geologic processes involved in their development. Field trips and lab studies, use of aerial photos.

112. Historical Geology. (4:3:2) W Prerequisite: Geol 111.
Developmental history of the earth, its landforms, and life forms, emphasizing the North American continent. Field trips and lab studies.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

210. Field Studies. (3:0:9) F Prerequisite: Geol 111, 112.
Procedures in observing, collecting, and recording field data concerning properties of rock units; interpretive concepts; use of Brunton compass, topographic maps, and aerial photos. Contact Geology Department before fall semester for dates of trips.

286. Prehistoric Vertebrates. (3:3:0) W alt. yr.
Major groups of prehistoric vertebrates, emphasizing reptiles (especially dinosaurs) and mammals. Scientific and cultural values considered.

311. Structural Geology. (3:3:2) F Prerequisite: Geol 111, 210; Phscs 121 or concurrent registration.
Geometric, kinematic, and dynamic analysis of tectonic features. Practical exercises. Use of aerial photos. Field trips.

330. Geology for Engineers. (3:2:2) F, W
Geological processes and materials bearing on engineering practices. Field trips.

351. Mineralogy. (4:3:2) F Prerequisite: Chem 105 or 111 or concurrent registration.
Principles of crystallography and crystal chemistry. Physical, chemical, and crystallographic properties of minerals.

352. Petrology. (3:3:2) W Prerequisite: Geol 210, 351, Chem 105 or 111.
Compositions, fabrics, and field relations of igneous and metamorphic rocks; behavior of rock-forming systems. Field trips.

355. Gemology. (3:2:2) F Prerequisite: PhyS 100.
Those minerals used as gems: crystallography, crystal chemistry, physical and optical properties, geologic occurrence, mining methods; evaluation, traditions, and history. Lab: identification and testing.

370. Stratigraphy and Sedimentation. (3:3:3) W Prerequisite: Geol 111, 112.
Sediments, sedimentary rocks, and principles of stratigraphy. Field trips.

399R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:0:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su

404. Environmental Geology. (3:2:2) W Prerequisite: Geol 111 or 330.
Theoretical and applied environmental geology; groundwater and soil contamination, waste disposal, mine tailings and drainage; natural and man-made geologic hazards. Field trips.

410. Geological Field Methods. (6:0:46) Sp Prerequisite: Geol 311, 352, 370.
Methods used to observe, collect, and interpret field data in geologic and environmental investigations. Fee.

411. Geomorphology. (3:2:2) W Prerequisite: Geol 111.
Interpretive analysis of landforms and their geologic and environmental significance. Use of aerial photos. Field trips.

420. Environmental Geophysics. (3:2:2) F Prerequisite: Phscs 121, 122, Geol 111, 112, Math 113.
Applications of various geophysical survey methods to assess shallow geological problems, especially near-surface environmental problems, such as groundwater contaminants, sinkholes, faulting, etc.

435. Introduction to Groundwater. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Geol 111 or 330; Math 110.
Introduction to the occurrence, movement, and properties of subsurface water; surface and groundwater relationships.

440. Introductory Geophysics. (3:2:2) W Prerequisite: Phscs 221.
Physics of the earth, including earthquake seismology. Gravity, seismic, magnetic, electrical, and heat flow properties and methods.

445. Geochemistry. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Chem 106, 107; or 112; Geol 352.
Applying elementary chemical principles to understand geologic processes and materials.

451. Optical Mineralogy. (3:2:2) W Prerequisite: Geol 351.
Fundamentals of optical crystallography and mineral identification techniques.

460. Economic Geology. (3:2:2) F Prerequisite: Geol 352.
Principles, genesis, and localization of ore deposits, including laboratory study of ore minerals. Field trips.

480. Paleontology. (3:3:2) F Prerequisite: Geol 112.
Distribution, morphology, paleoecology, evolution, and stratigraphic significance of organisms in the geologic record. Field trips.

491R. Geology Seminar. (0.5:1:0 ea.) F, W
Seminars on various geologic topics by guest speakers.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

510. Conducted Field Trips. (1:Arr.:3) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: any college-level geology course and instructor's consent.
Geology field trips.

511. Advanced Structural Geology. (3:2:3) F alt. yr. Prerequisite: Geol 311, 410.
In-depth discussions of a variety of topics in structural geology, emphasizing current literature and problems.

520. Petroleum Geology. (3:2:2) F alt. yr. Prerequisite: Geol 311, 370.
Origin, migration, and entrapment of liquid and gaseous hydrocarbons.

521. Borehole Geophysics and Geology. (3:3:0) F alt. yr. Prerequisite: Phscs 121, 122, Geol 351, 370.
Applied well log analysis, including conventional and new techniques. Subsurface geology and lithology determined from electrical, acoustical, radioactive, and other logs.

525. Basin Analysis. (3:3:0) F alt. yr. Prerequisite: Geol 370.
Tectonic basin development, including extensional, compressional, flexural, and strike-slip processes. Processes of basin-fill and thermal histories emphasizing sequence and seismic stratigraphy.

545. Isotope Geochemistry. (3:1:4) W alt. yr. Prerequisite: Geol 352.
Use of stable and radioactive isotope systematics in geochronology and investigation of origins of rocks and waters.

551. Advanced Mineralogy. (3:2:2) W alt. yr. Prerequisite: Geol 351, Phscs 121, 122, 221.
Crystallography, structure, and crystal chemistry of major silicate mineral groups.

556. Applied Geomathematics. (3:3:0) F alt. yr. Prerequisite: Math 112, 113, Phscs 121, 122.
Applications of algebra, geometry, trigonometry, calculus, matrices, computers, and statistics to the analysis and interpretation of geoscience data.

559. Applied Geophysics 1. (3:3:0) F alt. yr. Prerequisite: Geol 311, Phscs 121, 122, 221.
Principles, tools, and methods in gravity, magnetic, and electromagnetic exploration. Includes acquisition, processing, and interpretation of gravity and magnetic data.

560. Applied Geophysics 2. (3:3:0) W alt. yr. Prerequisite: Geol 311, 559, Phscs 121, 122, 221.
Principles, tools, and methods used in seismic geophysics, with engineering, environmental, exploration and hydrological applications. Includes acquisition, processing, and interpretation of seismic data.

565R. Special Topics in Geology. (2–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
The following topics may be offered on demand:
—Geology for Teachers
—X-Ray Crystallography
—Instrumental Methods
—Ore Deposits

574. Advanced Stratigraphy. (3:3:0) Alt. yr. Prerequisite: Geol 370 or equivalent. Recommended: Geol 480.
Studying the stratigraphic record through modern methods of correlating stratal packages, emphasizing concepts of sequence and seismic stratigraphy, and utilizing methods of chronostratigraphy, biostratigraphy, lithostratigraphy, and absolute dating. Extended field trip required.

580. Principles of Paleontology. (3:3:0) W alt. yr. Prerequisite: Geol 480.
Modern approaches to fossil study applied to areas of evolution, paleoecology, and biostratigraphy.

586. Vertebrate Paleontology. (4:3:2) F alt. yr. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
History of vertebrate fossils. Field trips required. Credit applies in either zoology or geology. Lab studies.

590R. Short Courses. (1–3:3:3 ea.) F, W on dem.
Short graduate-level courses offered on a random basis.

591R. Seminar. (0.5:1:0 ea.) F, W
Seminars on various geologic topics by guest speakers. Total of 1 credit hour required.

599R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:0:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Geology Faculty

Professors
Baer, James L. (1969) BS, Ohio State U., 1957; MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1968.
Benson, Alvin K. (1986) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1972.
Best, Myron G. (1965) BS, U. of Utah, 1957; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1961.
Christiansen, Eric H. (1986) BS, Brigham Young U., 1977; ScM, Brown U., 1978; PhD, Arizona State U., 1981.
Griffen, Dana Thomas (1979) BS, U.S. Naval Academy, 1965; MS, PhD, Virginia Polytechnic Inst., 1973, 1975.
Keith, Jeffrey D. (1990) BS, Brigham Young U., 1977; MS, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1980, 1982.
Kowallis, Bart J. (1982) BS, Brigham Young U., 1977; MS, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1979, 1981.
Mayo, Alan L. (1987) BS, MS, San Diego State U., 1970, 1972; PhD, U. of Idaho, 1981.
Miller, Wade E. (1971) AA, El Camino Coll., 1957; BS, Brigham Young U., 1960; MS, U. of Arizona, 1963; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1968.
Ritter, Scott M. (1991) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1981, 1983; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1986.

Associate Professor
Morris, Thomas H. (1990) BS, Brigham Young U., 1981; MS, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1985, 1986.

Assistant Professors
Mabey, Matthew A. (1996) BS, U. of Utah, 1981; MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1989, 1992.
Nelson, Stephen T. (1997) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1984, 1987; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1991.

Associate Scientist
Tingey, David G. (1990) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1989.

Adjunct Faculty
Nixon, R. Paul (1989) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1955, 1955; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1972.
Proctor, Paul D. (1990) BS, U. of Utah 1942; MA, Cornell U., 1943; PhD, Indiana U., 1949.

Emeriti
Brimhall, Willis H. (1955) BS, Brigham Young U., 1949; MS, U. of Arizona, 1951; BES, Brigham Young U., 1960; PhD, Rice U., 1966.
Bullock, Kenneth C. (1943) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1940, 1942; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1949.
Bushman, Jess R. (1955) BA, Brigham Young U., 1949; PhD, Princeton U., 1958.
Hamblin, Wm. Kenneth (1962) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1954; PhD, U. of Michigan, 1958.
Hintze, Lehi F. (1955) BA, U. of Utah, 1941; MA, PhD, Columbia U., 1949, 1951.
Petersen, Morris S. (1966) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1956; PhD, U. of Iowa, 1962.
Phillips, Wm. Revell (1957) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1950, 1951, 1954.
Rigby, J. Keith (1953) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1948, 1949; PhD, Columbia U., 1952.

Germanic and Slavic Languages

Alan F. Keele, Chair
4094 JKHB, PO Box 26038, (801) 378-4923

College of Humanities Advisement Center
3078 JKHB, PO Box 26101, (801) 378-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Germanic and Slavic Languages are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Students of foreign language and literature develop fluency in another language as well as sensitivity to their own language and cultural heritage, to the contributions and diversity of other peoples, and to the advantages of an international perspective.

Career Opportunities

Experience with the intellectual, artistic, and spiritual expressions of other cultures and of their own culture helps students qualify for advanced study at graduate and professional schools, especially in linguistics, literature, language teaching methodology, library science, humanities, business, law, and medicine. Those who accept employment on completion of the BA degree frequently serve in a government agency, in international business, or in education.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA	German
BA	German Teaching
BA	Russian
BA	Russian Teaching
Minor	German
	German Teaching
	Russian
	Russian Teaching
	Scandinavian Studies

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA	Language Acquisition (German, Russian, or Scandinavian)
MA	German Literature

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Afrikaans Courses (Afrik)

101, 102. First-Year Afrikaans. (4:5:1 ea.)
Basic language skills.

201. Second-Year Afrikaans. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Afrik 102 or equivalent experience.
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

202. Second-Year Afrikaans. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Afrik 201.
Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Afrik 102 or equivalent experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Afrik 211R or equivalent experience.
Advanced conversational skills.

Bulgarian Courses (Bulgn)

101, 102. First-Year Bulgarian. (4:5:1 ea.)
Basic language skills.

201. Second-Year Bulgarian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Bulgn 102 or instructor's consent based on prior experience.
Grammar review and conversation.

202. Second-Year Bulgarian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Bulgn 201.
Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Bulgn 201 or foreign residence experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

330. Cultural History of Bulgaria. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: Bulgn 201 or foreign residence experience.
Entry course for returned missionaries or others with extensive Bulgarian language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Bulgn 101, 102, 201, 211R).

Czech Courses (Czech)

101, 102. First-Year Czech. (4:5:1 ea.)
Basic language skills.

201. Second-Year Czech. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Czech 102 or equivalent experience.
Grammar review and conversation.

202. Second-Year Czech. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Czech 201.
Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Czech 201 or foreign residence experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

330. Cultural History of Czech Republic. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: Czech 201 or foreign residence experience.
Entry course for returned missionaries or others with extensive Czech or Slovak language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Czech 101, 102, 201, 211R).

Dutch Courses (Dutch)

101, 102. First-Year Dutch. (4:5:1 ea.)
Basic language skills.

201. Second-Year Dutch. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Dutch 102 or equivalent experience.
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

202. Second-Year Dutch. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Dutch 201.
Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Dutch 201 or equivalent experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Dutch 211R or equivalent experience.
Advanced conversational skills.

340. Introduction to Dutch Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: reading knowledge of Dutch.
Readings from the best Dutch literature. Introduction to basic literary concepts.

Estonian Courses (Eston)

101. First-Year Estonian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: foreign residence experience.
Credit by examination only.

102. First-Year Estonian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: foreign residence experience.
Credit by examination only.

201. Second-Year Estonian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: foreign residence experience.
Credit by examination only.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: foreign residence experience.
Credit by examination only.

330. Cultural History of Estonia. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: foreign residence experience.
Entry course for returned missionaries from Estonia. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Eston 101, 102, 201, 211R).

German

BA German (52 hours*)

General Information

1. Beginning German courses (101, 102, 201, 202) will be waived for students having comparable German training or experience. Consult department for information about placement examinations.
2. Germ 200R and 300R are designed to help students who require additional skill in speaking, reading, writing, or grammar. These courses are tutorials and are not required for the major.

   Language Residency Programs

   Vienna Study Abroad (Germ 201, 202, 211R, 310, 311R; 320 or 330). An opportunity for developing language proficiency as well as for becoming better acquainted with the history and culture of Europe. Spring and summer terms. Prerequisite: Germ 102 or equivalent.

   Ten-Week German Summer Work Internship (Germ 311R). An opportunity to live and work in Germany or Switzerland. Housing is provided, usually with families in the host country. Prerequisite: Germ 201 or equivalent.

   Foreign Language Student Residence (Germ 211R, 311R). An opportunity to live with other students who have pledged to use only German within the house and with head residents who are native speakers of German. Enrollment in a German class in addition to 211R and 311R is required while living in the house. Prerequisite: Germ 102 or equivalent.

   German Summer Language Institute (Germ 211R, 311R). An intensive language program in German during the summer term. Participants live in the Student Foreign Language Residence and develop proficiency through intensive instruction and practical application of the language in daily living situations. Prerequisite: Germ 102 or equivalent.

   German-Speaking LDS Mission or Other Extended German-Speaking Residency. Advanced students enroll in Germ 330 and, if desired, complete examinations for Germ 101, 102, 201, and 4 hours of 311R.

   Study at a German University. The department strongly recommends that students spend their junior year at a German university taking courses that will apply toward the major. Universities in Germany charge no tuition, so, even though living costs are generally higher, with careful planning and modest financial support, most students find they can study at "Provo parity," that is, for about the same amount as a year of study in Provo. For advice about how to enroll and what financial support is available, contact the department office.
3. Students planning graduate studies in German should begin a second foreign language.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following Level 1 courses:
   Germ 101, 102.
3. Complete the following Level 2 courses:
   Germ 201, 202.
4. Complete 2 hours of one of the following:
   Germ 211R, 311R.
5. Complete the following Level 3 courses:
   Germ 310, 320, 321, 330, 340.
6. Complete the following Level 4 courses:
   Germ 430, 431.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Germ 450, 460.
8. Select two courses from the following:
   Germ 440R, 441R, 442R, 443R.
9. Select one course from the following:
   Germ 497R, 498R.
10. Final German proficiency examination: complete the following during the last semester before graduation (not offered spring or summer):
    Germ 400R (1 hour minimum).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA German Teaching (80–81 hours,* including certification hours)

General Information

1. Beginning German courses (101, 102, 201, 202) will be waived for students having comparable German training or experience. Consult department for information about placement examinations.
2. Germ 200R and 300R are designed to help students who require additional skill in speaking, reading, writing, or grammar. These courses are tutorials and are not required for the major.

Language Residency Programs

Vienna Study Abroad (Germ 211R or 311R). An opportunity for developing language proficiency as well as for becoming better acquainted with the history and culture of Europe. Prerequisite: Germ 102 or equivalent.

Ten-Week German Summer Work Internship (Germ 311R). An opportunity to live and work in Germany or Switzerland. Housing is provided, usually with families in the host country. Prerequisite: Germ 201 or equivalent.

Foreign Language Student Residence (Germ 211R, 311R). An opportunity to live with other students who have pledged to use only German within the house and with head residents who are native speakers of German. Enrollment in a German class in addition to 211R and 311R is required while living in the house. Prerequisite: Germ 102 or equivalent.

German Summer Language Institute (Germ 211R, 311R). An intensive language program in German during the summer term. Participants live in the Student Foreign Language Residence and develop proficiency through intensive instruction and practical application of the language in daily living situations. Prerequisite: Germ 102 or equivalent.

German-Speaking LDS Mission or Other Extended German-Speaking Residency. Advanced students enroll in Germ 330 and, if desired, complete examinations for Germ 101, 102, 201, and 4 hours of 311R.

Study at a German University. For advice about how to enroll and what financial support is available, contact the department office.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. A teaching minor is not required for certification. However, it is strongly recommended.
3. Register with the secretary in departmental office.
4. Complete the following Level 1 courses:
   Germ 101, 102.
5. Complete the following Level 2 courses:
   Germ 201, 202.
6. Complete 2 hours of one of the following courses (or equivalent experience):
   Germ 211R, 311R.
7. Complete the following Level 3 courses:
   Germ 310, 320, 321, 330, 340, 377.
8. Complete the following Level 4 courses:
   Germ 430, 431, 460.
9. Select two courses from the following Level 4 courses:
   Germ 440R, 441R, 442R, 443R.
10. Select one course from the following:
    Germ 497R, 498R.
11. Final German proficiency examination: complete the following during the last semester before graduation (not offered spring or summer):
    Germ 400R (1 hour minimum).
12. Complete the Professional Education Component (25–26 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor German (18 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Germ 310, 320, 330.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Germ 430, 431.
3. Complete 6 additional hours from the following:
   Germ 321, 340, 430, 431, 440R, 441R, 442R, 443R, 450, 460, 497R, 498R.
4. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor German Teaching (22 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   Germ 310, 320, 330, 377, 400R.

   Note: Germ 377 must be taken before student teaching; however, Germ 377 may be waived for students who have had this course in another foreign language.

2. Select one course from the following:
   Germ 430, 431.
3. Select 6 hours from the following:
   Germ 321, 340, 430, 431, 440R, 441R, 442R, 443R, 450, 460, 497R, 498R.
4. Register minor status with the secretary in the Department of Germanic and Slavic Languages.
5. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.

German (Germ)

Undergraduate Courses

101. First-Year German. (4:5:1) Independent Study also.
For those who have had no German. Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

102. First-Year German. (4:5:1) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: C grade or better in Germ 101 or equivalent.
Listening, speaking, reading, writing, grammar, and culture.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
On-the-job experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript. Report required. Not applicable to German major or minor.

200R. Second-Year Proficiency Tutorial. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W Prerequisite: Germ 102 or equivalent.
Individualized skill building in listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar.

201. Second-Year German. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: C grade or better in Germ 102 or equivalent.
Reading, writing, grammar, culture, listening, and speaking.

202. Second-Year German. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: C grade or better in Germ 201 or equivalent.
Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement emphasizing culture and literature. Continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking. Prerequisite to all 300- and 400-level courses.

211R. Intermediate Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Germ 102 or equivalent experience.
Offered only in language residency programs: Foreign Language Student Residence, German Summer Language Institute, German-speaking work internship, German-speaking study abroad.

300R. Third-Year Proficiency Tutorial. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W Prerequisite: Germ 202 or equivalent.
Individualized skill building in listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar.

310. Conversation and Phonetics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
Perfecting listening and speaking skills through application of phonetics. Continued reading, writing, grammar, and culture as secondary emphases.

311R. Advanced Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Germ 211R or equivalent experience.
Offered only in language residency programs: Foreign Language Student Residence, German Summer Language Institute, German-speaking work internship, German-speaking study abroad.

320. Grammar and Composition 1. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Germ 310 or concurrent registration.
Perfecting grammar, reading, writing, listening and speaking skills using current news items from German-speaking countries as a basis.

321. Grammar and Composition 2. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Germ 320.
Continuation of Germ 320.

330. Cultural History of German-Speaking Peoples. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent German language experience. Culture, with listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar as secondary emphases. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Germ 101, 102, 201, 311R). Prerequisite to all 400-level courses.

340. Introduction to Literary Analysis. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Germ 202 or equivalent experience.
Methods of literary interpretation and their application to German prose, drama, poetry, and film. Continued listening, speaking, writing, grammar, and culture as secondary emphases. Prerequisite to all 400-level courses.

377. German Language Teaching Procedures. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: Germ 310, 320, 321, 330; ScEd 276R for students who wish to certify. Required for teaching majors and minors as well as for departmental teaching assistants.

399R. German Work Internship. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.)
On-the-job ten-week summer language experience in German-speaking countries. Report required. Not applicable to German major or minor.

400R. Fourth-Year Proficiency Tutorial. (0–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W Prerequisite: senior status.
Individualized skill building in listening, speaking, reading, writing, and grammar. Final proficiency examination administered.

430. Masterpieces of German Literature 1. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Germ 320, 321, 330.
Close reading and analysis of literature from medieval through romantic period.

431. Masterpieces of German Literature 2. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Germ 320, 321, 330.
Close reading and analysis of literature from realism to the present.

440R. German Literary Periods and Movements. (3:3:0 ea.) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340.
In-depth study of a period or movement such as medieval, Renaissance, baroque, eighteenth century, romanticism, classicism, realism, fin-de-siecle Vienna, naturalism, expressionism, post-war, contemporary.

441R. Studies in German Literary Genres. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340.
In-depth study of a genre such as drama, novel, novella, lyric, film.

442R. Major German Authors. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340.
In-depth study of works by one major author.

443R. Studies in Literary Theory. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Germ 320, 321, 330, 340.
In-depth study of primary texts by contemporary literary theorists. May include topics such as Marxist criticism, feminist criticism, reader response, or post-structuralism.

450. History of the German Language. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: German 310, 320, 321.

460. Structure of Modern German. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Germ 310, 320, 321.
Grammatical and stylistic study with listening, speaking, reading, writing, and culture as secondary emphases.

490R. Special Studies in German. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: department chair's consent.
Variable credit for individual or group study as approved for special circumstances. Not applicable to German major or minor.

497R. Senior Seminar in German Language. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: senior status.
Culminating senior-level course in which acquired knowledge and critical skills are brought to bear on a selected language topic. In-depth senior paper on one aspect of topic.

498R. Senior Seminar in German Literature. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: senior status.
Culminating senior-level course in which acquired knowledge and critical skills are brought to bear on a selected literature topic. In-depth senior paper on one aspect of topic.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.)

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Hungarian Courses (Hung)

101, 102. First-Year Hungarian. (4:5:1 ea.)
Basic language skills.

201. Second-Year Hungarian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Hung 102 or instructor's consent based on prior Hungarian experience.
Grammar review and conversation.

202. Second-Year Hungarian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Hung 201.
Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Hung 201 or foreign residence experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

330. Cultural History of Hungary. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: Hung 201 or foreign residence experience.
For returned missionaries and others with extensive Hungarian language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Hung 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

Latvian Courses (Latvi)

101. First-Year Latvian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: foreign residence experience.
Credit by examination only.

102. First-Year Latvian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: foreign residence experience.
Credit by examination only.

201. Second-Year Latvian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: foreign residence experience.
Credit by examination only.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: foreign residence experience.
Credit by examination only.

330. Cultural History of Latvia. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: foreign residence experience.
Entry course for returned missionaries from Latvia. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Latvi 101, 102, 201, 211R).

Lithuanian Courses (Lithu)

101. First-Year Lithuanian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: foreign residency experience.
Credit by examination only.

102. First-Year Lithuanian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: foreign residency experience.
Credit by examination only.

201. Second-Year Lithuanian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: foreign residency experience.
Credit by examination only.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: foreign residence experience.
Credit by examination only.

330. Cultural History of Lithuania. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: foreign residence experience.
Entry course for returned missionaries from Lithuania. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Lithu 101, 102, 201, 211R).

Polish Courses (Polsh)

101. First-Year Polish. (4:5:1)
Basic language skills.

102. First-Year Polish. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Polsh 101.
Continuation of Polsh 101.

201. Second-Year Polish. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Polsh 102 or foreign residence experience.
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

202. Second-Year Polish. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Polsh 201.
Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Polsh 201 or foreign residence experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Polsh 211R or foreign residence experience.
Advanced conversational skills.

330. Cultural History of Poland. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: Polsh 201 or foreign residence experience.
For returned missionaries or others with extensive Polish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Polsh 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

Russian

BA Russian (61–76 hours*)

General Information

Important Note for Returned Russian-Speaking Missionaries: Register for third-year Russian classes. Russ 202 will be waived as a requirement for Russian majors or minors and should not be taken except when remedial work is necessary and permission is obtained from the section leader. Credit for Russ 101, 102, 201, and 211 is available through a test given as part of Russ 330.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.

2. Complete the following preparatory courses:
   Russ 101, 102, 201, 202.
3. Complete the following major courses:
   Russ 311, 312, 321, 322, 330, 340, 411, 412, 441, 442.
4. Select one of the following allied program requirements:
   a. Any second university major.
   b. Complete the following:
      Geog 465.
      Hist 330, 331.
      PlSc 347, 383.
   c. Complete a self-proposed program of study (normally to include Hist 330 and 331). This program must be fully described and justified in writing and judged by the Russian faculty to be in your best educational and professional interest.
   d. Teaching certification.

It is expected that majors who have not lived for an extended period in Russia, in addition to completing all Russian course work, will live for at least a semester in the Student Foreign Language Residence and complete their fifth-semester Russian course work in Russia during a spring/summer term program. This course work includes Russ 311, 312, 321, 330, and 340.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Russian Teaching (90–96 hours,* including certification hours)

General Information

Important Note for Returned Russian-Speaking Missionaries: Register for third-year Russian classes. Russ 202 will be waived as a requirement for Russian majors or minors and should not be taken except when remedial work is necessary and permission is obtained from the section leader. Credit for Russ 101, 102, 201, and 211 is available through a test given as part of Russ 330.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete an approved teaching minor (approximately 16–21 hours).
3. Register with the secretary in the department office.
4. Complete the following preparatory courses:
   Russ 101, 102, 201, 202.

   Note: Classes up to and including Russ 202 may be waived if students demonstrate proficiency in the foreign language.
5. Complete the following major courses:
   Russ 311, 312, 321, 322, 330, 340, 411, 412, 441, 442.
6. Complete a foreign language methods class prior to student teaching:
   Russ 377.
7. Complete the Professional Education Component (25–26 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

It is expected that majors who have not lived for an extended period in Russia, in addition to completing all Russian course work, will live for at least a semester in the Student Foreign Language Residence and complete their fifth-semester Russian course work in Russia during a spring/summer term program. This course work includes Russ 311, 312, 321, 330, and 340.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Russian (28 hours*)

1. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Russ 101, 102, 201.
3. Complete the following:
   Russ 202 (see note under information to returned Russian-speaking missionaries), 330.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Russ 311, 312, 411, 412.
5. Select one course from the following (or select two courses if Russ 202 was waived):
   Russ 340, 441, 442.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Russian Teaching (31–32 hours*)

1. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.
2. Register with the secretary in the department office.
3. Complete the following:
   Russ 101, 102, 201.
4. Complete the following:
   Russ 202 (see note under information to returned Russian-speaking missionaries), 340, 330, 377 (must be taken before student teaching). If 202 was waived, take 441 or 442.
5. Select one course from the following:
   Russ 311, 312, 411, 412.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Russian (Russ)

Undergraduate Courses

100A. Beginning Russian, Slow Paced. (2:2:1)
Equals first half of Russ 101. For busy working people and others unable to devote as much time as full-time students can.

100B. Beginning Russian, Slow Paced. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: Russ 100A.
Equals second half of Russ 101.

101, 102. First-Year Russian, Parts 1 and 2. (5:5:1 ea.)

185, 186. Russian for Reading. (2:2:0 ea.)
Basic language skills.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
On-the-job experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript. Report required. Not applicable to major or minor.

201. Second-Year Russian, Part 1. (5:5:1) Prerequisite: Russ 102 or instructor's consent, based on prior Russian language experience.
Grammar review and conversation.

202. Second-Year Russian, Part 2. (5:5:1) Prerequisite: Russ 201 or instructor's consent.
Grammar review and discussion in Russian of both expository and literary readings. Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

211. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Russ 201 or foreign residence experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills. Offered only as credit by examination upon completion of Russ 330.

241. Dostoevsky in Translation. (3:3:0)
Survey of the major writings, including *Crime and Punishment, The Idiot, The Devils,* and *The Brothers Karamazov.*

242. Tolstoy in Translation. (3:3:0)
Survey of the major writings, including *War and Peace, Anna Karenina,* "The Death of Ivan Ilich," "A Confession," and other works.

311, 312. Intermediate Conversation. (2:2:1 ea.) Prerequisite: Russ 202 or instructor's consent.
Discussion in Russian of Slavic culture.

321, 322. Third-Year Russian, Parts 1 and 2. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: for 321, Russ 202 or equivalent; for 322, Russ 321 or equivalent.

330. Cultural History of Russia. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: Russ 201 or foreign residence experience.
Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Russ 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

340. Russian Literature in Translation. (3:3:0)
Survey of nineteenth- and twentieth- century Russian literature, including Pushkin, Lermontov, Gogol, Turgenev, Tolstoy, Dostoevsky, Chekhov, Pasternak, and Solzhenitsyn.

377. Language Teaching Procedures. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: Russ 201.
Prior or concurrent registration in this course required for student instructors in Russian and other Slavic languages. Meets with Germ 377 and Scand 377.

399R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Russ 202 and department's consent.
On-the-job experience in Russian-related areas. Not applicable to any Russian major or minor. Report required.

411, 412. Advanced Conversation. (2:2:1 ea.) Prerequisite: Russ 202 or instructor's consent.
Advanced conversation and listening comprehension.

441. Survey of Russian Literature in the Nineteenth Century. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Russ 202 or equivalent.
Reading, discussing, and writing about Russian literature in Russian.

442. Survey of Russian Literature in the Twentieth Century. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Russ 202 or equivalent.
Reading, discussing, and writing about Russian literature in Russian.

490R. Special Studies in Russian. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Variable credit for individual or group study as approved for special circumstances.

491. Senior Russian Proficiency Examination. (0:0:0) F
All majors are required to register for 491 in the semester they plan to take the Senior Proficiency Examination.

499R. Honors Thesis (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.)

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Serbo-Croatian Courses (SrbCr)

101. First-Year Serbo-Croatian. (4:5:1)
Basic language skills.

102. First-Year Serbo-Croatian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: SrbCr 101.
Continuation of SrbCr 101A,B.

201. Second-Year Serbo-Croatian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: SrbCr 102 or foreign residence experience.
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

202. Second-Year Serbo-Croatian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: SrbCr 201.
Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: SrbCr 201 or foreign residence experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: SrbCr 211R or foreign residence experience.

330. Cultural History of the Former Yugoslavia. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: SrbCr 201 or foreign residence experience.
For returned missionaries or others with extensive Serbo-Croatian language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (SrbCr 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

Ukrainian Courses (Ukrai)

101, 102. First-Year Ukrainian. (4:5:1 ea.)
Basic language skills.

201. Second-Year Ukrainian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Ukrai 102 or instructor's consent.
Grammar review and conversation.

202. Second-Year Ukrainian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Ukrai 201.
Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Ukrai 201 or foreign residence experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

330. Cultural History of the Ukraine. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: Ukrai 201 or foreign residence experience.
For returned missionaries or others with extensive Ukrainian language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Ukrai 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement.

Scandinavian Studies

Minor Scandinavian Studies (12 hours*)

1. Select one course from the following:
   Dansh 340.
   Finn 340.
   Norwe 340.
   Swed 340.
   Iclnd 429.
2. Complete the following:
   Scand 430.

3. Select 6 hours from the following:
   Scand 344R, 490R, 529 (may not be taken by students who have had Iclnd 429), 590R.
   Hist 337.
   A literature course in a language different from that taken in item 1 above:
   Dansh 340.
   Finn 340.
   Norwe 340.
   Swed 340.
   Iclnd 429.

Note: Students who choose Icelandic or Finnish courses from item 1 above may substitute two semesters of a second Scandinavian language as the equivalent of one of these electives; students who choose Danish, Norwegian, or Swedish courses from item 1 above may substitute two semesters of Finnish.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Scandinavian Studies (Scand)

Undergraduate Courses

344R. Topics in Scandinavian Studies. (3:3:0 ea.)
Topic varies. Typical topics might be folklore, culture, music, film, emigration, art and design, political and economic problems, literature in translation, etc.

+History 337. Scandinavian History. (3:3:0)

377. Language Teaching Procedures. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: Dansh, Finn, Norwe, or Swed 340.
Prior or concurrent registration in this course required for student instructors in Nordic languages. Meets with Germ 377 and Russ 377.

430. Cultural History of Scandinavia. (3:3:0)
Scandinavian culture from the Vikings to the present. Works may be read in English translation.

490R. Seminar in Scandinavian Studies. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Topics vary.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

529. Old Norse. (3:3:0) Recommended: knowledge of a modern Scandinavian language.
Returned missionaries from Iceland or those with equivalent experience should enroll in Iclnd 429. Grammar and exercises. Readings in Old Norse literature.

590R. Directed Readings in Scandinavian. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: written plan of study approved by both instructor and program coordinator.
Directed individual study. Register by add card only.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Danish Courses (Dansh)

101, 102. First-Year Danish. (4:5:1 ea.)
Basic language skills.

201. Second-Year Danish. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Dansh 102 or equivalent experience.
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

202. Second Year Danish. (4:5:1) F, W Prerequisite: Dansh 201.
Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries or those with equivalent experience). Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Dansh 102 or equivalent experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Dansh 211R or equivalent experience.
Advanced conversational skills.

340. Danish Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Dansh 202 or equivalent experience.
Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Danish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Dansh 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement. Readings in Danish literature; introduction to basic literary concepts.

399R. Cooperative Education Internship. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: department's consent.
On-the-job experience in Danish.

Finnish Courses (Finn)

101, 102. First-Year Finnish. (4:5:1 ea.)
Basic language skills.

201. Second-Year Finnish. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Finn 102 or equivalent experience.
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

202. Second Year Finnish. (4:5:1) F, W Prerequisite: Finn 201.
Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries or those with equivalent experience). Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Finn 102 or equivalent experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Finn 211R or equivalent experience.
Advanced conversational skills.

340. Finnish Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Finn 202 or equivalent experience.
Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Finnish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Finn 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement. Readings in Finnish literature; introduction to basic literary concepts.

399R. Cooperative Education Internship. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: department's consent.
On-the-job experience in Finnish.

Icelandic Courses (Iclnd)

101, 102. First-Year Icelandic. (4:5:1 ea.)
Basic language skills.

201. Second-Year Icelandic. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Iclnd 102 or equivalent experience.
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing writing.

202. Second-Year Icelandic. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Iclnd 201.
Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Iclnd 102 or equivalent experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Iclnd 211R or equivalent experience.
Advanced conversational skills.

399R. Cooperative Education Internship. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: department's consent.
On-the-job experience in Icelandic.

429. Old Icelandic Language and Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Iclnd 201 or equivalent experience.
Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Icelandic language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Iclnd 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement. Readings and exercises in Old Icelandic; introduction to Old Icelandic literature and its influence on later Icelandic culture.

Norwegian Courses (Norwe)

101, 102. First-Year Norwegian. (4:5:1 ea.)
Basic language skills.

201. Second-Year Norwegian. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Norwe 102 or equivalent experience.
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

202. Second Year Norwegian. (4:5:1) F, W Prerequisite: Norwe 201.
Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries or those with equivalent experience). Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Norwe 102 or equivalent experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Norwe 211R or equivalent experience.
Advanced conversational skills.

340. Norwegian Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Norwe 202 or equivalent experience.
Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Norwegian language experience. Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Norwe 101, 102, 201, 211R). Readings in Norwegian literature; introduction to basic literary concepts.

399R. Cooperative Education Internship. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: department's consent.
On-the-job experience in Norwegian.

Swedish Courses (Swed)

101, 102. First-Year Swedish. (4:5:1 ea.)
Basic language skills.

201. Second-Year Swedish. (4:5:1) Prerequisite: Swed 102 or equivalent experience.
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

202. Second Year Swedish. (4:5:1) F, W Prerequisite: Swed 201.
Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement (except for returned missionaries or those with equivalent experience). Emphasis on literature and culture with continued writing, grammar, listening, and speaking.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Swed 102 or equivalent experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Swed 211R or equivalent experience.
Advanced conversational skills.

340. Swedish Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Swed 202 or equivalent experience.
Entry course for returned missionaries or others with equivalent Swedish language experience. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination (Swed 101, 102, 201, 211R). Culminating course for GE Foreign Language requirement. Readings in Swedish literature: introduction to basic literary concepts.

399R. Cooperative Education Internship. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: department's consent.
On-the-job experience in Swedish.

Germanic and Slavic Languages Faculty

Professors

Browning, Gary L. (1974) BA, Brigham Young U., 1965; MA, Syracuse U., 1967; PhD, Harvard U., 1974.
Jarvis, Donald K. (1970) BA, Brigham Young U., 1964; PhD, Ohio State U., 1970.
Jones, Randall L., Dean, (1978) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1964; MA, PhD, Princeton U., 1966, 1970.
Keele, Alan F. (1971) BA, Brigham Young U., 1967; PhD, Princeton U., 1971.
Kelling, Hans-Wilhelm (1962) BA, Brigham Young U., 1958; MA, PhD, Stanford U., 1960, 1967.
Lyon, James K. (1994) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1958, 1959; PhD, Harvard U., 1963.
Plummer, Thomas G. (1985) BA, U. of Utah, 1965; MA, PhD, Harvard U., 1966, 1972.
Rogers, Thomas F. (1969) BA, U. of Utah, 1955; MA, Yale U., 1962; PhD, Georgetown U., 1968.

Associate Professors

Abbott, Scott (1988) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1973, 1976; PhD, Princeton U., 1979.
Baker, Joseph O. (1967) BA, U. of Utah, 1964; PhD, Tulane U., 1968.
Hart, David Kay (1984) BA, Brigham Young U., 1973; MA, PhD, U. of Washington, 1975, 1979.
Stott, Michelle (1987) BA, Weber State Coll., 1978; MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1981, 1987.

Assistant Professors

Kelly, Michael R. (1993) BS, MPA, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1983; MA, PhD, Ohio State U., 1990, 1996.
Lund, Randall J. (1988) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1973; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1986.
Nemirovskaya, Julia (1993) MA, PhD, Moscow State U., Russia, 1985, 1991.
Solovyova, Raisa (1992) BLit, Tomsk State U., Russia, 1971; ME, Novosibirsk State U., Russia, 1982.
Straubhaar, Sandra B. (1994) BA, Brigham Young U., 1972; MA, PhD, Stanford U., 1975, 1982.
Whipple, Walter (1993) BA, MM, Brigham Young U., 1968, 1969; DMA, U. of Southern California, 1972; TESOL, Brigham Young U., 1989.

Associate Lecturer

Michailova, Victoria V. (1990) Dipl, Hertzen Pedagogical Inst., St. Petersburg, Russia, 1972.

Emeriti

Davis, Garold Neil (1968) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1959; PhD, Johns Hopkins U., 1962.
Folsom, Marvin H. (1961) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1957; PhD, Cornell U., 1961.
Gubler, Donworth V. (1949) BA, MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1948, 1949, 1971.
Luckau, Paul F. (1964) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1949, 1955.
Rogers, R. Max (1945) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1940, 1942; PhD, Stanford U., 1951.
Smith, Murray F. (1962) BA, U. of Utah, 1956; MA, PhD, U. of Southern California, 1961, 1967.
Speidel, Walter H. (1963) Abitur, Germany, 1940; Diplomdolmetscher und -Übersetzer, Fachhochschule für das Dolmetscherwesen, Stuttgart, Germany, 1948; MA, U. of Utah, 1960; PhD, U. of Kansas, 1963.
Watkins, Arthur R. (1952) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1941, 1942; PhD, Stanford U., 1948.

Associated Scandinavian Faculty

The following professors from other departments in the College of Humanities have joint appointments in Scandinavian and are members of the department's Scandinavian section:

Melvin J. Luthy (Linguistics)
Royal Skousen (English)
George S. Tate (Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature)

Affiliated Scandinavian Faculty

The following faculty members from departments outside the College of Humanities occasionally teach in or otherwise contribute to the Scandinavian Studies Program:
Gerald M. Haslam (History)
Richard L. Jensen (Joseph Fielding Smith Institute for Church History)
Ralph V. Larson (Continuing Education)
Eric Samuelsen (Theatre and Media Arts)

Greek

See Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature.

Health Sciences

Keith J. Karren, Chair
213 RB, PO Box 22115, (801) 378-4428

College of Health and Human Performance Advisement Center
205 RB, PO Box 22117, (801) 378-3638

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Health Sciences are open enrollment except for the health promotion emphasis. In addition, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course)	0–3.0 hours
(or Math ACT score of at least 22)	
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Health Sciences
Emphases:
Community Health Education
School Health Education
BS Health Promotion
Minors Health Education
Driver Safety Education

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Health Sciences

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BS Health Sciences: Community Health Education Emphasis (57 hours*)

The Discipline

Community Health Educators serve many publics in our society. Health promotion and risk reduction are their major aims. They accomplish their objectives by planning and implementing educational programs that increase public understanding and awareness about health and health maintenance. From these programs, people can resolve personal health problems and attain a higher level of physical, social, and mental well-being.

The activity of the Community Health Educator emerges from three objectives: assessment of health needs in a specific population; dissemination of information that will meet these health needs; and motivation of individuals and groups to seek and maintain good health.

Career Opportunities

There are a variety of career positions available for community health education graduates. Job titles include Health Education Specialist, Health Promotion Specialist, Health Program Evaluator, etc. Main professional duties would be centered on three areas: disease prevention, prolonging life, and health promotion through positive lifestyle patterns.

In a public-sector career, graduates are qualified to work in governmental health agencies on the local, state, federal, and international levels. Public health departments are examples of this area. Private-sector employees would work in health maintenance organizations (HMOs), private hospitals and clinics, and specialized health agencies such as the American Heart Association, the American Cancer Society, the American Diabetes Association, and the American Lung Association, etc. Insurance companies, consultant agencies, and other health provider companies make good use of health educators in preparing health promotion pamphlets, film media, lectures, and other activities promoting positive lifestyle changes for their clients.

The undergraduate major can lead to advanced-degree studies in hospital administration, public health administration, medicine, and other health-related professions.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following courses:
   Hlth 300, 302, 320, 325, 365, 370, 451, 460, 461, 463, 478, 482, 485.
   Stat 221.
   Zool 261.

3. Select one course from the following:
   Engl 315, 316.
4. Complete 1 hour of the following:
   Hlth 449R (two enrollments).
5. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   Hlth 599R.
6. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   IP&T 286.
7. Select 8 hours from the following:
   BusM 340.
   Comms 150, 235, 311.
   FSN 100.
   Mcbio 221, 222, 311.
   PlSc 311, 330.
   Psych 361, 365.
   Soc 113, 358.
   Zool 260.
10. Select 4 hours from the following:
    Hlth 403R, 431R, 436, 465, 466, 480.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Health Sciences: School Health Education Emphasis (77–83 hours,* including certification hours)

The Discipline

The health teaching major prepares students to become health educators in secondary schools. Curriculum development, instructional methods, and behavioral modification strategies are among the skills required to facilitate health enhancement in a broad range of concerns such as substance abuse and addictive behaviors, sexuality, emergency care, crisis prevention and intervention (suicide, rape, etc.), chronic disease prevention and control, interpersonal relationships, decision making, and sexually transmitted diseases (e.g., AIDS).

As educators work with youth, they affect their lives, influencing their self-esteem and broadening their abilities to cope with life. All this is occurring at a time when habits are being formed and attitudes are being established that will influence the rest of their lives. The health educator plays an important role in the growth and maturation of a capable and caring human being.

Career Opportunities

Graduates seek careers teaching health in the secondary schools in combination with a chosen minor. With an advanced degree, career teaching positions at institutions of higher learning become accessible.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. An approved teaching minor must be completed (approximately 16–21 hours).
3. Complete the following:
   Hlth 300, 320, 365, 370, 381, 421, 436, 451, 460, 461, 465.
   FSN 100.
4. Complete 1 hour of the following:
   Hlth 449R.
5. Select 5 hours from the following:
   Hlth 325, 403R, 431R, 463, 480.
6. Complete the Professional Education Component (28–29 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Health Promotion (59.5–60 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

This major is also offered through the Physical Education Department.

The Discipline

Health promotion is a departure from the typical U.S. health paradigm in that the focus is on preventing illnesses. Rising health care costs have spurred an interest in keeping people healthy to avoid unnecessary health-related expenses. Health promotion professionals assist individuals and organizations in improving their health-related procedures and policies so that the goals of both are more likely to be fulfilled.

Career Opportunities

Health promotion personnel find employment with organizations committed to health enhancement: Business, industry, health clinics and resorts, health maintenance organizations, hospitals, insurance companies, senior citizen groups, and voluntary organizations.

Major Requirements

1. Be admitted to the program by the Interdisciplinary Health Promotion Committee. Admittance into the health promotion major requires the student to earn an average GPA of 3.0 in PE 297, Zool 261, and Stat 221.
2. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
3. Complete the following core requirements:
   Hlth 320, 365, 420, 460, 461, 463.
   PE 125, 239, 297, 360, 363, 365, 367, 468.
   Acc 200.
   BusM 300.
   FSN 100.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Hlth 455.
   PE 451.
5. Select 4 hours from the following:
   Hlth 599R (see Dr. Heiner, 229-F RB, ext. 8-2214).
   PE 399R (see Dr. Aldana, 276 SFH, ext. 8-2145).
6. Select 15–15.5 hours from the following:
   BusM 340.
   Comms 150.
   CSE 546.
   Dance 336.
   FSN 410.
   Hlth 370, 403R, 431R, 465, 466.
   IP&T 286.
   OrgB 320.
   PE 320, 321, 361, 458.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Health Education (21 hours)

1. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Hlth 300, 320, 365, 381, 421, 460.
3. Select 8 hours from the following:
   Hlth 325, 370, 420, 431R, 436, 451, 461, 463, 465, 466, 480.

Minor Driver Safety Education (16 hours)

1. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Hlth 121, 320.
3. Complete the following:
   Hlth 325, 444, 445, 446.
4. Select 4 hours from the following:
   Hlth 402R, 420, 460.
   Psych 321.
5. Students majoring in health sciences may not double-count hours in the driver education minor.

Health/Physical Education (HEPE)

Undergraduate Courses

129. Fitness and Lifestyle Management. (2:2:1)
Why a healthy lifestyle is needed and how to write individualized programs to meet these needs.

Health Sciences (Hlth)

Undergraduate Courses

10. Beginning Driver Education. (0:0:2)
Satisfies the prerequisite necessary to apply for the Utah driver's license. No driving experience necessary. Fee.

121. First Aid and Safety Instruction. (2:2:0) Independent Study also.
Emergency procedures for sudden illness and traumatic injuries; leads to first aid and CPR certifications.

129. Health and Lifestyle Management. (1:1:0) Independent Study also.
Self-responsibility approach to health and wellness. Meets university graduation requirement.

130. Health and Lifestyle Management. (2:2:0) Independent Study also.
Comprehensive focus on knowledge and skills needed for health and wellness. Meets university graduation requirement.

201R. Contemporary Issues for Student Athletes (1:1:0)
Eligibility issues for intercollegiate student athletes. Skills relating to academic performance and career selection.

300. History, Philosophy, and Foundations of Health. (2:2:0) Independent Study also.
Entry class for all health sciences majors. Principles of the discipline and preparation for professional service. Theoretical models of health, professional and ethical issues, and future trends.

302. Computer Applications in Health Education. (2:2:0)
Exploring computer applications in health sciences: health assessments, risk approvals, health program planning and database access, computer-assisted instruction, biostatistical health applications, medical-legal issues.

320. First Aid and Emergency Care. (3:3:0)
In-depth coverage of first aid procedures for injuries and sudden illness. Leads to first aid and CPR certifications.

325. Safety Education. (2:2:0) Independent Study also.
Magnitude of the injury problem; concepts for injury prevention; safety instruction.

361. School Health for Elementary Teachers. (2:2:0) Independent Study also.
Health for the elementary teacher, emphasizing his or her role as a health educator; appraisal of typical elementary student health problems.

365. Modifying Health Behavior. (2:2:0)
Positive emotional health; attitude and behavior modification. Changing negative health behavior to positive.

370. Consumer Health. (2:2:0) Independent Study also.
Current consumer health issues; selecting proper health products, services, and information; sources of consumer health protection.

381. Health Science Teaching Methods. (2:2:0)
Teacher and student activities required for conceptual learning in health science.

402R. Driver and Safety Education Workshop. (1–7:0:2 ea.) Independent Study also.
Current safety education problems.

403R. Health Problems Workshop. (1–5:Arr:Arr.ea.)

410. Stress Management. (1:1:0)
Practical experience in learning to understand and manage stress.

415. Safety Program Management. (2:2:0)
Designing and implementing occupational safety programs.

420. Injury Prevention. (2:2:0)
Injury prevention programs dealing with back injuries, defensive driving, off-the-job injuries.

421. Secondary Health Education Curriculum. (2:2:0)
Prerequisite: Hlth 381.
Courses of study in health, with specific program planning and health course curriculum and content review.

425. Occupational and Industrial Health and Safety. (3:3:0)
Anticipation, recognition, evaluation, and control of health and safety hazards in the work environment.

426. Occupational and Industrial Health and Safety Lab. (1:0:1)
Instrumentation techniques in occupational health and safety.

430. Environmental Toxicology. (3:3:0)
Principles of toxicology as they relate to environmental hazards and public health.

431R. First Aid Instructor Training and Recertification. (2:2:1 ea.)
Prerequisite: current first aid and CPR certification or Hlth 320.
First aid and CPR instructor training leading to several instructor certifications; updating knowledge and skills.

436. Social Hygiene. (2:2:0)
Preparing prospective teachers to teach family life education as it relates to health. Sexual maturation, family health problems, parenthood, and other social hygiene factors.

444. Organization and Administration of Driver and Traffic Safety Education. (2:2:0) Independent Study also.
Organization, administration, and supervision of high school driver education programs.

445. Driver and Traffic Safety Education. (4:2:4) Prerequisite: Hlth 444.
Prepares teachers to instruct classroom and behind-the-wheel phases of driver education.

446. Driver Simulators and Driving Ranges. (2:2:1)
Simulator and multiple-car driving range methodology, emphasizing operation and maintenance.

449R. Seminar in Professionalism, Senior Seminar. (0.5:1:0 ea.)
Professional and career characteristics of health-related professions.

450. Women's Health Issues. (2:2:0)
Analyzing health care options for women in today's society.

451. Community Health. (2:2:0) Independent Study also.
Individual, school, and community involvement in preventing disease, improving human efficiency, and prolonging life. Emphasis is placed on needs assessment and community resources for health promotion.

452. Environmental Health Evaluation and Management 1. (2:2:0)
Comprehensive study of contemporary environmental health practices centered on food sanitation standards, insect and rodent control, housing, and institutional environments.

453. Environmental Health Evaluation and Management 2. (2:2:0)
Water procurement and quality standards, liquid waste treatment and disposal, water pollution control, and air quality management.

455. Health Promotion. (3:3:0)
Planning for the effective designing, marketing, implementing, and administering of health promotion programs.

460. Substance Use and Addictive Behavior. (2:2:0) Independent Study also.
Physiological, psychological, sociological, and legal implications of drug use and addictive behaviors, emphasizing nature, cause, treatment, and prevention.

461. Health Problems and Issues. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Zool 261.
Advanced course in health problems dealing with the major factors in health and disease as they affect the several body systems.

463. Health Protection and Management. (3:3:0)
Management approach to cause and nature of health deterioration; emphasizes health enhancement, disease prevention, and stress management.

465. Health Crisis Intervention. (2:2:0) Independent Study also.
Intervention techniques applied to health crises such as death and dying, suicide, grief and mourning, euthanasia, child abuse, abortion, and sexual assault.

466. Health and the Aging Process. (2:2:1) Independent Study also.
Theories of aging as a normal process, as a pathological process; health promotion and extension of life.

475. Health Assessment and Evaluation. (2:2:0)
Utilizing health assessment instruments, equipment, and software for managing health promotion programs.

478. Epidemiology for Health. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 221 or instructor's consent.
Applying analytical tools to study acute and chronic disease to facilitate investigation of and control of epidemics.

480. International Health. (2:2:0)
Health values, beliefs, and practices of other cultures, emphasizing how these beliefs and practices affect health and well-being.

482. Program Planning. (2:2:0)
Introduction to needs assessment, program development, evaluation, and implementation of community health programs.

485. Community Health Methods. (3:2:1) Prerequisite: Hlth 482.
Community health methods for promoting healthy lifestyles.

496R. Cooperative Education Internship. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
On-the-job experience.

500-Level Graduate Course (available to advanced undergraduates)

599R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: completion of a major in health sciences or graduate student status in health sciences.
On-the-job experience.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Health Sciences Faculty

Professors
Hafen, Brent Q. (1969) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1963, 1965; PhD, Southern Illinois U., 1969.
Heiner, Steven W. (1969) BS, MS, EdD, U. of Utah, 1955, 1962, 1969.
Karren, Keith J. (1971) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1970; PhD, Oregon State U., 1975.
Rollins, L. McKay (1962) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1962; PhD, U. of Utah, 1971.
Thygerson, Alton L. (1967) BS, MHEd, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1965, 1969.

Associate Professors
Barnes, Michael D. (1997) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1989, 1990; PhD, Southern Illinois U., Carbondale, 1993.
Hirschi, Willard M. (1964) BS, Brigham Young U., 1956; MA, Arizona State U., 1960.
Hurley, D. Richard (1971) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1964; PhD, Southern Illinois U., 1971.
James, Sherald W. (1962) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1962.
Lindsay, Gordon B. (1994) BS, Brigham Young U., 1978; MS, U. of Utah, 1980; PhD, Ohio State U., 1984.
Neiger, Brad L. (1997) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1984; PhD, U. of Utah, 1991.

Assistant Professors
Coon, Paul E. (1972) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1968, 1972.
Salazar, Richard D. (1963) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1962; PhD, Southern Illinois U., Carbondale, 1972.

Emeriti
Burgener, O. Robert (1964) BS, Utah State U., 1953; MPH, U. of California, Berkeley, 1964; PhD, U. of Utah, 1972.
Petersen, Ray A. (1969) BS, MHEd, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1965.
Rhodes, Ronald L. (1962) BS, Elmhurst Coll., 1957; MS, Brigham Young U., 1962; PhD, Oregon State U., 1971.
Robison, Clarence F. (1948) BS, Brigham Young U., 1949; MS, U. of Michigan, 1954.
Tuckett, Glen C. (1959) BS, U. of Utah, 1953; MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1975.

Hebrew

See Asian and Near Eastern Languages.

Hindi

See Asian and Near Eastern Languages.

History

Kendall W. Brown, Chair
323 KMB, PO Box, 24446, (801) 378-4335

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
2254 SFLC, PO Box 26797, (801) 378-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of History are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

History stands at the heart of a liberal arts bridge between the humanities and social sciences. Historical understanding is thus basic to the life of an educated human being. As such, it is the ideal major for the student who wants the broad educational background for entrance into professions such as law, government service, or business, or who wants a liberal arts education. History can also be valuable training for someone who plans to teach.

Career Opportunities

In recognition of the broad range of uses to which historical education can be put, the field of public history has emerged in recent years. Today, people whom others would consider bankers, lawyers, corporate executives, or public servants view themselves as historians—public historians. They are the people with analytical skills provided by their historical education who work outside the university but who consider themselves historians by virtue of the value of the training they have received. A significant percentage of the jobs listed by firms and agencies with BYU's Employment Office specify no major. Many of these will be taken by public historians anxious to serve their employers with the valuable skills learned in their history major.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university* requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA	Family History–Genealogy
BA	History
BA	History Teaching
Minors	Family History–Genealogy
	History
	History Teaching
	Native American Studies
Cert	Family History–Genealogy

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA	History
PhD	History

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BA Family History–Genealogy (45 hours*)

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. No more than 18 hours of lower-division credit in history may be applied toward the major.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Hist 120, 121.
4. Complete the following:
   Hist 200, 365, 397R, 400R, 480, 485, 490.
   RelC 261.
5. Select one course from the following:
   RelC 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268.
6. Complete 6 hours of the following:
   Hist 493R, 496R.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Hist 326, 327, 351, 357, 369, 382, 384, 398.
8. Select one course from the following:
   Hist 322, 329, 330, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 352, 353, 356, 360, 367, 370.

9. Select two courses from the following:
   Hist 406R, 407R, 408R, 409R, 410R, 411R.

Recommended Courses

Hist 201, 202.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Family History–Genealogy (24 hours*)

1. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.
2. Complete the following:
   RelC 261.
3. Select one course from the following:
   RelC 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268.
4. Complete the following:
   Hist 200, 365, 400R.
5. Select 6 hours from the following:
   Hist 406R, 407R, 408R, 409R, 410R, 411R.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Hist 326, 334, 335, 337, 351, 366, 367, 370, 398.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Hist 480, 493R, 496R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill univesity requirements.

Certificate Family History–Genealogy (18 hours)

The certificate will state the student's geographic areas of concentration.

1. Complete the following:
   Hist 365.
2. Complete the following:
   Hist 400R.
3. Select 6 hours from the following:
   Hist 406R, 407R, 408R, 409R, 410R, 411R.
4. Select 6 hours from the following:
   Hist 393R, 480, 493R, 496R, or a general history course in the geographic area of specialization.

Note: The certificate program can help prepare for certification or accreditation but should not be confused with these two separate, private methods of qualifying professional genealogists.

BA History (39 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. No more than 18 hours of lower-division credit in history may be applied toward the major.
3. Complete the following:
   Hist 120, 121, 200, 201, 202, 485, 490.
4. After consulting with an advisor, complete 18 elective hours in history. Students may study various areas of history, but they must not present all their preparation in a single area. At least one class must be chosen from *each* of three of the following areas: Asia or the Near East, Europe, Latin America, or the United States.

Recommended Courses

1. Supporting courses:
   Phil 105.
   Econ 110.
2. GE courses:
   a. Arts and Letters:
      ClCv 110.
      Engl 230.
      Hum 101.
      Hum 240.
      Phil 205.
      ArtHC 111, 112.
   b. Natural Sciences:
      Biol 150.
      Geog 101.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA History Teaching (61–62 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. No more than 18 hours of lower-division credit in history may be applied toward the major.
3. A teaching minor is not required for certification. However, it is strongly recommended.
4. Complete the following:
   Hist 120, 121, 200, 201, 202, 366, 477, 485, 490.
5. Complete 9 elective history hours (at least one class must be chosen from two of the three following areas: Asia or the Near East, Europe, or Latin America.
6. Complete the Professional Education Component (25–26 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor History (21 hours*)

1. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Hist 120, 121, 200, 201, 202.
3. Select 6 hours from upper-division history courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor History Teaching (21 hours*)

1. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Hist 120, 121, 200, 201, 202, 366.
3. Select 3 hours from upper-division history courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

History (Hist)

Undergraduate Courses

120. The United States Through 1877. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Discovery, colonization, American Revolution, establishment of the Constitution, foreign affairs, westward expansion, sectionalism, Civil War, and reconstruction.

121. The United States Since 1877. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Industrialization, immigration, urbanization, political and social movements, and foreign policy.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200. The Historian's Craft. (3:3:0)
History within the broader framework of liberal education; nature of history; questions historians ask; skills and resources needed to study, understand, and write history.

201. World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also.
World civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

202. World Civilization from 1500. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Hist 201.
World civilization from Renaissance to present; explores fundamental questions in the human experience, examines formative events in history, and seeks to teach value of important texts.

207. Federal Indian Policy. (3:3:0)
History and development of interrelationship of the federal government and the Native American in the United States.

223. Introduction to Indian Education. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: NAS 101.
Learning difficulties of language and culture and awareness of government title programs.

250. Popular Culture in America. (3:3:0)
Life and culture in America; the American character and its relationship to popular cultural themes.

300. Ancient Near East. (3:3:0)
Ancient Egypt, Mesopotamia, Palestine, and Persia from ca. 3500 B.C. to A.D. 600.

301. The Crusades. (3:3:0)
Age of Holy Wars in the eastern Mediterranean and Near East, 1050–1300. Focus on both Europe and Near East.

302. Medieval and Modern Near East. (3:3:0)
Rise and spread of Islam during the period of the Caliphate; Ottoman Empire; Western imperialism; rise of national states.

303. Jewish History: A.D. 70 to the Present. (3:3:0)
Jewish diaspora, Jewish life in Moslem and Christian countries; Jewish religious movements; development of Zionism; Jewish communities in modern Israel and the United States.

304. (Hist-ClCv) Greek History. (3:3:0)
Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Greece from Mycenaean times to the Hellenistic period.

305. Mediterranean History. (3:3:0)
Political, commercial, and cultural history of the lands bordering the Mediterranean and their common ties to the sea, emphasizing the medieval period as the precursor to Atlantic expansion.

307. (Hist-ClCv) Roman History. (3:3:0)
Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Rome from the foundation of the city to Constantine.

308. History of African Civilizations: Traditional Society and Culture to 1800. (3:3:0)
Society, culture, and kingdoms of Black Africa before European rule; art, architecture, kings and courts, status of women.

309. Modern African History: 1800 to the Present. (3:3:0)
Rise of traditional kingdoms, impact of Christianity and Islam, European partition of Africa, colonial rule, nationalist movement, problems of independence, foreign policy, and intellectual life.

310. The Early Middle Ages. (3:3:0)
Decline of Rome and the early formative stages of early medieval civilization; analysis of political, economic, and social changes from A.D. 285 to 950.

311. The Late Middle Ages. (3:3:0)
Europe from 950 to 1350; maturation of medieval civilization; failure of German, success of French leadership; economic, religious, cultural, intellectual trends.

312. The Renaissance: Age of Transition. (3:3:0)
Literary and artistic reawakening of Italy and Europe; commercial revolution; rise of national monarchies.

313. The Reformation: Age of Turmoil. (3:3:0)
Sixteenth-century religious upheaval; ideological, cultural, political, and socioeconomic struggles to mid–seventeenth century.

314. (Hist-Phscs 314–Phil 423) History and Philosophy of Science. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PhyS 100 or instructor's consent.
Scientific explanation, concepts, and models. Philosophical assumptions and criteria for theory selection, as exemplified by historical development of basic ideas in science.

318. European Jews and the Holocaust. (3:3:0)
Attempted genocide of European Jews by Hitler's Third Reich; motives, methods, and implications.

319. Ideas and Man in the Modern World. (3:3:0)
Interrelationship of influential ideas and historical events from the end of the eighteenth century to the present.

320. The Age of Enlightenment. (3:3:0)
Developments in Europe from 1650 to the French Revolution, emphasizing political thought, science, and philosophy in the Enlightenment.

322. Nineteenth-Century Europe. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Europe from 1815 to 1914.

323. Europe in the Twentieth Century. (3:3:0)
International affairs and political and economic history of major European countries (including Russia) from World War I to the present.

324. Communist China. (3:3:0)
Chinese Communist development from the 1920s to the present, emphasizing contemporary domestic affairs and foreign relations.

326. The Family in Europe. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Nature and development of marriage and family life and structure from the ancient to modern era.

327. Society in Europe. (3:3:0)
Common life in Europe from 1500 to the present: family problems, social customs, marriage, superstition, death, diet, work, hardships, migration, and childhood.

329. Austrian Empire. (3:3:0)
Historical survey (1526–1918) of area ruled by Hapsburg dynasty comprising lands and people of East-Central Europe.

330. Tsarist Russia. (3:3:0)
From early beginnings to the Russian Revolution.

331. Soviet and Post-Soviet Russia. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Modern Russia, emphasizing rise of communism and development of the USSR and the new commonwealth.

332. France. (3:3:0)
French history from Roman times to the present, emphasizing the French Revolution, Napoleon, and subsequent developments.

333. Modern Germany. (3:3:0)
Political, military, economic, and cultural development of Germany during the nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

334. Spain. (3:3:0)
Political, social, and economic factors in Spanish history from Roman times to present. Emphasis on Reconquest, Golden Age, and Civil War.

335. English History to 1689. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Political, social, and cultural developments from prehistoric times to the Glorious Revolution. Medieval, Tudor, and Stuart periods.

336. English History Since 1689. (3:3:0)
Emergence of Britain as a great colonial and industrial power, as well as more recent decline of Britain's influence. Emphasis also on cultural developments.

337. Scandinavian History. (3:3:0)
Political, social, religious, cultural, and economic factors in Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway, and Sweden from Viking era to present highly developed society.

338. History on Film. (3:2:Arr.) Prerequisite: Hist 201 or 202, preferably both. Recommended: upper-level courses in medieval and early modern European history.
Effectiveness of film as a medium of history; its strengths and weaknesses compared to traditional approaches. Special attention to works on European history.

340. Premodern Asia. (3:3:0)
Beginning of the traditional civilizations of China, India, and Japan, and their development until the coming of the West.

341. Modern Asia. (3:3:0)
Impact of the West on Asian societies; change of tradition, imperialism, nationalism, and communism in China, Japan, and India.

342. Korea. (3:3:0)
Political, religious, and cultural development from antiquity to the present.

343. Chinese Civilization. (3:3:0)
Development of China to 1500; social and cultural factors.

344. Modern China Since 1500. (3:3:0)
Developments since coming of the West; reform, movements, rebellion, rise of nationalism, and change of traditional institutions.

345. Premodern Japan. (3:3:0)
Development of Japan to 1868; social, religious, and cultural aspects.

346. Modern Japan. (3:3:0)
Development following Japan's opening in 1853; process and implications of modernization and expansion.

347. (Hist-NES) Arab and Islamic Civilization. (2:2:1)
Social science/humanities core course covering Arab and Islamic civilization; historical evolution of Middle East to present. Overview of modern Palestinian society. Offered at Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies; elective credit for major and minor in Near Eastern Studies. Does not receive GE credit.

348R. Topics in Modern Near Eastern History. (3:3:0 ea.)
Closer examination of the history of appropriate delimited topic than possible in general survey course. Topics may include modern Islamic movements, modern Egypt, modern North Africa.

349. (Hist-NES) Jewish Civilization. (2:2:1)
Social science/humanities core course; broad introduction to Jewish self-understanding and history, focusing on relationships among people, faith, and land. Offered at Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Does not receive GE credit.

350. History of Asian Religions and Thought. (3:3:0)
Development of Asia's religions and modes of thought and their influence on Asian and world history.

351. Conquest and Colonization of Latin America. (3:3:0)
Pre-Columbian civilizations, Iberian exploration and conquest of the New World, and colonial development of Hispanic and Portuguese America from 1492 to 1823.

352. Modern Latin America. (3:3:0)
National period (1810 to present): independence, institutional development, culture, and inter-American relations.

353. Mexico and the Caribbean. (3:3:0)
Social and economic trends, with emphasis on colonialism, Mexican Revolution, and Castro movement.

356. Brazil. (3:3:0)
From 1500 to present, emphasizing relationship between colonial patterns and twentieth-century reality and dilatory transformation of Brazil's political and economic culture.

357. The Indian in Latin American History. (3:3:0)
History of Latin American Indians from preconquest days to the present; achievements, contributions, and problems.

359. Inter-American Relations. (3:3:0)
Decline of Europe's American empires, legacies bequeathed to the new republics by their European heritage, and how those legacies have affected relations among the various American republics.

360. The Borderlands: The Spanish Frontier in North America. (3:3:0)
Spanish exploration, occupation, and institutions of northern Mexico, the American Southwest, and Florida, 1521–1821; Mexican period to 1848.

361. The American West in the Twentieth Century. (3:3:0)
Pivotal developments in twentieth-century West, including urbanization, Sun Belt migration, political protest, labor history, Native American history, immigration, water policy, tourism, military-industrial complex, Hollywood.

362. The American West to the Mexican War. (3:3:0)
Early colonization and westward movement east of the Mississippi.

363. The American West Since the Gold Rush. (3:3:0)
Fur trade and colonization in the trans-Mississippi West.

364. American Environmental History. (3:3:0)
American people's experience living in and changing the physical environment from pre-Columbian times to present: ideas, land use, technology, urbanization, industry, water, air, etc.

365. The Family and the Law in American History. (3:3:0)
The interaction of families with law and government as illustrated in original American sources; individual family histories reconstructed in the broader perspective of history.

366. Utah. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Contributions of Native Americans, explorers, mountain men, miners, government officials, Mormons, and other religious groups, etc., in the nineteenth century. Impact of national movements, various peoples, politics, economics, and social and cultural change in the twentieth century.

367. History of the South. (3:3:0)
Political, economic, and cultural history of the southern states from colonial times to the present.

368. Mormonism in American History. (3:3:0)
Social, economic, political, intellectual, and religious environment in which Mormonism flourished; contributions of Mormon men and women to American culture and history.

369. The Indian in American History. (3:3:0)
Developments in the history of leading Indian tribes; relations with the United States government.

370. Colonial America. (3:3:0)
Establishment, growth, and development of the American colonies to 1763.

371. The Machine in America. (3:3:0)
Benefits and liabilities of technological complexity.

372. New American Nation. (3:3:0)
Causes and consequences of the American Revolution, the confederation era, and the framing of the Constitution.

373. History of Religion in the United States. (3:3:0)
Religious developments in America from colonial times to the present.

374. U.S. Diplomatic History. (3:3:0)
American diplomacy; trends and critical decisions of the twentieth century.

375. The American Military Experience, 1607 to Present. (3:3:0) Recommended: Hist 120, 121.
Funding and growth of the military establishment, exercise of the military art, personal experience of war, military policies related to relevant political, social, technological, and economic factors.

377. The American Civil War. (3:3:0)
Impact of the Civil War and Reconstruction on American society and military. Emphasis on civilian control of the military, leadership, effects of technology, social change, key battles, nationalism, and "Lost Cause."

378. U.S. History from 1890 to 1945. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Hist 120, 121.
Political, economic, and social movements and ideas that trace rise of U.S. as a world power in first half of twentieth century.

379. United States Since 1945. (3:3:0)
Movements and ideas that shaped society, politics, economy, and diplomacy of the United States since the Second World War.

380. San Francisco. (3:3:0)
San Francisco as a microcosm of the American experience; art, architecture, environmentalism, politics, and ethnic diversity.

382. American Social History. (3:3:0)
Methods and issues of social history; family history, demography, elites, women, childhood and youth, immigrants, race, religion, urbanization, and social class.

384. United States Women's History. (3:3:0)
Survey course of women's experience in American culture and society from the Puritans to the present.

385. American Constitutional History to 1865. (3:3:0)
Survey course of women's experience in American culture and society from the Puritans to the present.

386. American Constitutional History Since 1865. (3:3:0)
Constitutional development: Reconstruction, due process, liberal nationalism, New Deal, war and the Constitution, and civil liberties.

387. Philosophies of History. (3:3:0)
Fundamental problems and types of historical analysis and interpretation, philosophies of history, and work of outstanding historians.

388. Life and Thought in America. (3:3:0)
Movements in social and political thought; major leaders and their times from 1607 to the present.

390R. Special Topics in History. (1–3:3:0 ea.) Independent Study also.
Presented by visiting or regular faculty. Varied topics include oral history, demographics, psychohistory, Christianity in history, etc.

392R. Special Topics in Latin American History. (3:3:0 ea.)

393R. Special Topics in Family History Research. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.)

394R. Special Topics in European History. (3:3:0 ea.)

395R. Special Topics in Asian History. (3:3:0 ea.)
Varied topics include South Asia, Christian missions in Asia, and Asiatic Russia.

396R. Special Topics in American History. (3:3:0 ea.)

397R. Writing Family Histories. (3:3:0 ea.) Independent Study also.
Selecting themes and sources, and determining issues to be dealt with.

398. American Family History. (3:3:0)
History of American families from colonial period to the present.

399R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:0:0 ea.)
On-the-job experience for students working on internships, work study programs, and other appropriate, historically oriented activities (maximum of 6 hours toward major).

400R. Paleography. (3:3:0 ea.) Independent Study also.
Interpretation of handwriting in vernacular and Latin scripts from North America, Great Britain, and other European countries—sixteenth through eighteenth centuries.

406R. North American Family History. (3:3:0 ea.)
In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in North America.
—Northeastern States and Canada
—Midwestern States and Canada
—Southern States
—Native American

407R. British Family History. (3:3:0 ea.)
In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Britain.
—England and Wales Since 1700
—England and Wales Before 1700
—Scotland and Ireland

408R. Scandinavian Family History. (3:3:0 ea.)
In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in Scandinavia.
—Denmark
—Norway and Iceland
—Sweden and Finland

409R. Germanic/Slavic Family History. (3:3:0 ea.)
In-depth examination of sources and problem solving in various Germanic- and Slavic-speaking countries.

410R. Southern European Family History. (3:3:0)
Records, geo-historical background, paleography, and methods for reconstruction of individual families; development of demographic and family history studies in Portugal, Spain, France, and Italy.

411R. Hispanic Family History. (3:3:0)
Records, geo-historical background, paleography, and methods for reconstruction of individual families; development of demographic and family history studies in Latin America and Spanish United States.

422. Oral History Interviewing and Processing. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Oral methods of research and writing history; focus on family histories. Techniques of interviewing; transcribing and processing interviews. Creating historical documents.

430R. (Hist-Clscs) Topics in Greek and Roman History. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Greek 201 (Greek topics) or Latin 201 (Roman topics).
Topics vary (e.g., rise of the Greek city-state, Greek political thought, classical historiography, Rome and the Etruscans, imperial Rome).

457. American Indian Military Campaigns. (3:3:0)
Military campaigns of the Indians and the United States government on the western frontier.

477. Methods of Teaching. (3:3:0) For history teaching majors. Prerequisite: concurrent registration in ScEd 476R.
Effective methods of teaching history in secondary schools; historical content taught at the secondary school level.

480. Seminar on Professional Family History Research. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Practicumin professional client research, report-writing, family history publishing, bookkeeping procedures, and running a family history business.

485. Junior Tutorial in History. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Hist 200.
Reading, discussing, and writing about selected historical issues.

490. Historical Research and Writing. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Hist 200, 485.
Research seminar; critical, analytical, and writing skills in preparation of a historical essay. Required of all history majors.

493R. Preparation for Accreditation in Family History. (3:3:0 ea.)
Directed research and instruction for completing the application/test for professional accreditation or certification in family history.

495R. Directed Research. (3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's prior consent.
Student research directed by faculty member on topic of mutual interest. Research assistants must do additional work for credit.

496R. Internship in Family History. (1–5:0:0 ea.)
Work with Department of History on various projects, under supervision of professional.

497R. Honors Readings. (1–3:0:Arr. ea.)

498R. Directed Readings. (1–3:3:Arr. ea.) Independent Study also.

499R. Honor's Thesis. (1–6:0:0 ea.)

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

500R. Special Studies in History. (1–3:3:0 ea.)
Directed by visiting or resident faculty. Check with department secretary for current topics and instructor.

561. Sources and Problems in Early America. (3:3:0)
Through the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. Required of American and European history graduate students.

562. Sources and Problems in Nineteenth-Century America. (3:3:0)
Through the nineteenth century. Required of American and European history graduate students.

563. Sources and Problems in Twentieth-Century America. (3:3:0)
Through the twentieth century. Required of American and European history graduate students.

587. Philosophies of History. (3:3:0)
Fundamental problems and types of historical analysis and interpretation, philosophies of history, and work of outstanding historians.

590R. Special Topics. (3:3:0 ea.)
Western American, religious, family, Asian, Latin American, and Near Eastern history.

598R. Special Readings in History. (1–2:0:Arr. ea.)

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Native American Studies

Fred R. Gowans, Coordinator
316 KMB, (801) 378-6841

Many American Indian and non-Indian students graduating from Brigham Young University in studies such as education, sociology, business, and political science will be brought into contact with the Native American people because of the nature of their occupations.

The Native American Studies minor is designed to supplement students of various disciplines so that they may become more culturally aware of the heritage of the American Indian, thus promoting better understanding and cooperation.

The minor has been designed so that students may select classes from a variety of interdepartmental courses, if desiring a general background, or a combination of classes for an in-depth study in a specific discipline.

In connection with the American Studies program offered at Brigham Young University, students can obtain a major in American Studies, with course work designed to emphasize the Native American.

Make application to or obtain further information from the coordinator.

Minor Native American Studies (22 hours)

1. Complete the following core courses:
   Engl 395R.
   Hist 223, 369, 490.
   NAS 101.
2. Select 8 hours from the following:
   Anthr 317.
   Hist 207, 362, 363, 406R, 457, 498R.
   NAS 111, 307, 369R.

Note: This minor may also be used for a secondary education teaching minor.

Native American Studies (NAS)

Undergraduate Courses

101. Introduction to Indian America. (2:2:0)
Modular course surveying historical and contemporary Indian America: history, culture, language, literature, art, music, education, and current problems.

111. American Indian Art Appreciation. (2:2:0)
History and appreciation of functional and aesthetic aspects of Native American art forms, prehistoric to present.

307. Contemporary Issues in Indian America. (3:3:0)
Sociocultural factors that affect twentieth-century native Americans in both urban and reservation settings.

369R. Special Topics. (1–3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: department's consent.

History Faculty

Professors

Alexander, Thomas G. (1964) AS, Weber Coll., 1955; BS, MS, Utah State U., 1960, 1961; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1965.
Britsch, R. Lanier (1966) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1964; PhD, Claremont Graduate School, 1967.
Brown, Kendall W. (1991) BA, Brigham Young U., 1973; MA, PhD, Duke U., 1975, 1979.
Fox, Frank W. (1971) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1966, 1969; PhD, Stanford U., 1973.
Gowans, Frederick R. (1972) BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1963, 1972.
Green, Arnold H. (1985) BA, California State U., Los Angeles, 1965; MA, Brigham Young U., 1967; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1973.
Harline, Craig E. (1992) BA, Brigham Young U., 1980; MA, PhD, Rutgers, 1984, 1986.
Madsen, Carol Cornwall (1980) BA, MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1951, 1977, 1985.
Montgomery, David C. (1970) BA, Brigham Young U., 1961; MA, PhD, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1966, 1971.
Pixton, Paul B. (1974) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1965, 1967; PhD, U. of Iowa, 1972.
Pratt, David H. (1966) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1969; PhD, U. of Nebraska, Lincoln, 1975.
Thorp, Malcolm Ray (1969) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1967; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1972.
Tobler, Douglas F. (1967) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1962; PhD, U. of Kansas, 1967.
Walker, Ronald W. (1980) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1965; MS, Stanford U., 1968; PhD, U. of Utah, 1977.
York, Neil Longley (1977) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1973, 1975; PhD, U. of California, Santa Barbara, 1978.

Associate Professors

Bohac, Rodney D. (1983) BA, U. of Nebraska (1974); MA, PhD, U. of Illinois, 1975, 1982.
Hamblin, William J. (1990) BA, Brigham Young U., 1978; MA, PhD, U. of Michigan, 1981, 1985.
Hartley, William G. (1980) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1969.
Holmes, Blair R. (1971) BA, Brigham Young U., 1966; MA, PhD, U. of Colorado, 1968, 1972.
Richards, Mary Stovall (1983) BA, Brigham Young U., 1973; AM, PhD, U. of Chicago, 1976, 1983.

Assistant Professors

Butler, Lee A. (1994) BA, Brigham Young U., 1983; PhD, Princeton U., 1991.
Cannon, Brian Q. (1992) BA, Brigham Young U., 1984; MA, Utah State U., 1986; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, 1992.
Daynes, John Gary (1997) BA, Brigham Young U., 1990; MA, PhD, U of Delaware, 1996.
Daynes, Kathryn (1994) BA, DePauw U., 1973; MA, PhD, Indiana U., 1975, 1991.
Doxey, Gary B. (1994) BA, JD, Brigham Young U., 1980, 1984; PhD, Cambridge U., 1992.
Fox, William (1966) BS, MA, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1966, 1983.
Garcia, Ignacio (1995) BA, Texas A&I U., 1976; MA, PhD, U. of Arizona, 1989, 1995.
Grandstaff, Mark R. (1993) BS, Embry-Riddle Aeronautical U., 1980, MA, Brigham Young U., 1984; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1992.
Haslam, Gerald M. (1991) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1972, 1974; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1981.
Miller, Shawn W. (1997) BA, Brigham Young U., 1990; MA, PhD, Columbia U., 1992, 1996.
Pearcy, Thomas L. (1991) BA, MA, Purdue U., 1985, 1987; PhD, U. of Miami, 1993.
Rugh, Susan Sessions (1997) BA, Brigham Young U., 1974; MA, PhD, U. of Chicago, 1986, 1993.
Ryskamp, George R. (1993) BA, JD, Brigham Young U., 1974, 1979.
Westover, V. Robert (1971) BA, MA, PhD, Arizona State U., 1965, 1968, 1979.
Wright, David C. (1992) BA, Brigham Young U., 1987; MA, PhD, Princeton U., 1991, 1993.

Emeriti

Addy, George M. (1957) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1948, 1950; PhD, Duke U., 1957.
Allen, James B. (1963) BS, Utah State U., 1954; MA, Brigham Young U., 1956; PhD, U. of Southern California, 1963.
Arrington, Leonard J. (1972) BA, U. of Idaho, 1939; PhD, U. of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1952.
Cardon, Louis B. (1960) BA, U. of Arizona, 1950; MA, PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1957, 1965.
Flammer, Philip M. (1973) BS, Utah State U., 1953; MA, George Washington U., 1958; PhD, Yale U., 1963.
Hill, Marvin S. (1966) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1955; PhD, U. of Chicago, 1968.
Hyer, Paul V. (1957) BA, Brigham Young U., 1951; MA, PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1953, 1960.
Jagchid, Sechin (1972) BA, PhD, Peking U., China, 1937, 1939.
Jensen, De Lamar (1957) BA, Brigham Young U., 1952; MA, PhD, Columbia U., 1953, 1957.
Johansson, Carl-Erik (1969) BA, MS, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1973.
Marlow, H. Carleton (1964) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1959; PhD, U. of Oklahoma, 1966.
Warner, Ted J. (1962) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1958; PhD, U. of New Mexico, 1963.
Wood, Joseph S. (1967) BS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1939, 1967.
Wright, Norman Edgar (1964) BS, Brigham Young U., 1956; MAG, Utah State U., 1958.

The following persons in other departments have also been granted academic rank by the Department of History:

Baker, Legrand (Lee Library) Assistant Professor
Embry, Jessie (Charles Redd Center) Associate Research Professor
Hall, John F., III (Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature) Professor
Huntsman, Eric D. (Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature) Assistant Professor
Whittaker, David J. (Lee Library) Associate Professor

Charles Redd Center for Western Studies

Edward A. Geary, Director
4069 HBLL, (801) 378-4048

Activities of the Center

Established in January 1972 under an endowment from Charles Redd, a prominent Utah stockman and philanthropist, the Charles Redd Center for Western Studies is charged with promoting the study of all aspects of the American West. Programs of the center include conducting research on the American West, publishing a monograph series, sponsoring lectures and symposia, conducting an oral history program, assisting professional and student research through grants and fellowships, providing consultation services on oral history, and assisting public school students through the Utah History Fair. Center personnel also teach classes in academic departments on campus.

Chair Holder: Lemuel Hardison Redd, Jr., Professor of Western American History.
Alexander, Thomas G. (1964) AS, Weber Coll., 1955; BS, MS, Utah State U., 1960, 1961; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1965.

Professor
Geary, Edward A., Professor of English (1968) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1963; PhD, Stanford U., 1971.

Instructor and Oral History Program Director
Embry, Jessie L. (1979) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1973, 1974.

Emeriti
Allen, James B. (1963) BS, Utah State U., 1954; MA, Brigham Young U., 1956; PhD, U. of Southern California, 1963.
Arrington, Leonard J., Lemuel Hardison Redd, Jr., Professor of Western American History.

Advisory Council
Alexander, Thomas G., Professor of History, BYU
Allen, James B., Professor of History, BYU
Backman, Milton V., Jr., Professor of Church History and Doctrine, BYU
Beecher, Maureen, Research Associate Professor, Joseph Fielding Smith Institute for Church History.
Brady, Margaret K., Professor of English and Folklore, U of U
Christy, Howard A., Senior Editor, Scholarly Publications, BYU
Cornwall, Marie, Department of Sociology, BYU
Flake, Chad J., Senior Librarian, BYU
Gardner, John H., Professor of Physics and Astronomy, BYU
Geary, Edward A., Professor of English, BYU
Jackson, Richard H., Professor of Geography, BYU
Janetski, Joel C., Assistant Professor of Anthropology, BYU
Leonard, Glen M., Director, Museum of Church History and Art
Magleby, David B., Associate Professor of Political Science, BYU
Mitchell, Regina, Salt Lake City, Utah
Peterson, Charles S., St. George, Utah.
Peterson, F. Ross, Professor of History and Director, Mountain West Center for Regional Studies, USU
Peterson, Levi, Professor of English, Weber State U.
Pope, Clayne L., Professor of Economics, BYU
Swenson, Sharon L., Assistant Professor of Theatre and Media Arts, BYU

Home Economics

See Family Sciences.

Horticulture

See Agronomy and Horticulture.

Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature

George S. Tate, Chair
3010-A JKHB, PO Box 26048, (801) 378-4448

College of Humanities Advisement Center
3078 JKHB, PO Box 26101, (801) 378-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Humanities

BA Humanities
Emphases:
- Art History
- English
- Classical Studies
- Comparative Literature
- Foreign Literature
- History
- Music
- Philosophy

BA Humanities–English Composite Teaching
BA Humanities–French Composite Teaching
BA Humanities–German Composite Teaching
BA Humanities–History Composite Teaching
BA Humanities–Japanese Composite Teaching
BA Humanities–Latin Composite Teaching
BA Humanities–Russian Composite Teaching
BA Humanities–Spanish Composite Teaching
Minor Humanities

Classics

BA Classical Studies
Emphases:
- Classical Civilization
- Classics
- Greek
- Latin

BA Latin Teaching
Minors Classical Studies
Latin Teaching

Comparative Literature

BA Comparative Literature

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA Comparative Literature
MA Humanities

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Humanities

The Discipline

The term *humanities* refers to the study of human intellectual and artistic creativity and the record of human experience as seen in the arts. It is an interdisciplinary major drawing from history, fine arts, literature, intellectual history, music, foreign languages, etc. In this major the student focuses on the arts as modes of human expression and how the arts combine to give a unique view of what it has meant to be human through the ages—and how they continue to influence us today. Besides teaching the interrelatedness of the arts, the study of humanities emphasizes the relationships between the arts and other aspects of human culture and society.

The major offers students unusual latitude in developing a broad and full program in the liberal arts, as well as developing skills in reasoning, language, writing, and library use—all essential elements for later independent learning as well as for functioning well in society.

Career Opportunities

The interdisciplinary nature of the major makes it an excellent preparation for graduate work in humanistic disciplines and professional schools and also for a wide range of employment,

including secondary teaching. Humanities graduates going directly into the work force commonly find professional employment in education, business, government, tourism, and civil or foreign service. Those going on to graduate school usually work toward the doctorate or attend professional programs in such disciplines as library science, law, business, public administration, and medicine.

BA Humanities (56–84 hours*)

Students may select one of eight emphases: art, English, Classical Studies, comparative literature, foreign literature, history, music, or philosophy.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. When possible, honors sections are recommended.
3. Complete the following historical foundation courses:
   Hum 101, 201, 202, 261, 262.
   ClCv 110 or 241.
   Hum 240 or 242.
4. Select 9 hours (3 hours in each category) from the following traditional humanistic skills courses:
   a. Complete an upper-division foreign language course beyond the GE requirement. Where possible, this course should be a literature course in which works are read in the foreign language; conversation courses do not meet this requirement. The aim of the requirement is twofold: (1) to assure that students acquire an ability to read literary works in a foreign language and (2) to provide students with a linguistic tool for doing research in humanistic disciplines. This means that, to qualify, the language chosen must have a written literary tradition and must be a language of scholarship. The requirement may be met with European, Asian, or Near-Eastern languages. French, German, Italian, Russian, Spanish, Chinese, and Japanese are especially recommended, as are classical Greek and Latin. (Please note that ASL or music do not fill this requirement.)
   b. Hum 350 (prerequisite: Engl 311 or Phil 311; Hum 201, 202, and at least three of the remaining historical foundation courses [item 3 above]).
   c. Phil 110, 213, 214.
5. Select 6 hours of problems and issues courses from the following:
   Hum 420R, 425R, 430R, 440R, 460R, 490R.
6. Complete a core of 12 hours (more if music) in an area of emphasis. (Philosophy or foreign literature courses taken to meet requirement 4 above may *not* count toward emphases in philosophy and literature.) Courses toward the emphasis area are to be selected from the an approved list of courses to be obtained from your advisement center. Exceptions must be cleared by the humanities section head. At least 6 of the 12 hours must be in upper-division courses.
7. Supporting course work (8–9 hours): This block of course work can be selected in a variety of ways, depending on the student's emphasis or career plans. Two requirements govern the selection of courses: (1) they must be a coherent block and (2) they must be approved in writing by the student's departmental advisor. The following are possibilities:
   a. Students in *general humanities* or students desiring to pursue a *graduate degree in a humanistic discipline* will use this block to strengthen the emphasis area either by further work in the emphasis area proper or by coherent course work (e.g., period concentration, area studies, etc.) in related humanities fields. The list of approved courses for the emphasis area may be used as a guide, but other courses (e.g., in humanities, classical civilization, or honors humanities) may also be approved.
   b. For students wishing to certify in *secondary teaching* with a humanities composite teaching major, the supporting course work requirement will be filled by the professional education classes. See the Secondary Education section of this catalog for these requirements.
   c. Students wishing to combine a humanities major with preparation for *professional schools* (e.g., MBA programs) that may require quantitative skills beyond those already acquired may use this block of supporting course work to acquire and strengthen those skills (e.g., CS 133, Acc 200, Econ 110, or Math 119). Other *preprofessional* blocks of course work (law, medicine, management communications, etc.) may also be approved by the humanities section head.
   d. Any university minor will also qualify.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Humanities Composite Teaching (74–113 hours,* including certification hours)

Students may select one of the following composite majors: English, history, or foreign language in either French, German, Japanese, Latin, Russian, or Spanish.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. When possible, honors sections are recommended.
3. Complete the following historical foundation courses:
   Hum 101, 201, 202, 261, 262.
   ClCv 110 or 241.
   Hum 240 or 242
4. Select 9 hours (3 hours in each category) from the following traditional humanistic skills courses:
   a. Complete an upper-division foreign language course beyond the GE requirement. Where possible, this course should be a literature course in which works are read in the foreign language; conversation courses do not meet this requirement. The aim of the requirement is twofold: (1) to assure that students acquire an ability to read literary works in a foreign language and (2) to provide students with a linguistic tool for doing research in humanistic disciplines. This means that, to qualify, the language chosen must have a written literary tradition and must be a language of scholarship. The requirement may be met with European, Asian, or Near-Eastern languages. French, German, Italian, Russian, Spanish, Chinese, and Japanese are especially recommended, as are classical Greek and Latin. (Please note that ASL or music do not fill this requirement.)
   b. Hum 350 (Prerequisite: Engl 311 or Phil 311; Hum 201, 202, and at least three of the remaining historical foundation courses [item 3 above]).
   c. Phil 110, 213, 214.
5. Select 6 hours of problems and issues courses from the following:
   Hum 420R, 425R, 430R, 440R, 460R, 490R.
6. Complete an area of emphasis. (Philosophy or foreign literature courses taken to meet requirement 4 above may *not* count toward emphases in philosophy and literature.) Courses toward the emphasis area are to be selected from the

approved course list available from your advisement center. Exceptions must be cleared by the humanities section head.

7. Complete the Professional Education Component (25–26 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Humanities (18 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Hum 101, 201, 202, 350.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Hum 240, 242, 261, 262.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Hum 420R, 425R, 430R, 440R, 460R, 490R.
4. Complete the GE Advanced Languages requirement using the foreign language option (Please note that ASL does not meet this requirement for the humanities minor. For the rationale, see item 4.a. under humanities major.)

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Humanities (Hum)

Undergraduate Courses

101. An Introduction to the Humanities. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Study of the arts emphasizing forms and relationships, the development of critical skills, and an awareness of traditional humanistic values.

201. Arts in Western Culture 1. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance from perspective of traditional humanistic values reflected in its arts and ideas. Examines fundamental questions about human experience, formative events in history, and value of important literary and artistic texts.

202. Arts in Western Culture 2. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Western civilization from Renaissance to present from perspective of traditional humanistic values reflected in its arts and ideas. Examines fundamental questions about human experience, formative events in history, and value of important literary and artistic texts.

240. Introduction to the Humanities of Asia. (3:3:0)
Major arts of Asian cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

242. Introduction to the Humanities of the Islamic World. (3:3:0)
Major arts of Islamic cultures in their historical, religious, and philosophical settings.

261. Introduction to American Humanities 1: Colonial Era Through 1876. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Value systems reflected in the arts and ideas of the United States from the colonial era to 1876.

262. Introduction to American Humanities 2: 1877 to the Present. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Value systems reflected in the arts and ideas of the United States from 1877 to the present.

270R. European Humanities and the Arts. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Only offered on Study Abroad programs in London and Vienna.

290R. Special Studies in the Humanities. (3:0:0 ea.)

350. Interpretation of Literature and the Arts. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Engl 311 or Phil 311; Hum 201, 202; at least three of the remaining historical foundation courses (item 3 under major requirements).
Understanding and writing about literature and at least one of the other arts; critical theory. Should be taken junior year.

420R. Studies in Periods and Movements. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Hum 350 or concurrent registration.
Interdisciplinary study of literature, philosophy, and the arts of a particular period or movement. Problems of periodization. Topics vary.

425R. Area Studies in the Humanities. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Hum 350 or concurrent registration.
Interdisciplinary study of literature, philosophy, and the arts of a particular geographical area. Topics include American, Latin American, and Asian humanities. Topics vary.

430R. Genres and Forms in the Humanities. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Hum 350 or concurrent registration.
Interdisciplinary study of genres and forms. Topics include epic, tragedy, narrative, historiography, film, relationship of text and music. Topics vary.

440R. Themes in the Humanities. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Hum 350 or concurrent registration.
Interdisciplinary study of themes. Topics include Eden, Arthur, Don Juan, Faust, Ulysses, Troy. Topics vary.

460R. Critical Theory and Methodology. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Hum 350 or concurrent registration.
Theoretical and practical criticism; problems in critical theory. Topics include aesthetics, interrelations of the arts, models of cultural history, cultural theory, and aspects of contemporary theory. Topics vary.

490R. Seminar in the Humanities. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Hum 350 or concurrent registration.
Interdisciplinary study of problems and major figures in the humanities. Topics vary.

495R. Directed Readings. (1–3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: contract and instructor's consent.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.)

Graduate Courses

For 500- and 600-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Classics

The Discipline

Classical Studies examine ancient Greek and Roman cultures—their languages, literature, history, religion, art, and philosophy.

The major offers essential knowledge of philology, ancient history, archaeology, biblical studies, and the literary tradition of Western Europe, as well as traditional grounding in the Classics. Students acquire important foreign-language study skills that include careful reading, thoughtful writing, and persuasive speaking. Latin is the mother language not only of Italian, French, and Spanish, but in a real sense of English as well. Its study will especially enhance one's understanding of English vocabulary, grammar, and rhetorical structure.

Greek and Roman History. Classics has the responsibility for staffing and administering offerings in Greek and Roman history. Courses in these fields are offered under Classical Civilization, Classics, Greek, and Latin. Some of these courses are cross-listed with history, and several may count toward a history major. See the History section of this catalog for details.

Classical Civilization. Classical Civilization courses presuppose no knowledge of the Greek or Latin languages and are open to all students. They are especially recommended for those who want to understand the ancient traditions underlying modern culture.

Career Opportunities

Majors in Classical Studies find employment in a variety of fields, including business, education, library science, tourism, and civil and foreign service. They are also excellent candidates for graduate work in other humanities-related disciplines and professional schools (law, business, and medicine).

BA Classical Studies: Classical Civilization Emphasis (43 hours*)

Emphasizes Classical Civilization, with work in either Greek or Latin.

Major Requirements

1. Select one course from the following:
   ClCv 110, 201.
2. Complete the following:
   ClCv 241, 304, 307, 361, 362.
   Clscs 420.
3. Select one of the following options:
   a. Greek 201, 301, 302.
   b. Latin 201, 301, 302.
4. Select 3 hours from the following in the same language as above:
   Greek 411R, 430, 431, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 490R.
   Latin 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 479, 490R.
5. Select three courses from the following:
   ClCv 121, 122, 245, 246, 261, 310, 340R, 355.
   Clscs 430R, 490R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Classical Studies: Classics Emphasis (50 hours*)

Emphasizes Greek and Latin literature and language, with some work in Classical Civilization.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Select one course from the following:
   ClCv 110, 201, 241.
3. Complete the following:
   ClCv 304, 307.
   Clscs 420.
   Greek 201, 301, 302.
   Latin 201, 301, 302.
4. Select one course from the following:
   ClCv 361, 362.
5. Select one course from the following:
   Greek 321.
   Latin 321.
6. Select four additional courses (two Greek, two Latin) from the following:
   Clscs 430R, 490R, or any 400-level course in Greek or Latin.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Classical Studies: Greek Emphasis (37 hours*)

Emphasizes Greek language and literature, with some work in Greek civilization.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Select one course from the following:
   ClCv 110, 201, 241.
3. Complete the following:
   ClCv 304, 361.
   Clscs 420.
   Greek 201, 301, 302, 321.
4. Select 12 hours from the following:
   Clscs 430R, 490R.
   Greek 311, 411R, 430, 431, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 490R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Classical Studies: Latin Emphasis (37 hours*)

Emphasizes Latin language and literature, with some work in Roman civilization.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Select one course from the following:
   ClCv 110, 201, 241.
3. Complete the following:
   ClCv 307, 362.
   Clscs 420.
   Latin 201, 301, 302, 321.
4. Select 12 hours from the following:
   Clscs 430R, 490R.
   Latin 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 479, 490R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Latin Teaching (81–87 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. An approved teaching minor is required (approximately 16–21 hours).
3. Complete the following:
   Latin 201, 301, 302, 321, 377.
   ClCv 307, 362.
   Clscs 420.

4. Select one course from the following:
   ClCv 110, 201, 241.
5. Select 12 hours from the following:
   Clscs 430R, 490R.
   Latin 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 479, 490R.
6. Complete the Professional Education Component (25–26 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Classical Studies (Classical Civilization option) (21 hours)

1. Complete 15 hours of course work in Classical Civilization.
2. Complete 6 additional hours in Classical Civilization or in Latin and Greek beyond the 100-level.

Minor Classical Studies (Classics option) (25 hours)

1. Complete 19 hours of course work in Latin or Greek beyond the 100-level.
2. Complete 6 hours of course work in Latin, Greek, or Classical Civilization.

Minor Classical Studies (Greek option) (22 hours)

1. Complete 16 hours of course work in Greek beyond Greek 102.
2. Complete 6 hours of course work in Greek, Classical Civilization, or Classics.

Minor Classical Studies (Latin option) (22 hours)

1. Complete 16 hours of course work in Latin beyond Latin 102 and 111.
2. Complete 6 hours of course work in Latin, Classical Civilization, or Classics.

Minor Latin Teaching (22 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Latin 201, 301, 302, 321, 377.
2. Select 6 hours from the following:
   Latin 430, 431, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 490R.

   Note: One course from ClCv 246, 307, 340R, 362, or Clscs 430R may be substituted.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Classical Civilization (ClCv)

Undergraduate Courses

110. Introduction to Greek and Roman Literature. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Homer's *Iliad*, Sophocles' *Oedipus the King*, Vergil's *Aeneid*, and other important works of the Greeks and Romans. All readings in English.

121. Warfare in Ancient Greece and Rome. (3:3:0)
Military history of ancient Greece and Rome with emphasis on organization, tactics, strategy, major commanders, and important battles.

122. Greek and Roman Religion. (3:3:0)
Worship and cults in ancient Greece and Rome from the archaic period through the demise of Greco-Roman religion with the triumph of Christianity.

201. The Classical Tradition 1: Antiquity to the Renaissance. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Civilization from Greek and Roman antiquity to the Italian Renaissance, emphasizing Greco-Roman culture—its institutions, literature, arts, and ideas.

202. The Classical Tradition 2: Reformation to Modern. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Civilization from the Reformation to the twentieth century, emphasizing the heritage of Greco-Roman culture—its institutions, literature, arts, and ideas.

241. Greek and Roman Mythology. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Greek and Roman gods, heroes, and myths, emphasizing literature but also giving attention to representations in the visual arts.

245. Golden Age of Greece. (3:3:0)
History of Civilization, culture, and daily life of Greece as indicated through its literature, art, history, and archaeology. All readings in English.

246. Golden Age of Rome. (3:3:0)
History of Civilization, culture, and daily life of Rome as indicated through its literature, art, history, and archaeology. All readings in English.

261. Greek and Roman Civilization and Literature in Film. (3:3:0)
Literature and civilization of ancient Greece and Rome as depicted in modern film with attendant problems of accuracy and historicity.

304. (ClCv-Hist) Greek History. (3:3:0)
Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Greece from Mycenaean times to the Hellenistic period.

307. (ClCv-Hist) Roman History. (3:3:0)
Political, economic, social, and intellectual history of Rome from the foundation of the city to Constantine.

310. Classical Archaeology. (3:3:0)
Major excavations and antiquities of the Mediterranean region illustrating Greco-Roman history.

340R. Topics in Classical Literature and Civilization. (3:3:0 ea.)
Classical literary genres; rhetorical, philosophical, and historical writings; relationships of art and literature; or the classical tradition in the Middle Ages and Renaissance. Topics vary.

355. (ClCv-Engl) Greek and Roman Classics and the English Tradition. (3:3:0)
Major works by such authors as Homer, the Greek and Roman tragedians, Thucydides, Vergil, and Petronius in English translation, emphasizing their influence on English and American literature.

361. Survey of Greek Literature. (3:3:0)
Development and interrelation of literary genres of ancient Greece, e.g., epic and lyric poetry, tragedy, history, philosophy, etc. Texts read in English.

362. Survey of Latin Literature. (3:3:0)
Development and interrelation of the literary genres of ancient Rome, e.g., comedy, poetry, history, oratory, etc. Texts read in English.

Classical Greek (Greek)

Undergraduate Courses

101. First-Year Greek (First Semester). (4:4:0)

102. First-Year Greek (Second Semester). (4:4:0)

201. Intermediate Greek. (4:4:0) Prerequisite: Greek 102 or 111.
Readings from Xenophon with review and continuation of grammar.

301. Classical Greek Poetry: Homer's *Iliad*. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Greek 201.

302. Classical Greek Prose. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: Greek 201.

311. New Testament in Greek: Gospels. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Greek 201.

321. Third-Year Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Greek 302.
Exercises in composing Greek prose.

411R. Topics in New Testament Greek. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Greek 311.
Readings from the Gospels, the Pauline or general epistles, or the Apocalypse. Topics vary.

430. Herodotus. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Greek 302.

431. Homer's *Odyssey*. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Greek 301.

433. Thucydides. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Greek 302.

434. Sophocles and Euripides. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Greek 301.

435. Greek Lyric Poetry. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Greek 301.

436. Plato. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Greek 302.
Reading and analysis of Greek text of selected dialogues by Plato (e.g., *The Republic, Meno, Protagoras*).

437. Attic Orators. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Greek 302.

490R. Topics in Greek Literature. (1–3:3:0 ea.)
Topics vary.

Modern Greek (GrkM)

Undergraduate Courses

***101, *102. First-Year Modern Greek.** (4:4:0 ea.)
Basic language skills.

***201. Second-Year Modern Greek.** (4:4:0)
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

***211. Second-Year Conversation.** (2:2:0) Prerequisite: GrkM 201 or equivalent experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

230 Historical Development of Greek Language. (4:4:0)
Course is required for returned missionaries taking language credit examination. Development of modern Greek from classical Greek, with primary emphasis on introductory elements of latter.

247. Cultural and Literary History of Greece. (3:3:0)
Civilization, culture, and daily life of Greece as indicated through its literature, art, history, and archaeology. All readings in English.

*Credit by examination only. Enrollment in GrkM 230 is required to take language credit examination that is administered in that course for 101, 102, 201, and 211 credit. Language GE credit is fulfilled by completing in addition to these requirements GrkM 247.

Classical Latin (Latin)

Undergraduate Courses

101. First-Year Latin (First Semester). (4:4:0)

102. First-Year Latin (Second Semester). (4:4:0) Prerequisite: Latin 101 or two years of high school Latin.

111. Beginning Latin Accelerated. (5:5:0) Honors also.
Equivalent of combined Latin 101, 102. Prepares students for Latin 201.

121. Latin for Genealogists. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.

122. Prelegal Latin. (2:2:0)
Recommended for prelaw and current law students (usually taught in the evening).

123. Premedical Latin and Greek. (2:2:0)
For premedical and predental students and students in the physical and natural sciences (usually taught in the evening).

201. Intermediate Latin. (4:4:0) Prerequisite: Latin 102, 111, or three years of high school Latin.
Readings from Caesar, with a review and continuation of grammar.

301. Classical Latin Poetry. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 201.
Selections from Vergil's *Aeneid* and Ovid's *Metamorphoses*.

302. Classical Latin Prose. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 201.
Readings in Cicero's Catilinarian orations and Sallust's *Catiline*.

321. Third-Year Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 302 or concurrent registration.

377. Secondary Teaching Procedures. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: ScEd 276R; Latin 321 or equivalent.
Skills mastery, hearing, speaking, reading, writing, and identification of teacher-pupil activities required for conceptual learning. Lectures, demonstrations, and application of linguistic techniques to practical classroom requirements.

430. Livy. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 302.
Selections from Livy's *Ab Urbe Condita*.

431. Vergil. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 301.

432. Ovid. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 301.

433. Cicero. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 302.
Selections from the works of Cicero.

434. Plautus and Terence. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 301.

435. Catullus. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 301.

436. Tragedy and Epic of the Early Empire. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 301.
Selections from Seneca, Lucan, and the Flavian epic poets.

437. The Latin Epistle. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 302.
Letters of Cicero, Seneca, Pliny, and the later tradition.

438. Horace. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 301.

439. Tacitus. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 302.

440. Roman Satire. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 301.
Selections from Horace, Petronius, and Juvenal.

441. Medieval Latin. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Latin 301, 302.
Study of particular periods (e.g., Carolingian renaissance, twelfth-century renaissance) or genres (e.g., historiography, epic, autobiography), or survey of medieval Latin.

479. Secondary Student Teaching. (1–8:1:40) Prerequisite: ScEd 276R; Latin 321, 377.

490R. Topics in Latin Literature. (1–3:3:0 ea.)
Topics vary.

Classics (Clscs)

Undergraduate Courses

420. Ancient Literary Criticism. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Greek 302 or Latin 302.
Survey emphasizing both chief works of the tradition and their practical application to reading of Greek and Latin authors.

430R. (Clscs-Hist) Topics in Greek and Roman History. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Greek 201 (Greek topics) or Latin 201 (Roman topics).
Topics vary (e.g., rise of the Greek city-state, Greek political thought, classical historiography, Rome and the Etruscans, imperial Rome).

490R. Seminar in Classics. (3:3:0 ea.)
Combined topics in Greek and Latin (e.g., comparative epic poetry, classical tradition of criticism, Euripides and Seneca). Topics vary.

Comparative Literature

The Discipline

Comparative Literature is the study of literature in its totality. The Comparative Literature major not only acquaints students with literary study beyond the confines of any particular national tradition but also with the relationship between literature and other areas of knowledge. Combining the synthesizing skills and knowledge related to individual national literatures, the comparative literature major utilizes a wide range of linguistic and philosophical knowledge unique to an undergraduate program. Pursued as a major, the field offers students unusual latitude in developing a broad and full program in the liberal arts, as well as developing competence in reasoning, language, writing, and research—essential for later independent learning.

Career Opportunities

Comparative Literature majors are well prepared for graduate programs in languages and literature and for employment in the foreign service, library science, business, education, and tourism. In addition, comparative literature is an outstanding preprofessional major for those interested in law, public administration, management, and medicine.

BA Comparative Literature (36–71 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Acquire a thorough knowledge of two language traditions relevant to individual program of study (one of these may be English for students who emphasize the Anglo-American literary tradition)(approximately 16–32 hours). Competence will normally be demonstrated in course work, but an examination may be required. If planning advanced work in comparative literature, students should gain reading knowledge of both an additional modern language and a classical language.
2. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
3. CLit 310 and reading knowledge of at least one foreign language are prerequisite to all upper-division comparative literature courses.
4. During the final semester an exit examination on the BA reading list in comparative literature will be administered. This requirement must be met before graduation clearance can be given.
5. Course configuration must be approved by department advisor.
6. Complete the following:
   CLit 310 and two courses of 420R (different periods of study).
7. Complete four courses from the following:
   CLit 430R, 440R, 450R, 460R.
8. Select one of the following options:
   Either complete a literature course in Greek or Latin
   Or select one course from the following:
   ClCv 110 or 355.
9. The following courses deal with texts in the original language. These courses must be in addition to previous requirements. Although English courses may be taken, courses must be taken in at least one other language as well. Complete 12 hours from the following:
   Arab 461, 462, 531R.
   Chin 441, 442, 443, 444, 490R.
   Dansh 340.
   Dutch 340.
   Engl 333, 336, 341, 343, 361, 362, 363, 366, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 381, 382, 383, 395R, 500R, 510R.
   Finn 340.
   Fren 441, 442, 443, 444, 490R.
   Germ 430, 431, 440R, 441R, 442R, 490R, 498R.
   Greek 430, 431, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437.
   Heb 431, 441, 442, 443, 444.
   Ital 441, 442, 443, 444, 460, 490R.
   Japan 441, 444, 490R.
   Korea 340, 443, 490R.
   Latin 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 438, 439, 440, 441, 490R.
   Norwe 340
   Phil 214.
   Port 441, 451.
   Russ 441, 442, 490R.
   Span 441, 451, 461R, 490.
   Swed 340.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Comparative Literature (CLit)

Undergraduate Courses

201. History of Civilization: Literature 1. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Major world civilizations from antiquity to early Italian Renaissance, emphasizing socioeconomic, political, intellectual, and aesthetic developments, with primary focus on literary texts.

202. History of Civilization: Literature 2. (3:3:0) Honors also. Prerequisite: CLit 201.
Major world civilizations from Europe's High Renaissance to modern times, emphasizing socioeconomic, political, intellectual, and aesthetic developments, with primary focus on literary texts.

310. Introduction to Literary Analysis and Comparative Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: reading knowledge of at least one foreign language.
Methods of literary analysis, emphasizing basic issues of comparative literature and prosody and other problems related to foreign language texts.

420R. Studies in Periods and Movements. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: CLit 310 or Hum 350 or concurrent registration.
Topics vary.

430R. Studies in Literary Genres. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: CLit 310 or concurrent registration.
Various genres (e.g., novel, epic, tragedy) and problems of genre. Topics vary.

440R. Studies in Themes and Types. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: CLit 310 or concurrent registration.
Major literary themes (e.g., Faust, Don Juan, Ulysses, Arthur), types, motifs, and problems of literary typology. Topics vary.

450R. Studies in Literary Relations. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: CLit 310 or concurrent registration.
Interrelations of national literatures and figures and of literature with other areas of knowledge (art, history, law, psychology, music, etc.). Topics vary.

460R. Studies in Literary Theory. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: CLit 310 or concurrent registration.
Topics vary.

490R. Directed Readings. (1–3:0:0 ea.)

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.)

Graduate Courses

For 500- and 600-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature Faculty

Professors
Bassett, Arthur R. (1972) BS, MRL, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1966; PhD, Syracuse U., 1975.
Britsch, Todd A., Academic Vice President (1966) BA, Brigham Young U., 1962; MA, PhD, Florida State U., 1965, 1966.
Hall, John F. (1978) BA, Brigham Young U., 1975; MA, PhD, U. of Pennsylvania, 1978, 1984.
Lounsbury, Richard C. (1982) BA, U. of Calgary, Canada, 1970; MA, PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1972, 1979.
Marshall, Donald R. (1971) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1965; PhD, U. of Connecticut, 1971.
Peer, Larry H. (1975) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1965; PhD, U. of Maryland, College Park, 1969.
Sondrup, Steven P., (1973) BA, U. of Utah, 1968; MA, PhD, Harvard U., 1969, 1974.
Tate, George S. (1974) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1970; PhD, Cornell U., 1974.

Associate Professors
Butler, Terrell M. (1979) BA, Brigham Young U., 1969; MA, PhD, Cornell U., 1972, 1979.
Call, Michael J. (1983) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1976; PhD, Stanford U., 1982.
Davis, Norma (1978) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1975.
Green, Jon D. (1970) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1968; PhD, Syracuse U., 1972.
Macfarlane, Roger T. (1989) BA, Brigham Young U., 1985; MA, PhD, U. of Michigan, 1987, 1991.
Shumway, Larry V. (1975) BA, Brigham Young U., 1960; MA, Seton Hall U., 1960; PhD, U. of Washington, 1974.

Assistant Professors
Benfell, V. Stanley (1993) BA, Brigham Young U., 1987; MA, PhD, New York U., 1990, 1994.
DeBloois, Nanci (1994) BA, MA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1981, 1983; PhD, U. of Iowa, 1994.
Duckwitz, Norbert H. O. (1969) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1972; AM, Harvard U., 1974; PhD, U. of Colorado, 1987.
Huntsman, Eric D. (1994) BA, Brigham Young U., 1990; MA, PhD, U. of Pennsylvania, 1992, 1997.
Parry, Joseph D. (1993) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1987; PhD, U. of Utah, 1994.
Phillips, Michael D. (1994) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1987, 1990; PhD, U. of Chicago, 1998.

Instructor
Peek, Cecilia M. (1996) BA, Brigham Young U., 1987; MA, U. of California, Berkeley, 1991.

Emeritius
Phillips, R. Douglas (1966) BA, Brigham Young U., 1962; MA, PhD, U. of Illinois, 1964, 1972.

Hungarian

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Icelandic

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Indian Languages, American

See Linguistics.

Information Management

See Management Communication.

Instructional Psychology and Technology

Paul F. Merrill, Chair
201 MCKB, PO Box 25090, (801) 378-5097

David O. McKay School of Education Advisement Center
120 MCKB, PO Box 25096, (801) 378-3426

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Instructional Psychology and Technology
PhD Instructional Psychology and Technology

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Instructional Psychology and Technology (IP&T)

Undergraduate Courses

The Department of Instructional Psychology and Technology does not offer a baccalaureate degree. However, undergraduate classes are offered as service courses to other departments in the School of Education. Some of these classes are cross-listed with other departments.

286. Instructional Technology in Teaching. (1–3:Arr.:Arr.) F, W, Sp, Su
Using instructional design, visual design, and differentiated staffing principles along with multimedia authoring systems, telecommunication, and other computer-based tools in the development of educational applications.

301. Educational Psychology. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su
Basic principles of educational psychology applied to teaching, including learning theory, instructional strategies, assessment of learning outcomes, and classroom inquiry.

470R. Undergraduate Research Training. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W
Introduction of undergraduate students to the concepts of research and evaluation through practical experience.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

515R. Special Topics in Instructional Science. (1–3:3:1 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su On dem.

551. Introduction to Quantitative Reasoning. (3:3:0) F, Su On dem.
Introduction to statistical reasoning and methodology. Emphasizes the meaning and use of quantitative methods in answering substantive questions of educational research and practice. Use of computer software packages.

560. Microcomputer Materials Production. (3:3:Arr.) W, Su
Prerequisite: IP&T 286 or 515R (Microcomputers in Schools).
Designing, programming, and debugging educational applications of microcomputers using a high-level computer language.

564. Instructional Design. (3:3:Arr.) F, Su
Identifying instructional problems; specifying objectives, instructional strategies, and media; analyzing learning outcomes; developing instructional materials and assessment instruments; validating instructional systems.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Instructional Psychology and Technology Faculty

Professors
Bunderson, C. Victor (1991) BS, U. of Utah, 1961; PhD, Princeton U., 1965.
Green, Edward E. (1972) BA, Brigham Young U., 1965; MS, EdD, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1970, 1972.
Harrison, Grant V. (1969) BA, Brigham Young U., 1963; MA, Adams State Coll. of Colorado, 1965; EdD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1969.
Merrill, Paul F. (1977) BS, Brigham Young U., 1967; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1970.
Osguthorpe, Russell T. (1978) BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1973, 1975.
Van Mondfrans, Adrian P. (1971) BS, MA, U. of Utah, 1963, 1964; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1967.

Associate Professors
Inouye, Dillon K. (1978) BS, Brigham Young U., 1973; PhD, Stanford, U., 1978.
Sudweeks, Richard R. (1980) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1973; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1978.
Williams, David D. (1980) BS, Brigham Young U., 1976; MA, Western Michigan U., 1978; PhD, U. of Colorado, 1981.

Assistant Professor
Nelson, Laurie M., (1997) BS, Brigham Young U., 1993; PhD, Indiana U., 1998.

Adjunct Faculty
Andrew S. Gibbons, Conrad A. Gottfredson, Ronald Edward Guymon, Trudy Kowallis, Richard Dwight Laws, James B. Olsen, Dwayne Rogers

Emeriti
Brown, J. Richard (1956) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1949, 1956.

International Development

See Kennedy Center for International Studies, David M.

International Studies

See Kennedy Center for International Studies, David M.

Italian

See French and Italian.

Japanese

See Asian and Near Eastern Languages.

Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies

R. J. Snow, Professor of Political Science, Director

Clark T. Thorstenson, Professor of Therapeutic Recreation and Gerontology, Associate Director

Rex Bennion, Assistant Director

Gary McBride, Academic Coordinator

Marilyn Snow, Librarian

General Information

1. The Brigham Young University Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies is an educational and cultural center created for study in the Near East, emphasizing religion, the humanities, and the social sciences. The Jerusalem Center has four principal goals:
   a. Provide students an opportunity to study the scriptures in the setting in which the patriarchs, prophets, and the Lord himself lived and taught, and by that study to gain understanding of and commitment to the truths of the gospel of Jesus Christ.
   b. Expand students' understanding of the religions, cultures, history, archaeology, geography, languages, and politics of the ancient and modern Near East.
   c. Foster research and creative endeavors by BYU faculty, students, and visiting scholars.
   d. Promote understanding with other peoples, cultures, and religious faiths that trace their roots to the Holy Land.
2. To achieve these goals, the Jerusalem Center offers a core curriculum with courses in the Old and New Testament and in the ancient and modern Near East. In addition, the center provides specialized courses in archaeology, geography, history, and culture of the Near East, including language study in Hebrew and Arabic.
3. The Jerusalem Center has marvelous physical facilities on Mount Scopus overlooking the oldest part of the city of Jerusalem. Classrooms, a library, a learning center, auditoriums, student and faculty apartments, a gymnasium and conditioning room, and a cafeteria provide a complete learning environment.

Academic Program

1. **Calendar and Program Emphasis.** Five programs are offered during the calendar year, scheduled to approximate the Provo campus calendar: fall semester (four-month program), winter semester/spring term (five-month program), spring term (two-month program), and two summer terms (two-month programs).
   a. The fall and winter semester programs are designed for students who are currently enrolled at a college or university seeking their first undergraduate degree. Most of the courses offered are at the upper-division level. Students are encouraged to prepare themselves in advance for this exceptional experience by taking such courses as PlSc 170, Geog 120, Hist 300, 302, Arab 101, Heb 101.
   b. The fall program includes field trips within the Holy Land and to Jordan and the Sinai. An optional field trip to Egypt follows the regular semester.
   c. The winter/spring program includes field trips to Egypt and Jordan in addition to those within the Holy Land and to the Sinai.
   d. The spring and summer term programs are open to students who are currently enrolled in a college or university seeking their first undergraduate degree. Recent high school graduates with the intention of pursuing a degree at a college or university are also eligible to enroll. Both lower- and upper-division survey courses with extensive field study are available. An optional field trip to Egypt follows the regular term program.
2. **Predeparture Orientation Course.** This seminar is taken the semester or term before a student's work at the Jerusalem Center.
3. **Curriculum.** The following subject areas are taught at the center:
   a. Biblical Studies: Old Testament and New Testament
   b. Ancient Near Eastern Studies
   c. Modern Near Eastern Studies
   d. Introductory course in either Hebrew or Arabic (required during fall and winter semesters; not offered during spring or summer terms).
   e. Elective courses in biblical studies, ancient and modern Near Eastern Studies, and archaeology as arranged each semester.

Note: Some courses taken at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies may be applied toward degrees in Near Eastern Studies, International Relations, and other majors in the College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences. Students should contact their advisement centers concerning specific degree requirements.

4. **Special Programs Offered Periodically at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies.** These programs include intensive modern Arabic, intensive modern Hebrew, and nursing.

Jerusalem Center

Undergraduate Courses

Courses offered at the Jerusalem Center are *not* offered on the Provo campus and hence cannot be retaken.

Orientation Course

NES 100. Jerusalem Center Orientation. (1:2:0) Prerequisite: application for a Jerusalem Center foreign study program.
Introduction to the peoples and cultures of the Near East. Required of all participants prior to departure.

Religion Courses

RelA 101. Old Testament Survey. (2:1.5:3)
Survey of Old Testament integrated with extensive field study in biblical world; leads to understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today. Offered as part of Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies spring and summer term programs.

RelA 111. New Testament Survey of the Gospels. (2:1.5:3)
Survey of New Testament Gospels integrated with extensive field experiences in biblical world; leads to understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today. Offered as part of Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies spring and summer term programs.

RelA 300. Old Testament Studies. (2:1.5:3) Prerequisite: at least junior standing.
Study of Old Testament integrated with extensive field experiences in biblical world; leads to understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today. Offered as part of Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies spring and summer term programs.

RelA 303. Old Testament Studies. (3:3:4)
Study of Old Testament integrated with extensive field experiences in biblical world; leads to understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today. Offered as part of Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies fall semester and winter/spring programs.

RelA 310. New Testament Studies of the Gospels. (2:1.5:3) Prerequisite: at least junior standing.
Study of New Testament Gospels integrated with extensive field experiences in biblical world; leads to understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today. Offered as part of Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies spring and summer term programs.

RelA 311. New Testament Studies of the Gospels. (3:2:4)
Study of New Testament Gospels integrated with extensive field experiences in biblical world; leads to understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today. Offered as part of Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies fall semester and winter/spring programs.

Near Eastern Studies Courses

NES 101R. Topics in Near Eastern Studies. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.)
Studies based on individual and program needs. Elective credit for major and minor in Near Eastern Studies. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only during fall semester and winter/spring programs.

NES 136. Introduction to Near Eastern Studies. (2:2:1)
Survey core course in social science/humanities. Elective credit for major and minor in Near Eastern Studies. Offered (as part of spring and summer term programs) at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only. Does not receive GE credit.

NES 326. Introduction to Near Eastern Studies. (2:2:1) Prerequisite: at least junior standing at the time of registration.
Social science/humanities core course. Elective credit for major and minor in Near Eastern Studies. Offered (as part of spring and summer term programs) at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only. Does not receive GE credit.

NES 336. Ancient Near Eastern Studies. (3:2:4)
Social science/humanities core course emphasizing ancient history extending to Byzantine period. Elective credit for major and minor in Near Eastern Studies. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only during fall semester and winter/spring programs. Does not receive GE credit.

NES 347. (NES-Hist) Arab and Islamic Civilization. (2:2:1)
Social science/humanities core course covering Arab and Islamic civilization; historical evolution of Middle East to present. Provides overview of modern Palestinian society. Elective credit for major and minor in Near Eastern Studies. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only during fall semester and winter/spring programs. Does not receive GE credit.

NES 349. (NES-Hist) Jewish Civilization. (2:2:1)
Social science/humanities core course; broad introduction to Jewish self-understanding and history, focusing on relationships among people, faith, and land. Elective credit for major and minor in Near Eastern Studies. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only during fall semester and winter/spring programs. Does not receive GE credit.

NES 398R. Advanced Topics in Near Eastern Studies. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.)
Studies based on individual and program needs. Elective credit for major and minor in Near Eastern Studies. Also offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies during all programs.

Language Courses

Arab 100. Introduction to Arabic. (1:1.5:0)
Beginning Arabic. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only during fall semester and winter/spring programs.

Heb 100. Introduction to Hebrew. (1:1.5:0)
Beginning Hebrew. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only during fall semester and winter/spring programs.

Heb 313. Readings in the Old Testament. (4:5:0) W
Readings in the Old Testament in Hebrew. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

Heb 321. Intermediate Conversation and Media. (3:3:0) W alt yr. Prerequisite: Heb 101, 102.
Capitalizing on daily life in Jerusalem to increase speaking, reading, writing, and listening comprehension in modern Hebrew. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

Heb 411R. Advanced Conversation. (4:4:4) Prerequisite: Heb 311R or equivalent.
Emphasizes conversation in everyday situations. Students role play various situations in class and then apply their learning in Jerusalem. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

Heb 421. Readings in the Hebrew Translation of the New Testament. (3:3:0) Sp alt yr.
Readings in the New Testament in Hebrew translation. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

Note: Heb 312 (Hebrew Media), Heb 313, Heb 411R (Advanced Conversation), and Heb 421 are offered in the intensive modern Hebrew program. Arab 312 (Arabic Media) and 411R (Advanced Conversation) are offered in the intensive modern Arabic program. The intensive Hebrew and Arabic programs are offered alternate years during the winter/spring program only.

Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies Faculty

Resident Faculty

Goldman, Judy, Instructor of Near Eastern Studies (Jerusalem Center)
Nazzal, Laila, Assistant Professor of Sociology (Jerusalem Center)
Nazzal, Nafez Y., Professor of Near Eastern Studies (Jerusalem Center)
Peterson, Paul H., Professor of Church History and Doctrine (BYU)
Rosen, David, Adjunct Professor of Near Eastern Studies (Jerusalem Center)
Snow, R. J., Professor of Political Science
Thorstenson, Clark T., Professor of Therapeutic Recreation and Gerontology.

In addition, faculty members on professional development leave from the following academic areas at Brigham Young University are selected for up to one-year teaching appointments at the Jerusalem Center: Religious Education, Near Eastern Studies, History, Political Science, and foreign languages. Faculty members are also selected from the Church Educational System, Ricks College, and BYU–Hawaii. Faculty members are expected to pursue an approved program of research, writing, and travel in addition to teaching courses.

Special Programs Faculty

Faculty members on professional development leave from Brigham Young University are also selected for teaching appointments in special programs at the Jerusalem Center: Arabic, Hebrew, and nursing.

Scholars in Residence

Selected faculty from Brigham Young University are associated with the Jerusalem Center during a one-semester to one-year stay in Jerusalem through a scholar-in-residence program. Scholars in residence can be appointed from a wide range of academic areas at the university.

David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies

Donald Holsinger, Professor of Education, Director
237 HRCB, PO Box 24526, (801) 378-3377

Jeffrey F. Ringer, Assistant Director

Eric Hyer, Professor of Political Science, Director of Graduate Studies and Research

Mark A. Peterson, Professor of Korean, Director of Undergraduate Studies

Rodney B. Boynton, Director of Study Abroad

Cory W. Leonard, Director of Student Programs (Outreach, Model U.N., International Career Center)

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center (for International Studies)
2254 SFLC, PO Box 26797, (801) 378-3541

College of Humanities Advisement Center (for American Studies, Asian Studies, Canadian Studies, European Studies, Latin American Studies, and Near Eastern Studies)
3078 JKHB, PO Box 26101, (801) 378-4789

David M. Kennedy Center Advisory Committee Coordinators

American Studies, Neil L. York
Asian Studies, J. Scott Miller
Canadian Studies, Earl H. Fry
European Studies, Hans Kelling
International Studies, Chad Emmett
Latin American Studies, Thomas Pearcy
Near Eastern Studies, Victor Ludlow

Admission to Degree Program

Some degree programs in this department carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

Each of the David M. Kennedy Center programs is designed to create greater sensitivity and understanding of the world in which we live. These programs meet the needs of students interested in liberal education as well as those interested in international careers.

Career Opportunities

Due to the multidisciplinary nature of international and area studies, students may tailor their academic preparation for a career in business, government, law, media, or education or in more specific areas such as intelligence, foreign service, cultural brokering, development, intergovernmental organizations, or nongovernmental organizations. The International Career Center, located in 273 HRCB (international_career@byu.edu), guides students of any major with their preparation for an international career. The ICC hosts international career-oriented lectures and offers advisement, employment and graduate school information, and networking assistance.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA American Studies
BA Asian Studies
BA European Studies
BA International Studies
  Emphases
    Development
    Global Trade
    International Law and Diplomacy
BA Latin American Studies
BA Near Eastern Studies

Minors
- African Studies
- Ancient Near Eastern Studies
- Arab-Islamic Studies
- Asian Studies
- Canadian Studies
- Chinese Studies
- European Studies
- French Studies
- German Studies
- International Development
- International Studies
- Italian Studies
- Japanese Studies
- Korean Studies
- Latin American Studies
- Jewish Studies
- Modern Near Eastern Studies
- Multicultural Education (Asian Studies, Latin American Studies, Near Eastern Studies)
- Russian Studies
- Spanish Studies

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA	International and Area Studies
MA/MOB	International Development
MA/MBA	International Relations
MA/MBA	Asian Studies

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

1. All students majoring in David M. Kennedy Center programs are encouraged to seek a meaningful experience with a foreign culture as part of their academic program. Credit earned while participating in a university-sponsored Study Abroad program, the Washington Seminar, International Field Studies and Internships (IFSI), or other supervised foreign experience may be applied toward major requirements.

   For further information see the director of undergraduate studies. Individual considerations or problems will be referred to the program's advisory committee.

2. Credit applied toward one major program may not also be counted toward a second major or minor, with the exception of language competency credit or certain approved double major tracks. Neither may credit for a minor count as part of the major requirement. See an advisor for details.

3. It is recommended that International and Area Studies majors take the following courses as part of the university religion requirement:

   RelC 344, 350, 351, 355, 356.

4. **International Field Studies and Internships.** The IFSI Office in the David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies is designed to assist students in locating and tailoring an international experience that fits their academic needs. It is a program for serious students who, seeing beyond the academic credit, are ready to give service and make a contribution while preparing for graduate school or a career. A student may earn a variety of credits depending on the length and type of the cross-cultural experience.

   Students have been placed in eastern Europe, western Europe, Asia, south Asia, Africa, Latin America, and the Middle East and have worked in fields relating to their respective areas of study, e.g., anthropology, communications, education, engineering, family sciences, international and area studies, international development, and marketing.

   Students must:
   a. Complete an application (various forms, resumé, letters of recommendation, etc.) and pay the application fee.
   b. Arrange course contracts with faculty and pay tuition.

   Complete information on requirements and placement possibilities can be obtained in the Study Abroad Office (204 HRCB).

5. **Jerusalem Program.** Credit toward completion of the BA and minor elective requirements can be obtained through participation in the Jerusalem Program: 5 hours from NES 336, 347, and 349 and 4 hours of religion for the major; 4 hours from NES 336, 347, and 349 and 2 hours of religion for the minor. Other courses taken in Jerusalem must be evaluated individually before credit can be applied to the major.

6. **Study Abroad.** Study Abroad programs are open to students from all university majors. Students need not be formally admitted to BYU to participate in Study Abroad, and BYU credit may be transferred to their home institution.

   In these programs students are able to further their General Education; pursue specialized courses in languages, the social sciences, humanities, fine arts, and other fields; gain valuable insights into their own country; and further international understanding.

   Semester and/or term programs are offered in the Dominican Republic, St. Petersburg, London, and Vienna. Term programs are also scheduled regularly in Asia, Europe, Mexico, and Africa. These programs feature intensive studies in such disciplines as the arts, history, government, and language. Specialized study in other fields, such as genealogy or design, may also be offered. For information about Jerusalem, see Travel Study.

   Credit. All credit for Study Abroad programs is placed on the student's official transcript and calculated in the GPA. Students earn from 12 to 18 credit hours on a semester program and from 6 to 9 credit hours on a term program.

Note: Some university departments accept Study Abroad course credits toward their major. Several Study Abroad courses fill GE requirements in Arts and Sciences or the Foreign Language or Mathematics option. See the list of approved courses in the General Education section of this catalog or the current class schedule and counsel with the directors regarding specific courses.

Requirements for Study Abroad

1. Preparation: Students are encouraged to prepare themselves in advance for this international experience. Such preparatory courses would include one year of college German for the Vienna Program and Hist 111, Hum 101, and Engl 250 for the London Program.
2. Curriculum: Each program requires all participants to be full-time students. Courses for each program vary according to the sponsoring department and expertise of faculty directors. Students may expect courses in the following areas:
   a. RelC 350: LDS Church in a World Setting.
   b. Foreign Language: Beginning, intermediate, and selected advanced courses including the GE capstone course 202 on selected programs.
   c. Civilization: GE courses 201 and/or 202 depending on faculty from English, History, Humanities, Music, and Political Science Departments.
   d. Arts and Letters electives for GE: Courses in art, English, fine arts, humanities, foreign literature, music, and theatre and film.
   e. Social and Behavioral Science electives for GE: Courses in Eurpoean Studies, history, and political science.

International and Area Studies (IAS)

Undergraduate Courses

100. Introduction to International Studies. (1:1:0)
Academic expectations in the major and career orientation; review of campus resources; faculty presentations.

199R. International Internship. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.)
Nonsupervised undergraduate foreign internship.

201R. Cultural Survey. (1–4:2:2 ea.) Prerequisite: performing group, International Intern, or Study Abroad participant status.
Multidisciplinary survey of various countries and regions in preparation for extended experience abroad.

220. Introduction to Development Studies. (3:3:0) F
Exploration of international development in non-formal education, micro-enterprises, community organizations; hunger, poverty, and other special problems in developing areas of the world.

301. Kennedy Center Lecture Series. (1:1:0)
Weekly lectures by national and international authorities on world affairs; designed as an introductory class for all Kennedy Center majors.

351R. Model United Nations Preparation. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.)
Preparation for participating in MUN projects, on campus, in public schools, and at the United Nations in New York.

352R. Icons—Diplomatic Negotiation. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.)
Use of computers to simulate international negotiations with other universities.

353R. International Outreach Preparation. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Through lectures and rigorous readings, developing abilities to prepare and share international understanding in public and private schools.

355R. Preparation of IAS Student Journal. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Preparing all phases of the student journal published by the Kennedy Center.

395R. International Careers and Service. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: major or minor leading to international professional or voluntary service. Recommended: some international or area experience.
Explorations of world careers and service, international networking; extensive readings; lectures; workshops with specialists.

397R. Topics in International and Area Studies. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Study relating to current world problems.

399R. International Internship. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: acceptance into program.
Individualized work or volunteer experience in an international setting. Class must be coordinated through Study Abroad.

421. Seminar on Japanese Workplace: Society and Culture. (3:3:0) F, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Required seminar for interns in the Japan seminar and intern program held only in Japan.

490. Senior Seminar in International Development. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: IAS 220.
Integration of knowledge and experience from previous course work and internship activity. Students will discuss and analyze their learning experience and then complete a major research paper.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

501R. Graduate Colloquium. (1:2:0 ea.)
Methodologies and reading. Preparation of thesis prospectus and presentation. Required of all International and Area Studies master's candidates. Studies based on individual and program needs.

599R. International Internship. (1–9:0:Arr. ea.)
Professional-level internship in an international setting. Class must be coordinated through Study Abroad.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

African Studies

The Discipline

The African Studies minor was recently created and is designed to complement several majors, notably the international studies major with one of its three emphases: development, global trade, or law and diplomacy. The minor features language competence, with options in several languages used in Africa, as well as courses in history and social sciences. Several options are available, and students interested in this minor are encouraged to consult with one of the coordinators of the program to find the best options to apply to their major.

Minor African Studies (18–21 hours*)

Minor Requirements

1. Complete one of the following language/humanities components:
   a. French
      Fren 321, 340; 438 or 495R.
   b. Swahili
      Either
      Ling 101R, 102R.
      Plus one other language course as approved by program coordinator.
      Or
      IAS 397R (two classes)
      Plus one other language course as approved by program coordinator.
   c. Afrikaans
      Afrik 101, 102, 201.
   d. A combination of French, Swahili, Afrikaans, upper-division Portuguese, or other language component as approved by the program coordinator. (The coordinator will be Professor Chantal Thompson, with Dr. Eugene Mendonsa acting as associate coordinator.)
2. Select three courses from the following social science component (a maximum of two courses per discipline; some of these courses may be offered only once every other year):
   Anthr 330.
   EdLF 362.
   Engl 358R.
   Geog 485.
   Hist 308, 309.
   IAS 100, 397R.
   PlSc 352.

Other courses may or may not be applicable, depending on the amount of African content therein. Approval of the program coordinator, therefore, is required. Courses that may contain significant African content at times include the following:

Anthr 430, 431, 432, 435, 490R.
OrgB 551.
PlSc 472.

American Studies

The Discipline

The American Studies major examines the sweep of American experience, society, culture, and civilization from a variety of viewpoints—literature, history, gender, humanities, regions, politics, ethnic groups, geography, art, economics, religion, and folklore—based in core courses designed to examine the American experience from a variety of standpoints. Majors are encouraged to develop particular skills in writing, literary criticism, historical research, and social, political, and economic analysis. The program provides not only rich interdisciplinary experience but also exposure to a variety of excellent scholars and teachers.

Career Opportunities

On graduation, American Studies students are usually qualified to enter graduate and professional schools (for law, MBA, MPA, PhD), government or community service, teaching, or advanced graduate studies in the liberal arts, including American studies, American civilization, American culture, American history, and American literature.

BA American Studies (45 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Students can complete the Advanced Writing requirement by taking Engl 311, 312, 315, or 316 according to individual academic direction. Those interested in graduate work are urged to take the Hist 200, 490 option.
3. Majors should begin course work in the major by taking AmSt 303 fall semester of the sophomore or (at latest) junior year.
4. Complete the following prerequisite courses:
   PlSc 110.
   Econ 110.
   Hum 261, 262.
5. Complete the following:
   AmSt 303.
6. Select ten courses from the following:
   AmSt 360, 390R (twice only), 395.
   ArtHC 345, 365.
   Econ 274.
   Engl 336, 358R, 392, 395R, 495.
   Geog 450.
   Hist 250, 371, 380.
   Hum 420R, 425R, 430R, 440R, 460R, 490R.
   PlSc 320, 321, 322.

   Note 1: The humanities courses Engl 395R and 495 must be topics in an American subject.

   Note 2: Course substitutions may be made only with written, prior permission of the American Studies chair.

   Note 3: Students may substitute 3 credit hours of Washington, D.C., seminar credit for one American Studies elective.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

American Studies (AmSt)

Undergraduate Courses

303. Studies in the American Experience. (3:3:0)
Social and intellectual life in American culture from the colonial period to the present.

360. Film in American Culture. (3:3:0)
Selected readings, lectures, and analysis of specific motion pictures as social documents, reflecting different facets of the American experience.

390R. Topics in American Studies. (3:3:0 ea.)
Multidisciplinary study of a carefully defined problem in American culture. Topics vary.

395. Theories and Methods in American Studies. (3:3:0)
Prerequisite: AmSt 303.
Readings/discussion seminar introducing students to theories, definition, and practice of American Studies.

Asian Studies

The Discipline

The Asian Studies major is an interdisciplinary program designed to prepare students for careers and advanced study in the specialized field of Asia not provided by a major in one department. In the program, students acquire working competence in Chinese, Japanese, Korean, or another approved Asian language; a broad knowledge of Asian civilization; and a more specialized knowledge in an academic discipline.

Career Opportunities

The Asian Studies major is useful to those contemplating careers in academic areas, private industry, or government service. The import-export field and international services are particularly interested in persons who have a strong background in Asian Studies.

General Information

Asian Studies majors are generally encouraged to take a concurrent (double) major, particularly if the bachelor's degree will be a terminal degree. The concurrent major can be in any other area but would be most beneficial in an area leading directly to employment.

BA Asian Studies (38–46 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Concurrent registration in a second major is recommended.
3. Complete the following core courses:
   a. Anthr 312.
      Asian 395.
      Hist 341.

      Note: Hist 341 and Asian 395 should be taken early in the program.

   b. Select one course from the following:
      Hist 340, 343, 345.

c. Select two courses from the following:
Geog 470.
Hist 350.
Hum 240.
PlSc 385.
RelC 351.

4. Select one of the following Asian language requirements:
a. Asian language double majors must complete an area track option. (Information available in 237 HRCB.) 12 hours of a second Asian language may replace 12 hours of track option. (See area coordinator.)
b. Nonlanguage double majors must complete 20 hours of an Asian language (Chinese, Japanese, or Korean). Other languages may be approved.

5. Select three courses (8 hours minimum) from the following:
Anthr 343.
ArtHC 490R.
Asian 330R, 495, 501R.
AsLa 342.
BusM 430.
Chin 327, 343, 344, 345, 347, 441, 442, 443, 444.
Econ 230, 257.
Geog 470.
Hist 324, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 350, 395R.
Hum 240.
Japan 343, 344, 345, 353, 441, 443, 444.
Korea 340, 344R, 345, 441, 443.
PlSc 353, 354, 384, 385, 391, 399R.
RelC 351.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Asian Studies (25–26 hours*)

1. Complete the following core courses:
a. Hist 341.
b. Select one course from the following:
Geog 470.
Hist 340, 343, 345, 350.
Hum 240.
PlSc 385.
RelC 351.

2. Complete 12 hours of a single Asian language from the following:
Chin 301, 302, 321.
Japan 221, 301, 321.
Korea 301, 303 or 315, 321 or 340.

3. Complete 8 hours of electives from item 5 of the preceding BA Asian Studies major.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Chinese Studies (18 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
Chin 301, 302, 321.

2. Select three courses from the following:
Anthr 343.
Chin 343, 344, 345 (choose only one).
Hist 324, 343, 344.
PlSc 353, 388.
Note: Study Abroad/Internship credit is also applicable.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Japanese Studies (18 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
Japan 221, 301, 321.

2. Select three courses from the following:
Hist 345, 346.
IAS 399R, 599R.
Japan 343, 344, 345, 353 (choose only one); 390.
PlSc 354.
Note: Study Abroad/Internship credit is also applicable.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Korean Studies (18 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
Korea 301, 303 or 315, 321 or 340.

2. Select three courses from the following:
Hist 342.
IAS 397R (Contemporary Korean Politics)
Korea 344R, 345 (choose only one)
PlSc 348.
Note: Study Abroad/Internship credit is also applicable.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Multicultural Education (Asian Studies) (23–24 hours*)

1. Select one course from the following:
Anthr 312.
Soc 323.

2. Complete the following:
Hist 341.

3. Select two courses from the following:
Geog 470.
Hist 342, 344, 346.
Hum 240.
PlSc 353, 354, 384, 385.
RelC 351.

4. Complete 12 hours of an Asian language.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Asian Studies (Asian)

Undergraduate Courses

330R. Asian Studies Abroad. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.)
Preparatory course approved for Asian Seminar (Study Abroad).

342. Asian Literary Traditions. (3:3:0)
Comparative analysis of Asian literary works spanning several traditions.

395. Asian Studies Methods Seminar. (2:2:0) Required of all Asian Studies majors early in the program.
Sources, materials, and methods of research and writing; critical analysis of research project.

495. Senior Seminar. (1:1:0)
Learning research and writing skills necessary to prepare and present major senior research paper.

500-Level Graduate Course (available to advanced undergraduates)

501R. Intensive Introduction to Asian Studies for Teachers and Prospective Teachers. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.)
Readings, lectures, individual study, and curriculum development; integration for school teachers of Asian Studies into the curriculum of social studies, world history, and geography.

Canadian Studies

The Discipline

Canadian Studies is an interdisciplinary program that focuses on the Canadian experience from the perspective of literature, languages, political science, history, economics, business, native studies, and other academic fields.

Career Opportunities

The minor prepares students for careers in government, teaching, and business. Canada is the United States' leading trading, investment, and tourism partner. As a consequence, thousands of U.S. businesses trade with Canada. Literally millions of jobs in both the United States and Canada are linked to bilateral trade, investment, and tourism, and some businesses are interested in hiring college graduates with Canadian expertise.

General Information

1. Although not formally required, it is nevertheless strongly recommended that students possess a proficiency in French adequate for oral comprehension, speaking, and research in the student's specialized field. The completion of Fren 321 with a grade of B or better or the successful completion of an oral and written examination administered by a member of the Canadian Studies faculty committee will qualify the student for a special certificate of proficiency.
2. All students are encouraged to participate in the Quebec Summer Language Program at Laval University or in other residence programs in Canada.

Minor Canadian Studies (18 hours)

Minor Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   Anthr 317.
   Geog 450.
   PlSc 355, 382.
2. Select two courses from the following:
   Engl 395R.
   Fren 439.
   Hist 359, 390R.
   PlSc 339R.

   Note: No more than 6 hours from the same discipline will be approved.

European Studies

The Discipline

European Studies offers a liberal arts education for those who wish to enhance their understanding and appreciation of European cultures. The major consists of two sections: the core that lays the foundation, and electives through which the student can focus on Europe through a particular country or historical period.

Career Opportunities

Many excellent career opportunities exist for European Studies graduates. The program offers a broad, general preparation in the liberal arts, preparing graduates well for careers in government, private industry, nonprofit organizations, some domestic and foreign teaching opportunities, the Peace Corps, the military, or just about any segment of society that requires its workers to think, read, and write critically. In the past, students have gone on to careers in law, medicine, business, journalism, editing, and advertising.

General Information

1. Students are encouraged to take a double major (or at least a strong minor in a single academic discipline) so that they may enhance their career objectives. A second major in art, economics, business management, agriculture, a foreign language, etc., enhances the graduate's job marketability.
2. **Study Abroad.** Many hours earned in the European Study Abroad programs may be applied toward a European Studies major or minor.

BA European Studies (45–58 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete these core prerequisites:
   a. Complete the following:
      Either Hist 201, 202
      Or Hum 201, 202.
   b. Select one course from the following:
      Anthr 305.
      ArtHC 300.
      CLit 310.
      Econ 280.
      Engl 251, 351.
      Hist 200.
      Hum 350.
      Phil 205.
      PlSc 200.
      Soc 300.
3. Complete these core courses:
   a. Complete the following:
      Anthr 312.
      Geog 460.
      Hist 323.
   b. Select one ancient or medieval course from the following:
      Anthr 385.
      ArtHC 304, 306, 310, 317, 320, 325.
      ClCv 201, 245, 246, 304, 307.
      Hist 304, 307, 310, 311.
      Hum 420R (ancient medieval European subject).
      Phil 201, 320.

c. Select one modern course from the following:
ArtHC 330, 335, 340, 350.
ClCv 202, 304, 307.
Engl 302, 352.
Hist 312, 319, 320, 322, 323.
Hum 420R (modern European subject).
Music 395.
Phil 202, 340, 418.
PlSc 351.

4. Complete four elective courses (12 hours)(may be in an area of specialization, e.g., discipline, period, or country) from an approved list (see your advisement center).
5. Complete the GE Foreign Language requirement in a modern European language (not your native language).
6. Complete two literature or culture courses (6 hours) taught in a major European language (not your native language).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor European Studies (21–38 hours)

1. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.
2. Complete one of the following Civilization sequences for GE:
Either Hist 201, 202.
Or Hum 201, 202.
3. Complete the core (12 hours): same as the major above except delete Anthr 312.
4. Complete the electives (6 hours): one course from 3b and one from 3c in the European Studies major list above.
5. Complete the GE Foreign Language requirement in a modern European language.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor French Studies (18 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
Fren 340, 420, 421.
2. Select three courses from the following:
ArtHC 330, 340.
Fren-Ital 217.
Geog 460.
Hist 320, 332.
Note: Study Abroad/Internship credit is also applicable.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor German Studies (18 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
Germ 330, 430, 431.
2. Select three courses from the following:
Geog 460.
Hist 318, 329, 333.
ClCv 241.
Note: Study Abroad/Internship credit is also applicable.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Italian Studies (18 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
Ital 340 and any two 400-level courses.
2. Select three courses from the following:
ArtHC 320, 330.
Fren-Ital 217.
Geog 460.
Hist 312, 322.
Note: Study Abroad/Internship credit is also applicable.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Russian Studies (18 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
Russ 330, 441, 442.
2. Select three courses from the following:
Geog 465.
Hist 330, 331.
PlSc 347, 383.
Russ 340.
Note: Study Abroad/Internship credit is also applicable.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Spanish Studies (18 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
Span 321, 339, 441.
2. Select three courses from the following:
ArtHC 330.
Geog 460.
Hist 323, 334.
Span 345.
Note: Study Abroad/Internship credit is also applicable.

* Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

European Studies (Europ)

Undergraduate Course

336R. European Studies. (1–6:Arr.:Arr.ea.)
Social sciences core course approved for Study Abroad programs in London, Vienna, Paris, and other locations.

International Development

The Discipline

International development is the study of basic human needs in developing areas or countries. It includes academic disciplines such as: formal and nonformal education and literacy, primary health care, small business activities, water sanitation, agricultural productivity, nutrition, ecological preservation, etc. Development obviously implies the application of this study to practical ends throughout the "underdeveloped" world.

Students should join a solid preparation in an established major with classroom knowledge and experience in international development. This minor is designed to strengthen and expand the chosen major. Students will be assigned a

faculty mentor in their major department who will help coordinate the minor with the major. In addition to a focussed course of study, internship experience is highly encouraged. Such internships provide valuable experience in application of development theory as well as allowing students to earn credit towards the minor (and in some cases the major as well).

Minor International Development (18 hours*)

Minor Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.
2. Complete 3 hours of the following:
   IAS 220, 490.
3. After consulting with an advisor, select 12 hours from the following (or other applicable approved courses):
   Anthr 312, 432, 438, 447, 520.
   Biol 150.
   Botny 350, 400, 407, 554.
   BusM 430, 431, 432, 471.
   Comms 482.
   Econ 230, 257, 410, 430, 440.
   EdLF 362.
   FSN 424, 435.
   Geog 302, 310, 313, 331, 341, 410, 515, 580.
   Geol 404.
   Hlth 436, 451, 480.
   IAS 353R, 397R, 399R.
   OrgB 333, 531, 551.
   PlSc 340, 372, 472, 535, 536.
   Soc 315, 324, 335, 345, 429, 530.
4. Complete 3 hours of the following:
   IAS 490.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

International Studies

The Discipline

The international studies major is a multidisciplinary program designed to familiarize students with politics, economics, history, and geography, as well as to develop cultural sensitivity. Students must be able to integrate information about international issues from diverse academic disciplines such as anthropology, sociology, business, languages, and area studies. Students must select one of three emphases: development, global economy, or international law and diplomacy as well as an area studies minor.

Career Opportunities

International studies prepares students for a number of careers in both the public and private sector as well as for graduate study in international affairs and advanced professional degrees (law, MBA, etc.).

Many excellent career opportunities exist for those who prepare themselves well in international studies. Graduates gain a broad, general preparation in the liberal arts and are well prepared for careers in government, private industry, not-for-profit organizations, foreign teaching-career opportunities such as the Peace Corps, the military, or any career that demands employees who think, read, and write critically and have a broad knowledge of world affairs. Graduates have entered careers in law, medicine, business, journalism, government, and international organizations.

General Information

Students anticipating a graduate program should consult with the advisement center for recommended courses to strengthen their qualifications for graduate studies.

As a general policy, some requirements can be met by participating in approved Study Abroad or internship programs. Prior approval must be obtained from the director of undergraduate studies.

BA International Studies: Development Emphasis

(56–59 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following foundation courses:
   Econ 110.
   IAS 100.
   Pl Sc 150, 170.
3. Select one of the following foundation courses:
   Geog 120, 341.

Note: These foundation courses must be completed before any other required courses. Hist 201, 202 are *strongly* recommended to fulfill the GE Civilization requirement.

4. Complete the following:
   Anthr 312.
   IAS 301.
   RelC 351.
5. Disciplinary emphasis:
   a. Complete the following core courses:
      Econ 230.
      IAS 220.
      And complete the following:
      Either Soc 300 (prerequisite: Soc 111).
      Or PlSc 328 (prerequisite: PlSc 200).
      And select one course from the following:
      Geog 331.
      PlSc 372.
   b. Select one course from the following:
      AgHrt 201, 205.
      Biol 150.
      Econ 430, 440.
      Geog 310, 313, 331, 346, 515, 580.
      Geol 404.
      Hlth 480.
      OrgB 333, 551.
      PlSc 340, 372, 472, 535.
      Soc 335, 345, 530.
   c. Complete the following:
      IAS 490.
6. Complete an area studies minor.

Note: Some requirements can be met by participating in an approved Study Abroad or internship program.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA International Studies: Global Trade Emphasis

(56–60 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following foundation courses:
   Econ 110.
   IAS 100.
   Pl Sc 150, 170.
3. Select one of the following foundation courses:
   Geog 120, 341.

Note: These foundation courses must be completed before any other required courses. Hist 201, 202 are *strongly* recommended to fulfill the GE Civilization requirement.

4. Complete the following:
   Anthr 312.
   IAS 301.
   RelC 351.
5. Disciplinary emphasis:
   a. Complete the following prerequisite course:
      Econ 280.
   b. Complete the following core courses:
      BusM 430.
      Econ 257.
      PlSc 372.
      And complete the following:
      Either Econ 378 (prerequisite: Math 112).
      Or Stat 221 (prerequisite: Math 110 or equivalent).
   c. Complete one course from the following:
      Econ 230, 241, 381, 458, 459.
      Geog 331.
      PMgt 385.
6. Complete an area studies minor.

Note: Some requirements can be met by participating in an approved Study Abroad or internship program.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA International Studies: International Law and Diplomacy Emphasis (56 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following foundation courses:
   Econ 110.
   IAS 100.
   Pl Sc 150, 170.
3. Select one of the following foundation courses:
   Geog 120, 341.

Note: These foundation courses must be completed before any other required courses. Hist 201, 202 are *strongly* recommended to fulfill the GE Civilization requirement.

4. Complete the following:
   Anthr 312.
   IAS 301.
   RelC 351.
5. Disciplinary emphasis:
   a. Complete the following core courses:
      Econ 257.
      PlSc 200, 373, 375.
      And select one course from the following:
      Hist 374.
      PlSc 376.
   b. Select one course from the following:
      Comms 482.
      PlSc 374.
6. Complete an area studies minor.

Note: Some requirements can be met by participating in an approved Study Abroad or internship program.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor International Studies (22 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Anthr 312.
   Econ 110.
   IAS 301.
   PlSc 150, 170.
   RelC 351.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Geog 120, 341.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Hist 374.
   PlSc 376.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Latin American Studies

The Discipline

Designed to give a rich background in the languages, culture, and conditions of Latin America, the Latin American Studies program provides a multidisciplinary approach to university education. Courses from BYU's various academic departments (anthropology, Spanish and Portuguese, political science, sociology, history, etc.) teach skills in perceptive reading, analytical thinking, and clear and forceful writing, as well as provide in-depth understanding of Latin American cultures, languages, and history.

Students are invited to consult with the director of undergraduate studies regarding selection of classes. Familiarity with Spanish or Portuguese is not necessary before entering the program.

Career Opportunities

Excellent career opportunities exist for those who prepare well in Latin American Studies. The degree offers a broad, general background in the liberal arts, and graduates are well-prepared for careers in government, private industry, nonprofit organizations, some domestic and foreign teaching opportunities, the Peace Corps, the military, and other professions in which an understanding and appreciation of Latin America are required. Many graduates go into law, medicine, business, journalism, editing, advertising, etc. Others have had success in government, such as working for the State Department, immigration, the FBI, and other agencies.

Students are encouraged to take a double major or at least a strong minor in a single academic discipline to enhance their career objectives. The combination of another discipline and Latin American Studies makes the student attractive to employers desiring specific job skills as well as cultural understanding and appreciation.

General Information

Foreign Experience. Latin American Studies students are strongly encouraged to participate in Study Abroad programs in Mexico or Chile, in an internship program somewhere in Latin America, or in department-sponsored research in the area.

BA Latin American Studies (36 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Anthr 312.
   Geog 455.
   Hist 352.
   LtAm 495.
   PlSc 358.
3. Select one of the following options:
   Either Span 321, 355, 451
   Or Port 321, 355, 451.
4. Complete the following:
   Anthr 326.
5. Select one course from the following:
   Hist 351, 353, 356, 357, 359.
   Soc 335.
6. Select 6 elective hours from an approved list (see your advisement center).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Latin American Studies (18 hours*)

1. Select one of the following options:
   Either Span 321, 339, 451.
   Or Port 321, 339, 451.
2. Select three courses from the following:
   Anthr 326, 365.
   Geog 455.
   Hist 352.
   LtAm 495
   PlSc 358
   Port 355.
   Soc 335.
   Span 355.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Multicultural Education (Latin American Studies) (24 hours)

1. Select one course from the following:
   Anthr 312.
   Soc 323.
2. Complete the following:
   Hist 360.
3. Select two courses from the following:
   Anthr 326.
   Geog 455.
   Hist 352, 353, 356, 357, 359.
   PlSc 358.
4. Complete 12 hours of Spanish or Portuguese language.

Latin American Studies (LtAm)

Undergraduate Courses

301. Preparation for Project Work in Latin America. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: Span 102 and instructor's consent.
Historical, political, and cultural background of the target country(ies); intensive training in individual service specialty.

302. Project Work in Latin America. (2:0:0) Prerequisite: LtAm 301.
Teaching literacy, health, nutrition, gardening, leadership development, construction, etc., in Latin America.

495. Senior Seminar in Latin American Studies. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: instructor's consent for minors.
Sources, materials, and methods of research and writing; critical analysis of a research project. Required for all Latin American Studies majors their senior year.

Near Eastern Studies

The Discipline

In addition to language study, the Near Eastern Studies curriculum includes course work from the areas of the social sciences, humanities, and religion. The geographic area covered extends from Egypt to Iran, and from Turkistan to Arabia. The time span reaches from the ancient to the modern period.

Career Opportunities

The program is intended both to provide a liberal arts education and to prepare students for careers in business, law, government, scholarship, and the Church Seminaries and Institutes of Religion system.

BA Near Eastern Studies (48 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following core requirements:
   Anthr 312.
   Hist 300, 302, 490.
   RelC 355, 356.

   Note: Hist 490, with designated seminar sections by Green, Hamblin, or Montgomery only, is to be taken during the senior year after completing the core courses and GE Advanced Writing requirement.
3. Language requirement: complete 16 hours of Arabic or Hebrew. If Hebrew is selected, at least 12 hours must be taken in one aspect of the language (either biblical or modern). This means the student must complete at least one 200-level (or higher) course in the chosen language.
4. Elective courses: Complete 18 hours of courses to be chosen from an approved list (see advisement center). As many as 4 hours of designated religion courses may be taken; additional language study may be counted toward elective requirements.

Recommended

Hist 200.
PlSc 200.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Ancient Near Eastern Studies (20 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Heb 131, 132.
   Hist 300.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Anthr 351, 378.
3. Select 6 hours from the following:
   RelA 301, 302.
   NeLg 340, 345.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Modern Near Eastern Studies (20 hours*)

1. Complete 8 hours in Arabic, modern Hebrew, or Turkish.
2. Complete the following:
   Hist 302.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Anthr 340.
   Geog 471.
4. Select two courses from the following:
   PlSc 357, 381, 457.
   Hist 348R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Jewish Studies (22 hours*)

1. Complete 12 hours of Hebrew courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Hist 303.
   RelC 355.
3. Select two courses from the following:
   Hist 318.
   PlSc 454, 457.
   Phil 415 (when treating Jewish philosophy).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Arab-Islamic Studies (25 hours*)

1. Complete 12 hours of Arabic courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Hist 302.
   Hum 242.
   RelC 356.
3. Select two courses from the following:
   Hist 348R.
   Phil 415.
   PlSc 452, 454.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Multicultural Education (Near Eastern Studies) (23–24 hours*)

1. Select one course from the following:
   Anthr 312.
   Soc 323.
2. Complete the following:
   Hist 302.
3. Select two courses from the following:
   Anthr 340.
   Geog 471.
   Hist 303, 308, 318, 348R.
   Hum 242.
   PlSc 357, 359R.
   RelC 355, 356.
4. Select one of the following options:
   Either Heb 101, 102, 201
   Or Arab 101, 102, 201.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Near Eastern Studies (NES)

Undergraduate Courses

100. Jerusalem Center Orientation. (1:2:0) Prerequisite: application for a Jerusalem Center foreign study program.
Introduction to the peoples and cultures of the Near East. Required of all participants prior to departure.

101R. Topics in Near Eastern Studies. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.)
Studies based on individual and program needs. Elective credit for major and minor. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

136. Introduction to Near Eastern Studies. (2:2:1)
Survey core course in social science/humanities. Offered (as part of the summer term program) at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only. Elective credit for major and minor.

326. Introduction to Near Eastern Studies. (2:2:1) Prerequisite: at least junior class standing.
Social science/humanities core course. Elective credit for major and minor. Offered (as part of the summer term program) at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only. Does not receive GE credit.

336. Ancient Near Eastern Studies. (3:3:2)
Social science/humanities core course emphasizing ancient history extending to the Byzantine period. Elective credit for major and minor. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only.

347. (NES-Hist) Arab and Islamic Civilization. (2:2:1)
Social science/humanities core course covering Arab and Islamic civilization; historical evolution of Middle East to present. Overview of modern Palestinian society. Elective credit for major and minor in NES. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only. Does not receive GE credit.

349. (NES-Hist) Jewish Civilization. (2:2:1)
Social science/humanities core course; broad introduction to Jewish self-understanding and history, focusing on relationships among people, faith, and land. Elective credit for major and minor. Offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies only. Does not receive GE credit.

398R. Advanced Topics in Near Eastern Studies. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.)
Studies based on individual and program needs. Elective credit for major and minor. Also offered at the Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies.

499R. Special Topics in Near Eastern Studies. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Studies based on individual and program needs.

500-Level Graduate Course (available to advanced undergraduates)

595R. Near East Special Topics. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: graduate standing and instructor's consent.
Studies based on individual and program needs.

Korean

See Asian and Near Eastern Languages.

Latin

See Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature.

Latin American Studies

See Kennedy Center for International Studies, David M.

Latvian

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

J. Reuben Clark Law School

For more information see the current J. Reuben Clark Law School Bulletin and the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Linguistics

John S. Robertson, Chair
2129 JKHB, PO Box 26278, (801) 378-2937

College of Humanities Advisement Center
3078 JKHB, PO Box 26101, (801) 378-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All undergraduate degree programs in the Department of Linguistics are open enrollment.

The Discipline

Linguistics is the study of language in all its aspects—from speech sounds to sentence formation to meaning; from how language is organized and used in a social setting to how it is organized and processed in the brain. Linguists study language form, language change, language acquisition, and even the texts in which language is recorded. Linguists recognize that the communicative power of language is the glue that brings cohesion to all human enterprise. For the student interested in the nature of language, linguistics is the subject to study.

Career Opportunities

Linguistics is an excellent preparatory discipline for those planning graduate studies in areas as diverse as TESOL, law, international business, tourism, library science, communicative disorders, and speech pathology, not to mention graduate studies in specific languages or in linguistics itself.

A linguistics degree (with emphasis in computers) may lead to jobs in high technology, e.g., machine translation, information retrieval, speech recognition and production, and lexigraphy. Linguistics is also recognized as a strong specialization for those pursuing a career in military intelligence or technical writing.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA	Linguistics
Minors	Computers and the Humanities
	Linguistics
	Language and Computers
	TESOL
	TESOL (K–12)

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA	Linguistics
Cert	TESOL
MA	TESOL

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BA Linguistics (44–50 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following courses:
   Ling 230, 330, 420, 430, 450, 490.
3. Complete 12 credit hours of university-level course work in a single non-Indo-European or Slavic language. Students who are minoring in a non-IE language (see item 4a below) or who are native speakers of such a language may fill this requirement with any other foreign language by taking classes or by passing a special examination after taking a culminating culture class. Native speakers of non-IE languages may elect to use English to fill this requirement. If they choose to earn the credit by special examination, they must take Engl 230, 232, or Hum 261, or an equivalent class as their culminating culture course. If they choose to earn the credit by taking classes, they must enroll for ESL 301, 303, 304, 404.
4. Select one of the following options:
   a. Complete an approved university minor in one of the following areas: foreign language (cannot be the same as item 3 above), TESOL, language and computers, or speech pathology.

b. Complete 15 hours selected from any of the courses listed below or approved by the Linguistics Department:
Anthr 309, 420.
CHum 180, 280, 281, 287, 381, 383, 385, 387.
Engl 324, 325, 326.
Ling 480.
Phil 420.
Psych 375, 376.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Computers and the Humanities (CHum) (16 hours)

1. Complete the following:
CHum 180, 281.
Note: CHum 180 is prerequisite to all other CHum courses.
2. Select 9 hours from the following:
CHum 280, 287, 381, 383, 385, 387, 490R (with coordinator approval.)
Ling 480.
3. Complete 3 hours of the following:
CHum 489R.

Minor Linguistics (15 hours)

1. Complete the following courses:
Ling 230, 330, 450.
2. Select 6 hours of electives from other Linguistics Department course work in consultation with a department advisor.

Minor Language and Computers (16 hours)

1. Complete the following:
CHum 180, 280, 287.
Ling 230.
2. Select 6 hours from the following:
CHum 281, 381, 383, 385, 387, 489R (3 hours), 490R (with coordinator approval).
Ling 480.

Teaching English to Students of Other Languages (TESOL)

The Discipline

The TESOL program exists primarily to prepare teachers of English for speakers of other languages. Related areas of emphasis are administration or materials development. TESOL involves multidisciplinary course work, notably in language pedagogy and linguistics, but includes subjects ranging from testing to literature.

Career Opportunities

TESOL graduates are qualified for overseas English teaching or administrative positions. They may enter U.S. TESOL programs or bilingual programs ranging from adult education or junior college positions to special courses for immigrant children offered by school districts. A state teaching certificate qualifying one to teach ESL is available to those who take requisite course work in the School of Education in addition to TESOL classes.

Minor TESOL (16 hours)

1. Complete the following:
Ling 230, 440, 460, 471, 472.
2. Select one course from the following:
CHum 281.
Engl 325, 329.
Ling 330.

Minor TESOL (K–12) (19 hours)

1. Complete the following:
FamSc 303.
Ling 230, 440, 460, 471, 472.
2. Select one course from the following:
ElEd 450.
ScEd 450.
3. Complete at least 4 credit hours' worth of time in an ESL situation and/or working with limited-English-proficiency (LEP) students while enrolled in ElEd 400 or ScEd 476R.

English as a Second Language (ESL)

Undergraduate Courses

301. English as a Second Language (Structure). (4:4:1) For bilingual foreign students.
Integrated skills course in listening, speaking, reading, and writing, with grammar focus in each area.

302. English as a Second Language (Oral-Aural). (2:2:0) For bilingual foreign students.
Improving listening comprehension and speaking ability. Emphasizes fluency, correct pronunciation, and intonation.

303. English as a Second Language (Reading). (3:3:0) For bilingual foreign students.
Improving reading comprehension and reading speed.

304. English as a Second Language (Writing). (4:4:1) For bilingual foreign students.
Composition, rhetoric, usage, and mechanics, plus techniques of writing research papers.

404. ESL Advanced Composition. (3:3:0)
Research and writing techniques for prethesis work. For graduate ESL students.

Computers and the Humanities (CHum)

Undergraduate Courses

98. Basic Academic Word Processing Skills. (0:2:0)
Introduction to academic computer skills, focusing on programs for writing student papers (no technical background necessary). Fee.

180. Humanities Computing Survey. (1:1:1)
Open to all majors. Survey of how computer software packages are used in humanities disciplines: for computer-based instruction, for academic publishing, and as research tools.

280. Basic Humanities Computing Skills. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CHum 180 or computer experience.
Software applications for computer-based instruction, academic publishing, and research; introduction to programming new applications.

281. Computers and Teaching 1. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CHum 180 or computer experience.
Recommended for teaching majors and minors. Applying computer technology to teaching: designing, authoring, and evaluating computer-based instructional materials for lab and classroom use.

287. Programming Humanities Applications 1. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CHum 180 or computer experience.
Computer programming for language and humanities applications in a visual environment: data types, character representation, flow of control, file input/output, string manipulation.

381. Computers and Teaching 2. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CHum 281.
Advanced applications of computer technology to teaching: integrating digital graphics, sound, and video; hypertext and hypermedia; computer-based testing; network applications.

383. Computers and Academic Publishing. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CHum 180 or word processing experience.
Applications of computer technology to writing and publishing beyond basic word processing: scholarly publications, journals and newsletters, desktop publishing, electronic publishing on the Internet.

385. Computer Research Tools and Methods. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CHum 180 or computer experience.
Applications of computer technology to research in language and literature: quantitative analysis, text data processing, corpora, databases, on-line resources, statistics, evaluation.

387. Programming Humanities Applications 2. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: CHum 287.
Advanced computer programming for the humanities: advanced string manipulation and format conversions, data structures, integrating modules written in another programming language, software design, performance issues.

489R. Humanities Computing Project. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: any 300-level computers in the humanities course.
Applying principles from other courses to a substantial research or development project. Students work individually with faculty and technical advisors.

490R. Humanities Computing Seminar. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Individual or group study of current issues and developments in humanities computing. Extended readings; research or project required. Pass/fail grade only.

Linguistics (Ling)

Undergraduate Courses

101R. Study of an Uncommon Language. (4:4:0 ea.) On dem.
Oceanic, American Indian, African, Haitian Creole, Persian Farsi.

102R. Study of an Uncommon Language. (4:4:0 ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: Ling 101R or equivalent.
Oceanic, American Indian, African, Haitian Creole, Persian Farsi.

201R. Second-Year Study of an Uncommon Language. (4:4:0 ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: Ling 101 and 102 or foreign residence experience.
Further development of conversation, reading and writing skills, and vocabulary building, emphasizing reading.

211R. Second-Year Study of an Uncommon Language. (2:2:0 ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: Ling 201 or foreign residence experience.
Conversation, emphasizing further development of intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

230. Language, Mind, and the World. (3:3:0)
The medium that makes thinking, understanding, communications, and teaching possible.

301R. Third-Year Study of an Uncommon Language. (4:4:0 ea.) On dem.
Oceanic, American Indian, African, Haitian Creole, Persian Farsi.

311R. Third-Year Study of an Uncommon Language. (2:2:0 ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: Ling 211 or foreign residence experience.
Advanced conversation.

330. Introduction to Linguistics (Modern). (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ling 230.
Basic understanding of linguistic systems. Morphology, syntax, and phonology.

420. Phonetics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ling 330.
General inventory of speech sounds possible in language, from both an acoustic and articulatory point of view.

430. Transformational Grammar. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ling 330 or Engl 328.
Goals of linguistic argumentation, syntactic structure, nature of the lexicon, and functions of transformations.

440. Understanding Language Acquisition. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: Ling 230.
Processes and variables in native- and second-language development. How teachers can foster efficient acquisition of language, cognitive, and academic skills in second-language environments.

450. Introduction to Historical- Comparative Linguistics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ling 330.
Theory and method of language change via comparison of daughter languages and reconstruction of their ancestral language: phonological, morphological, semantic, and lexical.

460. Assessment for Linguistically Diverse Students. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: Ling 230.
Fundamental concepts in testing, use/interpretation of current instruments for language/academic assessment, appropriate placement of linguistically diverse students, and developing classroom language assessments.

471. Methods and Strategies for Developing Second-Language Skills. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ling 230.
Instructional methods, strategies, and materials for integrating curriculum content and language instruction. Teaching, creating, and adapting lesson materials in a multicultural context.

472. Developing Second-Language Literacy Skills. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ling 230.
Instructional strategies, methodologies, and materials for developing reading and writing skills in a second language. Developing cognitive academic language proficiency and integrating multiple cultural perspectives.

480. Problems in Translation. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: proficiency in a second language.
History, theory, and practice of human and machine translation.

490. Senior Seminar. (2:2:0)Prerequisite: Ling 330.
Reading and discussing major issues in linguistics.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

500. Research Prospectus Design. (1:2:0) Prerequisite: admission to language acquisition MA program or provisional admission to TESOL MA program.
Procedures for developing research projects (including introduction and review of literature for MA thesis). Students enroll concurrently for 2 hours of Ling 699R (thesis) credit.

521. Phonology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ling 330.
Distinctive values of speech sounds: their function in the communicative process. Analysis of phonological data via postulation of underlying forms and derivational rules.

525. Phonology of Modern English. (3:3:0)
Detailed phonetic and phonemic study of American English pronunciation, including theories and practices of teaching and acquiring pronunciation. Practicum included.

531. Grammar Usage. (3:3:0)
Examining English grammar and usage as they reflect different theories about language description and applying this knowledge in the ESL classroom. Practicum included.

535. Semantics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ling 330.
Theory and practice of semantic analysis with special emphasis on Jakobsonian and Peircian semiotics.

540. Language Acquisition. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ling 330 or equivalent.
First- and second-language acquisition viewed in light of psycholinguistics and sociolinguistics.

545. Psycholinguistics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Ling 230 or equivalent.
How the mind interprets, stores, retrieves, and produces language. Anatomical structures and physiological processes of the brain dealing with language.

550. (Ling-Anthr) Sociolinguistics. (3:3:0)
Research and theory in anthropological linguistics and sociolinguistics.

551. (Ling-Anthr) Anthropological Linguistics. (3:3:0)
Language in culture and society: development, typology, and description.

555. Teaching Culture. (3:3:0)
What culture is, how it affects language learners and teachers, development of U.S. lifestyle patterns. Variety of readings.

558. Historical-Comparative Linguistics. (3:3:0) W, Sp Prerequisite: Ling 450 or equivalent.
Theory and method of language change via comparing daughter languages and reconstructing ancestral languages.

565R. Humanities Computing Project. (1–3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Major application or research project, working with instructor to do ongoing research or program development.

571. English as a Second Language K–12. (3:3:0)
Nature of language acquisition and strategies and materials designed to facilitate second language learning K–12.

572. TESOL Reading and Writing. (3:3:0)
Nature of processes involved in reading and writing, emphasizing how these skills are developed in a second/foreign language.

573. TESOL Literature. (3:3:0) On dem.
Teaching literature to nonnative English speakers, both TEFL and TESOL.

577. TESOL Methods and Materials. (4:4:1) Prerequisite: ESL 404 or native English speaker.
Foundation course surveying concepts, procedures, and techniques in second/foreign language teaching methodology and materials selection. Includes observing actual classes and participating in a mentored teaching practicum.

579. TESOL Student Teaching. (2:0:8) Prerequisite: Ling 577 and department's prior consent.

580R. Problems in Linguistics and Applied Linguistics. (1–3:3:0 ea.) On dem.
Advanced research in language acquisition, sociolinguistics, psycholinguistics, linguistics field study, applied linguistics.

590R. Readings in Linguistics. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Individual study of current linguistic literature. Occasional discussion sessions with instructor and other class members. Pass/fail grade only.

599R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:9:0 ea.) On dem.
On-the-job experience under faculty supervision, with department approval.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

American Sign Language (ASL)

Undergraduate Courses

(Available only through Evening Classes.)

101, 102. Conversation ASL, Parts 1 and 2. (4:4:1 ea.)
Basic ASL skills, both receptive and expressive. Basic conversation skill, emphasizing vocabulary building and pragmatics. Introduction to deafness and ASL.

201. ASL Grammar. (4:4:0)
Basic study of ASL structure and syntax. Beginning transcription.

202. Advanced ASL Grammar. (4:4:0) W even yr. Prerequisite: ASL 201.
Advanced ASL structure, including conversational skills.

301. Deaf Culture. (3:3:0)
Society and culture of the deaf community. Required course for obtaining language credit by examination.

302. Deaf Literature. (3:3:0) W on dem. Prerequisite: ASL 301.
Various genres of deaf literature. Introduction to analysis of ASL literary works.

431. Interpreting 1. (4:4:1) Independent Study also.
Building basic interpreting skills. Code of Ethics, interpreting protocol, and interpreting issues.

432. Interpreting 2. (4:4:1)
Various interpreting models; the interpreting process; building and applying interpreting skills.

Austronesian Languages (AstLg)

Undergraduate Courses

Note: Austronesian languages are offered only when there is sufficient student interest.

Fijian, Indonesian, Maori, Niuean, Rarotongan, Samoan, Tagalog, Tahitian, and Tongan Courses

101R, 102R. First-Year. (4:4:0 ea.)
Basic language skills.

201R. Second-Year. (4:4:0 ea.) Prerequisite: 101 and 102 or equivalent experience.
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: 102 or equivalent experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: 201 and 211 or equivalent experience.
Advanced conversational skills.

North, Central, and South American Indian Languages (AmILg and SAmLg)

Undergraduate Courses

Note: American Indian languages are offered only when there is sufficient student interest.

Navajo, Aymara, Cakchiquel, Quechua, Quiché, Maya, and Guaraní Courses

101R, 102R. First-Year. (4:4:0 ea.)
Basic language skills.

201R. Second-Year. (4:4:0 ea.) Prerequisite: 101 and 102 or equivalent experience.
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

211R. Second-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: 102 or equivalent experience.
Intermediate listening comprehension and speaking skills.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:0 ea.) Prerequisite: 201 and 211 or equivalent experience.
Advanced conversational skills.

Welsh (Welsh)

Undergraduate Courses

101A, B. First-Year Welsh. (2:2:1 ea.)
Pronunciation, grammar fundamentals, and vocabulary building, emphasizing conversation.

102. First-Year Welsh. (4:4:0) Prerequisite: Welsh 101 or equivalent.
Pronunciation, grammar fundamentals, and vocabulary building, emphasizing conversation.

201. Second-Year Welsh. (4:4:0) Prerequisite: Welsh 101 and 102 or equivalent.
Conversation, vocabulary building, and reading and writing skills, emphasizing reading.

Linguistics Faculty

Professors

Brown, Cheryl (1975) BA, MA, Utah State U., 1967, 1971; TESOL Cert., Brigham Young U., 1974; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1983.

Henrichsen, Lynn E. (1992) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., EdD, U. of Hawaii, Manoa, 1987.

Luthy, Melvin J. (1971) BS, Utah State U., 1962; PhD, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1967.

Melby, Alan K. (1977) BS, MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1973, 1974, 1976.

Robertson, John S. (1977) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1970; PhD, Harvard U., 1976.

Senior Lecturer

Probst, Glen W. (1980) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1966; PhD, Ohio State U., 1969.

Associate Professors

Anderson, Neil J. (1997) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1980; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1989.

Graham, Charles Ray (1980) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1969; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1977.

Hallen, Cynthia L. (1991) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1980, 1982; PhD, U. of Arizona, 1991.

Manning, Alan D. (1994) BA, Brigham Young U., 1984; PhD, Louisiana State U., 1988.

Assistant Professors

Lonsdale, Deryle W. (1997) BA, U. of Alberta, Canada, 1981; MS, PhD, Carnegie Mellon U., 1992, 1997.

Shelley, Monte (1976) PhD, Brigham Young U., 1976.

Tanner, Mark W. (1993) BA, U. of Utah, 1982; MA, U. of Southern California, 1985; PhD, U. of Pennsylvania, 1991.

Assistant Lecturer

Strong-Krause, Diane (1979) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1976.

Special Instructors

Cluff, Jamie (1997) BA, Arizona State U., 1987; MA, Brigham Young U., 1997.

Collins, Kathryn (1997) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1981, 1997.

Cox, Troy (1996) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1994, 1996.

Erickson, Dena (1995)BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1992, 1995.

Johnson, Garth (1997) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1990, 1997.

Jones, Dawnell (1995) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1990, 1995.

The following are linguists in other departments who frequently teach linguistics courses in their own department or in the Department of Linguistics and who also serve on graduate and other committees for the Linguistics Department.

Baltes, Paul (English)
Belnap, R. Kirk (Asian and Near Eastern Languages)
Bourgerie, Dana (Asian and Near Eastern Languages)
Bush, Charles D. (Humanities Research Center)
Clegg, J. Halvor (Spanish and Portuguese)
Eggington, William G. (English)
Fails, Willis (Spanish and Portuguese)
Hart, David Kay (Germanic and Slavic Languages)
Jones, Randall L. (Germanic and Slavic Languages)
Larson, Jerry W. (Humanities Research Center)
Lund, Randall J. (Germanic and Slavic Languages)
Meredith, R. Alan (Spanish and Portuguese)
Oaks, Dallin D. (English)
Parkinson, Dilworth B. (Asian and Near Eastern Languages)
Russell, Robert A. (Asian and Near Eastern Languages)
Skousen, Royal (English)
Smith, Kim L. (Humanities Research Center)
Smith, Melvin R. (Humanities Research Center)
Turley, Jeffrey S. (Spanish and Portuguese)
Watabe, Masakazu (Asian and Near Eastern Languages)

Lithuanian

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Management

Marriott School of Management

Dean: K. Fred Skousen
730 TNRB, PO Box 23113, (801) 378-4121

Associate Dean: Kim S. Cameron
730 TNRB, PO Box 23113, (801) 378-6823

Associate Dean: Gary C. Cornia
730 TNRB, PO Box 23152, (801) 378-6822

Undergraduate Director: Terry Nels Lee
664 TNRB, (801) 378-4810

Marriott School of Management Advisement Center
460 TNRB, PO Box 23185, (801) 378-4285

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Marriott School of Management carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the advisement center for specific details.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Management
Emphases:
- General Business
- Entrepreneurship
- Finance
- Insurance, Risk Management, and Financial Services
- Management Information Systems
- Marketing
- Operations Management
- Organizational Behavior
- Retailing
- International Coemphasis/Finance
- International Coemphasis/Marketing

Minors Management
- Public Management

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

For information on accounting degrees, see Accountancy and Information Systems, School of.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MAcc	Professional Accountancy
MAcc	Tax
MBA	Business Administration
MISM	Information Systems Management
MOB	Organizational Behavior
MPA	Public Administration

Individual program brochures are available from the Marriott School of Management, 730 TNRB, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602-3113. Also, refer to the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

The Discipline

Courses are designed to create opportunities for students to develop and apply their analytical and decision-making abilities. For this reason, Marriott School of Management programs make extensive use of faculty expertise, case studies, student projects, and internships.

Career Opportunities

Specific job descriptions are many and varied. Some examples are: banker, financial analyst, credit analyst, real estate broker, financial planner, human resource specialist, employee benefit specialist, personnel officer, business systems consultant/analyst, database manager, programmer, sales representative, account executive, research specialist, marketing analyst, management trainee, buyer, merchandiser, production manager, technical sales person, inventory manager, logistics manager, materials supervisor.

General Information

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Because of controlled enrollments in management programs, the competition for acceptance is keen. Those choosing to enter these majors should decide early, plan their schedules carefully, be aware of all the requirements, and stay informed about any changes by checking often with the Marriott School Advisement Center.

After completing the premanagement courses, students should make formal application to the Marriott School, usually during their fourth semester. Students interested in either accounting or management as a major must make application for the management major. A separate application to the School of Accountancy and Information Systems is necessary for those seeking an accounting major. Students not accepted into the program should work closely with advisement personnel to select a new major outside the Marriott School.

Requirements for application are:

1. Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.85 in the premanagement courses, with no more than one repeat for each class. No grade lower than a C– will be acceptable.

   Not every student meeting the minimum requirements is guaranteed acceptance into the undergraduate program.
2. Demonstrate a knowledge of computer skills, including word processing and spreadsheet analysis.

   Computer proficiency. Students may demonstrate word processing and spreadsheet skills with either a grade of B in an equivalent transfer course, a passing grade of 80 percent or better on a challenge exam, or a B grade in MCom 98 and ISys 98. Both of these courses are noncredit.

Major Requirements for All Management Emphases

1. No grade less than a C– will be allowed in Marriott School upper-division courses.
2. No more than 12 semester hours of upper-division transfer credit will be accepted toward the major and only 6 hours beyond Management Core 1.
3. Students are encouraged to enroll in courses outside the Marriott School. Only 46 upper-division Marriott School hours count toward graduation. (In some cases, 48 hours are allowed. Check with the Marriott School Advisement Center.) Only a single emphasis is permitted.
4. Complete the following Premanagement Core courses:
   Acc 200.
   Econ 110.
   ISys 98.
   Math 119.
   MCom 98.
   Stat 221.

   Note 1: Premanagement Core courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in Management Core 1 courses.

   Note 2: Before registering for Management Core 1 courses, students must complete the "continuance" form in the college advisement center.
5. Apply and be formally accepted into the program.
6. Complete the following Management Core 1 courses:
   Acc 210, 241.
   BusM 101, 102, 103, 104.
   ISys 201.
   MCom 320.
   PMgt 385.
   And select one course from the following:
   ManEc 300, 358, 376.
   And select one course from the following:
   ManEc 301, 453.
   And select one course from the following:
   BusM 371R, 380, 382.

   Note 1: Management Core 1 courses must be completed or in concurrent process of being completed before a student enrolls in Management Core 2 courses, with the exception of BusM 101, 102, 103 and 104 classes.

   Note 2: Before registering for Management Core 2 courses, students must complete the "continuance" form in the college advisement center.
7. Complete the following Management Core 2 courses:
   BusM 301, 341, 361.
   MCom 321.
   OrgB 321.
8. Complete the following after BusM 301 has been completed:
   BusM 499.
9. Select and complete the requirements for *one* emphasis from those listed below.

BS Management: General Business Emphasis (65 hours*)

The general business, or open, emphasis is available to students wishing to design their own program to meet specific goals such as working in a family business or preparing for a graduate program.

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Select any four Marriott School 300- and 400-level courses to meet specific student needs.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Management: Entrepreneurship Emphasis (65 hours*)

The entrepreneurship emphasis is designed to acquaint students with the problems commonly encountered when starting, growing, and harvesting business ventures. Emphasis is on the entrepreneurial career and perspective, not on one-shot ventures. Functional topics have already been taught in the function areas and are mentioned in entrepreneurship only when a different perspective is needed.

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Complete the following specialization course:
   BusM 479.
3. Select two courses from the following:
   BusM 454, 471, 475.
   OrgB 531.

4. Complete 3 elective hours from upper-division Marriott School courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Management: Finance Emphasis (65 hours*)

The course work offered in this area is designed, first, to familiarize business students with the elements of financial management and, second, to provide specialized work for those who seek positions of management and executive responsibility in finance. The requirements are flexible enough to allow some specialization toward commercial banking, business finance, insurance, real estate, investments, or personal financial planning.

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Complete the following specialization courses:
   BusM 401, 410.
3. Select one course from the following:
   BusM 405, 407, 411, 413, 418, 432.
   ManEc 453.
4. Complete 3 elective hours from upper-division Marriott School courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Management: Insurance, Risk Management, and Financial Services Emphasis (65 hours*)

The insurance, risk management, and financial services emphasis is designed to introduce students to the production, distribution, and use of financial products. The course work in this area will provide a solid foundation for those considering careers in these industries. Through appropriate choice of electives, students will have a solid foundation for achieving professional designations, such as the CLU, ChFC, CEBS, ARM, CPCU, etc., that will greatly enhance opportunities for gaining sales, management, financial product design, benefits and risk management consulting, or other professional positions.

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. The insurance, risk management, and financial services lecture series (BusM 382) is strongly recommended.
3. Complete the following specialization courses:
   BusM 406, 407.
4. Select two courses from the following:
   BusM 405, 410, 413, 418, 454.
   Acc 320.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Management: Management Information Systems Emphasis (68 hours*)

The information systems emphasis prepares students for careers in areas such as systems analysis and design, information systems consulting, and information systems management. The courses develop strength in the technical areas of programming, database design, and systems analysis and design. Significant emphasis is given to developing analytic and communications skills, with a focus on business applications. (See School of Accountancy and Information Systems for course descriptions and prerequisites.)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Complete the following specialization courses:
   ISys 440, 443, 445, 546, 548.

Recommended Electives

ISys 540, 544.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Management: Marketing Emphasis (65 hours*)

The marketing emphasis is designed to prepare students for marketing management responsibilities, product/brand management, industrial and consumer products sales management, market analysis, and entrepreneurial activities both in the U.S. and abroad.

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Complete the following specialization course:
   BusM 442.
3. Select two courses from the following:
   BusM 431, 444, 450, 454, 456, 457, 459.
4. Complete 3 elective hours from upper-division Marriott School courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Management: Operations Management Emphasis (65 hours*)

Course work is designed for business students whose interests lie in the operations or production area of any business enterprise. Students can prepare for positions in operations or production management, purchasing, quality management, operations research, inventory control, and similar areas. In addition, many of the courses offered in this area will provide an excellent background for those interested in the increasingly important quantitative aspects of finance and marketing.

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Complete the following specialization course:
   BusM 463.
3. Select two courses from the following:
   BusM 461, 462, 465, 468R.
   MFE 340, 480.
   MFET 532, 534.
   Stat 361, 462.
4. Complete 3 elective hours from upper-division Marriott School courses.

Note: Students electing this option should be aware of prerequisites for some of the courses outside the Marriott School when planning their program.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Management: Organizational Behavior Emphasis (65 hours*)

Students interested in a career in human resource management are encouraged to obtain a master's degree.

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Complete the following specialization courses:
   OrgB 327, 333, 347.
3. Complete 3 elective hours from upper-division Marriott School courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Management: Retailing Emphasis (65 hours*)

The retailing emphasis is designed to prepare students for positions in retailing management that include merchandising, financial control, sales promotion, personnel, store operations, and electronic data processing. An internship (BusM 599R) in one of the major retail stores throughout the country is required. For additional information, contact the Institute of Retail Management (480 TNRB).

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Complete the following specialization courses:
   BusM 442, 456, 459.
3. Complete the following internship in one of the major retail stores throughout the country (for additional information, contact the Institute of Retail Management, 480 TNRB):
   BusM 496R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Management: International Coemphasis/ Finance (68 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Complete the following specialization courses:
   BusM 401, 410.
3. Select one course from the following:
   BusM 405, 407, 411, 413, 418
   ManEc 453.
4. Complete the following:
   BusM 430, 432.

Recommended

Second language competency.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Management: International Coemphasis/ Marketing (68 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Complete the following specialization course:
   BusM 442.
3. Select two courses from the following:
   BusM 444, 450, 454, 456, 459.
4. Complete the following:
   BusM 430, 431.

Recommended

Second language competency.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Management (22 hours*)

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses:
   Acc 200 or 201.
   Econ 110.
   Math 110.
   Stat 221.

   Note: students should complete prerequisite courses before taking functional courses.
2. Complete the following Marriott School functional courses:
   BusM 300, 340.
   OrgB 320.
3. Select one course from the following:
   BusM 371R, 380, 382.
4. No grade below C– will be counted toward the minor.
5. No more than one transfer class will be accepted as a substitute for OrgB 320, BusM 300, 340.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Business Management

J. Michael Pinegar, Chair
660-A TNRB, (801) 378-3088

Accessibility of Business Management Courses

1. BusM 200-level courses are open to all students.
2. BusM 300, 340, 380, 382, and 430 are open to all students. All other BusM 300-level courses are closed except to students who have been formally accepted into the Marriott School of Management or the School of Accountancy and Information Systems or who have written approval from the director of the institute or the associate dean.
3. Non–Marriott School students may take 400-level courses for which they have proper prerequisites and the undergraduate director's written permission.

Business Management (BusM)

Undergraduate Courses

101. Readings for Managers. (0.5:0:0)
Readings in literature; discussions with management faculty. Upon acceptance to the Marriott School, students must enroll for BusM 101. See advisement center for details.

102. Mentor Program. (0.5:0:0) Prerequisite: acceptance into Marriott School.
Readings in literature. Second course of readings series; discussions with outside mentor. Career opportunities. See advisement center for details.

103. Readings for Managers. (0.5:0:0) Prerequisite: BusM 102.
Readings in literature. Third course of readings series; discussions with management faculty. See advisement center for details.

104. Readings for Managers. (0.5:0:0) Prerequisite: BusM 103.
Readings in literature. Fourth course of readings series; discussions with management faculty. See advisement center for details.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: consent of both department associate director and cooperative education coordinator; declared Marriott School major.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200. Personal Finance. (2:2:0) Independent Study also.
Practical course in money management and utilizing savings.

300. Financial Management. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Acc 200 or equivalent.
For nonmanagement majors; emphasizes financial statement analysis, financial planning, sources of financing, working capital management, risk and return, and valuation.

301. Financial Management. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Premanagement and Management cores and full acceptance into a Marriott School of Management upper-division major. Non–Marriott School majors must obtain special approval from associate director.
Financial management from the viewpoint of the business manager emphasizing profitability, liquidity, and long-range financial planning.

340. Marketing Management. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
For nonmanagement majors. Emphasizes marketing's role in society and the firm, marketing opportunities, the consumer market, and management of the marketing mix.

341. Marketing Management. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Premanagement and Management I cores and full acceptance into a Marriott School of Management upper-division major. Non–Marriott School majors must obtain special approval from associate director.
Market segmentation, product service, promotion, channel, pricing strategies. Marketing principles in consumer and industrial markets, profit and nonprofit organizations, domestic and international companies, and small and large firms.

360. Operations Management. (3:3:0)
For nonmanagement majors. Overview of the operations area including planning, scheduling, inventory management, quality control, and internal flow of manufacturing information.

361. Operations Management. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Premanagement and Management 1 cores and full acceptance into a Marriott School of Management upper-division major.
Non–Marriott School majors must obtain special approval from the undergraduate director. Overview of operations manager's decision areas. Designing, controlling, and managing production and delivery of product or service to the customer.

371R. Entrepreneurship Lecture Series. (1:1:0 ea.)
Lectures by successful entrepreneurs on subjects significant to entrepreneur-type opportunities.

372. Basic Entrepreneurship Skills. (3:3:0) For non-Marriott School students.
Practical aspects of business formation and growth; key skills and principles needed to successfully start up and grow a business.

373R. Entrepreneurial Seminar. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: completion of department core courses.

380. Executive Lectures. (1:1:0)
Lectures by top executives on subjects significant to executive leadership.

382. Special Topics Lectures. (1:1:0)

399R. Cooperative Education. (3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: departmental approval; Marriott School major.
On-the-job experience, including internships. Not eligible for an emphasis elective.

401. Advanced Financial Management. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 301.
Capital budgeting, cost of capital, capital structure/dividends, mergers and acquisitions, and current financial problems.

405. Management of Financial Institutions. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 301.
Management problems of commercial bank and nonbank financial institutions, emphasizing balance sheet management, regulation, and the process of intermediation.

406. Principles of Risk and Insurance. (3:3:0)
The process of identifying, measuring, and dealing with personal risk. Introduction to property/casualty as well as life and health insurance issues and products.

407. Risk Management. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: BusM 301.
Management of risk exposures in a business setting. The process of identifying, measuring, and dealing with risk. Coverage includes both traditional insurable risks and financial risks.

410. Investments. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 301.
Security markets, security analysis, and portfolio management.

411. Advanced Investments. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 301, 410.
Current investment literature, efficient markets, modern portfolio theory, capital assets pricing, options pricing theory.

413. Real Estate Administration. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 301.
Principles of property investments: determining value, financing arrangements, and marketing and management problems.

418. Financial Planning. (3:3:0)
Recommended: BusM 407, 410, 413, 416, Acc 320 (may be taken concurrently if necessary). Applying financial principles to household decision making, stressing integration between areas. Income tax and estate planning, retirement, investments, portfolio management, and risk management.

430. Introduction to International Business. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PMgt 385 for business majors.
Complexities confronting U.S. firms and their management in international environments. Emphasizes functional and planning areas, including organization, market research, financial analysis.

431. International Marketing. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 341, 430.
International market entry strategies, export marketing, joint ventures, and other market entry modes. Regional/National markets; cultural, political, legal environments. Negotiations, trade financing, marketing mix.

432. International Corporate Finance. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 301, 430.
Financial aspects of multinational corporations operating within an international environment; direct foreign investment, foreign exchange regulations, capital markets, etc.

442. Marketing Research. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 341.
Concepts and methodology for conducting marketing research. Emphasis on solving problems faced by the marketing manager. Consulting research project required.

444. Consumer Behavior. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 341.
Mental and emotional processes and physical actions that people engage in when selecting, purchasing, using, and discarding products and services to satisfy consumer needs and desires.

450. Industrial Marketing and Procurement. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 341.
Buying strategies, market opportunities, product strategies, channel system relations, and pricing of industrial products and services. Intensive negotiations experience gained in class.

454. Professional Selling and Sales Management. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 341.
Concepts of professional selling and sales management including personal selling skills; strategic role of personal selling; organizing, directing, controlling, and evaluating the sales force.

455. Promotion Management (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 341.
Strategies in promoting business and nonbusiness products, services, and institutions, including the role of promotion, target selection, media and copy decisions, and marketing research.

456. Retailing Management. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 341 (340 for nonmajors).
Selection, location, and management of retail stores and systems, emphasizing profitability and integration of accounting, finance, and economic concepts and tools.

457. Internet Marketing of Products and Services. (3:3:0) F, W
Integrates product, research, sales, and promotional strategy and concepts into an overall marketing plan for developing an Internet business. Term project developing an Internet business required.

458R. Seminar in Marketing Management. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: BusM 341.
Selected marketing issues, quantitative techniques and forecasting, advertising management, and industrial management.

459. Marketing Strategy. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 301, 341, 442.
Integration of finance, marketing, and case studies in economic concepts and techniques in marketing decision making and planning.

461. Operations Analysis and Problem Solving. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 361.
Methods and tools necessary for analyzing and solving problems associated with operations, services, and supply chain management.

462. Services Management. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: introductory operations management course or instructor's consent.
Management principles and characteristics of service industries and service aspects of supply chains: sources of strategic advantage; process analysis and tools; quality.

463. Quality Management. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 361.
Concepts of quality management, strategic issues, philosophies, and tools used to implement and control quality.

465. Contemporary Issues in Production and Inventory Management. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 361.
Information flow, required feedback, and control associated with managing productive capacity. Developing proper inventory and productive capacities in manufacturing and nonmanufacturing environments.

468R. Selected Topics in Operations and Systems Analysis. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: BusM 361.

471. Entrepreneurial Perspective. (3:3:0)
General topics in entrepreneurship.

475. Financing New Ventures. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 301, 341, 361, OrgB 321.
Concepts and skills of entrepreneurship, emphasizing how new and emerging companies are financed. Applying functional tools to case situations.

479. Creating and Managing New Ventures. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: completion of department core courses.
Key issues and problems facing managers in start-up companies. Team-taught by professors and entrepreneurs; particularly helpful for students starting businesses.

490R. Topics in Business Management. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: completion of department core courses.

496R. Cooperative Education: Retailing Internship. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Institute of Retail Management director's consent.

499. Strategic Management. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: BusM 301.
Concepts, tools, and approaches to understand competitive forces and to systematically and consistently develop sustainable competitive advantages.

Business Management Faculty

Professors

Andrus, Roman R. (1976) BS, Brigham Young U., 1958; MS, PhD, Columbia U., 1959, 1965.

Blood, Dwight M. (1980) BS, U. of Wyoming, 1953; MS, Montana State U., 1955; MA, PhD, U. of Michigan, 1958, 1963.

Bryson, Phillip J. (1983) BA, U. of Utah, 1964; PhD, Ohio State U., 1967.

Call, Ivan T. (1963) BS, Brigham Young U., 1958; MBA, DBA, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1959, 1969.

Geurts, Michael D. (1975) BS, MBA, U. of Utah, 1963, 1965; PhD, U. of Oregon, 1972.

Giauque, William C. (1977) MBA, DBA, Harvard U., 1968, 1972; BS, California Inst. of Technology, 1963.

Heaton, Hal B. (1982) BS, MBA, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1977; MA, PhD, Stanford U., 1978, 1982.

Hill, Ned C. (1987) BS, U. of Utah, 1969; MS, PhD, Cornell U., 1971, 1976.

Hunt, H. Keith (1975) BS, MBA, U. of Utah, 1961, 1962; PhD, Northwestern U., 1972.

McKinnon, Gary F. (1969) BS, MBA, U. of Utah, 1962, 1963; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1968.

Nadauld, Stephen D. (1976) BA, Brigham Young U., 1967; MBA, Harvard Business School, 1969; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1978.

Pinegar, J. Michael (1988) BA, Brigham Young U., 1973; MBA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1979, 1982.

Schill, Ronald Lynn (1971) BS, MBA, U. of Utah, 1962, 1963; PhD, U. of Oregon, 1971.

Smith, Scott M. (1981) BS, Brigham Young U., 1971; MBA, Michigan State U., 1973; PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1979.

Stone, Bernell K. (1986) BS, Duke U., 1964; MS, U. of Wisconsin, 1966; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1968.

Swinyard, William R. (1978) BS, Brigham Young U., 1965; MBA, U. of Michigan, 1967; PhD, Stanford U., 1976.

Associate Professors

Crawford, Robert G. (1972) BA, Brigham Young U., 1967; MS, PhD, Carnegie-Mellon U., 1971, 1975.

Fawcett, Stanley E. (1996) BS, MBA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1987, 1988; PhD, Arizona State U., 1990.

Lambert, William R. (1962) BS, U. of Utah, 1953; MBA, Harvard U., 1962; DBA, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1968.

Lee, Terry Nels (1970) BS, U. of Utah, 1963; MBA, Brigham Young U., 1966; PhD, U. of Washington, 1973.

McQueen, Grant R. (1989) BA, MBA, Brigham Young U., 1981, 1984; PhD, U. of Washington, 1989.

Nelson, Ray D. (1985) BA, Brigham Young U., 1975; MA, PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1979, 1981.

Rhoads, Gary K. (1992) BS, MBA, Idaho State U., 1978, 1982; PhD, Texas Tech. U., 1988.

Sawaya, William J., Jr. (1978) BS, U. of Wyoming, 1967; MS, PhD, Arizona State U., 1969, 1971.

Swenson, Michael J. (1989) BS, Brigham Young U., 1980; MBA, U. of Utah, 1981; PhD, U. of Oregon, 1989.

Thorley, Steven R. (1991) BS, MBA, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1982; PhD, U. of Washington, 1991.

Wilson, Brent D. (1982) BA, Weber State Coll., 1969; MBA, Northwestern U., 1971; DBA, Harvard U., 1979.

Assistant Professors

Holmes, Andrew L. (1996) BBA, MS, Texas A&M U., 1986, 1988; PhD, U. of Houston, 1992.

Merrill, Craig B. (1993) BA, Brigham Young U., 1989; MA, PhD, U. of Pennsylvania, 1992, 1994.

Sampson, Scott E. (1996) BA, Brigham Young U., 1988; MBA, PhD, U. of Virginia, 1991, 1993.

Seawright, Kristie W. (1993) BS, Brigham Young U., 1977; BS, MBA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1987, 1989, 1993.

Whitlark, David B. (1989) BA, U. of Utah, 1978; MBA, Cornell U., 1985; PhD, U. of Virginia, 1988.

Adjunct Professor

Oveson, Richard M. (1976) BA, Brigham Young U., 1955; MPA, PhD, Harvard U., 1965, 1969.

Adjunct Associate Professors

Jenkins, James (1979) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1967; MS, PhD, Purdue U., 1970, 1975.

Wooley, Kenneth M. (1979) BA, Brigham Young U., 1969; MBA, PhD, Stanford U., 1971, 1972.

Instructors

Murray, Robert B. (1985) BS, Utah State U., 1951; MBA, Harvard U., 1957.

Pearce, Wayne E. (1982) BS, MBA, U. of Utah, 1960, 1961.

Emeriti

Barnes, Howard W. (1964) AB, Harvard Coll., 1955; MBA, U. of Southern California, 1963; Dr rer pol, Technische Universität Braunschweig, Federal Republic of Germany, 1968.

Christensen, Edward L. (1953) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1938, 1939, 1953.

Cox, Charles M. (1965) BS, Brigham Young U., 1955; MBA, Harvard U., 1961; PhD, U. of Washington, 1978.

Davies, J. Kenneth (1953) Bs, Marquette U., 1945; MS, Brigham Young U., 1950; PhD, U. of Southern California, 1960.

Rickenback, J. Dean (1957) BS, Brigham Young U., 1954; MS, Stanford U., 1957; PhD, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1963.

Smith, Milton E. (1966) BA, MBA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1951, 1961, 1981.

Taylor, Weldon J. (1937) BS, Brigham Young U., 1934; MBA, Harvard U., 1937; PhD, New York U., 1955.

Managerial Economics (ManEc)

Undergraduate Courses

300. Economics of Market Systems. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Econ 110.
Decision making, price formation, and economic organization of the firm in market environments.

301. Macroeconomics for Business Decisions. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Econ 110, ManEc 300.
Models of aggregate economic fluctuations, economic growth, inflation, and interest rates.

358. International Economics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110.
International trade theory and issues, economic integration, trade and development, contemporary trade problems.

375. Public Finance. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ManEc 300, or 301, or equivalent.
Analysis of interaction of governments and institutions of a market economy. Tax and revenue policy, evaluation of expenditure policy, and impact of public decisions on businesses and individuals.

376. Government and Business. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110.
Interaction of political and economic forces in determining product and asset prices and the distribution of income and wealth.

388. Applied Econometrics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: intermediate economic theory and a calculus course.
Using economic theory. Utilizing available data and econometric and quantitative models to address practical problems of management, finance, and economics.

453. Money, Banking, and Business. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ManEc 300, 301, or equivalent.
Economic analysis of effects of money, banking, and financial institutions on business decisions and aggregate economic activity.

489. Forecasting Methods for Managers. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ManEc 300, 301, Stat 221, or equivalent.
Application of quantitative methodologies in business forecasting situations.

Engineering/Technology Management Degree Programs

See Marriott School of Management in the BYU 1998–99 Graduate Catalog and the College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center.

Organizational Leadership and Strategy

Paul R. Timm, Chair
590 TNRB, PO Box 23041, (801) 378-4081

Management Communication (MCom)

Undergraduate Courses

320. Written Business Communication. (3:3:1) Honors also. Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Engl 115. To be taken before senior year. Not for freshmen.
Includes case analysis and problem solving. Fulfills Advanced Writing requirement for General Education.

321. Oral Business Communication. (1:1:2) Prerequisite: acceptance into the Marriott School of Management.
Theory and practice, including experience in instructional, sales, and persuasive business presentations. Presentations will be videotaped.

420. Desktop Publishing and Document Design. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: MCom 320 or Advanced Writing requirement.
Applying desktop publishing systems and document design principles in creating communications for business.

490R. Special Topics in Management Communication. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: MCom 320, 321.
Special subjects as announced before each semester.

Management Communication Faculty

Professors
Baker, William H. (1970) BS, Southern Utah U., 1969; MS, Brigham Young U., 1970; EdD, Oklahoma State U., 1974.
Perry, Devern J. (1963) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1962; EdD, U. of North Dakota, 1968.
Stoddard, Ted D. (1969) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1963; EdD, Arizona State U., 1967.
Timm, Paul Roy (1979) BA, State U. of New York, 1968; MA, Ohio U., 1969; PhD, Florida State U., 1977.

Associate Professors
DeTienne, Kristen B. (1991) BA, California State U., 1987; MA, PhD, U. of Southern California, 1990, 1991.
Hanson, Garth A. (1982) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1963, 1965; PhD, U. of Nebraska, 1973.
Hartman, Larry D. (1984) BA, MS, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1963; EdD, Oklahoma State U., 1973.
Thompson, Michael P. (1988) BA, Brigham Young U., 1975; MS, PhD, Rensselaer Polytechnic Inst., 1978, 1985.

Assistant Professors
Hanson, Kaye T. (1989) BA, MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1967, 1983.
Howard, Janet M. (1969) BS, MS, Northwestern State U., 1965, 1968; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1985.
Smart, Karl L. (1994) BA, U. of Utah, 1982; MA, Utah State U., 1985; PhD, U. of Florida, 1989.

Emeriti
Ashby, Nadine T. (1960) BA, Brigham Young U., 1936; MA, Colorado State Coll., 1959; PhD, U. of North Dakota, 1971.
Bell, R. DerMont (1957) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1956; PhD, U. of Southern California, 1960.
Nelson, George Edward (1968) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1965, 1966; EdD, Arizona State U., 1968.
Petersen, Betty J. (1963) BS, Utah State U., 1958; MA, EdD, Columbia U., 1960, 1971.
Waters, Max L. (1958) BA, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1960; EdD, Colorado State Coll., 1963.

Organizational Behavior (OrgB)

Undergraduate Courses

320. Fundamentals of Organizational Behavior. (3:2:2) Independent Study also.
Organizational behavior at three levels: individual, group, and organizational. Motivation, communication, rewards, leadership, conflict, decision making, organizational structure, performance evaluation, and organizational change.

321. Fundamentals of Organizational Behavior. (3:2:2) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: for Marriott School majors only.
Organizational behavior at three levels: individual, group, and organizational. Motivation, communication, rewards, leadership, conflict, decision making, organizational structure, performance evaluation, and organizational change.

327. Human Resource Management. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Functions of human resource management: employee selection, wage and salary administration, training and development, employee relations, and human resource planning.

333. Human Resource Development. (3:3:0)
Competencies and knowledge fundamental to management, employee, and organization development; history, opportunities, programs, preparation, and place of HRD in organizations.

347. Managerial Leadership Development. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Principles and practices of successful leadership: decision making, communications, planning, team building, motivation, and interpersonal skills.

490R. Professional Development Seminar. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: OrgB 320 or 321.
Special topics in organizational behavior. Course content varies from year to year.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

531. (OrgB-MBA 649) Managing Entrepreneurial Firms and Family Businesses. (3:3:0) F, W
Issues and problems faced by managers of entrepreneurial enterprises and leaders of family-owned businesses.

541. Training and Development. (3:3:0) W
Analysis of learning theories, training methods and strategies, training and development applications, and production and use of current technology.

551. Theory and Practice of Third-World Development. (3:3:0)

561. Labor Relations. (3:3:0)

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see Organizational Leadership and Strategy in the BYU 1998–99 Graduate Catalog.

Organizational Behavior Faculty

Professors
Cameron, Kim S. (1995) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1971; MA, PhD, Yale U., 1976, 1978.
Cherrington, David J. (1973) BS, Brigham Young U., 1966; MBA, DBA, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1970, 1970.

Dyer, W. Gibb, Jr. (1984) BS, MBA, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1979; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1984.
Mills, Gordon E. (1971) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1967; PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1970.
Stephan, Eric G. (1968) BS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1961, 1966.
Whetten, David A. (1994) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1971; PhD, Cornell U., 1974.
Wilkins, Alan L. (1978) BA, MBA, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1974; PhD, Stanford U., 1979.
Woodworth, Warner P. (1976) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1969; PhD, U. of Michigan, 1974.

Associate Professors
Gregersen, Hal B. (1992) BA, U. of Utah, 1981; MOB, Brigham Young U., 1983; PhD, U. of California, Irvine, 1989.
Kirkham, Kate L. (1978) BS, U. of Utah, 1966; MA, George Washington U., 1973; PhD, Union Graduate School, 1977.
Meek, Christopher B. (1984) BS, MOB, Brigham Young U., 1973, 1975; PhD, Cornell U., 1983.

Emeriti
Covey, Stephen R. (1957) BS, U. of Utah, 1953; MBA, Harvard U., 1957; DRE, Brigham Young U., 1976.
Moffitt, J. Weldon (1953) BS, Brigham Young U., 1949; MS, U. of Utah, 1950; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1953.
Pace, R. Wayne (1978) BS, U. of Utah, 1953; MS, Brigham Young U., 1957; PhD, Purdue U., 1960.
Peterson, Brent D. (1972) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1968; PhD, Ohio U., 1970.

Strategy Faculty

Professors
Clarke, Darral G. (1985) BS, U. of Utah, 1965; MS, Ohio State U., 1967; PhD, Purdue U., 1972.
Daines, Robert H. (1959) BS, Utah State U., 1956; MBA, Stanford U., 1959; DBA, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1966.
Perry, Lee T. (1985) BS, MOB, Brigham Young U., 1974, 1977; PhD, Yale U., 1982.

Associate Professor
Jackson, W. Burke (1973) BS, Yale U., 1963; MBA, Rutgers U., 1964; MS, PhD, Stanford U., 1968, 1978.

Assistant Professors
Godfrey, Paul C. (1994) BS, U. of Utah, 1983; MBA, PhD, U. of Washington, 1989, 1994.
Hansen, Mark H. (1996) BS, MBA, Brigham Young U., 1990; PhD, Texas A&M U., 1996.
Sanders, Wm. Gerard (1996) BS, Brigham Young U., 1980; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1996.

Romney Institute of Public Management

Lawrence C. Walters, Director
760-A TNRB, PO Box 23158, (801) 378-4221

Minor Public Management (21 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following prerequisite courses:
   GE American Heritage requirement.
   Econ 110.
2. Complete the following:
   PMgt 310, 320, 330, 340, 385.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Public Management (PMgt)

Undergraduate Course

310. Political Economics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Econ 110.
Application of economic concepts and tools in the public sector, including analysis of managerial and public policy issues.

320. Managing Public Financial Resources. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PMgt 310.
Introduction to accounting, budgeting and financial analysis, and decision making for the public sector. Emphasizes basic concepts and informed use of government budgeting and financial systems.

330. Making Decisions in the Public Sector. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PMgt 310.
Introduction to processes by which public policies are decided and implemented; basic techniques of public policy analysis.

340. Managing Human Resources for the Public Sector. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: GE American Heritage requirement.
Introduction to human resource management, organizational development, and leadership in public organizations.

385. Business and Society. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Interaction between business and other societal institutions, both domestic and international.

499R. Honors Thesis in Management. (1–6:Arr.:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see Public Management in the BYU 1998–99 Graduate Catalog.

Romney Institute of Public Management Faculty

Professors
Adolphson, Donald L. (1980) BA, U. of California, Berkeley, 1966; MS, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1968, 1973.
Brady, F. Neil (1993) BS, MPA, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1980; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1978.
Cornia, Gary C., Associate Dean (1980) BS, Weber State Coll., 1972; MS, Utah State U., 1974; PhD, Ohio State U., 1979.
Hart, David Kirkwood (1983) BS, Brigham Young U., 1957; MA, U. of California, Berkeley, 1960; PhD, Claremont Graduate School, 1965.
Knighton, Lennis M. (1971) AS, Stevens Henager Coll., 1956; BA, MAcc, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1964; CPA, 1964; PhD, Michigan State U., 1966.
Parsons, Robert J. (1970) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1966; PhD, U. of California, Riverside, 1971.
Pritchett, B. Michael (1969) BS, Brigham Young U., 1965; MS, PhD, Purdue U., 1967, 1970.
Ritchie, J. Bonner (1973) BS, PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1960, 1968.
Wright, N. Dale (1968) BA, MS, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1966; PhD, U. of Southern California, 1972.

Associate Professors
Buckwalter, Doyle W. (1968) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1964; PhD, U. of Michigan, 1968.
Koller, Roland H., II (1969) BS, U. of Utah, 1962; MA, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1968, 1969.
Walters, Lawrence C. (1985) BA, Brigham Young U., 1981; PhD, U. of Pennsylvania, 1986.
Wheeler, Gloria E. (1978) BS, Montana State U., 1965; MA, MS, PhD, U. of Michigan, 1966, 1968, 1972.

Assistant Professor
Woller, Gary M. (1991) BA, MBA, Brigham Young U., 1984, 1986; MA, PhD, U. of Rochester, 1989, 1992.

Emeriti

Brower, Stephen L. (1974) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1949, 1950; PhD, Cornell U., 1961.

Snow, Karl N., Jr., (1962) BS, Brigham Young U., 1956; MA, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1958; MPA, DPA, U. of Southern California, 1965, 1972.

Institute of Marketing: Retail, Sales, and Services

William D. Price, Director
480 TNRB, PO Box 23005, (801) 378-2953

The Institute of Marketing offers a marketing, retail, sales, and services emphasis through the Institute of Business Management. It also sponsors the Fred G. Meyer Chair of Retailing, established to enhance understanding and advancement of the industry and to promote successful business principles. Goals of the institute include:

1. Increase the quantity and quality of young people entering the retail, sales, and services field, reduce the time required for a new trainee to become an effective part of the management team, and reduce the turnover rate among management trainees.
2. Produce research that meets the demands of technological and management progress in marketing.
3. Produce workshops and seminars on and off campus to (a) help meet the needs of retail sales and service management and (b) increase students' understanding of both current management problems and long-range social issues.

The Institute of Marketing places a large number of students in internship programs in leading companies across the United States. Internships and scholarships are available to students in any major.

Management Communication

See Management, Marriott School of (under Organizational Leadership and Strategy).

Managerial Economics

See Management, Marriott School of (under Business Management).

Mandarin

See Asian and Near Eastern Languages.

Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology

Robert H. Todd, Chair
435 CTB, PO Box 24206, (801) 378-6300

College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center
264 CB, PO Box 24101, (801) 378-4325

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Department of Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center or your faculty advisor for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Electronics Engineering Technology
Emphasis (optional):
International
BS Manufacturing Engineering
Emphasis (optional):
International
BS Manufacturing Engineering Technology
Emphasis (optional):
International
Minors Electronics Engineering Technology
Manufacturing

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Manufacturing Engineering
MS Engineering Technology
MS/MBA
Interdisciplinary Product Development (dual program)

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Financial Support Opportunities

In addition to general university scholarships and student employment, the Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology Department offers department scholarships, a cooperative education program with industry, and a variety of departmental part-time jobs such as research assistant, new product developer, lab assistant, paper grader, electronics technician, maintenance assistant, computer operator, etc.

Cooperative Education

Industrial experience in the major before graduation is strongly encouraged. Qualified students may enroll in 199R or 399R (cooperative education) and receive 1–3 hours of credit for each semester. The co-op program must be approved before the actual experience. A formal report and employer evaluation are required. Up to 3 co-op credit hours may be used to fill technical elective requirements with advisor's approval.

Transfer Credit

When transferring into the department, students should meet with an assigned advisor before registering for classes to evaluate their technical courses and to get help in planning their schedule for completion of remaining course work.

Extracurricular Activities

Students are encouraged to join student chapters of national professional organizations affiliated with their major area of study. Student interaction, leadership, and career awareness are important to engineering and technology studies. All majors are encouraged to become members and actively participate not only in these chapters, but also to support field trips, guest speakers, banquets, and department activities.

Professional Program Acceptance

Students must be accepted into the professional program before they may take upper-division courses in any of the department

programs. To apply, students must have completed the preprofessional requirements for their major program with a minimum grade of C– in each course. A professional program application (available from the College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center, 264 CB) must be completed and submitted to the advisement center. Acceptance is based primarily upon the grade point average received in preprofessional and other major courses, including all grades in repeated courses. Normal professional program application deadlines are June 1, October 1, and February 1, although applications may be considered at other times for extenuating circumstances.

Academic Standards and Continuance

On gaining acceptance into the professional program, students must maintain a minimum university cumulative grade point average of 2.0. Students who accumulate more than 6 credit hours of grades below C– in professional program courses may not continue in the program or graduate until courses are retaken to reduce the unacceptable credit to 6 or fewer hours. A professional program course may not be retaken more than once.

Student Advising

To help each student gain the best educational experience, every student is assigned a faculty advisor upon entering the department. We strongly encourage students to visit with their advisor at least every year, and preferably every semester, to ensure that they are making appropriate progress in the program and taking courses in the appropriate sequence.

Electronics Engineering Technology

C. Richard G. Helps, Program Coordinator
435 CTB, (801) 378-6305

The Discipline

Electronics is pervasive. Most technological products, from cars to cash registers, incorporate significant electronic components, and our modern world depends on its many applications. Fortunately, electronics systems have the paradoxical properties of constantly becoming both more powerful and less expensive. Because electronics is exciting and ever-changing, students pursuing any of its fields will enjoy lifelong learning. As our world becomes more complex, there is an increasing need for professionals who understand electronic systems and can implement them successfully.

Electronics Engineering Technology (EET) prepares students to integrate modern electronics and techniques into the design and implementation of useful working systems. Students at BYU are offered a comprehensive range of topics in electronics, including communications, digital electronics, real-time programming, circuit analysis, computer networking, microcontrollers, light-wave systems, and instrumentation. Students can pursue further degrees through a master of science in engineering technology or in business, management, computer disciplines, or law.

Students in EET develop creative and analytical skills that can be applied to many electronic problems. When compared to traditional engineering disciplines, EET places more emphasis on implementing working systems and less emphasis on theoretical mathematical analysis. Graduates form teams with engineers, technicians, and other professionals to use electronics in many applications. They integrate their theoretical knowledge with their training on modern testing, manufacturing, and other electronic equipment. BYU has exceptional laboratory and workshop facilities to help students learn all aspects of design implementation.

Both the production of electronic products and the instrumentation and automation of production processes offer opportunities for EET graduates. About 30 percent of all products manufactured in the USA are electronic. EET students can minor in manufacturing to supplement their education.

The engineering technology program is accredited as a four-year professional program by the Technology Accreditation Commission of the Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology, Inc. (TAC/ABET).

Career Opportunities

Career opportunities in EET are plentiful and rewarding. Graduates normally work in areas of engineering application rather than engineering research. They may work in operations, manufacturing, design, or sales. They find employment in computer networking, aerospace, computer software and hardware fields, and both large and small manufacturing industries. Typical job titles in industry include electronics engineering technologist, applications engineer, project leader, design/test engineer, and real-time programmer. Opportunities to move into management positions often present themselves after a few years in industry.

General Information

Nine hours of 400–level EET electives are selected from a list of six EET courses to allow students ample choice in their senior year. Six additional upper-division hours of technical electives, selected from any area on the BYU campus, allow students to prepare for specific fields. These 6 elective hours must be approved by an advisor prior to taking the classes.

Recommended high school courses include electronics, algebra, trigonometry, physics, and computers. Additional course work in calculus, drafting, chemistry, and shop is also recommended. Students who lack this preparation should meet with an advisor for help in planning their program.

This four-year degree is designed so that students who complete a TAC/ABET–accredited two-year electronics technician program can transfer to BYU and complete the last two years with minimum interruption.

BS Electronics Engineering Technology (86 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Complete 30 hours of university-level credit with a minimum cumulative GPA of 2.0.
2. Complete the following preprofessional courses with a grade of C– of better:
   EET 101, 103, 136, 231, 233, 240.
   Math 111, 112, 113.
   Chem 105.
   CS 130.
   Phscs 121, 221.
   EET 291R (take three times; not needed while enrolled in EET 101).
3. Complete the following supporting courses:
   Econ 110.
   Engl 316.
   Stat 361.
4. Complete the following professional courses:
   EET 325, 328, 340, 343, 345, 447.
   EET 391R (take four times).
   And select three courses from the following:
   EET 421, 431, 441, 443, 444, 461R.

5. After consulting with an EET advisor, complete 6 hours of technical electives.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Emphasis (optional): International (93.5–95.5 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the requirements for the electronics engineering technology program as outlined above (with the exception of Econ 110).
2. Complete the following additional courses:
   EngT 200, 498.
   BusM 430.
3. Select one course from the following:
   RelC 344, 351, 355, 356.
4. After consulting with the college advisement center, select a foreign literature course or a classical civilization course.
   Or select one course from the following:
   ArtHC 260.
   FnArt 270R.
   Fren/Ital 217.
   Hist 312.
   Hum 240, 242.
   Music 203.
5. An international "live-in" experience is required. It may be satisfied by (1) a semester or term work experience in a foreign country, (2) a semester or term Study Abroad program approved by the David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies and college personnel, or (3) a prior living experience, such as a foreign mission.

Recommended

Proficiency in a foreign language is strongly suggested.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Electronics Engineering Technology (16–17 hours)

Minor Requirements

1. Complete all minor courses with a grade of C– or better.
2. Complete the following:
   EET 103, 136.
3. Select one course from the following:
   EET 314, 315.
4. Complete two courses from the following:
   EET 231, 240, 328, 340, 343, 444.

Electronics Engineering Technology (EET)

Undergraduate Courses

Note: For 500-level and above electronics engineering technology courses, see the MFET listing at the end of this section.

101. Cornerstone, Electronics Engineering Technology. (2:2:2) F, W
Planning and preparing for a successful career in electronics engineering technology. Developing personal integrity, study skills, and computing and problem-solving skills.

103. AC/DC Circuits. (4:3:3) F, W, Su Prerequisite: Math 111 or concurrent registration.
Basic AC/DC analysis, including Ohm's Law, loop and nodal analysis, capacitance, inductance, the sine wave, impedance, reactance, resonance, network theorems, and transformers. Fee.

136. Digital Circuits. (3:2:3) F, W Prerequisite: EET 103 or concurrent registration.
Logic circuits and families, documentation and terminology, combinational and sequential circuit analysis and design. Fee.

198R. Directed Studies in Electronics Engineering Technology. (2:2:2 ea.)
Introduction to electronics engineering technology. Special topics in problem-solving and technology careers.

199R. Cooperative Education: Electronics Engineering Technology. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

231. Active Devices and Circuits. (4:3:3) F, W Prerequisite: EET 103, Math 112; Chem 105 or concurrent registration.
Diode and transistor principles including semiconductor theory, bipolar and field effect device characteristics and parameters, amplifier principles including biasing and AC impedance and gain analysis, power amplifiers. Fee.

233. Advanced Electronic Devices and Linear Integrated Circuits. (4:3:3) W, Sp Prerequisite: EET 231.
Feedback principles, frequency response and Bode analysis, Miller effect, differential amplifiers, operational amplifiers, regulators, generators, instrumentation amplifiers, multipliers, active filters.

240. System Controllers. (3:2:3) F, W Prerequisite: EET 136.
State machine and system controller design, registers, memories, microprocessors, and microcomputers. Fee.

291R. Undergraduate Seminar. (0:1:0 ea.) F, W, Sp
Required of all freshman and sophomore electronics engineering technology students each semester. College Lecture and Technology Department Lecture attendance required.

314. Industrial Electronics. (3:2:3) F, Sp Prerequisite: Math 112, Phscs 122; EET 231 for EET majors.
Introduction to industrial electrical and electronic devices and circuits. Control system applications. Technical reporting of lab data and industrial applications. Operation of common lab equipment.

315. Electronics for Engineers. (3:2:3) F Prerequisite: Phscs 122; Math 312 or concurrent registration.
Theory and practice of electronic circuits and instrumentation. AC, DC, linear, digital. AC distribution. Motors. Basic laboratory equipment.

325. RF and Communication Circuits. (3:2:3) F, W Prerequisite: EET 233 or concurrent registration.
Introduction to RF circuits, transformer tuned circuits, audio frequencies, noise analysis, impedance matching, amplitude and frequency modulation circuit theory, transmission and reception, transmission lines.

328. Electronic Manufacturing Processes. (3:2:3) F Prerequisite: Phscs 221; EET 233 or concurrent registration.
Introduction to modern electronic packaging and manufacturing problems and processes through individualized design and production of an electronic prototype and its technical manual. Includes computer-aided production drawings, troubleshooting, breadboard work, and printed circuit fabrication. Fee.

340. Process Control Programming. (3:2:3) F, W Prerequisite: CS 130, EET 136.
Interactive computing, using assembly language on microcomputers.

343. Computer Interfacing. (3:2:3) W, Sp Prerequisite: EET 240 or concurrent registration; 340.
Microcomputer applications, digital system interface design, parallel and serial interfacing, A/D and D/A converters. Fee.

345. Advanced Communication Systems. (3:2:3) W, Sp Prerequisite: EET 325, Engl 316, concurrent registration in EET 328.
Transmitters and receivers, including digital, microwave, and light wave systems. Student projects. Fee.

346. Audio and Video Systems. (3:2:3) F alt. yr. Prerequisite: EET 245.
Audio and video components, circuits, and systems used in recording and broadcasting. FCC regulations.

391R. Junior/Senior Seminar. (0.5:1:0 ea.) F, W, Sp
Required four times during junior/senior years while in professional program. College Lecture and Technology Department Lecture attendance required.

399R. Cooperative Education: Electronics Engineering Technology. (1–9:0:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: approval of department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
Experience in industrial environment. Approved job function supervised by employer and EET coordinator. Formal technical report required.

421. Control Systems. (3:2:3) F Prerequisite: Phscs 121, Math 113, EET 345.
Switching circuits, first- and second-order systems using Laplace transforms feedback control, transfer functions, digital control.

431. Digital Signal Processing. (3:2:3) W Prerequisite: Math 113, EET 340, 343.
Analysis, design, and construction of frequency domain systems and signals using DSP techniques and computer tools. Design of active filters and systems using DSP processors.

441. Real-Time Computer Systems. (3:2:2) F Prerequisite: EET 343.
Real-time operating systems, using a microcomputer operating system to illustrate system concepts in multitasking real-time operating environments.

443. Microwave and Light Wave Communications. (3:2:3) Su Prerequisite: Phscs 221, EET 343, 345.
Microwaves, waveguides, antennas, electro-optic devices, lasers, and fiber optics. Student projects. Fee.

444. Electronic Instrumentation. (3:2:3) W Prerequisite: Math 112; EET 103 or 314; or instructor's consent.
Design and application of basic instrumentation to automated manufacturing and control processes.

447. Electronic Systems. (3:2:3) W, Sp Prerequisite: complete two or more EET 400-level core courses.
Individual and team analysis, design, and implementation work on a team project. Oral and written reports. Fee.

461R. Current Topics in Electronics Engineering Technology. (3:2:3) Prerequisite: EET 328, 340, 343, 345.
In-depth analysis of current growth areas in electronics engineering technology. Detailed discussion and lab experience of a few topics from faculty working in the field.

492R. Special Problems in Electronics Engineering Technology. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: EET senior standing, Engl 316, and an approved project proposal.
Individual study in research and design related to electronics or computer-aided process control.

Manufacturing Programs: Manufacturing Engineering (MFE) and Manufacturing Engineering Technology (MET)

Val D. Hawks, Program Coordinator
435 CTB, PO Box 24206, (801) 378-4571

The Discipline

Manufacturing is an exciting and rewarding discipline that largely determines a society's standard of living and economic independence. There is an increasing demand for manufacturing professionals who are knowledgeable and skilled in the methods, procedures, technologies, equipment, and tooling needed to produce quality and affordable products. Such individuals must also be able to effectively coordinate the procurement, installation, and start-up of production operations. Few professions encompass such a broad range of activities and utilize so many skills.

Students in manufacturing learn creative and analytical skills that will enable them to quickly diagnose and solve manufacturing problems. They also develop interpersonal and communication skills that will prepare them to work as part of an engineering team and effectively interact with vendors, management, and production personnel. In addition, they receive hands-on training in modern lab facilities and learn to use computers to design, analyze, implement, and control manufacturing operations.

Students interested in manufacturing may choose between manufacturing engineering (MFE) and manufacturing engineering technology (MET). These programs are closely related and provide similar career opportunities. They also provide a good foundation for pursuing graduate studies in manufacturing and in a broad range of other areas such as business management or law. Both programs share a set of common courses in manufacturing systems, including a two-semester senior capstone course. The curriculum differences are mainly in subject emphasis and level of mathematical rigor. Courses specific to MFE stress abstract thinking, engineering design, and the underlying theories of manufacturing processes. Courses specific to MET are less theoretical in nature and focus more on the practical application of manufacturing processes. The choice of major depends on personal interest, aptitude, and career objectives.

MFE graduates may be more inclined toward careers in manufacturing research and the development of new technologies. Some larger companies prefer hiring MFE graduates rather than MET graduates. The MFE program is the recommended option for students interested in pursuing advanced engineering degrees.

MET graduates are more likely to be drawn toward careers involving the application of existing technologies in planning production operations. Some smaller companies prefer to hire MET graduates over MFE graduates because of their greater hands-on experience. Students graduating in MET may choose to pursue a master of science in engineering technology.

With the increased use of electronics in process control and automation, and the growth taking place in electronics manufacturing, students are given opportunities to integrate electronics learning with their manufacturing education. Both MFE and MET students have the option to earn a minor in electronics engineering technology.

Career Opportunities

Career opportunities in manufacturing are plentiful and rewarding for both MFE and MET graduates. For the most part, both are employed by the same types of companies and fill the same kinds of positions. Typical job titles include manufacturing engineer, process engineer, tool engineer, product engineer,

quality engineer, and production supervisor. Specific job duties are more dependent on an individual's aptitudes and interests than on the degree received. Those with leadership interests and skills often find opportunities to move into management positions.

The job outlook for MFE and MET graduates is bright and should continue to be strong into the future. When one considers that every human-made object around us is the product of some form of manufacturing, it is easy to see that manufacturing is an integral part of our society and generates an ever-growing workforce. Progressive companies in industries worldwide are always on the lookout for qualified individuals who can improve the quality and value of the goods they produce.

General Information

Students in manufacturing engineering select technical courses of interest to satisfy the 6 hours of elective credit required in the MFE program. These courses must be approved by the student's advisor. Normally 300-level and above, they are often chosen in areas that increase the breadth of the major.

Students in manufacturing engineering technology select courses of interest to satisfy the 11 hours of elective credit required in the MET program. MET electives are open electives and do not need to be approved by an advisor. We strongly encourage MET students to use these elective hours to increase their technical expertise or to obtain a minor in an area of interest.

Both manufacturing programs are designed to provide simple transfer from local feeder schools, including Ricks College and UVSC. Students transferring from these or other schools should meet with a college and department advisor as soon as possible to evaluate transfer credits and plan the student's BYU curriculum.

BS Manufacturing Engineering (MFE) (96 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following preprofessional program with a grade of C– or better in each course:
   Math 112, 113.
   Chem 105.
   CEEn 103.
   Phscs 121, 122.
2. Complete the following during first two semesters in the major:
   MFE 101, 102.
3. Complete the following supporting courses:
   CEEn 203, 204.
   CS 130.
   Engl 316.
   Math 112, 113.
   MeEn 172.
   MFE 232, 250, 251.
   Phscs 221.
   Stat 361.
   And select one course from the following:
   EET 315.
   ECEn 301R.
4. Complete the following professional courses:
   MeEn 371, 401.
   MFE 340, 355, 361, 432, 475, 476, 480.
   RelC 491, 492.
   And select one course from the following:
   MET 431.
   MFET 572.
5. Technical electives: after consulting with a department advisor, select 6 hours from upper-division courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Emphasis (optional): International (106.5–108.5 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the requirements for the manufacturing engineering program as outlined above.
2. Complete the following additional courses:
   EngT 200, 498.
   BusM 430.
3. Select one course from the following:
   RelC 344, 351, 355, 356.
4. After consulting with the college advisement center, select a foreign literature course or a classical civilization course.
   Or select one course from the following:
   ArtHC 260.
   FnArt 270R.
   Fren/Ital 217.
   Hist 312.
   Hum 240, 242.
   Music 203.
5. An international "live-in" experience is required. It may be satisfied by: (1) a semester or term work experience in a foreign country, (2) a semester or term Study Abroad program approved by the David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies and college personnel, or (3) a prior living experience, such as a foreign mission.

Recommended

Proficiency in a foreign language is strongly suggested.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Manufacturing Engineering (MFE)

Undergraduate Courses

Note: For 500-level and above manufacturing engineering courses, see Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology (MFET) courses listed after the undergraduate courses.

101. Manufacturing Engineering Cornerstone Seminar. (1:1:0)
Seminar for all students entering the major. Speakers from industry and university backgrounds discuss current topics in manufacturing. College Lecture attendance required.

102. Manufacturing Engineering Cornerstone Seminar. (1:1:0)
Seminar for all students entering the major. Speakers from industry and university backgrounds discuss current topics in manufacturing. College Lecture attendance required.

199R. Cooperative Education for MFE. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: department chair's or cooperative education coordinator's consent.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

201. History of Creativity in the Arts, Science, and Technology 1. (3:3:0) F, W
Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance from perspective of changes in civilization enabled by technology. Creativity throughout history. How to improve personal creativity.

202. History of Creativity in the Arts, Science, and Technology 2. (3:3:0) F, W
Western civilization from Renaissance to present from perspective of changes in civilization enabled by technology. Creativity throughout history. How to improve personal creativity.

232. Manufacturing Processes. (3:2:3) W
Survey of common manufacturing processes including technological limitations and economic considerations. Influence of product design on process selection and manufacturing efficiency.

250. (MFE-MeEn) Science of Engineering Materials. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Chem 105.
Principles and properties of solid materials and their behavior as applied to engineering.

251. Material Science Laboratory. (1:0:3) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: concurrent registration in MFE 250. Fee.

340. Quality Systems in Manufacturing. (3:2:3) F, Sp Prerequisite: MFE 232 or MET 230; Stat 361.
Tools and principles of quality in manufacturing systems. Basic tools, variation, loss function, cost of quality, SPC. Comprehensive project in system design to improve quality.

355. Polymer Manufacturing and Design. (3:2:3) W, Su Prerequisite: MFE 250, CEEn 203.
Physical properties of polymeric materials. Design parameters for plastics. Manufacturing methods and resultant properties. Tooling design for plastic molding. Design of polymer processing facilities.

361. Manufacturing Instrumentation and Control. (3:2:3) W Prerequisite: EET 315 or ECEn 310R; Math 313.
Fundamentals of mechanical and electrical control and instrumentation applied to manufacturing. Classical frequency and time domain feedback control systems and introduction to digital control.

394. Manufacturing Engineering Practicum. (3:0:6) W Prerequisite: second semester junior standing.
Working in teams to solve problems encountered in local industry.

432. Advanced Manufacturing Processes. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: MFE 232, 250, MeEn 401.
Engineering analysis of manufacturing processes, including joining, forming, machining, casting, and particulate processes. Selection of process parameters, considering economics and material properties.

475, 476. (MFE-MeEn) Integrated Product and Process Design 1, 2. (3:2:3 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: senior standing (fewer than 30 hours remaining in the program) in mechanical or manufacturing engineering or related disciplines with instructor's consent.
Comprehensive two-semester design experience from conception to manufacturing planning and prototype. Product development process. Economic and manufacturing considerations. Intellectual property assignment agreement required.

480. Production and Process Planning. (3:3:0) W, Su Prerequisite: MFE 340; senior standing.
Organization, design, and management of production systems. Manufacturing analysis, process planning, equipment specification, manufacturing economics, and production and inventory control.

490R. Special Topics in Manufacturing Engineering. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

BS Manufacturing Engineering Technology (MET)

(79 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following preprofessional requirements with a grade of C– or better in each course:
   MET 131, 230.
   Math 111, 112.
   MeEn 172.
   Chem 105.
   Phscs 105, 107.
2. Complete the following courses during first two semesters in the major:
   MET 101, 102.
3. Complete the following supporting courses:
   CEEn 103, 203.
   Engl 316.
   Math 113.
   MFE 250, 251.
   Stat 361.
4. Complete the following professional courses:
   EET 314, 444.
   MET 324, 336, 431.
   MFE 340, 355, 475, 476, 480.
   RelC 491, 492.
   And select one course from the following:
   MET 329, 331.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Emphasis (optional): International (89.5–91.5 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the requirements for the manufacturing engineering technology program as outlined above.
2. Complete the following additional courses:
   EngT 200, 498.
   BusM 430.
3. Select one course from the following:
   RelC 344, 351, 355, 356.
4. After consulting with the college advisement center, select a foreign literature course or a classical civilization course.
   Or select one course from the following:
   ArtHC 260.
   FnArt 270R.
   Fren/Ital 217.
   Hist 312.
   Hum 240, 242.
   Music 203.
5. An international "live-in" experience is required. It may be satisfied by: (1) a semester or term work experience in a foreign country, (2) a semester or term Study Abroad program approved by the David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies and college personnel, or (3) a prior living experience, such as a foreign mission.

Recommended

Proficiency in a foreign language is strongly suggested.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Manufacturing Engineering Technology (MET)

Undergraduate Courses

Note: For 500-level and above manufacturing engineering technology courses, see Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology (MFET) courses listed after the undergraduate courses.

101, 102. Manufacturing Cornerstone Seminar. (1:1:0) F, W
Seminar for all students entering the major. Speakers from industry and university backgrounds discuss current topics in manufacturing. College Lecture attendance required.

131. Machining Operations. (3:2:3) F, Su
Capabilities and operation of basic machine tools and study of production machining processes. Application and use of inspection gages for quality control.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: department chair's or cooperative education coordinator's consent.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

230. Computer Numerical Control Programming. (3:2:3) F, Sp Prerequisite: MET 131, concurrent registration in Math 112.
Manual programming of computer numerical control machine tools for industrial applications. Standard EIA/ASC II programming codes and formats utilized.

324. Joining Processes. (3:2:4) W, Su Prerequisite: CEEn 203, MFE 250, 251.
Theory, application, and economics of various joining processes; welding, soldering, riveting, threaded fasteners, mechanical assembly tools and techniques.

329. Metal Forming. (3:2:2) W, Sp Prerequisite: CEEn 203, MFE 250, 251.
Introduction to metal-forming theory as applied to production processes.

331. Cast Metal Processes. (3:2:3) F, Sp Prerequisite: MFE 250, 251.
Melting, pouring, solidification, casting problems, design considerations, and testing as they apply to latest foundry processes. Automated and computer-controlled foundries.

336. Fluid Power and Control. (3:2:2) F, Sp Prerequisite: Math 113; Phscs 122 or concurrent registration, EET 314.
Hydraulic and pneumatic systems as a means of transmitting and controlling power; component identification and operation; fluid power graphical symbols, circuits, and applications.

399R. Cooperative Education: Manufacturing Engineering Technology. (1–9:0:Arr. ea.)
Experience in industrial environment. Approved job function supervised by employer and manufacturing engineering technology co-op coordinator. Proposal, regular progress reports, and formal technical report required.

431. Tool Design. (3:2:2) F, Sp Prerequisite: MeEn 171, Math 113, CEEn 203; senior standing.
Design of special tooling as applied to manufacturing processes.

490R. Special Problems in Manufacturing Engineering Technology. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

Minor Manufacturing (16 hours)

Minor Requirements

1. Complete all minor courses with a grade of C– or better.
2. Complete the following:
   MFE 232, 250, 251.
3. Select one course from the following:
   MET 131, 230, 329, 331.
   MFE 355, 432.
4. Select two courses from the following:
   EET 421.
   MFE 340, 361, 480.
   Note: instrumentation and controls sequences from other majors may be substituted for FME 361 with the approval of a manufacturing advisor. See department office for more information.

Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology (MFET)

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

501. Fundamentals of Manufacturing Processes, Design, Materials, and Information Transfer. (3:2:2) Sp
Interrelation of manufacturing processes, design, materials, and information transfer. Importance of manufacturing in society.

528. Electronic Fabrication and Assembly. (3:2:3) F alt yr. Prerequisite: EET 314 or equivalent and instructor's consent.
Theory and application of manufacturing processes required to produce electronic equipment.

529. Manufacturing Information Processing and Networks. (3:2:3) W Prerequisite: Phscs 221; EET 443 or instructor's consent.
Function and system analysis and application for sensing, sending, and processing manufacturing information; metallic and light wave technology networking; data, media, standards, topologies, protocols, instrumentation, and integration.

531. Advanced Computer Numerical Control Programming. (3:2:3) F Prerequisite: MET 230 or equivalent; senior or graduate status or instructor's consent.
CAD/CAM programming techniques and requirements for manufacturing components on computer numerical control machine tools, emphasizing CAM programming, post processors, and CAM software evaluation. Fee.

532. Manufacturing Systems. (3:2:2) F Prerequisite: MFE 480 or instructor's consent.
Analysis and comparison of different manufacturing systems, such as batch manufacturing, flexible manufacturing systems, and cellular manufacturing, including design issues and applications.

533. Manufacturing Information Systems. (3:2:3) W Prerequisite: MFE 480 or instructor's consent.
Application and integration of software and information technologies in the planning, executing, and monitoring of production operations.

534. Automation. (3:2:2) F Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Determining appropriate levels of manufacturing automation based on economics and productivity. Elements of automation, including sensors, robots, conveyors, and part feeders.

536R. Advanced Process Mechanics. (3:2:3 ea.) F Prerequisite: MFE 432.
Analysis and experimental validation of selected manufacturing processes.

537. (MFET-MeEn) Advanced Mechanisms, Robotics. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: MeEn 337 or equivalent.
Kinematics and dynamics of advanced mechanisms, such as robots, with computer simulation of mechanism motion.

538. Technical Management. (3:3:0) W
Techniques and tools for effective technical management. Management, analysis, cost justification, and communication skills within manufacturing or engineering environments.

540. Computer-Aided Testing. (3:2:2) F alt. yr. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Introduction to computer-aided testing for product quality assurance using microcomputers, IEEE bus instrumentation, and host minicomputer systems.

541. Advanced Materials Science. (3:3:0) F, Sp alt. yr. Prerequisite: MET 335 or MFE 250; CEEn 203.
Builds on student's manufacturing and materials background to investigate interrelationship of material and process.

548. Mechatronics. (3:2:3) F alt. yr. Prerequisite: EET 444 or instructor's consent.
Synergistic application of mechanical devices, electronic controls, and system principles in design of products and manufacturing processes. Advanced applications of electronic instrumentation, control, and automation in manufacturing systems.

553. (MFET-MeEn) Mechanical Behavior of Polymers. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CEEn 203 and MFE 355 or instructor's consent.
Generalized elasticity relationships, viscoelasticity, yielding and fracture, crazing, rubber elasticity, anisotropic behavior, processing effects on properties, optical and other properties.

555. Introduction to Composites. (3:2:3) F, Sp Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Structure, processing, properties, and uses of composite materials, including various manufacturing methods and the relationship between properties and fabrication.

572. Design for Manufacturing. (3:2:2) W Prerequisite: senior standing.
Introduction to design evaluation techniques, including design for mechanical assembly, printed circuit board assembly, plastic injection molding, machining, and sheet metal fabrication.

574. Tool Engineering. (3:2:3) W Prerequisite: MET 431 and senior or graduate status.
Advanced design of net shape tooling utilizing CAD and CAE methods. Plastic injection molding is focus for design and construction. Experimental validation of analytical predictions.

578. (MFET-MeEn) CAD/CAM Applications. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: advanced FORTRAN, C, or C++.
Principles and practices involved in parametric surface and solid modeling, associativity, NC tool path generation, etc. Construction of complete CAD models for design, analysis, and manufacture.

580. Manufacturing Simulation. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: MFE 480 and instructor's consent.
Design and optimization of manufacturing systems using simulation. Simulation languages and modeling methodology.

591R. Graduate Seminar. (0.5:1:0 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: graduate standing.
Topics in research and thesis writing. Graduate students will present thesis subject.

592R. Materials Seminar. (0.5:0:0 ea.) F, W
Advanced topics in materials science and engineering.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology Faculty

Professors
Red, W. Edward (1983) BA, BSME, Rice U., 1965; PhD, Arizona State U., 1972.
Strong, A. Brent (1986) BA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1967, 1971.
Todd, Robert (1989) BS, California State U., Northridge, 1964; MS, PhD, Stanford U., 1965, 1971.

Associate Professors
Harrell, Charles R. (1982) BS, Brigham Young U., 1976; MS, U. of Utah, 1982; PhD, U. of Denmark, 1988.
Hawks, Val D. (1985) BS, Brigham Young U., 1980; MS, Lehigh U., 1986.
Helps, C. Richard (1986) BSc (Eng.), MSc (Eng.), Witwatersrand, South Africa, 1978, 1986.
Johnson, A. Kent (1991) BSEE, Brigham Young U., 1960; MSEE, New York U., 1962; DSc, Steven Inst. of Technology, 1965.
Kunzler, John J., Jr. (1971) BS, Utah State U., 1963; MS, Brigham Young U., 1980.
Rotz, Christopher A. (1985) BS, MS, PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1973, 1976, 1978.
Smart, Merrill J. (1967) BS, Brigham Young U., 1959; MS, U. of Utah, 1962.
Sorensen, Carl D. (1987) BS, Brigham Young U., 1981; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1985.

Assistant Professors
Carter, Perry W., II (1980) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1973, 1974; PhD, U. of Massachusetts, 1988.
Kohkonen, Kent E. (1970) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1968, 1976.
Lunt, Barry M. (1992) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1979; PhD, Utah State U., 1993.
Nelson, Tracy W. (1994) BS, MS, PhD, Ohio State U., 1991, 1993, 1998.
Owen, Earl F. (1982) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1970, 1972.
Smith, Kevin (1996) BS, Brigham Young U., 1990; PhD, Ohio State U., 1996.

Emeriti
Allen, Dell K. (1960) BS, Utah State U., 1954; MS, Brigham Young U., 1966; EdD, Utah State U., 1973.
Holt, Ivin L. (1963) BS, Brigham Young U., 1957; MEd, Pennsylvania State U., 1958; EdD, Arizona State U., 1972.
Mather, C. Glayd (1974) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1964, 1965.
Tolman, Wilford J. (1960) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1964.

Mathematics

Wayne W. Barrett, Chair
290 TMCB, PO Box 26539, (801) 378-2061

Gurcharan S. Gill, Associate Chair
288 TMCB, PO Box 26539, (801) 378-2115

Peter L. Crawley, Special Assistant
382 TMCB, PO Box 26539, (801) 378-6151

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center
1116 TMCB, PO Box 26539, (801) 378-6270

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Mathematics are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Mathematics is a means of dealing with order, pattern, and number as seen in the world around us. The abilities to compute, to think logically, and to take a reasoned approach to solving problems are highly valued in society and are characteristics of any educated person. Mathematics is not just a body of knowledge, but a process of analysis, reasoning, comparison, deduction, generalization, and problem solving.

A mathematician's stock in trade is the ability to solve problems and to explain the solutions to others. Having once determined what the right questions are, solving problems involves analyzing both concrete and abstract situations, relating them to mathematical ideas, and using mathematical techniques to work toward solutions. Explaining the solution involves pointing out what has been solved and why the solution is valid.

Career Opportunities

Majors in mathematics education (BA) prepare for careers in teaching at the middle and high school levels. They plan to teach mathematics to students and orchestrate for them the activities that develop mathematical skills and concepts.

Majors in mathematics (BS) prepare for a wide variety of careers. Some enter graduate school or professional schools and prepare for careers in such fields as college teaching, consulting, research and development, law, medicine, and business administration. Others take positions in government agencies, industrial laboratories, information management firms, or business organizations. All of them spend much time communicating with colleagues about the problems they are solving as they continue to learn more mathematics and share mathematical ideas with others.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS	Mathematics
BA	Mathematics Education
Minors	Mathematics
	Mathematics Education

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS	Mathematics
MA	Mathematics
MA	Mathematics Education
PhD	Mathematics

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

1. It is recommended that a student complete the following courses in high school:
   - 4 units of English
   - 1 unit of physics or chemistry.
   - 4 units of mathematics, including 2.5 units of algebra, 1 unit of geometry, and .5 unit of trigonometry. This qualifies a student to begin college mathematics with

Math 112H. If calculus is available in high school, a student planning to major in mathematics is strongly encouraged to take it; doing so requires completing one of the preceding algebra units before high school.

Advanced Placement (AP) credit is available in mathematics as follows:

A score of 3 on the calculus AB exam gives credit in Math 110 and 111; a score of 4 or 5 on the calculus AB exam gives credit in Math 110 and 112.
A score of 3, 4, or 5 on the calculus BC exam gives credit in Math 112 and 113.
An AP student without credit in Math 112 must begin with Math 112H; an AP student without credit in Math 113 must begin with Math 112H or 113H.
AP students with credit in Math 113 are urged to begin with Math 113H anyway, unless they scored 5 on the calculus BC exam.
AP students should direct Educational Testing Service (ETS) to report scores to BYU to have credit posted.

Questions regarding placement should be directed to the Mathematics Department, 292 TMCB.

2. Majors are strongly urged to study Phscs 121 and 122 during their first two years.
3. It is recommended that those who plan subsequent graduate work in mathematics select the courses Math 372 and 541, thereby acquiring some depth in two fundamental areas. They also are advised to take the GRE by the fall of their final year and become competent in either the French, German, or Russian language. Those who plan to earn the doctorate in mathematics should choose Math 551 and 552 as well and should become competent in one or two of the listed languages while an undergraduate.
4. It is strongly recommended that RelC 491 be taken during the senior year.

BS Mathematics (52–53 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Grades of C– or below will not be acceptable in major courses.
2. Complete the following core requirements:
   Math 112H, 113H, 190, 315, 343, 344, 371, 434.
3. Complete the following:
   Math 316, 332.
4. Select one of the following:
   CS 130, 142.
5. Select one of the following:
   Stat 321, 421.
6. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete four courses from one of the following areas of specialization (at least one 500-level course must be included):
   Applied mathematics: Math 323, 511, 521, 522, 541, 542, 547, 585.
   Discrete math and geometry: Math 302, 350, 355, 387, 532, 551, 552, 585.
   Numerical analysis: Math 311, 323, 411, 511, 512.
   Pure mathematics: Math 372, 387, 532, 541, 542, 551, 552.
7. Select an additional 3 hours from the following:
   Math 300, 302, 311, 323, 350, 355, 372, 387, 411, 451R, 480, 495R, 501, 502, 511, 512, 513R, 521, 522, 530, 532, 541, 542, 543, 551, 552, 585.
   CS 561.
   Stat 463.
   Phscs 517.
8. Students who continue toward graduate work should complete Math 372, 532, 541, and 542 and are urged to gain competence in French, German, or Russian while undergraduates.
9. Those planning for doctoral work should also complete Math 551 and 552 and gain competence in one or two languages.

Recommended Courses

Phscs 121, 122.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Mathematics Education (68–69 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. Grades of C– or below are not acceptable in major courses.
2. Complete the following core requirements:
   Math 112H, 113H, 190, 315, 343, 344, 371, 434.
3. Complete the following:
   Math 300, 302.
   CS 302.
   Stat 301.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Math 350, 355, 387.
5. A teaching minor is not needed for certification. However, it is strongly recommended.
6. Complete the Professional Education Component (27–28 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Mathematics (20 hours*)

1. Complete all minor courses with a C– or better.
2. Complete the following courses:
   Math 112, 113, 343.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Math 315, 316, 344.
4. Select 6 hours from the following:
   Math 300, 302, 311, 315, 316, 323, 332, 350, 355, 371, 372, 387, or any 400- or 500-level mathematics course.

Note: Courses offered by other departments cannot be substituted. Math 312, 313 will not be accepted for the minor.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Mathematics Education (26 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Math 112, 113, 190, 302, 343.
   CS 302.
   Stat 301.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Math 350, 355, 371, 387.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Mathematics (Math)

Undergraduate Courses

Note: For courses containing material preparatory to Math 97 (up through beginning algebra) please refer to Independent Study.

97. Intermediate Algebra. (0:2:1) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also. Prerequisite: high school algebra.
Elementary logic, real number system, equations and inequalities (linear, polynomial, rational, and radical expressions), graphing, function notation, inverse function, exponential functions, systems of equations, variations. Fee.

110. College Algebra. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Math 97 or equivalent.
Functions, polynomials, theory of equations, exponential and logarithmic functions, matrices, determinants, systems of linear equations, permutations, combinations, binomial theorem.

111. Trigonometry. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Math 110.
Circular functions, triangle relationships, identities, inverse trig functions, trigonometric equations, vectors, complex numbers, DeMoivre's theorem.

112. Calculus 1. (4:5:0) F, W, Sp, Su Honors also. Prerequisite: Math 110 and 111 or equivalent.
Differential and integral calculus: limits; continuity; the derivative and applications; extrema; the definite integral; fundamental theorem of calculus; L'Hôpital's rule.

113. Calculus 2. (4:5:0) F, W, Sp, Su Honors also. Prerequisite: Math 112 or equivalent.
Techniques and applications of integration; sequences, series, convergence tests, power series; parametric equations; polar coordinates; gradients; directional derivatives; iterated integrals.

119. Introduction to Calculus. (4:4:1) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Math 110.
Introduction to plane analytic geometry and calculus. For students in the College of Biology and Agriculture and the Marriott School of Management.

190. Fundamentals of Mathematics. (3:3:0) F, W, Su Prerequisite: Math 112 or concurrent registration with instructor's consent.
Achieving maturity in mathematical communication. Introduction to mathematical proof; methods of proof; analysis of proof; induction; logical reasoning.

300. History of Mathematics. (3:3:0) F, W, Su Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Math 113.
Development of mathematics, emphasizing underlying principles and motivations.

302. Survey of Geometry. (3:3:0) F, W, Su Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Math 112, 190.
Logical structure of Euclidean, non-Euclidean, and finite geometries.

305. Basic Concepts of Mathematics. (4:4:0) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Math 110.
Logic and number theory, number and numeration systems, informal geometry, and probability. Required of prospective elementary school teachers.

306. Concepts of Mathematics. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Math 305.
Modular arithmetic, real numbers, complex numbers, relations and functions, informal geometry, and consumer math. For elementary teacher certification. Required of prospective elementary school teachers.

311. Introduction to Numerical Methods. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: calculus and knowledge of a programming language.
Root finding, interpolation, curve fitting, numerical differentiation and integration, multiple integrals, direct solvers for linear systems, least squares, rational approximations, fourier and other orthogonal methods.

312, 313. Advanced Engineering Mathematics. (3:3:0 ea.) F, W, Sp (312), Su (313) Prerequisite: Math 113 or equivalent.
Ordinary differential equations, linear algebra, vector calculus, and introduction to partial differential equations. Not applicable for the math minor.

315, 316. Theory of Analysis. (3:3:0 ea.) 315: F, W; 316: W Prerequisite: for 315: Math 113, 190, 343; for 316: Math 315.
Rigorous treatment of calculus of single and several variables. Topics include uniform continuity, metric spaces, Riemann integral, implicit function theorem, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

323. Introduction to Partial Differential Equations. (3:3:0) W, Su Prerequisite: Math 313 or 434.
Boundary value problems; transform methods; Fourier series; Bessel functions; Legendre polynomials.

332. Introduction to Complex Analysis. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Math 344 or 316.
Complex algebra, analytic functions, integration in the complex plane, infinite series, theory of residues, conformal mapping.

343. Elementary Linear Algebra. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Math 112 or 119.
Linear systems, matrices, vectors and vector spaces, linear transformations, determinants, inner product spaces, eigenvalues, and eigenvectors.

344. Calculus of Several Variables. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Math 113, 343.
Partial differentiation, the Jacobian matrix, and integral theorems of vector calculus.

350. Combinatorics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Math 343, 371.
Permutations, combinations, recurrence relations, applications.

355. Graph Theory. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Math 343.
Maps, graphs and digraphs, coloring problems, applications.

371, 372. Abstract Algebra. (3:3:0 ea.) 371: F, W, Sp; 372: W Prerequisite: for 371: Math 190, 343; for 372: Math 371.
Groups, rings, fields, vector spaces, linear transformations, matrices, field extensions, etc.

387. Number Theory. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Math 343, 371.
Foundations; congruences; quadratic reciprocity; unique factorization, prime distribution or Diophantine equations.

391R. Seminar in Mathematics. (1:1:0) F, W
Topics from classical problems of antiquity, combinatorial mathematics, graph theory, real functions, number theory, functional equations.

399R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:9:0 ea.) On dem.
On-the-job experience.

411. Numerical Methods. (3:3:0) W, Su Prerequisite: Math 311 or 312.
Iterative solvers for linear systems, eigenvalue, eigenvector approximations, numerical solutions to nonlinear systems, numerical techniques for initial and boundary value problems, elementary solvers for PDEs.

434. Ordinary Differential Equations. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Math 113, 343.
Methods and theory of ordinary differential equations. Credit not given for both Math 312 and 434.

451R. Topics in Geometry. (3:3:0 ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: Math 302, 343, or equivalent.
Topics selected from the various aspects of synthetic, analytic, algebraic, and differential geometry.

480. Mathematical Models. (3:3:0) On dem. Prerequisite: Math 311, 343, 344; 313 or 434.
Construction, solution, and interpretation of discrete and continuous models applied to problems in the physical, natural, and social sciences.

495R. Readings in Mathematics. (1–2:0:3 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Directed readings beyond the scope of usual undergraduate courses.

499R. Senior Thesis. (1–3:0:3 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

501. Real Numbers. (3:3:0) Alt. Su Prerequisite: Math 371.
Extensive examination of various axiomatic descriptions of real numbers and interrelationships among these descriptions.

502. Set Theory. (3:3:0) Alt. Su Prerequisite: Math 371.
Zermelo-Fraenkel axioms for set theory, the axiom of choice, ordinal and cardinal numbers, and algebra of sets.

511. Numerical Methods for Partial Differential Equations. (3:3:0) F, Sp Prerequisite: Math 311, 343; 313 or 434. Recommended: Math 323.
Finite difference and finite volume methods for partial differential equations. Stability, consistency, and convergence theory.

512. Numerical Analysis. (3:3:0) W, Su Prerequisite: Math 311, 343, or instructor's consent.
Numerical matrix algebra, orthogonalization and least squares methods, unsymmetric and symmetric eigenvalue problems, iterative methods, Lanczos methods, advanced solvers for partial differential equations.

513R. Advanced Topics in Applied Mathematics. (3:3:0 ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

521, 522. Methods of Applied Mathematics. (3:3:0 ea.) 521:F; 522:W Prerequisite: Math 434.
Survey of current methods, continuous and discrete, including linear algebra, estimation, differential equations of equilibrium, eigenvalue and initial value problems; finite element, spectral, transform, and difference methods; Fourier series, the Fourier matrix, fast Fourier transform; convolution.

530. Calculus of Variations. (3:3:0) On dem. Prerequisite: Math 313 or 434; 343. Recommended: Math 315, 323.
Euler-Lagrange equation, sufficient conditions, Hamilton's principle of least action, Dirichlet's principle; applications to mechanics, geometry, economics, eigenvalue problems, direct methods.

532. Complex Analysis. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Math 332 or permission of instructor.
Introduction to theory of complex analysis at beginning graduate level. Topics: Cauchy integral equations, Riemann surfaces, Picard's theorem, etc.

541, 542. Real Analysis. (3:3:0 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: Math 315, 343; 316 or 344.
Rigorous treatment of differentiation and integration theory; Lebesque measure; Banach spaces.

543. Advanced Probability. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Math 344, Stat 341.
Advanced combinatorial methods, random walk, Markov chains, and stochastic processes.

547. Partial Differential Equations. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Math 434; 344 or 316.
Topics from elliptic equations, heat equations, wave equations, stability, Fourier methods, energy methods, existence of solutions, etc.

551, 552. Introduction to Topology. (3:3:0 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: Math 315.
Axiomatic treatment of linearly ordered spaces, metric spaces, arcs, and Jordan curves; types of connectedness.

585. Matrix Analysis. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Math 343; or 312, 313; or equivalents.
Special classes of matrices, canonical forms, matrix and vector norms, localization of eigenvalues, matrix functions, applications.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Mathematics Faculty

Orson Pratt Professor
Cannon, James W. (1986) BA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1967, 1969.

Professors
Baker, Roger C. (1991) BSc, PhD, U. of London, England, 1968, 1971.
Barrett, Wayne W. (1981) BS, U. of Utah, 1968; MS, PhD, New York U., 1975, 1975.
Bates, Peter W. (1984) BS, Queen Mary Coll., U. of London, England, 1969; PhD, U. of Utah, 1976.
Crawley, Peter L. (1971) BS, PhD, California Inst. of Technology, 1957, 1961.
Fearnley, Lawrence (1957) BS, U. of London, 1953; PhD, U. of Utah, 1959; PhD, U. of London, 1970.
Forcade, Rodney W. (1981) BS, MS, U. of Chicago, 1961, 1963; PhD, U. of Washington, 1971.
Garner, Lynn E. (1963) BS, Brigham Young U., 1962; MA, U. of Utah, 1964; PhD, U. of Oregon, 1968.
Gill, Gurcharan S. (1960) BS, Brigham Young U., 1958; M.S, PhD, U. of Utah, 1960, 1965.
Hansen, Richard A. (1967) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1959, 1961, 1965.
Jamison, Ronald D. (1963) BS, Brigham Young U., 1957; PhD, U. of Utah, 1965.
Lamoreaux, Jack W. (1968) BS, Brigham Young U., 1960; MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1964, 1967.
Lang, William E. (1989) BA, Carleton Coll., 1974; MS, Yale U., 1975; PhD, Harvard U., 1978.
Pollington, Andrew D. (1982) BS, MS, PhD, U. of London, 1975, 1976, 1978.
Robinson, Donald W. (1956) BS, MA, U. of Utah, 1948, 1952; PhD, Case Inst. of Technology, 1956.
Smith, William V. (1985) BS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1973, 1978.
Snow, Donald Ray (1969) BA, BS, U. of Utah, 1959, 1959; MS, MS, PhD, Stanford U., 1960, 1962, 1965.
Speiser, Robert David (1984) AB, Columbia Coll., 1965; PhD, Cornell U., 1970.
Wright, David G. (1983) BS, Brigham Young U., 1970; MA, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1972, 1973.

Associate Professors
Armstrong, Gerald M. (1970) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1965; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1971.
Chahal, Jasbir S. (1981) MA, Punjab U., India, 1970; PhD, Johns Hopkins U., 1979.
Chow, Shue-Sum (1998) BS, U. of Canterbury, New Zealand, 1979; PhD, Australian National U., Australia, 1983.
Garbe, Douglas G. (1963) AS, Snow Coll., 1956; BS, Brigham Young U., 1962; MS, U. of Oregon, 1967; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1973.

Humphries, Stephen P. (1987) BSc, MSc, PhD, U. of Wales, 1974, 1978, 1983.
Lawlor, Gary R. (1991) BS, Brigham Young U., 1984; PhD, Stanford U., 1988.
Lu, Kening (1990) BS, MS, Sichuan U., China, 1982, 1985; PhD, Michigan State U., 1988.
Lundquist, Michael E. (1990) BA, St. Olaf Coll., 1985; MS, PhD, Clemson U., 1987, 1990.
Ouyang, Tiancheng (1992) MS, Naukai U., China, 1981; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1989.
Skarda, R. Vencil (1965) BA, Pomona Coll., 1961; MS, PhD, California Inst. of Technology, 1964, 1965.
Tolman, L. Kirk (1965) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1961; PhD, U. of New Mexico, 1972.
Walter, Charles N. (1969) BA, MA, PhD, U. of New Mexico, 1963, 1965, 1970.
Williams, Steven R. (1993) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1980, 1983; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1989.
Wynn, Jan Eugene (1966) BS, BS, U. of Idaho, 1962, 1962; MS, Utah State U., 1965; PhD, Colorado State U., 1972.

Associate Teaching Professor

Taylor-Ortega, Jacqueline (1978) BS, Idaho State U., 1966; MA, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1976, 1987.

Assistant Professors

Clark, David A. (1993) BA, U. of Utah, 1985; MSc, PhD, McGill U., Canada, 1988, 1992.
Conner, Gregory R. (1992) BA, Humboldt State U., 1987; MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1989, 1992.
Grant, Christopher P. (1993) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1986, 1988; PhD, U. of Utah, 1991.
Jarvis, Tyler (1996) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1989, 1990; MA, PhD, Princeton U., 1992, 1994.
McKay, Steven (1994) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1983, 1985; PhD, Colorado State U., 1990.
Peterson, Blake (1996) BA, Utah State U., 1986; MS, PhD, Washington State U., 1990, 1993.

Emeriti

Chatterley, Louis J. (1962) BS, Brigham Young U., 1955; MS, U. of Utah, 1962; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1972.
Clawson, Robert G. (1979) AA, Pasadena City Coll., 1960; BA, California State U., Los Angeles, 1963; MS, U. of South Dakota, 1971.
Fletcher, Harvey J., Jr. (1980) BS, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1944; MS, California Inst. of Technology, 1948; PhD, U. of Utah, 1954.
Gee, Burton C. (1960) BS, Brigham Young U., 1951; MS, EdD, Oregon State U., 1958, 1965.
Haupt, Floyd E. (1954) BS, MS, U. of Arizona, 1947, 1948.
Hillam, Kenneth L. (1957) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1949, 1956; PhD, U. of Colorado, 1962.
Larsen, Kenneth M. (1960) BA, U. of Utah, 1950; MA, Brigham Young U., 1956; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1964.
Moore, Hal G (1961) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1952, 1957; PhD, U. of California, Santa Barbara, 1967.
Wickes, Harry E. (1957) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1950, 1954; MEd, Harvard U., 1962; EdD, Colorado State U., 1967.
Wight, Theodore A. (1963) BS, MS, EdD, U. of Utah, 1955, 1964, 1969.

Mechanical Engineering

Alan R. Parkinson, Chair
242-C CB, PO Box 24106, (801) 378-2625

College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center
264 CB, PO Box 24101, (801) 378-4325

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Department of Mechanical Engineering carry special enrollment limitations at the junior level. Please see Professional Program Acceptance below and the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

Mechanical engineers work with concepts, ideas, and products that are primarily mechanical or energy related. Mechanical engineering is a broad discipline that prepares a person to contribute in a wide range of fields such as aerospace, computer graphics, power generation, machine tools, petroleum, agricultural and construction equipment, medicine, government, and all types of transportation. A mechanical engineer may work in research, design, analysis, manufacturing, testing, operations, sales, or management. Engineers use critical problem-solving methods and basic principles of mathematics and science to creatively solve problems.

The desired attributes of a student graduating from the undergraduate mechanical engineering program are:

1. A basic understanding of fundamental physical phenomena and governing principles.
2. An ability to develop and solve mathematical models of fundamental physical phenomena.
3. An ability to design a system, component or process to meet desired needs.
4. The expertise to plan and conduct an experimental program and evaluate the results.
5. An ability to use modern engineering tools and techniques in engineering practice.
6. An understanding of fabrication processes and planning.
7. Effective oral and written communication skills.
8. An ability to work with others to accomplish common goals.
9. An appreciation of history, philosophy, literature, science, and the fine arts.
10. Personal behavior consistent with high moral and ethical standards.
11. An understanding of engineering in a global, societal context.
12. A desire and commitment for lifelong learning and service.

All courses in the curriculum are designed to help students develop these attributes.

The curriculum in mechanical engineering is accredited by the Engineering Accreditation Commission of the Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology, Inc. (ABET).

Career Opportunities

A bachelor of science degree in mechanical engineering is a widely recognized professional training for careers in industry, government, and other areas. Most industrial companies hire some mechanical engineers. Companies that make mechanical or energy-related products may hire mostly mechanical engineers. As a result, many mechanical engineering positions are available worldwide. Mechanical engineers have job opportunities in companies involved in such areas as aircraft and spacecraft design; manufacturing processes; product safety and reliability; solar energy; electronic equipment packaging and cooling; power plant design; jet, train, truck, and automobile engines; environmental protection; artificial intelligence; robotics; medical and hospital equipment; new material development and applications; and technical writing. Increasing numbers of positions utilize foreign language experience.

A graduate in mechanical engineering is prepared for advanced studies in the field as well as in a variety of other disciplines, including law, medicine, and business administration. Perhaps most important to graduates are the problem-solving strategies and thinking processes acquired in the study of mechanical engineering that help one to succeed in any area of endeavor.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Mechanical Engineering
Emphasis (optional):
International

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Students interested in pursuing honors for this program should consult with the college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Mechanical Engineering
PhD Engineering

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Any student may choose to major in mechanical engineering and to enroll in all classes in the preprofessional program (items 1 and 2 under BS Mechanical Engineering Major Requirements).

Professional Program Acceptance

Students must be accepted into the professional program before they may take upper-division mechanical engineering courses (items 3 and 4 in major requirements). To apply, students must have completed the preprofessional requirements (item 1 in major requirements) with a minimum grade of C– in each course. A portfolio of student work is also required. Acceptance is based primarily upon the grade point average received in preprofessional and other major courses, including all grades received in repeated courses. Normal application deadlines are June 1, October 1 and February 1. Transfer students may be considered at other times provided they have been admitted to the university. Application forms are available in the college advisement center.

Academic Standards and Continuance

On gaining acceptance into the professional program, students must maintain a minimum university cumulative grade point average of 2.0. Students who accumulate more than 6 credit hours of grades below C– in professional program courses may not continue in the program or graduate until courses are retaken to reduce the unacceptable credit to 6 or fewer hours. A professional program course may not be retaken more than once.

BS Mechanical Engineering (92.5 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following preprofessional requirements:
   Math 112, 113.
   Phscs 122 (students without high school physics should start with Phscs 121).
   CEEn 103.
   Chem 105.
   MeEn 172, 191.
2. Complete the following supporting courses:
   CEEn 203, 204.
   Engl 316.
   Math 312, 313.
   MeEn 250, 273.
   MFE 232.
   Phscs 221.
   Stat 361.
   And select one course from the following:
   ECEn 301R (3 hours).
   EET 315.
3. Complete the following professional requirements:
   MeEn 312, 321, 322, 337, 363, 372, 435, 440, 475, 476.
4. Complete 9 hours (three courses) of technical electives. The purpose of these courses is to provide the student with advanced engineering concepts and methods. The technical electives are normally 500-level mechanical engineering courses (limited credit in MeEn 595R, Special Topics in Mechanical Engineering, with department approval). Other courses may be used within the following limitations:
   a. At least two courses must be in mechanical engineering.
   b. At least two courses must be at the 500-level.
   c. No courses may be below the 300-level.
   d. All courses must be of an acceptable level from the following areas: engineering, mathematics, statistics, natural science, and life science.
   e. No course may duplicate another course used to satisfy graduation requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Emphasis (optional): International (102.5–104.5 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the requirements for the mechanical engineering program as outlined above.
2. Complete the following additional courses:
   EngT 200, 498.
   BusM 430.
3. Select one course from the following:
   RelC 344, 351, 355, 356.
4. After consulting with the college advisement center, select a foreign literature course or a classical civilization course.
   Or select one course from the following:
   ArtHC 210.
   FnArt 270R.
   Fren/Ital 217.
   Hist 312.
   Hum 240, 242.
   Music 203.
5. An international "live-in" experience is required. It may be satisfied by (1) a semester or term work experience in a foreign country, (2) a semester or term Study Abroad program approved by the David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies and college personnel, or (3) a prior living experience, such as a foreign mission.
6. Write a senior paper.

Recommended

Proficiency in a foreign language is strongly suggested.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Mechanical Engineering (MeEn)

Undergraduate Courses

170. Technical Drawing. (1–3:3:0) W Independent Study also.
Technical drawing fundamentals, emphasizing manual drafting methods, industrial symbolism and practices, perspective, and technical illustration techniques. Introduction to computer-aided drafting.

172. Engineering Graphics—Principles and Applications. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: engineering and technology major status.
Comprehensive applications of CAD-based national (ANSI) and international (ISO) graphics standards, including coordinate and geometric dimensioning and tolerancing practices, manufacturing, and product verification procedures.

173. Engineering Drafting with CAD Applications. (3:3:0) W
Structural and component drafting, emphasizing computer-automated (CAD) systems. Concepts include applied and descriptive geometry, multiview representation, sectional views, dimensioning practices, and axonometric sketching.

191. New Student Seminar. (.5:1:0) F, W
Topics of special interest to new mechanical engineering majors. Required of all first-semester freshman and sophomore transfer students.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: consent of both department chair and cooperative education coordinator.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

250. (MeEn-MFE) Science of Engineering Materials. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Chem 105 or 111.
Principles and properties of solid materials and their behavior as applied to engineering.

273. Introduction to Scientific Computing and Computer-Aided Engineering. (3:2:3) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Math 113; concurrent registration in Math 312.
Computer programming for engineers taught in context of solving physical systems using numerical methods. Student will program solutions using the C language, spreadsheets, symbolic solvers, etc.

312. Fluid Mechanics. (3:3:1) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: MeEn 273, 321, 363.
Physics and modeling of fluid flow; fluid statics, dimensional analysis, momentum, internal and external viscous flow, compressible flow, and fluid machinery.

321. Thermodynamics. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Phscs 221, Math 313.
Fundamentals of thermal energy and work; principle of state, conservation of mass, conservation of energy, increase of entropy principle; application to thermal and mechanical processes.

322. Applied Thermodynamics. (3:3:1) F, W, Su Prerequisite: MeEn 273, 321, 363.
Applied engineering thermodynamics including air and steam power cycles, thermodynamic relations, and introduction to combustion and equilibrium chemical reactions.

337. Kinematics. (3:2:3) F, W, Su Prerequisite: CEEn 204, Math 313, MeEn 273.
Relative motion of links in mechanisms; velocities and accelerations of machine parts; rolling contact; cams; synthesis of mechanisms. Includes computer-aided engineering techniques.

363. Elementary Instrumentation. (3:2:3) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Phscs 221, Math 313.
Fundamentals of mechanical measuring systems; sensors, signal conditioning, statistical error analysis, dynamic response, standards.

371. Computer-Aided Engineering Applications. (3:3:0) F, Sp Prerequisite: MeEn 172, 273, CEEn 203, 204.
Application of computer-aided engineering tools to design; 3-D geometry and solid modeling; applying finite element analysis, kinematic analysis, and other software to engineering analysis.

372. Analysis and Manufacture of Machine Components. (3:2:3) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: CEEn 203, MeEn 172, 250, 273, MFE 232.
Theory, design, and manufacture of machine components; application of computer-aided engineering methods.

401. Introduction to Thermal Engineering. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: Math 113, Phscs 221. For nonmajors.
First and second laws of thermodynamics, ideal power cycles, pipe flow, lift, drag, pumps, fans, modes of heat transfer; software applications.

435. System Dynamics Modeling/Vibrations. (3:3:1) F, W, Su Prerequisite: Math 313, MeEn 273, 363, CEEn 204.
Transient and frequency response of dynamic systems, modal analysis, vibration isolation, model approximation, computer simulations.

440. Heat Transfer. (3:3:1) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: MeEn 312.
Fundamentals of heat transfer; basics of conduction, convection, and radiation; mass transfer by analogy; heat exchangers; computer applications to practical design and analysis problems.

475, 476. (MeEn-MFE) Integrated Product and Process Design 1, 2. (3:2:3 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: senior standing (less than 30 hours remaining in the program) in mechanical or manufacturing engineering or related disciplines with instructor's consent.
Comprehensive two-semester design experience from conception to manufacturing planning and prototype. Product development process. Economic and manufacturing considerations. Intellectual property assignment agreement required.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:0:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

500. (MeEn-CEEn) Design and Materials Applications. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CEEn 203; MeEn 372 or CEEn 321; or equivalent.
Applied and residual stress; materials selection; static, impact, and fatigue strength; fatigue damage; surface treatments; elastic deflection and stability—all as applied to mechanical design.

501. (MeEn-CEEn) Stress Analysis and Design of Mechanical Structures. (3:3:0) Sp Prerequisite: CEEn 321 or MeEn 372; or equivalent.
Stress analysis and deflection of structures; general bending and torsion, with computer applications to mechanical and aerospace structure design.

502. (MeEn-CEEn) Composite and Smart Structures. (3:3:0) On dem. Prerequisite: Math 313; CEEn 321 or MeEn 372; or equivalent.
Analysis of advanced composite structures; classical and energy approaches; design consideratons; introduction to smart-structures concepts.

503. (MeEn-CEEn) Theory of Elasticity. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CEEn 203, Math 313.
Tensor notation, stress and deformation tensors, constitutive equations, field equations; plane-stress/plane strain, axisymmetric, thermoelasticity, and large deformation problems.

506. (MeEn-CEEn) Continuum Mechanics and Finite Element Analysis. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Math 313; CEEn 321 or MeEn 372; or equivalent.
Equilibrium and constitutive equations; closed-form elasticity solutions; beam and plate theory; finite element methodology; membrane, axisymmetric, beam, plate, shell, and solid elements. Application to heat transfer, flow-through porous media, and other problems.

507. (MeEn-CEEn) Finite Element Programming. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CEEn 321 or MeEn 372; or equivalent.
Development of a general-purpose computer program for analyzing trusses/frames. Development of a general finite-element program..

508. (MeEn-CEEn) Dynamics and Stability of Structures. (3:3:0) F even yr. Prerequisite: Math 313; CEEn 321 or MeEn 372; or equivalent.
Dynamic analysis of single degree-of-freedom, discrete multi-degree-of-freedom, and continuous systems. Static and dynamic stability of structures.

510. Compressible Fluid Flow. (3:3:1) F Prerequisite: MeEn 312.
One-dimensional analysis of compressible flow with area change, friction, heat transfer, shock waves, and combined effects, including experimental methods.

512. Intermediate Fluid Dynamics. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: MeEn 312 or instructor's consent.
Review of fluid properties, Navier-Stokes equations, exact and similarity solutions, introduction to potential flows, stream functions, lift and drag, boundary layers, vorticity, and turbulence.

515. Applied Aerodynamics and Flight Mechanics. (3:3:0) Sp Prerequisite: MeEn 312.
Modern applied aerodynamics, including performance, stability, and control of aerospace vehicles.

521. Intermediate Thermodynamics. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: MeEn 322 or instructor's consent.
Equations of state, thermodynamic relations, Maxwell's equations, equilibrium of single and multiphase mixtures, chemical reactions, and product equilibrium.

522. Combustion. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Chem 105, MeEn 322, or instructor's consent.
Introduction to first- and second-law ideal gas combustion systems along with elementary models of homogeneous and heterogeneous premixed and/or diffusion flames.

523. (MeEn-CEEn) Design of Aircraft Structures. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CEEn 321 or MeEn 372; or equivalent.
Requirements, objectives, loads, materials, and tools for design of airframe structures; static behavior of thin-wall structures; durability and damage tolerance; certification and testing. Airframe component team design project.

531. Design of Control Systems. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: MeEn 435.
Classical frequency response and time domain design of control systems. State variable control and computer simulation of control systems.

532. (MeEn-ECEn 511) Introduction to Linear Systems Theory. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: ECEn 411 or MeEn 435 or instructor's consent.
Finite-dimensional linear systems. State variable realizations, canonical forms, controllability, observability, minimality. Time and frequency domain design of controllers and observers.

533. Digital Control Systems. (3:3:0) Sp Prerequisite: MeEn 531.
Design of digital controllers for mechanical systems, analysis using the z-transform, digital filter implementation, application of transform-based classical design methods, and modern state-space techniques.

534. Dynamics of Mechanical Systems. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: MeEn 435 or equivalent.
Hamiltonian and Lagrangian dynamics, generalized coordinates, linear and angular momentum, Euler angles, rigid-body motions, and gyroscopic effects. Theory taught with applications integrated.

535. Mechanical Vibrations. (3:3:0) Su Prerequisite: MeEn 435 or equivalent.
Introduction to energy methods for system modeling, eigenvalues and mode shapes, frequency response, and spectral characterization of vibrations.

537. (MeEn-MFET) Advanced Mechanisms, Robotics. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: MeEn 337 or equivalent.
Kinematics and dynamics of advanced mechanisms, such as robots, with computer simulation of mechanism motion.

538. Compliant Mechanisms. (3:3:0) Su Prerequisite: MeEn 337, 372; or instructor's consent.
Design and analysis of compliant mechanisms and compliant structures. Large-deflection analysis/force displacement relationships; mechanisms synthesis.

540. Intermediate Heat and Mass Transfer. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: MeEn 440 or equivalent.
Analytical approaches to conduction, convection, and radiation heat transfer. Introduction to mass transfer.

541. Numerical Heat Transfer. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: MeEn 440 or instructor's consent..
Heat transfer analysis by numerical methods. Finite difference and finite element methods, stability, and error analysis.

552. Intermediate Materials. (3:3:0) Sp Prerequisite: MeEn 250, 372; or equivalent.
Mechanical behavior of engineering materials including metals, plastics, ceramics, and composites.

553. (MeEn-MFET) Mechanical Behavior of Polymers. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: CEEn 203; MFE 355 or instructor's consent.
Generalized elasticity relations, viscoelasticity, yielding and fracture, crazing, rubber elasticity, anisotropic behavior, processing effects on optical and other properties.

556. Composite Material Design. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: MeEn 250.
Macro- and micro-mechanical analysis and design of uni- and multi-directional composite materials.

557. Corrosion. (3:3:0) F odd yr. Prerequisite: Chem 105 or equivalent.
Basic principles, eight common forms of corrosion, testing, materials, applications, modern theory, and high temperature metal-gas reactions.

558. Metallurgy. (3:3:0) F even yr. Prerequisite: MeEn 250 or instructor's consent.
Fundamental principles of physical metallurgy and their application to design.

564. Digital Instrumentation and Mechatronic Systems. (3:2:3) F Prerequisite: MeEn 363 or equivalent.
Design and analysis of instrumentation systems, fundamental sensor characteristics, and computer data acquisition; time and frequency domain modeling with analog and digital components.

570. (MeEn-CEEn) Computer-Aided Engineering Software Development. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: MeEn 273 or C programming.
Programming methods for development of engineering software. Data structures, architecture, libraries, and graphical user interfaces, with applications to CAD systems.

572. (MeEn-CEEn) Computer-Aided Geometric Design. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: FORTRAN or C, or similar computer language background.
Mathematical theory of free-form curves and surfaces and solid geometric modeling. Bezier and B-spline curve and surface theory, parametric and implicit forms, intersection algorithms, topics in computer algebra, free-form deformation. Several programming projects.

575. (MeEn-CEEn) Optimization Techniques in Engineering. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Math 321 and FORTRAN, C, or similar computer language.

Application of computer optimization techniques to constrained engineering design. Theory and use of state-of-the-art computer routines. Robust design methods.

576. Product Design. (3:3:0)F Prerequisite: MeEn 475 or instructor's consent.

Emerging design methodology and design strategies for complex systems, including decomposition methods and sensitivity analysis. Advanced CAD/CAE/CAM technologies applied to design.

577. Design for Manufacture and Assembly. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: MeEn 372, MFE 232; or equivalent.

Design practice for manufacturing considerations. Surface finish, tolerances, GD&T, and inspection and gaging principles. Application of computer-aided tolerancing and inspection.

578. (MeEn-MFET) CAD/Cam Applications. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: advanced FORTRAN, C, or C++.

Principles and practices involved in parametric surface and solid modeling, associativity, NC tool path generation, etc. Construction of complete CAD models for design, analysis, and manufacture.

581. Internal Combustion Engines. (3:2:3) W Prerequisite: MeEn 322 or equivalent.

Fundamental operating characteristics of internal combustion engines, spark and compression ignition. Thermodynamic cycle analysis, performance and emissions characterization, and dynamometer testing on CFR and production engines.

584. Gas Turbine and Jet Engine Design. (3:3:0) Sp Prerequisite: MeEn 312, 322; or equivalent.

Design and synthesis of land-based and aircraft gas turbines utilizing fluid flow and thermodynamic fundamentals. Extensive discussion of turbojet, turbofan, and turboprop engines.

595R. Special Topics in Mechanical Engineering. (1–18:2:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: department chair's consent.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Mechanical Engineering Faculty

Professors

Chase, Kenneth W. (1968) BES, MS, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1964; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1972.

Germane, Geoffrey J. (1979) BS, MS, Rose-Hulman Inst. of Technology, 1972, 1975; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1978.

McQuay, Mardson Queiroz (1987) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1984; PhD, Carnegie-Mellon U., 1987.

Mortensen, Kay S. (1968) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1962, 1963; PhD, U. of Utah, 1967.

Parkinson, Alan R. (1982) BS, Brigham Young U., 1977; MS, PhD, U. of Illinois, 1979, 1982.

Raisor, E. Max (1968) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1968, 1975.

Red, W. Edward (1983) BA, BSME, Rice U., 1965; PhD, Arizona State U., 1972.

Smith, Craig C. (1980) BES, MS, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1970; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1973.

Webb, Brent W. (1986) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1981, 1982; PhD, Purdue U., 1986.

Associate Professors

Bowman, W. Jerry (1997) BS, Brigham Young U., 1977; MSE, U. of Central Florida, 1982; PhD, Air Force Inst. of Technology, 1987.

Cox, Jordan (1986) BA, MS, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1984; PhD, Purdue U., 1991.

Eastman, Paul F.(1985) BA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1960, 1965.

Evans, Mark S. (1995) BS, U. of Utah, 1982; MS, PhD, Rensselaer Polytechnic Inst., 1984, 1987.

Jensen, C. Gregory (1983) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1982; PhD, Purdue U., 1993.

Magleby, Spencer P. (1989) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1983; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1988.

Simmons, Val E. (1969) BS, U. of Utah, 1964; MS, Brigham Young U., 1967; PhD, Utah State U., 1970.

Sorensen, Carl D. (1987) BS, Brigham Young U., 1981; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1985.

Assistant Professors

Daines, Russell L. (1995) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1988, 1990; PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1995.

Howell, Larry L. (1994) BS, Brigham Young U., 1987; MS, PhD, Purdue U., 1991, 1993.

Maynes, R. Daniel (1997) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1992, 1993; PhD, U. of Utah, 1997.

McLain, Timothy W. (1995) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1986, 1987; PhD, Stanford U., 1995.

Tree, Dale R. (1994) BS, Brigham Young U., 1986; MS, Purdue U., 1988; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1992.

Adjunct Faculty

Beckwith, Scott W. (1990) BS, Texas A & M U., 1964; MS, California Inst. of Technology, 1965; PhD, Texas A & M U., 1974.

Simonsen, John M. (1954) BSME, U. of Utah, 1950; Marriott SchoolE, PhD, Purdue U., 1952, 1955.

Warner, Charles Y. (1966) BES, MS, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1963; PhD, U. of Michigan, 1966.

Woolley, Ronald L. (1983) BES, MS, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1968; PhD, Stanford U., 1974.

Emeriti

Andersen, Blaine W. (1970) BS, U. of Utah, 1949; MS, PhD, U. of Illinois, 1951, 1953.

Cannon, John N. (1957) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1952, 1955; PhD, Stanford U., 1965.

Free, Joseph C. (1961) BES, Brigham Young U., 1958; MS, California Inst. of Technology, 1961; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1967.

Heaton, Howard S. (1963) BES, U. of Southern California, 1957; MS, PhD, Stanford U., 1959, 1963.

Polve, James H. (1969) BS, U. of Utah, 1948; MS, Princeton U., 1951; PhD, U. of Arizona, 1966; ME, U. of Utah, 1954.

Tolman, Wilford J. (1960) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1964.

Ulrich, Richard D. (1968) BS, MS, PhD, Purdue U., 1954, 1955, 1959.

Wilkes, Doran F. (1958) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1951, 1955; EdD, U. of Missouri, Columbia, 1966.

Wille, Milton G. (1958) BA, BES, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1957; MS, California Inst. of Technology, 1958; PhD, U. of Michigan, 1964.

Media Arts

See Theatre and Media Arts.

Microbiology

Shauna C. Anderson, Chair
775 WIDB, PO Box 25253, (801) 378-2889

College of Biology and Agriculture Advisement Center
380 WIDB, PO Box 25189, (801) 378-3042

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Microbiology are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for clinical laboratory science and teaching majors.

The Discipline

The Microbiology Department offers programs leading to specialization in immunology, virology, medical microbiology, molecular genetics, microbial physiology, clinical laboratory science, environmental and industrial microbiology, and general microbiology.

Career Opportunities

Graduates are employed in a wide variety of positions in industry, hospitals, government agencies, and universities. Microbiology is an excellent preprofessional course of study for those interested in medicine, dentistry, law, or business.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS	Microbiology
BS	Biology Composite Teaching
BS	Clinical Laboratory Science
Minors	Biology Teaching
	Microbiology

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your faculty advisor.

Note: For the molecular biology program, see the Molecular Biology section of this catalog.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS	Microbiology
PhD	Microbiology

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BS Microbiology (67–74 hours*)

This is the preferred degree for microbiology majors who desire an advanced degree (master's or doctorate) in microbiology.

Major Requirements

1. No more than 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses and no grades lower than C– in microbiology will be accepted for graduation.
2. Students must complete a minimum of 12 credits in microbiology courses numbered 400 or higher while in residence.
3. Complete the following major requirements:
   Mcbio 130, 230, 265, 291, 351, 365, 465, 491R.
4. Complete the following supporting courses:
   Chem 105, 106, 107, 351, 352, 481.
   Math 119.
5. Complete 1 hour of the following:
   Chem 353.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Chem 213, 223.
7. Complete the following:
   Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108
8. Select one of the following options and complete the indicated set of courses:
   a. General:
      Mcbio 361, 402, 403, 404, 425, 451, 481.
      Recommended electives:
      Mcbio 441, 442.

b. Medical:
Mcbio 317, 402, 403, 404, 423, 451, 481.
Recommended electives:
Mcbio 391, 407, 425, 441, 442.

c. Virology:
Mcbio 402, 403, 404, 425, 430, 481.
Recommended electives:
Mcbio 441, 442, 504.

d. Cell Biology and Immunology:
Mcbio 402, 404, 425, 430, 441, 442, 481.
Recommended electives:
Mcbio 403, 502, 504.

e. Environmental and Industrial:
Mcbio 371, 425, 451, 471, 481.
Recommended electives:
AgHrt 514, CEEn 351, Mcbio 441, 442.

Recommended Courses

Qualified students who are contemplating an advanced degree in microbiology may substitute Math 112, 113, Chem 111, 112 for required courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Biology Composite Teaching (97–101 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in the major, and no more than 5 hours of D credit is allowed in required supporting courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Mcbio 130.
   Botny 105, 205, 475.
   Zool 204, 261, 276, 338M, 344, 350, 493.
3. Select one of the following options:
   Either Chem 101, 152, 281
   Or Chem 105, 106, 107, 351.
4. Complete the following:
   Geol 101.
   Math 110.
   Phscs 105, 106,
5. Complete the following:
   Mcbio 230, 265, 351, 402.
6. Complete the Professional Education Component (28–29 hours): See the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

Recommended Courses:

AgHrt 282, 283.
Botny 120, 210, 321, 331, 332, 480, 527.
Mcbio 311.
Range 225, 565.
Zool 134, 312, 317, 330, 350, 363, 380, 445, 446, 447, 460, 561.
Geol 103, 111, 112.
Math 111, 119.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Clinical Laboratory Science (73 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

This degree is for students who desire to practice medical technology in diagnostic laboratories or related options. The curriculum in clinical laboratory science is fully accredited by the National Accrediting Agency for Clinical Laboratory Sciences (8410 West Bryn Mawr Avenue, Chicago, IL).

Major Requirements

1. No more than 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses and no grades lower than a C– in microbiology will be accepted for graduation.
2. Students must complete a minimum of 9 credits in microbiology courses numbered 400 or higher while in residence.
3. Students desiring a minor in chemistry must take Chem 223.
4. Complete the following major courses:
   Mcbio 102, 130, 230, 265, 317, 351, 392, 393, 394, 395, 402, 403, 407, 420, 421, 491R.
5. During one semester and one term, complete at least 2 hours from the following:
   Mcbio 399R.
6. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 107, 351, 352, 481.
   Math 110.
   Phscs 105.

Recommended Course:

Stat 221.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Biology Teaching (29–30 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Botny 105, 250.
   Botny-Zool 475.
   Mcbio 221, 222.
   Zool 204, 276, 331.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Botny 205 or 210.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Zool 260 or 261.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Microbiology (16–17 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   Mcbio 351, 481.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Mcbio 371, 402, 403, 404, 425.

Microbiology (Mcbio)

Undergraduate Courses

102. Introduction to Clinical Laboratory Techniques. (1:0:3)
Hospital laboratory techniques.

130. General Biology. (5:5:0) Prerequisite: department major.
Rigorous presentation of biological principles including sub-cellular, cellular, and organismic biology. Emphasis on energetics, evolution, diversity, genetics, ecology and biostructure. For department majors.

221. General Microbiology. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Honors also. Prerequisite: any chemistry course and any biology course.
Microbial world, emphasizing communicable diseases, their causes, and control. Recommended for students seeking a liberal education in microbiology who do not have the prerequisites to take the more advanced courses.

222. General Microbiology Laboratory. (1:0:2) Prerequisite: Mcbio 221 or concurrent registration.

230. General and Molecular Genetics. (4:4:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 130.
General genetics and molecular biology of cell structure and function.

265. Laboratory Methods. (2:0:6) Prerequisite: Mcbio 130, Chem 105, 107, or equivalents.
Introduction to laboratory methodology used in microbiology, immunology, and molecular biology.

291. Readings in Science. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 130 or equivalent.
Introduction to scientific literature, library methods in science, and literature search techniques.

311. Disease and Public Health. (3:3:0)
A philosophical introduction to science of microbiology. Roles of individual and community in maintaining a healthful environment.

317. (Micro-Zool) Medical Parasitology. (3:2:3) Prerequisite: Biol 100 or equivalent.
Pathogenesis, diagnosis, and epidemiology of human parasitic diseases.

351. Microbiology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 230 or Zool 371, 372, 373.
Principles and applications of microbiology. A thorough introduction to the discipline for majors.

361. Food and Dairy Microbiology. (3:2:3) Prerequisite: Mcbio 221 or equivalent.
Basic study of microorganisms important in food preservation, spoilage, food-borne illness, and production processing.

365. Intermediate Laboratory Methods. (2:0:6) Prerequisite: Mcbio 265 and 351.
Experimental methodology in bacteriology. Investigative approach to experimental microbiology.

371. Microbial Ecology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 351.
Principles of prokaryotic ecology. Microbial communities in their natural habitats, role of microorganisms in biogeochemical cycling.

391. Clinical Pathology. (3:3:0)
Theory and application of diagnostic methods employed in clinical laboratories.

392. Hematology. (2.5:2.5:0) Prerequisite: clinical laboratory science program acceptance.
Normal and abnormal hematology.

393. Immunohematology and Coagulation Theory. (2.5:2.5:0) Prerequisite: clinical laboratory science program acceptance.
Theory and practice of bloodbanking and coagulation theory.

394. Practical Hematology. (2:0:6) Prerequisite: Mcbio 392 or concurrent registration.
Laboratory to accompany Mcbio 392; emphasizes medical laboratory techniques in hematology.

395. Practical Immunohematology and Coagulation Theory. (2:0:6) Prerequisite: Mcbio 393 or concurrent registration.
Laboratory to accompany Mcbio 393; medical laboratory techniques in immunohematology and coagulation theory.

399R. Cooperative Education: Clinical Laboratory Experience. (1–9:0:40 ea.)

402. Biology of the Immune System. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 351.
Fundamentals of immune mechanisms.

403. Medical Microbiology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 351.
Introduction to infectious diseases.

404. General Animal Virology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 351.
Basic principles of animal and medical virology.

407. Clinical Microbiology. (4:2:6) Prerequisite: Mcbio 403.
Approaches to laboratory diagnosis of infectious diseases.

420. Pathophysiology and Laboratory Diagnosis in Clinical Chemistry and Urinalysis. (5:5:0) Prerequisite: clinical laboratory science program acceptance.
Medical laboratory techniques in urinalysis, clinical chemistry.

421. Pathophysiology and Laboratory Diagnosis (Laboratory). (4:0:12) Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Mcbio 420.

423. Pathogenesis of Infectious Diseases. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 402, 403.
Microbial virulence mechanisms, host defense processes, and pathogenesis of infectious disease.

425. Molecular Genetics of Prokaryotes. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 230, 351, Chem 481.
Molecular basis of genetics of bacteria and bacteriophages, including mechanisms of DNA transfer, uptake, recombination, replication, and mutation.

430. Molecular Cell Biology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 230 or Zool 373.
Emphasizes molecular genetics, cell biology, and developmental biology. For bioscience majors.

441. Molecular Biology of the Gene. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 230, 351, 425, Chem 351, 352.
Molecular biology of gene structure and expression in prokaryotic and eukaryotic organisms.

442. Molecular Biology Laboratory. (2:0:6)
Laboratory to accompany Mcbio 441.

451. Bacterial Physiology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 351, Chem 352.
Principles of bacterial physiology, including structure-function relationships and biochemical processes. Unique aspects of prokaryotic metabolism.

465. Advanced Laboratory Methods. (2:0:6) Prerequisite: Mcbio 365, 402, 404.
Experimental methodology in immunology and virology. Investigative approach to experimental microbiology.

471. Industrial Applications of Microbiology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 351.
Commercial applications of microbial processes, quality control systems, scale-up and production line procedures, genetic manipulation of microbes, fermentations and bioassays with industrial applications.

481. History of Microbiology. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 351.

491R. Selections in Critical Literature. (1:1:0 ea.) Prerequisite: senior status.

495R. Special Problems. (1–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: department's consent.
Individualized undergraduate research experience.

499R. Senior Honors Thesis. (1–3:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: topic to be cleared with Honors Program and Department of Microbiology.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

502. Immunobiology. (4:2:6) Prerequisite: Mcbio 402 or equivalent.
Advanced immunology.

504. Molecular Biology of Animal Viruses. (4:2:6) Prerequisite: Mcbio 404 or equivalent.
Molecular aspects of viral replication and infection.

521. Industrial Microbiology. (3:2:3) Prerequisite: Mcbio 351, Chem 481.

551. Microbial Physiology. (5:3:6) Prerequisite: Mcbio 351, Chem 481.

561. Radioisotope Methods. (2:1:6) Prerequisite: college physics.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Microbiology Faculty

Professors
Anderson, Shauna C. (1974) AS, Ricks Coll., 1965; BS, Brigham Young U., 1967; MS, U. of Utah, 1973; PhD, U. of Washington, 1984.
Jensen, James B. (1989) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1972; PhD, Auburn, U., 1976.
Johnson, F. Brent (1972) BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1967, 1970.
Leavitt, Ronald W. (1977) BA, U. of California, Riverside, 1967; MS, U. of Illinois, 1969; PhD, U. of California, San Diego, 1975.
Murray, Byron K. (1983) AS, Ricks Coll., 1964; BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1969, 1971.
North, James A. (1965) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1960; PhD, U. of Utah, 1964.
Woodward, Scott R. (1989) BS, PhD, Utah State U., 1980, 1983.
Wright, Donald N. (1969) BS, U. of Utah, 1958; PhD, Iowa State U. of Science and Technology, 1964.

Associate Professors
Burton, Gregory F. (1997) BS, U. of Utah, 1975; MS, Brigham Young U., 1985; PhD, Medical Coll. of Virginia, Virginia Commonwealth U., 1989.
Harker, Alan R. (1994) BS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1978, 1982.
O'Neill, Kim L. (1992) BSc, DPhil, New U. of Ulster, Northern Ireland, 1984, 1986.
Robison, Richard A. (1991) BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1980, 1988.

Associate Teaching Professor
Cockayne, Susan (1982) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1972, 1979; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1990.

Assistant Professor
McCleary, William R. (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1982; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1990.

Assistant Clinical Professor
Allman, Glenn Walker (1970) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1972.

Adjunct Professor
Bodily

Adjunct Clinical Professors
Freestone, Lovell, Thorn, Urie

Adjunct Clinical Instructors
Jackson, Mangum, Poulsen, Tuttle, Zern

Director, Laboratory Support Services
Lee, John D. (1972) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1976.

Emeriti
Beck, Jay V. (1951) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1933, 1936; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1940.
Bradshaw, Willard H. (1961) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1952, 1953; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1957.
Donaldson, David M. (1955) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1950, 1952, 1954.
Jensen, Marcus M. (1969) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1952, 1954; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1961.
Sagers, Richard D., (1958) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1954, 1955; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1958.

Military Science (Army ROTC)

Lieutenant Colonel Donald A. Coe, Chair
320 ROTC, PO Box 28300, (801) 378-3601

Admission to The Program

Students must be accepted by the Department of Military Science into the program.

The Discipline

The Army ROTC Leadership Excellence Program is designed to produce highly qualified commissioned officers in the U.S. Regular Army, the U.S. Army Reserve, or the U.S. Army National Guard. Students specialize in the major field of their choice and graduate with the ability to function as a junior executive.

Career Opportunities

Officer in the U.S. Army.

General Information

SMP Program. A program allowing for simultaneous membership in the U.S. Army Reserve or National Guard that provides over $500 per month in additional pay as an officer trainee is available.

Textbooks, Uniforms, and Allowances. All textbooks, uniforms, and training materials are furnished by the U.S. Army. Those in the advanced course receive a $150 monthly allowance (up to $3,000 for the two years). Additionally, students attending either the basic or advanced camps receive approximately $700 for the camp period, plus travel to and from the camp.

Army ROTC Scholarship Program. Tuition assistance is available on a competitive basis. Senior students in high school may qualify for a four-year scholarship. College students may also qualify for a four-, three-, or two-year scholarship. The scholarship provides for tuition, fees, a textbook allowance, and $150 per month (up to ten months per year) for the period of the scholarship. Students who qualify must complete their degree program prior to their twenty-seventh birthday. Contact the Military Science Department for application procedures and specifics.

Extracurricular Activities. Army ROTC cadets extend academic and laboratory associations into a variety of extracurricular ROTC activities. Among these are the Ranger Challenge, Army Color Guard, cannon crew, annual Patriot Ball, and many school service projects performed by the cadet battalion.

LDS Missions. Students, including scholarship recipients, who wish to serve a two-year LDS mission can do so most conveniently between their freshman and sophomore years. This allows students to be on campus during the spring of their sophomore year to facilitate their selection for the advanced course. Interruptions of the program at other times for a mission, however, can be arranged by obtaining individual approval from the professor of military science.

Leadership Laboratory and Course Fee. Each course requires a corresponding leadership lab, which meets on Tuesdays from 2:00 to 5:00 p.m. The labs require physical activity, including but not inclusive to the following: land navigation, mountaineering, rope bridging, marksmanship, the leadership reaction course, physical fitness training, and field training exercises. Students are also required to participate in one weekend leadership lab per semester. A course fee is required of each participating student to cover cadet activity expenses.

Graduation Requirements in Physical Education. Students in the Army ROTC Program can complete the physical education graduation requirements listed in the Physical Activity Requirement section of this catalog by participating in the leadership laboratory for eight semesters. Additionally, the student is expected to pass the Army Physical Fitness Test. Physical education credit can be received for participation in the ROTC Physical Training Program. An Army ROTC instructor has complete details.

Program of Instruction. The ROTC Leadership Excellence Program is designed to complement the civilian goal of acquiring a baccalaureate degree in a personal course of study while enabling students to develop the knowledge, skills, and attitudes for transition into one of the Army's sixteen branches upon commissioning. The program also enables those who plan a civilian career to fulfill military obligations while serving as an officer. Following the completion of active service, ROTC graduates reflect leadership training as leaders in business, civic, and community affairs.

Program Requirements

1. The traditional Army ROTC Leadership Excellence Program extends over a four-year period compatible with normal progression through four years of college. It consists of two phases: a two-year basic course during the freshman and sophomore years and an advanced course designed for completion during the normal junior and senior years. Also included is a five-week advanced camp normally attended in the summer before the senior year. (Under some circumstances it can be attended in the summer at the end of the senior year.) Students may receive academic credit for the first two years of ROTC by attending the basic camp in the summer before the start of their junior year. Such actions must be approved in advance by the professor of military science.

   A two-year program is also offered that enables qualified students (prior service or placement credit for basic course) with 64 semester hours (academic junior) to complete all requirements for a U.S. Army commission in two years of college. Applicants for the two-year program may be upper-division or graduate students, provided a minimum of four semesters remain at BYU at the time of entry into the program. Students must complete a physical examination and other associated requirements during the year before contracting. Two-year students normally process for admission during the first month of the winter semester of the sophomore year and enter the program at the beginning of the junior year.
2. Entering either the four-year or three-year program incurs no military obligation whatever until such time as students sign their advanced course contract at the beginning of the junior year, unless they are an Army ROTC scholarship student. At that time they agree to enlist in the U.S. Army Reserve Control Group for a period of eight years; they are then sworn into the reserve and begin to receive the monthly $150 subsistence allowance.

   Veterans who have had one or more years of active duty may qualify for direct entry into the advanced course by receiving placement credit for the basic course from the professor of military science.
3. Students must be or have applied to be citizens of the United States. Non-U.S. citizens may apply for enrollment on a case-by-case basis but cannot be commissioned until they are U.S. citizens.
4. To receive a commission as a second lieutenant in the U.S. Army, students must earn a baccalaureate degree and be

commissioned before their thirtieth birthday. Waivers of age may be approved by the Department of the Army under special circumstances. Those who are in a five-year academic program, such as engineering, may complete their Army ROTC courses at any point before graduation.

5. Upon commissioning, the new second lieutenant is discharged from the U.S. Army Reserve Control Group and incurs an eight-year obligation to the U.S. Army, which may be filled by serving on Active Duty, in the U.S. Army Reserve, National Guard, Individual Ready Reserve (IRR), or various combinations of the above.
6. Complete the following basic courses:
   MilS 120, 121, 220, 221.
7. Complete the following advanced courses:
   MilS 320, 321, 420, 421.

Note 1: Two-year students should complete the 300- and 400-level courses.

Note 2: Credit for the 100- and 200-level courses may be granted by completing the six-week Camp Challenge at Fort Knox, Kentucky, beginning in June following the sophomore year or by being granted placement credit for prior service.

Note 3: Each course listed must have a concurrent leadership laboratory.

8. Professional Military Education (PME): Before being commissioned, each senior cadet must complete one course in each of the following five categories:
   a. Military history:
      Hist 323, 374.
      PlSc 376, 377.
   b. Human behavior:
      Anthr 101.
      Psych 111.
      Econ 110.
      Soc 111, 112.
   c. Writing and reading:
      Engl 311, 312, 313, 315, 316.
      MCom 320.
      Comms 311.
      Phil 311.
   d. Computer literacy:
      Ling 98.
      ISys 98.
      CS 103, 130, 142, 143.
      CEEn 270.
   e. Mathematics:
      Math 110, 119, 312.
      Stat 105.

Note: Courses not specified above may satisfy the requirement but must be approved by the professor of military science.

Minor Military Science (16 hours)

Minor Requirements

Complete the following:
MilS 320, 321, 420, 421.

Military Science (Army ROTC) (MilS)

Undergraduate Courses

115. Spring Lab—Freshmen. (0.5:0:2) Sp
Military basic skills oriented toward in-depth preparation for sophomore year of military science; includes drill and ceremony, physical fitness, land navigation, and basic tactical skill development.

120. Introduction to Leadership Excellence. (2:1:2) F
Historical overview and evolvement of value systems and philosophies. Individual leadership styles; organization and time management; writing skills; ethics and code of an officer; role of LDS officer in the military; drill and ceremonies; fire team tactics; rappelling, mountaineering. Lab required. Fee.

121. Individual Leadership Skills. (2:1:2) W
Comparison and analysis of leadership styles in U.S. Army. Army organization, active and reserve forces; winter operations, cross-country skiing, and survival; advanced fire-team and aggressor tactics. Lab required. Fee.

131. Fundamentals of Military Leadership. (3:2:2) F, W, Sp
Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Alternate single-semester course including course descriptions for MilS 120, 121. Lab required. Fee.

215. Spring Lab—Sophomore. (0.5:0:2) Sp
Military basic skills oriented toward in-depth preparation for junior year of military science and special Army schools such as Airborne, Air Assault, and Winter Warfare Training; includes physical fitness, drill, marksmanship, and patrolling.

220. Advanced Individual Leadership. (3:2:2) F, W, Sp, Su
Building on skills and fundamentals learned in MilS 120, 121; personal leadership and military skills relative to land navigation, military first aid, and preventive medical care and exercises involving tactical training, mountaineering, and other adventure training. Lab required. Fee.

221. Small-Unit Leadership. (3:2:2) F, W, Sp, Su
Organization and leadership of military fire teams and rifle squads, land navigation, squad and platoon tactics, radio/wire communications, and basic first aid. Lab required. Fee.

315. Spring Lab—Juniors. (1:0:2) Sp
Prerequisite to attendance and successful completion of summer advanced camp at Ft. Lewis, Washington; emphasis on small-unit leadership, physical fitness, and land navigation.

320. Organizational Leadership. (4:3:2) F
Theory, practical experience, and diagnostic evaluation in organizational leadership, emphasizing communication, human relations, organizational structures, management, and applied leadership. Lab required. Fee.

321. Battlefield Leadership. (4:3:2) W
Prerequisite to attendance at summer advanced camp, preparing for its successful completion: land navigation, squad and platoon tactics, combat operations, physical fitness, and battlefield leadership. Lab required. Fee.

325R. Staff Organization and Operations. (1–2:0:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp
Prerequisite: enrollment in military science.
Special project staff work for joint Army/Air Force campus ceremonies, leadership labs, field training exercises, and training camps.

415. Spring Lab—Seniors. (0.5:0:2)
Instruction, counseling, and communications in preparation for commissioning into the U.S. Army. Students will be assigned as assistant instructors and evaluated on ability to plan, organize, and teach.

420. The Military Profession and Ethics. (4:3:2) F
Preparing the prospective officer for successful completion of first and subsequent assignments in the Army. U.S. Army training management, military writing, administration, logistics, professionalism, and ethics. Lab required. Fee.

421. The Profession of Arms. (4:3:2) W
Preparing the prospective officer for successful completion of Army assignments. U.S. advanced Army training management, military justice and law, precommissioning orientation, military briefing skills, and junior officer leadership. Fee.

425R. Ranger Preparation. (2:1:5)
Participation in Army ROTC Ranger Challenge and Mountain Ranger programs. Advanced military training with practical application of skills taught in MilS 120–421.

Military Science Faculty

Professor of Military Science
Coe, Donald A., LTC (1998) BS, U. of Utah 1978; MBA, Babson Coll., 1990.

Assistant Professors of Military Science
Boucher, William W., CPT (1995) BS, Utah State U., 1987.
Curtis, S. Rand, MAJ (1997) BS, Utah State U., 1984.
Dunn, Paul, CPT (1998) BS, Utah State U., 1988.
Root, Richard R., CPT (1997) BS, Brigham Young U., 1989.
Willmuth, Thomas J., MAJ (1998) BA, U. of Idaho, 1986.

Molecular Biology

Scott R. Woodward, Coordinator
788 WIDB, (801) 378-6259

College of Biology and Agriculture Advisement Center
380 WIDB, PO Box 25189, (801) 378-3042

Admission to Degree Program

The molecular biology program is an open enrollment program.

The Discipline

Molecular biology is the basic science that has as its goal an explanation of life processes at the subcellular and molecular level. The discipline is firmly based in the physical sciences and uses the principles of chemistry, physics, and mathematics to investigate and understand biological phenomena. Recent years have seen explosive advances in the study of DNA and molecular genetics, including gene cloning, sequencing, and mapping. Developments in recombinant DNA technologies have opened up entirely new areas of study and provided powerful techniques in genetic engineering that are revolutionizing the pharmaceutical, health, and agricultural industries and have spawned new industries in biotechnology.

Molecular biology students complete a comprehensive curriculum in the fundamentals of science and are prepared to address problems in a wide area of biology. The requirements of the molecular biology program have been set to assure a satisfactory level of competence in the various areas specified, while still allowing as much flexibility as possible for students to plan their own program.

Career Opportunities

Graduates are well prepared for continued study toward advanced degrees in biology, molecular biology, biochemistry, microbiology, or related fields as well as being prepared to enter the biotechnology work force. Molecular biology is an excellent preprofessional course of study for those interested in health professions, law, or business.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Molecular Biology
Minor Molecular Biology

For help or information on the undergraduate program, please see your faculty advisor.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Molecular Biology
PhD Molecular Biology

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BS Molecular Biology (73–76 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No more than 6 hours of D credit in required supporting or major courses will be accepted for graduation.
2. Students must complete a minimum of 10 credits in molecular biology courses numbered 400 or higher while in residence.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Biol 130.
   Mcbio 130.
4. Complete the following:
   Either Mcbio 230.
   Or Zool 371, 372.
5. Select one course from the following:
   Mcbio 365.
   Zool 374.
6. Complete the following:
   Chem 367, 481, 582.
   Mcbio 425, 441.
   MolB 380, 490.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Chem 586.
   Mcbio 442.

8. Complete the following supporting courses:
   Chem 111, 112, 351, 352, 353.
   Phscs 121, 122, 221.
9. Complete the following:
   Math 112, 113.
10. Select 10 hours from the following:
    AgHrt 459.
    Botny 440, 475, 485.
    Mcbio 351, 402, 404, 504.
    Zool 562, 565, 572, 585.

*Hours include courses that may fill GE or university requirements.

Minor Molecular Biology (12–14 hours, plus prerequisites)

Minor Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   Either Mcbio 230
   Or Zool 371, 372
   Or Chem 481.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Mcbio 351.
   MolB 380.
3. Complete the following:
   MolB 320, 321.

Molecular Biology (MolB)

Undergraduate Courses

320. Basic Biotechnology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 230; or Zool 371, 372.
Molecular biology as a tool in resolving practical and philosophical questions in biology.

321. Biotechnology Laboratory. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: MolB 320 or concurrent registration.
Basic techniques in biotechnology.

380. Cell Biology. (4:3:0) Prerequisite: Mcbio 230; or Zool 371, 372.
Interactions at the cellular level: membranes, transport, organelles, photosynthesis, respiration, signal transduction; growth and physiology of organisms used in the study of molecular biology.

490. Senior Seminar in Molecular Biology. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: Chem 582.

495R. Undergraduate Research Experience. (1–2:Arr.:Arr. ea.)

Molecular Biology Faculty

Professors

Bradshaw, William S. (1970) BA, Harvard U., 1963; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1968.
Busath, David D. (1995) BA, MD, U. of Utah, 1974, 1978.
Leavitt, Ronald W. (1977) BA, U. of California, Riverside, 1967; MS, U. of Illinois, 1969; PhD, U. of California, San Diego, 1975.
Murray, Byron K. (1983) AS, Ricks Coll., 1964; BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1969, 1971.
Rowe, Mark J. (1987) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1968, 1972.
Thwaits, Richard N. (1990) BS, New Mexico State U., 1974; DVM, Colorado State U., 1981; PhD, U. of Georgia, 1991.
Woodward, Scott R. (1989) BS, PhD, Utah State U., 1980, 1983.

Associate Professors

Christensen, Merrill J. (1982) BS, Brigham Young U., 1977; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1982.
Elton, Terry S. (1995) BS, Weber State U., 1981; PhD, Washington State U., 1986.
Fairbanks, Daniel J. (1988) BS, Brigham Young U., 1982; MS, U. of Minnesota, 1985; PhD, U. of Arizona, 1988.
Harker, Alan R. (1994) BS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1978, 1982.
Judd, Allan M. (1991) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1973, 1978; PhD, West Virginia U., 1982.
O'Neill, Kim L. (1992) BSc, DPhil, New U. of Ulster, Northern Ireland, 1984, 1986.
Robison, Richard A. (1991) BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1980, 1988.
Simmons, Daniel L. (1989) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1980; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1986.

Assistant Professors

Bell, John D. (1990) BS, Brigham Young U., 1982; PhD, U. of California, San Diego, 1987.
Bennett, Randy L. (1995) BA, Western Maryland Coll., 1985; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1993.
Coleman, Craig E. (1996) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1987; PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1992.
Crandall, Keith A. (1995) BA, Kalamazoo Coll., 1987; AM, PhD, Washington U., 1993.
Evans, R. Paul (1987) BS, Brigham Young U., 1995; PhD, Medical Coll. of Virginia, 1983.
Jellen, Eric N. (1996) BS, Brigham Young U., 1986; MS, PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1988, 1992.
Kaspar, Robert L. (1995) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1986; PhD, U. of Washington, 1991.
Kooyman, David L. (1997) BS, MS, California State Polytechnic U., Pomona, 1982, 1986; PhD, Ohio U., 1993.
Lephart, Edwin D. (1994) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1982; PhD, U. of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, 1989.
McCleary, William R. (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1982; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1990.
Stevens, Mikel R. (1994) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1983; PhD, U. of Arkansas, 1993.
Whiting, Michael (1997) BS, Brigham Young U., 1990; PhD, Cornell U., 1994.
Willardson, Barry M. (1996) BA, Brigham Young U., 1984; PhD, Purdue U., 1990.

School of Music

David M. Randall, Director
C-550 HFAC, PO Box 26410, (801) 378-3083

College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center
D-444 HFAC, PO Box 26333, (801) 378-3537

Admission to Degree Program

Admission to the university does not guarantee admission to the School of Music. Music majors must be admitted both to the university and to the School of Music. Preliminary admission to the School of Music as a general music major is determined by an acceptable level of performance as demonstrated through a personal audition or a recent tape recording and is subject to enrollment limits. This audition is in addition to the formal application for admission to Brigham Young University. All students must also pass an aural skills entrance examination.

The Discipline

Studies in the discipline of music include theory, analysis, aural development, keyboard, sight-singing skills, composition, history, literature, instrumental and vocal performance, conducting, and pedagogy. The music major may pursue a broad liberal education with a concentration in music or specialize in an area such as composition, performance, or teaching.

Career Opportunities

Degree programs prepare future leaders to serve others in the artistic aspect of their humanity. These leadership roles may take the form of careers in performance, studio teaching, music education, composition, or higher education, among others.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–2.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA Music
BFA Music Dance Theatre
BM Music Composition
BM Music Education
Emphases:
- K–12 Choral
- K–12 Instrumental
- Elementary

BM Performance
Emphases:
- Piano
- Organ
- Combined Piano and Organ
- Brass
- Percussion
- String
- Woodwind
- Vocal

Minors Music

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA Music
MM Music
PhD Music

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

1. Admission auditions must be completed by February 15. Live auditions are held on the last Saturday in January. For those not attending the live audition, tapes must be received by February 15. See School of Music office for details, or call (801) 378-3083.

   Students may take the aural skills entrance examination in one of three ways: (1) in a group, at scholarship auditions on the last Saturday in January; (2) in a group, during fall semester freshman orientation; or (3) individually, at the BYU Testing Center (call [801] 378-6129 to schedule a time). **Students may take the exam as many times as desired but may not remain in theory core courses (Music 191, 193, 195, 197) if the exam is not passed by the first day of class.**

   After the first year of study, entrance into degree programs is subject to faculty evaluation and enrollment limits.

2. Students must establish a file in the College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center during the first semester of enrollment.
3. Students who pass the AP Music Test with at least a score of 4 can be excused from Music 191, 193, 195, 197 and receive 5 hours of credit. However, students with insufficient keyboard or sight-singing instruction are encouraged to enroll in Music 191 and 197.
4. All major performance instruction (Music 161, 250, 260R, 360R, 460R) must be in the same instrument or must all be in voice.
5. Students must undergo a jury examination to assess proficiency and progress on the major instrument or voice. Music majors are required to complete an examination before a faculty jury on their major instrument or voice near the end of each semester of performance study. Students may elect to substitute a recital for a jury examination, subject to faculty approval. Students desiring to enter Music 360R or 460R, which normally follows successful completion of the sophomore year, must first be granted approval by a faculty jury.
6. Students must not enroll in more than two conducted or directed ensembles per semester. Chamber music and jazz combos are coached, not directed, and therefore are exempt from this limitation.
7. We subscribe to the policy of the National Association of Schools of Music and carry no obligation to accept, without examination, upper-division music credits from other member schools.

BA Music (45 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

The bachelor of arts degree offers a broad liberal arts education with a concentration in music. If appropriate music electives are chosen, it also offers excellent preparation for a variety of professional music careers, or graduate work in theory, musicology, music education, or law. To incorporate an emphasis into elective course work, students should seek assistance as follows:

1. Electives focused on preparation for graduate studies in musicology or librarianship: consult with the head of the music history and literature area.
2. Electives focused toward sound recording technology, jazz studies, music for the media, or the music industry: consult with the head of the media music and jazz area.
3. Electives focused on preparation for graduate studies in music theory: consult with the head of the composition-theory area.

Major Requirements

1. No credit less than C– in music courses can be applied toward the music degree or fulfillment of prerequisites.
2. See the college advisement center to obtain information concerning official acceptance into a specific degree program.
3. Complete the following:
   Music 191, 193, 195, 197, 192, 194, 196, 198, 291, 293, 295, 297, 292, 294, 296, 298, 235.
4. Select one of the following options:
   a. Instrumentalists complete the following:
      Music 250, 260R (6 hours).
   b. Vocalists complete the following:
      Music 161, 260R (6 hours).
5. Complete 4 hours of large ensemble courses within student's area of specialization.
6. Complete the following:
   Music 301, 302, 303, 304, 395.

BFA Music Dance Theatre (79 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring program admissions approval. Please see the College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

The BFA in music dance theatre is an interdisciplinary degree offered by the College of Fine Arts and Communications through the cooperative involvement of its School of Music and Department of Theatre and Media Arts and the College of Health and Human Performance's Department of Dance.

Major Requirements

1. Live and taped auditions for entrance into the MDT major are held in the January preceding fall registration. Students may begin the MDT major in the fall only.
2. Pass a proficiency examination in each of the three areas at the end of each semester.
3. Complete at least 40 hours in residence at BYU.
4. Any grade below C– in major courses is not acceptable for graduation. Dance technique courses require a grade of B– for advancement to the next level.
5. Complete the following:
   Music 113, 161, 261, 290.
6. Complete 4 hours of the following:
   Music 260R.
7. Complete 6 hours of the following:
   Music 360R.
8. Complete the following:
   Dance 131, 134R, 135, 231, 235, 241R, 242, 290, 291R, 331, 361, 363, 390R.
9. Complete the following:
   TMA 114, 121, 123, 124, 235, 267, 323, 427.
10. Select one course from the following:
    TMA 224, 324, 329, 423, 424.
11. Complete the following MDT Seminar courses:
    Music 228.
    Dance 228.
    TMA 228.
12. Complete the following History of Music Dance Theatre courses:
    Music 300.
    Dance 300.
    TMA 300.
13. Complete the following Senior Performance Project courses:
    Music 426R.
    Dance 426R.
    TMA 426R.
14. Select 2 hours from the following (on-campus performance experience):
    Music 319R.
    Dance 229R, 429R.
    TMA 420R.

15. Select 1 hour from the following (off-campus performance experience):
    Music 399R.
    Dance 399R.
    TMA 399R.
16. Complete 4.5 hours of electives in music, dance, or theatre courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BM Music Composition (78 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

This degree program prepares the student for graduate study in composition and theory or may lead to a professional career as a composer, arranger, or orchestrator.

Major Requirements

1. No credit less than C– in music courses can be applied toward the music degree or fulfillment of prerequisites.
2. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
3. Pass a junior-level screening process by creating a portfolio of acceptable compositions.
4. Complete the following:
   Music 191, 193, 195, 197, 192, 194, 196, 198, 291, 293, 295, 297, 292, 294, 296, 298, 235.
5. Select one of the following options:
   a. Instrumentalists complete the following:
      Music 250, 260R (6 hours).
   b. Vocalists complete the following:
      Music 161, 260R (6 hours).
6. Complete 4 hours of large ensemble courses within student's area of specialization.
7. Complete the following:
   Music 301, 302, 303, 304, 395.
8. Complete the following:
   Music 188, 287, 288.
9. Complete 8 hours of the following:
   Music 387R.
10. Complete the following:
    Music 481, 483, 581, 583.
11. Complete the following senior composition recital:
    Music 449R.
12. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete 7 hours of music electives.

BM Music Education: K–12 Choral Emphasis

(90 hours, including certification hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

This degree in music education prepares the student for K–12 certification as a public school music teacher with a choral emphasis. The degree program is a composite of music and education. Graduates may obtain a teaching position, pursue graduate work, or use the degree as professional preparation for other fields of endeavor.

Major Requirements

1. No credit less than C– in music courses can be applied toward the music degree or fulfillment of prerequisites.
2. See the college advisement center and enroll in Music 176 winter semester or summer term. This course is prerequisite to official acceptance into music education.
3. Proficiency requirements: All Music 260R, 262, 263, and 363 proficiency requirements in voice must be completed before student teaching (ScEd 476R). Twenty minutes of solo performance time and ten minutes of chamber music performance time are required, which may be accomplished through master classes, recitals, juries, or in-class performances in ScEd 276R and 476R. Students opting for a juried recital must register for Music 349R.
4. Complete the following core requirements:
   Music 191, 193, 195, 197, 192, 194, 196, 198, 291, 293, 295, 297, 292, 294, 296, 298, 235, 161.
5. Complete 6 hours of the following:
   Music 260R.
6. Music education majors must enroll in at least 1 credit of large ensemble each semester for seven semesters within student's area of specialization.
7. Complete the following:
   Music 301, 302, 303, 304, 395.
8. Complete the following:
   Music 162, 176, 262, 276, 363, 374, 376A,B, 482.
9. Complete the Professional Education Component (23 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

BM Music Education: K–12 Instrumental Emphasis

(92 hours, including certification hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

This degree in music education prepares the student for K–12 certification as a public school music teacher with an instrumental emphasis. The degree program is a composite of music and education. Graduates may obtain a teaching position, pursue graduate work, or use the degree as professional preparation for other fields of endeavor.

Major Requirements

1. No credit less than C– in music courses can be applied toward the music degree or fulfillment of prerequisites.
2. See the college advisement center and enroll in Music 176 winter semester or summer term. This course is prerequisite to official acceptance into music education.
3. Proficiency requirements: All Music 260R and 360R requirements in a woodwind, brass, string, or percussion instrument must be completed before student teaching (ScEd 476R). Twenty minutes of solo performance time and ten minutes of chamber music performance time are required, which may be accomplished through master classes, recitals, juries, or in-class performances in Music 276R and 476R. Students opting for a juried recital must register for Music 349R.

4. Complete the following core requirements:
   Music 191, 193, 195, 197, 192, 194, 196, 198, 291, 293, 295, 297, 292, 294, 296, 298, 235.
5. Complete the following:
   Music 250, 260R (6 hours).
6. Complete 4 hours of the following:
   Music 360R.
7. Music education majors must enroll in at least 1 credit of ensemble each semester for seven semesters. Those who play woodwind, brass, or percussion instruments must enroll in one semester of marching band, which may be counted toward the 7-hour large ensemble requirement if it is completed after the student has been officially accepted as a degree candidate in instrumental music education (after freshman year).
8. Complete the following:
   Music 301, 302, 303, 304, 395.
9. Complete the following:
   Music 176, 276, 372A,B, 373A,B, 374, 375A,B, 377A,B.
10. Complete the Professional Education Component (23 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

BM Music Education: Elementary Music Specialist Emphasis (124.5 hours,* including certification hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

This is a five-year program leading to a degree with a dual major in elementary music education and elementary education. It will also prepare the student for dual certification as an elementary music specialist and as an elementary classroom teacher. Graduates may obtain a teaching position in either area or a combination of both, pursue graduate work, or use the degree as preparation for other fields of endeavor.

1. No credit less than C– in music courses can be applied toward the music degree or fulfillment of prerequisites.
2. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
3. Complete the following music core requirements:
   Music 191, 193, 195, 197, 192, 194, 196, 198, 291, 293, 295, 297, 292, 294, 296, 298, 235, 161.
4. Complete 6 hours of the following:
   Music 260R.
5. Complete 4 hours of performance ensemble as assigned by faculty.
6. Complete the following:
   Music 301, 302, 303, 304, 395.
7. Complete the following:
   Music 162, 271, 272, 371, 471.
8. See the Education Advisement Center for the application procedure for official acceptance into elementary education and complete the professional education component.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BM Performance: Piano Emphasis (78 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The keyboard performance degree prepares students for professional work as performers and studio teachers. The degree includes a strong pedagogy emphasis, including supervised teaching. Many performance majors continue their studies on the graduate level to further prepare for a performance career or college teaching.

Major Requirements

1. No credit less than C– in music courses can be applied toward the music degree or fulfillment of prerequisites.
2. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
3. Present a juried recital (Music 249R) during the sophomore year. A senior recital (Music 449R) is also required.
   Recital: Enroll in 249R, or 449R (0.0 credit hours) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent registration in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center scheduling office (F-315) for further information.
4. Complete the following:
   Music 191, 193, 195, 197, 192, 194, 196, 198, 291, 293, 295, 297, 292, 294, 296, 298, 235.
5. Complete the following:
   Music 250, 260R (6 hours).
6. Complete the following:
   Music 249R.
7. Complete 4 hours of the following:
   Music 360R.
8. Complete 8 hours of the following:
   Music 460R.
9. Complete the following:
   Music 449R.
10. Complete at least 1 credit of large ensemble or Music 344R each semester for six semesters. Take either four semesters of large ensemble and two semesters of Music 344R or two semesters of large ensemble and four semesters of Music 344R. Two semesters of 344R must be taken in consecutive fall and winter semesters.
11. Complete the following:
    Music 301, 302, 303, 304, 395.
12. Complete the following:
    Music 264, 265, 364, 365, 403A,B.
13. Complete 2 hours of the following:
    Music 470R.
14. Complete the following:
    Music 469.
15. Complete 4 hours of the following:
    Music 115, 116R, 260R (organ).

BM Performance: Organ Emphasis (78 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

Major Requirements

1. No credit less than C– in music courses can be applied toward the music degree or fulfillment of prerequisites.
2. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
3. Present a juried recital (Music 249R) during the sophomore year. A senior recital (Music 449R) is also required.
   Recital: Enroll in 249R or 449R (0.0 credit hours) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent registration in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center scheduling office (F-315) for further information.
4. Complete the following:
   Music 191, 193, 195, 197, 192, 194, 196, 198, 291, 293, 295, 297, 292, 294, 296, 298, 235.
5. Complete the following:
   Music 250, 260R (6 hours).
6. Complete the following:
   Music 249R.
7. Complete 4 hours of the following:
   Music 360R.
8. Complete 8 hours of the following:
   Music 460R.
9. Complete at least 1 credit of large ensemble or Music 344R each semester for six semesters. Take either four semesters of large ensemble and two semesters of Music 344R or two semesters of large ensemble and four semesters of Music 344R. Two semesters of 344R must be taken in consecutive fall and winter semesters.
10. Complete the following:
    Music 301, 302, 303, 304, 395.
11. Complete the following:
    Music 166, 264, 265, 364, 366, 404A,B, 466R.
12. Complete 2 hours of the following:
    Music 470R.
13. Complete the following:
    Music 469.

BM Performance: Combined Piano and Organ Emphasis (78 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

Major Requirements

1. No credit less than C– in music courses can be applied toward the music degree or fulfillment of prerequisites.
2. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
3. Present a juried recital (Music 249R) during the sophomore year. A senior recital (Music 449R) is also required.
   Recital: Enroll in 249R or 449R (0.0 credit hours) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent registration in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center scheduling office (F-315) for further information.
4. Complete the following:
   Music 191, 193, 195, 197, 192, 194, 196, 198, 291, 293, 295, 297, 292, 294, 296, 298, 235.
5. Complete the following divided between piano and organ:
   Music 250, 260R (6 hours).
6. Complete the following:
   Music 249R.
7. Complete 8 hours of the following divided between piano and organ:
   Music 360R.
8. Complete the following:
   Music 449R.
9. Complete at least 1 credit of large ensemble or Music 344R each semester for six semesters. Take either four semesters of large ensemble and two semesters of Music 344R or two semesters of large ensemble and four semesters of Music 344R. Two semesters of 344R must be taken in consecutive fall and winter semesters.
10. Complete the following:
    Music 301, 302, 303, 304, 395.
11. Complete the following:
    Music 166, 264, 265, 364, 365, 366, 466R.
12. Complete 2 hours of the following:
    Music 470R.
13. Complete the following:
    Music 469.
14. Select three courses from the following:
    Music 403A,B, 404A,B.

BM Performance: Brass Emphasis (78 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

Major Requirements

1. No credit less than C– in music courses can be applied toward the music degree or fulfillment of prerequisites.
2. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
3. Present a juried recital (Music 249R) during the sophomore year. A junior recital (Music 349R) and a senior recital (Music 449R) are also required.
   Recital: Enroll in 249R, 349R, or 449R (0.0 credit hours) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent registration in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center scheduling office (F-315) for further information.

   Note: In conjunction with the senior recital, students may qualify for the Performer's Certificate in recognition of superior performance skill and musical maturity.

4. Complete the following:
   Music 191, 193, 195, 197, 192, 194, 196, 198, 291, 293, 295, 297, 292, 294, 296, 298, 235.
5. Complete the following:
   Music 250, 260R (6 hours).
6. Complete the following:
   Music 249R.
7. Complete 16 hours of the following:
   Music 460R.
8. Complete the following:
   Music 349R, 449R.
9. Complete at least 1 credit of large ensemble within student's area of specialization each semester for eight semesters.
10. Complete the following:
    Music 301, 302, 303, 304, 395.
11. Complete the following:
    Music 368, 405.
12. Select 4 hours from the following:
    Music 331R, 341R.
13. Complete 5 hours of music electives (Music 407 is recommended). See the college advisement center.

BM Performance: Percussion Emphasis (78 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

Major Requirements

1. No credit less than C– in music courses can be applied toward the music degree or fulfillment of prerequisites.
2. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
3. Present a juried recital (Music 249R) during the sophomore year. A junior recital (Music 349R) and a senior recital (Music 449R) are also required.
   Recital: Enroll in 249R, 349R, or 449R (0.0 credit hours) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent registration in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center scheduling office (F-315) for further information.

   Note: In conjunction with the senior recital, students may qualify for the Performer's Certificate in recognition of superior performance skill and musical maturity.
4. Complete the following:
   Music 191, 193, 195, 197, 192, 194, 196, 198, 291, 293, 295, 297, 292, 294, 296, 298, 235.
5. Complete the following:
   Music 250, 260R (6 hours).
6. Complete the following:
   Music 249R.
7. Complete 16 hours of the following:
   Music 460R.
8. Complete the following:
   Music 349R, 449R.
9. Complete at least 1 credit of large ensemble within student's area of specialization each semester for eight semesters.
10. Complete the following:
    Music 301, 302, 303, 304, 395.
11. Complete the following:
    Music 374, 405.
12. Select 5 hours from the following:
    Music 330R, 331R, 345R.
13. Complete 5 hours of music electives (Music 407 is recommended). See the college advisement center.

BM Performance: String Emphasis (78 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

Major Requirements

1. No credit less than C– in music courses can be applied toward the music degree or fulfillment of prerequisites.
2. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
3. Present a juried recital (Music 249R) during the sophomore year. A junior recital (Music 349R) and a senior recital (Music 449R) are also required.
   Recital: Enroll in 249R, 349R, or 449R (0.0 credit hours) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent registration in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center scheduling office (F-315) for further information.

   Note: In conjunction with the senior recital, students may qualify for the Performer's Certificate in recognition of superior performance skill and musical maturity.
4. Complete the following:
   Music 191, 193, 195, 197, 192, 194, 196, 198, 291, 293, 295, 297, 292, 294, 296, 298, 235.
5. Complete the following:
   Music 250, 260R (6 hours).
6. Complete the following:
   Music 249R.
7. Complete 16 hours of the following:
   Music 460R.
8. Complete the following:
   Music 349R, 449R.
9. Complete 8 hours of the following:
   Music 337R (two semesters), 338R (six semesters).
10. Complete the following:
    Music 301, 302, 303, 304, 395.
11. Complete the following:
    Music 369, 406.
12. Select one course from the following:
    Music 405, 407.
13. Complete 2 hours of the following:
    Music 470R.
14. Complete the following:
    Music 469.
15. Select 4 hours from the following:
    Music 331R, 343R, 346R.

Recommended Electives
Music 462, 473.

BM Performance: Woodwind Emphasis (78 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

Major Requirements

1. No credit less than C– in music courses can be applied toward the music degree or fulfillment of prerequisites.
2. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
3. Present a juried recital (Music 249R) during the sophomore year. A junior recital (Music 349R) and a senior recital (Music 449R) are also required.
   Recital: Enroll in 249R, 349R, or 449R (0.0 credit hours) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent registration in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center scheduling office (F-315) for further information.

   Note: In conjunction with the senior recital, students may qualify for the Performer's Certificate in recognition of superior performance skill and musical maturity.
4. Complete the following:
   Music 191, 193, 195, 197, 192, 194, 196, 198, 291, 293, 295, 297, 292, 294, 296, 298, 235.
5. Complete the following:
   Music 250, 260R (6 hours).
6. Complete the following:
   Music 249R.
7. Complete 16 hours of the following:
   Music 460R.
8. Complete the following:
   Music 349R, 449R.
9. Complete at least 1 credit of large ensemble within student's area of specialization each semester for eight semesters.
10. Complete the following:
    Music 301, 302, 303, 304, 395.
11. Complete the following:
    Music 367, 405.
12. Select 4 hours from the following:
    Music 331R, 348R.
13. Complete 5 hours of music electives (Music 407 is recommended). See the college advisement center.

BM Performance: Vocal Emphasis (77 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

Major Requirements

1. No credit less than C– in music courses can be applied toward the music degree or fulfillment of prerequisites.
2. See the college advisement center for the application procedure for official acceptance into a specific degree program.
3. Successfully complete an extended jury examination at the end of the sophomore year. A senior recital (Music 449R) is also required.
   Recital: Enroll in 449R (0.0 credit hours) for the semester during which a recital is to be presented. Concurrent registration in appropriate performance instruction is required. A prerecital hearing is required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Contact the Harris Fine Arts Center scheduling office (F-315) for further information.

   Note: In conjunction with the senior recital, students may qualify for the Performer's Certificate in recognition of superior performance skill and musical maturity.
4. Complete the following:
   Music 191, 193, 195, 197, 192, 194, 196, 198, 291, 293, 295, 297, 292, 294, 296, 298, 235.
5. Complete the following:
   Music 161.
6. Complete 6 hours of the following:
   Music 260R.
7. Complete 8 hours of the following:
   Music 360R.
8. Complete the following:
   Music 449R.
9. Within student's area of specialization complete at least 1 credit of large ensemble or a major opera production each semester for eight semesters.
10. Complete the following:
    Music 301, 302, 303, 304, 395.
11. Complete the following:
    Music 162, 262, 363, 402A.
12. Complete 3 hours of the following:
    Music 472.
13. Select 8 hours from the following:
    Fren 101, 102.
    Germ 101, 102.
    Ital 101, 102.

Recommended Electives

Students intending to enter graduate school in voice should complete:
Music 402B.
Fren 101
Germ 101.
Ital 101.

Minor Music (18 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   Music 101, 135, 190.
2. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   Music 160R.
3. Complete 4 hours of performance ensemble.
4. Complete 5 hours of music electives.

Music (Music)

Undergraduate Courses

A course without the R suffix may not be repeated more than one time to improve a grade. (Repeating a course with the R suffix does not change the original grade.)

101. Introduction to Music. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Honors also.
Designed to aid nonmusic majors in developing skills needed for listening to music creatively. Emphasis on masterworks of Western music from major style periods.

105. Introduction to Music Theory. (4:3:1) F Prerequisite: basic music performance skills and ability to read simple music notation.
Introduction to music theory through critical listening, reading, and writing notated music. Analysis, creative activity, solfeggio, and guided journal writings.

111R. Basic Vocal Skills. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp
Class instruction in voice for nonmusic majors.

113. Basic Piano Skills. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp
Class instruction in piano for nonmusic majors.

114R. Piano Techniques and Literature. (2:2:0 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Music 113 or instructor's consent.
Continuation of Music 113.

115. Basic Organ Skills. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp
Class instruction in organ for nonmusic majors.

116R. Organ Techniques and Literature. (2:2:0 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: Music 115 or instructor's consent.
Continuation of Music 115.

117. Basic Guitar Skills. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su
Class instruction in guitar for nonmusic majors.

118R. Guitar Techniques and Literature. (2:2:0 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: Music 117 or instructor's consent.
Continuation of Music 117.

135. Basic Conducting. (2:2:0) F, W
Fundamental concepts and skills for nonmusic majors.

160R. Performance Study. (0.5–1:0.5:0 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: nonmusic major status. Audition may be required.
Private or semiprivate instruction. One to two hours of daily practice. Fee.

161. Voice Technique. (2:2:0) F Prerequisite: acceptance as a prospective voice major.
Class instruction in voice technique.

162. Diction 1. (1:1:0) F Prerequisite: concurrent registration in 161. Recommended: concurrent registration in Ital 101.
English, Italian, and Latin diction for singers.

166. Organ Registration. (2:2:0) F Prerequisite: concurrent private or group instruction in organ or instructor's consent.
Organ stops and their application to various performance styles.

176. Careers in Music Education. (1:1:1) W, Su
Examining preschool through college teaching career options in music; seeking a good fit between personal aspirations, attributes, skills, and job requirements.

186. Songwriting 1. (2:2:0) F, W Prerequisite: basic music reading and keyboard skills.
Songwriting for present-day music publishing industry; basic songwriting theory; form, content, and style.

188. Composition 1. (2:2:0) F Prerequisite: Music 196 or instructor's consent.
Introduction to principles of recent art music; composition and performance of student works for one to five instruments.

189. Introduction to Music Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI). (2:2:0) Prerequisite: acceptance as a music major.
Overview of computer programs in all aspects of music composition, production; familiarity with worldwide music sites on the network; demonstrations of samplers and electronic sound sources.

190. Music Fundamentals. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp or Su Prerequisite: nonmusic major status. Required for music minor.
Organizational systems of music, their notation and aural patterns.

191. Keyboard Harmony 1. (0.5:0:1) F, Sp Prerequisite: acceptance as a prospective music major; concurrent registration in Music 193, 195, and the same section of Music 197. Music 113 or 114R may be required if keyboard skills are insufficient.
Basic keyboard harmony skills and application of theoretical concepts learned in Music 195.

192. Keyboard Harmony 2. (0.5:0:1) W, Su Prerequisite: C– or higher in Music 191, 193, 195, 197; concurrent registration in Music 194, 196, and *same* section of 198.
Continuation of Music 191.

193. Dictation 1. (1:0:2) F, Sp Prerequisite: acceptance as a prospective music major; concurrent registration in Music 191, 197, and *same* section of 195.
Development of aural skills through melodic, rhythmic, and harmonic dictation.

194. Dictation 2. (1:0:2) W, Su Prerequisite: C– or higher in Music 191, 193, 195, 197; concurrent registration in Music 192, 198, and *same* section of 196.
Continuation of Music 193.

195. Music Theory 1. (3:3:0) F, Sp Prerequisite: acceptance as a prospective music major; concurrent registration in Music 191, 197, and *same* section of 193.
Writing and analysis in diatonic harmony.

196. Music Theory 2. (3:3:0) W, Su Prerequisite: C– or higher in Music 191, 193, 195, 197; concurrent registration in 192, 198, and *same* section of 194.
Writing and analysis in diatonic and chromatic harmony.

197. Sight Singing 1. (0.5:0:1) F, Sp Prerequisite: acceptance as a prospective music major; concurrent registration in Music 193, 195, and *same* section of 191.
Rhythm and pitch-reading skills using two systems of counting and melodic solfeggio singing with hand signs.

198. Sight Singing 2. (0.5:0:1) W, Su Prerequisite: C– or higher in Music 191, 193, 195, 197; concurrent registration in Music 194, 196, and *same* section of 192.
Continuation of Music 197.

200. Elements of Music. (1:1:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: nonmusic major status and concurrent ensemble enrollment.
Exploration of basic musical processes, structures, styles, and common principles of music literature through lectures, demonstrations, and analytical experiences.

201. History of Civilization: Music 1. (3:3:0) F, Sp or Su on dem. Honors also. Prerequisite: ability to read musical notation.
History of Civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance, primarily from perspective of musical literature and the arts; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

202. History of Civilization: Music 2. (3:3:0) W, Sp or Su on dem. Honors also. Prerequisite: Music 201.
History of Civilization from baroque to present, primarily from perspective of musical literature and the arts; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

203. World Music Cultures. (3:3:0) F, W
Traditional music of selected cultures of Asia, Oceania, Africa, Europe, and the Americas, including both folk and art music traditions.

204. History of Jazz and Related Styles. (3:3:0) F
Fostering an understanding and appreciation of America's unique contribution to the world's music—jazz and related styles, gospel, rhythm, and blues.

205. Introduction to Music Aesthetics. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Music 105, 3 hours of 160R (1 hour may be taken concurrently with 205).
Designed to teach nonmusic majors the stylistic and aesthetic elements of Western music, emphasizing masterworks after 1600.

210R. Topics in Music. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) On dem.
Topics vary.

228. Music Dance Theatre Seminar. (1:2:0) F Prerequisite: audition and concurrent registration in TMA 228, Dance 228.
Intensive integration of music, dance, and theatre for the performer.

235. Conducting Techniques. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: music major status, minimum C– in Music 192, 194, 196, 198.
Physical techniques and musical understanding required to conduct a performance ensemble.

249R. Sophomore Recital. (0:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Music 260R and instructor's consent.
Prerecital hearing required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Fee.

250R. First-Semester Performance Instruction. (2:1:1 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: acceptance by audition.
Private instruction and studio class for first-semester keyboard and instrumental students (including transfer students). From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

251. Audio: Basic Principles. (2:2:2) F, W Prerequisite: Phscs 167 or instructor's consent; nonmusic major status.
Basic recording studio procedures and principles. Intended as overview of the field, course is not for those seeking emphasis in sound recording technology.

256. Recording Studio 1. (2:2:2) F Prerequisite: Math 110, Phscs 167, and music major status or instructor's consent.
Basic recording theory, operational techniques, and procedures.

257. Recording Studio 2. (2:2:2) W Prerequisite: Music 256.
Continuation of Music 256.

259. Psychology of Performance. (2:2:0) F, W
Psychological skills for performers. Topics include audition preparation, conquering stage fright, preventing overuse injury, attention control, creativity. Skills applicable to any performance situation.

260R. Performance Study. (1–2:1:1 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Music 161 or 250; jury approval; completion of first-semester theory, a score of 4 or higher on the AP Theory exam, or a passing score on the School of Music theory exam.
Private instruction and studio class. From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

261. Contemporary Vocal Techniques. (2:2:1) W Prerequisite: Music 161 or instructor's consent.
Contemporary vocal styles and techniques, including pop/belt, stage, and studio singing.

262. Diction 2: German and French Diction for Singers. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: Music 162 and concurrent registration in Music 260R or 360R. Recommended: concurrent registration in Germ 101 or Fren 101.
German and French diction for singers.

264. Keyboard Foundations 1. (2:2:0) F Prerequisite: Music 192, 194, 196, 198, 260R.
Sight-reading, harmonization, improvisation, and technique at the keyboard.

265. Keyboard Foundations 2. (2:2:0) W, Sp Prerequisite: Music 264.
Continuation of Music 264.

271. Musicality in the Elementary School. (3:2:1) F Prerequisite: Music 192, 194, 196, 198.
Survey of authentic folk song and art music tonal systems and structures; their use in developing musical intuition through singing, movement, listening, and playing instruments.

272. Developing Children's Musicality, Grades K–2. (3:1:2) W Prerequisite: Music 271.
Literature-based curriculum design and planning, grades K–2. Issues of pure intonation and vocal/aural development. Microteaching in a demonstration school.

276. General Music Methods. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Music 192, 194, 196, 198, ScEd 276R.
Methods and materials for teaching general music, K–12. Cognitive development and learning styles as a basis for instructional strategies. Includes Dalcroze, Orff, and Kodaly.

284. Jazz Improvisation 1. (2:2:1) F, W Prerequisite: Music 192, 194, 196, 198, or instructor's consent.
Beginning improvisation: theory and technique.

287. Electronic Music Composition. (2:2:1)W Prerequisite: Music 195 or instructor's consent.
Introduction to composition with digital audio and MIDI synthesis and sequencing.

288. Composition 2. (2:1:2) W Prerequisite: Music 188.
Invention and exploration of sound, control of multivoiced textures and larger forms, and recent twentieth-century art music.

290. Music Theory for MDT Majors. (4:3:2) W Prerequisite: Music 113 and music dance theatre (MDT) major status.
Music theory, sight singing, aural dictation, and keyboard harmony.

291. Keyboard Harmony 3. (0.5:0:1) F, Sp Prerequisite: C– or higher in Music 192, 194, 196, 198; concurrent registration in Music 293, 295, and *same* section of 297.
Continuation of Music 192.

292. Keyboard Harmony 4. (0.5:0:1) W, Su Prerequisite: C– or higher in Music 291, 293, 295, 297; concurrent registration in Music 294, 296, and *same* section of Music 298.
Continuation of Music 291.

293. Dictation 3. (1:0:2) F, Sp Prerequisite: C– or higher in Music 192, 194, 196, 198; concurrent registration in Music 291, 297, and *same* section of 295.
Continuation of Music 194.

294. Dictation 4. (1:0:2) W, Su Prerequisite: C– or higher in Music 291, 293, 295, 297; concurrent registration in Music 292, 298, and *same* section of Music 296.
Continuation of Music 293.

295. Music Theory 3. (3:3:0) F, Sp Prerequisite: C– or higher in Music 192, 194, 196, 198; concurrent registration in Music 291, 297, and *same* section of 293.
Extended chromatic techniques and introduction to twentieth-century concepts.

296. Music Theory 4. (3:3:0) W, Su Prerequisite: C– or higher in Music 291, 293, 295, 297; concurrent registration in Music 292, 298, and *same* section of 294.
Set theory, serialism, and late twentieth-century concepts.

297. Sight Singing 3. (0.5:0:1) F, Sp Prerequisite: C– or higher in Music 192, 194, 196, 198; concurrent registration in Music 293, 295, and *same* section of 291.
Continuation of Music 198.

298. Sight Singing 4. (0.5:0:1) W, Su Prerequisite: C– or higher in Music 291, 293, 295, 297; concurrent registration in Music 294, 296, and *same* section of 292.
Continuation of Music 297.

300. History of Music Dance Theatre. (1:3:0) F even yr. Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Dance 300, TMA 300.
Development of Western theatre tradition from antiquity to present, emphasizing union of music, dance, and theatre.

301. Survey of Music Literature 1. (2:2:0) F, Sp Prerequisite: Music 192, 194, 196, 198; or instructor's consent.
Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from antiquity through the Renaissance.

302. Survey of Music Literature 2. (2:2:0) W, Su Prerequisite: Music 192, 194, 196, 198, 301; or instructor's consent.
Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the baroque through the early classic.

303. Survey of Music Literature 3. (2:2:0) F, Sp Prerequisite: Music 292, 294, 296, 298, 302, 395; or instructor's consent.
Survey of music genres, forms, styles, and performance practices from the high classic through the romantic.

304. Survey of Music Literature 4. (2:2:0) W, Su on dem. Prerequisite: Music 292, 294, 296, 298, 303, 395; or instructor's consent.
Survey of musical genres, forms, styles, and performance practices of the twentieth century.

311R. University Chorale. (1:0:3 ea.) F, W, Sp No audition required.

312R. Men's Chorus. (1:0:5 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: audition and director's consent.

313R. Women's Chorus. (1:0:5 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: audition and director's consent.

314R. Concert Choir. (1:0:5 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: audition and director's consent.

315R. University Singers. (1:0:5 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: audition and director's consent.

318R. Music Theatre Ensemble. (1:0:5 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: audition and director's consent.
Auditioned chorus or orchestra for opera or music dance theatre productions.

319R. Music Theatre Performance. (1–3:0:0 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: audition and director's consent.
Participation as soloists, coaches, or directors in music dance theatre or opera performances.

321R. University String Orchestra. (1:2:0) F, W
No audition required. Does not satisfy large ensemble requirement for majors.

322R. University Band. (1:2:0) W
No audition required. Does not satisfy large ensemble requirement for majors.

323R. Marching Band. (1:0:6 ea.) F Prerequisite: audition or director's consent.

324R. Cougar Band. (1:0:6 ea.) W Prerequisite: audition or director's consent.

325R. Symphonic Band. (1:0:4 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: audition.

326R. Wind Symphony. (1:0:4 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: audition.

329R. Folk Ensemble. (1:0:4 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: director's consent.
Traditional bluegrass ensemble. Performs with BYU International Folk Dancers.

330R. Steel Band. (1:0:2 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: director's consent.

331R. Jazz Combos. (1:1:2 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: audition.

332R. Show Band. (1:0:6 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: audition.
Contemporary and traditional show music (Young Ambassadors) and ethnic music (Lamanite Generation).

333R. Jazz Ensemble. (1:0:4 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: audition.
Includes Jazz Ensemble (big band), Jazz Lab Band (entry-level big band), and Vocal Jazz Ensembles.

334R. Synthesis. (1:0:4 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: audition.

337R. Symphony Orchestra. (1:0:4 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: audition.

338R. Philharmonic Orchestra. (1:0:4 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: audition.

339R. Chamber Orchestra. (1:0:2 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: audition.

341R. Brass Chamber Music. (1:1:2 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: director's consent.

342R. Early Music Ensemble. (1:1:3 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: director's consent.

343R. Guitar Ensemble. (1:1:2 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: director's consent.

344R. Keyboard in Ensemble. (1:0:3 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Music 260R and instructor's consent.
Accompanying and ensemble performance.

345R. Percussion Ensemble. (1:0:2 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: director's consent.

346R. String Chamber Music. (1:1:2 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: director's consent.

347R. Vocal Point. (1:5:0 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: director's consent.

348R. Woodwind Chamber Music. (1:1:2 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: director's consent.

349R. Junior Recital. (0:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Music 360R or 460R and instructor's consent. Prerecital hearing required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Fee.

355R. Recording Workshop. (1:1:5 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: Music 251 or 257.
Studio projects in multitrack recording for records, broadcast, film, and television.

356. Audio Electronics 1. (2:2:2) F Prerequisite: Math 110, Phscs 167.
Basic DC and AC circuits, emphasizing applications in audio.

357. Audio Electronics 2. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: Music 356.
Continuation of Music 356.

360R. Performance Study. (1–2:1:1 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: music major status; jury approval.
Private instruction and studio class. From one to four hours of daily practice. Fee.

363. Vocal Pedagogy. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: junior standing as vocal performance or choral music education major or instructor's consent.
Introduction to physiology, acoustics, and pedagogy of singing.

364. Keyboard Pedagogy. (2:2:1) F Prerequisite: keyboard performance major status or instructor's consent.
Basic pedagogical principles as applied to keyboard instruments.

365. Piano Pedagogy. (2:2:1) W Prerequisite: Music 364.
Preparation for supervised private or group teaching.

366. Organ Pedagogy. (2:2:1) W even yr. Prerequisite: Music 364.
Preparation for supervised private or group teaching.

367. Woodwind Pedagogy. (2:2:1) F odd yr. Prerequisite: instrumental performance major status or instructor's consent.

368. Brass Pedagogy. (2:2:1) F even yr. Prerequisite: instrumental performance major status or instructor's consent.

369. String Pedagogy. (2:2:1) F even yr. Prerequisite: instrumental performance major status or instructor's consent.

370. Guitar Pedagogy. (2:2:1) F odd yr. Prerequisite: instrumental performance major status or instructor's consent.

371. Developing Children's Musicality, Grades 3–5. (3:1:2) F Prerequisite: Music 271, 272.
Continuation of Music 272 for grades 3–5, emphasizing the relationship of classroom literature to choral experience and instrumental musicianship. Microteaching in a demonstration school.

372A. Woodwind Workshop. (1:0:3) F Prerequisite: Music 192, 194, 196, 198.
Learning to play and to teach woodwind instruments; survey of instructional materials; emphasis on clarinet and saxophone.

372B. Woodwind Workshop. (1:0:3) W Prerequisite: Music 192, 194, 196, 198.
Continuation of Music 372A. Emphasis on flute, oboe, and bassoon.

373A. Brass Workshop. (1:0:3) F Prerequisite: Music 192, 194, 196, 198.
Learning to play and to teach brass instruments; survey of instructional materials; emphasis on trumpet and French horn.

373B. Brass Workshop. (1:0:3) W Prerequisite: Music 192, 194, 196, 198.
Continuation of Music 373A. Emphasis on trombone, baritone, and tuba.

374. Percussion Workshop. (1:0:3) F (instrumental education), W (choral education) Prerequisite: Music 192, 194, 196, 198.
Learning to play and teach percussion instruments; survey of instructional materials.

375A. String Workshop. (1:0:3) F Prerequisite: Music 192, 194, 196, 198.
Learning to play and teach string instruments; survey of instructional materials, emphasis on violin and viola.

375B. String Workshop. (1:0:3) W Prerequisite: Music 192, 194, 196, 198.
Continuation of Music 375A. Emphasis on cello and bass.

376A. Choral Practicum. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Music 235, 276, 292, 294, 296, 298.
Applied conducting technique, score analysis and preparation, evaluating solo performance, and application of learning theory.

376B. Choral Practicum. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Music 235, 271, 276, 292, 294, 296, 298.
Curriculum design, score analysis and preparation, choral arranging, rehearsal techniques, survey of literature, and vocal pedagogy, including treble voice and changing voice; computers and computer-assisted instruction.

377A. Instrumental Practicum. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Music 235, 276, 292, 294, 296, 298.
Applied conducting technique, score analysis and preparation, evaluating solo performance, and applying learning theory.

377B. Instrumental Practicum. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Music 235, 271, 276, 292, 296, 298.
Curriculum design, evaluating ensemble performance, advanced rehearsal techniques, administering secondary instrumental music programs; computers and computer-assisted instruction.

378. Music for the Elementary Classroom Teacher. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su
Establishing a classroom environment for musical development; emphasis on appropriate songs, activities, resources, and teaching strategies.

384. Jazz Improvisation 2. (2:2:1) W Prerequisite: Music 284 or director's consent.
Intermediate improvisation: theory and technique.

386R. Songwriting 2. (2:2:0 ea.) W Prerequisite: Music 186.
Projects in advanced songwriting.

387R. Composition 3. (2:1:2 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: Music 288, 292, 294, 296, 298, and junior-level screening.
Composition lessons and seminars in principles of late twentieth-century music.

389. Projects in Music for Media. (2:2:0) F odd yr. Prerequisite: music major status, Music 186; 287 or 355R; instructor's consent.
Introductory projects in scoring for broadcast media, publication, and studio recording.

391. Jazz Keyboard. (2:2:0) Sp Prerequisite: Music 292, 294, 296, 298, or instructor's consent.
Lead sheets, chord voicings, and other aspects of jazz performance practice.

395. Form and Analysis. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Music 292, 294, 296, 298.
Analytical study of forms from the common-practice period, including baroque contrapuntal structures and instrumental forms, classical sonata cycle, and romantic part forms.

399R. Cooperative Education. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Internship or externship in creative, performing, producing, or teaching applications of major course work.

402A. Vocal Literature. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: acceptance into 360R or instructor's consent.
Survey of literature with emphasis on art song. Research in area of concentration.

402B. Vocal Literature. (2:2:0) Sp Prerequisite: acceptance into 360R or instructor's consent.
Continuation of Music 402A with emphasis on opera and oratorio.

403A. Piano Literature. (2:2:0) F Prerequisite: acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
Survey of literature. Research in area of concentration.

403B. Piano Literature. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
Continuation of Music 403A.

404A. Organ Literature. (2:2:0) F odd yr. Prerequisite: acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
Survey of literature. Research in area of concentration.

404B. Organ Literature. (2:2:0) W even yr. Prerequisite: acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
Continuation of Music 404A.

405. Chamber Music Literature. (2:2:0) W odd yr. Prerequisite: acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
Survey of literature, including research in field of concentration.

406. String Literature. (2:2:0) F odd yr. Prerequisite: acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
Survey of literature, including research in field of concentration.

407. Symphonic Literature. (2:2:0) W even yr. Prerequisite: acceptance into 360R or 460R, or instructor's consent.
Survey of literature, including research in field of concentration.

410R. Advanced Topics in Music. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: Music 292, 294, 296, 298, or instructor's consent.
Topics vary.

426R. Music Dance Theatre: Senior Performance Project. (1:0:3 ea.) W Prerequisite: TMA 361; consent of MDT advisory committee.
Final senior performance project integrating music, dance, and theatre in a single performance.

441R. New Music Ensemble. (1:0:1 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

449R. Senior Recital. (0:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Music 360R, 387R, or 460R, and instructor's consent. Prerecital hearing required at least three weeks before juried recitals. Fee.

460R. Performance Study. (2–4:1:1 ea.) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: major in performance and pedagogy; jury approval.
Advanced private instruction and studio class. From three to five hours of daily practice. Fee.

462R. Orchestral Repertoire. (1:1:0 ea.) F Prerequisite: concurrent registration in Music 460R or instructor's consent.
Performance instruction in standard orchestral repertoire.

466R. Organ Practicum. (2:2:1 ea.) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Music 166 or organ performance and pedagogy major status.

468. Jazz Pedagogy. (1:2:0) On dem.
Organizing and teaching jazz in the secondary school. Designed for the music educator.

469. Theory and Methods of Studio Teaching. (1:1:0) W Prerequisite: completion of required pedagogy class; instructor's consent.
Applying learning theory and secondary education methods to studio teaching.

470R. Studio Teaching Practicum. (1:1:1 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: completion of required pedagogy class or instructor's consent.
Applying pedagogical principles to teaching.

471. Practicum in Children's Musicality. (3:1:2) W Prerequisite: Music 271, 272, 371.
Pedagogy for grades 6 and beyond. Children's choir development, including arranging and adapting vocal and instrumental music. Extended pre–student teaching in a demonstration school.

472. Supervised Teaching in Voice. (3:1:4) F Prerequisite: Music 363.
Supervised teaching in studio voice: (1) intern teaching in class voice, Music 161, coupled with (2) supervised studio teaching of voice, combined with a weekly seminar concerning business, procedural, and ethical matters relating to teaching voice as a career. Serves as practicum to Music 363.

473. Suzuki Methods. (1:1:0) F Prerequisite: completion of required pedagogy class or instructor's consent.
Applying the principles of Shinichi Suzuki to teaching. Emphasis on violin.

481. Orchestration. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Music 292, 294, 296, 298.
Scoring for standard orchestral instruments.

482. Choral Arranging. (2:2:0) F even yr., W odd yr. Prerequisite: Music 292, 294, 296, 298.
Study of published choral arrangements, as well as techniques for adapting and arranging for choirs.

483. Counterpoint. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Music 292, 294, 296, 298.
Eighteenth-century contrapuntal styles and techniques, emphasizing those of J. S. Bach.

485. Jazz Arranging and Composition. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Music 295.
Developing concepts and skills related to the orchestration, arranging, and composition of jazz and related contemporary styles of music.

489. Film Scoring. (2:2:0) F even yr. Prerequisite: Music 389; instructor's consent.
Introduction to techniques and technology of film scoring.

494R. Independent Readings. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: advising professor's consent as certified by completing a contract obtained from academic studies secretary in E-579 HFAC.

498. Senior Thesis. (3:Arr.:Arr.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: senior status and faculty advisor's endorsement.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:0:0 ea.) F, W

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

500. Musical Research Techniques. (2:2:0) F, W Prerequisite: graduate status.

501. Music Education Research Techniques. (2:2:0) Su Prerequisite: graduate status.

503. Aesthetics. (3:3:0) On dem.
Fundamental questions of aesthetic theory from classical antiquity to the present, emphasizing musical aesthetics.

505R. Applied Literature. (2:2:1 ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: minimum of one enrollment in Music 402–407.
Continuation of Music 402–407.

506. Choral Literature 1. (2:2:0) F odd yr., W even yr. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Concentrated analytical study and application of choral literature through Beethoven.

507. Choral Literature 2. (2:2:0) W even yr. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Concentrated analytical study and application of choral literature from post-Beethoven to the present.

508. Orchestra Literature 1. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Concentrated analytical study and application of orchestral literature of the baroque and classical eras.

509. Orchestra Literature 2. (2:2:0) On dem. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Concentrated analytical study and application of orchestral literature of the romantic era and the 20th century.

510. Band Literature. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Concentrated study of band literature through analysis and conducting.

532R. Score Preparation and Conducting: Instrumental. (2:2:0 ea.) F

533R. Score Preparation and Conducting: Choral. (2:2:0 ea.) F even yr.

534R. Score Preparation and Direction: Jazz. (2:2:0 ea.) Su odd yr.

560R. Performance Instruction. (1–2:1:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Prerequisite: graduate music student status.
Performance instruction for students not specializing in performance, and for performance students wishing to study secondary instruments. Fee.

570. Music for Elementary School Teachers. (2:2:0) On dem.
Prerequisite: Music 371, 471, or elementary music teaching experience.
Experiences in teaching various music activities in the elementary school.

571. Elementary Education Music Pedagogy. (2:2:0) On dem.
Prerequisite: Music 371 and equivalent of elementary education teaching minor in music.
Orff, Dalcroze, and Kodaly materials and techniques.

575R. Summer Music Workshops and Clinics. (1–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.)

576. Fundamentals and Techniques of the Marching Band. (2:2:2) On dem. Prerequisite: Music 294, 296. For music education majors only.
Planning, charting, and scoring for marching bands.

581. Twentieth-Century Orchestration. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Music 481.
New techniques for standard and new instruments; analysis and listening.

583. Sixteenth-Century Counterpoint. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Music 483.
Strict modal counterpoint in sixteenth- century style (Palestrina); includes species, text setting, and motet.

591. Advanced Topics in Keyboard Harmony. (2:2:0) F
Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Topics vary.

595. Score Analysis. (2:2:0) F, Su
Analysis of representative choral and instrumental works from the Renaissance through contemporary styles.

596. Schenker Analysis. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Music 395 or equivalent.
Schenker's system of tonal analysis.

599R. Cooperative Education. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) On dem.
Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Internship in creative, performing, producing, or teaching applications of major course work.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Music Faculty

Professors

Bachelder, Daniel F. (1975) BM, U. of Montana, 1961; MM, U. of Idaho, 1965; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1976.
Blackinton, David P. (1980) BM, MM, U. of Michigan, 1964, 1966; DMA, Catholic U. of America, 1975.
Bush, Douglas E. (1978) BA, MM, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1974; PhD, U. of Texas, 1982.
Dalton, David (1963) BM, MM, U. of Rochester, 1959, 1961; DM, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1970.
Dayley, K. Newell (1970) BS, Brigham Young U., 1964; MM, U. of Southern California, 1966; DA, U. of Northern Colorado, 1986.
Durham, Thomas L. (1978) BM, MM, U. of Utah, 1974, 1975; PhD, U. of Iowa, 1978.
Gruppman, Igor (1996) Diploma, Moscow Conservatory, 1979.
Hicks, Michael D. (1985) BM, Brigham Young U., 1980; MM, DMA, U. of Illinois, 1981, 1984.
Hopkin, J. Arden (1990) BM, Brigham Young U., 1971; MM, North Texas State U., 1974; DMA, U. of Rochester, 1978.
Pollei, Paul C. (1963) BM, U. of Utah, 1961; MM, U. of Rochester, 1962; PhD, Florida State U., 1975.
Powley, E. Harrison (1969) BM, MA, PhD, U. of Rochester, 1965, 1968, 1974.
Pratt, Rosalie Rebollo (1979) BM, Manhattanville Coll., 1954; MM, Rosary Coll., 1955; EdD, Columbia U., 1976.
Randall, David M. (1970) BS, Brigham Young U., 1965; MM, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1967; DMA, U. of Iowa, 1970.
Robison, Clayne W. (1973) BA, Brigham Young U., 1962; JD, Harvard U., 1965; BA, Brigham Young U., 1970; MM, DMA, U. of Washington, 1971, 1973.
Sargent, David H. (1976) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1968; MM, DMA, U. of Illinois, 1969, 1975.
Staheli, Ronald J (1978) BA, Brigham Young U., 1972; MM, DMA, U. of Southern California, 1973, 1977.
Stuart-Bachelder, Lila R. (1986) BM, U. of Utah, 1964; MM, DMA, Indiana U., 1968, 1993.
Vincent, Lawrence P. (1997) BA, Brigham Young U., 1973; MM, Northern Arizona U., 1977; DMA, U. of Michigan, 1981.
Wilberg, Mack J. (1984) BM, Brigham Young U., 1979; MM, DMA, U. of Southern California, 1981, 1985.

Associate Professors

Anderson, Richard Paul (1972) BA, Arizona State U., 1968; MM, Northwestern U., 1970; DMA, U. of Colorado, 1986.
Boothe, Randall W. (1982) BA, Brigham Young U.—Hawaii, 1975; MM, Brigham Young U., 1979.
Cook, R. Don (1991) BM, MM, Brigham Young U., 1980, 1982; DMA, U. of Kansas, 1987.
Giovannetti, Geralyn (1990) BM, MM, U. of Western Ontario, 1978, 1980; DMA, U. of Michigan, 1990.
Holman, William M. (1997) BME, Florida State U., 1967; MM, Catholic U. of America, 1970; MFA, DMA, U. of Iowa, 1972, 1977.
Jessop, Scott Gordon (1980) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1961, 1964; EdS, U. of Utah, 1973; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1980.
Johnson, Steven P. (1987) BA, MA, California State U., Fullerton; 1976, 1979; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1989.
Jones, Stephen M. (1991) BM, Brigham Young U., 1983; MM, DMA, U. of Cincinnati, 1986, 1989.
Kenney, Susan Hobson (1977) BS, U. of Utah, 1966; MA, Brigham Young U., 1978.
Lowe, Laurence (1993) BM, San Francisco Conservatory, 1980; MM, U. of Rochester, 1981.
Peery, Irene W. (1994) BA, MS, Juilliard School of Music, 1969, 1972; DMA, Peabody Conservatory of Johns Hopkins U., 1987.
Peterson, Donald L. (1986) BM, MA, Brigham Young U., 1976, 1983; DMA, Arizona State U., 1986.
Shumway, Jeffrey L. (1985) BM, Brigham Young U., 1976; MM, Juilliard School of Music, 1977; DM, Indiana U., 1982.
Smith, C. Raymond (1982) BM, Brigham Young U., 1975; MM, DM, Indiana U., 1976, 1982.

Assistant Professors

Brough, Ronald P. (1984) BM, MM, North Texas State U., 1981, 1983; DA, U. of Northern Colorado, 1997.
Harker, Brian C. (1997) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1990, 1994; MPhil, PhD, Columbia U., 1995, 1997.
Jaccard, Jerry (1993) BME, U. of Arizona, 1965; MME, Holy Names Coll., 1976; EdD, U. of Massachusetts, 1995.
Lindeman, Stephan D. (1996) BM, Indiana U., 1977; MA, Queens Coll., City U. of New York, 1984; PhD, Rutgers U., 1995.
Smith, Christian B. (1997) BM, MM, Brigham Young U., 1991, 1993.

Instructors

Boren, Murray E. (1994) BM, MA, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1977.
Broomhead, Paul G. (1995) BM, MM, Brigham Young U., 1989, 1990.
Call, R. Steven (1991) BM, MM, Utah State U., 1971, 1975.

Emeriti

Arbizu, Ray L. (1970) BA, MA, Arizona State U., 1952, 1955.
Belnap, Parley L. (1965) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1950, 1956; DMA, U. of Colorado, 1975.
Bradshaw, Merrill K. (1957) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1954, 1955; MM, DMA, U. of Illinois, 1956, 1962.
Curtis, Brandt B. (1955) BA, Brigham Young U., 1953; MM, DMA, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1955, 1978.
Downs, Robert H. (1966) BM, MM, U. of Missouri, Kansas City, 1957, 1957.
Earl, Don L. (1946) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1940, 1947; PhD, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1952.
Gibbons, Rendol L. (1964) BA, MA, Arizona State Coll., 1947, 1954; PhD, U. of Colorado, 1969.
Goodman, A. Harold (1960) BA, U. of Arizona, 1947; MM, EdD, U. of Southern California, 1951, 1960.
Harris, H. Jarolde (1970) BM, Bethany Coll., 1950; MM, Northwestern U., 1954.
Hatton, Gaylen A. (1979) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1951, 1954; PhD, U. of Utah, 1964.
Kalt, Percy G. (1966) BS, U. of Utah, 1957; Dipl, Staatliche Hochschule für Musik, Stuttgart, Germany, 1963; MM, U. of Utah, 1968; DMA, U. of Michigan, 1973.
Laycock, Harold R. (1949) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1937, 1947; DMA, U. of Southern California, 1961.
Laycock, Ralph G. (1953) BA, Brigham Young U., 1941; MS, Juilliard School of Music, 1948; DMA, U. of Southern California, 1970.
Mason, James A. (1957) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1957; EdD, Arizona State U., 1970.
Nibley, Reid N. (1969) BFA, MA, U. of Utah, 1950, 1953; DMA, U. of Michigan, 1964.
Nordgren, Quentin R. (1955) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1942, 1950; PhD, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1955.
Ripplinger, Donald H. (1975) BA, Brigham Young U., 1954; MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1965, 1968.
Smith, Robert Baily (1967) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1967.
Stubbs, Darrel W. (1962) BM, U. of Rochester, 1949; MM, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1952; DMA, U. of Southern California, 1966.
Terry, Elvis B. (1957).
Williams, Glenn R. (1965) BA, Brigham Young U., 1953; MM, DMA, U. of Rochester, 1954, 1961.
Woodward, Ralph (1955) BS, U. of Idaho, 1940; MM, Cincinnati Conservatory, 1948; DMA, U. of Illinois, 1964.

Native American Studies

See History.

Near Eastern Languages

See Asian and Near Eastern Languages.

Near Eastern Studies

See Kennedy Center for International Studies, David M.

North American Indian Languages

See Linguistics.

Norwegian

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Nursing

Sandra Rogers, Dean
592 SWKT, PO Box 25532, (801) 378-7204

Lynn Callister, Associate Dean
591 SWKT, PO Box 25532, (801) 378-5375

Elaine Sorensen Marshall, Associate Dean
444 SWKT, PO Box 25427, (801) 378-2747

Mary Williams, Associate Dean
594 SWKT, PO Box 25532, (801) 378-5626

College of Nursing Advisement Center
551 SWKT, PO Box 25531, (801) 378-4173

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Department of Nursing carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

Brigham Young University's baccalaureate nursing program prepares general practitioners with the knowledge, skills, leadership abilities, and values commensurate with professional nursing practice. Nursing education builds on the sciences, humanities, and religious studies to develop the strong theoretical and practical base necessary to understand and meet the needs of people in various health care settings.

Learning comes alive as students move from the classroom through the clinical simulation laboratory to actual patient care. Students assess, diagnose, and treat actual and potential problems in an effort to promote, restore, or maintain health. Baccalaureate graduates develop their ability to be sensitive to the welfare of others, communicate effectively, evaluate research findings, think critically, solve problems, and utilize appropriate technology as they provide quality nursing care to people of all ages.

Career Opportunities

There are career positions in various health care settings.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under the following undergraduate degree program.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Nursing

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Nursing

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Undergraduate Admittance Requirements

The following criteria have been established for acceptance and progression in the baccalaureate program.

1. Be fully matriculated at BYU.
2. Have completed the required prerequisite courses with a C grade or higher and an overall grade point average of not less than 3.0 in prerequisite courses. Acceptance into the nursing major is competitive and restricted to a limited number of openings each year. Not all students who meet the minimum GPA and course completion requirements are guaranteed acceptance into the program.

Students are evaluated on a variety of criteria, including, but not limited to academic performance and progression, written communication skills, community, school, and church service, and recommendations from employers and/or educators.

3. Complete the following before beginning nursing courses:
   Engl 115.
   Chem 152, 281.
   FamSc 210 or Psych 220.
   FSN 100.
   Mcbio 221, 222.
   Nurs 180.
   Stat 221.
   Zool 260, 261, 361.

   Note: Students may apply to the baccalaureate program during the semester they are completing prerequisite courses.
4. Students with English as a second language: Take the English Proficiency Examination offered by the Linguistics Department plus all ESL service courses as recommended by the examination outcome. Successfully complete Nurs 102. The college requires a TOEFL score of at least 580.
5. Maintain a C grade or above in all nursing courses, including prerequisite and supporting courses. A C– is not considered a passing grade in the nursing program.

Note 1: Notify the college advisement center before dropping or interrupting course work.

Note 2: Transfer credit older than seven years will not apply to the major without prior approval of the associate dean of student affairs.

Note 3: Students may repeat only one prerequisite course one time.

Applicants who meet the above criteria are eligible for consideration for acceptance. Students who have been admitted to BYU must apply for the nursing program through the college advisement center (551 SWKT). Students are accepted fall and winter semesters. Application deadlines and requirements are available from the advisement center. Nursing students are required to have a physical examination and submit immunization records to the Nursing Advisement Center. CPR and first aid certification are also required.

Computers are used in all health care facilities; therefore students are expected to be computer literate when accepted into the College of Nursing.

Note: Associate degree registered nurses and licensed practical nurses who wish to enter the baccalaureate program should contact the College of Nursing Advisement Center for specific acceptance information.

General Information

The National League for Nursing Accreditation Commission is a resource for further information. Contact the NLNAC, 350 Hudson Street, New York, NY 10014, (212) 989-9393.

Clinical Assignments and Transportation.

Educational experiences are located in Utah, Salt Lake, and Davis counties. Theory courses are taught in Provo. Clinical experiences are in agencies throughout the Wasatch Front. Visits to agencies and client homes are also required. To achieve the best possible clinical education, students will need to travel at different times during their course work. Access to a car is highly recommended. Students are responsible for their own transportation. Transcultural clinical experiences are located in rural Utah. International clinical experiences are available in Guatemala and Jordan.

BS Nursing (94 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. A C grade or above must be maintained in all required courses.
2. Be accepted into the program.
3. Complete the following:
   Chem 152.
   Zool 260.
   FSN 100.

   Note: Chem 101 is needed prior to Chem 152 if you have had no previous chemistry experience.
4. Complete the following:
   Nurs 180.
   Zool 261.
   Chem 281.
   Stat 221.
5. Select one course from the following:
   FamSc 210, Psych 220.
6. Complete the following:
   Zool 361.
   Mcbio 221, 222.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Soc 112, 323.
   Anthr 101.
8. Complete the following:
   Nurs 290, 292.
9. Complete the following:
   Nurs 310, 312.
   RelC 491, 492 (nursing sections)
10. Complete the following:
    Nurs 314, 380.
    Psych 342.
11. Complete the following:
    Nurs 320, 382, 384.
12. Complete two enrollments of the following:
    Nurs 450R.
13. Complete the following:
    Nurs 490A, B.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Nursing (Nurs)

Undergraduate Courses

102. Nursing and Medical Terminology. (2:2:0) Independent Study only.
Nursing and medical terminology for prenursing and beginning nursing students or those interested in health occupations.

180. Preview of Nursing. (1:1:0)
Defines and explores nursing as a potential career opportunity.

288. Family Health Management. (2:2:0)
Promotion and maintenance of health over the life span, emphasizing current issues affecting family health.

290. Nursing Core 1. (6:3.5:7.5) Prerequisite: admission to nursing major.
Application of nursing process in health assessment/promotion of individuals and families across the life span in community settings.

292. Nursing Core 2. (5:2:9) Prerequisite: Nurs 290.
Continuation of Nursing Core 1 with added emphasis on skill development and application of nursing process to hospitalized clients.

310. Nursing Core 3. (5:2:9) Prerequisite: Nurs 292.
Increasing competency in applying nursing process to individuals and families in varied health care settings.

312. Nursing Core 4. (5:2:9) Prerequisite: Nurs 310.
Increasing competency in applying the nursing process to individuals and families in varied health care settings.

314. Nursing Core 5. (5:2:9) Prerequisite: Nurs 310.
Increasing competency in applying the nursing process to individuals and families in varied health care settings.

320. Nursing Research. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: an Advanced Writing course, Nurs 290, 292, 310, 312, 314; Stat 221 or comparable statistics course.
Analysis and critique of research in nursing practice.

370. Professional Nursing and Health Policy. (3:2:3) Prerequisite: admission to nursing program.
Roles of professional nurses in organizations, politics, and shaping health policy. Open to RNs only.

380. Nursing of Children in Crisis. (4:2:6) Prerequisite: Nurs 314.
Nursing interventions for children and their families.

382. Nursing Adults in Crisis. (4:2:6) Prerequisite: Nursing 314.
Nursing interventions for individuals and families in crisis.

384. Psychiatric Nursing. (4:3:7.5) Prerequisite: Nurs 314, Psych 342.
Nursing care for clients with complex psychiatric disorders.

390R. Independent Study in the Practice of Nursing. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

420. Community Nursing. (4:1:3) Prerequisite: admission to nursing major.
Principles and practices of public health nursing for RNs.

450R. Special Topics in Clinical Nursing. (4:4:12 ea.) On blk. Prerequisite: Nurs 314.
Experience in clinical nursing specialties.

490A,B. Capstone. (4:1:9 ea.) Prerequisite: Nurs 320, 380, 382, 384, 450R (taken twice).
Application of management principles in collaborative nursing care of individuals and families in multiple health care settings.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–3:0:0 ea.)
Honors thesis preparation.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

510R. Special Programs and Projects. (1–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

551. Health Assessment. (3:3:0)
Development of physical assessment techniques.

555. Pharmacology in Advanced Practice. (3:3:0)
Principles of pharmacology and drug therapy for nurse practitioners.

580R. Nursing Information Systems. (3:3:0). Prerequisite: admission to nursing major.
Use of computer technology in nursing research, client care, and education.

590R. Independent Study. (1–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Individualized study.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Nursing Faculty

Professor
Fosbinder, Donna (1991) BS, San Diego State U., 1983; MS, U. of San Diego, 1986; PhD, San Diego State U., 1990.

Clinical Professor
Mangum, Sandra (1983) BS, BA., Brigham Young U., 1958, 1959; MN, U. of Washington, 1962.

Associate Professors
Baldwin, Joan (1994) BS, MA, Hampton U., 1973, 1975; MSN, U. of San Diego, 1978; DNS, Catholic U., 1992.
Callister, Lynn Clark (1988) BS, Brigham Young U., 1964; MN, Wichita State U., 1988; PhD, U. of Utah, 1993.
Hammond, Kathleen B. (1964) BS, Brigham Young U., 1960; MS, U. of Utah, 1964.
Lyons, Marilyn (1966) BS, U. of Utah, 1960; MA, New York U., 1966; DNSc, Rush U., 1983.
Mandleco, Barbara L. (1977) BSN, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1967; MN, U. of Florida, 1968; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1991.
Marshall, Elaine S. Sorensen, Associate Dean (1987) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1972, 1979, 1988.
Rogers, Sandra, Dean (1980) BS, Brigham Young U., 1974; MS, U. of Arizona, 1980; DNSc, U. of California, San Francisco, 1989.
Schwartz, Rosanne (1981) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1981; PhD, U. of Florida, 1991.
Tillery, Chloe Ann (1967) BS, Brigham Young U., 1958; MEd, Columbia U., 1968.
Williams, Mary, Associate Dean (1978) BS, Brigham Young U., 1971; MS, U. of Utah, 1979; PhD, U. of Arizona, 1991.

Associate Clinical Professors
Anderson, Vickie Lane (1980) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1983.
Memmott, Rae Jeanne (1992) BS, Brigham Young U., 1965; MS, U. of Colorado, 1967.
Riddle, Lana B. (1971) BS, Brigham Young U., 1969; MS, U. of Utah, 1971; PhD, Texas Woman's U., 1984.
Warnick, Myrna (1994) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1965, 1973.

Assistant Professors
Campbell, Lora Jean (1972) BS, Brigham Young U., 1969; MS, U. of Utah, 1972.
Conger, Cynthia O'Neill (1986) BS, San Jose State U., 1970; MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1987, 1995.
Drake, Richard (1970) BS, Idaho State U., 1965; MS, Wayne State U., 1966; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1992.
Measom, Gary (1991) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1980; PhD, U. of New Mexico, 1992.
Rushton, Patricia (1995) BS, U. of Utah, 1971; MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1989.
Tiedeman, Mary E. (1996) BS, Michigan State U., 1964; MN, U. of Florida, 1975; PhD, Wayne State U., 1988.
Wiker, Kathleen M. (1972) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1965, 1969.

Assistant Clinical Professors
Beckstrand, Renea L. (1987) AS, Ricks Coll., 1979; AS, BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1981, 1983, 1987.
Berry, Judith (1997) BS, Brigham Young U., 1969; MS, Catholic U. of America, 1984.
Clayton, Jackie (1997) AS, St. John's Hospital, 1980; BS, U. of Evansville, 1982; MS, Brigham Young U., 1985.
Hobbins-Garbett, Debra (1995) BS, California State U., Long Beach, 1986; MS, California State U., Dominguez Hills, 1994.
Hunter, Tana (1991) BS, Brigham Young U., 1974; MS, U. of Utah, 1982.

Mills, Debra Ann (1996) AS, Ricks Coll., 1974; BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1982, 1989.

Instructors

Abegglen, JoAnn (1985) BS, Brigham Young U., 1967; MS, U. of Utah, 1973; MS, Brigham Young U., 1988.
Bond, Elaine (1991) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1989, 1990.
Coverston, Catherine R. (1989) AS, Brigham Young U., 1969; BSN, U. of the State of New York, Albany, 1987; MSN, Medical Coll. of Georgia, 1989.
Johnson, Mary Jayne (1996) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1982, 1996.
Keller, David C. (1993) AS, BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1980, 1993.

Clinical Instructors

Ellinger, Patricia R. (1996) BS, Brigham Young U., 1970; MS, U. of Utah, 1991.
Johnsen, Vickie (1989) AS, Weber State Coll., 1968; BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1987.
Molinari, Deana (1997) AS, Providence Coll., 1966; BS, Walla Walla Coll., 1985; MS, Oregon Health Sciences U., 1996.
Stoneman, Eva (1997) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1959, 1997.
Sutherland, Carolyn (1997) BA, BS, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1990; MS, U. of Utah, 1996.

Emeriti

Alley, Laura Ellen (1972) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1966, 1968.
Andersen, Rayola H. (1971) AD, BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1948, 1949, 1969; MN, Brigham Young U., 1979.
Bartholomew, Jewel A. (1970) BS, Brigham Young U., 1969, MS, U. of Utah, 1976.
Chaffin, Beverly H. (1976) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1965, 1969.
Cope, Maxine J. (1970) BS, MS, EdD, U. of Utah, 1948, 1957, 1967.
Dyer, Elaine D. (1975) BS, St. Mary Coll., 1946; MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1955, 1967.
Hammond, Marilyn (1985) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1953, 1969.
Isaacs, Patricia C. (1977) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1975, 1977; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1988.
Jensen, Marian (1970) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1960, 1968; MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1992.
Jorgensen, Evelyn P. (1977) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1947, 1975.
Leifson, June (1971) BS, Brigham Young U., 1957; MS, Wayne State U., 1964; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1979.
Merrill, Ella E. (1965) BS, U. of Utah, 1956; MPH, U. of California, Berkeley, 1964.
Murphy, Elaine (1967) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1959, 1963.
Murphy, Millene F. (1985) BS, Brigham Young U., 1963; MS, U. of Utah, 1970; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1982.
Potter, Norma (1953) BS, U. of Utah, 1950; MN, U. of Washington, 1961.
Schmidt, Alice M. (1965) BS, U. of Iowa, 1947; MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1977.
Talmage, Carol (1985) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1950, 1984.
Wilson, Mary Louise (1979) BS, U. of Utah, 1953; MPH, U. of California, Berkeley, 1966; MS, U. of California, San Francisco, 1978.
Wood, Camilla S. (1973) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1947, 1960, 1972.

Nutrition

See Food Science and Nutrition.

Organizational Behavior

See Management, Marriott School of (in the Organizational Leadership and Strategy section).

Philosophy

K. Codell Carter, Chair
3196 JKHB, PO Box 26279, (801) 378-2721

College of Humanities Advisement Center
3078 JKHB, PO Box 26101, (801) 378-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Philosophy are open enrollment.

The Discipline

From its first appearance in ancient Greece down to the present, philosophy has sought to understand the world and the place of human beings within it. As it frames ideas by means of which to clarify and explain experience, philosophy discloses its faith in the ultimate lucidity of things. Philosophy's respect for the authority of intelligence fosters a preference for persuasion that is fundamental to personal growth and democratic society.

Students who study philosophy will find that it not only provides insight into life's fundamental concerns, it also helps them develop their capacity for clear thinking and perceptive judgment. Such competence will serve them well as they pursue further education or begin their careers.

Career Opportunities

Philosophy offers excellent career preparation, but not in the way that, say, accounting does. The value of a major in philosophy resides in the intellectual development it promotes. It lays a foundation on which more specialized study may build. In various standardized tests, philosophy majors tend to do extremely well on the verbal aptitude and on the analytic thinking sections. So philosophy can prepare a student for any type of work that requires highly developed reading and writing skills. Students who elect to major in philosophy should look beyond their bachelor's degree right from the start. For example, philosophy is an excellent background for the study of law or medicine. Those who intend to enter graduate school will need to start early on the foreign-language requirement.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA	Philosophy
Minors	Philosophy
	Analytic Thinking
	Logic

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

BA Philosophy (44 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following analytic thinking courses:
   Phil 105, 205, 305, 311.
3. Complete the following figures courses:
   a. Complete the following:
      Phil 201, 202.
   b. Select one course from the following:
      Phil 321, 322.
   c. Select one course from the following:
      Phil 330, 331, 332.
   d. Select two courses from the following:
      Phil 340, 341, 342, 343.
4. Complete the following topics courses:
   a. Select one course from the following:
      Phil 213, 214, 215, 413, 414, 415.
   b. Select one course from the following:
      Phil 420, 421, 422, 423.
   c. Complete 6 more hours of philosophy courses at the 400 level (excluding 449R).
5. Complete the following religion course:
   RelA 115 (preferably from a philosophy professor).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Philosophy (18 hours*)

1. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Phil 201, 202, 205.
3. Complete three other philosophy courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Analytic Thinking (15 hours*)

1. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Phil 105, 205, 311.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Phil 201, 202.
4. Complete one other philosophy course.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Logic (15 hours*)

1. No D credit is allowed in minor courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Phil 105, 205, 305, 405.
3. Complete one other philosophy course.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Philosophy (Phil)

Undergraduate Courses

105. Reasoning and Writing. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Informal grammar, logic, and rhetoric as tools for reading and writing. Library research. Recommended for philosophy majors and minors. Fulfills GE First-Year Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

110. Introduction to Philosophy. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also.
Articulating, assessing, and defending fundamental positions on topics such as reason, knowledge, science, education, ethics, politics, and religion.

201. History of Philosophy 1. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance, primarily from perspective of philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

202. History of Philosophy 2. (3:3:0) Honors also. Prerequisite: Phil 201.
Western civilization from Renaissance to present, primarily from perspective of philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

205. Deductive Logic. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also.
History and use of syllogistic and propositional logic; evaluating arguments with Venn diagrams, truth tables, and Copi-style proofs and proof strategies.

210. Science and Civilization 1. (3:3:0) Honors also.
History of Civilization from Greek antiquity to scientific revolution; methods in early science and their philosophical significance; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

211. Science and Civilization 2. (3:3:0) Honors also. Prerequisite: Phil 210.
History of Civilization from scientific revolution to present; concepts and methods in modern science and their philosophical significance; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

213. Introduction to Ethics. (3:3:0)
Nature and justification of moral standards, beliefs, and decisions.

214. Introduction to the Philosophy of Art. (3:3:0)
The experience of beauty in nature, in literature, and in the arts.

215. Introduction to the Philosophy of Religion. (3:3:0)
Existence and nature of God, God's foreknowledge and man's free will, faith, immortality, and religious experience and language.

305. Predicate Logic. (3:3:0) W, Su Prerequisite: Phil 205.
History and use of predicate logic; evaluating arguments with counterexamples and proofs; informal mathematical proofs. Fulfills GE Language/Mathematics requirement.

311. Philosophical Writing. (3:3:0) F, W Honors also. Prerequisite: Phil 105, 205.
Writing philosophical papers about philosophical texts or problems. Research methods in philosophy. Library research paper. Fulfills GE Advanced Writing requirement. No course challenges accepted.

320. Ancient Philosophy. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Phil 201.
Selected figures or problems.

321. Plato. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Phil 201.

322. Aristotle. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Phil 201.

330. Medieval Philosophy. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Phil 201.
Selected figures or problems.

331. Augustine. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Phil 201.

332. Aquinas. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Phil 201.

340. Modern Philosophy. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Phil 202.
Selected figures or problems.

341. Hume. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Phil 202.

342. Kant. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Phil 202.

343. Hegel. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Phil 202.

405. Metalogic. (3:3:0) Alt. yr. Prerequisite: Phil 305.
Completeness and undecidability of predicate logic; incompleteness of arithmetic and set theory; treatment of related philosophical topics and of nonclassical topics as time permits.

413. Ethics. (3:3:0) Alt. yr. Prerequisite: one philosophy course.

414. Philosophy of Art. (3:3:0) Alt. yr. Prerequisite: one philosophy course.
Selected figures or problems in aesthetics.

415. Philosophy of Religion. (3:3:0) Alt. yr. Prerequisite: one philosophy course.
Selected figures or problems.

416. Philosophy of Law. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: one philosophy course.
The relation between natural and enacted law; theories of punishment; utilitarian and nonutilitarian theories of law; liberty.

417. Philosophy of Education. (3:0:Arr.) Prerequisite: one philosophy course.
Critical examination of educational theories, ancient and modern, and their implications for current practice.

418. Science and Religion. (3:0:Arr.) Prerequisite: one philosophy course.
Epistemological and metaphysical similarities and differences undergirding historical problems in science and religion. Nature and effects of past reconciliations; possibility and desirability of current reconciliations.

419. Philosophy and Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: one philosophy course.
Philosophical ideas in literature; philosophical ideas about literature and about the interpretation of literature.

420. Philosophy of Language. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: one philosophy course.
Meaning and reference, synonymy, metaphor, exemplification, translation; linguistic, artistic, and perceptual symbol systems.

421. Metaphysics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: one philosophy course.
Basic categories of being: appearance and reality, law, causality, space, time, eternity, deity.

422. Epistemology. (3:3:0) Honors also. Prerequisite: one philosophy course.
Meaning, limits, and justification of knowledge.

423. (Phil 423–Phscs-Hist 314) History and Philosophy of Science. (3:3:0) Honors also. Prerequisite: PhyS 100 or instructor's consent.
Scientific explanation, concepts, and models. Philosophical assumptions and criteria for theory selection, as exemplified by historical development of basic ideas in science.

424. Philosophy of the Social Sciences. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: one philosophy course.
Consciousness, individuality and community, agency, authenticity, and the sciences of individual and social behavior.

449R. Philosophical Lecture Series. (1:1:0 ea.) F, W
Lectures on philosophical topics by faculty and advanced students.

450R. Contemporary Figures and Problems. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: one philosophy course.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Selected topic or figure in philosophy.

500-Level Graduate Course (available to advanced undergraduates)

501R. Graduate Seminar. (2–5:5:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Selected topic, figure, or movement in philosophy, as announced in current class schedule.

Philosophy Faculty

Professors
Carter, K. Codell (1973) BS, MA, U. of Utah, 1963, 1964; PhD, Cornell U., 1968.
Faulconer, James E. (1981) BA, Brigham Young U., 1972; MA, PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1975, 1977.
Graham, Daniel W. (1986) AB, Davidson Coll., 1970; MA, Brigham Young U., 1975; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1980.
Packard, Dennis Jay (1974) AA, Miracosta Coll., 1966; BA, PhD, Stanford U., 1968, 1974.
Paulsen, David L. (1973) BS, Brigham Young U., 1961; JD, U. of Chicago, 1964; PhD, U. of Michigan, 1975.
Rasmussen, Dennis F. (1970) BS, U. of Utah, 1966; MPhil, PhD, Yale U., 1968, 1970.
Warner, C. Terry (1967) BA, Brigham Young U., 1963; MA, PhD, Yale U., 1965, 1967.

Associate Professor
Anderson, Travis T. (1991) BFA, BA, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1985; MA, PhD, U. of Loyola, Chicago, 1989, 1991.

Assistant Professors
Hedengren, Paul C. (1981) BA, MA, Brown U., 1971, 1973; PhD, U. of Toronto, Canada, 1983.
Siebach, James L. (1994) BA, Brigham Young U., 1982; PhD, U. of Texas, 1994.

Emeriti
Madsen, Truman G. (1957) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1951, 1952; MA, PhD, Harvard U., 1957, 1960.
Nielsen, Fred Kent (1956) BA, MA, Harvard U., 1954, 1955.
Riddle, Chauncey C. (1952) BS, Brigham Young U., 1947; MA, PhD, Columbia U., 1951, 1958.
Yarn, David H. (1950) BA, Brigham Young U., 1946; MA, EdD, Columbia U., 1949, 1958.

Physical Education

Earlene Durrant, Chair
221 RB, PO Box 22091, (801) 378-6507

College of Health and Human Performance Advisement Center
205 RB, PO Box 22117, (801) 378-3638

Admission to Degree Program

Some of the degree programs in the Department of Physical Education carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Health Promotion
BS Physical Education
Emphases:
- Athletic Training
- Exercise Physiology
- Physical Therapy
- Public School Teaching

Minors Coaching and Teaching Physical Education
Elementary Physical Education

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Physical Education
PhD Curriculum Instruction in Physical Education
PhD Exercise Science/Wellness

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BS Health Promotion (59.5–60 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

This major is also offered through the Health Sciences Department.

The Discipline

Health promotion is a departure from the typical U.S. health paradigm in that the focus is on developing the processes of staying healthy rather than on discovering and treating illnesses. Rising health care costs have spurred an interest in keeping people healthy to avoid unnecessary health-related expenses. Health promotion professionals assist individuals and organizations in improving their health-related procedures and policies so that the goals and aspirations of both are more likely to be fulfilled.

Career Opportunities

Health promotion personnel find employment with many organizations committed to health enhancement: business, industry, health clinics and resorts, health maintenance organizations, hospitals, insurance companies, senior citizen groups, and voluntary organizations.

Major Requirements

1. Maintain a high personal fitness level and follow healthy lifestyle habits.
2. Be admitted to the program by the Interdisciplinary Health Promotion Committee. Admittance into the health promotion major requires the student to earn an average GPA of 3.0 in PE 297, Zool 261, and Stat 221.
3. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
4. A minimum of 15 major hours must be completed in residence at BYU.
5. Complete the following core requirements:
   Hlth 320, 365, 420, 460, 461, 463.
   PE 125, 239, 297, 360, 363, 365, 367, 468.
   Acc 200.
   BusM 300.
   FSN 100.

6. Select one course from the following:
   Hlth 455.
   PE 451.
7. Select 4 hours from the following:
   Hlth 599R (see Dr. Heiner, 229-F RB, ext. 8-2214).
   PE 399R (see Dr. Aldana, 276 SFH, ext. 8-2145).
8. Select 15–15.5 hours from the following:
   BusM 340.
   Comms 150.
   CSE 546.
   Dance 336.
   FSN 410.
   Hlth 370, 403R, 431R, 465, 466.
   IP&T 286.
   OrgB 320.
   PE 320, 321, 361.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Physical Education: Athletic Training Emphasis (73 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

The Discipline

The study of athletic training appeals to those who would like to work in a field that combines an athletic setting with health and fitness care. A student in athletic training will learn to apply knowledge of human anatomy, exercise physiology, conditioning, nutrition, and therapy in the prevention, immediate care, and rehabilitation of athletic injuries.

Career Opportunities

Career possibilities include working with athletic teams at all levels of competition or in a sports medicine clinical setting or other allied health facilities. NATA certification is required, and an advanced degree is recommended.

Major Requirements

1. Maintain a high personal fitness level and follow healthy lifestyle habits.
2. No D credit is allowed in the major courses.
3. A minimum of 33 hours in the major must be completed in residence at BYU.
4. Apply for acceptance into the athletic training program. See program director during semester of enrollment in PE 320 for an application form. Admission to the program requires the candidate to meet the following criteria:
   a. Complete Zool 260, 261, PE 320, 321.
   b. Have a physical examination.
   c. Submit two letters of recommendation.
   d. Interview with the athletic training staff.
   e. Complete 30 hours of clinical observation or experience in a college or high school athletic training setting.

   Admission to the program is limited, competitive, and dependent upon meeting the above criteria. The athletic training staff will make final selection of candidates following the interview. Students must join NATA and pass the NATA BOC examination to certify as an athletic trainer.
5. Pass the senior interview
6. Receive CPR certification each year.
7. Complete the following core courses:
   PE 350, 361, 362, 363, 367.
8. Complete the following:
   PE 320, 321, 351, 420, 422, 424, 425, 426, 460, 468, 469.
   FSN 410, 459.
   Hlth 320.
   Mcbio 221.
   Psych 111.
   Stat 221.
   Zool 260, 261.
9. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   PE 497R.
10. Complete 8 hours of the following:
    PE 496R.

Recommended Course:
PE 421.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Physical Education: Exercise Physiology Emphasis (72.5 hours*)

The Discipline

The exercise physiology/medicine emphasis explores the intriguing relationship between exercise and the functioning of the human body. The basic concepts of human anatomy, physiology, biomechanics, motor learning, chemistry, physics, and nutrition are mastered to help understand this relationship. The impact that movement and exercise have on the human organism is almost interminable, making study of this discipline enthralling.

Students considering medicine as a profession may want to select this major. While providing most requisite courses for medical school acceptance, it also conveys a healthy-lifestyle, preventive-medicine health care perspective.

Career Opportunities

Graduating with an exercise physiology/medicine specialization primarily prepares for work in entry-level positions at research institutions, in corporate wellness centers, in cardiac rehabilitation clinics, and with sports teams. Most vocational opportunities require a master's degree or doctorate and certification by organizations such as the American College of Sports Medicine. Positions requiring only a bachelor's degree will be difficult to find.

Major Requirements

1. Maintain a high personal fitness level and follow healthy lifestyle habits.
2. No D credit is allowed in the major courses.
3. A minimum of 15 hours in the major must be completed in residence at BYU.
4. Complete the following core courses:
   PE 350, 361, 362, 363, 367.

5. Complete the following:
   PE 460, 469.
   Mcbio 221, 222.
   Zool 260, 371, 372, 460.
   Chem 105, 106, 107, 351, 352, 353 (1–2 hours).
   Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108.
   FSN 100.
   Stat 221.
   Biol 130.
   Math 119.

   Note: Students going to medical school should take 2 hours of Chem 353.

Premed students: Some medical schools require select classes not required by BYU. For more information contact the Health Professions Advisement Office, 380 WIDB, PO Box 25176, (801) 378-3044.

Recommended Courses

PE 320.
Chem 468, 481.
Zool 339 or 439 (premed); 361, 380.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Physical Education: Physical Therapy Emphasis

(74 hours*)

The Discipline

Physical therapy is a dynamic profession for anyone interested in the health care field. To equip students with the skills and knowledge necessary for entry into a physical therapy school and then into the profession of physical therapy, BYU's physical therapy specialization emphasizes the intriguing subjects of exercise science (functional anatomy, patho-kinesiology, athletic injury, exercise physiology, biomechanics, and motor learning), as well as the traditional physical therapy requirements (zoology, chemistry, physics, psychology, and mathematics).

Career Opportunities

The undergraduate degree prepares specifically for entrance into physical therapy school. However, with the prephysical therapy undergraduate degree and a GPA of at least 3.0, entrance into most exercise science graduate programs is possible.

Major Requirements

1. Maintain a high personal fitness level and follow healthy lifestyle habits.
2. No D credit is allowed in the major courses.
3. A minimum of 15 hours in the major must be completed in residence at BYU.
4. Complete the following core courses:
   PE 350, 361, 362, 363, 367.
5. Complete the following:
   Biol 130.
   Chem 105, 106, 107.
   Math 119.
   Mcbio 221, 222.
   PE 320, 321, 460, 469.
   Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108.
   Psych 111, 220, 342.
   Stat 221.
   Zool 260, 276, 460.

Note: Some postgraduate schools require select classes not shown above. For more information contact the physical therapy advisement staff (116 RB, [801] 378-3982).

Recommended Courses

Nurs 102.
Hlth 320, 451, 461.
Chem 152, 281, 351, 352, 481.
Comms 150.
Zool 371, 372, 373, 380, 475, 484, 561.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Physical Education: Public School Teaching Emphasis (83.5–84.5 hours,* including certification hours)

The Discipline

Students preparing to teach and/or coach physical education will have a variety of experiences that will enhance proficiency in the knowledge and skills requisite to working in the contemporary school setting. Majors learn to perform a variety of sport, fitness, and dance activities personally. After becoming proficient, students take courses and have practical experiences in teaching and coaching children, adolescents, and adults. The discipline is interesting and rewarding, and those in a teaching/coaching career help others pursue and practice healthy lifestyle habits.

Career Opportunities

Graduates seek teaching and physical education/coaching careers in secondary education settings. With an advanced degree, teaching and coaching positions at institutions of higher learning are available.

It is recommended that students desiring to be optimally employable in secondary schools complete an acceptable teaching minor and American Coaching Effectiveness Program (ACEP) coaching certification.

Major Requirements

1. Prior to beginning course work in the major, students must apply for admittance into the Flight Program. The program requires that all students take the major courses together as a cohort group. See the flight advisor during second semester of sophomore year (221 RB).
2. Maintain a high personal fitness level and follow healthy lifestyle habits.
3. No D credit is allowed in the major courses.
4. A minimum of 15 hours in the major must be completed in residence at BYU.
5. Pass the senior interview.
6. A teaching minor is not required for certification. However, it is strongly recommended.
7. Complete the following required general education courses:
   FamSc 210.
   HEPE 129.
   Stat 221.
   Zool 260, 261
8. Complete the following core courses:
   PE 350, 361, 362, 363, 367.
9. Complete the following:
   PE 206R, 230, 231, 233, 239, 320, 321, 352, 360, 374, 377, 399R, 430, 461, 480.
   Dance 356.

10. Select one course from the following:
    PE 330R, 335, 341,342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348.
11. Select one course from the following:
    PE 171, 172, 276, 277.
12. If PE 171 or 172 is taken in item 11 above, complete one course from the following:
    PE 136, 137, 146, 147, 155.
13. Complete the Professional Education Component (23 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Coaching and Teaching Physical Education (25 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   PE 229, 234, 237, 320, 321, 351, 364, 365, 366, 399R, 430, 450.
2. Select one course from the following:
   PE 206R, 207R.
3. Select one course from the following:
   PE 330R, 335, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348.

Minor Elementary Physical Education (20 hours*)

1. Be an elementary education major.
2. Complete the following:
   PE 106, 136, 169, 364, 375, 376.
   Hlth 320.
   Dance 365, 378R, 386.
3. Select one course from the following:
   PE 146, 181.
4. Select one course from the following:
   PE 365, 366.
5. Select one course from the following:
   PE 379, 461.
6. Select 2 additional hours from physical education courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Health/Physical Education (HEPE)

Undergraduate Course

129. Fitness and Lifestyle Management. (2:2:1)
Why a healthy lifestyle is needed and how to write individualized programs to meet these needs.

Physical Education (PE)

Undergraduate Courses

100R. Intercollegiate Athletics (Men). (0.5:2:10.5 ea.)

101R. Activities for Fitness and Weight Control. (0.5:0:2 ea.)

102R. Adapted Physical Education. (0.5:0:2 ea.) Prerequisite: medical referral.

103. Archery, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

106. Badminton, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

107. Badminton, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 106 or equivalent.

111. Basketball, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

112. Basketball, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 111 or equivalent.

116. Bowling, Beginning. (0.5:0:2) Fee.

117. Bowling, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2) Fee.

120. Cycling. (0.5:0:2)
Basic knowledge and skills in cycling and bike maintenance.

121. Diving, Springboard. (0.5:0:2)

122. Diving, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 121 or equivalent.

124. (PE-AnSc) Equitation (Horsemanship). (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: rider weight limit of 200 lbs. or instructor's consent.
Handling, grooming, saddling, and suppling horse and rider. Western and English theory used, emphasizing the independent seat and use of aids. Fee.

125. Flexibility. (0.5:0:2)

126. Fencing, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

127. Fencing, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 126 or equivalent.

130. Lifetime Fitness. (0.5:0:2)
Improving health-related and/or sport-related endurance, strength, and flexibility fitness.

131. Golf, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

132. Golf, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 131 or equivalent.

133. Golf, Advanced. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 132 or equivalent.

136. Gymnastics, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

137. Gymnastics, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 136 or equivalent.

138. Gymnastics, Advanced. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 137 or equivalent.
For advanced gymnasts, men and women; consisting of 30 percent A moves, 40 percent B moves, and 30 percent C moves.

139. Jogging. (0.5:0:2) Independent Study also.

141. Karate, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

142. Karate, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2)

143R. Physical Training—ROTC. (0.5:0:2 ea.)
For ROTC students only.

146. Racquetball, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

147. Racquetball, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2)

150. Ice Skating. (0.5:0:2)
Developing figure and ice hockey skills. Taught off campus. Fee.

155. Self-Defense. (0.5:0:2)
Fundamental principles, skills, and techniques.

156. Soccer, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

157. Soccer, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 156 or equivalent.

161. Skiing, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)
Sections formed on basis of ability. Students responsible for following costs: bus transportation, ski equipment, lift fees. Students required to use bus transportation provided. Fee.

162. Skiing, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2)
Sections formed on basis of ability. Students responsible for following costs: bus transportation, ski equipment, lift fees. Students required to use bus transportation provided. Fee.

164. Skiing, Cross-Country. (0.5:0:2)
Students responsible for following costs: bus transportation, ski equipment. Students required to use bus transportation provided. Fee.

169. Skill Acquisition and Analysis. (0.5:0:2)
Required for elementary education majors. Meets one university physical education activity requirement.

170. Swimming for Nonswimmers. (0.5:0:2)

171. Swimming, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

172. Swimming, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: PE 171 or equivalent.

174R. Swimming for Students with Disabilities. (0.5:0:2 ea.)
Can be taken repeatedly to fulfill the university physical education activity requirement for any student with special needs.

179. Water Aerobics. (0.5:0:2)
Exercise workout in water emphasizing flexibility, strength, and endurance. For nonswimmers and swimmers.

181. Tennis, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

182. Tennis, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 181 or equivalent.

183. Tennis, Advanced. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 182 or equivalent.

186. Volleyball, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

187. Volleyball, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 186 or equivalent.

188. Volleyball, Advanced. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 187 or equivalent.

191. Weight Training, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

192. Weight Training, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 191 or equivalent.
Theory and technique of maximal strength development, emphasizing "power" and "Olympic" lifts.

196. Wrestling, Beginning. (0.5:0:2)

197. Wrestling, Intermediate. (0.5:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 196 or equivalent.

200R. Intercollegiate Athletics (Women). (0.5:0:3 ea.)

201R. Extramural Sports. (0.5:0:2 ea.)

203R. Performance Psychology. (1:1:1 ea.)
Relaxation and imagery for athletes and performing artists.

206R. Officiating Team Sports. (1:0.5:1.5 ea.)
Rules, techniques, problems, and procedures in officiating football, basketball, volleyball, soccer, softball, or baseball. Suggested for those who wish to officiate in intramural and church programs. National Federation or OSA examinations given.

207R. Officiating Individual Sports. (1:0.5:1.5 ea.)
Rules, techniques, problems, and procedures in officiating men's and women's gymnastics, swimming and diving, racquet sports, track and field, or wrestling.

229. Physical Education Pedagogy. (2:2:0)
Sport pedagogy for students *minoring* in physical education/coaching.

230. Sports and Activities 1 (2:0:6) Prerequisite: acceptance into flight program.
Development of mature motor patterns in activities that include soccer, flag football, track and field, volleyball, basketball, and Ultimate Frisbee.

231. Sport and Activities 2. (2:0:6) Prerequisite: acceptance into flight program.
Development of mature motor patterns in activities that include: badminton, tennis, archery, bowling, golf, and recreational games.

233. Lifetime and Leisure Activities. (1:0:3) Prerequisite: acceptance into flight program.
Exposure to and development of skills in contemporary, noncompetitive, lifelong leisure activities.

234. Team Sport Fundamentals. (1:0:4) Prerequisite: PE 229.
Skill and pedagogy development in soccer and volleyball. For *minors* in physical education/coaching only.

237. Individual Sport Fundamentals. (1:0:4) Prerequisite: PE 229.
Skill and pedagogy development in tennis and weight training. For *minors* in physical education/coaching only.

239. Weight Training: Skills and Teaching Techniques. (0.5:0:2)

242. Track and Field: Skills and Teaching Techniques. (1:1:3)

276. Water Safety Instructor Training. (2:1:3) Prerequisite: ARC Swimmer–level competency.
Leads to American Red Cross WSI certification. Swimming teaching methods that include teaching swimming to special needs students.

277. Techniques of Lifeguarding. (2:1:3) Prerequisite: swim competency test (given first day of class).
First-aid and lifeguard skills training, including instruction in CPR, and American Red Cross certification for lifeguard training.

297. Introduction to Health Promotion Education. (2:1:3)
Seminars and field trips.

320. Basic Athletic Training. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Zool 260; concurrent registration in PE 321.
Recognition, evaluation, and care of athletic injuries. Techniques in taping, preventing, and rehabilitating injuries.

321. Basic Athletic Training Lab. (0.5:0:0.5) Prerequisite: concurrent registration in PE 320. Fee.

330R. Coaching Selected Sports. (2:1:2 ea.) Prerequisite: appropriate skills and teaching techniques class or equivalent.
Theory, fundamentals, strategies, and techniques of coaching tennis, golf, badminton, archery, soccer, or field hockey.

335. Coaching Competitive Swimming. (2:1:2) Prerequisite: intermediate swimming skills.
Analysis of strokes, starts, turns, and legalities of each.

341. Coaching Basketball. (2:2:1) Prerequisite: PE 230 or equivalent.

342. Coaching Track and Field. (2:1:2) Prerequisite: PE 242R or equivalent.

343. Coaching Gymnastics. (2:1:2) Prerequisite: PE 136 or equivalent.

344. Coaching Football. (2:2:1)

345. Coaching Volleyball. (2:2:1) Prerequisite: PE 230 or equivalent.

346. Coaching Baseball and Softball. (2:2:1) Prerequisite: PE 230 or equivalent.

347. Coaching Soccer. (2:1:2) Prerequisite: PE 156 or equivalent.
Methodology, skills, and strategies of coaching soccer.

348. Coaching Wrestling. (2:1:2) Prerequisite: PE 196 or equivalent.
Some emphasis on managing meets and tournaments.

350. Historical, Philosophical, and Sociological Foundations of Physical Education. (3:3:0)

351. Administration of Athletic and Intramural Programs. (2:2:0) Independent Study also.
Management styles and techniques for interschool athletic and intramural programs; policies concerning eligibility, contest management, safety, facilities, and legal aspects. For prospective coaches, teachers, athletic directors, and athletic trainers.

352. Legal and Administrative Aspects of Physical Education. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: acceptance into flight program.
Principles of physical education and intramural management including facilities, equipment, fiscal matters, personnel, public relations, and program administration. Legal considerations of physical education and sport programs, including constitutional rights, gender, liability, and risk management.

360. Measurement, Evaluation, and Technology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PE 363, 367.
Elementary statistical testing and technological tools applicable to physical education. Course meets secondary education technology requirements.

361. Introduction to Motor Learning. (3:2:2)
Motor and cognitive factors influencing acquisition of motor skills.

362. Kinesiology and Biomechanics of Sport. (4:3:2) Prerequisite: Zool 260, Math 99 or equivalent, Phscs 100 or equivalent.

363. Exercise Physiology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Zool 261 or 460; concurrent registration in PE 367.

364. Scientific Bases of Sport 1: Motor Learning. (2:2:0)
Motor learning principles for physical education/coaching minor.

365. Scientific Bases of Sport 2: Kinesiology. (2:2:0)
Kinesiology and biomechanics for physical education/coaching minor.

366. Scientific Bases of Sport 3: Physiology of Activity. (2:2:0)
Physiology of activity for physical education/coaching minor.

367. Exercise Physiology Lab. (0.5:0:0.5) Prerequisite: concurrent registration in PE 363.

374. Fundamental Skills and Teaching Methods for Elementary Physical Education. (2:1:3) Prerequisite: acceptance into flight program.
Identifying and demonstrating fundamental skills; identifying immature and mature movement patterns; selecting developmentally appropriate activities; appropriate management techniques.

375. Physical Education for Elementary School Teachers. (2:1:3) Prerequisite: PE 169.

376. Practical Experience in Teaching Elementary School Physical Education. (2:0:4) Prerequisite: PE 375.

377. Secondary Practicum. (2:1:2) Prerequisite: acceptance into flight program.
Written and practical teaching assignments designed to help prospective teachers plan, conduct, and evaluate lessons and unit plans appropriate to adolescent students.

379. Physical Education for Special Education Teachers. (2:2:2)

399R. Cooperative Education: Internship. (1–9:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: advisor's consent; PE 297 for health promotion majors.
On-the-job experience for physical education majors and coaching and physical education minors.

420. Advanced Athletic Training. (3:2:2) Prerequisite: PE 320 and 50 hours in training room.
Advanced theory and practical skills in prevention, immediate care, and treatment of injuries.

421. Advanced Athletic Training Lab. (1:0:2) Prerequisite: PE 320, 321; 420 or concurrent registration.
Advanced athletic training skills, including taping, bracing and splinting, custom fitted equipment, massage and stretching techniques, and emergency splinting and transport.

422. Therapeutic Modalities in Treatment of Athletic Injuries. (3:2:2) Prerequisite: PE 420.
Hydrotherapy, massage, traction, radiant energy, heat, cold, and electrotherapy.

424. Introduction to Orthopaedic Sports Medicine. (2:1:1) Prerequisite: PE 422. For athletic training students.
Orthopaedics of the injured athlete.

425. Examination of Athletic Injuries. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: PE 420.
Examining the injury.

426. Rehabilitation of Athletic Injuries. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: PE 420.

430. Theory of Coaching. (2:2:2)

450. Psychology of Sport. (2:2:0)

451. Management and Implementation of Adult Fitness Programs. (3:3:0)
Teaching and communication strategies.

460. Orthopaedic Impairments and Therapeutic Exercise. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PE 362; Zool 260 or equivalent.
Fundamentals of body mechanics and therapeutic exercise, coupled with kinesiological principles for detection and correction of basic neuromusculoskeletal anomalies.

461. Teaching Special Populations. (3:2:1) Prerequisite: acceptance into flight program.
Program, legal mandates, management techniques, and assessing and identifying special needs students.

468. Problems in Conditioning. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: PE 363.
Applying scientific principles to problems in conditioning.

469. Functional Anatomy and Kinesiology. (4:3:2) Prerequisite: PE 362, 363, 460, or equivalent.
Study of human anatomy with application of basic kinesiological principles.

476. Elementary Student Teaching in Physical Education. (4:1:7) Prerequisite: completion of courses in public school teaching major and instructor's consent.

480. Curriculum Development in Physical Education. (1:1:0)
Introduction to curriculum models; sequential steps in curriculum design; planning and partial implementation of a physical education curriculum; integration of personal philosophy into curriculum planning.

496R. Practicum. (1–8:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: PE 320, 420, and instructor's consent.
Academic and practical application of skills for athletic trainers.

497R. Undergraduate Research and Study. (1–4:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: PE 422 for athletic training majors and/or instructor's consent.
Individual research and study in any area of physical education.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

550. Motor Development and Growth of Children. (2:2:3)
Existing body of knowledge regarding motor development of children and significance of physical activity in early childhood.

560. Orthopaedic Pathomechanics. (2:2:1) Prerequisite: PE 460 or equivalent.
Advanced analysis of neuromusculoskeletal deformities and/or injury. Therapeutic exercise and the use of orthoses.

582. Physical Education for Special Populations. (2:2:0)
Prerequisite: baccalaureate degree in physical education.
Theoretical and practical aspects of teaching individuals with disabilities.

586R. Workshop in Fitness and Sport. (1–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.)
Prerequisite: undergraduate major in physical education or equivalent.

599R. Practicum. (1–9:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: PE 468 or concurrent registration for conditioning coaches.
Field experience for physical education students; 50 hours of volunteer service in approved organization required per credit hour.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Physical Education Faculty

Professors

Allsen, Philip Edmond (1966) BS, Ricks Coll., 1955; MS, Brigham Young U., 1960; EdD, U. of Utah, 1965.
Conlee, Robert K. (1977) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1970; PhD, U. of Iowa, 1975.
Durrant, Earlene (1973) BS, MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1963, 1975.
Harrison, Joyce M. (1969) BA, MA, California State U., Long Beach, 1964, 1966; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1973.
Lockhart, Barbara D. (1991) BS, MA, Michigan State U., 1964, 1967; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1971.
McGown, Carl M. (1972) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1964; PhD, U. of Oregon, 1971.
Tucker, Larry (1988) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1979; PhD, Southern Illinois U., 1981.

Athletic Professionals

Edwards, R. LaVell (1962) BS, Utah State U., 1952; MS, U. of Utah, 1960; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1978.
Michaelis, Elaine (1960) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1962.
Poole, R. Craig (1980) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1964, 1967; EdD, U. of Utah, 1970.
Stiggins, Charles (1978) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1978.
Valentine, Ann (1966) BS, Slippery Rock State Coll., 1955; MS, Pennsylvania State U., 1961.
Witbeck, Alan R. (1955) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1952, 1954.

Associate Professors

Aldana, Steve (1994) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1986, 1988; PhD, Arizona State U., 1991.
Barker, Ruel M. (1971) BS, Utah State U., 1961; MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1971.
Blakemore, Connie L. (1978) BS, U. of Utah, 1960; MS, Brigham Young U., 1967; EdD, Temple U., 1984.
Clarke, Mark S. (1982) BS, U. of Arizona, 1963; MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1971.
Draper, David (1992) BS, Utah State U., 1982; MA, Brigham Young U., 1984; EdD, Northern Illinois U., 1988.
Hall, Larry Thomas (1978) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1971; PhD, U. of Utah, 1976.
Leishman, Courtney M. (1962) BS, Utah State U., 1958; MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1976.
Myrer, William (1990) BS, U. of Calgary, Canada, 1974; MA, U. of Windsor, Canada, 1977; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1983.
Ricard, Mark (1994) BS, U. of Vermont, 1978; MAT, Southeast Missouri State U., 1982; PhD, Southern Illinois U., 1986.
Schulthies, Shane S. (1991) BS, Brigham Young U., 1987; MS, Texas Woman's U., 1989; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1991.
Silvester, L. Jay (1969) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1959, 1970; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1976.

Associate Teaching Professionals

Chamberlain, Diane (1969) BA, California State U., Los Angeles, 1966; MS, Brigham Young U., 1969; EdD, U. of Utah, 1984.
Olson, Mel J. (1970) BS, MA, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1973, 1980.

Associate Athletic Professionals

Chow, Norman Y. H. (1976) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1968, 1970; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1978.
Powers, Timothy J. (1975) BS, U. of Montana, 1968; MA, San Jose State U., 1973.
Shane, Patrick (1985) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1968, 1970.

Assistant Professors

George, Jim (1995) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1984, 1986; PhD, Arizona State U., 1995.
Hawkes, Nena Rey (1960) BS, Utah State U., 1954; MS, Brigham Young U., 1965; PhD, Union Institute, 1993.
Wilkinson, Carol (1995) BEd, Durham U., England, 1976; MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1981, 1983.
Zanandrea, Maria (1995) BA, MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1985, 1992.

Assistant Athletic Professionals

Brockbank, Bruce (1992) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1990, 1992.
French, Roger W. (1980) BS, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1956; MA, Memphis State U., 1958.
Howard, Gary Ray (1975) BS, MRE, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1970.
Julkunen, A. Olavi (1975) BS, Brigham Young U., 1971.
Lamb, Barry (1994) BS, U. of Oregon, 1978; MA, Arizona State U., 1988.
Merrill, R. Gaye (1981) BS, Brigham Young U., 1978; MS, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1979.
Noel, Robert Edward (1979) BS, Brigham Young U., 1964.
Pullins, Gary D. (1976) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1975.
Ramage, Thomas J. (1973) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1957, 1962.
Russell, Keith (1992) BS, Brigham Young U., 1973.
Sakamoto, Makato (1988) BS, U. of Southern California, 1970; MA, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1980.
Schmidt, Kenneth (1983) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1964, 1969.

Athletic Coaches

Bosco, Robbie (1990) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1989.
Curtis, George (1985) BS, Southern Utah State Coll., 1971.
Ingle, Tony (1989) BA, Huntingdon Coll., 1976; MS, North Georgia Coll., 1980.
Pella, Chris (1986) BS, Utah State U., 1966.
Pincock, Stephen (1993) BS, Brigham Young U., 1990.
Reynolds, Lance (1983) BS, Brigham Young, U., 1980.
Walker, DeWayne M. (1994) AA, Pasadena City Coll., 1980; BA, Regents Coll., 1992.

Emeriti

Bangerter, Blauer L. (1953) BA, Brigham Young U., 1951; MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1955, 1964.
Bestor, Rollie R. (1969) BS, MS, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1954, 1958; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1969.
Bunker, Robert E. (1949) BS, Utah State U., 1937.
Call, C. Boyd (1960) BS, U. of Utah, 1950; MS, Brigham Young U., 1963; PhD, U. of Oregon, 1967.
Cryer, Walter (1964) BS, MS, U. of Illinois Medical, 1952, 1959; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1975.

Felt, Richard G. (1967) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1980.
Fisher, A. Garth (1969) BS, Brigham Young U., 1955; MA, Sacramento State Coll., 1966; PhD, U. of New Mexico, 1969.
Francis, Rulon S. (1963) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1952, 1967; PhD, U. of Utah, 1971.
Hirst, Cyntha C. (1948) BA, U. of Utah, 1947; MS, U. of Washington, 1952; PhD, U. of Utah, 1974.
Jarman, Boyd O. (1969) BS, Brigham Young U., 1954; MS, EdD, U. of Oregon, 1959, 1965.
Jensen, Clayne R. (1964) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1952, 1956; EdD, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1963.
Jones, J. Richard (1961) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1951, 1955; EdD, U. of Northern Colorado, 1967.
Kimball, C. Rodney (1947) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1963.
Lewis, Kathryn (1972) BS, Brigham Young U., 1955; MA, Long Beach State Coll., 1962; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1978.
Millet, W. Floyd (1963) BA, Brigham Young U., 1934; MS, U. of Southern California, 1939.
Roundy, Elmo S. (1963) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1956; EdD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1965.
Tucker, Karl L. (1961) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1952, 1964.
Vickers, Bc[illegible], J. (1971) BS, Kent State U., 1955; MA, California State U., Los Angeles, 1960; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1976.
Wallace, Lu (1956) BS, Utah State U., 1954; MS, Washington State U., 1960.
Watts, Stanley H. (1947) BS, Brigham Young U., 1938.

Physical Science

Physical Science (PhyS)

Undergraduate Courses

Administered by the Department of Physics and Astronomy.

100. Physical Science. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also.

Conceptual lectures and demonstrations of the most significant and universal laws and models describing the physical world by faculty from Physics and Astronomy, Chemistry, and Geology departments. Satisfies GE Physical Science requirement.

110A. Physical Science A. (4:3:2) F, W, Sp For majors in elementary, early childhood, or special education.

Classical and modern physics and chemistry as they relate to current concepts of the physical world. Lab exercises illustrate many topics with concrete examples. With PhyS 110B satisfies GE Physical Science requirement.

110B. Physical Science B. (2:2:1) F, W, Su For majors in elementary, early childhood, or special education.

Concepts and methods used in geology to interpret rock record, protect and make use of earth materials, and better understand natural environment and how to live in it. Lab studies, field trips, home projects. With PhyS 110A satisfies GE Physical Science requirement.

111A. Physical Science A Laboratory. (1:0:2) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: PhyS 100; for majors in elementary, early childhood, or special education.

Laboratory exercises that illustrate physics and chemistry principles. To accompany or follow PhyS 100 lecture course. Not for students enrolled in PhyS 110A or 110B.

111B. Physical Science B Laboratory. (1:0:2) F, W, Su Prerequisite: PhyS 100; for majors in elementary, early childhood, or special education.

Laboratory exercises that illustrate geology principles. To accompany or follow PhyS 100 lecture course. Not for students enrolled in PhyS 110A or 110B.

Physics and Astronomy

Dorian M. Hatch, Chair
N-281A ESC, PO Box 24359, (801) 378-2427

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences Advisement Center
1116 TMCB, PO Box 26539, (801) 378-6270

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Physics and Astronomy are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Through its undergraduate offerings the Department of Physics and Astronomy seeks to help students of all disciplines to become more fully aware of our physical environment from subatomic particles to the cosmos, to understand the structure and behavior of matter and energy, to realize that man is capable of comprehending natural laws, and to appreciate both the strengths and the limitations of science.

Career Opportunities

A degree in physics and astronomy can provide:

1. Perspective on science and an introduction to the role of physics in the human quest for understanding.
2. Education for those who intend to pursue graduate work in physics or astronomy.
3. Preparation for those who intend to enter industrial or governmental service as physicists or astronomers.
4. Undergraduate education for those who will pursue graduate work in the professions: business (e.g., an MBA), law, medicine, etc.
5. Fundamental background for other physical sciences and engineering, in preparation for graduate study in these fields.
6. Physics fundamentals required by the biological science, medical, dental, nursing, and related programs.
7. Education in the subject matter of physics for prospective teachers of the physical sciences.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA	Physics Teaching
BS	Physics
BS	Physics-Astronomy
BS	Applied Physics
Emphases:	Computer Science
	Selected Options
Minors	Physics
	Physics Teaching
	Astronomy

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS	Physics
PhD	Physics
PhD	Physics and Astronomy

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

1. It is recommended that a student complete the following courses in high school:

   3 units of English
   1 unit of physical science, either chemistry or physics.
   4 units of mathematics, consisting of algebra, geometry, trigonometry, and calculus. This should qualify students to begin college mathematics with Math 113, Calculus 2.

Because mathematics provides the foundation for all work in the physical and mathematical sciences, high school preparation in this subject is of particular importance.

2. Students in physics should take mathematics beginning the first semester of the freshman year. Physics majors should ordinarily begin with Math 113. If preparation is inadequate, students might wish to enter the university during the summer term and bring their mathematics preparation to the point where they can take Math 113 concurrently with Phscs 121 during the fall semester.
3. Language: Students are urged to learn a foreign language .
4. Students are strongly urged to learn a computer language, especially C, C++, or FORTRAN.

BA Physics Teaching (69–70 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Contact the Education Advisement Center for entrance requirements into the certification program.
3. A teaching minor is not required for certification. However, it is strongly recommended.
4. Complete the following:
   Phscs 121, 122, 150, 221, 222, 250, 340.
   Hist 314 or Phscs 314.
5. Complete the following:
   Math 112, 113, 343.
6. Select an additional 12 hours from the following or any 300-, 400-, or 500-level course:
   Phscs 127, 137, 167, 281.
7. Complete the Professional Education Component (28–29 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

Recommended Courses

Chem 105, 106.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Physics (57 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Phscs 121, 122, 150, 221, 222, 250, 318, 321, 340, 350, 431, 441, 442, 451, 452, 471.
3. Complete the following:
   Math 113, 343, 344, 434.
4. Complete a senior thesis, including the following:
   a. Meet with department undergraduate research coordinator early in the junior year to obtain information about research projects and senior thesis procedures.
   b. Complete 2 hours of the following:
      Phscs 498R.

Recommended Courses

CS 130 or 142.
Chem 111.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Physics-Astronomy (58–59 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Phscs 121, 122, 150, 221, 222, 227, 228, 250, 321, 329, 340, 427, 428, 431, 441, 451, 471.
3. Complete one of the following options:
   Either
   Math 112, 113, 312, 313.
   Or
   Math 113, 343, 344, 434.

Recommended Courses

CS 130 or 142.
Chem 111.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Applied Physics: Computer Science Emphasis (60 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following:
   Phscs 121, 122, 221, 222, 318, 340, 441, 450, 581.
3. Complete the following:
   Math 113, 343, 344, 434.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Math 311.
   Phscs 512.
5. Complete the following:
   CS 142, 235, 236, 240, 252.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Phscs 321, 427, 431, 442, 451, 471, 517, 545, 561, 571, 585.

Recommended Course

Phscs 442 is strongly recommended.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Applied Physics: Selected Options Emphasis (55 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Consult with a faculty advisor as early in career as possible.
3. Complete the following:
   Phscs 121, 122, 150, 221, 222, 250, 318, 321, 340, 350, 441, 442.

4. After gaining department chair's approval of courses selected to define an emphasis, complete an additional 12 hours of electives (cannot include any courses already taken above).
5. Complete the following:
   Math 113, 343, 344, 434.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Physics (23 hours*)

Complete the following:
Phscs 121, 122,150, 221, 222, 250, 340.
Math 112, 113.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Physics Teaching (25 hours*)

Complete the following:
Phscs 121, 122, 150, 221, 222, 250, 314.
Math 112, 113.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Astronomy (26 hours*)

Complete the following:
Phscs 121, 227, 228, 329, 427, 428.
Math 112, 113.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Physics and Astronomy (Phscs)

Undergraduate Courses

100. Fundamentals of Physics. (3:3:0) F
Principles of classical and modern physics as they relate to current concepts of our physical environment.

105. Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: high school algebra and trigonometry. Recommended: concurrent registration in Phscs 107.
Applied physics course not requiring calculus. Topics include mechanics, heat, wave motion, sound.

106. Introductory Applied Physics. (3:3:0) F, W, Su Prerequisite: Phscs 105 or equivalent. Recommended: concurrent registration in Phscs 108.
Continuation of Phscs 105. Topics include electricity and magnetism, atomic and nuclear physics, and optics.

107. Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Phscs 105 or concurrent registration.

108. Introductory Applied Physics Laboratory. (1:0:3) F, W, Su Prerequisite: Phscs 106 or concurrent registration.

121. Principles of Physics. (3:3:1) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: calculus.
Mechanics. For science and engineering students. Walk-in laboratory experience weekly.

122. Principles of Physics. (3:3:1) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Phscs 121 or equivalent; Math 113 or equivalent.
Electricity and magnetism. For science and engineering students. Walk-in laboratory weekly. (Principles of Physics continues with Phscs 221.)

127. Descriptive Astronomy. (3:3:0.5) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also.
Nonmathematical presentation of knowledge of the content and history of the cosmos, frequently using observatory and planetarium.

137. Introduction to the Atmosphere and Weather. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: PhyS 100 or equivalent.
Nonmathematical introduction to characteristics of the atmosphere, emphasizing structure and dynamic behavior, including the environmental impact of man.

150. Introduction to Experimental Physics 1. (1:1:2) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Phscs 121 or instructor's consent.
Using laboratory equipment, sources of uncertainty, statistical analysis of data, curve fitting, computer data acquisition, measurements of motion, electrical measurements.

167. Descriptive Acoustics of Music and Speech. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: PhyS 100 or equivalent.
Introductory acoustics course, emphasizing physical principles underlying production and perception of music and speech.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: both department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
For students engaged in the Cooperative Education Program.

221. Principles of Physics. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Phscs 121.
Thermal physics, waves, optics, and modern physics.

222. Principles of Physics. (3:3:0) F, W, Su Prerequisite: Phscs 121, 122.
Special relativity; quantum physics, applications, and selected topics in contemporary physics.

227. Solar System Astronomy. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Phscs 121 and concurrent registration in Math 113.
Physics of light and matter, Newton's laws, solar-system dynamics, and planetary surfaces and atmospheres.

228. Stellar and Extragalactic Astronomy. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Math 113, Phscs 227.
Stellar atmospheres, stellar interiors, stellar evolution, interstellar matter, galactic structure, external galaxies, and cosmology.

250. Introduction to Experimental Physics 2. (1:1:2) F, W, Su Prerequisite: Phscs 122; Phscs 150 or Chem 226; or instructor's consent.
Electronic devices and measurements, transducers, time and frequency response, optical and heat experiments, nonlinear curve fitting, designing computer interfacing applications.

281. Principles of Solid State Physics. (3:3:1) F Prerequisite: Phscs 121, 122.
Introduction to physics of solids, including laboratory experience. For students in science, computer science, technology, and engineering.

314. (Phscs-Hist 314–Phil 423) History and Philosophy of Science. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: PhyS 100 or instructor's consent.
Scientific explanation, concepts, and models. Philosophical assumptions and criteria for theory selection, as exemplified by historical development of basic ideas in science.

318. Introduction to Classical Field Theory. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Math 343, 344, 434.
Classical equations of physical fields; applications of Fourier analysis, Fourier transforms, and orthogonal functions.

321. Mechanics. (3:3:0) W, Su Prerequisite: Phscs 121, Math 344, 434.
Newton's laws applied to particles and systems of particles, including rigid bodies. Conservation principles and Lagrange's and Hamilton's equations.

329. Observational Astronomy. (3:2:4) W Prerequisite: Phscs 227, 228.
Basic techniques of observational astronomy, emphasizing practical experience in optical data acquisition and analysis.

340. Electronics Lab. (1:1:2) W, Sp Prerequisite: Phscs 122.
Introduction to analog and digital circuits.

350. Advanced Experimental Techniques. (3:0:6) F, Sp Prerequisite: Phscs 250, 340; or instructor's consent. Recommended: knowledge of a computer programming language.
Vacuum systems, machine shop practice, design and use of digital and analog circuits, design of computer-controlled experiments, Fourier analysis, writing proposals, technical literature.

391R. Seminar in Current Physics. (1:1:0 ea.) F, W on dem.

427, 428. Introduction to Astrophysics. (3:3:0 ea.) 427:F; 428:W Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Principles and observational techniques of astrophysics.

431. Thermal Physics. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Phscs 222, Math 344.
Principles of thermodynamics, with introduction to concepts of kinetic theory and statistical mechanics.

441, 442. Electricity and Magnetism. (3:3:0 ea.) 441: F, Sp; 442: W, Su Prerequisite: Phscs 122, 318.
Classical theory of electricity and magnetism developed from its experimental foundations. Electrostatics, magnetostatics, currents and their associated fields, circuit theory, and Maxwell's equations.

450. Experimental Design. (3:0:6) W Prerequisite: Phscs 350 or instructor's consent.
Applying advanced instrumentation and computer interfacing principles to practical experimental problems.

451. Quantum Mechanics. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Phscs 222, 318, or equivalent.
Analytical foundations of quantum mechanics.

452. Modern Physics. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Phscs 451.
Applications of quantum mechanics and special relativity to atomic, molecular, statistical, condensed-matter, and nuclear physics; elementary particles.

471. Optics and Electromagnetic Theory. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Phscs 122, 221, 318.
Physical and quantum electromagnetic wave phenomena and modern topics such as coherent interference, holography, lasers, and radiation.

497R. Introduction to Research. (1–3:0:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su

498R. Senior Thesis. (1–3:0:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Individually directed research for seniors. Thesis topic must be cleared by faculty member before registration.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–3:0:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

512. Computational Physics. (3:2:4) F Prerequisite: Phscs 318, Math 434; or equivalents.
Computational methods for problems that occur in physics research, including ordinary and partial differential equations, nonlinear equations, integration, linear algebra, and signal processing.

513R. Special Topics in Contemporary Physics. (1–3:3:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su on dem. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Topics generally related to recent developments in physics.

517, 518. Mathematical Physics. (3:3:0 ea.) 517:F; 518:W Prerequisite: Phscs 318, Math 434.
Topics in modern theoretical physics, including applications of matrix and tensor analysis and linear differential and integral operators.

529. Advanced Observational Astronomy. (3:3:0) On dem. Prerequisite: Phscs 427, 428.
Advanced techniques of observational astronomy, emphasizing knowledge and skills necessary to carry out observational scientific investigation in astronomy.

545. Introduction to Plasma Physics. (3:3:0) F alt. yr. Prerequisite: Phscs 321, 431, 441.
Introduction to plasma physics, including single-particle motion and both fluid and kinetic models of plasma behavior.

546. Plasma Transport. (3:3:0) W alt. yr. Prerequisite: Phscs 545.
Transport processes in plasmas applied to space physics, fusion, and laser plasmas.

561. Fundamentals of Acoustics. (3:3:0) F
Generation, transmission, and reception of sound. Vibrating systems, properties of elastic media, mechanical and electrical energy, and radiation.

562. Applied Acoustics. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Phscs 561 or instructor's consent.
Acoustic transducers, spectral analysis, waves in ducts and enclosures, higher-order acoustic sources, fan noise, jet noise, passive noise and vibration control, active noise and vibration control.

565. Acoustics of Music and Speech. (3:3:0) Sp alt. yr. Prerequisite: Phscs 561 or instructor's consent.
Sound production and perception, techniques for analysis and synthesis, computer modeling, machine recognition, ensemble effects.

566. Acoustics of Enclosures and Interacting Structures. (3:3:0) Sp alt. yr. Prerequisite: Phscs 561, 562; or instructor's consent.
Acoustic fields in enclosures, reverberation time, low- and high-modal density fields, sound-structure interaction, transmission through panels, isolation techniques, and advanced noise and vibration control.

571. Laser Physics. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Phscs 222, Math 344, and basic understanding of atomic physics and optics.
Physics of coherent radiation throughout the electromagnetic spectrum, including amplification and laser cavities. Discussion based on quantum mechanical principles, but mathematical treatment classical.

581. Solid-State Physics. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Phscs 222 or equivalent.
Introduction for students in physics, chemistry, geology, and engineering. Phenomena occurring in solids and their related physical concepts.

585. Thin-Film Physics. (3:3:0) W alt. yr. Prerequisite: Phscs 222 or equivalent.
Preparation, characterization, use, and special properties of modern thin films; interdisciplinary treatment. Of interest to students in applied physics and engineering.

591R. Colloquium. (0.5:1:0 ea.) F, W
Required of all graduate students every semester in residence.

597R. Introduction to Research. (0.5:0:1.5 ea.) F, W
One or two research areas to be selected, with 20 hours of participation required each semester.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Physics and Astronomy Faculty

Professors
Allred, David D. (1987) BS, Brigham Young U., 1971; MA, PhD, Princeton U., 1973, 1977.
Berrondo, Manuel (1993) BS, U. of Mexico, 1966; PhD, U. of Upsala, 1969.
Dibble, William E. (1961) BS, PhD, California Inst. of Technology, 1954, 1960.
Evenson, William E. (1970) BS, Brigham Young U., 1965; PhD, Iowa State U., 1968.
Harrison, B. Kent (1964) BS, Brigham Young U., 1955; MA, PhD, Princeton U., 1957, 1959.
Hatch, Dorian M. (1968) BS, Utah State U., 1962; MA, PhD, State U. of New York, 1965, 1968.
Jones, Steven E. (1985) BS, Brigham Young U., 1973; PhD, Vanderbilt U., 1978.
Knight, Larry V. (1973) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1959; PhD, Stanford U., 1965.
Larson, Everett Gerald (1964) BS, MS, PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1957, 1959, 1964.
Mason, Grant W. (1970) BA, Brigham Young U., 1961; PhD, U. of Utah, 1969.
McNamara, D. Harold (1955) BS, PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1947, 1950.
Merrill, John J. (1971) BS, MS, PhD, California Inst. of Technology, 1955, 1956, 1960.
Nelson, H. Mark (1959) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1954; PhD, Harvard U., 1960.
Rasband, S. Neil (1972) BA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1964, 1969.
Spencer, Ross L. (1984) BS, Brigham Young U., 1974; MS, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, 1976, 1979.
Stokes, Harold T. (1981) BS, Brigham Young U., 1971; PhD, U. of Utah, 1977.
Strong, William J. (1967) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1959; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1964.
Taylor, Benjamin J. (1980) BA, PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1964, 1969.

Associate Professors
Christensen, Clark G. (1972) BS, Brigham Young U., 1966; PhD, California Inst. of Technology, 1972.
Hart, Grant W. (1985) BS, Brigham Young U., 1977; PhD, U. of Maryland, 1983.
Hess, Brett C. (1994) BS, Brigham Young U., 1982; PhD, Iowa State U., 1988.
Moody, J. Ward (1990) BS, Brigham Young U., 1980; MS, PhD, U. of Michigan, 1984, 1986.
Rees, Lawrence B. (1986) BS, Brigham Young U., 1976; MS, PhD, U. of Maryland, 1979, 1983.
Turley, R. Steven (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1978; PhD, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1984.
VanHuele, Jean-François S. (1988) BS, Teacher's Proficiency, PhD, Brussels Free U., Belgium, 1979, 1983, 1987.

Assistant Professors
Peatross, Justin B. (1995) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1988, 1986; PhD, U. of Rochester, 1993.
Sommerfeldt, Scott D. (1995) BM, MS, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1986; PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1989.

Research Physicist
Peterson, Bryan G. (1991) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1983.

Emeriti
Ballif, Jae R. (1962) BS, Brigham Young U., 1953; MA, PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1961, 1962.
Barnett, J. Dean (1958) BA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1954, 1959.
Decker, Daniel L. (1958) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1955; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1958.
Dixon, Dwight R. (1959) BS, Utah State U., 1942; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1955.
Dudley, J. Duane (1956) BS, Brigham Young U., 1952; MA, Rice U., 1953; PhD, U. of Utah, 1959.
Gardner, Andrew L. (1964) BS, Utah State U., 1940; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1955.
Gardner, John H. (1949) BS, Utah State U., 1943; MA, PhD, Harvard U., 1947, 1950.
Hansen, H. Kimball (1963) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1959; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1966.
Hill, Max W. (1958) BA, Brigham Young U., 1954; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1959.
Jones, Douglas E. (1964) BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1959, 1964.
Palmer, E. Paul (1966) BA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1952, 1956.
Vanfleet, Howard B. (1960) BS, Brigham Young U., 1955; PhD, U. of Utah, 1961.

Polish

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Political Science

David B. Magleby, Chair
745 SWKT, PO Box 25545, (801) 378-3423

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
2254 SFLC, PO Box 26797, (801) 378-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Political Science are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Political science is the study of how people with varying interests, perceptions, and values establish orderly relationships ranging from the nearly anarchic competition between sovereign states to the usually harmonious associations within small communities.

Career Opportunities

The Political Science Department offers an undergraduate degree in political science for students who are preparing for graduate study in related fields, professional degrees (law or business), or a wide variety of public service occupations, or for liberal arts students who are interested in an undergraduate major that focuses on challenging questions facing modern society.

Students may emphasize the subfields of American government, comparative government, international relations, political philosophy, and public policy. Students wishing to enhance their preparation for public service or business careers may wish to pursue the joint BA-MA public policy degree.

An undergraduate degree in international politics is also offered for those students wishing to pursue studies focused on the political and economic relations that shape world affairs. Students who have had foreign living experience or who are interested in careers in the international arena will find this a particularly rewarding major.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA	International Politics
BA	Political Science
BA	Political Science Teaching
BA-MA	Public Policy
Minors	Political Science
	Political Science Teaching

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

General Information

All political science and international politics students should enrich their undergraduate education and enhance their career prospects with an off-campus internship experience. Several high-quality opportunities are available for which credit may be earned toward the political science major or minor.

Washington Seminar. Students from any academic discipline spend a semester or term in Washington, D.C., working in government, business, communications, or the arts. Complimenting course work involving readings and briefings on contemporary national issues is part of the curriculum. From 6 to 12 hours of upper-division credit may be earned.

Utah State Legislature Internship. During each winter semester students from any academic discipline may work as interns in the Utah State Legislature. Students interested in legislative and public policy processes will particularly benefit from the experience. Complimenting course work on state government can be taken in conjunction with the internship. From 6 to 12 hours of upper-division credit may be earned.

State and Local Government Internships. Throughout the year students may intern with city, county, or state governments, as well as the district offices of U.S. senators and representatives (availability of positions may vary). From 3 to 6 hours of upper-division credit may be earned.

International Internships. The International Internship Program at the David M. Kennedy Center for International and Area Studies places students in a variety of internships with foreign governments and international institutions.

Requirements

1. Internships should be completed during the junior or senior year. Prior to the internship students should have completed PlSc 110 and 200.
2. Students must have a cumulative grade point average of 2.7 or better (Washington Seminar requires a 3.0) and be in good academic standing. Strong research and writing skills are important qualifications.
3. All internship programs have a strong and complimenting academic component to help students gain the most from their experience. Students completing any of the above internships must be enrolled for credit.

BA International Politics (45 hours*)

The Discipline

International politics is a discipline-based major built around the subfield of political science called "international relations." It focuses on the political and economic relations that shape world affairs, including the traditional issues of war and peace, diplomacy and security, and the increasingly important field of international political economy. Students with foreign language skills or with foreign living experiences may expand their knowledge of foreign areas and the interactions between them through this major. This major attempts to follow the admonition of the Doctrine and Covenants to teach one another "things which are abroad; the wars and the perplexities of the nations, and the judgments which are on the land; and a knowledge also of countries and of kingdoms" (88:79).

Career Opportunities

International politics majors will find themselves prepared for additional graduate study in political science or international relations; professional degree programs in international business or international law; careers in foreign policy, national security, and diplomacy; or work with various international organizations. Students who plan professional or graduate school degrees or who wish to enter the foreign service or similar professional careers must begin early in their undergraduate careers to prepare for entrance to those schools and to acquire the skills necessary to be successful in those programs and careers. It is imperative that they consult with faculty advisors as early as possible about those plans.

Major Requirements

1. At least 27 hours of international politics courses must be taken in residency at BYU (BYU Independent Study courses meet this requirement).
2. Majors are strongly encouraged to take Phil 105 instead of Engl 115 to complete the GE First-Year Writing requirement.
3. PlSc 200 is prerequisite to most upper-division courses and must be taken no later than the sophomore year.
4. Complete the following (as early as possible):
   Econ 110.
5. Complete the following required foundation courses before higher-numbered courses (they do not need to be taken in order):
   PlSc 110, 150, 170, 200, 201, 202.
6. Complete one of the following theory courses during the junior year (note prerequisites in course descriptions). Be aware that the course you select will determine which capstone seminar under requirement 9 you may take:
   PlSc 350 or 370.
7. Complete the following:
   PlSc 372, 376.
8. Complete four courses from the following list (but no more than one each from history and geography):
   Geog 301, 341, 450, 455, 460, 470, 471, 480, 485.
   Hist 332, 374.
   PlSc 328.
   Any political science course in the 340s, 350s, 370s, 380s, 450s, 470s, 480s.
9. Complete one of the following capstone seminars during the senior year (note prerequisites in course descriptions). Be aware that the seminar you may select is determined by the 300-level theory course taken under requirement 6.
   PlSc 450, 470.
10. All international politics students who plan on graduate school or various foreign policy careers are strongly encouraged, in addition to their major, to obtain a foreign area study minor through the David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies. All students interested in international or comparative politics should strengthen their foreign language skills.
11. Students who plan to seek MA or PhD degrees are strongly encouraged to strengthen their quantitative and analytical skills by taking PlSc 328 and other quantitative courses taught through the Statistics Department or the Sociology Department. These students also should consult with faculty about other skills that specific graduate programs might require.
12. Students are encouraged to participate in the Washington Seminar, Study Abroad, or International Internship programs. Up to 6 hours of credit from these programs may be used under requirement 8 if the internship has some international responsibility or if certain international courses are part of the student's Study Abroad program.
13. Students who plan no formal education beyond the bachelor's degree should take courses that will provide marketable skills. Consult the college advisement center for suggested skills or courses.
14. Credit earned through the Advanced Placement examinations may not be used to substitute for any of the foundation courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Political Science (45 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. At least 27 hours of political science courses must be taken in residency at BYU (BYU Independent Study courses meet this requirement).
2. PlSc 101, 102, and 297 do not count toward the major or minor.
3. Only 6 hours of 298R (simulation course), 299R, or 399R combined may count toward the major.
4. No cooperative education (internship) credit from other universities or colleges will be accepted toward the major.
5. Majors are strongly encouraged to take Phil 105 instead of Engl 115 to complete the GE First-Year Writing requirement.
6. PlSc 200 is prerequisite to all upper-division courses.
7. Complete the following:
   Econ 110.
8. Complete the following required foundation courses before higher-numbered courses (they do not need to be taken in order):
   PlSc 110, 150, 170, 200, 201, 202.

9. Complete two of the following theory courses during the junior year (note prerequisites in course descriptions). Be aware that the courses you select will determine which of the capstone seminars under requirement 11 you may take:
   PlSc 300, 310, 330, 350, 370.
10. Complete 15 additional political science hours at the 200 level or higher (except above theory courses and capstone seminar). Only one 200-level course may be used to meet this requirement.
11. Complete one of the following capstone seminars during the senior year (note prerequisites in course descriptions). Be aware that the seminar you may select is determined by which of the 300-level theory courses you take under requirement 9:
    PlSc 400, 410, 430, 450, 470.
12. All students are strongly encouraged to complete an internship with one of the department's programs, such as the Washington Seminar, Utah State Legislature, or local government. Up to 6 hours of credit earned from an internship may be counted toward the major.
13. Students who plan no formal education beyond the bachelor's degree should take a double major or develop adequate skills through other courses that will enhance their employment opportunities. Consult the college advisement center for suggested majors or skills.
    Students anticipating a professional or graduate program should consult with the department for recommended courses to strengthen qualifications for professional or graduate studies.
14. Students scoring a 5 on the American Government or Comparative Government Advanced Placement Exams may waive 3 elective hours toward the major for each exam. However, this credit cannot be substituted for any of the foundation courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Political Science Teaching (89–95 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. At least 27 hours of political science courses must be taken in residency at BYU (BYU Independent Study courses meet this requirement).
2. PlSc 101, 102, and 297 do not count toward the major or minor.
3. Only 6 hours of 298R (simulation course), 299R, or 399R combined may count toward the major.
4. No cooperative education (internship) credit from other universities or colleges will be accepted toward the major.
5. Majors are strongly encouraged to take Phil 105 instead of Engl 115 to complete the GE First Year-Writing requirement.
6. A teaching minor is required for certification (approximately 16–21 hours).
7. PlSc 200 is prerequisite to all upper-division courses.
8. Complete the following:
   Econ 110.
9. Complete the following required foundation courses before higher-numbered courses (they do not need to be taken in order):
   PlSc 110, 150, 170, 200, 201, 202.
10. Complete two of the following theory courses during the junior year (note prerequisites in course descriptions). Be aware that the courses you select will determine which of the capstone seminars under requirement 12 you may take:
    PlSc 300, 310, 330, 350, 370.
11. Complete 15 additional political science hours at the 200 level or higher (except above theory courses and capstone seminar). Only one 200-level course may be used to meet this requirement.
12. Complete one of the following capstone seminars during the senior year (note prerequisites in course descriptions). Be aware that the seminar you may select is determined by which of the 300-level theory courses you take under requirement 10:
    PlSc 400, 410, 430, 450, 470.
13. All students are strongly encouraged to complete an internship with one of the department's programs, such as the Washington Seminar, Utah legislature, or local government. Up to 6 hours of credit earned from an internship may be counted toward the major.
14. Recommended sequences for teaching majors:
    PlSc 110, 310, 410; or PlSc 150, 350, 450.
15. Complete the Professional Education Component (28–29 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.
16. Students scoring a 5 on the American Government or Comparative Government Advanced Placement Exam may waive 3 elective hours toward the major for each exam. However, this credit cannot be substituted for any of the required core courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA-MA Public Policy (112 hours*)

At catalog press time requirements for the BA-MA in public policy were being restructured. Please see the Political Science Department for details.

The Discipline

Public policy is the systematic study of how governments go about accomplishing the tasks of providing public services, regulating industrial and commercial activities, promoting public values and concerns, and a host of other actions.

The Public Policy Program is a joint BA-MA program; students who successfully complete the program receive both degrees at the same time; separate degrees are not awarded. A master's degree is widely considered to be the entry-level degree for a career in public policy. The joint program streamlines the requirements so that both degrees can be earned within five years.

Career Opportunities

The program helps students develop a wide variety of skills, including the ability to critically assess the strengths and weaknesses of policy options and to evaluate arguments and normative principles concerning what governments should and should not do. One of the most important elements of public policy study is participation in an internship with a congressional office, state legislature, government agency, research organization, interest group, or some other office related to the student's policy interests.

Major Requirements

1. Formally apply for this program through the Department of Political Science and the Office of Graduate Studies.

2. Before being accepted into the program, complete the following with satisfactory grades:
   Econ 110.
   PlSc 110, 200, 201, 202.
   And select one course from the following:
   PlSc 330, 333.
3. Maintain a 3.0 GPA for all courses in the major.
4. Complete an internship and capstone seminar.
5. Complete the following:
   PlSc 313, 315, 331, 334, 599R (5 hours), 693R.
   Soc 303R.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Econ 275, 475.
   ManEc 375.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Econ 280, 380.
8. Select one course from the following:
   Econ 378.
   PlSc 328.
   Soc 300.
9. Select one course from the following:
   Econ 381.
   ManEc 376.
   PlSc 372, 530.
10. Select one course from the following:
    PlSc 532.
    PMgt 689.
11. Select one course from the following:
    PlSc 533.
    PMgt 632.
12. Select 24 hours approved by the director of the Public Policy Program.
13. To graduate with a concurrent BA-MA, complete an additional 30 hours for a total of 158 hours.
14. A total of 21 hours in the program must come from 500-level or above courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Political Science (21 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   PlSc 110, 150, 170, 201, 202.
2. Select two additional upper-division courses.
3. PlSc 101, 102, 297 cannot be counted toward the minor.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Political Science Teaching (21 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   PlSc 110, 150, 170, 201, 202.
2. Select two additional upper-division courses.
3. PlSc 101, 102, 297 cannot be counted toward the minor.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Political Science (PlSc)

Undergraduate Courses

101. Freshman Seminar. (1:1:0)
Academic expectations in the major and in higher education; review of campus resources; meetings with faculty.

102. Review of U.S. Government for Washington Seminar Students. (1:1:0)
Review of the essentials of American national government for nonmajors participating in the Washington Seminar. May not count toward a political science major or minor.

110. American Government and Politics. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also.
Origin and development of federal Constitution; national, state, and local governments and politics.

150. Comparative Government and Politics. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Patterns of European, Asian, Latin American, and other political systems.

170. Introduction to International Politics. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Basic forces, practices, institutions, and foreign policies of major powers; problem areas in international politics.

200. Political Inquiry. (3:2:1)
Methodology of political science, including theory and techniques of qualitative and quantitative research design. Prerequisite to all upper-division courses.

201. Western Political Heritage 1. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Western civilization from Greek antiquity to Renaissance, primarily from perspective of political philosophy and scriptures; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

202. Western Political Heritage 2. (3:3:0) Honors also. Prerequisite: PlSc 201.
Western civilization from Renaissance to present, primarily from perspective of political philosophy; exploring fundamental questions in human experience; examining formative events in history; understanding value of important texts.

230. Political Participation. (3:3:0)
Influencing public policy; legal mechanisms to promote or halt government action. Where and how to become involved.

297. Washington Seminar Preparation. (1:1:0)
Preparatory seminar for students who will be participating in the Washington Seminar.

298R. Political Simulation. (1–2:2:0 ea.)
Utah Intercollegiate Assembly or Model United Nations.

299R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:1:3 ea.) Prerequisite: by application.
On-the-job experience for lower-division credit.

300. Contemporary Political Theory. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 201, 202; or Phil 201, 202.
History of political science, including the moral and ethical dimensions of politics.

301. Philosophy of the Social Sciences. (3:3:0)
Comparative analysis of the philosophy of scientific and normative inquiry.

305. Advanced American Heritage. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: AHtg 100.
Intended especially for prospective American Heritage teaching assistants. Founding and historical development of the American order, including moral, constitutional, and economic aspects.

308. Theories of Human Freedom. (3:3:0)
Scope of human freedom at the metaphysical, individual, social, and political levels.

309R. Topics in Political Philosophy. (3:3:0 ea.)

310. Theories of American Politics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 110.
Development of political science as a discipline in America; fundamental American political thought; and major theories and approaches used to explain American politics.

311. State and Local Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
Independent Study also. Prerequisite: PlSc 110.
Relation of state and national governments, forms of state governments and politics, types of municipal governments and their operation.

312. Urban Government. (3:3:0)
Growth, development, dynamics, and problems.

313. Public Power of Interest Groups. (3:3:0)
Group theory and pluralism; private influence of public decisions, private performance, and enforcement of public functions; pressure group tactics; organization and function of interest groups.

314. The United States Presidency. (3:3:0)
Presidential power in the United States, focusing on major roles of the American presidency.

315. Congress and the Legislative Process. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 110.
Election process; structure, organization, and procedures of legislative bodies; relations with pressure groups, the president, and executive branch.

316. American Political Parties. (3:3:0)
Electoral and policy-making roles of American political parties today and their future in American politics.

317. Public Opinion and Voting Behavior. (3:3:0)
Relationship between attitudes, opinion, and voting behavior in American politics and institutions.

318. Campaign Management. (1–3:3:0)
Political campaigns from perspective of candidates, media, public, and the political system, as well as from broader perspective of democratic theory.

319R. Topics in American Government and Politics. (1–3:3:0 ea.)

320. American Politics Through Literature. (3:3:0)
American politics through the novel and other literary works. Developing political concepts and themes that come from significant political novels.

321. The Media in American Politics. (3:3:0)
News media's role in processes of American politics, including electoral process, legislative process, and public policy-making.

322. Principles and Issues of the Founding of the American Republic. (3:3:0)
Basic principles and issues underlying the founding of the American republic.

323. Freedom of the Will and Natural Law in Early Modern Philosophy. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 201, 202.
Research seminar: democracy's and self-government's evolution from early modern period to founding of American republic.

328. Advanced Methods of Political Analysis. (3:3:0)
Prerequisite: PlSc 200.
Quantitative techniques in political research.

329R. Topics in Political Behavior. (3:3:0 ea.)

330. Theories of Public Policy. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Econ 110, PlSc 110, 170, 200.
Major theories used in assessing public policies, including policy formation, interaction of politics and economics, institutions of policy making, and policy.

331. Public Policy Process. (3:3:0)
Needs and demands for public action on policy issues; organization of public support; processes and problems of decision making in public policy.

333. Politics of Bureaucracy. (3:3:0)
Theory and nature of bureaucracy; sources of power; political executives; staffs and agency personnel; conflicts with elected officials; public interest and bureaucratic control.

334. Public Ethics. (3:3:0)
Sources of values, areas of conflict with government policy, means of value accommodation.

336. Government and Religion. (3:3:0)
Christian-Hebraic concepts of state. American experience with church-state relations (First Amendment problems). Policy issues of concern to contemporary religions.

339R. Topics in Public Policy. (3:3:0 ea.)

340. Population and Hunger. (3:3:0)
Population and food production/ distribution prospects, problems and policy crises. Policy alternatives as seen from the vantage of developed and developing countries. Ethical features of proposed policies.

341. Western European Politics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 150.
Politics and policy in western Europe. State-building, party systems, nationalism, and cooperation among advanced industrial countries in comparative, historical perspective. Social and Christian democracy; European Union.

344. Comparative Political Economy. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 150.
Overview of political economy from a comparative perspective. Classic theorists (Smith, Marx, Schumpeter, etc.); classic questions (industrialization, national economic policy, property, globalization, law, and economics).

347. Russian Politics. (3:3:0)
Politics of the Soviet Union and its successor states; Communist system of government; Gorbachev reforms; disintegration of the USSR and evolution of a new political system.

348. Korea, Taiwan, and South East Asian Politics. (3:3:0)
Comparative analysis of political developments in key nations of East and Southeast Asia, including regional relationships.

349R. Topics in Politics. (1–3:3:0 ea.)

350. Theories of Comparative Politics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 150.
Selected issues of comparative politics such as crisis and discontinuity; development; political infrastructure (e.g., political culture and social structure); political institutions.

351. British Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
Examination of the origin and contemporary operation of British political institutions as they relate to British society.

352. African Politics. (3:3:0)
Processes of change and development of nation states; African regionalism and relations with other nations; contemporary political issues.

353. China: Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
Structure and behavior of politics; contemporary problems. Also for Asian Studies majors.

354. Japan: Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
Structure and behavior of politics; contemporary problems. For both political science and Asian Studies majors.

355. Canadian Government and Politics. (3:3:0)
Growth and development of Canada and its government; Canada's role in the contemporary world.

357. Middle East: Political Systems. (3:3:0)
Social, philosophical, and religious impact on Middle East political institutions in an era of modernization and conflict.

358. Politics and Society in Latin America. (3:3:0)
Conceptual and contemporary issues in Latin America's search for political order and economic development.

359R. Topics in Comparative Politics. (3:3:0 ea.)

360. Constitutional Law—American Federal System. (3:3:0)

361. Constitutional Law—Rights and Immunities. (3:3:0)

364. Jurisprudence. (3:3:0)
Problem approach to ancient and modern legal philosophies, emphasizing the nature of justice and the relation of law to morality.

369R. Topics in Law and Justice. (1–3:3:0 ea.)

370. Theory of International Relations. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 170, 200.
Most influential traditions of thought in international relations; includes realism, idealism, Marxism, neorealism, complex interdependence, etc.

371. Foreign Policy Analysis. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 200, 370.
Survey of research regarding multiple levels of foreign policy analysis: individual, group, bureaucratic, societal, economic, systemic.

372. International Political Economy. (3:3:0)
Political implications of international trade, investment, and monetary policies within an increasingly interdependent global context; transnationalism.

373. International Law. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 170.
Nature and function of international law; recognition, succession, jurisdiction rights, and immunities of states; nationality and jurisdiction over nations.

374. Ethics and International Affairs. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 200.
Ethical considerations in study and practice of international politics. Realism, idealism, and other theories of state behavior subjected to ethical standards.

375. International Organizations. (3:3:0)
International institutions; transnational relations; rise of newer political organizations: League of Nations, United Nations, European communities, world religions, multinational corporations, terrorist groups, global regimes.

376. U.S. Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
Formation, implementation, analysis, and criticism of themes in American foreign policy.

377. National Security Affairs. (3:3:0)
Foreign policy, defense strategy, and intelligence security affairs.

379R. Topics in International Relations. (1–3:3:0 ea.)

381. International Relations of the Near East. (3:3:0)
Interregional relations and conflicts including foreign policy, political economics, Arab nationalism, processes of political change, new alliances, and superpower relations in Near East and North Africa.

382. International Relations of North America. (3:3:0)
Examination and analysis of factors that affect foreign relations of Canada, U.S., and Mexico, emphasizing trade, security, migration, environment.

383. Russian Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
Patterns, trends, and processes in Soviet foreign policy, 1917 to 1991; emerging foreign policy of post–Soviet Russia and the Commonwealth of Independent States.

385. International Relations of Asia. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: for political science, international relations, Asian Studies, and business majors.
Foreign policies and international relations of China, Japan, and Northeast and Southeast Asia; historical and contemporary review and analysis.

386. Japanese Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
Process and outcomes of Japan's foreign policy; analysis of its relations with other nations in a historical and contemporary setting.

388. Chinese Foreign Policy. (3:3:0)
Structure and process of foreign policy of the People's Republic of China.

391. Advanced Seminar on Current Issues. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: acceptance to Washington Seminar.
For students interning in Washington, D.C. Briefings and lectures from government officials and agencies, as well as directed readings on current issues.

392. Seminar in State Government. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: acceptance to Utah state legislature internship.
For students interning with the Utah state legislature. Briefings from state officials and others involved with government.

393. Readings in National Policy and Institutions. (3:1:0) Prerequisite: acceptance to the Washington Seminar.
Directed readings focusing on policies and institutions relating to the student's internship experience.

399R. Cooperative Education Internships. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: acceptance into program.
Work-study on the international, national, state, and local level.

400. Capstone Seminar in Political Theory. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 200, 201, 202, 300. For political science majors only.
Seminar in political theory for students in their senior year.

401. Hume's Political Thought. (3:3:0)
Political essays of David Hume.

402. Plato's Political Thought. (3:3:0)
Plato's dialogues that contain political teachings or implications.

405. Federalist Papers. (3:3:0)
The primary defense of the Constitution of the United States, which also constitutes the major commentary on that document.

406. Tocqueville on America. (3:3:0)
Alexis de Tocqueville's *Democracy in America*.

408. Hermeneutics, Deconstruction, and Politics. (3:3:0)
Critical political theory, including writers such as Hegel, Nietzsche, Heiddegger, Gadamer, Derrida, and Levinas.

410. Capstone Seminar in American Politics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 110, 200, 310. For political science majors only.
Seminar in American politics and government for students in their senior year.

430. Capstone Seminar in Public Policy. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 110, 200, 330. For political science and public policy majors only.
Seminar in public policy for students in their senior year.

450. Capstone Seminar in Comparative Politics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 150, 200, 350. For political science and international politics majors only.
Seminar in comparative politics and government for students in their senior year.

451. Revolution. (3:3:0)
Causes and process of political revolution.

452. Islam and Middle East Politics. (3:3:0)
Influence of the Islamic religion on politics of the Middle East.

453. Political Violence and Terrorism. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 200.
Understanding terrorism, insurgency, guerrilla warfare, and other forms of political violence worldwide.

454. Jerusalem: Past, Present, and Future. (3:3:0)
Regarded as a key in the process of conflict resolution, Jerusalem in light of its rich political, historical, and religious past, together with its controversial future.

457. Arab-Palestinian-Israeli Conflict. (3:3:0)
Emphasizes historical background, current situation, and alternatives leading to conflict resolution.

458. Totalitarianism. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 150.
Totalitarian systems of government and philosophy in nineteenth and twentieth centuries.

470. Capstone Seminar in International Relations. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 170, 200, 370. For political science and international politics majors only.
Seminar in international relations and politics for students in their senior year.

471. Intelligence and National Security. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 200.
Relationship between theory and practice of intelligence and national security of states.

472. International Political Economy of Women. (3:3:0) W Recommended: PlSc 200 or Hist 200.
Effects upon national, international, and developmental policies when women are rendered visible and valued.

498R. Directed Individual Study. (1–3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: senior status and department chair's and instructor's consent.

499. Honors Thesis. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: completion of lower-division political science major requirements and two 300-level theory courses.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

509R. Advanced Topics in Political Philosophy. (3:3:0 ea.)
Contemporary issues.

518. Election Law and Reform of the Political Process. (3:3:0)
Issues in election law and governmental regulation of elections, campaigns, voting, and political participation.

519R. Advanced Topics in American Government. (3:3:0 ea.)

529R. Advanced Topics in Political Behavior. (3:3:0 ea.)

530. Political Economy. (3:3:0)
Competing theories of the relationship between economics and politics and specific fiscal, monetary, and regulatory policies.

532. Policy Analysis and Methods 1. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: college algebra and microeconomics.
Policy analytic methods: program evaluation, management information systems, benefit-cost analysis, and decision theory.

533. Policy Analysis and Methods 2. (3:3:0)
Policy analytic methods: surveys and optimization models, statistical analyses, simulation, and social choice models.

534. Public Sector Productivity. (3:3:0)
Assessment of government productivity at federal, state, and local levels, including links to budget processes; business management models.

535. Natural Resources Policy. (3:3:0)
Processes and politics of public policies related to natural resources. Problems of analysis and evaluation.

536. Environmental Regulation. (3:3:0)
Regulatory programs aimed at air and water pollution, hazardous waste, toxic chemicals, and other environmental problems. Alternative regulatory mechanisms and approaches.

537. Education Policy. (3:3:0)
Role and public expectations of educational institutions, collection and distribution of financial resources, and productivity and performance assessment.

538. Urban Policy. (3:3:0)
Tension between spatial and social policies, and role of institutional actors.

539R. Advanced Topics in Public Policy. (3:3:0 ea.)

544. Public Policy and the Family. (3:3:0)
Family in political society: specific laws and policies such as divorce, welfare, reproduction, and education.

545. Social Policy. (3:3:0)
Justifications for government intervention in families and individual lives, effectiveness of social policies.

549R. Advanced Topics in Politics. (3:3:0 ea.)
Politics of growth, inequality, ethnicity, and class conflict.

558. Political Economics of Development. (3:3:0)
Uneven distribution of global resources; politics of underdevelopment.

559R. Advanced Topics in Comparative Government. (3:3:0 ea.)
Modernization and political change; comparative legislatures, etc.

569R. Advanced Topics in Law and Justice. (3:3:0 ea.)

570. Advanced Theory of International Relations: Core Readings. (3:3:0)
Theory and research of international relations.

571. Foreign Policy Analysis. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: PlSc 200, 370.
Survey of research regarding multiple levels of foreign policy analysis: individual, group, bureaucratic, societal, economic, and systemic.

572. Continuity and Change in the International Political Economy. (3:3:0)
Dynamics of change in international political economy in post–Cold War period.

578R. Advanced Topics in Foreign Policies. (3:3:0 ea.)
Efforts to secure national security and international stability in a fragile and volatile global environment.

579R. Advanced Topics in International Relations. (3:3:0 ea.)
Relevant contemporary issues.

599R. Cooperative Education: Internship/Field Study. (1–9:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: acceptance into program.
Internships for master's candidates.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Political Science Faculty

Professors

Bowen, Donna Lee (1978) BA, U. of Utah, 1968; MA, PhD, U. of Chicago, 1972, 1981.
Bryner, Gary (1982) BA, U. of Utah, 1975; MA, PhD, Cornell U., 1980, 1982.
Daynes, Byron W. (1990) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1965; PhD, U. of Chicago, 1971.
Fry, Earl Howard (1980) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1972; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1976.
Hancock, Ralph C. (1987) BA, Brigham Young U., 1977; MA, PhD, Harvard U., 1980, 1983.
Hollist, W. Ladd (1981) BA, Utah State U., 1971; MA, PhD, U. of Denver, 1973, 1974.
Hudson, Valerie M. (1987) BA, Brigham Young U., 1978; MA, PhD, Ohio State U., 1983.
Magleby, David Blyth (1981) BA, U. of Utah, 1973; MA, PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1974, 1979.
Porter, Bruce D. (1992) BA, Brigham Young U., 1976; AM, PhD, Harvard U., 1978, 1979.
Reynolds, Noel B. (1970) BA, Brigham Young U., 1967; MA, PhD, Harvard U., 1968, 1971.
Sorensen, Alma Don (1970) BS, Utah State U., 1960; MA, PhD, U. of Illinois 1962, 1965.
Taylor, Stanley A. (1968) BS, Brigham Young U., 1959; MA, MALD, PhD, Fletcher School of Law and Diplomacy, 1961, 1962, 1968.
Thomson, Dennis L. (1977) BA, U. of Idaho, 1960; MA, Arizona State U., 1961; PhD, U. of California, Santa Barbara, 1969.
Vetterli, R. Richard (1979) BA, Brigham Young U., 1959; MA, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1961; PhD, U. of California, Riverside, 1972.

Associate Professors

Bohn, David Earle (1975) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1969; PhD, Columbia U., 1974.
Davis, Richard (1992) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1979; MA, PhD, Syracuse U., 1983, 1986.
Galbraith, David B. (1985) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1965; PhD, Hebrew U. of Jerusalem, 1984.
Hyer, Eric (1988) BA, Brigham Young U., 1979; MA, Columbia U., 1981; East Asian Institute Cert., 1982; MPhil, Columbia U., 1983; PhD, Columbia U., 1989.
Patterson, Kelly D. (1992) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1982, 1984; PhD, Columbia U., 1989.
Snow, R. J. (1990) BA, U. of Utah, 1962; MA, PhD, Northwestern U., 1965, 1966.

Assistant Professors

Christensen, Raymond V. (1996) BA, Brigham Young U., 1984; JD, MA, PhD, Harvard U., 1987, 1990, 1992.
Edwards, Paul S. (1995) BA, Brigham Young U., 1986; JD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1991.
Griffin, John R. (1996) BA, Harvard U., 1991; PhD, Massachusetts Inst. of Technology, 1996.
Marostica, Matthew (1998) BA, Brigham Young U., 1985; MA, PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1988, 1997.
Nielson, Daniel L. (1996) BA, Brigham Young U., 1988; PhD, U. of California, San Diego, 1996.
Wrathall, Mark A. (1996) BA, Brigham Young U., 1988; MA, Boston Coll., 1991; JD, Harvard U., 1991; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1996.

Instructors

Goodliffe, Jay M. (1997) SB, Massachusatts Inst. of Technology, 1992; MA, U. of Rochester, 1995.
Wilson, Sven E. (1997) Ba, Brigham Young U., 1989; MA, U. of Chicago, 1992.

Emeriti

Farnsworth, Lee W. (1964) BA, MA, U. of California, Berkeley, 1957, 1960; PhD, Claremont Graduate School, 1963.
Fletcher, Charles T. (1967) BS, Brigham Young U., 1939.
Hillam, Ray C. (1960) BS, U. of Utah, 1955; MA, George Washington U., 1958; PhD, American U., 1964.
Johnson, G. Wesley (1984) AB, Harvard U., 1957; MA, PhD, Columbia U., 1961, 1967.
Mabey, Melvin P. (1955) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1947, 1953; DPhil, Oxford U., England, 1955.
Midgley, Louis C. (1960) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1954, 1957; PhD, Brown U., 1964.
Morrell, Edwin B. (1961) BA, Brigham Young U., 1956; MA, PhD, Harvard U., 1959, 1966.
Paxman, Monroe J. (1973) JD, U. of Utah, 1949.
Reeder, Jesse W. (1952) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1934, 1937; PhD, Cornell U., 1952.
Riggs, Robert E. (1975) BA, MA, U. of Arizona, 1952, 1953; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1955; LLB, U. of Arizona, 1963.
Slover, Robert H. (1964) BA, U. of Oklahoma, 1935; MA, PhD, Harvard U., 1948, 1950.
Tullis, F. LaMond (1969) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1964; MPA, PhD, Harvard U., 1965, 1969.
Williams, Carwin C. (1964) BS, Brigham Young U., 1956; MA, Rutgers U., 1958.

Portuguese

See Spanish and Portuguese.

Psychology

Erin D. Bigler, Chair
1001 SWKT, PO Box 25543, (801) 378-4287

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
2254 SFLC, PO Box 26797, (801) 378-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Psychology are open enrollment.

The Discipline

The Department of Psychology offers a program designed to (1) provide knowledge about human behavior, (2) develop skills in the application of such principles, and (3) expand the frontiers of knowledge through student-faculty research and scholarly activity.

Career Opportunities

Psychologists engage in teaching, research, and administration and provide counseling, clinical, or consulting services to individuals and organizations. They are employed in colleges and universities; in public and private schools; in clinics, hospitals, and private practice; in business and industry; and in governmental and private agencies. The study of psychology has particular value for those preparing for parenthood or law and is also of value in supporting other specializations concerned with human behavior.

Most professional positions in psychology require advanced degrees, generally the doctorate, though the bachelor's degree may provide employment in such areas as high school teaching, probation work, junior-level social work, and employment interviewing.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS	Psychology
BS	Psychology Teaching
Minors	Psychology
	Psychology Teaching

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS	Psychology
PhD	Psychology
PhD	Clinical Psychology

For more information, see the 1998–99 Graduate Studies Catalog.

BS Psychology (46 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. At least 22 of the total major credits must be 300-level or above.
2. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
3. At least 23 hours of psychology major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
4. A maximum of 13 hours may be taken as Independent Study (only 8 of which may count as residence hours).
5. Complete the following:
   Psych 111.
6. Select one of the following options:
   Either Psych 301, 302
   Or Psych 305.
7. Select three of the following core courses:
   Psych 320, 321, 322, 341, 342, 350.

   Note: Only one course may be taken from Psych 320, 321, 322.
8. Select three of the following core courses:
   Psych 361, 370, 375, 381, 382.

   Note: Behavioral Neurobiology is a two-semester course (Psych 381 and 382). Students may count only one of these courses toward fulfilling a requirement in this area.

9. Complete the following:
   Psych 378, 490.
10. Complete one of the following cultural diversity courses:
    Anthr 101, 312
    Soc 323.
11. Complete one of the following gender issues courses:
    Hist 384
    Psych 306, 308
    Soc 367.
    WS 222.
12. Complete 6 hours from any psychology course not already taken. No more than 3 hours of 199R, 399R, 3 hours of 390R, and 6 hours of 492R, 495R, or 499R will be counted.

Recommended

1. To augment the major, courses in other disciplines are recommended that develop skills in analytical thinking, writing, and relevant computer usage. Illustrative courses are:
   Phil 205.
   Engl 315, 316.
   Soc 303R.
2. A minor is not required, but students may select one minor or a combination of courses depending on their educational and vocational objectives. The same courses cannot count for both the major and the minor. If planning to terminate with a bachelor's degree, students should choose courses that broaden their employment opportunities in such areas as secretarial work, recreation, social work, and various branches of business.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Psychology Teaching (81–87 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. A teaching minor is required for certification (approximately 16–21 hours).
2. At least 22 of the major hours must be upper-division.
3. No D credit is allowed in the major.
4. At least 23 hours of psychology major credit must be taken in residency at BYU.
5. A maximum of 13 hours may be taken as Independent Study (only 8 of which may count as residence hours).
6. Complete the following:
   Psych 111, 321, 361, 378.
7. Select one of the following options:
   Either Psych 301, 302
   Or Psych 305.
8. Select at least one of the following core courses (320 and/or 350 are recommended):
   Psych 320, 341, 342, 350.
9. Select one of the following core courses:
   Psych 370, 375, 381, 382.

   Note: Behavioral Neurobiology is a two-semester course (Psych 381 and 382). Students choosing to take Behavioral Neurobiology may complete either semester to receive credit toward a psychology teaching major.
10. Complete the following:
    Psych 490.
11. Complete one of the following cultural diversity courses:
    Anthr 101, 312
    Soc 323.
12. Complete one of the following gender issues courses:
    Hist 384
    Psych 306, 308
    Soc 367.
    WS 222.
13. Complete 6 hours from any psychology course not already taken. No more than 3 hours of 199R, 399R, 3 hours of 390R, and 6 hours of 492R, 495R, or 499R will be counted.
14. Complete the Professional Education Component (25–26 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Psychology (15 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Psych 111.
2. Complete 12 elective hours from remaining undergraduate and 500-level courses; 9 hours must be 300-level or above. A maximum 6 hours of Independent Study credit may count toward a minor.

   Note: Behavioral Neurobiology is a two-semester course (Psych 381 and 382). Students choosing to take Behavioral Neurobiology as part of a psychology minor may complete either course.
3. No D credit is allowed in the minor.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Psychology Teaching (21 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Psych 111, 321, 361.
2. Complete 12 elective hours of psychology (Psych 240, 320, 350 are recommended.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Psychology (Psych)

Undergraduate Courses

*Designates courses containing valuable content related to the Graduate Record Examination (GRE).

111. General Psychology. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also.
Basic course in modern scientific psychology.

170. Understanding and Improving Your Memory. (1:0:0) Independent Study only.
Principles of human learning and memory; study skills and methods for improving memory.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Practical or applied experience complementing the major; designed to strengthen theoretical and practical base of knowledge.

201. Psychology of Music. (3:3:0)
Application of systematic framework of psychology to analysis of music.

211R. Frontiers in Psychology. (3:3:0 ea.)
Contemporary topics not covered in detail in Psych 111.

220. Human Development: Life Span (3:3:0)
Interaction of psychological, biological, and social influences on behavior and psychological development through the life span.

240. Personal and Social Adjustment. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Concepts of adjustment and application of psychological principles for coping with stress and interpersonal, emotional, and psychosexual difficulties.

270. Improving Mental Skills. (3:3:0)
Studying, rapid reading, remembering, and problem solving.

***301. Psychological Statistics.** (4:4:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Math 110.
Descriptive analysis and hypothesis testing applied to psychological research data.

***302. Psychological Research Design and Analysis.** (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 301 or equivalent.
Basic principles of designing, conducting, and reporting psychological investigations.

303. Parenting. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Theories and skills related to quality parent-child relationships.

***305. Psychological Research Methods and Statistics.** (7:6:2) Prerequisite: Math 110.
Principles and practice in conducting psychological investigations, including statistical analyses of research data. Can be substituted for Psych 301 and 302 in the major.

306. Sex Roles in the Family and Society. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Biological and social contributions to sex role development, sexual self-concept, and complementarity of sex roles.

308. The Psychology of Women. (3:3:0)
Overview of current theory and research in psychology of women: biological influences, gender learning, sexuality, health, victimization, work, gender sameness and difference.

***320. Developmental Psychology: Childhood.** (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Psych 111 or instructor's consent.
Physical, mental, emotional, and social development of the child.

321. Developmental Psychology: Adolescence. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Development and maturation during adolescence; research methodology.

322. Developmental Psychology: Adulthood. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Stability and change in psychological, physiological, and interpersonal processes through early, middle, and late adulthood.

330. Organizational Psychology. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Personal, interactional, and structural aspects of organizations; motivation, decision making, problem-solving communication, leadership, organizational structure, change. Students taking this class should not take OrgB 321.

336. Personnel Psychology. (3:2:2) Prerequisite: Psych 111.
Employment interviewing techniques; validation of psychological tests and biographical questionnaires; supervised experience in testing, job analysis, interviewing; exposure to current personnel programs.

338. Sport Psychology. (3:3:0)
Application of psychological principles to sporting activities.

***341. Personality.** (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Individual patterns of behavior, thought, and emotion; personality theories and their associated strategies of research, assessments, and personality change.

***342. Abnormal Psychology.** (3:3:2) Prerequisite: Psych 111.
Dynamics of maladjustment; major psychological disorders and therapeutic procedures. Fieldwork.

343. Child Psychopathology. (3:3:0)
Mental disorders of childhood.

346. Exceptional Children. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Exceptionalities and their psychological significance; gifted, mentally retarded, and physically and emotionally handicapped children.

348. Clinical Psychology. (3:3:0)
Personality theories, psychopathology, diagnostic interviewing and testing, psychotherapy techniques; research methods. Not a practicum.

***350. (Psych-Soc) Introduction to Social Psychology.** (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Conformity and obedience; socialization, norms, roles; attitudes, leadership, group processes.

353. LDS Perspectives and Psychology. (3:3:0)
Relationships between theories of psychology and LDS thought.

354. Psychology of Religion. (3:3:0)
Classification of religious behavior and experience; source of religious motivation; religion and the growth process.

357. Interpersonal Growth and Group Processes. (3:1:4) Independent Study also.
Effective interpersonal relationships and group functioning.

358. Leadership Development. (3:2:2) Independent Study also.
Principles and practices of successful leadership: decision making, communications, planning, team building, motivation, and interpersonal skills.

359. Environmental Psychology. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Psych 111.
Interaction between people and their physical context.

***361. Principles of Learning.** (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 301, 302.
Principles of learning; representative experiments.

***365. Motivation.** (3:3:0)
Determinants of motivation, relationship of motives to emotion, thought, personality, and action. Implications for understanding self and others.

***370. Sensation and Perception.** (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 301, 302.
Sensory basis of perception and principles of perceptual organization.

***375. Cognition.** (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 301, 302.
Perceptual organization; information processing; cognitive development; relationships between sensory analysis, perception, memory, learning, language, and problem solving.

376. Psychology, Language, and Culture. (3:3:0)
Principles of linguistics and their implications for cognitive theory; social psychology of language and culture; nonverbal communication.

378. Psychological Testing. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 301.
Construction and validation of standardized psychological tests.

381. Behavioral Neurobiology 1. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 301, 302.
Basic physiological, anatomical, and chemical foundations of psychology.

382. Behavioral Neurobiology 2. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 301, 302.
Continuation of Psych 381.

386R. Behavioral Neurobiology Laboratory. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Psych 381, 382, or concurrent registration and instructor's consent.

390R. Special Topics in Psychology. (1–3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

399R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: Psych 111 and department's consent. Available as credit *only* for participation in Washington Seminar.

490. Historical and Contemporary Issues in Psychology. (3:2:1) Prerequisite: senior standing.
Capstone course for psychology; survey, historical development, and comparative analysis of principal issues in contemporary psychology.

492R. Supervised Instructional or Research Experience. (1–3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's invitation to register.
Course-related instructional activities or laboratory/field research.

495R. Independent Readings. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

499R. Independent Research. (1–3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

500R. Research Methods. (3:3:0 ea.)
Intermediate course for first-year graduate psychology students, focusing on methodological tactics rather than statistical skills.

501. Data Analysis in Psychological Research 1. (5:4:2) Prerequisite: Psych 301 or Stat 222; or Stat 221, 223.
Using and interpreting major quantitative methods in psychology; some commonly used computer methods.

502. Data Analysis in Psychological Research 2. (5:4:2) Prerequisite: Psych 501 or instructor's consent.
Analysis of variance and covariance, multiple regression, and experimental design; introduction to multivariate methods.

***510. History and Systems of Psychology.** (3:3:0)
Survey of origins and development of modern psychology, including consideration of the schools and theoretical systems.

511. Philosophy of Science for the Social Sciences. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: instructor's consent or admission to PhD program.
Issues in philosophy of science as they apply to social sciences, including methods, epistemology, and construction of knowledge.

520. Advanced Developmental Psychology. (3:3:0)
Major research in developmental psychology, emphasizing theory, content, and methodology.

531. Organizational Psychology. (3:3:0)
Personal and interpersonal aspects of organizational life: goal setting, decision making, problem solving, communication, control, leadership, motivation, and change.

535. Behavior Modification Techniques. (3:2:2)
Practical application of behavior modification to academic discipline; emotional target behaviors of individuals and groups.

540. Personality Theory. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 341 and 5 additional hours in psychology.
Contemporary theories of personality developed within the framework of major psychological systems.

550. Theory and Research in Social Psychology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych-Soc 350 or instructor's consent.
Current theories and research on interaction with others.

552. Applied Social Psychology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych-Soc 350; graduate standing or instructor's consent.
Overview of domains in which social psychology theory and research have been applied outside the laboratory.

555. Group Dynamics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych-Soc 350.
Theories and research on small-group processes and mass behavior.

560. Learning Theory. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 361 and 5 additional hours in psychology.
Critical review of current theories and persistent problems.

565. Motivational Psychology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 365 or equivalent; graduate standing or instructor's consent.
Theoretical, historical, and empirical overview; recent trends and issues; role of animal studies; methodological problems.

575. Cognitive Processes. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 370, 375, or equivalent; graduate standing or instructor's consent.
Major theoretical and empirical developments. Interaction of sensory, perceptual, learning, and thinking processes.

577. (Psych-CS 535) Human-Computer Interaction. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: graduate or senior standing.
Human/machine interfaces for hardware/software integration. Psychological principles of computer interfacing. Human engineering, ergonomics, and software design principles for user-friendly applications.

583. Biological and Health Psychology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 381, 382, or equivalent.
In-depth examination of biological bases of behavior from perspective of health and disease.

584. Cognitive Neuroscience. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: graduate standing or instructor's consent.
Critical analysis of neurobiological bases of perception and cognition.

585. Human Neuropsychology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 381, 382, or instructor's consent.
Critical study of brain-behavior relationships.

586. Hormones and Behavior. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 381, 382.
Neural and endocrine mechanisms underlying behavior.

587. Perceptual Processes. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Psych 370, 381, 382; or instructor's consent.
Critical examination of sensory mechanisms and perceptual organization.

592R. Supervised Teaching Experience. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
For students receiving supervised teaching experience.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Psychology Faculty

Professors

Ballif-Spanvill, Bonnie (1994) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1966.
Bednar, Richard L. (1982) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1963; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1968.
Bergin, Allen E. (1972) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1957; PhD, Stanford U., 1960.
Bigler, Erin D. (1990) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1974.

Bloch, George J. (1989) BA, Brandeis U., 1962; MA, Claremont Graduate School, 1965; PhD, Stanford U., 1968.
Brown, Bruce L. (1968) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1968; PhD, McGill U., Canada, 1969.
Bunker, Gary L. (1970) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1961; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1966.
Burlingame, Gary M. (1983) BS, Andrews U., 1978, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1981, 1983.
Fleming, Donovan E. (1971) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1957; PhD, Washington State U., 1962.
Furhiman, Addie (1992) BS, Utah State U., 1956; MA, Brigham Young U., 1965; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1969.
Higbee, Kenneth L. (1970) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1966; PhD, Purdue U., 1970.
Jensen, Larry C. (1965) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1961; PhD, Michigan State U., 1966.
Lambert, Michael J. (1971) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1967, 1968, 1971.
Miller, Harold L., Jr. (1975) BS, Arizona State U., 1970; PhD, Harvard U., 1975.
Pedersen, Darhl M. (1962) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1958; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1962.
Robinson, Paul W. (1969) BS, MS, PhD, Utah State U., 1965, 1967, 1973.
Slife, Brent D. (1994) BA, William Jewell Coll., 1976; MS, PhD, Purdue U., 1977, 1981.
Smith, Kay H. (1961) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1958; PhD, Wayne State U., 1962.
Weight, David G. (1969) BA, MS, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1965; PhD, U. of Washington, 1969.
Williams, Richard N. (1981) BS, Brigham Young U., 1974; MS, PhD, Purdue U., 1978, 1981.
Wood, Larry Eugene (1977) BS, Brigham Young U., 1967; MA, PhD, U. of Iowa, 1970, 1971.

Associate Professors
Barlow, Sally H. (1978) BA, MSW, PhD, U. of Utah, 1971, 1973, 1978.
Carpenter, Bruce N. (1996) BS, Brigham Young U., 1974; MS, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1977, 1980.
Wells, M. Gawain (1972) AS, Dixie Coll., 1964; BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1968; PhD, Purdue U., 1972.

Associate Clinical Professor
Maughan, Michael L. (1972) BS, MS, EdD, Utah State U., 1966, 1968, 1970.

Assistant Professors
Clayton, Claudia J. (1991) BS, Brigham Young U., 1970; PhD, U. of Utah, 1976; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1991.
Ehlert, Michael B. (1995) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1988, 1990; PhD, U. of New Hampshire, 1995.
Ervin, Gregory (1995) BS, Mercy Coll., 1973; PhD, U. of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1981.
Norton, Elizabeth J. (1994) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1978.
Ridge, Robert D. (1992) BS, Brigham Young U., 1987; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1992.
Spangler, Diane (1997) BA, Pomona Coll., 1989; MS, PhD, U. of Oregon, 1991, 1994.

Assistant Clinical Professor
Nielsen, Stevan L. (1988) BS, Brigham Young U., 1976; PhD, U. of Washington, 1984.

Emeriti
Bennion, Robert C. (1961) BA, Brigham Young U., 1956; MA, PhD, Ohio State U., 1959, 1961.
Budge, Harold S. (1960) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1958, 1960; PhD, U. of Utah, 1981.
Cundick, Bert P. (1962) BA, MS, U. of Utah, 1957, 1959; PhD, Ohio State U., 1962.
Daniels, Philip B. (1961) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1954, 1957; PhD, Harvard U., 1962.
Hardy, Kenneth R. (1954) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1948, 1949; PhD, U. of Michigan, 1954.
Howell, Robert J. (1952) BA, MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1948, 1949, 1951.
Payne, I. Reed (1964) BS, Brigham Young U., 1956; MS, PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1958, 1963.
Robinson, Burton W. (1955) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1951, 1951; PhD, Purdue U., 1954.
Stimpson, David V. (1964) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1959, 1960; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1964.
Sullivan, Clyde E. (1981) BA, PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1948, 1958.

Public Management

See Management, Marriott School of (in the Romney Institute of Public Management section).

Range Science

See Botany and Range Science.

Recreation Management and Youth Leadership

S. Harold Smith, Chair
279 RB, PO Box 22024, (801) 378-4369

College of Health and Human Performance Advisement Center
205 RB, PO Box 22117, (801) 378-3638

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Recreation Management and Youth Leadership are open enrollment except the therapeutic recreation emphasis.

The Discipline

Students in the Department of Recreation Management and Youth Leadership may choose an undergraduate emphasis from the following areas: leisure services management, therapeutic recreation, or youth leadership. Though the three emphasis areas represent diverse and unique approaches, they share the commitment to a service-oriented profession.

Depending upon the particular emphasis, courses prepare students in the areas of leadership skills, systems management, budgeting and finance, program development, facilities management, philosophy of volunteerism, and current issues in the field. Because of the nature of the profession, course work may not be limited to the Recreation Management and Youth Leadership Department. Course work in the related disciplines of business, behavioral sciences, health sciences, physical education, arts, landscape architecture/design, and travel and tourism may be required.

Career Opportunities

The curriculum will prepare students to provide professional services designed to meet the recreation, leisure, and youth leadership needs of communities, families, and individuals. Employment may be found in community (municipal/government) recreation agencies; private, commercial, industrial or military recreation programs; youth agencies and Scouting; clinical treatment settings (hospitals) or adaptive programs for people with disabilities; state and national parks; and/or educational settings.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Recreation Management and Youth Leadership
Emphases:
- Leisure Services Management
- Therapeutic Recreation
- Youth Leadership

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Youth and Family Recreation

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BS Recreation Management and Youth Leadership: Leisure Services Management Emphasis (45 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following foundation requirements: RMYL 304, 305, 307, 320, 485, 486, 487.
2. Complete 3 hours from the following: RMYL 199R.
3. Complete 9 hours from the following: RMYL 496R.
4. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete 12 additional hours of supportive courses for the major.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Recreation Management and Youth Leadership: Therapeutic Recreation Emphasis (54 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center or department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

General Information

1. Students interested in obtaining an emphasis in therapeutic recreation must complete RMYL 199R, 304, 307, and Zool 205 or 260 with a minimum GPA of 3.3 and then make application to the program. Applications may be obtained in 273 RB.
2. Students are advised to take Stat 221 to fulfill their Advanced Languages/Mathematics/Music general education requirement.
3. First aid and CPR certification must be obtained before completing the RMYL 496R internship experience.
4. Most agencies now require therapeutic recreation specialists to be certified through the National Council on Therapeutic Recreation Certification (NCTRC). Students should consult the NCTRC Candidate Bulletin to ensure eligibility to sit for the certification examination.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following foundation courses:
   RMYL 304, 305, 307, 320, 473, 486, 487.
2. Complete 3 hours from the following:
   RMYL 199R.
3. Complete 9 hours from the following:
   RMYL 496R.
4. Complete the following:
   RMYL 370, 471, 472.
   FamSc 310.
   Psych 342.
   Zool 205, 260.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Recreation Management and Youth Leadership: Youth Leadership Emphasis (50 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following foundation courses:
   RMYL 200, 244, 305, 306, 332, 371, 373, 375, 487.
2. Complete 3 hours from the following:
   RMYL 199R.
3. Complete 9 hours from the following:
   RMYL 496R.
4. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete 13 additional hours of supportive courses for the major.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Recreation Management and Youth Leadership (RMYL)

Undergraduate Courses

123. Introduction to Outdoor Recreation. (2:1:3)
Participation in a variety of outdoor activities.

199R. Cooperative Education Practicum. (1–3:1:Arr. ea.)
Internship or cooperative education experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript. Fee.

200. Keys to Leadership. (3:3:1)
Individualized experience designed to develop leadership skills through structured interaction and application of leadership principles.

201. Campfire Leadership. (1:1:0 ea.)
Training in outdoor campfire program planning and staging.

215. Social Recreation Leadership. (3:2:2)
Leadership skills for directing large social groups.

216. Crafts for Recreation. (2:1:3)
Administering and developing hobby craft skills for the recreation practitioner.

223R. Outdoor Skills. (2:2:4 ea.)
In-depth approach to leadership skills in selected outdoor specialty areas, including fly-fishing, winter camping, basic backpacking, camping, wilderness trek, mountain biking, survival, and summer camp programs.

244. Introduction to Youth Leadership (2:2:2)
Role of youth leadership within the American culture; career opportunities.

304. Leisure in Contemporary Society. (3:3:0)
Problems and opportunities resulting from the leisure era.

305. Financial Management. (3:3:0)
Financing recreation management and youth leadership facilities and services.

306. Youth Agency Administrative Functions. (3:3:0)
Organizational and operational practices of youth agencies on the administrative level.

307. Accessible Recreation. (3:3:0)
Making the recreation/leisure experience accessible to all people. Applications and implications of ADA in recreation/leisure settings.

320. Program Management. (3:2:1) Prerequisite: RMYL 199R, 304.
Organizing and administering community programs.

323. Basic Rock Climbing. (2:1:3)
Rock climbing. Free and aid climbing, route selection, safety, rescue, etc.

332. Community Relationships. (3:3:0)
Directing community resources toward the needs of youth.

370. Introduction to Therapeutic Recreation. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: RMYL 199R, 304, 307; Zool 205 or 260.
Philosophy, agencies, professional organizations, services, programs, practices, and disability groups related to therapeutic recreation.

371. Facilitating Meetings and Conferences. (3:3:1)
Identifying roles of process facilitators as they plan and conduct meetings, activities, and conferences.

373. Practicum in Volunteer Leadership. (2:1:5)
Participation with a youth-serving agency in a volunteer leadership capacity.

375. Executive Dynamics (3:3:0)
Executive leadership and personal growth practices calculated to meet executive leadership demands.

376. Agency Teen Programs. (2:2:0)
Comprehensive study of the teen programs of youth agencies from the perspective of the adult volunteer leader and professional Scout.

377. Boy Scouts of America (BSA) Programs. (3:3:0)
Comprehensive study of the Boy Scouts of America's Cub Scout and Boy Scout programs from the perspective of the adult volunteer leader and the professional Scouter.

380. Outdoor Survival Skills. (2:2:1)
Training to meet the adversity of primitive living without use of modern equipment and facilities.

384. Intramural Administration. (2:2:1)
Administrative procedures for intramural and recreational activities.

412. Computer Applications for the Recreation Profession. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: for majors only.
Orienting the undergraduate student to computer applications in the field of recreation management and youth leadership.

423. Management of Outdoor Systems. (2:2:Arr.)
Administering camps and outdoor programs; site selection and development; program planning and staffing.

425. Issues in Outdoor Recreation. (2:2:0)
Role of outdoor recreation in modern society, including government and nongovernment functions.

471. Assessment in Therapeutic Recreation. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: RMYL 370.
Patient assessment techniques and program plan development.

472. Program Dynamics in Therapeutic Recreation. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: RMYL 471.
Comprehensive, specific, and individual program design; assessment interviewing; documentation of patient progress and facilitation techniques; intervention strategies.

473. Issues in Administration of Therapeutic Recreation. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: RMYL 471.
Issues related to personnel/clinical supervision, standards of practice, ethical behavior, program evaluation, quality management, financing, organization, administration, leisure education, and credentialing in therapeutic recreation.

483. Public Facility Management. (2:2:0)
Understanding public facility management: stadium, arena, convention center, performing arts center, etc. Box office, security, staging, food service, utilities, housekeeping, crowd management, event coordination, promotion, contracts, television, lighting, sound, press relations, etc.

485. Management of Recreation Services. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: RMYL 199R, 304.
Personnel, financing, legal aspects, and city and departmental organization of recreation systems.

486. Legal Aspects and Risk Management of Leisure Services. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: RMYL 307, 485.
Legal and risk management issues in recreation/leisure settings.

487. Research and Evaluation. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: RMYL 481 or instructor's consent.
Academic and practical training to assess community recreational needs.

491. Recreation Facility Planning. (2:2:0)
Developing facilities for public and private recreation programs.

493. Park Planning and Development. (2:2:0)

495. Recreation and Community Education. (2:2:0)
History, organization, funding, leadership, facilities, and value of community education.

496R. Cooperative Education Internship/Senior Project. (1–9:1:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: RMYL 199R, 481, and instructor's consent.
Full-time professional internship.

497R. Special Topics and Research. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Special topics and research in recreation management and youth leadership.

499R. Honors Thesis. (3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: departmental approval.
Thesis project representing independent work and reflecting highest standards of undergraduate achievement. Must receive both departmental and Honors Program approval.

Graduate Courses

For graduate courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Recreation Management and Youth Leadership Faculty

Professors
Catherall, Thomas S. (1971) BS, MA, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1975, 1980.
Gray, Howard R. (1979) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1970; PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1977.
Naylor, Jay H. (1959) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1959; EdD, U. of Utah, 1973.
Olsen, Burton K. (1965) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1964; PhD, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1970.
Smith, S. Harold (1988) BS, Brigham Young U., 1967; MS, U. of Washington, 1968; PhD, U. of Utah, 1974.
Thorstenson, Clark T. (1969) BS, MRE, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1965; PhD, U. of Utah, 1969.

Associate Professors
Ferguson, Daniel D. (1996) BS, Oregon State U., 1970; MA, New York U., 1971; PhD, U. of Oregon, 1980.
Nelson, Douglas C. (1976) BS, MRE, Brigham Young U., 1973, 1976; PhD, U. of New Mexico, 1995.

Associate Professional
Holley, Bruce F. (1974) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1974.

Associate Teaching Professional
Palmer, Gary K. (1968) BS, MRE, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1967, 1981.

Assistant Professors
Hansen, John L. (1966) BS, MRE, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1966.
Phelan, C. Michael (1996) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1986, 1987; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1992.
Widmer, Mark A. (1995) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1988, 1990; PhD, U. of Utah, 1993.

Emeriti
De Hoyos, Benjamin F. (1961) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1961; PhD, U. of Utah, 1969.
Hafen, William J. (1954) AS, Snow Coll., 1948; BS, Brigham Young U., 1950; MA, Washington State U., 1953; EdD, U. of Utah, 1968.
Heaton, Alma (1953) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1950, 1951.
Heaton, Israel C. (1956) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1940, 1941; ReD, U. of Indiana, 1955.
Packer, Thane J. (1959) BS, Utah State U., 1939; MS, Brigham Young U., 1953; EdD, U. of Utah, 1974.
Skinner, Rulon Dean (1969) AA, Eastern Arizona Coll., 1950; BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1954, 1971.

Religious Education

Ancient Scripture

Andrew C. Skinner, Chair
375-A JSB, PO Box 25689, (801) 378-2067

Rex C. Reeve, Jr., Associate Chair
316-A JSB, PO Box 25648, (801) 378-3359

Ancient Scripture (RelA)

Undergraduate Courses

Asterisk (*) denotes core courses.

***121, 122. Introduction to the Book of Mormon.** (2:2:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also.
Sequential study of the doctrines, principles, and narrative of the Book of Mormon. RelA 121 covers 1 Nephi through Alma 29. RelA 122 covers Alma 30 through Moroni 10. *Returned missionaries may not register for sections numbered lower than 100.*

***211, 212. The New Testament.** (2:2:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also.
RelA 211 deals with the Gospels. RelA 212 deals with the Book of Acts, the Epistles, and the Apocalypse (Revelation).

301, 302. The Old Testament. (2:2:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also.
Introduction to the structure and teachings of the Old Testament. RelA 301 covers Genesis through 2 Samuel. RelA 302 covers 1 Kings through Malachi.

304. Writings of Isaiah. (2:2:0) F, W Honors and Independent Study also.
Historical, prophetic, doctrinal, and literary values of Isaiah, emphasizing latter-day interpretation and application.

314. Historical Background of the Bible. (2:2:0) On dem.
Historical and cultural contexts out of which the Old and New Testaments derive.

320. History and Contribution of Joseph Smith's Translation of the Bible. (2:2:0) F, W
Historical significance of Joseph Smith's translation of the Bible, its relationship to the other standard works, and its doctrinal contributions.

327. The Pearl of Great Price. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also.
Origin and content of the Pearl of Great Price.

392R. Special Studies in Religion: Ancient Scripture. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) On dem. Independent Study also.
Topical studies in religion based on student interest and teacher expertise.

Jerusalem Center Courses (RelA)

The following courses are offered only at the BYU Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies. Jerusalem Center courses may not be repeated.

101. Old Testament Survey. (2:1.5:3) Su
Survey of the Old Testament, integrated with extensive field study in the biblical world; leads to understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.

***111. New Testament Survey of the Gospels.** (2:1.5:3) Su
Survey of the New Testament Gospels integrated with extensive field experience in the biblical world; leads to understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.

***200. New Testament Studies.** (1–4:4:0) F, W
Integrated study of the New Testament and LDS history and prophecy in the biblical world; leads to an understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.

300. Old Testament Studies. (2:1.5:3) F, W, Su
Study of the Old Testament integrated with extensive field experiences in the biblical world; leads to an understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.

303. Old Testament Studies. (3:3:4) F, W
Study of the Old Testament integrated with extensive field experiences in the biblical world; leads to an understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.

***310. New Testament Studies of the Gospels.** (2:1.5:3) Su
Study of the New Testament Gospels integrated with extensive field experience in the biblical world; leads to an understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.

***311. New Testament Studies of the Gospels.** (3:2:4) F, W,
Study of the New Testament Gospels integrated with extensive field experiences in the biblical world; leads to an understanding, appreciation, and application of scriptural teachings today.

315. Keys to Scripture Study. (2:2:0) F, W Honors also.
A guide to more effective scripture study through consideration of principles, concepts, skills, study aids, and sources common to all of the standard works.

Graduate Courses

For graduate courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Ancient Scripture Faculty

Professors
Benson, Reed Amussen (1978) BS, MA, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1975, 1981.
Brown, S. Kent (1971) BA, U. of California, Berkeley, 1967; PhD, Brown U., 1972.
Condie, Spencer J. (1969) BA, Brigham Young U., 1964; MA, U. of Utah, 1965; PhD, U. of Pittsburgh, 1969.
Griggs, C. Wilfred (1972) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1968; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1978.
Jackson, Kent P. (1980) BA, Brigham Young U., 1974; MA, PhD, U. of Michigan, 1976, 1980.
Ludlow, Victor L. (1972) BA, Brigham Young U., 1968; PhD, Brandeis U., 1979.
McConkie, Joseph F. (1977) BS, MA, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1968, 1973.
Millet, Robert L., Dean (1983) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1973; PhD, Florida State U., 1983.
Robinson, Stephen E., (1986) BA, Brigham Young U., 1971; PhD, Duke U., 1978.

Associate Professors
Draper, Richard D. (1988) BS, Brigham Young U., 1968; MA, Arizona State U., 1974; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1988.
Hoskisson, Paul Y. (1981) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1973; PhD, Brandeis U., 1986.
Johnson, Stanley (1994) BS, MS, EdD, Brigham Young University, 1975, 1979, 1987.
Largey, Dennis L. (1989) BA, Church Coll. of Hawaii, 1972; MA, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1976, 1981.
Madsen, John M. (1987) BS, Washington State U., 1963; MEd, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1978.

Ogden, D. Kelly (1984) BA, Weber State Coll., 1971; MEd, Brigham Young U., 1974; MA, Inst. of Holy Land Studies, 1978; PhD, U. of Utah, 1982.
Parker, Todd (1993) BS, Weber State U., 1974; MEd, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1985.
Parrish, Alan K. (1984) BS, MBA, Utah State U., 1968, 1972; EdD, U. of Southern California, 1981.
Reeve, Rex C., Jr. (1981) BS, MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1962, 1974.
Seely, David R. (1987) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1981, 1982; AM, PhD, U. of Michigan, 1985, 1990.
Skinner, Andrew C. (1992) BS, U. of Colorado, 1975; MAR, Iliff School of Theology, 1978; MTh, Harvard U., 1980; PhD, U. of Denver, 1986.
Williams, Clyde (1991) BS, MEd, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1974, 1978, 1989.

Assistant Professors
Ball, Terry B. (1992) BS, MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1990, 1992.
Fronk, Camille (1993) BA, Utah State U.; MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1986, 1996.
Huntington, Ray L. (1995) BS, MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1977, 1995.
Judd, Daniel (1993) BS, Southern Utah U., 1980; MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1987.
Merrill, Byron (1991) BA, Brigham Young U., 1972; JD, U. of California, Davis, 1975.
Pike, Dana M. (1993) BS, Brigham Young U., 1978; PhD, U. of Pennsylvania, 1990.
Sommerfeldt, Vern (1991) BA, MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1980, 1988.
Thomas, M. Catherine (1994) BA, Brigham Young U.—Hawaii, 1969; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1989.
Wilson, Keith J. (1995) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1976, 1981; PhD, U. of Utah, 1995.

Emeriti
Anderson, Richard L. (1955) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1951, 1957; JD, Harvard U., 1954; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1962.
Bankhead, Reid E. (1948) BS, U. of Utah, 1947; MT, Brigham Young U., 1949.
Felt, Paul E. (1957) BA, Brigham Young U., 1942; MS, U. of Utah, 1954.
Harris, James R. (1966) BS, MA, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1952, 1958, 1965.
Horton, George A., Jr. (1983) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1957; EdD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1969.
Matthews, Robert J., (1955) BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1960, 1968.
Meservy, Keith H. (1958) BA, Brigham Young U., 1951; MA, Johns Hopkins U., 1966.
Nibley, Hugh W. (1946) BA, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1934; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1938.
Nyman, Monte S., (1966) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1952, 1958; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1965.
Parsons, Robert Ernest (1964) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1954, 1957.
Patch, Robert C. (1949) BA, U. of New Mexico, 1945; MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1949, 1964.
Rasmussen, Ellis T. (1951) BS, MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1942, 1951, 1967.
Shields, L. Grant (1970) BA, MRE, DRE, Brigham Young U., 1949, 1968, 1976.
Skousen, W. Cleon (1967) JD, George Washington U., 1940.
Tate, Charles D. (1960) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1954, 1958; PhD, U. of Colorado, 1966.
Taylor, Hal L. (1969) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1951, 1962.
Turner, Rodney (1956) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1949, 1953; EdD, U. of Southern California, 1960.

Church History and Doctrine

Raymond S. Wright III, Chair
375-B JSB, PO Box 25690, (801) 378-3691

Arnold K. Garr, Associate Chair
275-C JSB, PO Box 25606, (801) 378-3363

Church History and Doctrine (RelC)

Undergraduate Courses

Asterisk (*) denotes core courses.

100. Introduction to Mormonism. (2:2:0) F, W Only for students who are not LDS.
Culture, practices, and doctrines of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints; religion at BYU. It is strongly recommended that this course be taken the first semester at BYU.

130. Sharing the Gospel. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also. This class may not be *taken* or *retaken* by returned missionaries.
Recommended for all prospective missionaries. Focuses upon the purpose, skills, and doctrines of missionary work and prepares prospective missionaries for a more meaningful MTC and mission experience.

234. LDS Marriage and Family. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Honors also.
Courtship, marriage, and family relationships from an LDS perspective.

261. Introduction to LDS Family History (Genealogy). (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also.
Introduction to family history program of Church; emphasizes identifying ancestors in the first few generations for whom temple ordinances have not been completed; use of Church resources to simplify temple and family history activities.

262. LDS Family History. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: RelC 261.
Using documents created by the LDS Church to identify ancestors and submit their names for temple ordinances.

263. North American Family History. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: RelC 261.
Using records from Canada and the United States to identify ancestors and submit their names for temple ordinances.

264. British Family History. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: RelC 261.
Using documents from the British Isles to identify ancestors and submit their names for temple ordinances.

265. Scandinavian Family History. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: RelC 261.
Using documents from the countries of Scandinavia to identify ancestors and submit their names for temple ordinances.

266. Germanic/Slavic Family History. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: RelC 261.
Using documents from the countries of central and eastern Europe to identify ancestors and submit their names for temple ordinances.

267. Hispanic Family History. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: RelC 261.
Using documents from the countries of Central and South America and Carribean countries, Spanish U.S., and Spain to identify ancestors.

268. Southern European Family History. (1:1:0) Prerequisite: RelC 261.
Using documents from the countries of Portugal, Spain, Andorra, France, and Italy to identify ancestors.

***324, 325. The Doctrine and Covenants.** (2:2:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also.
Origin, content, and teachings of the Doctrine and Covenants. RelC 324 discusses Sections 1 through 76. RelC 325 considers Sections 77 through 138. Either 324 or 325 will satisfy the core religion reqirement.

333. Teachings of the Living Prophets. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also.
Calling and function of the living prophets; an emphasis on their teachings through recent conference reports.

341. Latter-day Saint History from 1805 to 1844. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also.
Church history and doctrine from the birth of Joseph Smith to his martyrdom.

342. Latter-day Saint History 1844–1901. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also.
Church history and doctrine from the martyrdom of Joseph Smith through the administration of Lorenzo Snow.

343. Latter-day Saint History from 1901 to the Present. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also.
Church history and doctrine from the administration of Joseph F. Smith to the present.

344. The International Church. (2:2:0) F, W Honors and Independent Study also.
History of the Church from 1830 to the present in Britain, Europe, the Pacific, Asia, Latin America, Africa, the Near East, and other areas.

350. The LDS Church in a World Setting. (2:2:0) F, W Study Abroad only.
Christian foundations, restoration, and historical development of the Church in selected regions of the world. Focuses on specific countries as part of Study Abroad Program.

351. The Gospel and the World's Religions. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Honors also.
Survey of non-Christian religions and comparisons with LDS doctrine and practice.

352. The Gospel and Christian History. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp or Su.
Historical Christianity from its inception to the present.

353. American Christianity and the Rise of the LDS Church. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp or Su
Historical roots and beliefs of the major Christian faiths of America, with special emphasis on the Restoration.

355. Judaism and the Gospel. (1:2:0) F, W, Sp or Su Honors also.
History, doctrine, and practices of Judaism in light of the restored gospel.

356. Islam and the Gospel. (1:2:0) F, W, Sp, or Su Honors also.
History, doctrine, and practices of Islam in light of the restored gospel.

370. Introduction to Teaching Seminary. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su
Philosophy, objectives, subject-matter areas, and related problems associated with religious education at the secondary level.

393R. Special Studies in Religion: Church History and Doctrine. (1:1:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also.
Topical studies in religion based on student interest and teacher expertise.

431. Doctrines of the Gospel. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also.
Doctrines of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints as taught in the scriptures and by latter-day prophets. Intended as a capstone experience to integrate doctrines and principles of the plan of salvation.

471. Methods of Teaching Seminary. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp Su
Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Prospective seminary teachers only.

472. Teaching the Developmentally Disabled. (2:2:0)
Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Training prospective Church Educational System teachers to effectively teach religious education to youth who are developmentally disabled.

473. Seminary Student Teaching. (2:0:0) F, W Prerequisite: RelC 471.
Evaluation of prospective seminary teachers.

475. Seminary Teaching Seminar. (1–2:2:0) Sp
Topics pertinent to success of newly appointed seminary teachers preparatory to fall teaching.

491, 492. Senior Seminar: The Gospel in Academic Disciplines. (1:1:0 ea.) F, W
RelC 491 and 492 may be taken concurrently or sequentially depending on college policy. See individual college for registration instructions. Generally taught by faculty from disciplines outside Religious Education.

Graduate Courses

For graduate courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Church History and Doctrine Faculty

Professors

Bennett, Richard E. (1997) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1975; PhD, Wayne State U., 1984.
Black, Susan Easton (1978) BA, Brigham Young U., 1966; MA, California State Coll., San Bernardino, 1975; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1978.
Brinley, Douglas E. (1990) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1964, 1966; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1975.
Cannon, Donald Q. (1973) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1961, 1962; PhD, Clark U., 1967.
Choi, Dong Sull (1987) BA, Korea U.; MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1984, 1990.
Cowan, Richard O. (1961) BA, Occidental Coll., 1958; MA, PhD, Stanford U., 1959, 1961.
Dahl, Larry E. (1978) BEd, U. of Alberta, Canada, 1961; MRE, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1968, 1971.
Esplin, Ronald K. (1980) BA, U. of Utah, 1969; MA, U. of Virginia, 1970; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1981.
Garrett, H. Dean (1985) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1967, 1969; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1974.
Johnson, Clark V. (1979) BA, Utah State U., 1963; MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1977.
LeBaron, E. Dale (1986) BS, MA, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1965, 1976.
Perkins, Keith W. (1975) BA, Arizona State U., 1959; MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1974.
Porter, Larry C. (1970) BS, Utah State U., 1957; MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1971.
Van Orden, Bruce A. (1986) BA, MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1975, 1986.
Wright III, Raymond S., (1990) BA, MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1967, 1973, 1977.

Senior Research Historian

Jessee, Dean C. (1980) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1959.

Associate Professors

Flake, Lawrence R. (1993) BS, MA, DRE, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1969, 1970.
Garr, Arnold (1991) BA, Weber State Coll., 1969; MA, Utah State U., 1974; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1986.

Keller, Roger R. (1989) BMus, U. of Colorado, 1968; MDiv, Princeton Theological Seminary, 1971; PhD, Duke U., 1975.
Peterson, Paul H. (1984) BA, MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1972, 1981.
Sperry, Kip (1991) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1974.
Top, Brent (1987) BA, MEd, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1976, 1980, 1984.
Wright, Dennis A. (1995) BS, U. of Idaho, 1968; MEd, Brigham Young U., 1973; PhD, Arizona State U., 1978.

Research Historian
Jensen, Richard L. (1980) BA, Utah State U., 1968; MA, Ohio State U., 1972.

Assistant Professors
Baugh, Alexander L. (1995) BS, Utah State U., 1981; MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1986, 1996.
Boone, David F. (1993) BA, MA, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1981, 1992.
Bott, Randy L. (1993) BS, MEd, Utah State U., 1970, 1974; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1988.
Dorius, Guy L. (1994) BS, U. of Utah, 1984; MEd, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1986, 1994.
Doxey, Cynthia (1997) BA, MS, U. of Utah, 1985, 1988; MPhil, U. of Cambridge, England, 1991; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1994.
Freeman, Robert C. (1996) BS, Brigham Young U., 1985; JD, Western State U., 1989.
Hedges, Andrew H. (1995) BS, Weber State U., 1986; MA, Brigham Young U., 1991; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1996.
Holzapfel, Richard Neitzel (1993) BS, Brigham Young U., 1980; MA, PhD, U. of California, Irvine, 1990, 1993.
Ostler, Craig J. (1995) BA, MEd, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1979, 1995.
Perkins, Jerome M. (1992) BA, MEd, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1977, 1989.
Richardson, Matthew O. (1996) BA, MEd, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1987, 1990, 1996.
Toronto, James A. (1992) BA, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1980; MA, PhD, Harvard U., 1984, 1992.

Emeriti
Andersen, Wilson Kay (1962) BS, U. of Utah, 1949; MEd, Brigham Young U., 1957.
Backman, Milton V., Jr. (1960) BS, MA, U. of Utah, 1954, 1955; PhD, U. of Pennsylvania, 1959.
Barrett, Ivan J. (1953) BS, Utah State U., 1938; MS, Brigham Young U., 1947.
Barron, Howard H. (1953) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1943, 1950; EdD, U. of Utah, 1953.
Berrett, Lamar C. (1963) BS, U. of Utah, 1952; MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1963.
Bowen, Walter D. (1964) BS, MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1958, 1965.
Burton, Alma P. (1959) BS, Utah State U., 1948; MS, Brigham Young U., 1950; EdD, U. of Utah, 1957.
Caldwell, C. Max (1978) BS, U. of Utah, 1958; MA, Brigham Young U., 1971.
Durrant, George D. (1989) BA, MA, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1964, 1971.
Fugal, John P. (1966) BS, MS, DRE, Brigham Young U., 1948, 1959, 1967.
Garrard, Lamar E. (1967) BS, U. of Idaho, 1949; BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1965, 1968.
Hartshorn, Leon R. (1965) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1959; EdD, Stanford U., 1965.
Horsley, A. Burt (1956) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1945, 1954; PhD, West Welhelms U., Germany, 1956.
Otten, Leaun G. (1972) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1959, 1965.
Pace, George W. (1970) BA, Brigham Young U., 1960; MA, Colorado State U., 1963; DRE, Brigham Young U., 1976.
Palmer, Spencer J. (1968) BA, Brigham Young U., 1952; MA, PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1959, 1964.
Petersen, Melvin J. (1964) BS, MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1948, 1955, 1964.
Stevenson, J. Grant (1953) AS, Weber Coll., 1952; BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1955.

Retail Management

See Management, Marriott School of (in the Institute of Retail Management section).

Romanian

See French and Italian.

Russian

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Scandinavian Languages

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Scandinavian Studies

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Secondary Education

See Teacher Education.

Serbo-Croatian

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Slavic Languages

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

School of Social Work

Kyle L. Pehrson, Director
223 KMB, PO Box 24476, (801) 378-4410

Wanda Spaid, Associate Director
214 KMB, PO Box 24470, (801) 378-3289

Shirley Cox, Undergraduate Coordinator
217 KMB, PO Box 24478, (801) 378-4320

W. Eugene Gibbons, Fieldwork Education Director
216 KMB, PO Box 24477, (801) 378-7756

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
2254 SFLC, PO Box 26797, (801) 378-3541

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the School of Social Work carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the school for specific details.

The Discipline

The School of Social Work offers a curriculum that includes both core courses in social work and supportive courses in sociology, psychology, English, and biology. This course work prepares the graduate for immediate employment in numerous human services and social work agencies.

Career Opportunities

The curriculum of the undergraduate social work program is designed to meet the following program goals:

1. Provide for immediate entry into professional social work practice as a generalist at the baccalaureate level.
2. Prepare students for graduate professional social work education and postgraduate effort.
3. Prepare students for other graduate professional programs where the principles of social work practice are utilized.
4. Encourage social understanding and personal development in preparation for the responsibilities of family life, church service, community leadership, and basic citizenship.
5. Equip students to move forward objectively and evaluate life realistically, and prepare them to be responsible change agents.
6. Recruit prospective social workers.
7. Strengthen the profession of social work.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under the following undergraduate degree program.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Social Work

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MSW Social Work

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BS Social Work (58 hours*)

Accredited by the Council on Social Work Education.

Major Requirements

1. Students are accepted as majors only on formal application after completing the published prerequisites (see item 5 below). Deadlines for submitting applications are March 1 and November 1. Several factors are considered because available slots are limited.
2. Students will not be allowed to enroll in SocW 362, 364, 405, 462, 496R unless officially admitted to the program. After formal acceptance as a major, the course sequence is then

outlined for the entire program. Without clearance from the fieldwork educational director, students cannot register for the required field experience (496R).

3. A minimum of 480 hours of social service agency experience is necessary for graduation, with 5 credit hours being issued for each 240 hours of field experience along with a weekly integrating seminar (SocW 496R). Students must remain in the practicum a minimum of four uninterrupted months.
4. No D credit will be accepted for major courses.
5. Complete the following:
   Psych 220.
   SocW 360.
   Zool 205.

   Note: At least a B grade in each course is required for application to the program.
6. After acceptance into the program, complete the following:
   SocW 311, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 368, 405, 462, 464.
7. Select 6 hours from the following:
   Anthr 330.
   FamSc 317.
   Hist 360, 369, 384.
   Psych 306.
   Soc 323.
   SocW 390R, 391R, 463, 550, 567, 595R.
   WS 222.
8. Complete 10 hours of the following:
   SocW 496R.
9. Complete the following supplementary course:
   Soc 112.
10. Select one course from the following:
    Soc 389.
    Psych 342.

Recommended Courses

Preparatory courses to be taken during the freshman and sophomore years:
Anthr 101.
Econ 110.
Psych 111.
Soc 111.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

School of Social Work (SocW)

Undergraduate Courses

311. Family Interaction. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: SocW 360.
The family system through life cycle stages; intrafamily processes; stresses and challenges; individual and family well-being; family interaction with societal systems within various cultures.

360. Introduction to the Field of Social Work. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Social welfare as a social institution; social work as a profession.

362. Social Service Practice 1. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: SocW 311; Psych 342 or Soc 389 (may be taken concurrently), SocW 360, Zool 205, Psych 220; concurrent registration in SocW 363. For majors only.
Methods of social work practice within a generalist framework: interventions with individuals. Successful completion of lab required.

363. Social Service Practice 1 Lab. (0.5:0:2) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: concurrent registration in SocW 362.

364. Social Service Practice 2. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: SocW 362, 363; Soc 112; Soc 389 or Psych 342 (may be taken concurrently); concurrent registration in SocW 368. For majors only.
Generalist social work practice; small group process as an agent for change and growth; task groups, therapy groups, and families as targets for change. Successful completion of lab required.

365. Social Welfare Programs and Services. (2:2:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: SocW 360.
The Social Security Act, federal block grants, federal transfer programs, and the private social welfare sector.

366. Social Welfare Policy. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: SocW 360, 365.
Social legislation processes; analysis of social policy and the knowledge available to social workers for involvement in social planning and policy change.

368. Social Service Practice 2 Lab. (0.5:0:2) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: concurrent registration in SocW 364.

390R. Special Topics in Social Work. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: SocW 362 or instructor's consent.
Course content varies from year to year.

391R. Special Topics in Contemporary Social Work. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: SocW 362 or instructor's consent.
Course content varies from year to year on basis of current need.

405. Introduction to Social Work Research Methods. (5:5:0) Independent Study also.
Qualitative and quantitative designs. Problem formulation, data collection, statistical analysis, writing, and presenting results.

462. Social Service Practice 3. (4:3:1) Prerequisite: SocW 362, 364, and concurrent registration in 496R. For majors only.
Generalist social work practice; macrolevel practice at organizational and community levels.

463. Child Welfare Services. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: SocW 362 or instructor's consent.
Theory and practice of child protection, adoption, foster care, etc.

464. Intervention with Minority Clients. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: SocW 360, 362, or instructor's consent.
Specific factors affecting social work intervention with clients of minority status, i.e., ethnicity, culture, race, lifestyle, etc.

496R. Senior Field Experience in Social Work. (1–10:1:9 ea.) Prerequisite: SocW 360, 362, 364, and concurrent registration in 462.
Practical experience in social service agencies; relationship between theoretical concepts and practice.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

550. Crisis Intervention. (3:3:0) F, W
Assessment and intervention in crisis situations with clients.

560. Substance Abuse and Addiction. (2:2:0) F
Historical/social overview of substance use in America and its associated problems; overview of each major drug type. Specific issues associated with use and its effects on minorities, women, and children.

567. Social Services for the Aging. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Process and impact of social service delivery systems on the aged.

595R. Directed Readings. (1–3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Social Work Faculty

Professors

Gibbons, W. Eugene (1969) BS, MSW, DSW, U. of Utah, 1960, 1963, 1974.

Pehrson, Kyle Lynn (1990) BS, Weber State Coll., 1969; MSW, U. of Utah, 1971; DSW, Catholic U. of America, 1980.

Associate Professors

Cox, Shirley E. (1995) BA, Brigham Young U., 1962; MSW, Howard U., 1967; DSW, U. of Utah, 1986.

Horton, Anne L. (1984) BS, Ohio State U., 1957; MSW, George Williams Coll., 1977; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, 1983.

Matheson, Kenneth W. (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1967; MSW, DSW, U. of Utah, 1970, 1976.

Norman, Judith L. (1990) BS, Brigham Young U., 1970; BS, Portland State U., 1972; MSW, DSW, U. of Utah, 1978, 1990.

Seipel, Michael M. O (1982) BS, MSW, U. of Utah, 1974, 1976; PhD, Cornell U., 1982.

Spaid, Wanda M. (1988) BA, Bethel College, 1969; MSW, U. of Minnesota, 1971; DSW, U. of Utah, 1988.

Walton, Elaine (1995) BS, MSW, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1986; PhD, U. of Utah, 1991.

Assistant Professors

Marett, Kevin M. (1992) BS, Brigham Young U., 1982; MSW, U. of Utah, 1985; PhD, Purdue U., 1989.

Pettys, Gregory L. (1997) BS, MSW, MS, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1985, 1985; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1994.

Special Instructors

Dennis Hansen, Pam Johstoneaux, J. P. Lilly, Wes Matheson, Kayleen Mitchell-Hill, Ramona Morris, Patrick Panos, Bertrand Peterson, Wendy Sheffield, Darlene Uzelac, Ron Wilkinson.

Emeriti

Blake, Reed H. (1967) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1959; PhD, Utah State U., 1969.

Christiansen, John R. (1957) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1949, 1952; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1955.

De Hoyos, Genevieve (1975) BA, Brigham Young U., 1954; MSW, Michigan State U., 1958; PhD, Indiana U., Bloomington, 1967.

Pearson, Dale F. (1970) BS, MSW, U. of Utah, 1957, 1959; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1981.

Shumway, E. Gene (1975) BS, Brigham Young U., 1951; MSW, U. of Utah, 1953; DSW, Case Western Reserve U., 1969.

Tanner, Elvin R. (1970) BA, Brigham Young U., 1962; MSW, U. of Utah, 1964; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1969.

Wheeler, Barbara R. (1979) BS, MSW, DSW, U. of Utah, 1970, 1972, 1978.

Sociology

Stephen J. Bahr, Chair
894 SWKT, PO Box 25393, (801) 378-6710

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
2254 SFLC, PO Box 26797, (801) 378-3541

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Sociology are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Sociology explores social life and the social causes and consequences of human behavior. Sociologists study people, their organizations, and their cultures. The organizations include families, tribes, communities, and societies, along with a variety of social, religious, political, and business institutions. The study of culture examines language, beliefs, and knowledge in societies.

Career Opportunities

Sociologists may be involved in the scientific study of deviance, family, minority groups, communities, or any of a variety of other subject areas. Some sociologists conduct surveys or social experiments. Growing numbers apply sociological knowledge in corrections and penology, education, public relations in industry, and regional and community planning. Some study urban or rural settings, and cross-national research is increasing.

One of the primary subject areas in the social sciences, sociology is a broad liberal arts major, rather than a narrow occupational specialty. Students who major in sociology are not trained for a single occupation, but instead they are qualified for a wide range of jobs and graduate programs. Job opportunities are greater for students with skills in research methods and social data analysis.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS	Sociology
	Emphasis (optional): Research and Analysis
BS	Sociology Teaching
Minors	Sociology (General)
	Sociology Teaching

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS	Sociology
PhD	Sociology

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BS Sociology (36 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. At least 9 hours of sociology major courses must be taken in residence at BYU.
2. Complete the following core courses with at least a C grade: Soc 111, 300, 306, 311, 350.
3. Complete two courses from the following with at least a C grade: Soc 420, 421, 422, 424, 429.
4. Complete an additional 15 hours of sociology courses with at least a C grade.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Sociology: Research and Analysis Emphasis (36 hours*)

We are in a high-tech era. Information gathering, data analysis, and distribution of information are prerequisites for any

informed person, group, or corporate entity. This emphasis gives specific hands-on experience with professional researchers in each of these phases of information utilization.

Major Requirements

1. At least 9 hours of sociology major courses must be taken in residence at BYU.
2. Complete the following core courses with at least a C grade:
   Soc 111, 300, 306, 311, 350.
3. Complete two courses from the following with at least a C grade:
   Soc 420, 421, 422, 424, 429.
4. Complete the following with at least a C grade:
   Soc 303R, 399R.
5. Select one course from the following with at least a C grade:
   Soc 405, 406.
6. Select one course from the following with at least a C grade:
   Soc 404, 408.
7. Complete additional courses within sociology up to a minimum 36 hours.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Sociology Teaching (78–83 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. At least 9 hours of sociology major courses must be taken in residence at BYU.
2. A teaching minor is required for certification (approximately 16–21 hours).
3. Complete the following core courses with at least a C grade:
   Soc 111, 300, 306, 311, 350.
4. Complete two courses from the following with at least a C grade:
   Soc 420, 421, 422, 424, 429.
5. Complete an additional 12 hours of sociology courses with at least a C grade.
6. Complete the Professional Education Component (29 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements. (Sociology teaching majors must take Soc 326.)

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Sociology (General) (15 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Soc 111.
2. Select 12 hours from any sociology courses not already completed.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Sociology Teaching (21 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Soc 111, 112, 326.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Soc 350, 420.
3. Select 9 hours from any sociology courses not already completed.

Recommended Courses

Soc 323, 367, 380, 383, 389, 422.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Sociology (Soc)

Undergraduate Courses

111. Introductory Sociology. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also.
Social group influence; social interaction, processes, organization, and change; family, religion, government, population, culture, race relations.

112. Current Social Problems. (3:3:0) Honors and Independent Study also.
Individual deviance (violence, insanity, drugs, sex, crime, etc.) and social disorganization (poverty, race and sex discrimination, divorce, overpopulation, etc.). Conditions, causes, solutions.

113. Multicultural America. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su
Diverse cultural heritages in the United States. Cultures studied scientifically will include African American, Hispanic, Asian American, and Native American.

211. Family Interaction. (3:3:0)
The family system through life cycle stages; intrafamily processes; stresses and challenges; individual and family well-being; family interaction with societal systems.

300. Methods of Research in Sociology. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Soc 111 or equivalent or instructor's consent.
Tools of social research; survey, experimentation, content analysis, secondary analysis, qualitative research, evaluation research, data processing and analysis, and report writing.

303R. Introduction to Social Science and Statistical Packages. (2:2:2 ea.)
Analytical work with social science variables using computer packages such as SAS or SPSSX (see section in current class schedule for designated statistical package). Lab.

306. Applied Social Statistics. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Introductory descriptive and inferential statistics; graphing, central tendency, variation, hypothesis testing and parameter estimation, measures of association, correlation, and regression.

311. Contemporary Sociological Theory. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111.
Introduction and evaluation of current theories of social behavior (why people do what they do).

315. Sociological Practice. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111, 112.
Solutions to human problems in industry, the community, and personal life.

318. Adolescent Development in the Family and Other Social Contexts. (3:3:0)
Examining developmental and social contexts of adolescents, emphasizing the importance of the family. Other contexts include peers, religion, community, schools, and cross-cultural issues.

323. Racial and Minority-Group Relations. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111.
Social psychological and social structural analysis of racial and ethnic relations; prejudice, discrimination, responses, protests, current issues.

325. Introduction to the Sociology of Religion. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111.
Origin, growth, and organizational development of religious groups; church activity, conversion, secularization, religious change.

326. Sociology of Education. (3:3:0)
Social origins of goals and curricula; theories of change and control; the nature of achievement in education.

327. Sociology of the LDS Church and Its People. (3:3:0)
The LDS Church from a social science perspective, including the Church as a new religious movement; LDS culture; the institutionalization process.

328. Sociology of Sport. (3:3:0)
Analysis of the sociological aspects of sport and their relationship to politics, economics, stratification, education, and family. Focus on concepts, theory, and related research.

329. Medical Sociology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111 or Psych 111.
Social epidemiology, the sick role, sociocultural definitions of and responses to illness, and the organization of medical-health delivery systems.

335. Social Change and Modernization in Latin America. (3:3:0)
Contemporary changes in the social institutions and cultures as related to the modernization process.

345. World Populations. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111.
Fertility, mortality, and migration patterns of world populations as they relate to current social, economic, political, and religious issues.

350. (Soc-Psych) Introduction to Social Psychology. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Conformity and obedience; socialization, norms, roles; attitudes, leadership, group processes.

351. Fundamentals of Self-Image and Self-Esteem. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111.
Social bases and measurement of self-concept. Building positive self-definitions; applications in family, school, and work settings; low self-esteem and deviance.

358. Effective Social Relations. (3:2:2) Prerequisite: Soc 111.
Development and practice of skills in social relations, including giving and receiving feedback, conflict resolution, negotiation and bargaining, and leadership choices.

365. Sociology of Aging. (3:3:0) Independent Study also.
Demographic and social factors related to aging: agencies, serving older citizens, and role of community in solving problems of aged. Required for students in gerontology minor and/or certificate programs.

367. Sociology of Gender. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111.
Gender in social institutions: family, social hierarchies, economics, education, organizations, religion, and science.

370. The Sociology of Urban Life. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111.
Norms, social controls, and social processes in urban areas in both historical and contemporary perspectives.

380. Deviant Behavior and Social Control. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111.
Theory and research related to deviance. Specific topics include psychosis, addiction, homosexuality, violence, and rape, among others.

381. Crime, Justice, and Corrections. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111.
Nature and extent of criminal behavior; current theory and research related to causes of crime and treatment of criminals.

383. Juvenile Delinquency. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111.
Lawlessness of children and adolescents: causation, treatment, prevention, and outlook.

389. Social Aspects of Mental Health. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Soc 111.
Personality disorders and emotional maladjustments that originate in group life; social causation, treatment, and prevention of mental illness.

390R. Special Topics in Contemporary Sociology. (1–3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Course content varies from year to year.

398R. People and Cultures Around the World. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.)
Sociological aspects of societies included in BYU Travel Study tours.

399R. Cooperative Education: Internship. (1–9:0:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Individualized work or volunteer experience in either a research setting or some kind of field placement with an organization.

404. Qualitative Research Methods. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 300.
Purposes, methods, and limitations of qualitative research. Includes participant observation and hermeneutics skills.

405. Multiple Regression Analysis and Social Science Computing. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 306 or instructor's consent.
Data analysis and computer use in sociology; least squares and logistic regression techniques; SPSS and its use in conducting data analysis. Research report required.

406. Intermediate Applied Social Statistics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 306.
Introduction to structural equation models, analysis of variance and covariance, and factor analysis.

408. Survey Research and Social Measurement. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 300.
Survey research design, measurement, and techniques in the behavioral sciences; research and sampling designs and measurement techniques.

411. Development of Sociological Theory. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111, 300, 306, 311.
Contributions of outstanding theorists, such as Durkheim, Weber, Spencer, Marx, Simmel, Cooley, and Mead to development of sociology.

420. Understanding Modern Societies. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111, 300, 306, 311.
Comparative-historical theory and research on the political, economic, social, and cultural processes in the formation, social organization, and future prospects of modern societies.

421. Complex Organizations. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111, 300, 306, 311.
Complex formal organization perspectives. Bureaucracy, management, structure, and change in private and public sectors. Formation, growth, and partitioning of organizational fields. Writing intensive.

422. Social Stratification. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111, 300, 306, 311.
Distributions of money, prestige, and power as they relate to life chances, lifestyle, other social institutions, and social justice.

424. Political Sociology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111, 300, 306, 311.
Analysis of power and decision-making, political institutions, grass root politics, stratification, and political activity, social movements and revolutions, science/religion and politics. Writing intensive.

429. Theory of Social Change and Modernization. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111, 300, 306, 311.
Social change in contemporary society from diverse theoretical points of view.

445. Population Analysis. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 306.
Availability, use, and interpretation of population data for local, state, and national areas applied to planning and evaluation.

460. Marriage and Family Interaction. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111.
Advanced appraisal of courtship, marriage relationships, and family interaction. Primarily for majors in sociology, family sciences, and related fields.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

504. Mathematical Sociology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Math 105.
Mathematical techniques of simulating and modeling social processes.

515. Seminar in Sociological Practice. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 315, 600, 606, 610.
Uses of sociological theory and methods to deal with individual, organizational, and societal problems. Techniques for communicating such knowledge to the nonsociologist.

524. Advanced Political Sociology. (3:3:0)
Social basis of political behavior. Modern theories and research concerning use of power and decision making.

525. Sociology of Religion. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Soc 111, 325, or instructor's consent.
Influences of social factors in the development of various religious systems.

527. Sociology of the LDS Church and Its People. (3:3:0)
An advanced analysis of the LDS Church from a social science perspective, including the Church as a new religious movement; LDS culture; the institutionalization process.

528. Sociology of Rural Communities. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: Soc 311, 370, or instructor's consent.
Review and critique of major theoretical and methodological approaches to the study of community, with a focus on rural communities.

530. Sociology of International Development. (3:3:0)
Major theoretical paradigms of development with strategies and practical application in the international setting.

550. (Soc-FamSc) Contemporary Family Theories. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: FamSc 250, Soc 311, or equivalent.
Introduction to basic micro, macro, and processual approaches to the study of the family; social and political theory on the family; and philosophical issues and assumptions underlying family theory, research, and practice.

561. The Family Institution. (3:3:0)
The family in different societies; problems created by various family systems.

565. The Individual and Family in Later Years. (3:3:0)
Developmental aspects of aging, focusing on the biophysical, cognitive, social, affective, and pathological dimensions in people aged 50 and over.

590R. Special Topics in Sociology. (1–3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Course content varies from year to year.

595R. Directed Readings. (1–3:0:6 ea.)
Individualized reading program supervised by faculty member. Pass/Fail only.

598R. Pro-Seminar. (1:1:0 ea.) F, W
Current developments in sociology including research, proposals, professional meetings, teaching, and finding a job.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Sociology Faculty

Professors

Bahr, Howard M. (1973) BA, Brigham Young U., 1962; MS, PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1964, 1965.
Bahr, Stephen J. (1973) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1968, 1969; PhD, Washington State U., 1972.
Chadwick, Bruce A. (1972) BA, MA, PhD, Washington U., 1964, 1965, 1967.
Cornwall, Marie (1986) BA, U. of Utah, 1971; MS, Brigham Young U., 1977; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1985.
Duke, James T. (1963) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1957, 1958; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1963.
England, J. Lynn (1970) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1965, 1967; PhD, U. of Pittsburgh, 1971.
Heaton, Tim B. (1980) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1974, 1975; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1979.
Jacobson, Cardell K. (1981) BS, Brigham Young U., 1966; MA, PhD, U. of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1969, 1971.
Johnson, Barry L. (1965) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1965; PhD, U. of North Carolina, 1977.
Kunz, Phillip R. (1968) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1962; PhD, U. of Michigan, 1967.
Seggar, John F. (1967) BS, Brigham Young U., 1962; MA, PhD, U. of Kentucky, 1964, 1968.
Thomas, Darwin L. (1972) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1964; PhD, U. of Minnesota, St. Paul, 1968.

Associate Professors

Barber, Brian K. (1990) BA, U. of California, Santa Cruz, 1977; MA, California Family Study Center, 1983; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1987.
Brown, Ralph (1998) BS, MS Utah State U., 1986; PhD, U. of Missouri, Columbia, 1992.
Call, Vaughn (1993) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1974; PhD, Washington State U., 1977.
Johnson, Richard E. (1976) BS, Brigham Young U., 1971; MA, PhD, U. of Washington, 1972, 1976.
Young, Lawrence A. (1986) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1980; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1989.

Assistant Professors

Forste, Renata T. (1995) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1984, 1986; PhD, U. of Chicago, 1992.
Knapp, Stan J. (1995) BA, MS, Brigham Young U., 1987, 1989; PhD, Florida State U., 1996.
Torres, John C. (1995) AB, AM, PhD, Stanford U., 1990, 1993, 1995.
Ward, Carol (1990) BA, MA, North Texas State U., 1973, 1976; PhD, U. of Chicago, 1992.

Emeriti

Larsen, Vernon W. (1952) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1949, 1950; PhD, Cornell U., 1957.
Peterson, Evan T. (1953) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1953; PhD, U. of Michigan, 1959.
Rollins, Boyd C. (1963) BS, Utah State U., 1953; MS, Brigham Young U., 1958; PhD, Cornell U., 1961.
Smith, Wilford E. (1947) BA, U. of Utah, 1943; MA, Brigham Young U., 1948; PhD, U. of Washington, 1952.

South American Indian Languages

See Linguistics.

Spanish and Portuguese

Christopher C. Lund, Chair
4050 JKHB, PO Box 26014, (801) 378-2837

College of Humanities Advisement Center
3078 JKHB, PO Box 26101, (801) 378-4789

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Spanish and Portuguese are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching and translation majors.

The Discipline

The Spanish and Portuguese romance languages and literatures dominate the Iberian Peninsula, major parts of Africa, and the southern portion of the new world from Mexico to the Magellan Straits. These languages, spoken by over 450 million people in twenty-one countries, provide a wide spectrum of cultural, linguistic, and literary variety. Spanish and Portuguese represent vibrant literature that stands at the forefront of twentieth-century excellence and innovation, a linguist's paradise of dialects, rapid change, and development.

Such breadth—plus some 20 million speakers within the borders of the United States itself—gives multiple opportunities for developing skill in the spoken language, as well as in listening, reading, writing, and translation. Studying the Iberian roots of this large and important part of the population and learning about the people's perception of life also brings greater understanding of their values and their struggle for identity. A Spanish or Portuguese major makes for a demanding, intriguing, and pleasurable experience.

Career Opportunities

The field of teaching has always provided good employment opportunities for Spanish majors. In addition, opportunities for both Spanish and Portuguese have been found in government service (translation, U.S. State Department, CIA, FBI, Border Patrol, Peace Corps, NSA, USIA), business, social work, airlines, banking, etc. Many majors go on to professional schools (law, medicine, dentistry, business, etc.), where a liberal arts background is advised. For employment in fields other than teaching, a strong minor or a second major in the employment area is strongly encouraged. Teaching majors are required to complete a teaching minor.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA	Portuguese
BA	Spanish
BA	Spanish Teaching
BA	Spanish Translation
Minors	Portuguese
	Spanish
	Spanish Teaching

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA	Portuguese
MA	Spanish
MA	Language Acquisition (Spanish and Portuguese)

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Foreign Language Student Residence

The Foreign Language Student Residence provides live-in opportunities for students in Spanish and Portuguese. A twenty-four-hour-a-day Spanish or Portuguese rule assures participants intensive use of the language, under the direction of native speakers. See the department secretary at 4050 JKHB for information.

Language Skills Development

A program to improve and monitor all language skills at each level of course work has been developed by the department, and a final oral proficiency examination is required of all graduating seniors. Writing skills in Spanish or Portuguese

courses will advance from writing exercises and short messages in 100-level courses to original short themes in 200-level classes. Papers in the language at the 300-level and more extensive research and vocabulary and full control of structures at the 400-level will complete the program.

Minor, Double Major, or Approved Supporting Course Work Required for Spanish or Portuguese Majors

All Spanish and Portuguese majors are required to complete either a minor (from any department in the university), 15 hours of approved supporting course work, or a double major.

Nonteaching majors who do not wish to complete a formal minor may substitute at least 15 hours of courses from among the following related fields: a second modern foreign language (upper-division courses only), Latin, Greek, English (beyond the GE requirement), linguistics, classical civilization, Latin American history or geography, Spanish history or geography, humanities, archaeology of Spain or Latin America, comparative literature, or other areas approved by the department chair.

Nonteaching and nontranslation majors also may meet their minor requirement by completing 15 additional hours consisting of elective Spanish courses or (strongly recommended) a combination of Spanish electives and interdisciplinary work. In all cases these courses must form a coherent program and *must be preapproved* by the department chair.

A double major is an acceptable alternative to a minor.

Foreign Residency

The department strongly recommends that all majors participate in an extended (at least two continuous months) and intensive language and culture experience in a Spanish- or Portuguese-speaking country or area.

A student should complete this requirement by:

1. Residency abroad (may include a Spanish or Portuguese LDS mission, attendance at a foreign university, an advanced exchange program, or similar intensive foreign residence).
2. Participating in BYU Study Abroad Programs in Spain, Portugal, or Latin America.
3. Participating in individual or group-arranged internship programs abroad as approved by the department.

Students unable to participate in one of these programs must spend at least one year (two semesters) in the Foreign Language Student Residence, pledging to use only Spanish or Portuguese within the residence. Prerequisite to this experience is Span/Port 201 or its equivalent; any exceptions must be approved by the department. For further information contact the department secretary or the Foreign Language Student Residence Office (1102 JKHB, PO Box 26114, [801] 378-3765).

Portuguese

BA Portuguese (48–68 hours minimum*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major or minor courses.
2. At least 15 hours of upper-division major credit must be taken in residence at BYU.
3. Meet the foreign residency requirement.
4. Complete a minor (approximately 16–21 hours), second major (approximately 30–60 hours), or supporting course work (15 hours).
5. Complete the following prerequisite courses:
   Port 101, 102, 201, 211R.
   And select one course from the following:
   Port 202, 302.

   Note: Students with foreign residence experience should take Port 302.

   Note: Prerequisite courses may be waived for those having sufficient proficiency with the language.
6. Complete the following:
   Port 321, 322, 339, 441, 451.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Port 345, 355.
8. Select 12 hours from the following:
   Port 326, 329, 345, 355, 439R, 442, 449R, 452, 453, 459R, 480R, 490, 520, 521, 522, 529R.

Recommended Course

Port 490 is highly recommended for those who wish to pursue a graduate degree.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Portuguese (18 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   Port 321, 339.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Port 345, 355.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Port 441, 451.
4. Complete 6 additional upper-division hours from the courses outlined for the major. Port 302 credit may be applied to the Portuguese minor but is not required.

Portuguese (Port)

Undergraduate Courses

101, 102. First-Year Portuguese. (4:5:1 ea.)
Pronunciation, conversation, reading, and fundamentals of grammar. Specific attention to Portuguese as the language of Brazil.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
On-the-job experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

201. Intermediate Portuguese Reading and Conversation. (4:5:0) Prerequisite: Port 102 or three units of high school Portuguese.
Review of grammar. Reading, writing, conversation.

202. Portuguese Reading and Comprehension. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Port 201.
Fourth-semester class combining grammar and culture. Not for returned missionaries. Culmination of GE Mathematics/Foreign Language requirement.

211R. First-Semester Conversation. (2:2:1 ea.) Prerequisite: Port 102 or equivalent. Recommended: concurrent registration in Port 201.

212. Second-Semester Conversation. (2:2:1) Prerequisite: Port 211 or equivalent.

302. Advanced Portuguese Grammar, Reading, and Culture. (3:3:0)
Introduction of culture, literature, and grammatical concerns through reading short stories, novels, and drama in Portuguese. First class for returned missionaries.

Note: Native speakers should take Port 321.

311R. Third-Year Conversation. (2:2:1 ea.) Prerequisite: Port 211 or equivalent.
Tools course to help students improve oral proficiency. Will not count for major or minor.

321, 322. Third-Year Portuguese Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Port 202 or 302, plus 16 hours of Portuguese or the equivalent.

326. Portuguese Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: Port 321 or equivalent.
Underlying concepts of Portuguese speech production and applications to pronunciation.

329. Survey of Luso-Brazilian Linguistics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Port 321 or equivalent.
Introduction to linguistics of Portuguese: phonetics, phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics, history of the Portuguese language, philology, dialectology, sociolinguistics, and psycholinguistics.

339. Introduction to Portuguese and Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Port 321 or equivalent.
Readings in modern literature; formal literary analysis.

345. Portuguese Civilization. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Port 321 or equivalent.
Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Portugal.

355. Brazilian Civilization. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Port 321 or equivalent.
Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Brazil.

395R. Contemporary Culture. (1–3:0:0 ea.) For Study Abroad programs only. Prerequisite: Port 201 or equivalent.
Contemporary Portuguese or Brazilian culture: the people and their customs and institutions.

399R. Cooperative Education: Portuguese Language Field Experience. (1–6:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: program coordinator's consent.
On-the-job experience.

439R. Luso-Brazilian Theatre Production. (3:3:0 ea.)
Theory and practice of dramatic performance. Includes participation in play to be performed during semester.

Note: No more than 3 hours of 439R credit may count toward any degree.

441. Survey of Portuguese Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Port 339 or equivalent.
Literary periods, genres, and great writers of Portugal.

442. Camões. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Port 441 or equivalent.

449R. Special Topics in Portuguese Literature. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Port 441, 451, or equivalent.
Specific topics in Portuguese (Peninsular) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Portuguese literature.

451. Survey of Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Port 339 or equivalent.
Literary periods, genres, and great writers of Brazil.

452. Machado de Assis. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Port 451 or equivalent.

453. Twentieth-Century Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Port 441, 451, or equivalent.

459R. Special Topics in Brazilian Literature. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Port 441, 451, or equivalent.
Specific topics in Portuguese (Brazilian) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Brazilian literature.

480R. Directed Research in Portuguese. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: written proposal subject to department approval. Independent Study only.
Under faculty member's direction, designing and conducting research project covering material not normally presented in regular course work. Research paper required. Total Port 480R credit toward bachelor's degree not to exceed 3 hours.

490. Senior Seminar in Portuguese. (1–3:0:0) Prerequisite: senior standing.
Bibliography, research, and writing of senior thesis. Recommended for students planning graduate studies in Portuguese.

491. Senior Proficiency Evaluation. (0:1:0)
Tool course to meet oral proficiency requirement for all majors. No major or minor credit.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.)

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

520. Advanced Portuguese Grammar. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Port 321.
Applying contemporary grammatical concepts to problems in Portuguese grammar.

521. Romance Philology. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Port 321.
Comparative study of evolution of Latin into modern romance languages.

522. History of the Portuguese Language. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Port 321.
Linguistic sources that contributed to formation of Portuguese.

529R. Special Topics in Portuguese Linguistics. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Port 321.
Topics from semantics to dialectology to sociolinguistics.

599R. Cooperative Education: Portuguese Internship. (1–3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Port 321 and instructor's consent.
For supervised internship credit on BYU Study Abroad programs only.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Spanish

BA Spanish (54–76 hours minimum*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major or minor courses.
2. At least 18 hours of upper-division major credit must be taken in residence at BYU.
3. Meet the foreign residency requirement.
4. Complete a minor (approximately 16–21 hours), second major (approximately 30–60 hours), or supporting course work (15 hours).

5. Complete the following prerequisite courses:
   Span 101, 102, 201, 211R, 212.
   And select one course from the following:
   Span 202, 302.

   Note: Students with foreign residence experience usually begin with Span 302.

   Note: Prerequisite courses may be waived for those having sufficient proficiency with the language.
6. Complete the following:
   Span 321, 322, 339, 441, 451.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Span 345, 355.
8. Select 18 hours from the following:
   Select at least one linguistics course from the following:
   Span 326, 329, 421, 423, 425, 520, 521, 522, 529R.
   Select at least one literature course from the following:
   Span 440, 443R, 444, 446R, 448R, 449R, 450R, 454R, 455R, 456R, 458R, 459R, 461R.
   Select four additional courses (12 hours) from the linguistics or literature electives above or from the following (Span 345 and 355 will not double count):
   Span 345, 355, 365, 377, 378, 395R, 439R, 480R, 490.
9. Complete the following:
   Span 491.

   Note: The Senior Proficiency Evaluation is taken in connection with Span 491. It is expected that Spanish majors will pass with a rating of "advanced plus" or higher.

Recommended Course

Span 490 is highly recommended for those who wish to pursue a graduate degree.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Spanish Teaching (80–102 hours minimum,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. At least 18 hours of upper-division major credit must be completed in residence at BYU.
3. Meet the foreign residency requirement.
4. Complete an approved teaching minor (approximately 16–21 hours).
5. Complete the following prerequisite courses:
   Span 101, 102, 201, 211R, 212.
   And select one course from the following:
   Span 202, 302.

   Note: Students with foreign residence experience usually begin with Span 302.

   Note: These prerequisite courses may be waived for those having sufficient proficiency with the language.
6. Complete the following:
   Span 321, 322, 326, 339, 345, 355, 377, 378, 441, 451.

   Note: Span 377 and 378 must be taken before student teaching.
7. Select 6 hours from the following courses:
   Span 329, 365, 395R, 421, 423, 425, 439R, 440, 443R, 444, 446R, 448R, 449R, 450R, 454R, 455R, 456R, 458R, 459R, 461R, 480R, 490, 520, 521, 522, 529R.
8. Complete the following:
   Span 491.

   Note: The Senior Proficiency Evaluation is taken in connection with Span 491. It is expected that Spanish majors will pass with a rating of "advanced plus" or higher.
9. Complete the Professional Education Component (25–26 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Spanish Translation (54–76 hours minimum*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. At least 18 hours of upper-division major credit must be completed in residence at BYU.
3. Meet the foreign residency requirement.
4. Complete a minor (approximately 16–21 hours), second major (approximately 30–60 hours), or supporting course work (15 hours).
5. Complete the following prerequisite courses:
   Span 101, 102, 201, 211R, 212.
   And select one course from the following:
   Span 202, 302.

   Note: Students with foreign residence experience usually begin with Span 302.

   Note: These prerequisite courses may be waived for those having sufficient proficiency with the language.

   Note: Students wishing to major in Spanish translation and interpretation must apply for admission to the program and pass an entrance exam in Spanish and English. Contact the department secretary the first week of February each year to obtain the official date and place of the exam.
6. Complete the following:
   Span 321, 322, 339, 425, 441, 451.

   Note: Span 321 and 322 must be completed with a grade of B or better.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Span 345, 355.
8. Complete the following courses in sequence:
   Span 427A, 427B, 428A, 428B, 527A, 527B, 528.

   Note: These seven courses require a minimum of a B grade. (Span 322, 425, and either Span 345 or 355 must be taken before Span 427.)
9. Select 3 hours from the following:
   Span 326, 329, 345, 355, 365, 377, 378, 395R, 421, 423, 439R, 440, 443R, 444, 446R, 448R, 449R, 450R, 454R, 455R, 458R, 459R, 461R, 480R, 490, 520, 521, 522, 529R.
10. Complete the following:
    Span 491.

    Note: The Senior Proficiency Evaluation is taken in connection with Span 491. It is expected that Spanish majors will pass with a rating of "advanced plus" or higher.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Spanish (18 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   Span 321, 339.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Span 345, 355.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Span 441, 451.
4. Select 6 hours from upper-division courses outlined for the major. Span 302 credit may be applied to the Spanish minor but is not required.

Minor Spanish Teaching (21 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   Span 321, 326, 339, 377, 378.

   Note: Span 377 and 378 must be taken before student teaching. Span 377 will be waived for students majoring in another language who have had the course in that language. Students who waive the class will need to take 3 additional elective hours from the 300-, 400-, or 500-level courses in Spanish.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Span 345, 355.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Span 441, 451.
4. Complete the following:
   Span 491.

   Note: The Senior Proficiency Evaluation is taken in connection with Span 491. It is expected that students will pass with a rating of "advanced plus" or higher.

Spanish (Span)

Undergraduate Courses

100A. Introductory Spanish. (2:3:1)
Independent Study also. First semester for those who have had no Spanish and desire maximum time for assimilation.

100B. Second Semester, Introductory Spanish. (2:3:1) Prerequisite: Span 100A.
Continuation of Span 100A.

101, 102. First-Year Spanish. (4:5:2 ea.)
For students with little or no previous Spanish. Fundamentals of Spanish, emphasizing communication. (Accelerated sections available for those with more language experience.) Placement exam required.

121, 122. Intensive Reading in Spanish. (4:4:0 ea.) For students with little or no Spanish.
Developing reading skills in area of student's specialization. Graduate students will be graded pass/fail; undergraduate students will receive letter grades.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

201. Second-Year Spanish. (4:5:1) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Span 102, three units of high school Spanish, or placement by diagnostic test.
Review of grammar, reading, writing, conversation.

202. Spanish Reading and Comprehension. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: Span 201.
Fourth-semester class introducing culture and grammar through study of literature. Not for returned missionaries.

211R. First-Semester Conversation. (2:2.5:1 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 102 or equivalent. Recommended: concurrent registration in Span 201.

212. Second-Semester Conversation. (2:2.5:1) Prerequisite: Span 211 or equivalent. Recommended: concurrent registration in Span 201 or 202.

302. Intermediate Spanish Grammar Review, Reading, and Culture. (3:3:0)
Introduction of culture, literature, and grammatical concerns through reading short stories, novels, and drama in Spanish. First class for returned missionaries.

Note: Native speakers should take Span 321.

310. Premajor Skills Review. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Span 202 or equivalent.
Required of students whose scores on a qualifying exam show that they are not prepared for Span 321. Emphasis on grammar, conversation, composition, and listening comprehension.

311R. Spanish Oral Proficiency Preparation. (2:2:1 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 212 or equivalent.
Tools course to help students meet oral proficiency requirements for major and minor. Will not count for major or minor.

321. Third-Year Spanish Grammar and Composition. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Span 202, 302, or equivalent.
Intensive study and practice with Spanish grammar, vocabulary, and writing.

322. Third-Year Spanish Grammar and Stylistics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Span 321.
Continuation of Span 321, with increased emphasis on stylistics of writing and addition of word processing skills.

326. Spanish Phonetics and Pronunciation. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Span 202, 302, or equivalent.
Underlying concepts of Spanish speech production and applications to pronunciation.

329. Survey of Hispanic Linguistics. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Span 321 or equivalent.
Introduction to linguistics of Spanish: phonetics, phonology, morphology, syntax, semantics, history of the Spanish language, philology, dialectology, sociolinguistics, and psycholinguistics.

339. Introduction to Spanish Literature. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Span 202, 302, or equivalent. Course is prerequisite to 400-level literature courses.
Readings in modern Hispanic literatures, focusing on formal literary analysis.

345. Iberian Civilization. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Span 202, 302, or equivalent.
Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spain.

355. Ibero-American Civilization. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Span 202, 302, or equivalent.
Culture, history, art, music, and traditions of Spanish America.

365. Mexican-American Culture. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Span 202, 302, or equivalent.
Contemporary culture (education, popular and fine arts, worldview, attitudes, etc.) of the Mexican-American in the U.S.

Note: Prospective teachers should take Span 377 and 378 just before student teaching and after as many upper-division Spanish courses as possible.
Spanish-teaching majors and minors must take both Span 377 and 378.
Prospective student instructors must take Span 377 before employment, but preference will be given to candidates who have taken both Span 377 and 378.

377. Spanish Language Teaching Procedures 1. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: Span 321, 326; 345 or 355; and, for certification, ScEd 276.
Mastery of skills specific to foreign language instruction with emphasis on skills taught in first-year courses.

378. Spanish Language Teaching Procedures 2. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: Span 377.
Mastery of skills specific to foreign language instruction; emphasizes skills taught in intermediate courses (reading, writing, testing, and nontraditional methodologies).

395R. Contemporary Culture. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) For Study Abroad programs only. Prerequisite: Span 102 or equivalent.
Contemporary Spanish (or Spanish- American) culture: the people and their customs and institutions.

399R. Cooperative Education: Spanish Language Field Experience. (1–6:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: program coordinator's consent.
On-the-job experience.

421. Advanced Spanish Grammar. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: Span 321, 322.
Fourth-year intensive study of Spanish grammar and usage.

423. Border Spanish. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Span 321 or equivalent.
Mexican-American speech patterns and their impact on the Spanish-speaking American subculture.

425. Structure of the Spanish Language. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Span 321.
Contrastive analysis of phonology and grammatical structures of Spanish and English.

427A. Beginning Translation and Interpretation, English to Spanish. (1.5:3:1) F 1st blk. Prerequisite: Span 321, 322, with a B grade or better.
Introduction to history, theory, and principles of translation and interpretation dealing specifically in English to Spanish.

427B. Beginning Translation and Interpretation, Spanish to English. (1.5:3:1) F 2d blk. Prerequisite Span 427A.
Introduction to history, theory, and principles of translation and interpretation, dealing specifically in Spanish to English.

428A. Intermediate Translation and Interpretation, English to Spanish. (1.5:3:1) W 1st blk. Prerequisite: Span 427B, with a B grade or better.
Systematic study and contrastive exercises in translation and interpretation from English to Spanish. Translation of texts in general conceptual fields.

428B. Intermediate Translation and Interpretation, Spanish to English. (1.5:3:1) W 2d blk. Prerequisite: Span 428A.
Systematic study and contrastive exercises in translation and interpretation from Spanish to English. Translation of texts in general conceptual fields.

439R. Hispanic Theatre Production. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: director's consent.
Theory and practice of dramatic performance. Includes participation in play to be performed during semester.

Note: No more than 3 hours of 439R credit may count toward any degree.

440. Medieval Spanish Literature. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Span 441 or equivalent.
Spanish literature from *El Cantar de Mió Cid* (1140) through *La Celestina* (1499).

441. Survey of Spanish Literature. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Span 339.
Literary masterpieces of Spain.

443R. Golden Age Literature. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 441 or equivalent.
Sixteenth- and seventeenth-century Spanish literature.

444. *Don Quijote*. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Span 441 or equivalent.
In-depth study of Cervantes' *El ingenioso hidalgo don Quijote de la Mancha*.

446R. Nineteenth-Century Literature. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 441 or equivalent.
Romanticism (1770s through 1870s) and/or the novels of Benito Pérez Galdós and his contemporaries.

448R. Twentieth-Century Spanish Literature. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 441 or equivalent.
Genre (twentieth-century novel, drama, or poetry) or particular school (Generation of 1898, Generation of 1927, etc.) emphasized.

449R. Special Topics in Spanish Literature. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 441 or equivalent.
Specific topics in Spanish (peninsular) literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Spanish literature.

450R. Pre-Columbian and Colonial Literature. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 451 or equivalent.
Indigenous literature (Maya, Nahuatl, etc.) and other texts written in Spanish Colonial America through eighteenth century.

451. Survey of Hispanic-American Literature. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Span 339.
Literary masterpieces of Spanish America.

454R. The Spanish American Novel. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 451 or equivalent.
Selected Spanish-American novelists such as Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garciá Márquez, Alejo Carpentier, Mario Vargas-Llosa, etc.

455R. Spanish American Poetry. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 451 or equivalent.
Selected Spanish-American poets, movements, and national traditions.

456R. Spanish American Drama. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 451 or equivalent.
Twentieth-century theatre from Spanish America and Brazil.

458R. Hispanic-American Short Story. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 451 or equivalent.
Introduction and development of an important literary genre in Spanish America, including works of Jorge Luis Borges, Julio Cortázar, Juan Rulfo, Gabriel Garciá Márquez, etc.

459R. Special Topics in Spanish American Literature. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 451 or equivalent.
Specific topics in Latin American literature. Course content will vary each semester to offer optimum exposure to all areas of Latin American literature.

461R. Spanish-Speaking American (Mexican-American) Literature. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 339 or instructor's consent.

Spanish-English literature of the Mexican-American within the United States.

480R. Directed Research in Spanish. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: written proposal subject to department approval. Independent Study only.

Under faculty member's direction, designing and conducting research project covering material not normally presented in regular course work. Research paper required. Total Span 480R credit toward bachelor's degree not to exceed 3 hours.

490. Senior Seminar in Spanish. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: senior standing.

Bibliography, research, and writing of senior thesis. Recommended for students planning graduate studies in Spanish.

491. Senior Proficiency Evaluation. (0:1:0)

Tool course to meet oral proficiency requirement for all majors and teaching minors. No major or minor credit.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.)

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

520. Problems in Spanish Grammar. (3:3:0)

Application of contemporary grammatical concepts to problems in Spanish grammar.

521. Romance Philology. (3:3:0)

Comparative study of evolution of Latin into modern romance languages.

522. History of the Spanish Language. (3:3:0)

Linguistic sources that contributed to formation of the Spanish language.

527A. Advanced Translation and Interpretation, English to Spanish. (1.5:3:1) F 1st blk. Prerequisite: Span 428B, with a B grade or better.

Translation of texts in specific fields. Simultaneous interpretation. From English to Spanish.

527B. Advanced Translation and Interpretation, Spanish to English. (1.5:3:1) F 2d blk. Prerequisite: Span 527A.

Translation of texts in specific fields. Simultaneous interpretation. From Spanish to English.

528. Translation and Interpretation Project. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: Span 527A,B.

Individual translation and/or interpretation projects.

529R. Special Topics in Spanish Linguistics. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 520, 522.

Topics include semantics, dialectology, and sociolinguistics.

577. Spanish Language Teaching Procedures. (3:3:2) For public school teachers.

Mastery of skills specific to foreign language instruction. Lectures, demonstrations, practical experience.

599R. Cooperative Education: Spanish Internship. (1–3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: Span 321 and instructor's consent.

For supervised internship credit on BYU Study Abroad programs only.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Spanish and Portuguese Faculty

Professors

Alba, Orlando (1993) BA, U. Católica Madre y Maestra, 1972; MA, U. of Puerto Rico, 1978; PhD, U. Nacional de Educación a Distancia, Madrid, Spain, 1988.

Cluff, Russell M. (1983) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1974; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1978.

Dennis, Ronald D. (1966) BA, Brigham Young U., 1964; MA, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1965, 1972.

Forster, Merlin H. (1987), H. Darrel Taylor Distinguished Professor of Latin American Literature; BA, Brigham Young U., 1956; MA, PhD, U. of Illinois, 1957, 1960.

Larson, Jerry W. (1980) BA, Utah State U., 1969; MA, Brigham Young U., 1974; PhD, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1977.

Lund, Christopher C. (1992) BA, Brigham Young U., 1967; MA, PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1970, 1974.

Lyon, Thomas E. (Ted) (1972) BA, U. of Utah, 1963; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1967.

Quackenbush, L. Howard (1970) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1967; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1970.

Rosenberg, John R. (1985) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1981; MA, PhD, Cornell U., 1984, 1985.

Taylor, James Scott (1962) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1960; PhD, Ohio State U., 1967.

Associate Professors

Ashworth, Peter P. (1966) AA, Bakersfield Coll., 1952; BA, Brigham Young U., 1962; PhD, U. of Oklahoma, 1967.

Clegg, J. Halvor (1972) BA, Brigham Young U., 1964; MA, PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1967, 1969.

Fails, Willis Clark (1981) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1977; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1984.

Jensen, Gordon K. (1969) BA, Brigham Young U., 1963; MA, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1966, 1975.

Meléndez, Gloria S. (1978) BA, U. of Utah, 1955; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1980.

Meredith, Robert Alan (1976) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1974; PhD, Ohio State U., 1976.

Assistant Professors

García, Mara Lucy (1996) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1990, 1992.

Hegstrom, Valerie (1994) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1982, 1986; MA, PhD, U. of Kansas, 1988, 1992.

Labrum, Marian B. (1974) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1975, PhD, Middlebury Coll., 1988.

Pratt, Dale J. (1994) BA, Brigham Young U., 1990; PhD, Cornell U., 1994.

Turley, Jeffrey (1989) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1982, 1984; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1992.

Weatherford, Douglas (1996) BA, Brigham Young U., 1988; PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1996.

Associate Lecturer

Hoskisson, Joaquina Valtierra de (1990) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1974.

Assistant Lecturer

Hague, Daryl R. (1994) BA, Brigham Young U., 1987; JD, U. of Washington, 1990.

Emeriti

Anderson, C. Dixon (1956) BA, Brigham Young U., 1953; MA, PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1956, 1965.

Brown, Jack V. (1964) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1960.

Compton, Merlin D. (1964) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1952, 1954; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1959.

Dowdle, Harold L. (1968) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1948, 1949; PhD, Stanford U., 1954.

Gibson, M. Carl (1949) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1947, 1949; PhD, U. of Oregon, 1960.

Hall, Wendell H. (1966) BA, MA, U. of Utah, 1952, 1953; PhD, Inter-American U., Mexico, 1974.

Jackson, T. Wendell (1968) BA, Brigham Young U., 1956; PhD, Ohio State U., 1968.
Moon, H. Kay (1963) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1959; PhD, Syracuse U., 1963.
Ramsey, Myriam (1975) Dipl, Pontifícia Universidade Católica do Brasil, Campinas, Brazil, 1954; BA, MAT, Georgia State U., 1971, 1973; PhD, U. of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1975.
Rosen, Harold E. (1963) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1954, 1959; PhD, U. of Oregon, 1966.
Shreeve, Lyman Sidney (1965) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1949, 1951; PhD, Inter-American U., Mexico, 1970.
Valentine, Amy Y. (1970) BA, Brigham Young U., 1946.

Sports

See Physical Education.

Statistics

Gale Rex Bryce, Chair
230 TMCB, PO Box 26575, (801) 378-4505

College of Physical and Mathmatical Sciences Advisement Center
1116 TMCB, PO Box 26539, (801) 378-6270

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Statistics are open enrollment except actuarial science. See item 3 under General Information.

The Discipline

The statistician's job is to help determine what data are to be collected, how to collect it to avoid biases and distortions, and then how to turn that data into information that other people can understand to help solve problems and reach sound decisions. From the predictions of the political pollster to exacting analyses of pharmaceutical research, the breadth and diversity of statistical applications are injected into nearly all aspects of modern life.

Career Opportunities

The curriculum and degrees offered through the Department of Statistics are designed to equip students with decision-making skills for careers as professional statisticians in industrial organizations, government agencies, insurance companies, universities, and research institutes. The technical tools statisticians acquire are useful in many areas, and for this reason a statistics degree is also excellent preparation for professional programs in law, business administration, public administration, and actuarial science.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses) (Recommended: PhyS 100)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Statistics
Emphases:
- Statistical Science
- Actuarial Science
- Biostatistics
- Business
- Information Systems
- Quality Science

BS-MS Integrated Master's Program
Minor Statistics

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Statistics

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

1. It is recommended that a student complete the following courses in high school:
   3 units of English
   1 unit of physical science, either chemistry or physics.
   4 units of mathematics, consisting of 2.5 units of algebra, 1 unit of geometry, and 0.5 unit of trigonometry. This should qualify students to begin college mathematics with Math 112, analytic geometry and calculus.

   Because mathematics provides the foundation for all work in the physical and mathematical sciences, particular attention is paid to high school preparation in this subject.
   To decide which mathematics course should be taken first, write to the Mathematics Department, 292 TMCB, and request a mathematics placement test.
2. Students are encouraged to complete 16 credit hours each semester. Taking fewer credits substantially increases the cost and the number of semesters to graduate.

3. Students who select an emphasis in actuarial science must major in the statistical science emphasis until they have successfully passed the first actuarial exam.
4. An integrated BS/MS program is available. This program allows students in all undergraduate emphases to receive their bachelor's and master's degree in five years of schooling. It is available only if students begin a major in statistics as freshmen or start early enough in the program to match the pace required to progress through it in a five-year period.

Major Requirements for All Statistics Emphases

1. Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.
2. Complete the following preparation core courses:
   CS 130.
   Engl 316.
   Math 112, 113, 344.
3. Complete the following statistics core courses:
   Stat 221, 311, 322, 334, 336, 337, 391, 392, 441, 442.
4. Complete one of the emphases listed below.

BS Statistics: Statistical Science Emphasis

(63 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Select eight courses from the following:
   Math 311, 315, 316.
   Stat 361, 412, 435, 462, 463, 466, 469, 474, 475.

Recommended Courses:

The following are strongly recommended if a student plans on pursuing a PhD. (See the Mathematics section of this catalog for prerequisites.)
Math 315, 316.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Statistics: Actuarial Science Emphasis

(66 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Complete the following:
   Econ 110.
   Stat 412.
3. Select seven courses from the following:
   Math 311, 315, 316.
   Stat 361, 412, 435, 462, 463, 466, 469, 474, 475.
4. See item 3 under the preceding General Information section.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Statistics: Biostatistics Emphasis (65–66 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Complete the following:
   Biol 130.
   Chem 152, 281.
   Zool 371, 372.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Math 311, 315, 316.
   Stat 361, 412, 435, 462, 463, 466, 469, 474, 475.
4. For a *physiology* option, complete the following:
   Zool 361, 373, 460.
5. For an *ecology* option, complete the following:
   Zool 204, 350, 475.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Statistics: Business Emphasis (66 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Complete the following:
   Econ 110.
   Stat 361, 462, 463, 469.
3. Select four courses from the following:
   Acc 200.
   BusM 300, 340.
   ManEc 300.
   OrgB 320.
   Stat 412.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Statistics: Information Systems Emphasis

(63 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Complete the following:
   Acc 200.
   ISys 440, 443, 445, 546.
   Stat 361, 412.
3. Select one course from the following:
   ISys 540, 548.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Statistics: Quality Science Emphasis (63 hours*)

Emphasis Requirements

1. Complete the major requirements listed above.
2. Complete the following:
   MFE 232, 340, 475, 476, 480.
   Stat 361, 462, 466.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Statistics (16+ hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Stat 221, 322, 336 (8 hours).
2. Select 3 additional courses by choosing one of the following options:
   a. Methods option:
      (1) Complete the following:
         Stat 311, 337.
      (2) Select one other statistics course numbered 311 or higher.
   b. Survey sampling option:
      (1) Complete the following:
         Stat 334.
      (2) Select two other statistics courses numbered 311 or higher. Recommended: Stat 435.
   c. Quality science option:
      (1) Complete the following:
         Stat 361.
      (2) Select two other courses chosen from the following:
         MFE 232, 340, 475, 476, 480.
         Stat 462, 463.
   d. Math-Statistics option:
      (1) Select one course from the following:
         Stat 321, 421, 441.
      (2) Select two other statistics courses numbered 311 or higher. (If your major does not require Math 112 or 113, these courses may be used as the two additional courses to complete the minor.)

Note: Stat 510 and 511 can be taken in place of but not in addition to Stat 221 and 336 in item 1. Stat 301 may not be used to fulfill any option of item 2 (an exception will be made for math education majors).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Statistics (Stat)

Undergraduate Courses

105. Introduction to Statistics. (3:3:2) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Math 97.
Fundamental ideas and applications of statistics. Not a GE course.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

221. Principles of Statistics. (3:3:2) F, W, Sp, Su Honors and Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Math 110 or equivalent.
Stemplots, boxplots, histograms, scatterplots; central tendency, variability; confidence intervals and hypothesis testing involving one and two means and proportions; contingency tables, regression; computer package.

301. Statistics and Probability for Secondary Educators. (3:3:2) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Math 113.
Statistics and probability, emphasizing secondary-specific curriculum. Principles of counting, probability distributions, density functions, graphical methods, descriptive and inferential statistics, computer package.

311. Statistical Computing 1. (2:2:2) F, W Prerequisite: CS 130.
Statistical programming using the data step in SAS; basic statistical Procs; introduction to statistical graphics using Proc Insight.

321. Elements of Mathematical Statistics. (3:3:2) F, W, Sp Independent Study also. Prerequisite: Math 113 or 119 or equivalent.
Probability, random variables, frequency distributions, estimation and tests of hypotheses from a theoretical standpoint.

322. Matrix Computations in Statistics. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Math 112.
Basic matrix operations, inverse, quadratic forms, rank; symmetric, idempotent, orthogonal, and positive definite matrices; canonical forms, eigenvalues and eigenvectors.

334. Methods of Survey Sampling. (3:3:2) F, W Prerequisite: Stat 221 or equivalent.
Sampling frames, questionnaire design; simple random, systematic, stratified, and cluster sampling methods, comparing domain means, contingency table analysis.

336. Statistical Methods 1. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: Stat 221, 322; or concurrent registration.
Sample estimation and hypothesis testing, nonparametric analogs for t-tests, contingency tables, simple linear regression, multiple regression, subset selection procedures; residual, influence, and collinearity diagnostics.

337. Statistical Methods 2. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: Stat 336.
Completely randomized, randomized block, and Latin square designs; split plots, model writing, fixed model analysis of covariance, nonparametric analogs to classical methods of analysis.

361. Quality Improvement for Industry. (3:3:1) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Math 110 or equivalent. Recommended: concurrent registration in Stat 336 or 337.
Quality management philosophies (Deming, etc.) Strategies for continuous improvement. Graphical and numerical methods of data analysis. Process control charts. Design and analysis of experiments for process characterization and improvement.

391. Teaching Elementary Statistics in a Laboratory Setting 1. (0.5:0:2) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Stat 336; concurrent registration in Stat 337.
On-the-job training and experience in teaching statistical concepts, managing lab experiences using learning activities, and evaluating student performance.

392. Teaching Elementary Statistics in a Laboratory Setting 2. (0.5:0:2) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Stat 391; departmental consent.
Training and experience in teaching statistical concepts, managing lab experiences using learning activities, and evaluating student performance.

412. Statistical Computing 2. (3:3:2) W Prerequisite: Stat 311.
Introduction to S Plus, statistical graphics, SAS macros, SAS Proc IML, and simulation.

421. Probability and Distribution Theory. (3:3:0) F, Sp Prerequisite: Math 113 or equivalent.
Mathematical formulation of continuous and discrete random variables, including underlying probability models, distribution functions, conditional and marginal probability laws, convolutions and other functions of random variables, limiting distributions.

435. Analysis of Categorical and Other Nonparametric Data. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Stat 336 or equivalent.
Nonparametric analogs of classical parametric methods, 2x2 log linear models, contingency tables, the Mantel-Haenszel test, stratified analysis, conditional independence, collapsibility and life tables.

441. Statistical Theory 1. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Math 344.
Axiomatic probability theory for discrete and continuous random variables; moment-generating functions; conditional probability; stochastic independence; transformations; limiting distributions; stochastic convergence; central limit theorem.

442. Statistical Theory 2. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Stat 441.
Sufficiency and completeness; point and interval estimation; hypothesis testing; Cramer-Rao inequality; some asymptotic results; Bayesian methods.

462. Quality Control and Industrial Statistics. (3:3:2) F Prerequisite: Stat 361; 321 or 441. Recommended: Stat 337.
Intermediate concepts in process analysis, process control, and control chart procedures; Pareto diagrams, cause-effect diagrams; acceptance sampling.

463. Operations Research. (3:3:2) F Prerequisite: Math 343; Stat 321 or 441.
Methods of linear, goal, and dynamic programming; queuing theory and applications, network analysis and PERT-CPM, decision analysis, simulation.

466. Introduction to Reliability. (3:3:2) W Prerequisite: Stat 361; 321 or 441; Math 113 or equivalent.
Mathematics, distributions, management, and maintenance of basic reliability concepts; collection and analysis of test data; fault tree analysis; applying reliability in various areas.

469. Applied Time Series and Forecasting. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Stat 336.
Univariate time series, univariate Box-Jenkins methodology, ARIMA models, nonstationary models, model building, forecasting, seasonal analysis, case studies.

471. Actuarial Mathematics. (1:2:0) F Prerequisite: Math 344, Stat 322, or concurrent registration.
Applying mathematical techniques to problems in actuarial science. Prepares for the SOA 100 exam.

472. Actuarial Problems. (1:2:0) W Prerequisite: Stat 441, 442, or concurrent registration.
Applying mathematical statistics in actuarial science. Prepares for the SOA 110 exam.

474. Life Contingencies 1. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Math 344; Stat 441 or concurrent registration.
Theory of interest, annuities, amortization, life tables, life annuities. Prepares for the SOA 140 exam.

475. Life Contingencies 2. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Stat 474.
Contingent annuities, joint annuities, insurance, calculating premiums and reserves. Prepares for the SOA 150 exam.

490R. Special Topics in Statistics. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

496R. Cooperative Education/Internship: Statistics. (0.5–9:Arr:Arr ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: department coordinator's consent.
On-the-job experience or internships for undergraduates. Report is required.

497R. Introduction to Statistical Research. (0.5–3:0:6 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: department chair's consent.
Review of current literature and survey of present status of significant statistical research; collaborative work between student and faculty.

499R. Honors Thesis. (0.5–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: departmental consent.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

510. Introduction to Statistics for Graduate Students. (3:3:1) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Math 97 or equivalent. Recommended: Math 110 or equivalent.
Introductory statistics course for graduate students outside Statistics Department. Topics include probability, estimation, hypothesis tests, simple linear regression, analysis of variance.

511. Statistical Methods for Research 1. (3:3:2) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: Stat 510 or equivalent.
Basic statistical methodologies and experimental design. Topics include analysis of variance, multiple regression, analysis of covariance, common experimental designs.

512. Statistical Methods for Research 2. (3:3:2) W, Su Prerequisite: Stat 511.
Advanced statistical methodologies. Topics include repeated measures models, basic multivariate techniques, logistic regression, log-linear models.

522. Theory of Linear Models. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Stat 322, 442, or equivalents.
Linear hypotheses, with application to regression and design.

525. Statistical Inference. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Stat 322, 442, or equivalents.
Exponential families, likelihood theory, maximum likelihood estimation, likelihood ratio tests, small and large sample tests.

531. Experimental Design. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Stat 337.
Power for basic designs, hierarchical designs, change-over designs, confounding in symmetric and asymmetric designs, incomplete block designs, bioassay, and response surface designs.

532. Quality Improvement for Engineering. (3:3:2) W Prerequisite: Stat 361, Math 113.
Selected topics in statistical theory, analysis of variance, simple and multiple regression, response surface design and analysis, multilevel experimental designs, blocking designs, confounding.

534. Sampling. (3:3:2) F even yr. Prerequisite: Stat 334; 321 or 441 or instructor's consent.
Estimation in systematic, simple random, stratified, cluster, and PPS sampling and mixtures of these; ratio estimation, sample size determination and principles of sample allocation.

535. Applied Linear Models. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Stat 322; 336 or 511.
Analysis of full-rank model, over-parameterized model, cell-means model, unequal subclass frequencies, and missing and fused cells. Estimability issues, diagnostics.

536. Modern Regression Methods. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Stat 322; 336 or 511.
Weighted least squares, measurement error models, robust regression, nonlinear regression, local regression, generalized additive models, tree-structured regression.

537. Generalized Linear Models. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Stat 522, 535.
Generalized linear models framework, binary data, polytomous data, log-linear models.

541. Advanced Probability. (3:3:0) W on dem. Prerequisite: Stat 441 or instructor's consent.
Stochastic processes, Markov chains, generating functions, birth-death processes, random walks, the gambler's ruin problem, advanced combinatorial methods.

545. (Stat-ECEn 510) Stochastic Processes. (3:3:0) On dem. Prerequisite: Stat 441 or equivalent.
Review of elementary probability: expectation, characteristic functions, limit theorems. Introductory random processes: definitions and properties, covariance and spectral density, time average, stationarity, ergodicity, linear system relations, mean square estimation, Markov processes.

563. Advanced Operations Research. (3:3:0) W on dem. Prerequisite: Stat 441, 463, or equivalents.
Stochastic simulations; integer, nonlinear, and stochastic programming; developments in inventory theory; Markovian decision processes; insurance risks.

590. Statistical Consulting. (3:3:0) F
Introduction to statistical consulting, oral presentations, presentation packages, written reports. Extensive applied experience in the Center for Collaborative Research and Statistical Consulting.

591R. Graduate Seminar in Statistics. (0:1:0 ea.) F, W

599R. Cooperative Education: Statistics. (1–9:0:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: departmental consent.
On-the-job experience. Report required.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Statistics Faculty

Professors

Bryce, Gale Rex (1972) AA, Phoenix Coll., 1963; BS, Arizona State U., 1967; MS, Brigham Young U., 1970; PhD, U. of Kentucky, 1974.

Christensen, Howard B. (1967) BS, Brigham Young U., 1964; MS, PhD, North Carolina State U., 1966, 1975.

Collings, Bruce J. (1988) BS, MS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1973, 1975, 1977; MS, PhD, U. of North Carolina, 1980, 1981; ASA, Society of Actuaries, 1994.

Rencher, Alvin C. (1963) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1959, 1962; PhD, Virginia Polytechnic Inst., 1968.

Scott, Del T. (1977) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1973; PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1977.

Tolley, H. Dennis (1983) BS, Brigham Young U., 1970; PhD, U. of North Carolina, 1974; ASA, Society of Actuaries, 1981.

Associate Professors

Fellingham, Gilbert W. (1990) BA, Occidental Coll., 1971; MS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1976, 1977; MS, PhD, U. of Washington, 1988, 1990.

Lawson, John S. (1986) AA, Los Angeles Valley Coll., 1967; BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1971; MS, Rutgers U., 1976; PhD, Polytechnic Inst. of New York, 1983.

Madrigal, Joseph L. (1991) BS, Leon State U., 1976; MS, Postgraduate Coll., 1981; DPhil, U. of Oxford, England, 1985.

Schaalje, G. Bruce (1992) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1979; MS, U. of Washington, 1981; PhD, North Carolina State U., 1988.

Assistant Professors

Grimshaw, Scott D. (1993) BS, Southern Utah State Coll., 1983; MS, PhD, Texas A&M U., 1985, 1989.

Hilton, Sterling C. (1996) BA, MA, MS, Brigham Young U., 1987, 1990; PhD, Johns Hopkins U., 1996.

Visiting Professor

Whiting, David G. (1995) BA, MS, Brigham Young U., 1988, 1990; PhD, Texas A&M U., 1995.

Lecturer

Collings, Patti Burton (1988) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1977.

Adjunct Professors

Booth, Gordon D. (1981) BA, BS, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1963; MS, PhD, Iowa State U., 1967, 1973.

Hilton, John L. (1988) AB, Brigham Young U., 1952.

Emeriti

Adams, L. LaMar (1970) BS, MEd, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1965, 1972.

Beus, Gary B. (1967) BA, Brigham Young U., 1962; MS, PhD, Virginia Polytechnic Inst., 1965, 1968.

Campbell, L. Howard (1962) BS, MBA, U. of Utah, 1955, 1957.

Carter, Melvin W. (1961) BS, Arizona State Coll., 1953; MS, PhD, North Carolina State U., 1954, 1956.

Hendrix, Leland J. (1967) BS, MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1966, 1967.

Hilton, H. Gill (1962) BS, Brigham Young U., 1957; MS,PhD, North Carolina State U., 1960, 1962.

Nielson, Howard C. (1957) BS, U. of Utah, 1947; MS, U. of Oregon, 1949; MBA, PhD, Stanford U., 1956, 1957.

Richards, Dale O. (1963) BS, Utah State U., 1950; MS, PhD, Iowa State U. of Science and Technology, 1957, 1963.

Student Development

Ronald K. Chapman, Chair
2514 ELWC, PO Box 25548, (801) 378-4007

Open Major Advisement Center
2590 ELWC, PO Box 25548, (801) 378-3826

The Discipline

The Student Development Department provides course work designed to help students in the areas of intellectual/learning, career, and personal/social development.

The Career and Learning Information Center, 151 SWKT, contains detailed, current information about numerous occupations, college majors, educational programs, professional licensing requirements for various states, placement information about recent BYU graduates, and career skills information, such as job interviewing.

Student Development (StDev)

Undergraduate Courses

110. Effective Study and Learning. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp Su Independent Study also.

Learning to learn: motivation, time management, reading, listening, notetaking, test preparation, and memorizing; cognitive and ethical development in a learning environment.

115. Life Planning and Decision Making. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also.

Individual development in life planning and decision making, emphasizing personal maturity, goal setting, and decision making abilities in areas of common concern to young adults.

117. Career Exploration. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also.

Applying theories of individual, academic, and career development to the university student. Exploring university opportunities and college majors; graduation planning.

120. Individual Development. (2:2:0) F, W

Applying theories of young adult development in a self-assessment approach to achieving individual development in the life challenges facing college students.

198R. Prelaw Seminar. (1:1:0 ea.) F, W

Choices in majors and prelegal education; the work of lawyers, judges, and others in legal careers; role of law in our communities.

214R. Special Topics in Student Development. (1–3:1:0 ea.) On dem.

317. Managing Career Transitions. (2:2:0) F, W

Anticipating, preparing for, and managing critical transition from university to world of work. Theoretical conceptualizations of career development and practical strategies to facilitate job search/advancement process.

358R. Student Leadership Development. (1–3:2:2 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

Analysis, synthesis, and integration of personal leadership experienced in an academic context. Successful leadership: decision making, communications, planning, team building, motivation, and interpersonal skills.

Student Development Faculty

Professors

Heaps, Richard A. (1970) BS, Brigham Young U., 1966; MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1968, 1970.

Sorenson, David M. (1969) BA, Brigham Young U., 1961; EdM, EdD, Harvard U., 1962, 1970.

Ward, G. Robert (1981) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1959, 1961; PhD, Michigan State U., 1965.

Clinical Professors

Bekker, Demoyne (1990) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1962; PhD, Ohio State U., 1968.

Chapman, Ronald K. (1997) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1983.

Gleave, Robert L. (1989) BS, MEd, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1976, 1981.

Isakson, Richard L. (1983) BA, Weber State U., 1970; MS, Bucknell U., 1971; PhD, Cornell U., 1975.

Johnson, Richard W. (1968) BS, Utah State U., 1961; MS, U. of Wisconsin, 1964; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1968.

MacArthur, James D. (1973) BA, MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1973, 1976.

Shively, Ann Pye (1991) BMEd, Sam Houston State U., 1958; MEd, PhD, Texas A & M U., 1966, 1971.

Smart, David (1992) BA, Brigham Young U., 1964; MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1967, 1969.

Associate Clinical Professors

Bell, Douglas J. (1972) BS, Brigham Young U., 1970; MBA, U. of Utah, 1971; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1984.

Booth, Eileen E. (1989) BS, MEd, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1984, 1989.

Esplin, Patricia B. (1993) BS, Brigham Young U., 1966; MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1976.

Lawson, Jane M. (1997) BA, Webster U., 1962; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1980.

Maughan, Michael L. (1972) BS, MS, EdD, Utah State U., 1966, 1968, 1970.

Nielsen, Stevan L. (1988) BS, Brigham Young U., 1976; PhD, U. of Washington, 1984.

Orme, G. Craig (1983) BS, MS PhD, Utah State U., 1972, 1974, 1980.

Ruiz, Chris C. (1992) BA, California State U., 1960; MSW, U. of Southern California, 1963; PhD, Claremont Graduate School, 1973.

Assistant Clinical Professors

Bennion, Lynne A. (1993) BS, Brigham Young U., 1981; MS, PhD, Purdue U., 1983, 1986.

Jackson, Aaron P. (1993) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1989; PhD, U. of Missouri, Columbia, 1993.

Moody, Richard A. (1997) BS, Brigham Young U., 1984; MS, Kansas State U., 1991; PsyD, Central Michigan U., 1996.

Morrell, Barbara (1997) BS, MEd, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1982, 1985, 1997.

Scharman, Janet S. (1992) BA, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1970, 1990, 1992.

Smith, Steven A. (1992) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1981; PhD, U. of Minnesota, 1988.

Williams, Marleen S. (1993) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1987, 1993.

Worthen, Vaughn E. (1991) AA, Ricks College, 1980; BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1983, 1985; PhD, U. of Kansas, 1993.

Emeritus

Herlin, Wayne R. (1964) BA, U. of Utah, 1953; MA, Stanford U., 1956; PhD, U. of Utah, 1963.

Study Abroad

See Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies and David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies.

Swedish

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Teacher Education

M. Winston Egan, Chair
215 MCKB

David O. McKay School of Education Advisement Center
120 MCKB, PO Box 25096, (801) 378-3426

Early Childhood Education

Admission to Degree Program

Students are accepted into the early childhood education teacher preparation program by application only. The application review process includes the following:

1. Completion of the ECE preapplication packet (PAP) available for purchase at the Bookstore third-floor information desk.
2. The Pre-Professional Skills Test (PPST) or exemption from the test based on ACT scores. (Minimal scores required: *Written:* Math 175, Reading 176, Writing 174; *Computer:* Math 320, Reading 323, Writing 320.) Those with an ACT score of 26 or higher on the English and Math subtests are exempt from the PPST requirement.
3. Successful completion (B grade or above) of the following core and preprofessional courses: FamSc 160, 210, 321/322.
4. The university cumulative GPA.

To conform to the requirements for professional accreditation and certification, the early childhood education degree program must limit enrollment. Therefore, not everyone who applies will be automatically accepted.

The Discipline

Early childhood education prepares teachers who, having gained their own liberal education, help preschool, kindergarten, and primary-grade-school-age children learn by improving the teaching children receive in the home, school, church, and community. Early childhood education provides a preparation program wherein students enhance their thinking abilities, build their confidence in exploring new ideas, and become self-motivated, independent learners.

The program provides the opportunity for prospective teachers to learn about the culture of young children, develop a solid foundation in basic principles of teaching and learning that originate in developmental theory and research, and become proficient in appropriate practices to implement those basic principles in practical settings.

Career Opportunities

A degree in early childhood education leads to certification in pre-K through grade 3. The kindergarten endorsement can only be obtained as part of the Early Childhood Certificate. Students in this major are certified to teach kindergarten through primary grades in the public schools as well as in private and public preschools. See the advisement center for details.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) . . . . . 0–3.0 hours
(or Math ACT score of at least 22)
First-Year Writing (one course) 3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses) 3–8.0
(Engl 313 is strongly recommended.)
Advanced Languages/Math/Music
(one to four courses) 3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses) 3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses) 3–7.0
(PhyS 110A, 110B are strongly recommended.)
American Heritage (one to two courses) 3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses) 1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses) 6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course) 3.0
Natural Sciences (one course) 3–4.0
(Zool 134 recommended)
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course) 3.0
(FamSc 160 or 210 fills this requirement.)

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion 14.0
Upper-division hours 40.0
Residency 30.0
Total hours 128.0
Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed for the following undergraduate degree program.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Early Childhood Education

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Elementary Education Plus Early Childhood Education Certification

Certification may be obtained by completing the elementary education program with an emphasis in early childhood education. See the Education Advisement Center for further information.

BS Early Childhood Education (60 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following preprofessional courses prior to application for admission:
   FamSc 160, 210, 321, 322.

3. Complete the following:
   FamSc 303, 312, 315.
   And select one course from the following:
   FamSc 250, 310, 311.
4. Complete the following professional courses (prior acceptance to the major required):
   CSE 400.
   ECE 325.
   ElEd 340.
   Hlth 121.
   IP&T 286.
5. Complete the following professional sequence cohort and student teaching courses:
   ECE 323, 324, 326, 327, 425, 426.
   ElEd 356, 361, 363.
   RelC 491, 492.
   And select one course from the following:
   ECE 423, 424.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Early Childhood Education (ECE)

Undergraduate Courses

323. Integrated Curriculum in Programs for Young Children. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: admittance to either ECE or ElEd certification programs.

Methods in planning and implementing an integrated curriculum using projects and thematic units developmentally appropriate for children's learning.

324. Integrated Curriculum Practicum. (2:0:2) Prerequisite: admittance to ECE cohort.

Practical classroom experience in planning and implementing developmentally appropriate learning activities, via themes and projects, that effectively integrate learning across curriculum subject areas.

325. Teaching the Creative Arts in ECE Programs. (4:4:0) Prerequisite: admittance to ECE major.

Various strategies that encourage children's aesthetic development, physical abilities, and self-esteem through meaningful, integrated learning experiences in art, music, movement/dance, and drama.

326. Teaching Social Studies for Cultural Understanding. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: admittance to ECE cohort.

Developing and implementing meaningful integrated learning experiences in the social studies area, taking into account children's home experience and cultural values.

327. Assessment and Action Research in Early Childhood Programs. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: admittance to ECE cohort.

Formal and informal assessment strategies and data collection procedures for evaluating children's progress; programs to enhance learning, individualize instruction, and communicate with others.

423. Preschool Student Teaching Practicum. (4:0:Arr.) Prerequisite: all ECE professional sequence courses; concurrent enrollment in ECE 426; prior application.

Student teaching experience in the preschool. Fee.

424. Kindergarten Student Teaching Practicum. (4:0:Arr.) Prerequisite: all ECE professional sequence courses; concurrent enrollment in ECE 426; prior application.

Student teaching experience in the kindergarten. Fee.

425. Primary Grade Student Teaching Practicum. (4:0:Arr.) Prerequisite: all ECE professional sequence courses; concurrent enrollment in ECE 426; prior application.

Student teaching experience in the primary grades. Fee.

426. Capstone Seminar. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: concurrent enrollment with student teaching practicum.

Gaining insight into significant issues in early childhood education, developing a sense of professional ethics, and becoming personally committed to ongoing professional development.

Elementary Education

Admission to Degree Program

Students are accepted into the elementary education teacher preparation program by application only. Students must attend orientation seminars held by the Education Advisement Center prior to making application for admission.

The application review process includes but is not limited to the following:

1. The Exploratory Experience in Education (EEE), a 35-hour independent field experience verified by a written report.
2. The university cumulative GPA.
3. The Pre-Professional Skills Test (PPST) or exemption from the test based on ACT scores. (Minimal scores required: *Written:* Math 175, Reading 176, Writing 174; *Computer:* Math 320, Reading 323, Writing 320.) Those with an ACT score of 26 or higher on the English and Math subtests are exempt from the PPST requirement.

The degree programs in elementary education carry enrollment limitations. A maximum of two applications will be considered for any individual.

The Discipline

Elementary education prepares teachers who, having gained their own liberal education, help elementary-school-age children learn by improving the teaching children receive in the home, school, church, and community. Elementary education provides a preparation program wherein students enhance their thinking abilities, build their confidence in exploring new ideas, and become self-motivated, independent learners.

The program provides the opportunity for prospective teachers to learn about the culture of the elementary school, develop a solid foundation in basic principles of teaching and learning that originate in educational theory and research, and become proficient in systematically applying those basic principles in practical settings.

Career Opportunities

A degree in elementary education leads to opportunities for teaching in elementary schools. By taking additional classes in early childhood education, secondary education, or music, students can extend their teaching credential to teach kindergarten, seventh and eighth grade, or elementary music. The current number of elementary education graduates far exceeds the market demand.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements, (2) university requirements, and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses) (Engl 313 is strongly recommended.)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses) (PhyS 110A, 110B are strongly recommended.)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course) (FamSc 210 fills this requirement; Geog 120 is also strongly recommended.)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed for the following undergraduate degree program.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Elementary Education

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA Teaching and Learning
MEd Teaching and Learning
EdD Reading

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Seventh- and Eighth-Grade Endorsement

See the Education Advisement Center for further information.

Elementary Music Education–Elementary Education Dual Certification

See the College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center (D-444 HFAC) for music programs and course listings and the Education Advisement Center for the education program.

Elementary Education Plus Early Childhood Education Certification

Certification may be obtained by completing the elementary education program with an emphasis in early childhood education. See the Education Advisement Center for further information.

BS Elementary Education (64.5 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. Make formal application for admission to the program through the School of Education Advisement Center.
2. No D credit will be accepted in the supporting or major courses.
3. Complete the following courses prior to application for admission:
   FamSc 210.
   Math 305.
   PE 169.
4. Complete the following courses after being admitted to the program:
   Dance 326.
   FamSc 315.
   Music 378.
   TMA 352.
   VAEdu 326.
5. Complete orientation seminars (seminar schedule posted outside 120 MCKB).
6. Complete the following professional courses (prior application required):
   ElEd 302, 340, 351, 356, 357, 358, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 372.
   CSE 400.
   ECE 323.
   EdLF 452.
   Hlth 361.
   IP&T 301.
   PE 375.
   RelC 491, 492.
7. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   IP&T 286.
8. Complete 8 hours from one of the following:
   ElEd 400, 496R.

Recommended Courses

The following courses are strongly recommended. All can fill GE requirements:
Biol 100 (101 lab also strongly recommended).
Engl 313.
Geog 120.
PhyS 110A, B.
Zool 134.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Elementary Education (ElEd)

Undergraduate Courses

†Instructional Psychology & Technology 286. Microcomputers in the Schools. (1:2:Arr.)

302. Planning and Management. (2:2:0) F, W Prerequisite: admittance to elementary education program.
Learning principles, lesson planning, classroom atmosphere, classroom management, professional attitudes and practices.

310R. Introduction to Learning and Teaching. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) On dem. By application only. See EAC or department office for application dates. Prerequisite: Engl 115 or Phil 105, Precollege Mathematics, FamSc 210, PPST, speech and hearing test, and minimum of 45 credit hours completed.
Course consists of two major components: (1) teaching for learning, and (2)cognitive understanding of effective teaching and learning. Demonstrated competence in both components is required for admittance to the professional program. Fee.

340. Children's Literature. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp (nonmajors only) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: major status.
Trends and titles in children's and adolescent literature. Reading and critiquing as well as practical uses of children's literature in both school and home.

351. Multicultural Education. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp
Cultural issues related to public education that promote constructive interaction among people of differing economic, social, racial, ethnic, and religious backgrounds.

356. Teaching Reading and Language Arts in the Primary Grades. (2:2:0) F, W Prerequisite: concurrent registration in ElEd 358.
Issues, theories, and practices of literacy instruction for primary grades, including development of literacy through listening, speaking, reading, and writing.

357. Teaching Reading and Language Arts in the Intermediate Grades. (2:2:0) F, W Prerequisite: concurrent registration in ElEd 358.
Issues and practices for teaching language arts in grades three to six, including content area reading and writing, literature, comprehending and responding, vocabulary development, and structural analysis applications.

358. Practicum in Assessing and Supporting Literacy Development. (2:0:4) F, W Prerequisite: concurrent registration in ElEd 356, 357.
Applying reading and writing assessment and instructional strategies in elementary classrooms. Fee.

360. Diagnostic and Prescriptive Teaching in Reading. (2:2:2) On dem. Prerequisite: ElEd 310R, 356, 357, and formal admission into elementary education major. Attendance first day is mandatory.
Using classroom diagnostic techniques to design a prescriptive program for correcting reading difficulties. Fee.

361. Teaching Mathematics in the Elementary School. (2:2:0) F, W Prerequisite: Math 305, 306 or demonstrated competency on test of content; concurrent registration in ElEd 362.
Methods and materials for teaching elementary school mathematics guided by current principles of curriculum, instruction, and assessment in mathematics education.

362. Practicum in Teaching Mathematics. (1:0:2) F, W Prerequisite: Math 305, 306 or demonstrated competency on test of content; concurrent registration in ElEd 361.
Applying content and methods learned in ElEd 361 in an elementary school classroom. Fee.

363. Teaching Science in the Elementary School. (2:2:0) F, W Prerequisite: department approval; concurrent registration in ElEd 364.
Designed to help prospective teachers develop knowledge, skills, and attitudes related to teaching science in the elementary school.

364. Practicum in Teaching Science. (0.5:0:1) F, W Prerequisite: department approval; concurrent registration in ElEd 363.
Field experience designed to give students opportunities to interact with elementary school students and apply skills and knowledge developed in ElEd 363.

365. Teaching Social Studies in the Elementary School. (2:2:0) F, W Prerequisite: concurrent registration in ElEd 366.
Developing instructional methods and curriculum design to initiate and maintain effective learning in social studies classrooms.

366. Social Studies Practicum. (0.5:0:1) F, W Prerequisite: concurrent registration in ElEd 365.
Practicing strategies in instruction and curriculum to initiate and maintain effective learning in social studies classrooms.

370. Practicum in Reading, Language Arts, and Mathematics. (4:1:4) F, W 1st blk. only, Sp interns only. Prerequisite: ElEd 350, 352, 353, 356, 357, Engl 313. Students must take ElEd 400 immediately following 370.
Practicum in reading, language arts, and mathematics in a school setting with emphasis on learning. Fee.

372. Instruction and Assessment. (2:2:0) F, W Prerequisite: admittance to elementary education program.
Taken during second professional semester. Extended planning, integrated units, teaching strategies, management problems, and assessment and reporting of student progress.

400. Classroom Student-Teaching Experience. (1–8:Arr.:Arr.) F, W 2d blk. only. Prerequisite: ElEd 370 and prior application. See EAC for application dates. Fee.

450. Foundations for Bilingual/ESL Education. (3:3:0) F
Identifying and assessing legal, linguistic, cultural, community, and familial issues affecting access of Limited English Proficient (LEP) student populations to education.

461. Individualized Instruction in the Elementary School. (1–2:1:0) On dem.
Techniques for individualizing instruction in the elementary school.

490R. Senior Seminar. (1–2:2:0 ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

493R. Independent Readings or Project. (1–4:0:3 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: department's consent.

496R. Cooperative Education—Internship. (8–12:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F Prerequisite: ElEd 370 or two-semester professional sequence and prior application. See EAC for application dates.
A full-year classroom teaching internship in the public schools.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

514R. Special Topics in Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) On dem. These courses do not count toward a graduate degree.
—Children's Literature
—Classroom Management
—Computers in Education
—Curriculum
—Environmental Education
—Foundations of Reading
—Increasing Teaching Effectiveness
—Individualized Instruction
—Language Arts
—Language Development and Reading
—Mathematics
—Organizing for Instruction
—Precision Teaching
—Reading
—Reading in the Content Areas
—Science
—Social Studies
—Writing in Elementary Education

515R. Special Topics in Education. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) On dem. These courses do not count toward a graduate degree without prior approval.
—Art in Education
—Children's Literature
—Classroom Management
—Curriculum Innovations
—Dance Drama in Education
—Early Childhood Education
—Effective Teaching
—Evaluating Student Learning
—Foundations
—Health Education
—Home-School Relations
—Human Development
—Investigating Home Schooling
—Language Arts
—Mathematics
—Microcomputers in Schools
—Multicultural Education
—Music in Education
—PE in Education
—Precision Teaching
—Program Evaluation
—Reading
—Reading in the Content Areas
—Science
—Social Science
—Writing in the Elementary School

530. Principles of Learning. (3:3:0) Su
Improving classroom learning through understanding underlying psychological principles and theories.

533. Written Expression in the Elementary Schools. (2:2:0) On dem.
Foundation, objectives, and strategies for teaching the writing process to elementary students, including spelling, handwriting, and integration with listening and speaking skills.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Secondary Education

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in this department carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

The Department of Teacher Education provides a program that certifies secondary teachers for the public schools. In addition to content courses in the field(s) in which they plan to teach, students complete professional education courses and practicum experiences that prepare them to teach in a secondary school setting.

Career Opportunities

Secondary education teacher.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

Composite teaching majors only:

BS Physical Science
BS Social Science

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

General Information

Teaching Majors, Minors and Composites

Students wishing to certify as secondary teachers select one of the following options in addition to the professional education sequence.

Option 1a: Teaching Major
The following subjects *do not require* a teaching minor, although a teaching minor is recommended.

- Chemistry Education (83.5–89.5 hours)
- English Teaching (71–72 hours)
- French Teaching (61–62 hours)
- German Teaching (80–81 hours)
- History Teaching (61–62 hours)
- Mathematics Education (68–69 hours)
- Physical Education: Public School Teaching (83.5–84.5 hours)
- Physics Teaching (69–70 hours)
- Theatre and Media Arts Education (68 hours)

Option 1b: Teaching Major and Approved Teaching Minor
The following subjects *require* an approved teaching minor.

- Dance Education (94–100 hours)
- Geography Teaching (84–92 hours)
- Spanish Teaching (80–102 hours)

Approved Teaching Minors for Options 1a and 1b Teaching Majors:

- Art Education (23 hours)
- Biology Teaching (29–30 hours) See Department of Botany and Range Science, Department of Microbiology, or Department of Zoology)
- Chemistry Education(16–18 hours)
- Chinese Teaching (27 hours)
- Coaching and Teaching Physical Education (25 hours)
- Computer Science Teaching (19 hours)
- Driver and Safety Education (16 hours)(see Department of Health Sciences)
- English Teaching (24 hours)
- French Teaching (21 hours)
- Geography Teaching (18 hours)
- Geology Teaching (16 hours)
- German Teaching (22 hours)
- Health Education (21 hours)
- History Teaching (21 hours)
- Japanese Teaching (25 hours)(see Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages)
- Latin Teaching (22 hours)(see Department of Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature)
- Mathematics Education (26 hours)
- Multicultural Education: Asian Studies (23–24 hours)(see David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies)
- Multicultural Education: Latin American Studies (24 hours)(see David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies)
- Multicultural Education: Near Eastern Studies (23–24 hours)(see David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies)
- Native American Studies (22 hours)(see Department of History)
- Physics Teaching (25 hours)
- Political Science Teaching (21 hours)
- Psychology Teaching (21 hours)
- Russian Teaching (31–32 hours)(see Department of Germanic and Slavic Languages)
- Sociology Teaching (21 hours)
- Spanish Teaching (21 hours)
- Special Education (29–32 hours)
- Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages (TESOL)(K–12)(19 hours)(see Department of Linguistics)
- Theatre and Media Arts Education (32 hours)

Option 2: Restricted Teaching Major and Approved Teaching Minor
The following subjects *require* an approved teaching minor from a frequently taught academic area.

- Chinese Teaching (80–86 hours)(see Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages)
- Health Sciences: School Health Education (77–83 hours)
- Japanese Teaching (85–91 hours)(see Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages)
- Latin Teaching (81–87 hours)(see Department of Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature)
- Political Science Teaching (89–95 hours)
- Psychology Teaching (81–87 hours)
- Russian Teaching (90–96 hours)(see Department of Germanic and Slavic Languages)
- Sociology Teaching (78–83 hours)

Approved Teaching Minors for Option 2 Teaching Majors

- Art Education (23 hours)
- Biology Teaching (29–30 hours)(see Department of Botany and Range Science, Department of Microbiology, or Department of Zoology)
- Chemistry Education (16–18 hours)
- Coaching and Teaching Physical Education (25 hours)
- Driver and Safety Education (16 hours)(see Department of Health Sciences)
- English Teaching (24 hours)
- French Teaching (21 hours)
- Geography Teaching (18 hours)
- German Teaching (22 hours)
- History Teaching (21 hours)
- Mathematics Education (25 hours)
- Physics Teaching (25 hours)
- Spanish Teaching (21 hours)
- Special Education (29–32 hours)
- Theatre and Media Arts Education (32 hours)

Option 3: Composite Teaching Major
A teaching composite enables a student to complete a broader range of content area courses. However, a composite requires at least 46 hours in the teaching major, usually exceeding the 128 hours required for graduation. Teaching composite majors are available in the following subject areas:

- Art Education: K–12 (83 hours)
- Biology Composite Teaching (94–101 hours)(see Department of Botany and Range Science, Department of Microbiology, or Department of Zoology)
- Earth and Space Science Education (83–87 hours)(see Department of Geology)
- Family Sciences: Home Economics Education Emphasis (89–90 hours)

Family Sciences: Home Economics Education–Family Life Emphasis (83–86 hours)
Humanities Composite Teaching (74–113 hours)
Music Education: K–12 Choral Emphasis (90 hours)
Music Education: K–12 Instrumental Emphasis (92 hours)
Physical Science Composite Teaching (78.5–80.5 hours)(see Department of Teacher Education)
Social Science Composite Teaching (75–77 hours)(see Department of Teacher Education)
Technology Teacher Education (87–89 hours)

Professional Education Requirements

Regardless of the option chosen for the content area course work, all students certifying in secondary education must complete the following courses:

1. Complete the following:
   ScEd 276R, 351, 375.
2. Complete 1 hour from the following:
   IP&T 286.
   Note: Two hours may be completed, with one hour used for ScEd 376R (see item 4 below).
3. Select one course from the following:
   ScEd 326.
   Soc 326.
4. Complete 1 hour from the following:
   ScEd 376R.
5. Complete 12 hours from the following:
   ScEd 476R or 496R (interns only).
6. A teaching methods course must be completed within the teaching major or composite. *Biological science, physical science, mathematics, and social science majors must complete ScEd 377 (3.0 credit hours) as their methods course.* For other majors, refer to the appropriate advisement center or major course listing regarding the methods class.

Recommended Courses:
RelC 491, 492.

Student Teaching Prerequisites

1. *Teaching Major.* Complete at least 24 hours in their teaching major or 36 hours in a composite teaching major. Some departments require more than this minimum before they will clear a candidate for student teaching.
2. *Teaching Within a Minor.* Students requesting to student teach in the area of a teaching minor must (1) complete all minor course work before student teaching and (2) obtain written permission from the Teacher Education Department.
3. *Professional Education Courses.* Complete ScEd 276R, 326 (or Soc 326), 351, 375, 376R (1 hour), IP&T 286, and the appropriate 377 course with a C or higher.
4. *Application.* Apply for student teaching at the Education Advisement Center.

Certification Procedures

Students are responsible for keeping the EAC informed of their progress toward certification. If any changes are to be made in the certification program outlined in this catalog, the student must prepare and circulate the necessary memoranda to obtain approval from both the academic major department and secondary education.

To avoid undue delay certifying, students are urged to arrange for a personal review of their EAC file well in advance of registering for their final semester, because completion of graduation requirements does not necessarily mean that all certification requirements have been met.

Students who have already received a degree in an academic area and wish to obtain a secondary teaching certificate should contact the Admissions Office for specific information.

Teaching Majors, Teaching Minors, and Composite Teaching Majors

The following is a list of teaching majors and minors offered jointly with the Department of Teacher Education and other academic departments throughout the university. For specific major course requirements, see the department offering the teaching major or minor. For certification requirements, refer to the above information.

Teaching Majors and Composite Teaching Majors

(Hours listed include courses taken to fill both major and certification requirements.)

Art Education (K–12) (83 hours)
Biology Composite Teaching (94–101 hours)(see Department of Botany and Range Science, Department of Microbiology, or Department of Zoology)
Chemistry Education (83.5–89.5)
Chinese Teaching (80–86 hours)(see Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages)
Dance Education (94–100 hours)
Earth and Space Science Education (83–87 hours)(see Department of Geology)
English Teaching (71–72 hours)
Family Sciences: Home Economics Education Emphasis (89–90 hours)
Family Sciences: Home Economics Education—Family Life Emphasis (83–86 hours)
French Teaching (61–62 hours)
Geography Teaching (84–92 hours)
German Teaching (80–81 hours)
Health Sciences: School Health Education Emphasis (77–83 hours)
History Teaching (61–62 hours)
Humanities Composite Teaching (74–113 hours)
Japanese Teaching (85–91 hours)(see Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages)
Latin Teaching (81–87 hours)(see Department of Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature)
Mathematics Education (68–69 hours)
Music Education: K–12 Choral Emphasis (90 hours)
Music Education: K–12 Instrumental Emphasis (92 hours)
Physical Education: Public School Teaching Emphasis (83.5–84.5 hours)
Physical Science Composite Teaching (78.5–80.5 hours)(see Department of Teacher Education)
Physics Teaching (69–70 hours)
Political Science Teaching (89–95 hours)
Psychology Teaching (81–87 hours)
Russian Teaching (90–96 hours)(see Department of Germanic and Slavic Languages)
Social Science Composite Teaching (75–77 hours)(see Department of Teacher Education)
Sociology Teaching (78–83 hours)
Spanish Teaching (80–102 hours)
Technology Teacher Education (87–89 hours)
Theatre and Media Arts Education (68 hours)

Teaching Minors

Art Education (23 hours)
Biology Teaching (29–30 hours)(see Department of Botany and Range Science, Department of Microbiology, or Department of Zoology)
Chemistry Education (16–18 hours)
Chinese Teaching (27 hours)(see Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages)

Coaching and Teaching Physical Education (25 hours)
Computer Science Teaching (19 hours)
Driver Safety Education (16 hours)(see Department of Health Sciences)
English Teaching (24 hours)
French Teaching (21 hours)
Geography Teaching (18 hours)
Geology Teaching (16 hours)
German Teaching (22 hours)
Health Education (21 hours)
History Teaching (21 hours)
Japanese Teaching (25 hours)(see Department of Asian and Near Eastern Languages)
Latin Teaching (22 hours)(see Department of Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature)
Mathematics Education (26 hours)
Multicultural Education: Asian Studies (23–24 hours)(see David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies)
Multicultural Education: Latin American Studies (24 hours)(see David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies)
Multicultural Education: Near Eastern Studies (23–24 hours)(see David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies)
Native American Studies (22 hours)(see Department of History)
Physics Teaching (25 hours)
Political Science Teaching (21 hours)
Psychology Teaching (21 hours)
Russian Teaching (31–32 hours)(see Department of Germanic and Slavic Languages)
Sociology Teaching (21 hours)
Spanish Teaching (21 hours)
Special Education (29–32 hours)
Teaching English to Speakers of Other Languages (TESOL)(K–12) (19 hours)(See Department of Linguistics)
Theatre and Media Arts Education (32 hours)

Teaching Composite Majors Offered by the Department of Teacher Education

BS Teaching Physical Science (78.5–80.5 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108, 127, 137.
   Chem 105, 106, 107, 223, 351, 501.
   Geol 111, 112, 210.
   Phil 423.
   Biol 130.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Geol 286, 351, 370, 480.
3. Complete the Professional Education Component (27–28 hours).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Teaching Social Science (75–77 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   Hist 120, 121, 201, 202, 366.

   Note: Hist 366 must be completed before ScEd 476R/496R.
2. Select one course from 300-level or above history courses.
3. Complete the following:
   Geog 101, 301.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Geog 302, 331, 341, 346, 401, 405, 450, 455, 460, 465, 470, 471, 480, 485.
5. Complete the following:
   Econ 110 and any 200-level or above economics course.
6. Complete the following:
   PlSc 110.
7. Complete the following:
   Either PlSc 150
   Or any 300-level or higher political science course.
8. Complete the following:
   Psych 111.
9. Select one course from the following:
   Psych 321, 341, 342, 350, 361, 365.
10. Select one course from the following:
    Soc 111.
    Anthr 101, 110.
11. Complete the Professional Education Component (28–29 hours).

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Secondary Education (ScEd)

Undergraduate Courses

276R. Exploration of Teaching. (4:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W Prerequisite: 30 semester hours or sophomore status.
Field-based, team-taught, initial teaching experience that helps potential teachers identify their strengths and weaknesses in viable educational settings.

326. Foundations of Teaching. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: ScEd 276R.
Knowledge base of teaching, including social, legal, familial, governmental, technological, and empirical impacts upon the teacher's personal and professional life.

351. Multicultural and Exceptional Education. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp Su Prerequisite: ScEd 276R.
Promoting constructive interaction both with students of differing economic, social, racial, and ethnic backgrounds and students with exceptional physical and mental conditions. Field trip required.

375. Theory and Methods of Secondary Education. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: ScEd 276R.
Disciplines of education; analysis of educational practice and relationship between theories and research on education and the practice of teaching.

376R. (ScEd-IS) Secondary Education Field and Specialty Experiences. (1–2:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Independent Study also for secondary education majors. Prerequisite: ScEd 276R.
School-related experiences to provide preservice teachers with field or specialty experiences related to specific teaching majors.

377. Teaching Methods and Instruction. (3:3:0) F, W Prerequisite: ScEd 276R; concurrent registration in ScEd 476R for social studies and mathematics students.
Teaching secondary-specific courses in science or social studies; discussions, demonstrations, materials, planning. Students must enroll for section that corresponds with appropriate teaching major.

450. Foundations for Bilingual/ESL Education. (3:3:0) F
Indentifying and assessing legal, linguistic, cultural, community, and familial issues affecting the access of Limited English Proficient (LEP) student populations to education.

476R. Secondary Student Teaching and Reading in the Content Area. (1–15:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W Prerequisite: acceptance to certification program in David O. McKay School of Education; completion of IP&T 286, ScEd 276R, 326, 351, 375, 376R, appropriate 377; successful completion of at least 24 hours in teaching major or 36 hours in composite teaching major.
Professional education certification experience for all approved secondary teacher candidates. Theory and practice of teaching, specific subject instruction, reading in the content, curriculum development, evaluation, classroom management, professional education. Student teaching is a direct full-day experience. Seminar attendance required. Fee.

490R. Senior Seminar. (1–2:2:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

493R. Readings. (1–2:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

496R. Secondary Education Internship. (1–15: Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: ScEd 276R, 326, 351, 375, 376R, IP&T 286, and completion of 30 teaching major credits.
Full-time, full-year teaching in approved secondary schools. University and secondary school supervision. Contractual agreement. Seminar attendance required. Fee.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

514R. Special Topics in Secondary Education. (1–3:3:3 ea.) On dem.

Note: ScEd 514R and 515R are for recertification only. These courses do not count toward preservice secondary certification or graduate degrees.
—Computers in Education
—Curriculum and Instruction
—Fine Arts Education
—Foreign Language Education
—Health and Physical Education
—Language Arts Education
—Mathematics and Computer Science Education
—Middle Education
—Reading in the Content Area
—Science Education
—Social Science Education
—Vocational Education

515R. Special Topics in Education. (1–3:Arr.:1 ea.) On dem. These courses must have prior approval of department to count toward graduate degrees.
—Middle Education
—Reading in the Content Area
—Science Education
—Secondary Curriculum
—Secondary Instruction
—Teaching and Learning

531. Effective Classroom Instruction. (2:2:Arr.) On dem.
Developing strategies to initiate and maintain effective learning in elementary and secondary classrooms. Expanding teaching perspectives and acquiring observation skills.

539R. Practicum in Learning and Teaching. (1–8:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Experience in a school setting under direction of college faculty.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Teacher Education Faculty

Professors
Baird, James E. (1973) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1962; PhD, U. of Utah, 1973.
Clark, D. Cecil (1974) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1961; PhD, Stanford U., 1965.
Coombs, C. Garn (1971) BS, U. of Utah, 1962; MA, DA, Carnegie-Mellon U., 1968, 1975.
Cutler, Beverly R. (1969) BA, U. of Utah, 1952, MS, Brigham Young U., 1963; PhD, Stanford U., 1966.
Earle, Rodney S. (1993) BA, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1973; PhD, Indiana U., 1981.
Edwards, Clifford H. (1978) BS, MEd, Utah State U., 1962, 1964; EdD, U. of Utah, 1968.
Eldredge, J. Lloyd (1981) BS, Brigham Young U., 1958; MS, EdD, U. of Utah, 1962, 1970.
Hansen, J. Merrell (1988) BA, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1967; PhD, U. of Texas, Austin, 1971.
Hardy, Garry Ray (1970) BS, Utah State U., 1961; MS, Brigham Young U., 1970; EdD, U. of Houston, 1977.
Harris, R. Carl (1975) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1967, 1968; PhD, Pennsylvania State U., 1971.
Jacobs, James S. (1976) BA, U. of Utah, 1968; MA, Stanford U., 1970; EdD, U. of Georgia, 1978.
Larsen, Jean M. (1963) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1960; PhD, U. of Utah, 1972.
Monroe, Eula Ewing (1992) BS, MA, Western Kentucky U., 1960, 1964; EdD, George Peabody Coll. of Vanderbilt U., 1980.
Reutzel, D. Ray (1985) BA, U. of Wyoming, 1977; MA, Utah State U., 1980; PhD, U. of Wyoming, 1982.
Tolman, Marvin N. (1975) BS, Utah State U., 1964; MEd, U. of Utah, 1969; EdD, Utah State U., 1975.
Tunnell, Michael O. (1992) BA, Brigham Young U., 1973; MEd, Utah State U., 1978; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1986.

Associate Professors
Campbell, Milo Kay (1966) BA, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1966; PhD, Wayne State U., 1972.
Chilcoat, George (Skip) (1989) BA, MEd, EdD, Arizona State U., 1972, 1975, 1983.
Fawson, Parker C. (1993) BA, Weber State Coll., 1983; MEd, EdD Brigham Young U., 1986, 1989.
Morrison, Timothy G. (1994) BA, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1979; PhD, U. of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, 1986.
Pinnegar, Stefinee (1992) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1989; PhD, U. of Arizona, 1992.
Richards, A. LeGrand (1985) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1975, 1982; MEd, Harvard U., 1976.

Assistant Professors
Arnoldsen, Larry M. (1969) BS, Brigham Young U., 1960; MA, California State Polytechnic U., 1965; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1985.
Birrell, James (1993) BS, Brigham Young U., 1981; MEd, U. of Utah, 1984; EdD, U. of Nevada, Las Vegas, 1993.
Clemmer, Janice White (1980) BS, Brigham Young U., 1964; MA, Dominican Coll. of San Rafael, 1975; MA, U. of San Francisco, 1976; PhD, PhD, U. of Utah, 1979, 1980; JD, Brigham Young U., 1993.
Erickson, Lynnette B. (1996) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1987; PhD, Arizona State U., 1996.
Kokol, Martin L. (1995) BA, Princeton U., 1978; MA, Claremont Graduate School, 1981; CAS, Harvard U., 1988; EdD, Boston U., 1994.

Ostlund, Margaret F. (1987) BA, MEd, EdS, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1976, 1977; PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1993.
Tuttle, Marie (1976) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1976; PhD, Texas A&M U., 1995.
Wentworth, Nancy M. (1992) BS, MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1971, 1972, 1992.
Wilcox, Brad (1990) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1990; PhD, U. of Wyoming, 1994.
Young, Janet R. (1996) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1974, 1989; PhD, U. of Oklahoma, 1996.

Instructor
Smith, Stephanie Z. (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1984.

Adjunct Faculty
Alldredge, Joseph (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1969; BS, Utah State U., 1975; MS, Southwest Missouri State U., 1978; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1980.
Black, Jan (1995) BA, Southern Utah U., 1962; MEd, Oregon State U., 1971.
Grant, Charles (1995) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1954, 1968, 1975.
Hansen, Sharon (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1965; MEd, Utah State U., 1987.
Hawkes, Lynda (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1989; MEd, Idaho State U., 1996.
Lloyd, Linda (1995) BS, Utah State U., 1983; MEd, Idaho State U., 1986; PhD, U. of Idaho, 1995.
Nielsen, Kendall L. (1995) BA, Southern Utah State Coll., 1976; MM, Brigham Young U., 1988.
Reeve, JoAnn (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1964.
Robertson, Blaine (1995) BS, MEd, Idaho State U., 1981, 1984; EdS, Utah State U., 1986.
Seamons, Rhonda (1995) BS, Brigham Young U., 1984; MEd, Utah State U., 1989; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1993.
Stocking, Larry (1995) BS, MHEd, Idaho State U., 1992, 1993.

Emeriti
Allred, Ruel A. (1961) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1954, 1958; EdD, U. of Oregon, 1965.
Allred, Wallace E. (1956) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1957; MS, Oregon State U., 1965; PhD, U. of Utah, 1971.
Anderson, Enid R. (1968) BS, MA, EdD, Utah State U., 1951, 1956, 1972.
Baird, Joseph Hugh (1963) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1954, 1954; EdD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1962.
Belt, W. Dwayne (1961) BA, Brigham Young U., 1952; MA, EdD, Colorado State Coll., 1958, 1961.
Berryessa, Max J. (1963) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1948, 1949; EdD, Stanford U., 1959.
Bowles, Catherine (1960) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1936, 1953.
Card, Willard R. (1967) BS, U. of Utah, 1957; MA, San Jose State Coll., 1964.
Chai, Henry K. (1971) BS, Brigham Young U., 1951; MA, EdD, Arizona State U., 1962, 1979.
Clark, H. Clifford (1969) BS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1954, 1963; MA, California State U., Los Angeles, 1957.
Clark, Hazel C. (1952) BS, U. of Utah, 1938; MS, Brigham Young U., 1957.
Clark, Welsford Hone (1956) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1956, 1962.
Compton, Lane A. (1953) BS, MS, EdD, U. of Utah, 1944, 1951, 1955.
Daines, Delva (1955) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1940, 1947; EdD, Washington State U., 1956.
Davidson, Bertha B. (1950) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1950, 1954.
Dunn, James W. (1970) BS, MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1950, 1960, 1968.
Harmon, Frank W. (1963) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1952, 1956; EdD, Columbia U., 1964.
Heil, Lillian H. (1974) BA, Fresno State Coll., 1950; MS, U. of Utah, 1960; EdD, Columbia U., 1968.
Henderson, E. Dean (1964) BS, MEd, Utah State U., 1936, 1958.
Koplin, Joanne W. (1968) BS, U. of Utah, 1951; MEd, Brigham Young U., 1976.
Laird, Robert William (1973) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1951, 1962; EdD, Utah State U., 1971.
Miller, Elva K. (1955) BS, Brigham Young U., 1947.
Moore, Blaine H. (1970) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1960; EdD, Colorado State Coll., 1969.
Nelson, Marvin N. (1959) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1951, 1961; PhD, U. of Utah 1975.
Rasband, Mima (1952) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1937, 1950.
Rogers, J. Keith (1971) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1959, 1963; PhD, Michigan State U., 1971.
Searle, June G. (1961) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1967; PhD, U. of Utah, 1974.
Steed, Robin (1988) BS, Brigham Young U., 1951; MA, St. Mary's Coll., 1981; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1984.
Storrs, Jane G. (1960) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1946, 1960.
Sucher, Floyd (1991) BS, Brigham Young U., 1954; MA, California State U., Los Angeles, 1957; EdD, Northern Colorado State U., 1963.
Wilcox, Ray T. (1957) BS, MEd, Brigham Young U., 1951, 1954; EdD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1957.
Winterrose, Geneva (1967) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1948, 1951; EdD, Utah State U., 1968.
Wolfgramm, Harold F. (1966) BS, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1959, 1960, 1964.

Teaching English to Students of Other Languages (TESOL)

See Linguistics.

Technology Education and Construction Management

Garth A. Hill, Chair
230 SNLB, PO Box 28200, (801) 378-2021

College of Engineering and Technology Advisement Center
264 CB, PO Box 24101, (801) 378-4325

Admission to Degree Program

All technology education degree programs are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors and construction management majors. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course)	0–3.0 hours
(or Math ACT score of at least 22)	
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Construction Management
Emphasis (optional):
International
BS Technology Teacher Education
BS Facilities Management
Emphasis (optional):
International

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Technology Education

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Construction Management

The Discipline

Construction management is a field where there are new problems to solve daily, and the challenge is always present to find a better way to build the cities, offices, homes, highways, and multiple projects that will meet worldwide demands.

BYU's construction management curriculum covers five essential areas: construction technology, architecture, engineering, business management, and construction management.

Career Opportunities

The program has had 100 percent placement within the construction industry, with salaries typically near the top range of BYU graduates. Graduates find employment in a variety of construction-industry-related positions. Typical position titles are superintendent, estimator, scheduler, field engineer, inspector, general contractor, sales representative, insurance and bonding agent, safety engineer, project manager, owner's representative, financial loan officer, etc.

Alumni find they are qualified for employment in all types of construction. It is a broad-based program that provides the training and experience needed for several occupational opportunities.

This major is also excellent preparation for students desiring further study in architecture, business management, or construction law.

General Information

High School Preparation

Recommended high school courses include drafting, algebra, trigonometry, calculus, physics, and carpentry, along with the other courses necessary for admittance to BYU.

Prearchitecture Program

Brigham Young University does not have an architecture program, but construction management provides an excellent preparatory program for architecture. Consult with department faculty concerning a prearchitecture program.

BS Construction Management (100 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following preprofessional courses:
   CM 105.
   Engl 115.
   Math 112.
   Phscs 105.
2. Complete the following professional courses:
   CM 155, 199R (1 hour), 210, 211, 217, 241, 311, 320, 335, 345, 385, 411, 412, 415, 426, 445.
   CEEn 103, 113, 302.
   TecE 270.
3. Complete four registrations of the following:
   TecE 291R.
4. Complete three registrations of the following:
   TecE 391R.
5. Complete one registration of the following:
   CM 491R.
6. Complete the following supporting courses:
   Acc 200, 341.
   BusM 300.
   Comms 150.
   Econ 110.
   OrgB 320.
   Stat 221.
   VADes 102.
7. Select one course from the following:
   MCom 320.
   Engl 316.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Emphasis (optional): International (106.5–108.5 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Complete the requirements for the preceding construction management program as outlined (with the exception of Econ 110).
2. Complete the following additional courses:
   BusM 430.
   EngT 200, 498.
3. Select one course from the following:
   RelC 344, 351, 355, 356.
4. After consulting with a faculty advisor, select a foreign literature course or a classical civilization course. **Or** select one course from the following:
   ArtHC 260.
   FnArt 270.
   Fren/Ital 217.
   Hist 312.
   Hum 240, 242.
   Music 203.
5. An international "live-in" experience is required. This requirement may be satisfied by (1) a semester or term work experience in a foreign country, (2) a semester or term Study Abroad program approved by the David M. Kennedy Center and college personnel, or (3) a prior living experience, such as a foreign mission.

Recommended

A foreign language proficiency is strongly recommended.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Construction Management (CM)

Undergraduate Courses

105. Construction Documents. (3:3:0) F, W
How and why specific types of contract documents and specifications are compiled for a project; reading and interpreting complex construction documents. Fee.

155. Architectural Drafting. (3:2:3) F, W
Developing residential plans; floor, foundation, plot, elevations, sections, and details. Introduction to architectural CAD. Fee.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Prerequisite: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

210. Framing Methods. (3:2:4) F, W
Conversion of a framing plan to an actual building. Residential plan reading, estimating materials and manpower, framing schedule, and quality assurance. Fee.

211. Finishing Methods in Construction. (3:3:0) F, Su
Managing finish work in construction. Energy-efficient construction and insulation methods. Applying exterior and interior finishing systems, including roofing, siding, drywall, and trim. Quality-control procedures in construction finishes. Fee.

217. Concrete and Masonry Construction. (3:2:3) F, W
Quality concrete and masonry, including admixtures, concrete forming reinforcement, curing, and testing. Brick and block masonry construction. Quality-control. Fee.

241. Electrical Systems in Construction. (2:2:2) F, W
Electrical circuits in the construction industry. Fee.

311. Quantity Takeoffs. (3:3:0) F, Su Prerequisite: CM 105, 210, 211, 217, TecE 270.
Compiling, organizing, and analyzing all the items that influence and contribute to total cost of residential and commercial construction projects. Maximizing estimating effectiveness and efficiency through computer integration. Fee.

320. Mechanical Systems. (3:3:0) F, Sp Prerequisite: CM 210.
Basic plumbing and HVAC principles, materials; installation and application methods. Systems sizing and design, heat loss/gain calculations, and payback analysis. Managing the plumbing and HVAC trades. Fee.

335. Construction Equipment and Soils Mechanics. (3:3:0) W, Sp Prerequisite: CEEn 103, 302.
Basic soil mechanics and subsurface construction theory and practice for foundations of building and engineered facilities. Underpinning, piling, dry and wet excavating, dewatering, cofferdams, caissons, and spread and strip foundations. Lecture, field trips.

345. Construction Safety Management. (3:3:0) F, Su
Safety requirements and responsibilities in construction; cost and impact of accidents; accident investigation; compliance with OSHA regulations; Code of Federal Requirements; hazard analysis; substance abuse in the workplace; fall protection; hazardous waste management; fire prevention; record-keeping requirements.

385. Construction Contracts and Law. (3:3:0) F, Su Prerequisite: Acc 341.

Contractual obligations defined, including agency, contract interpretation, performance and liability issues, breach and termination, judicial remedy, and arbitration as applied to the construction industry. Overview of municipal zoning ordinances and codes.

411. Advanced Estimating and Bidding. (3:2:3) F, W Prerequisite: CM 311 or instructor's consent.

Competitive bidding strategies, design-build methods, bid analysis, and project buyout in construction. Computerized estimating systems. Fee.

412. Construction Scheduling and Cost Control. (3:2:3) F, W Prerequisite: CM 311 or instructor's consent.

Planning, scheduling, and monitoring construction projects, including development of critical path networks (CPM and PERT), Gannt bar charts, construction cost control, and reporting practices. Fee.

415. Construction Project Management and Control. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: CM 412 or concurrent registration.

Managing and controlling construction projects. Planning, startup procedures, inspections, progress measurements, field reports, change order and submittal processing, equipment management, and project closeout.

426. Real Estate Principles and Development. (4:4:0) F Prerequisite: BusM 300 and instructor's consent.

Principles of real estate investments, emphasizing mortgage instruments and development of property from raw land to residential and commercial properties. Fee.

445. Construction Company Operations and Management. (3:3:0) W, Su Prerequisite: CM 415, BusM 300.

Organizing, controlling, and directing operations of construction companies; financial management, budgeting, cash-flow analysis, purchasing and cost control, and business planning.

491R. Senior Seminar. (0.5:1:0 ea.) F

Developing best employment opportunities and strategy; interviewing, sales negotiations, resumé and letter writing, and salary negotiations. College Lecture attendance required.

494R. Special Problems in Construction Management. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent. Fee.

Technology Education

BS Technology Teacher Education (87–89 hours,* including certification hours)

The Discipline

The study of technology education prepares students to teach drafting, electronics, graphic arts, woodwork, metalwork, auto mechanics, and technology at the secondary and the postsecondary levels. The curriculum covers innovative technologies such as lasers, fiber optics, robotics, fluid power, electronic publishing, video production, multimedia production, and a variety of other applications. The dramatic pace of technological innovation makes this a vital major—one that aims to improve the rising generation's technological literacy and increase their awareness of technology's impacts upon individuals, society, and the environment. An ever-evolving adaptation to advancements adequately prepares graduates for technology careers.

Career Opportunities

The program prepares industrial/technology/vocational teachers for junior high/middle schools, high schools, and post-high-school programs. Additional education is required to prepare for teacher education in a college or university. Some graduates work for innovators and suppliers of technology-related equipment. The department continually has many more requests for teachers than available graduates.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   TecE 120, 140, 149, 150, 200, 209, 229, 240, 250, 270.
   And complete 3 hours from the following:
   CM 155.
   MeEn 170.
2. After consulting with a faculty advisor, complete 12 hours from the following technical depth courses:
   CM 105, 210, 211, 217, 241, 311, 320.
   EET 103.
   MET 230, 331.
   MFE 250, 251.
   TecE 199R, 205, 230, 251, 281, 300, 301, 329, 354, 386, 387, 388, 400, 450, 453, 455, 489, 490R.

   Note: Junior high teachers must select a minimum of one class from each of four clusters; senior high teachers must select from two cluster areas; senior high technology and industrial arts teachers must have a minimum of 15 hours in one cluster area plus two years of industrial trade experience. Seek advisement early in the program.
3. Complete four registrations of the following:
   TecE 291R.
4. Complete three registrations of the following:
   TecE 391R.
5. Complete one registration of the following:
   TecE 491R.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Math 112, 119.
   Stat 221.
7. Complete one GE Natural Sciences elective (one of the following recommended):
   Biol 150.
   Chem 101.
   Phscs 105.
8. Complete the following:
   TecE 325, 340, 377, 405, 470, 477.
9. Complete the Professional Education Component (24–25 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Facilities Management (88 hours*)

The Discipline

This program prepares students to be part of the administrative/supervisory team in the increasingly complex world of facilities management. The facilities manager combines management practices with the most current technical knowledge to plan, provide, and manage a productive work environment. Along with a minor in business management, the program includes courses in drafting, landscape design, real estate, space utilization, and building systems.

Career Opportunities

The program has nearly 100 percent job placement within the field of facilities management. Employment can be found with colleges and universities, hospitals and health care centers, governmental agencies, recreational complexes, airports, large industrial plants, and other institutions or businesses that have large facilities.

Responsibilities encompass supervision of planning, renovation, and maintenance of buildings and grounds. Attention is given to employee health and safety, security, disaster planning, and environmental concerns. The program is broad based and prepares managers for all types of facilities, with salaries among the upper-level of university graduates.

Further educational opportunities include advanced degrees in facilities management, business administration, public administration, or other related fields.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   CM 105, 155, 311, 320, 385, 412.
   Math 110.
   Stat 221.
   TecE 270.
2. Complete 2 hours of the following:
   TecE 199R.
3. Complete 3 hours of the following:
   CM 494R.
4. Complete four registrations of the following:
   TecE 291R.
5. Complete four registrations of the following:
   TecE 391R.
6. Complete the following:
   Acc 200, 341.
   AgHrt 103.
   BusM 300, 340.
   Comms 150.
   Econ 110.
   OrgB 320, 327, 347.
   StDev 317.
   VADes 102.
7. Select 8 hours from the following:
   BusM 360, 413.
   Hlth 415, 425, 426.
   RMYL 483.
8. Select one course from the following:
   BusM 371R, 380R, 382R.
9. After consulting with a faculty advisor, select 10 hours of electives.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Emphasis (optional): International (95.5–97.5 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Complete the requirements for the preceding facilities management program as outlined (with the exception of Econ 110).
2. Complete the following additional courses:
   EngT 200, 498.
   BusM 430.
3. Select one course from the following:
   RelC 344, 351, 355, 356.
4. After consulting with a faculty advisor, select a foreign literature course or a classical civilization course. **Or** select one course from the following:
   ArtHC 260.
   FnArt 270.
   Fren/Ital 217.
   Hist 312.
   Hum 240, 242.
   Music 203.
5. An international "live-in" experience is required. This requirement may be satisfied by (1) a semester or term work experience in a foreign country, (2) a semester or term Study Abroad program approved by the David M. Kennedy Center and college personnel, or (3) a prior living experience, such as a foreign mission.

Recommended

A foreign language proficiency is strongly recommended.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Technology Education (TecE)

Undergraduate Courses

120. Manufacturing and Construction Systems. (3:2:4) F
Methods for teaching aspects of modern manufacturing and construction systems, including materials, processes, management, and impacts. Fee.

140. Power/Energy Systems. (2:2:4) W
Energy systems including history, measurement, utilization, conversion, transmission and storage, and applications to industry. Fee.

149. General Automotive. (2:1:3) F, W, Sp, Su
Directed study toward automotive maintenance, service, and minor repair. Fee.

150. Communication Systems. (3:2:4) F
Overview of print communications industries of drafting and graphic arts and transfer of information to extend human potential. Fee.

160. Recreational Crafts. (2:1:3) F
Traditional and contemporary crafts projects emphasizing design and craftsmanship. Medium is primarily wood in turning, carving, and sculpting; others optional. For hobbyists, teachers, recreational specialists. Fee.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Prerequisite: department chair's and cooperative education coordinator's consent.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

200. Woodwork Fundamentals. (3:2:4) F, W
Care and use of hand and machine woodworking tools. Includes design, detailed drawings, cost estimates, and construction of solid wood furniture. Fee.

209. Basic Electricity. (3:2:4) F, W Independent Study also.
Theory of electricity and electronics; magnetism, DC/AC circuits, semiconductors, and introduction to digital processes for automated systems. Technical reports of lab activities. Fee.

229. Metalwork Fundamentals. (3:2:4) W
Metalworking processes, including basic metal forming, cutting, and welding. Fee.

230. Introduction to Manufacturing Processes. (3:2:4) F, W
Operation and setup of machine shop equipment and tools, emphasizing machine lathe and milling machines.

240. Introductory Plastics. (2:1:3) F
Overview of the plastics industry, ecological concern, physical properties of plastic materials, basic polymer chemistry. Lab experiences with molding practices. Fee.

250. Graphic Arts. (3:2:4) F, W, Sp
Processes and procedures of graphic arts, with an overview of the printing and publishing industries. Fee.

270. Computer Applications for Technology Education. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp, Su
Introduction to computer applications and programming for education and industrial management; word processing, electronic spread sheets, database management, and limited BASIC programming. Fee.

281. Introduction to Automobile Tune-Up. (3:2:4) F
Introduction to technical systems used in automotive engines to include sensors and digital processing of automated systems. Diagnosis to include use of instrumentation. Fee.

291R. Undergraduate Seminar. (0:1:0 ea.) F, W
Required each semester for undergraduate majors not enrolled in TecE 391R or 491R. College Lecture attendance required. Separate program sections.

300. Advanced Wood Projects. (3:2:4) F Prerequisite: TecE 200.
Application of industrial wood processes. Processing green wood, wood turning, veneering, laminating, small wood originals. Fee.

301. Cabinetmaking and Millworking. (3:1:5) W Prerequisite: TecE 200.
Selection, design, and construction of modular and custom cabinets. Fee.

315. The World of Construction. (2:1:3) F, W
Developing skills and knowledge necessary to teach basic concepts and skills of the construction industry. Fee.

319. Upholstery. (2:1:3) F, W
Experience with typical upholstery systems. Fee.

325. The World of Manufacturing. (2:1:3) W
Developing skills and knowledge necessary to teach basic concepts and skills of manufacturing industries. Introduction to CAD, CAM, CNC, robotics, and microprocessor interfacing. Fee.

340. Principles of Technology. (3:2:4) F Prerequisite: TecE 140, Phscs 105.
Activities and experiments in advanced applications and utilization of energy; applications of scientific and mathematic concepts.

377. Instructional Methods for Technology Education. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: ScEd 276R.
Teaching methods and instructional strategies, with particular emphasis on activity-oriented approaches.

386. Automotive Engines. (3:2:4) F, W, Sp
Care and maintenance, including overhaul and rebuilding procedures. Fee.

387. Steering and Braking Mechanisms. (3:2:4) F
Theory and application of the principles of alignment, brakes, steering, and suspension systems on the modern automobile. Fee.

388. Power Transmission. (3:2:4) W
Theory and application of the principles of standard transmissions, differentials, and automatic transmissions (light duty). Fee.

391R. Seminar. (0.5:1:0 ea.) F, W
Required three semesters at junior and senior level. Department seminar and College Lecture attendance required. Separate program sections.

400. Advanced Furniture Construction. (3:2:4) W Prerequisite: TecE 200.
Advanced woodwork and operations in furniture construction. Drawings, specifications, and cost estimates required for all projects. Fee.

405. Shop Maintenance. (1:1:3) F
Care and maintenance of tools and machines. Fee.

450. Electronic Publishing. (3:2:3) F
Typography, design, layout, typesetting, paste-up, and desktop publishing for print communications. Fee.

470. Shop Organization and Management. (2:2:4) W Prerequisite: ScEd 476R.
Organizational management of industrial education labs, including unit, general, and multiple activity types.

477. Instructional Materials for Industrial Education. (3:2:4) W Prerequisite: ScEd 476R.
Developing instructional packages including teaching aids, career modules, projects, exercises correlated with practical teaching experiences. Designed to span all educational levels. Fee.

489. Power Tune-up. (2:1:4) W Prerequisite: TecE 389.
Theory and application of balancing the ignition and fuel systems to decrease emissions and improve performance of automotive engines using a chassis dynamometer. Fee.

490R. Special Problems in Industrial Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: program supervisor's consent.
Individual study in special areas of interest (3-hour maximum for any one area). Fee.

491R. Senior Seminar. (0.5:1:0 ea.) W
Developing leadership training skills and professional growth and development. Required of seniors. College Lecture attendance required.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

505. Technology for the Elementary School. (2:2:0) Sp, Su
Basic concepts and activities needed to prepare elementary students to cope with their technological society. Fee.

535. Industrial / Vocational Safety Program Development. (2:2:0) F, Sp, Su
Identifying and implementing programs for safety and facilities management that comply with state and national legislation. Fee.

593R. Workshop in Industrial/Technology Education. (1–2:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su
Reviewing and participating in current industrial and technological advances. A maximum of 2 credit hours can be applied to an MS program. Fee.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Technology Education and Construction Management Faculty

Professors

Gonzales, Ronald F. (1977) BA, MA, California State U., Los Angeles, 1972, 1975; PhD, Purdue U., 1982.

Martin, Loren (1982) BS, Brigham Young U., 1965; MS, Stout State U., 1966; EdD, Utah State U., 1973.

Newitt, Jay S. (1976) BS, MIE, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1972; PhD, Colorado State U., 1980.

Associate Professors

Christensen, Kip W. (1988) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1980, 1982; PhD, Colorado State U., 1991.

Hill, Garth A. (1972) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1959, 1969; PhD, Colorado State U., 1979.

Rogers, Leon R. (1981) BS, Utah State U., 1978; BS, Weber State U., 1978; MS, Colorado State U., 1981; PhD, Texas A&M U., 1989.

Assistant Professor

Christofferson, Jay P. (1992) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1980, 1992; PhD, Colorado State U., 1996.

Instructors

Bearce, Charles F. (1997) BS, MS, EdS, Brigham Young U., 1980, 1985, 1987.

Campbell, Jeffery L. (1997) BS, Brigham Young U., 1984; MBA, U. of Phoenix, 1990.

Hutchings, D. Mark (1992) BA, Brigham Young U., 1977; MS, U. of Denver, 1992.

Miller, Kevin R. (1996) BS, Brigham Young U., 1991; MA, U. of Phoenix, 1995.

Shumway, Steven L. (1993) BS, Brigham Young U., 1987; MS, Utah State U., 1993.

Emeriti

Gheen, W. Lloyd (1978) BS, Brigham Young U., 1963; MEd, EdD, Texas A&M U., 1969, 1970.

Grover, Jerry D. (1968) BS, MEd, Utah State U., 1956, 1961; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1968.

Hinckley, Edwin C. (1963) BS, MS, Oregon State U., 1950, 1956; EdD, Colorado State Coll., 1963.

Jenkins, Ronda H. (1949) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1966.

McArthur, Ross J. (1956) AS, Dixie Coll., 1943; BS, MS, Utah State U., 1949, 1953; EdD, U. of Missouri, Columbia, 1955.

McKell, William E. (1970) BS, Utah State U., 1948; MEd, Texas A&M U., 1951; EdD, Utah State U., 1970.

McKinnon, Max E. (1957) BS, MS, Utah State U.,1949, 1954.

Nish, Dale L. (1967) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1958; EdD, Washington State U., 1967.

Thai

See Asian and Near Eastern Languages.

Theatre and Media Arts

Bob Nelson, Chair
D-581 HFAC, PO Box 26405, (801) 378-6645

College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center
D-444 HFAC, PO Box 26333, (801) 378-3537

Admission to Degree Program

The degree programs in the Department of Theatre and Media Arts carry special enrollment limitations. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

The study of theatre and media arts is truly a study of humankind and our attitudes toward ourselves. Since art is a mirror of human society, the specific disciplines of theatre and media arts cover our innermost attempts at comprehending our existence through all time.

The BYU theatre program is designed to educate the student in a basic foundation of dramatic literature, theatre history, performance skills as both actor and director, and techniques in all areas of theatre design technology and production.

The BYU media arts program is designed to educate the student in a basic foundation of film history, theory, and criticism along with the fundamentals of media arts and production technology.

Career Opportunities

The theatre program provides training and experience in all areas of theatre, from performing to playwriting, from teaching to technical production.

The media arts program provides a foundation and basic experience in conceptualizing, writing, directing, and collaboratively producing nonfiction, narrative, and multimedia.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA	Theatre and Media Arts
	Emphases:
	Design and Technology
	Directing
	Media Arts Studies
	Nonfiction/Multimedia
	Theatre Studies
	Writing
BA	Theatre and Media Arts Education
BFA	Acting
	Music Dance Theatre
Minors	Media Arts Studies
	Theatre and Media Arts Education
	Theatre Studies

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA Theatre and Media Arts

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

General Information

1. All students (with the exception of MDT majors—see MDT major requirements below) should register as a pre-theatre or pre–media arts major.
2. Upon completion of the pre-theatre or pre–media arts requirements, application must be made for entrance into the chosen major and area of emphasis.
3. Specific application information and application forms for each major and area of emphasis are available from the advisement center, D-444 HFAC.
4. No D credit is allowed in major courses.

BA Theatre and Media Arts: Design and Technology Emphasis (60 hours*)

This program has minimum criteria that students are required to meet for admission. Please see the college advisement center for information.

This emphasis prepares students for further studies and professional work in costume design, scenic design, or general theatre design and technology. The course curriculum emphasizes a foundation in all aspects of design and construction skills and offers upper-division elective courses that allow each student to enhance his or her general knowledge with advanced specialized training.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following pre-theatre courses:
   TMA 111, 160.
2. Complete the following foundation courses:
   TMA 112, 114.
3. Select two courses from the following:
   TMA 123, 135, 141.
4. Complete the following core courses:
   TMA 201, 202, 260R, 360R, 395, 396, 491.
5. Complete 1 hour of the following:
   TMA 212R.
6. Complete the following major courses:
   TMA 262, 263, 264, 265A, 266, 267, 369R, 460.
7. Select 15 hours from the following or other faculty advisor–approved courses:
   TMA 265B, 268, 273R, 299R, 361, 362, 363, 364, 367, 368, 369R, 465, 466R, 467, 468, 469, 562, 563, 564, 565, 567R, 568, 569R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Theatre and Media Arts: Directing Emphasis (60 hours*)

This program has minimum criteria that students are required to meet for admission. Please see the college advisement center for information.

This emphasis is based on two fundamental ideas: first, that common history, theories, and skills inform the techniques of directing for both theatre and media arts (film, television, or digital media); and second, that directing for either the stage or for the media arts is a craft that can be learned by a dedicated student.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following pre-theatre or the pre–media arts required courses:
   Pre-Theatre:
   TMA 111, 160.
   Pre–Media Arts:
   TMA 110, 111.
2. Complete the following foundation courses:
   TMA 112, 114, 123, 135.
3. Complete the following theatre or media arts core courses:
   Theatre Core:
   TMA 201, 202, 260R, 360R, 395, 396, 491.
   Media Arts Core:
   TMA 185, 291, 292, 391, 491.
4. Complete 1 hour of the following:
   TMA 212R.
5. Complete the following:
   TMA 336, 435.
6. Complete the following theatre or media arts major courses:
   Theatre:
   TMA 185, 262, 263, 264, 267, 330R, 361, 410R, 461R.
   Media Arts:
   TMA 141, 285, 380A, 380B, 382A, 382B, 385, 388R, 473R, 475R, 496R.
7. Theatre-directing students: select 7 hours from the following or other approved courses. Media arts–directing students: select 6 hours from these or other approved courses (4 hours must be upper division). It is strongly recommended that one of the electives be TMA 102.
   TMA 100, 102, 224, 241, 263, 267, 275, 277R, 331, 341, 380A, 380B, 382A, 382B, 383A, 383B, 386, 387, 389R, 443R, 473R, 483, 492R, 497, 535R, 550R.
   Comms 447, 481.
   Engl 230, 232, 343.
   Music 101.
   Phil 214.
   Soc 357.
   VADes 270.
   ArtHC 111.

Recommended GE Courses

Music 101.
ArtHC 111.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Theatre and Media Arts: Media Arts Studies Emphasis (50 hours*)

This program has minimum criteria that students are required to meet for admission. Please see the college advisement center for information.

This emphasis is designed to foster disciplined scholars and artists, committed to the gospel of Jesus Christ, whose skills and conduct are models of leadership, inspiration, and achievement. This degree is designed to produce graduates with practical skills, intellectual attributes, and spiritual awareness to assist themselves, their families, and others in "their quest for perfection and eternal life."

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following pre-media arts courses:
   TMA 110, 111.
2. Complete the following foundation courses:
   TMA 112, 114, 141.
3. Select one course from the following:
   TMA 123, 135.
4. Complete the following core courses:
   TMA 185, 291, 292, 391, 393, 491.
5. Complete 1 hour of the following:
   TMA 212R.
6. Complete the following major courses:
   TMA 277R, 475R.
7. Select one course from the following:
   TMA 477, 494, 498R.

8. Select 12–15 hours (9 must be upper-division) from these or other faculty advisor-approved courses. These courses must be approved in writing by the student's faculty advisor before enrollment occurs. Up to 4 hours of practica can be used to fill this area:
   Practica:
   TMA 380A, 380B, 381A, 381B, 382A, 382B, 383A, 383B, 384R.
   Electives:
   TMA 241, 273R, 275, 372R, 378R, 386, 387, 388R, 477, 483, 492R, 493, 494, 497, 498R.
   Comms 101, 201, 315, 338, 402, 449.
   Music 200, 251.
   VADes 410R.

Note: Students are strongly encouraged to seriously consider using their general university electives to complete a minor or a double major in a related area of study such as anthropology, political science, English, history, languages, philosophy, visual arts and design, communications, computer science, management, instructional design, or organizational behavior that will complement their media arts studies experience.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Theatre and Media Arts: Nonfiction/Multimedia Emphasis (60 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

This emphasis is designed to nurture artist/scholars who are committed to the gospel of Jesus Christ and who are prepared to make significant contributions to the fields of nonfiction and multimedia. The degree is designed to produce graduates with a foundation of intellectual and technical proficiencies firmly grounded in spiritual values.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following pre–media arts courses:
   TMA 110, 111.
2. Complete the following foundation courses:
   TMA 112, 114, 141.
3. Select one course from the following:
   TMA 123, 135.
4. Complete the following media arts core courses:
   TMA 185, 291, 292, 391, 393, 491.
5. Complete 1 hour of the following:
   TMA 212R.
6. Complete the following major courses:
   TMA 285, 385, 387, 474R, 475R, 493.
7. Select 14–16 hours from the following or other faculty advisor-approved courses (up to 4 hours of practica can be used):
   Practica:
   TMA 380A, 380B, 381A, 381B, 382A, 382B, 383A, 383B, 384R.
   Electives:
   TMA 241, 273R, 275, 277R, 299R, 372R, 378R, 386, 387, 388R, 389R, 399R, 477, 483, 492R, 497, 498R.
   Comms 101, 201, 315, 338, 402, 499R.
   Music 200, 251.
   VADes 410R.

   Note: Other courses may be approved (upon application) by the student's faculty advisor.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Theatre and Media Arts: Theatre Studies Emphasis (50 hours*)

This program has minimum criteria that students are required to meet for admission. Please see the college advisement center for information.

This emphasis emphasizes primarily a liberal arts approach. The program is designed to foster disciplined scholars and artists who so excel in their personal conduct and professional skill that they are sought as models of leadership, inspiration, and achievement. Graduates of this program should be capable of producing work that delights, edifies, and enlarges the human spirit.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following pre-theatre courses:
   TMA 111, 160.
2. Complete the following foundation courses:
   TMA 112, 114, 123, 135, 141.
3. Complete the following theatre core courses:
   TMA 201, 202, 260R, 360R, 395, 396, 491.
4. Complete 1 hour of the following:
   TMA 212R.
5. Complete the following major course:
   TMA 410R.
6. Select 16 hours from the following faculty-approved courses in two departmental focus areas:
   a. Demonstrate a significant level of competence in two of the following six departmental areas by successfully completing the upper-division course(s) indicated:
      Directing:
      TMA 435 (prerquisite: TMA 110, 185, 336).
      Acting—select one of the following courses:
      TMA 422 (prerequisite: 122, 124, 222), 424 (prerequisite: 122, 124, 222), 425 (prerequisite: 124, 125, 223, 225).
      Playwriting—complete both of the following courses:
      TMA 443R, 451R (prerequisite: 251, 351).
      Stage Management
      TMA 461R (prerequisite: 361)
      Design—select one of the following courses:
      TMA 562 (prerequisite: 262, 362), 563 (prerequisite: 263, 363), 564 (prerequisite: 264, 364), 467 (prerequisite: 267, 367).
      Film or media arts
      Students may petition to have one of their areas of competence be in film or media arts. The appropriate course requirements will be determined in consultation with a faculty advisor.
   b. The prerequisites required for the completion of the two areas of competence described above will count toward the theatre studies requirement of 16 hours of electives.
   c. Other electives fulfilling the 16-hour elective requirement must be selected in consultation with the faculty advisor. These individually tailored constellations of electives will allow the student maximum flexibility while guaranteeing quality control.

Note: Students are strongly encouraged to seriously consider using their general university electives to complete a minor or a double major in a related area of study such as the following that will complement their theatre studies experience:

English—e.g., creative writing, English drama, modern English and American drama, literary theory and criticism, Shakespeare.

History—e.g., history on film, philosophies of history, United States women's history.

Humanities/Classics/Comparative Literature—e.g., Greek or Roman dramatic literature, literary genres, literary theory.

Philosophy—e.g., aesthetics, Levinasian ethical postmodernism.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Theatre and Media Arts: Writing Emphasis (60 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

This emphasis is designed for students who are strongly motivated to write plays, film scripts, and/or scripts for media. The program requires them to take some course common to both kinds of performance writing and then choose a playwriting or screenwriting focus. Rather than being a professional degree program, this degree emphasis is a humanities-based liberal arts education, the aim of which is to prepare students to pursue a number of postgraduation options, one a graduate program in professional writing.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following pre-theatre or pre-media arts courses:
   Pre-theatre:
   TMA 111, 160.
   Pre-media arts:
   TMA 110, 111.
2. Complete the following foundation courses:
   TMA 112, 114, 141.
3. Select one course from the following:
   TMA 123, 135.
4. Complete the following theatre or media arts core courses:
   Theatre:
   TMA 201, 202, 260R, 360R, 395, 396, 491.
   Media Arts:
   TMA 185, 291, 292, 391, 393, 491.
5. Complete 1 hour of the following:
   TMA 212R.
6. Complete the following major courses:
   TMA 241, 251.
7. Complete the following playwriting or screenwriting major courses:
   Playwriting:
   TMA 351, 443R, 451R.
   Contemporary dramatic literature from theatre and media arts, English, honors, or comparative literature (3 hours).
   Shakespeare from theatre and media arts, English, or honors (3 hours).
   Creative writing from English (3 hours).
   Subject experience or other writing elective courses selected in consultation with writing committee to total 7 hours.
   Screenwriting:
   TMA 341, 441R, 473R.
   Creative writing course from English (3 hours).
   Subject experience courses selected in consultation with writing committee to total 7 hours.
   Other writing elective courses selected in consultation with writing committee to total 6 hours.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Theatre and Media Arts Education (68 hours,* including certification hours)

This program has minimum criteria that students are required to meet for admission. Please see the college advisement center for information.

This degree program is designed to prepare creative teachers to meet the educational needs of secondary school theatre students. These needs include, but are not limited to, interpersonal communication, social, life, acting, directing, writing, historical/analytical, and design/production skills. In addition to developing highly skilled educators, the program is designed to develop strong directing and production skills in each prospective high school teacher.

Major Requirements

1. A teaching minor is not required for certification. However, it is strongly recommended.
2. Complete the following pre-theatre courses:
   TMA 111, 160.
3. Complete the following foundation courses:
   TMA 112, 114, 123, 135.
4. Complete the following theatre core courses:
   TMA 201, 202, 260R, 360R, 395, 396, 491.
5. Complete 1 hour of the following:
   TMA 212R.
6. Complete the following major courses:
   TMA 267, 268, 336, 355, 435, 453.
7. Select 6 hours from the following or other faculty advisor-approved courses:
   TMA 121, 124, 141, 222, 225, 323, 324, 325, 361, 424, 457.
8. Complete the Professional Education Component (25–26 hours): see the Teacher Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BFA Acting (76 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

This degree program was developed for students who are committed to acting as a career. It is focused to better prepare them to compete professionally and/or for admission to advanced acting conservatory programs or graduate work.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following pre-theatre courses:
   TMA 111, 160.
2. Complete the following foundation courses:
   TMA 112, 114, 123.
3. Select one course from the following:
   TMA 135, 141.

4. Complete the following core courses:
   TMA 201, 202, 260R, 360R, 395, 396, 491.
5. Complete 1 hour of the following:
   TMA 212R.
6. Complete the following major courses:
   Acting:
   TMA 124, 223, 224, 323, 324, 424, 427.
   Voice:
   Music 161.
   TMA 122, 222, 322, 422.
   Movement:
   Dance 134R, 140.
   TMA 125, 225, 325.
   Support skills:
   TMA 267.
   Performance:
   TMA 399R or 496R; 410R.
7. Select 12 hours from the following or other approved courses:
   TMA 102, 135, 141, 185, 220R, 241, 251, 315R, 329, 336, 341, 351, 367, 420R, 423, 425, 429, 435, 443R.
   Music 260R, 360R, 460R.

* Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BFA Music Dance Theatre (79 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring program admissions approval. Please see the College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

The BFA in music dance theatre is an interdisciplinary degree offered by the College of Fine Arts and Communications through the cooperative involvement of its School of Music and Department of Theatre and Media Arts and the College of Health and Human Performance's Department of Dance.

Major Requirements

1. Live and taped auditions for entrance into the MDT major are held in the January preceding fall registration. Students may begin the MDT major in the fall only.
2. Pass a proficiency examination in each of the three areas at the end of each semester.
3. Complete at least 40 hours in residence at BYU.
4. Any grade below C– in major courses is not acceptable for graduation. Dance technique courses require a grade of B– for advancement to the next level.
5. Complete the following:
   Music 113, 161, 261, 290.
6. Complete 4 hours of the following:
   Music 260R.
7. Complete 6 hours of the following:
   Music 360R.
8. Complete the following:
   Dance 131, 134R, 135, 231, 235, 241R, 242, 290, 291R, 331, 361, 363, 390R.
9. Complete the following:
   TMA 114, 121, 123, 124, 235, 267, 323, 427.
10. Select one course from the following:
    TMA 224, 324, 329, 423, 424.
11. Complete the following MDT Seminar courses:
    Music 228.
    Dance 228.
    TMA 228.
12. Complete the following History of Music Dance Theatre courses:
    Music 300.
    Dance 300.
    TMA 300.
13. Complete the following Senior Performance Project courses:
    Music 426R.
    Dance 426R.
    TMA 426R.
14. Select 2 hours from the following (on-campus performance experience):
    Music 319R.
    Dance 229R, 429R.
    TMA 420R.
15. Select 1 hour from the following (off-campus experience):
    Music 399R.
    Dance 399R.
    TMA 399R.
16. Complete 4.5 hours of electives in music, dance, or theatre courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Media Arts Studies (18–19 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the college advisement center for information regarding requirements for admission to this emphasis.

Minor Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   TMA 110, 111.
2. Be admitted to the minor program by application (see the College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center, D-444 HFAC).
3. Upon acceptance into the minor program, select one course from the following:
   TMA 112, 114.
4. Select one course from the following:
   TMA 123, 135, 141.
5. Complete the following:
   TMA 185.
6. Complete 1 hour of the following:
   TMA 212R.
7. Select one course from the following:
   TMA 291, 292.
8. Complete the following:
   TMA 491.
9. Select 3 hours of electives from the following:
   TMA 185, 241, 275, 277R, 380A, 380B, 381A, 381B, 382A, 382B, 383A, 383B, 384R, 386, 387, 391, 393, 492R, 494, 497, 498R.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Theatre and Media Arts Education (32 hours)

Minor Requirements

1. Apply for entrance approval from the theatre and media arts education committee.
2. Complete the following:
   TMA 111, 112, 123, 135, 160, 201, 202, 267, 268, 336, 355, 435, 453.
3. Select one course from the following:
   TMA 395, 396.

Minor Theatre Studies (19 hours)

Minor Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   TMA 110, 160.
2. Be admitted to the minor program by application (see the college advisement center, D-444 HFAC).
3. Upon acceptance into the minor program, complete the following:
   TMA 112, 114, 201, 202.
4. Select one course from the following:
   TMA 123, 135, 141.
5. Select one course from the following:
   TMA 395, 396.

Theatre and Media Arts (TMA)

Undergraduate Courses

100. Introduction to Visual Literacy. (3:2:2)
Overview of visual communication, with hands-on experience in multimedia design and tools, structured to increase awareness of visual functions and develop beginning proficiency with computer-assisted visual communications.

101. Introduction to the Theatre. (3:3:1) Independent Study also.
Theatre's power over the centuries to illuminate richness of human experience; lecture, discussion, production, reading, writing, and projects. Lab required.

102. Introduction to Film. (3:4:2)
Analytical studies for understanding and appreciating media forms and messages, as well as basic history, theory, and aesthetics. Lab required.

110. Media Arts Experience. (1:0:4) Prerequisite: premajors only.
Practical introductory experience working in media environments (including film and broadcast facilities).

111. Fundamentals of Theatre and Media Arts. (2:2:1)
Prerequisite: premajors only.
Practical survey and exploration of theatre and media functions and careers, with intensive analysis of single theatre or media text. Lab required.

112. Collaboration, Research, and Visualization. (2:4:0)
Prerequisite: theatre or media arts major status.
Overview and practical applications of principles of collaboration, research, and visualization as essential elements of appreciation and production of theatre and media arts projects.

114. Narrative Structures: Theatre and Media Text Analysis. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: theatre or media arts major status.
Skills in structural analysis of dramatic, theatrical, cinematic, and other media texts.

121. Voice and Diction. (2:3:1) Prerequisite: TMA, MDT, or communications (print and electronic journalism) major status or instructor's consent.
Skills involved in producing an effective voice; International Phonetic Alphabet. Lab required.

122. Voice Production. (2:3:1) Prerequisite: acting major status or instructor's consent.
Exercises to aid in freeing tensions, habits/patterns, and finding natural state of the voice. Lab required.

123. Acting Fundamentals. (2:4:1) Recommended: concurrent registration in TMA 122, 125.
Fundamental acting skills: exercises in perception, objective/action, thought processes, scoring of scripts. Lab required.

124. Acting. (3:6:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 123. By audition. Acting BFA majors: recommended concurrent registration in TMA 222, Dance 134.
Integrating acting skills; building a character through exercises and scene work.

125. Yoga and Alexander Technique. (1:2:0)
Techniques of relaxation, breath, focus, and posture to enhance actor's body and voice as a whole integrated tool in performance.

135. Directing Fundamentals for Stage and Screen. (2:2:1)
Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, or concurrent enrollment.
Fundamental elements of stage and media directing, including observation, collaboration, imagination, casting, working with actors, camera, spaces, words, images, rehearsals, and final product.

141. Constructing Narratives: Play and Screenwriting. (2:2:0)
Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114.
Introduction to basic narrative principles common to both screen and playwriting; conceptualization of writing narratives and creating new media.

160. Theatre Production 1. (1:2:2) Prerequisite: premajors only.
Practical experience in the scene shop, costume shop, and lighting lab. Hands-on training for further production experience.

185. Production: Basic. (2:2:3) Prerequisite: media arts BA major or communications (print and electronic journalism) major status; TMA 110, 111, 112, 114, or communications major status.
Introduction to basics of film and video production. Includes lecture and practical lab experiences with audio and video.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114; instructor's consent.
Off-campus experience or internship in theatre and media arts.

201. Theatre History 1. (3:3:0)
History of civilization from antiquity through French neoclassicism, examining issues of performance, including the nontheatrical, in their historical and cultural contexts.

202. Theatre History 2. (3:3:0)
History of civilization from English Restoration through contemporary world theatre, examining issues of performance, including the nontheatrical, in their historical and cultural contexts.

212R. Forum. (0.5:1:0 ea.)Prerequisite: TMA 112, 114; theatre or media arts major status.
Lecture and question-and-answer sessions with industry professionals and scholars.

215R. Workshop 1: Special Projects. (1–6:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; instructor's consent. By application only.
Special projects in theatre and media arts.

220R. Workshop 1: Acting. (1–3:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status or instructor's consent.
Experience in production: acting.

222. Phonetics. (2:3:1) Prerequisite: acting major status or instructor's consent; TMA 112, 114, 122.
Correct use of Standard American Stage Dialect with International Phonetic Alphabet. Identification of speech/articulation problems.

223. Acting Improvisation. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 123, 124. By audition. Acting majors: recommended concurrent registration in TMA 222, 224, Dance 140R.
Discovery of emotion, thought process, and impulse through improvisation.

224. Acting for Film and TV. (3:6:Arr.) Prerequisite: TMA or communications major status; TMA 112, 114, 123, 124. By audition. Acting majors: recommended concurrent registration in TMA 222, 223, Dance 140R.
On-camera techniques for features, sitcoms, industrials, and commercials. Lab required.

225. Neutral Mask. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 123, 125. By audition.
Use of masks in teaching specificity of movement, communication, and emotion.

228. Music Dance Theatre Seminar. (1:2:4) Prerequisite: music dance theatre BFA major status; TMA 114; concurrent registration in Dance 228 and Music 228
Intensive integration of music, dance, and theatre for the performer.

241. Screenwriting 1. (3:4:0) Prerequisite: TMA 112, 114, 141.
Basic narrative and nonfiction (documentary, educational, industrial, multimedia) screenwriting principles, through reading, viewing, testing, and completing writing assignments.

251. Playwriting 1. (3:4:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: major status or instructor's consent; TMA 112, 114, 141.
Basic playwriting principles through reading, completing writing assignments, testing, and writing the first draft of a full-length play.

260R. Theatre Production 2. (1:0:4 ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Practical experience in specialized shops or backstage experience on realized productions.

262. Costume Design 1. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Costume history, rendering, and theory. Assistant costume designers for main season productions may be selected from students enrolled in this course.

263. Scenic Design 1. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Basic approaches to scenic design. Perspective drawing, rendering, models, and computer graphics. Assistant designers for main season productions may be selected from students in this course.

264. Lighting Design 1. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Basic approaches to lighting design. Plot, maintenance, and board operation. Assistant designers for main season productions may be selected from students enrolled in course.

265A. Costume Construction 1: Flat Patterns. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Basic skills in flat pattern making. Specific projects for main stage productions will be assigned to students enrolled in this course.

265B. Costume Construction 1: Draping. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Basic skills in drape-drafting patterns. Specific projects for main stage productions will be assigned to students enrolled in this course.

266. Set Construction 1. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Intermediate skills in scenic construction and stage maintenance.

267. Makeup 1. (2:4:1) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Elementary techniques in makeup application for film, television, and stage. Lab work on main season productions is required.

268. Design for Education. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Introduction to design for educational theatre. Costumes, setting, and lighting, with emphasis on designing with restricted budgets.

273R. Electronic Field Production and Direction. (2:2:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: TMA or communications (print and electronic journalism) major status; TMA 112, 114, 185, or communications major status.
Principles and techniques of information gathering and storytelling. Recording and editing video and audio. Lab required.

275. Basic Multimedia Literacy. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114.
Defining and exploring media used in combination, interactively. Creation of simple multimedia products. Lab required.

277R. Video Studio Production and Direction. (2:3:3 ea.) Prerequisite: TMA or communications (print and electronic journalism) major status; TMA 112, 114, 185, or communications major status.
Principles and techniques for creating electronic images and sound for live dissemination. Lab required.

285. Production: Intermediate. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 123, 185, 241 (or concurrent enrollment in TMA 123, 141). By application only.
Survey and application of the basics of narrative and nonfiction, including 16-mm film. Lecture, discussion, lab, and individual/group experiences and critiques. Fee.

291. Media Arts History 1. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Survey of social, aesthetic, business, and technical dimensions of film and media from 1895 to 1945.

292. Media Arts History 2. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Survey of social, aesthetic, business, and technical dimensions of film and media from 1946 to present.

299R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114; instructor's consent.
Off-campus experience or internship in theatre or media arts.

300. History of Music Dance Theatre. (1:3:0) Prerequisite: MDT major status; TMA 114; concurrent registration in Dance 300, Music 300.
Development of music theatre in Western tradition from classical antiquity to present, emphasizing union of music, theatre, and dance.

315R. Workshop 2: Special Projects. (1–3:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 215; instructor's consent.
Intermediate projects in theatre or media arts.

322. Classical Voice. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: acting or MDT major status or instructor's consent. Acting majors: TMA 112, 114, 122, 123, 124, 222. MDT majors: TMA 112, 114, 121, 123, 124.
Speech techniques (word stress, inflection, pitch, pace, etc.) applied in the classical play.

323. Acting Musicals. (3:6:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 123, 124. By audition. Acting majors: TMA 123, 124, Music 161, Dance 140. Recommended for acting majors: concurrent registration in TMA 225.
Development of acting, singing, and dancing for music theatre through scene study.

324. Acting Classics. (3:6:0) Prerequisite: acting or MDT major status or instructor's consent. Acting majors: TMA 112, 114, 122,123, 124, 222; recommended: concurrent registration in TMA 322, 325. MDT majors: TMA 112, 114, 121, 123, 124.
Acting skills helpful in classical literature, emphasizing Shakespearean scansion and text analysis.

325. Stage Combat. (2:4:2) Prerequisite: acting major status or instructor's consent; TMA 112, 114, 125, 225.
Skills of safe hand-to-hand combat, including use of rapier, dagger, and broadsword, for stage and screen.

327. Performance for Broadcast. (2:2:5) Prerequisite: TMA or communications (print and electronic journalism) major status or instructor's consent; TMA 121, 123, or communications major status.
Practice and theory presenting materials for documentary, news, educational broadcasts, and other venues. Lab required.

329. Theatre and Film Acting Conservatory. (3:6:Arr.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 122, 123, 124, 224. By audition.
Extensive work on a theatre or film project through semester, culminating in performance of play or preview of film/video.

330R. Assistant Directing. (2:0:9 ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 235.
Assisting directors for main stage productions.

331. Directing Narrative Literature. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114.
Theory and practice of adapting, directing, and performing nondramatic literature. Readers Theatre.

336. Directing Theories for Stage and Screen. (3:4:1) Prerequisite: major status. Theatre major: TMA 112, 114, 135. Media arts major: TMA 112, 114, 135, 185.
Theories and processes of taking a scene from script to production.

341. Screenwriting 2. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 241. By application only.
Advanced narrative and/or nonfiction screenwriting principles; reading, viewing, testing, and completing written assignments.

350R. Play Review. (1:1:0 ea.) Prerequisite: major status or instructor's consent.
Reading, analyzing, discussing, and writing reviews of new scripts for young audiences.

351. Playwriting 2. (3:4:0) Prerequisite: major status or instructor's consent; TMA 112, 114, 251.
Workshop course designed to assist more advanced students in furthering their playwriting skills by writing or rewriting a play.

352. Drama in the Elementary Classroom. (2:2:2)
Using theatre techniques as a tool to enrich all subject matter taught in the elementary school classroom. Puppetry, improvisation, storytelling, etc.

355. Coaching Individual Performance. (2:2:2) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 123.
Basic skills for coaching high school students to excel in individual performance competition: oral interpretation, mono-acts, pantomime, etc.

360R. Theatre Production 3. (1:0:4 ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 260.
Advanced practical experience in specialized shops or backstage experience on realized productions.

361. Stage Management 1. (2:2:2) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Principles and objectives of stage management. Assistant stage managers for main season productions will be selected from students enrolled in this course.

362. Costume Design 2. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 262.
Art approaches to costume design. Assistants and production designers for main season productions may be selected from students enrolled in this course.

363. Scenic Design 2. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 263.
Art approaches to scenic renderings, models, and computer graphics. Assistants and designers for main season productions may be selected from students enrolled in this course.

364. Lighting Design 2. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 264.
Art approaches to renderings and plots. Advanced computer graphics. Assistants and designers for main season productions may be selected from students enrolled in this course.

367. Makeup 2. (2:4:1) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 267.
Advanced techniques in makeup and introduction to prosthetics. Supervision on main season productions required. Assistant designers will be selected from this course.

368. Scenic Art. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Basic approaches to painting and finishing scenic elements. Priming, lay-in, texturing, and effects. Possible work painting on season productions.

369R. Design and Technology Projects. (1–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; instructor's consent.
Practical experience working as main season designers; related topics.

372R. Media Collaboration. (1–3:Arr.:0 ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114; by application only.
Experience collaborating with senior capstone media projects.

378R. Directing and Studio Production. (3:2:3 ea.) Prerequisite: TMA or communications (print and electronic journalism) major status; TMA 112, 114, 185, or communications major status.
Directing techniques in creating electronic images and sound for live dissemination. Lab required.

380A. Practicum: Cinematography/Film. (2:3:1) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 185. By application only.
Development of skills for shooting videotape.

380B. Practicum: Cinematography/Film. (2:3:1) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 185, 285. By application only.
Developing skills for shooting film.

381A. Practicum: Sound Creation. (2:3:1) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 185, 285. By application only.
Fundamentals of on-location and in-studio sound.

381B. Practicum: Sound Post. (2:3:1) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 185, 285. By application only.
Fundamentals of postproduction sound.

382A. Practicum: Editing/Linear. (2:3:1) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 185, 285. By application only.
Developing traditional editing skills.

382B. Practicum: Editing/Digital. (2:3:1) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 185, 285. By application only.
Developing nonlinear editing skills.

383A. Practicum: Art Direction. (2:3:1) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 185. By application only.
Fundamentals of art direction for media arts.

383B. Practicum: Special Effects. (2:3:1) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 185. By application only.
Fundamentals of special effects for media.

384R. Practicum: Special Topics in Media Arts. (1–6:Arr.:1 ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 291, 292, 293. By application only.
Fundamentals of special media skills.

385. Production: Advanced. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 185, 241, 285. By application only.
Advanced production, including 16-mm sound film production in narrative and nonfiction forms. Includes discussion, lab, and individual/group experiences and critiques. Fee.

386. Marketing and Distribution for Film, Video, and Multimedia. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 185. By application only.
Survey of vocabulary, players, skills (negotiating, documenting, business processes) of marketing and distribution in film, video, and multimedia.

387. Budgeting and Scheduling. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 185. By application only.
Overview of techniques for managing large and small media arts projects, involving individual and team projects.

388R. Media Arts Crew. (1–3:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 185; instructor's consent.
Practical supervised experience in media arts production. Exposure to protocols, as well as organizational and technical aspects.

389R. Producing Symposium. (3:3:0 ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 386. By application only.
Developing organizational skills by workshop meetings with industry professionals, who share their producing experiences, styles, and strategies.

391. Introduction to Media Arts Theory. (3:6:0) Prerequisite: TMA 112, 114, 291, 292.
Identifying and analyzing contemporary film and media theories, with application to specific media texts.

393. History of Documentary and Nonfiction Film. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Introduction to and contextualization of documentary film from its inception to present.

395. Dramatic Literature 1. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114.
Survey of significant dramatic texts, from ancient Greece through 17th-century France, using variety of critical models, emphasizing performance-based criticism.

396. Dramatic Literature 2. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114.
Survey of significant dramatic texts, from the English Restoration through contemporary world drama, using variety of critical models, emphasizing performance-based criticism.

399R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114; instructor's consent.
Off-campus experience or internship in theatre or media arts.

410R. Theatre Capstone. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114.
Creating a final academic or creative paper, performance, or project, serving as capstone to undergraduate experience and springboard to postgraduate aspirations.

420R. Performance Workshop 2. (1–3:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status or instructor's consent.
Advanced experience in production: acting.

422. Dialects. (2:4:1) Prerequisite: acting major status or instructor's consent; TMA 112, 114, 122, 123, 124, 222.
Major stage dialects.

423. Comedy Styles. (3:6:0) Prerequisite: major status or instructor's consent; TMA 112, 114, 122, 123, 124, 125, 222, 223, 225, Dance 134. By audition.
Concepts and techniques that create comedy. Major comedic styles throughout history and their impact on currently produced works.

424. Advanced Acting. (3:6:0) Prerequisite: acting or MDT major status or instructor's consent. Acting majors: TMA 112, 114, 122, 123, 124, 222; recommended: concurrent registration in TMA 422, 423. MDT majors: TMA 112, 114, 121, 123, 124.
Scene studies in extended realism. Absurdism, American classics, Shaw, Chekhov, etc.

425. Character Mask. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: acting major status or instructor's consent; TMA 112, 114, 123, 124, 125, 129, 223, 225.
Use of the body as a primary tool for character and script interpretation.

426R. Music Dance Theatre: Senior Performance Project. (1:0:5 ea.) Prerequisite: MDT major status; TMA 114, 235; concurrent registration in Music 426R, Dance 426R.
Three-semester commitment: (1) producer's class, (2) production team member for a senior project, (3) performance in a senior project.

427. Auditions. (3:6:0) Prerequisite: major status. By audition. MDT majors: Dance 114, 240, TMA 121, 123, 124, 323, 324 (or 424). Acting majors: Dance 140, Music 161, TMA 112, 114, 122, 123, 124, 125, 222, 225, 323, 324, 424. Recommended concurrent registration in TMA 425.
Auditions, cold reading, resumés, and the business end of acting, music, and dance for the professional performer.

429. Performance: Recital. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: major status. By audition. MDT majors: TMA 114, 121, 123, 124, 323, 324 (or 424). Acting majors: TMA 112, 114, 122, 123, 124, 222, 323, 324, 424.
Thirty- to forty-five minute performance of cuttings from varied genres.

435. Directing Practicum for Stage and Screen. (3:2:4) Prerequisite: major status and instructor's consent; TMA foundation courses; TMA 336.
Directing projects for class critique and public presentation.

441R. Screenwriting 3. (3:4:0 ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 341. By application only.
Advanced narrative and/or nonfiction screenwriting principles. Emerging technology.

443R. Writer/Director/Actor Workshop. (3:6:1 ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114.
Collaborative workshop developing new stage and screenplays through exercises, discussion, and writing. Scripts selected competitively; public readings at end of course.

451R. Playwriting 3. (3:4:0 ea.) Prerequisite: major status or instructor's consent; TMA 112, 114, 351.
Workshop course designed to assist more advanced students in furthering their playwriting skills by writing or rewriting a play.

452R. Puppetry. (3:4:0 ea.) Prerequisite: major status or instructor's consent; TMA 112, 114.
Theories, techniques, and experience constructing and operating puppets for use in performance, recreational, and educational settings.

453. Theatre Pedagogy. (2:2:2) Prerequisite: major status; ScEd 276R, 326, 376R.
Explores, analyzes, and practices theories, methods, and techniques utilized by effective theatre teachers.

455R. Theatre Tour. (3:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status or instructor's consent. By audition.
Theatre for young audiences; touring experience.

457. Media in the Modern Classroom. (2:4:4) Prerequisite: major status.
Basic skills to create tools that increase teaching effectiveness. Video, computer graphics, and other emerging technology.

460. Portfolio. (2–4:Arr.:0) Prerequisite: design/technology emphasis major status; TMA 112, 114; design/technology emphasis core.
Design and technology capstone. Resumés, cover letters, and job searches. Professional portfolio presentation before faculty and guests.

461R. Stage Management 2. (1–3:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 361.
Stage management of BYU productions. Stage managers for main season productions are enrolled in this course.

465. Costume Construction 2. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 265A, 265B.
Advanced assignments in hands-on costuming projects for main season productions.

466R. Set Construction 2. (2:4:0 ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 266.
Advanced skills in scenic construction and stage maintenance.

467. Makeup 3. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 367.
Advanced techniques in makeup application, including advanced prosthetics and wig making. Designers for main season productions may be selected from students enrolled in this course.

468. Properties. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Basic theatre and film techniques for buying, building, and maintaining production properties. Work on season productions.

469. Theatre Management. (3:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Basic philosophies of box office, front-of-house, and theatre marketing.

473R. Writer/Director Workshop (Narrative). (3:6:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 185, 241. By application only.
Collaborative directing, videotaping, editing, and revising scenes from advanced student scripts.

474R. Writer/Director Workshop (Nonfiction). (3:9:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 185, 241, 293. By application only.
Collaborative development, revision, and polishing of nonfiction projects.

475R. Media Arts Capstone. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMKA 112, 114. By application only.
Final collaborative project for media students. May be narrative, nonfiction, multimedia, writing, or critical studies format. Fee.

477. Issues in Media Arts. (3:5:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 291, 292.
In-depth study of key media arts issues, within context of gospel principles.

483. Interactive Design and Authoring. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 185, 275.
Theory, design, and practice of creating and authoring interactive multimedia. Lab required.

491. Ethics, Aesthetics, and Theology. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114.
Analyzing and considering interrelationships of ethical, aesthetic, and theological dimensions of creating and viewing media arts and theatre texts.

492R. Media Arts Genres. (3:2:3 ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 291, 292, 391.
Intensive analysis of a single major traditional media genre (i.e., western, musical, sitcom, or melodrama) with consideration of contextual, subtextual, and textual issues.

493. Conceptualizing Nonnarrative Forms. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 293. By application only.
Advanced readings and practical applications of various nonfiction forms.

494. Transcendence: Religion and Film. (3:6:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 291, 292. By application only.
Historical, stylistic, and thematic survey of approaches to religions and spiritual subject matter in film.

495. Shakespeare: Text and Performance. (3:4:0) Prerequisite: major status or instructor's consent; TMA 112, 114.
Intensive, multifaceted exploration of selected Shakespearean texts, examined through a wide range of analytical and experiential approaches.

496R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114; instructor's consent.
Off-campus experience or internship in theatre or media arts.

497. Media as a Mirror of Our Times. (3:2:3) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 291, 292, 293.
Interdisciplinary approach to media texts as aesthetic and historical documents expressing a people, place, and time.

498R. Special Topics in Media Arts. (3:3:3 ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses; TMA 291, 292, 293.
Consideration of compelling issues in media arts practice, theory, history, and criticism.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

515R. Workshop 3: Special Projects. (1–6:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114; instructor's consent.
Advanced special projects in theatre or media arts.

516R. Theatre and Media Arts Instruction. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114; instructor's consent.
Developing teaching methods and techniques.

535R. Directing Workshop. (3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation and core courses; TMA 235, 335, 410R; by proposal/application only.
Advanced experience in production: directing.

550R. Theatre for Young Audiences. (3:3:1 ea.) Prerequisite: major status or instructor's consent; TMA 112, 114.
Theories, techniques, and experience in creating formal drama for child and youth audiences.

551R. Playwriting 4. (3:4:0 ea.) Prerequisite: major status or instructor's consent; TMA 112, 114, 451, or equivalent.
Workshop course designed to assist more advanced students in furthering their playwriting skills by writing or rewriting a play.

552. Improvisation. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: major status or instructor's consent; TMA 112, 114, 123.
Informal or improvised dramatic techniques with children, adolescents, and/or adults.

557. Storytelling. (2:2:1) Prerequisite: major status or instructor's consent.
Theories, techniques, and practice in the art of telling spellbinding stories.

562. Costume Design 3. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 462.
Advanced conceptual approaches to costume design. Strong background in costuming required. Designers for main season productions will be selected from students enrolled in this course.

563. Scenic Design 3. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 463.
Advanced conceptual scenic design. Assumes strong background in scenography. Designers for main season productions may be selected from students enrolled in this course.

564. Lighting Design 3. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 464, or equivalent.
Advanced conceptual lighting projects. Assumes strong background in lighting. Designers for main season productions may be selected from students enrolled in this course.

565. Specialty Costumes. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 265A, 265B, or equivalent.
Advanced skills in millinery, dyes, footwear, and allied project areas.

567R. Makeup Project. (1–6:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, 467, or equivalent.
Practicum in makeup design and application. Main season production designers and teaching assistants will be enrolled in this course.

568. Sound. (2:4:0) Prerequisite: major status; TMA foundation courses.
Basics in sound design and reinforcement. Work on main season productions.

569R. Design for Production. (1–4:0:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, or equivalent; instructor's consent.
Practical experience working with main season designers; related topics.

599R. Cooperative Education. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: major status; TMA 112, 114, or equivalent.
Off-campus experience or internship in theatre or media arts.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Theatre and Media Arts Faculty

Professors
Bentley, Marion J. (1971) BS, U. of Utah, 1950; MA, Stanford U., 1958; PhD, U. of Utah, 1968.
Fielding, Eric (1992) BA, Brigham Young U., 1974; MFA, Goodman School of Drama, Art Institute of Chicago, 1976.
Oaks, Harold R. (1970) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1962; PhD, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1964.
Pope, Karl T. (1966) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1964; PhD, Wayne State U., 1966.

Associate Professors
D'Arc, James V. (1979) BA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1986.
Gale, Larrie E. (1987) BA, MA, San Diego State Coll., 1967, 1970; PhD, U. of Utah, 1973.
Heiner, Barta (1988) BA, Brigham Young U., 1971; MFA, American Conservatory Theatre, 1977.
Morgan, David (1991) BA, Brigham Young U., 1985; MFA, National Theatre Conservatory, 1990.
Nelson, George D. (1990) BA, Brigham Young U., 1977; MFA, U. of Washington, 1979.
Nelson, Robert A. (1979) BA, U. of Arizona, 1970; PhD, U. of Utah, 1976.
Scanlon, Rory R. (1984) BA, Brigham Young U., 1980; MFA, U. of Illinois, 1984.
Swenson, Janet L. (1974) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1974; MFA, U. of Utah, 1992.

Assistant Professors
Crosland, Ivan A. (1971) BS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1961, 1965.
Ferguson, Stanley P. (1996) BA, Brigham Young U., 1968.
Samuelsen, Eric (1992) BA, Brigham Young U., 1983; PhD, Indiana U., 1991.
Slover, Tim (1989) BA, Brigham Young U., 1980; MA, U. of Michigan, 1981; PhD, Indiana U., 1991.
Sorensen, Rodger D. (1996) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1974.
Swenson, Sharon L. (1987) BA, MA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1968, 1974, 1993.
Threlfall, Timothy A. (1996) BFA, U. of Idaho, 1983; MFA, U. of Washington, 1987.
Walker, Oscar Lee (1969) BS, MIE, Brigham Young U., 1968, 1975.

Instructor
Duncan, Dean W. (1992) BFA, Brigham Young U., 1987; MA, U. of Southern California, 1991.

Emeriti
Gledhill, Preston R. (1947) BA, Brigham Young U., 1939; Louisiana State U., New Orleans, 1940; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1951.
Henson, Charles A. (1958) BS, MS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1959, 1980.
Jenkins, Jean R. (1967) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1947, 1966.
Metten, Charles L. (1962) BA, MA, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1951, 1952; PhD, U. of Iowa, 1960.
Whitman, Charles W. (1965) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1957, 1958; PhD, U. of Minnesota, Minneapolis, 1967.
Woodbury, Lael J. (1965) BS, Utah State U., 1952; MA, Brigham Young U., 1953; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1954.

Ukrainian

See Germanic and Slavic Languages.

Vietnamese

See Asian and Near Eastern Languages.

Visual Arts

Mark J. Johnson, Chair
B-509 HFAC, PO Box 26402, (801) 378-4429

College of Fine Arts and Communications Advisement Center
D-444 HFAC, PO Box 26333, (801) 378-3537

Admission to Degree Programs

Admission to the freshman level in the Department of Visual Arts is obtained through an application process. Special enrollment limitations for degree programs will be applied. Please see the college advisement center for specific details.

The Discipline

The Department of Visual Arts serves five main purposes: (1) preparing competent professionals in various fields of the plastic and graphic arts; (2) preparing qualified designers in problem solving of two- and three-dimensional applications; (3) training historians who can critically appraise works of art; (4) preparing art educators for teaching the visual arts at the elementary and secondary levels; and (5) generally developing the aesthetic sense of individuals by helping them experience art.

Career Opportunities

The art education degree certifies the student as an art specialist, grades K–12, in public or private institutions. Other opportunities for the certified art specialist are in foreign school systems, recreation programs, art museum education programs, and galleries. Students qualify for positions in artist-in-the-schools programs and arts councils and as art consultants/coordinators. The degree also provides a foundation for graduate study leading to advanced degrees.

Most opportunities for careers related to art history exist in teaching at the junior college and university levels. The art history major traditionally prepares students for related graduate study, but it also provides excellent training for many art- and humanities-related careers and provides a solid foundation for entering several professional graduate programs.

The art history major is valuable for those going into any aspect of museum work, including art conservation/restoration, curatorial work, museum research, and museum youth education programs. It is also a useful and often key undergraduate major for careers in art law, architecture, historical restoration, art galleries, auction houses, and art resource/research library studies. Local, state, and federal agencies offer career possibilities related to arts and humanities councils. Combined with one of several other majors, an art history minor helps prepare the student for any number of careers.

Studio art majors are prepared to compete as freelance, self-employed artists, working through galleries, exhibitions, and museums to promote and sell their work. The MFA degree also prepares artists to teach on a college or a university level. Other career opportunities include printmaking, illustration, production crafts, teaching, gallery and museum work, computer art applications, and other related careers.

Design majors are fully prepared for careers in each of the respective disciplines—

Graphic design: Advertising agencies, design studios, in-house design organizations, freelance in mediums such as books, posters, signage, billboards, commercials, corporate identity systems, and logos.

Illustration: In-house or freelance illustration focusing on book jacket, editorial, corporate, or institutional work; advertising, children's books, computer applications, etc.

Industrial design: Technical specialization in areas as diverse as automobiles, toys, sports and medical equipment, consumer products for the home or business, exhibits, furniture, electronics, and computer design.

Interior design: Residential design or specialization, including remodeling, preservation, architectural design, space planning, art and accessory dealing, color consultation, drafting and/or computer-aided design.

Photography: Portraiture; commercial illustration; advertising; fashion; architectural photography; photo-journalism; editorial, stock, industrial, fine art, educational, medical, and travel photography; conservation, marketing and manufacturing, and photofinishing.

Animation and multimedia are new areas for design exploration in the discipline.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BA Art
BA Art Education (K–12)
BA Art History
BA Design
BFA Art
Emphases:
Ceramics
Painting
Printmaking
Sculpture
BFA Graphic Design
BFA Illustration
BFA Industrial Design
BFA Interior Design
BFA Photography
Minors Art
Art Education
Art History

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MA Art Education
MA Art History
MFA Studio Art

For more information see the 1998–99 Graduate Catalog.

General Information

Application Procedures for Freshmen

New students are accepted only once a year. Enrollment is limited and based on several qualifications:

1. University and college admissions standards.
2. Completion of department application form.
3. Submission of slide portfolio.
4. Completion of creative exercise.

Appropriate forms are contained in an application packet available from either of the department offices (C-502 HFAC and 210 BRMB) at the beginning of winter semester.

Note: Art History majors complete item 1 only.

Freshman Enrollment

Application packets must be obtained before January 15 and returned before February 15. Individuals will be notified whether or not they have been accepted by April 4.

Note: Individuals receiving notice of acceptance will be permitted to register for the foundation 100-level core classes fall and winter semesters.

Sophomore-Through-Senior BFA Degree Program Enrollment

Permission to enroll for sophomore-through-senior-level BFA degree program courses is granted to students upon satisfactory development of skills and creative abilities demonstrated in a portfolio of drawings and designs completed during the preceding year. Faculty from each major will assess portfolios of work submitted by students wishing to advance in their respective fields of study. Students invited to continue are permitted to enroll in specified courses at the next academic level.

Transfer Students

Transfer students in art disciplines must meet with the appropriate area coordinator. Transfer students in design disciplines must participate in one of two portfolio reviews during reading days in April or reading days in August. Contact the area coordinator.

Note: Students not accepted into BFA degree programs may elect to enroll in the bachelor of arts program in art or design.

Degree Program Coordinators/Advisors

Coordinators are appointed to counsel students in each of the 11 major/emphases. Coordinators will advise students about program objectives, course content and sequence, career goals, and other matters pertaining to their major field of study.

Special Notice

Students receiving C or lower grades in 300- or 400-level courses will be placed on department probationary status.

No D grade in department courses and required support courses will be applied toward graduation for BFA and BA majors.

Department Probationary Status

Students can be placed on probationary status for the following:

1. Inadequate academic performance.
2. Unprofessional attitude and lack of commitment.
3. BYU Honor Code violations.

Basic Degree Requirements

1. Student must meet application criteria for admission into the program.
2. All 100-level foundation courses must be completed before admission into sophomore-level courses.
3. No D credit is allowed in major courses and required support courses.
4. A portfolio is required in all programs except art history.

BA Art (63–64 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following core requirements:
   VACor 111, 112, 120, 121A, 121B, 122, 130, 131, 133.
3. Select one course from the following:
   VACor 132, 134A, 135, 136.
4. Complete the following:
   VAStu 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221.
5. Select one course from the following:
   VAStu 321R, 322R.
6. Complete the following:
   VAStu 327R, 333R.
7. Select one course from the following:
   VAStu 350R, 351R.
8. Select one course from the following:
   VAStu 356R, 358R.

9. Complete the following:
   VAEdu 397.
   VAStu 359R.
10. Complete the following:
    ArtHC 201, 202.
11. Select one course from the following:
    ArtHC 350, 353, 355.
12. Complete 3 elective hours in art history.
13. Complete a minimum 6 elective hours in art.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Art Education (K–12) (83 hours,* including certification hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following first-year foundation courses:
   VACor 120, 121A, 121B, 122, 131, 132, 133, 134A.
3. Complete 6 hours from the following second-year foundation courses:
   VAStu 214, 215, 216, 217, 218.
4. Complete 6 hours from the same visual arts area (one 300-level and one 400-level course).
5. Complete the following:
   ArtHC 300.
   VAEdu 397.
6. Select one course from the following:
   ArtHC 350, 355.
7. Complete the following art education certification requirements during the same semester:
   VAEdu 324.
   ScEd 276R.
8. Complete the following in sequential order:
   VAEdu 339, 377, 439, 478.
9. Complete the following additional certification requirements:
   ArtHC 201, 202.
   FamSc 210.
   ScEd 326, 351, 375.
10. Complete a teaching assistant experience.
11. Complete the following during the same semester:
    ScEd 476R (12 hours required).
    VAEdu 476.

Recommended Courses:
RelC 491, 492.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Art History (49 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
2. Complete the following:
   ArtHC 201, 202, 300.
   VAStu 200.
3. Ancient art: Select one course from the following:
   ArtHC 304, 306.
4. Medieval art: Select one course from the following:
   ArtHC 310, 315, 317.
5. Renaissance and baroque art: Select one course from the following:
   ArtHC 320, 325, 330, 335.
6. Nineteenth-century art: Select one course from the following:
   ArtHC 340, 345, 363, 365.
7. Modern art: Select one course from the following:
   ArtHC 350, 353, 355, 367.
8. Select three courses from the following:
   Either ArtHC 260, 400R, 490R
   Or any of the following upper-division core courses not already taken:
   ArtHC 304, 306, 310, 315, 317, 320, 325, 330, 335, 340, 345, 350, 355, 363, 365, 367.
9. Select one course from the following:
   Fren 201, Germ 201, Ital 201.

   Note: German is strongly recommended for those wishing to pursue graduate work in art history.
10. Cognate fields: Complete 9 hours (three courses) from the following:
    Anthr 351, 378.
    ClCv 241, 245, 246, 304, 307, 310.
    Dutch 340.
    Fren 420, 421.
    Germ 330.
    Hist 300, 302, 310, 311, 312, 313, 319, 320, 322, 323, 330, 332, 335, 336, 370, 387, 388, 400R.
    Ital 420, 421.
    Phil 201, 202, 214.
    Span 345, 355.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BA Design (50 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following core requirements:
   VACor 111, 112, 120, 121A, 121B, 122.
2. Select four courses from the following:
   VACor 130, 131, 132, 133, 135, 136.
3. Complete the following:
   VACor 134A, 134B.
   VADes 210, 220, 230, 245, 250.
4. Select five courses from the following:
   VADes 328, 329, 339, 349, 359, 379.
5. Select an additional 9 hours of credit in approved support courses in art, business, computer science, or advertising. Consult with the BA design advisor to arrange individual programs of study.

BFA Art (71 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

The BFA is a professional degree. An area of emphasis is selected from ceramics, painting, printmaking, and sculpture.

Students may certify to teach art in public schools concurrent with the BFA Art program. See BA Art Education (K–12) requirements 7 through 12.

Major Requirements

1. Acceptance into the BFA program.
2. Portfolio during junior year.
3. No D credit is allowed in major courses.
4. Complete the following core requirements:
   VACor 111, 112, 120, 121A, 121B, 122, 130, 131, 133.
5. Select one course from the following:
   VACor 132, 134A, 135, 136.
6. Complete the following:
   VAStu 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221.
7. Complete the following:
   ArtHC 201, 202.
8. Select one course from the following:
   ArtHC 350, 353, 355.
9. Complete an additional 3 elective hours in art history from 300-level courses (ArtHC 300 is strongly recommended).
10. Complete the following:
    VAEdu 397.
    VAStu 398, 440.
11. Complete 24 hours in an area of emphasis (ceramics, painting, printmaking, or sculpture).
12. Complete the following:
    VAStu 497R.

BFA Graphic Design (71–73 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following core requirements:
   VACor 111, 112, 120, 121A, 121B, 122, 132, 133, 134A.
2. Select one course from the following:
   VACor 130, 131, 134B.
3. Complete the following:
   VADes 210, 243, 245, 250, 310, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 441, 442, 443, 444.
4. Complete 5 hours of the following:
   VADes 497R.
5. Complete the following history requirement:
   VADes 349.
6. Select one course from the following history requirements:
   ArtHC 350.
   VADes 328, 329, 339, 359, 379.
7. Select four of the following supporting courses:
   BusM 340.
   Comms 230.
   VADes 348, 351, 352, 410R, 488, 496R, 499R.
   VAStu 230R.

BFA Illustration (72.5–75.5 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following core requirements:
   VACor 111, 112, 120, 121A, 121B, 122, 130, 131, 132, 136.
2. Complete the following:
   VACor 134A.
   VADes 210, 243, 245, 250, 351, 352, 451, 452, 488.
3. Select one course from the following:
   VADes 310, 353.
4. Select one course from the following:
   VADes 354, 410R.
5. Select one course from the following:
   VADes 410R, 453.
6. Select one course from the following:
   VADes 350R, 454.
7. Complete two courses of the following:
   VADes 350R.
8. Complete 6 hours of the following:
   VADes 497R.
9. Complete the following history requirement:
   VADes 359.
10. Select one course from the following history requirements:
    ArtHC 304, 306, 310, 315, 317, 320, 325, 330, 335, 340, 345, 350, 355.
    VADes 328, 329, 339, 349, 379.
11. Select 9 hours from the following supporting courses:
    VADes 310, 350R, 410R, 450, 494R, 496R, 499R.
    VAStu 218, 219, 230R, 328R, 333R.

BFA Industrial Design (68 hours*)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following core requirements:
   VACor 111, 112, 120, 121A, 121B, 122, 131, 132, 133, 135.
2. Complete the following:
   VADes 199R (1 hour minimum), 210, 214R, 230, 231, 232, 233, 310, 330, 332, 340, 341, 410R, 430, 432, 488.
3. Complete 6 hours of the following:
   VADes 497R.
4. Complete the following history requirements:
   VADes 339.
5. Select one course from the following history requirements:
   ArtHC 367.
   VADes 329.

6. Complete the following supporting courses:
   MFE 232.
   TecE 240.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BFA Interior Design (71 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following core requirements:
   VACor 111, 112, 120, 121A, 121B, 122, 130, 132, 133, 135.
2. Complete the following:
   VADes 199R (1 hour), 210, 220, 221R, 222, 223, 224, 225, 227R, 310, 320, 322, 323, 324, 325, 384R, 420, 488.
3. Complete 3 hours of the following:
   VADes 497R.
4. Complete the following history requirements:
   VADes 328, 329.
5. Select 9 hours from the following supporting courses (or other classes as approved by the BFA advisor):
   VACor 134A.
   VADes 321R, 326, 335R, 384R, 410R, 411R, 435R, 496R, 499R.

BFA Photography (74 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this major.

Major Requirements

1. Complete the following core requirements:
   VACor 111, 112, 120, 121A, 121B, 122, 130, 132, 134A, 134B.
2. Complete the following:
   VADes 210, 245, 270, 272, 273, 310, 372, 374, 375, 376, 377R, 477R, 478, 488, 499R (2 hours minimum).
3. Complete 5 hours of the following:
   VADes 497R.
4. Complete the following history requirement:
   VADes 379.
5. Select one course from the following history requirements:
   VADes 328, 329, 339, 349, 359.
6. Select 10 hours from the following supporting courses:
   Comms 230, 365R.
   TMA 102, 275.
   VADes 410R.
   VAStu 218, 219, 230R, 351R.

Minor Art (20.5 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this minor.

Minor Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   VACor 111, 112, 120, 121A, 121B, 122.
2. Select three courses from the following:
   VACor 130, 131, 132, 133, 134A, 134B, 135, 136.
3. Select 6 hours from the following:
   VAStu 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221.
4. Complete 3 hours of art history or art criticism.

Minor Art Education (21 hours)

This is a limited-enrollment program requiring departmental admissions approval. Please see the department office for information regarding requirements for admission to this minor.

Minor Requirements

1. Complete the following core requirements:
   VACor 121A, 122, 132, 133.
2. Select one course from the following:
   VAStu 214, 215.
3. Select one course from the following:
   VAStu 216, 217.
4. Select one course from the following:
   ArtHC 201, 202, 350, 355.
5. Complete the following:
   VAEdu 377, 324, 439.

Minor Art History (18 hours*)

Minor Requirements

1. Complete the following:
   ArtHC 201, 202.
2. Complete 12 elective hours in art history from 300-level or above courses.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Art History and Curatorial Studies (ArtHC)

Undergraduate Courses

111. Introduction to Art History. (3:3:0) Honors also.
Topical approach to art history and appreciation.

201. World Civilization to 1500. (3:3:0)
Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from ancient Greece to the Gothic period.

202. World Civilization Since 1500. (3:3:0)
Survey of Western civilization emphasizing the visual arts from the Renaissance to the twentieth century.

211. Survey of Western Art 1. (3:3:0) Independent Study only.
Art and architecture of the Western world from primitive through medieval.

212. Survey of Western Art 2. (3:3:0) Independent Study only.
Art and architecture of the Western world from Renaissance to contemporary.

260. Survey of Western Architecture. (3:3:0)
Evolutionary development of Western architecture from Greek through contemporary trends.

290R. Special Studies in Art History. (2–5:3:0 ea.)
Topics vary.

300. Art Historical Methodology, Research, and Intensive Writing. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ArtHC 201, 202.
Necessary skills to research and write in the field of art history.

304. Greek Art. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
History and appreciation of Greek art, with consideration of formative cultures.

306. Roman Art. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
Art and architecture of the Etruscans and Romans.

310. Early Christian and Byzantine Art. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
Survey of Christian art in the Roman and Byzantine Empire from ca. 200 to 1453.

315. Early Medieval Art and Architecture. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
Art and architecture of Western Europe and Islam from A.D. 500 to 1050.

317. Romanesque/Gothic Art and Architecture. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ArtHC 201 or instructor's consent.
Major monuments in architecture, sculpture, and painting from the Romanesque and Gothic periods.

320. Early Italian Renaissance Art. (3:3:0)
Art and architecture in Italy from 1200 to 1480.

325. Northern Renaissance Art. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
Fifteenth- and sixteenth-century art in northern Europe.

330. Southern Baroque Art. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
History of baroque painting, sculpture, and architecture in Italy, Spain, and France.

335. Northern Baroque Art. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
Baroque painting in Flanders and Holland.

340. Nineteenth-Century European Art. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
Nineteenth-century art in Europe.

345. American Art. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
American painting and sculpture from colonial through modern times.

350. Modern Art. (3:3:0) Independent Study also. Prerequisite: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
Modern European art and theory, 1900–1945.

353. Twentieth-Century American Art. (3:3:0) W
Survey of painting and sculpture in the United States in the twentieth century.

355. Contemporary Art. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
Critical evaluation of trends in art since 1945.

363. English Architecture, 1485–1900. (3:3:0)
English architecture from Tudor through Victorian period.

365. American Architecture. (3:3:0)
Major figures, monuments, and movements in American architecture from colonial period through "Gilded Age."

367. Modern Architecture. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: ArtHC 202 or instructor's consent.
Critical review of roots and evolution of modern architecture.

399R. Museum Internship. (1–8:0:0 ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: ArtHC 300, 9 hours minimum upper-division art history courses, project approval.
On-the-job experience.

400R. Individual Study in Art History. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: ArtHC 201, 202, 300.

420. Women Artists. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: ArtHC 201, 202.
History of women artists from ancient through modern times.

490R. Special Topics and Readings in Art History. (3:3:0 ea.)
Topics of specific student interest, centered on strengths of visiting faculty, BYU Study Abroad Program, or other significant art history projects.

499R. Honors Thesis. (1–6:0:0 ea.)

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

500. Art in Theory: Spectatorship. (2:2:0) F Prerequisite: graduate status.
Review and critique of major theoretical approaches in art history, emphasizing the philosophical relationship between viewer and object.

505. Art in Theory: Language. (2:2:0) F Prerequisite: graduate status.
Review and critique of major theoretical approaches in art history, emphasizing the recent interest in language and semiotics.

510. Art in Theory: Context. (2:2:0) F Prerequisite: graduate status.
Review and critique of major theoretical approaches in art history, emphasizing the space of display, the museum, and the work's social reception.

520R. Studies in Ancient Art. (3:3:0 ea.) F, W, on dem.
Selected topics in Greek and Roman art.

530R. Studies in Medieval Art. (3:3:0 ea.) F, W, on dem.
Selected topics in early Christian, Byzantine, Romanesque, and Gothic art.

540R. Studies in Renaissance Art. (3:3:0 ea.) F, W, on dem.
Selected topics in Northern and Southern Renaissance art.

550R. Studies in Baroque Art. (3:3:0 ea.) F, W, on dem.
Selected topics in northern and southern baroque art.

560R. Studies in Eighteenth- and Nineteenth-Century Art. (3:3:0 ea.) F, W, on dem.
Selected topics in eighteenth- and nineteenth-century art of Europe and America.

570R. Studies in Modern and Contemporary Art. (3:3:0 ea.) F, W, on dem.
Selected topics in modern and contemporary art of Europe and America.

580R. Studies in Architecture. (3:3:0 ea.) F, W, on dem.
Selected topics in architecture of Europe and America.

590R. Studies in Curatorship. (3:3:0 ea.) F, W, on dem.
Selected topics in curation and the museum.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Visual Arts Core (VACor)

Required of all majors in the visual arts (except art history), the visual arts core is a predisciplinary preparation that embraces knowledge and skills from each discipline and underlying

principles common to all disciplines. The core is designed to serve students more efficiently by facilitating their progress through the visual arts programs and allowing flexibility in choosing their individual program direction. The core enables students to acquire a basic and broad understanding of the visual arts before engaging in the specific discipline's content and modes of inquiry.

Undergraduate Courses

111. Introduction Seminar. (0.5:1:0) F Prerequisite: application/acceptance to visual arts program.
Lecture-based seminar addressing issues and themes pertinent to visual arts professions. Guest lecturers, teleconferences, readings, writings, and discussions covering studio and cognate areas.

112. Concepts, Readings, Ethics. (0.5:1:0) W Prerequisite: application/acceptance to visual arts program.
Discussion-based seminar emphasizing generation of ideas and thinking skills. Exercises and problems based on issues and events affecting the visual arts. Readings, writings, guest lecturers, and discussions.

120. Composition. (1.5:6:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: application/acceptance to visual arts program.
Formal and conceptual elements of design and composition with 2-D and 3-D applications. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

121A. Drawing: Observational. (1.5:6:0) F, W, Sp, on blk. Prerequisite: application/acceptance to visual arts program.
Observational and conceptual drawing using a variety of media and methods. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

121B. Drawing: Spatial. (1.5:6:0) F, W, Sp, on blk. Prerequisite: application/acceptance to visual arts program.
Spatial systems and conceptual drawing using a variety of media and methods. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

122. Color Theory. (1.5:6:0) F, W, Sp, on blk. Prerequisite: application/acceptance to visual arts program.
Analysis of color theories, including intuitive and structured application.

130. Color Application. (1.5:4:0) W on blk., Su Prerequisite: VACor 111, 122. Recommended: VACor 120, 121A,B.
Extension of color theories, including intuitive and structured application within a variety of media. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

131. Figure Drawing. (1.5:4:0) W on blk., Su Prerequisite: VACor 111, 120, 121A,B.
Figure study using a variety of media and methods. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

132. Two-Dimensional Design/Computer. (1.5:4:0) W on blk., Su Prerequisite: VACor 111, 120, 121A,B.
Design concepts and theories emphasizing computer applications. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

133. Three-Dimensional Design. (1.5:4:0) W on blk., Su Prerequisite: VACor 111, 120, 121A,B.
Three-dimensional concepts, theories, and issues using a variety of media and processes. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required. Fee.

134A. Introduction to Camera Techniques. (1.5:4:0) F, W on blk., Su Prerequisite: VACor 111, 120, 122.
Understanding the camera; taking successful black and white pictures and color slides. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

134B. Camera Techniques. (1.5:4:0) F, W on blk.; Su Prerequisite; VACor 134A.
Continuation of 134A; digital camera techniques.

135. Technical Drawing. (1.5:4:0) W on blk., Su Prerequisite: VACor 111, 120, 121A,B.
Diagrammatic drawing concepts and theories using a variety of media and methods, including pencils, markers, and computers. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

136. Anatomy. (1.5:4:0) W on blk.; Su Prerequisite: VACor 111, 120, 121A,B.
Human skeletal, muscular, and surface anatomical structures using a variety of media and methods. Readings, writings, and participation in course work exhibitions required.

Visual Arts Design (VADes)

Undergraduate Courses

102. Introduction to Interiors. (3:3:0)
Interior design, emphasizing history and development of the American home.

199R. Cooperative Education. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: admission by portfolio.
Work experience evaluated by supervisor and posted on student's transcript.

210. Intermediate Computer Applications. (2:0:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Introduction to computer software programs relative to design disciplines.

214R. Shop Methods and Materials. (2:3:1 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Introduction to simple hand and machine tools; basic woodworking and metalworking construction.

220. Introduction to Interior Design. (2:2:2) F Prerequisite: visual arts core; concurrent enrollment in VADes 221R.
Introductory, practical experiences based on elements and principles of interior design.

221R. Presentation Methods for Interior Design 1. (2:2:2 ea.) F Prerequisite: visual arts core; concurrent enrollment in VADes 220.
Various media skills for rendering and presentation.

222. Interior Design Studio 2. (3:3:3) W Prerequisite: VADes 220; concurrent enrollment in VADes 223.
Interior design, emphasizing space planning, aesthetics, and programming.

223. Materials and Components. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: VADes 220, 221; concurrent enrollment in VADes 222.
Interior and exterior surface materials and their specifications and application.

224. Interior Textiles. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Technical, practical, and aesthetic considerations of soft material and textile specification and applications in interiors.

225. Detailing for Interiors 1. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Detailing and drafting for interiors using traditional mechanical means.

227R. Presentation Methods for Interior Design 2. (2:2:2 ea.) Prerequisite: VADes 221R.
Presentation methods emphasizing quick rendering techniques in a variety of styles and media.

230. Introduction to Industrial Design. (2:2:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Introduction to industrial design research, analysis, and problem-solving methods.

231. Presentation Methods for Industrial Design 1. (2:2:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Product presentation methods emphasizing perspective, value, scale, accuracy, and color.

232. Industrial Design Studio. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: VADes 230, 231.
Continuation of VADes 230 emphasizing human factors and ergonomics, restrictions and possibilities of materials and manufacturing, and coherent presentation of problems, processes, and ideas.

233. Presentation Methods for Industrial Design 2. (2:2:2) Prerequisite: VADes 231.
Continuation of VADes 231.

243. Basic Typography. (2:0:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Tools and techniques employed in indicating type and pictorial elements. Solving visual problems with type.

245. Introduction to Graphic Design. (2:2:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Using tools and preparing camera-ready mechanicals. Comprehensive study of current typesetting, printing, and binding methods; manufacture and uses of printing papers.

250. Introduction to Illustration Design. (2:2:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Overview of styles, techniques, methods, and materials. Illustrative concepts and problem solving.

270. Introduction to Photographic Design. (3:3:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Basic camera and photographic techniques, emphasizing black and white photography. Lab required.

272. Introduction to Color Photography. (3:2:3) Prerequisite: VADes 270.
Basics of making color negatives and transparencies; darkroom techniques in printing from color negatives and transparencies.

273. Advanced Photography. (3:2:3) Prerequisite: VADes 270.
Camera and darkroom techniques using the zone system for exposure and development control of negatives and prints. Lab required.

310. Advanced Computer Applications. (2:0:2) Prerequisite: VADes 210.
Specific program applications of computers to design disciplines.

320. Interior Design Studio 3. (3:3:3) W Prerequisite: VADes 222, 224; concurrent enrollment in VADes 324.
Nonresidential design, emphasizing research and human factors.

321R. Interior Presentation Techniques 3. (2:2:2 ea.) Prerequisite: VADes 227.
Continuation of VADes 227.

322. Interior Design Studio 4. (3:3:3) W Prerequisite: VADes 320, 324; concurrent enrollment in VADes 326.
Studio work in nonresidential design specialties.

323. Building Codes. (2:2:0) W Prerequisite: VADes 222.
Building codes, including occupancy, life safety, and accessibility.

324. Building Systems and Working Drawings. (2:2:0) F Prerequisite: VADes 222, 223; concurrent enrollment in VADes 320.
Understanding and working with construction processes, drawings, and specifications.

325. Lighting. (2:2:0) F Prerequisite: admission to interior design BFA program.
Lighting techniques and specifications for interiors.

326. Detailing for Interiors 2. (2:2:2) W Prerequisite: VADes 320, 324; concurrent enrollment in VADes 322.
Interior detailing, including interior architecture, mill work, and case work.

327. Presentation Models. (2:2:2) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Interior architecture model-making techniques.

328. History of Interior Design and Architecture 1. (3:3:0)
History of interior design, architecture, and furnishings from ancient Egypt to beaux arts movement. French, English, and American design.

329. History of Interior Design and Architecture 2. (3:3:0)
Furniture, interior design, and architecture from Industrial Revolution to present.

330. Industrial Design Studio 3. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: VADes 232, 233.
Designer responsibilities, structured and unstructured procedures in problem solving, client relationships, functional relationships, and mechanisms and materials.

331. Presentation Methods for Industrial Design 3. (2:2:2) Prerequisite: VADes 231.
Sketching and rendering techniques focused on surface materials and finishes.

332. Industrial Design Studio 4. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: VADes 330, 331.
Continuation of VADes 330 with renewed emphasis on human factors and ergonomics, plus market and user requirements and developing written briefs.

334. Historic Textiles for Interior Design. (2:2:0) W Recommended: VADes 224.
Textile design, color, motifs, upholstery textures, window treatments, bed ensembles and accessories, and rugs and carpeting (styles of these applications) for 25 major historic periods (for contemporary application).

335R. Introduction to Furniture Design. (3:2:4 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Materials, structures, and production methods; prototype construction.

339. History of Products. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Overview of artifacts and products; how they have influenced society from prehistory to present day.

340. Corporate Identity Design. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: VADes 243 and BFA acceptance.
Current philosophy in corporate identification and trademark design. Design trademarks, logotypes, and identity programs.

341. Packaging Design. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Packaging and its function in the marketplace; current packaging technology and aesthetics.

342. Advertising Design. (3:2:2) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Particular demands of the advertising world: marketing strategy, editorial and visual concepts, etc. Design ads, collateral materials, campaigns.

343. Publication Design. (3:2:2) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Book and magazine publishing and their special editorial, design, and manufacturing requirements.

344. Poster Design. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Functions and characteristics of posters; past and current aesthetics.

348. Type as Image. (3:2:2) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Developing unique and expressive letterforms, especially the modification of letters to create new abstract or pictorial images.

349. History of Graphic Design. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Survey of visual communication.

350R. Life Drawing. (3:3:3 ea.) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Drawing the figure in modern or historical costume; developing drawing skills, especially relating to the draped figure.

351. Illustration 2. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Narrative illustration problems emphasizing academic study of the human figure, using various media.

352. Illustration 3. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Conceptual illustration problems and market applications, using various media.

353. Editorial and Book Illustration. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Book and magazine illustration and philosophy; design and manufacturing requirements; design assignments.

354. Advertising and Corporate Illustration. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Demands of the advertising world; institutional illustration and ad campaigns; design assignments.

359. History of Illustration. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Survey of illustration in visual communication. Emphasis on birth of publishing and "Golden Age" of American illustration.

372. Illustration Photography. (3:2:3) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Camera and darkroom techniques to produce illustrations for advertising layout and other media. Lab required.

374. Advanced Location Photography. (3:0:4) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Advanced techniques of location photography including architecture, annual report, portraiture; editorial work. Lab required.

375. Portrait Photography. (3:2:3) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Studio and environmental portraiture. Lab required.

376. Editorial Photography. (3:4:4) W Prerequisite: acceptance to BFA photography level.
Use of photography in magazines, newspapers, annual reports, etc. Creating and publishing picture stories.

377R. Advanced Photography Studio. (3:3:3 ea.) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Photography as an exploratory, sensitizing process. Lab required.

379. History of Photography. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Origin and development of photographic process.

384R. Problems in Color. (2:2:2 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Specialized applications of color theory.

410R. Computer Applications Studio. (2:0:2 ea.) Prerequisite: VADes 310.
Individual major project using high-end hardware and software.

411R. Field Study. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
On-location study of design.

420. Interior Design Studio 5. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: VADes 322, 326.
Interior design, emphasizing comprehensive research and planning of nonresidential interiors.

421R. Interior Presentation Techniques 4. (3:2:4 ea.) Prerequisite: VADes 321R.
Continuation of VADes 321R.

422R. Interior Design Studio 6. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
National and international design competitions.

427. Interior Presentation Techniques 5. (2:2:2) Prerequisite: VADes 421R.
Continuation of VADes 421R.

430. Industrial Design Studio 4. (3:3:1) Prerequisite: VADes 332, 333.
Systems design problems from initial research and analysis to final presentation of working drawings and models, with concern for ergonomics, anthropometries, marketing, user and buyer, production, function, and structure.

432. Industrial Design Studio 5. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: VADes 330, 332, 430.
Portfolio development based on advanced design projects.

435R. Advanced Furniture Design. (3:2:4 ea.) Prerequisite: VADes 335R.
Continuation of VADes 335R.

441. Senior Graphic Design Studio 1. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Opportunity for senior class members to work as a group in solving design problems for real clients on major projects.

442. Senior Graphic Design Studio 2. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: VADes 441.
Continuation of VADes 441.

443. Special Problems in Graphic Design 1. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Advanced assignments in graphic design; individual portfolio development.

444. Special Problems in Graphic Design 2. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: BFA acceptance.
Continuation of VADes 443.

450. Painting the Human Head. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: VADes 350 and BFA acceptance.
Painting from a live model; unique aspects of portraiture and colors of the human face.

451. Senior Illustration Studio 1. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: VADes 351, 352, and BFA acceptance.
Individual portfolio development.

452. Senior Illustration Studio 2. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: VADes 451.
Flexible in nature, featuring various instructors with unique individual skills. Team taught.

453. Illustration 4. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: VADes 351, 352, and instructor's consent.
Advanced assignments in illustration.

454. Illustration 5. (3:3:3) Prerequisite: VADes 351, 352, and instructor's consent.
Continuation of VADes 453.

477R. Advanced Photography Studio 2. (3:3:3 ea.) Prerequisite: VADes 377.
Advanced assignments in photography. Fee.

478. Advanced Color Photography. (3:0:4) Prerequisite: VADes 272 and BFA acceptance.
Advanced techniques of color photo processing, printmaking, and quality control.

488. Professional Practices of the Designer. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: junior or senior standing.
Business aspects of the design profession.

489. Portfolio Preparation. (2:1:1)
Final portfolio preparation.

494R. Special Problems in Design. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Individual study in area of special interest.

496R. Professional Internship. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: department's and faculty advisor's consent.
Work experience in professional design studio evaluated by supervisor.

497R. BFA Final Project. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: BFA advisor's consent.
Advanced individual project with minimum guidance, showing high degree of competence within chosen major.

499R. Directed Studies. (1–6:Arr.:Arr. ea.)

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Visual Arts Education (VAEdu)

Undergraduate Courses

176. Introduction to Teaching the Visual Arts. (1:1:0)
Teaching grades K–12, emphasizing the role and image of visual arts education, professionalism, and a field experience.

324. Foundations in Art Education. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: concurrent registration in ScEd 276R.
Theoretical, philosophical, and historical foundations of art education; children's aesthetic development.

326. Art for Elementary Teachers. (2:2:1) F, W, Sp, Su
Preservice preparation designed to help elementary classroom teachers understand the visual arts and develop skills necessary for implementing a discipline-based approach for art education.

339. Computer Application in Art Education. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp
Basic program applications for developing instructional materials in art education.

377. Art History and Studio Methods for Art Educators. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: VAEdu 324, ScEd 276R; VAEdu 339 or concurrent registration.
Theoretical foundations and practical applications for teaching art history and production.

397. Introduction to Art Criticism. (3:3:0)
Theoretical foundations for critical judgment in art and their application in judging works of art.

439. Aesthetics and Criticism Methods for Art Educators. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: VAEdu 324, ScEd 276R; VAEdu 339 or concurrent registration.
Theoretical foundations and practical applications for teaching aesthetics and criticism.

476. Art Student Teaching Seminar. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: concurrent registration in ScEd 476R for 12 hours.
Analysis and discussion of art student teaching experience; educational leadership and professional responsibilities of art educators.

478. Art Curriculum Development, Implementation, and Evaluation. (3:3:0) Prerequisite: VAEdu 324, ScEd 276R, 377, 439; VAEdu 339 or concurrent registration.
Principles for developing balanced art curriculum; curriculum implementation; evaluation of student progress and art program effectiveness.

494R. Special Problems in Art Education. (1–3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

578R. Art Education Studio. (3:0:6 ea.)
MA courses in ceramics, drawing, figure drawing, oil painting, aqueous painting, printmaking, crafts, sculpture.

594R. Special Problems in Art Education. (1–3:0:Arr. ea.) Sp, Su
Topics dealing with current education issues.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Visual Arts Studio (VAStu)

Undergraduate Courses

100. Introduction to Art. (1:1:0)
Basic form, content, and art processes through lectures, demonstrations, and studio and gallery visits.

103. Introduction to Drawing. (2:1:3)
Basic drawing techniques and concepts.

104. Introduction to Sculpture. (2:1:3)
Basic sculpture processes, including clay modeling and stone carving. Fee.

105. Introduction to Ceramics. (2:1:3)
Basic methods and processes of forming and glazing original ceramic objects. Fee.

106. Introduction to Printmaking. (2:1:3)
Basic techniques in etching and woodcut. Fee.

107. Introduction to Oil Painting. (2:1:3)
Basic concepts and techniques of oil painting.

108. Introduction to Watercolor. (2:1:3)
Basic concepts and techniques of watercolor.

109. Introduction to Calligraphy. (2:1:3) Independent Study also.
Basic skills in hand lettering.

200. Studio Techniques for Art History. (3:3:0)
Introduction to art techniques, materials, and practices directed toward art history majors.

203R. Drawing 2. (2:1:3 ea.) Prerequisite: VAStu 103.
Extended work in basic drawing techniques.

204R. Sculpture 2. (2:1:3 ea.) Prerequisite: VAStu 104.
Extended work in sculpture processes, including modeling and carving. Fee.

205R. Ceramics 2. (2:1:3 ea.) Prerequisite: VAStu105.
Extended methods of creating original ceramic objects, including glaze mixing, kiln firing, and research techniques. Fee.

206R. Printmaking 2. (2:1:3 ea.) Prerequisite: VAStu106.
Extended work in silkscreen, etching, and woodcut. Fee.

207R. Painting 2. (2:1:3 ea.) Prerequisite: VAStu 107.
Continuation of VAStu 107.

208R. Watercolor 2. (2:1:3 ea.) Prerequisite: VAStu 108.
Continuation of VAStu108.

209. Calligraphy 2. (2:1:3) Prerequisite: VAStu109.
Spencerian alphabet and design. Problems in applying various handmade and transfer alphabets.

214. Aqueous Media Fundamentals. (1.5:1:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Foundation in aqueous media.

215. Painting Fundamentals. (1.5:1:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Foundation painting.

216. Ceramics Fundamentals. (1.5:1:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Foundation ceramics. Fee.

217. Sculpture Fundamentals. (1.5:1:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Foundation sculpture. Fee.

218. Intaglio Fundamentals. (1.5:1:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Foundation printmaking. Fee.

219. Lithography Fundamentals. (1.5:1:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Foundation printmaking. Fee.

220. Drawing Fundamentals. (1.5:1:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Foundation drawing.

221. Figure Drawing Fundamentals. (1.5:1:2) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Foundation figure drawing.

230R. Bookbinding. (3:3:0 ea.)
Traditional approaches to hand bookbinding.

321R. Drawing. (3:1:5 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core and VAStu 220.
Drawing as a graphic form of self-expression, emphasizing personal statement in response to various experiences and concepts.

322R. Figure Drawing. (3:1:5 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core and VAStu 221.
Drawing from the human figure, emphasizing structure and anatomy.

327R. Painting. (3:3:3 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core and VAStu 215.
Fundamental concepts and techniques of oil painting.

328R. Figure Painting. (3:2:4 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core and VAStu 215, 322, 327.
Fundamentals of figure painting.

333R. Aqueous Media. (3:2:4 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core and VAStu 214.
Aqueous media on paper, emphasizing use of transparent watercolor.

340R. Letterpress. (3:3:0 ea.)
Fundamentals of hand printing, typography, and design using traditional letterpress techniques.

349R. Printmaking: Relief/Screen. (3:2:4 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Relief and screen printmaking materials and procedures. Fee.

350R. Printmaking: Intaglio. (3:2:4 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core and VAStu 218.
Intaglio printmaking, based on traditional and contemporary techniques. Fee.

351R. Printmaking: Lithography. (3:2:4 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core and VAStu 219.
Lithography printmaking, based on traditional and contemporary techniques. Fee.

353R. Computer Art. (3:2:4 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Exploring the computer as a tool for visual self-expression.

354R. Craft Processes. (3:1:5 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core.
Exploration in crafts using a variety of materials. Fee.

355R. Stained Glass. (3:2:4 ea.)
Methods and processes using leaded glass, copper, foil, and faceted glass. Fee.

356R. Figure Sculpture. (3:1:5 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core and VAStu 217, 221.
Modeling the human figure in clay. Fee.

358R. Sculpture. (3:1:5 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core and VAStu 217, 220.
Traditional and nontraditional approaches to sculpture. Fee.

359R. Ceramics. (3:2:4 ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core and VAStu 216, 217.
Designing, throwing, hand forming, decorating, glazing, and firing techniques. Fee.

390. Color. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: VACor 130.
Analysis of color theories, including intuitive and structured application.

395R. BFA Seminar. (1:1:0 ea.) F, W Prerequisite: acceptance into BFA program.
Examination of selected contemporary issues.

398. Readings. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: VACor 118, 119.
Directed readings in significant issues and ideas in the visual arts.

421R. Drawing Studio. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: VAStu 321R or 322R and admission by portfolio.
Developing individual expressive strengths in drawing.

422R. Figure Drawing Studio. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: VAStu 322R and admission by portfolio.
Developing individual drawing skill related to the human figure.

423R. Intensive Studio. (1–10:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: visual arts core, instructor's consent, and portfolio review.
Selective, individual study.

427R. Painting Studio. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: VAStu 327R and admission by portfolio.
Developing individual concepts and techniques in painting.

428R. Figure Painting Studio. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: VAStu 322R, 327R, 328R, and admission by portfolio.
Advanced figure study.

430. History and Development of the Codex: Greek Through Fourth Century (3:1:2) F Prerequisite: VAStu 230R and/or instructor's consent.
Historical survey of the ancient codex, including studio bookmaking projects recapitulating development of bookmaking craft of Greek period through fourth century.

431. History and Development of the Codex: Fifth Through Eighteenth Centuries. (3:1:2) W Prerequisite: VAStu 430 and instructor's consent.
Historical survey of the ancient codex, including studio bookmaking projects recapitulating development of bookmaking craft of fifth through eighteenth centuries.

440. Business Practices for Artists. (2:2:0) Prerequisite: visual arts major.
Basic business practices associated with managing career in visual arts.

450R. Intaglio Studio. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite:VAStu 350R and admission by portfolio.
Advanced work in intaglio, monotype, relief. Fee.

451R. Lithography Studio. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: VAStu 350R, 351R, and admission by portfolio.
Advanced work in lithography. Fee.

456R. Sculpture Studio. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: VAStu 356R or 358R and admission by portfolio.
Advanced study in sculpture: traditional and nontraditional approaches. Fee.

459R. Ceramic Studio. (1–9:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: VAStu 359R and admission by portfolio.
Exploratory experience with advanced methods in ceramics. Research emphasis on clay bodies, glazes, and constructing and operating kilns. Fee.

494R. Special Problems in Art. (1–3:0:0 ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

496R. Professional Internship. (1–6:0:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: visual arts major.

497R. BFA Final Project. (3:0:0 ea.)

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Visual Arts Faculty

Professors
Barrett, Robert (1982) BFA, U. of Utah, 1973; MA, MFA, U. of Iowa, 1975, 1976.
Barsch, Wulf E. (1974) BFA, Werkkünstschule-Hanover, West Germany, 1968; MA, MFA, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1971.
Day, Michael D. (1983) BA, Brigham Young U., 1961; MA, San Jose State U., 1968; EdD, Stanford U., 1973.
Hamilton, Charles Mark (1974) BA, Brigham Young U., 1967; MA, U. of Utah, 1972; PhD, Ohio State U., 1978.
Kimball, W. Wayne, Jr. (1984) BA, Southern Utah State Coll., 1968; MFA, U. of Arizona, 1970.
Marshall, John F. (1971) BFA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1968.
Marshall, Robert L. (1969) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1968.
Myer, Peter L. (1972) BA, Brigham Young U., 1956; MFA, U. of Utah, 1959.
Smith, Bruce Hixson (1977) BA, Brigham Young U., 1964; MFA, U. of Utah, 1968.

Associate Professors
Allen, Von (1984) BA, MA, Edinboro State Coll., 1973, 1976; MFA, Syracuse U., 1983.
Beattie, Donna Kay (1989) BSE., Emporia State U., 1963; MA, U. of Missouri, 1985; PhD, U. of Kansas, 1990.
Bule, Steven (1984) BA, Brigham Young U., 1976; PhD, Ohio State U., 1987.
Hadlock, Neil (1990) BFA, MFA, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1971.
Haltern, Hagen G. (1978) BFA, Fachhochschule, Cologne, West Germany, 1972; MFA, Kunstakademie, Düsseldorf, Germany, 1976.
Hill, Sherron D. (1981) BS, Weber State Coll., 1965; MA, PhD, U. of Iowa, 1971, 1973.
Hull, Richard (1987) BFA, Brigham Young U., 1987.
Johnson, Mark J. (1987) BA, Brigham Young U., 1979; MA, U. of Illinois, 1983; MFA, PhD, Princeton U., 1984, 1986.
Peacock, Martha M. (1987) BA, Brigham Young U., 1978; MA, PhD, Ohio State U., 1985, 1989.
Pulfer, Adrian (1985) BFA, Brigham Young U., 1988.
Taylor, David A. (1978) BA, BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1976, 1982.
Telford, John (1990) MFA, U. of Utah, 1988.

Assistant Professors
Adams, Brent (1990) MFA, U. of Utah, 1992.
Barton, Garold C. (1994) BFA, Brigham Young U., 1989; MFA, Ohio State U., 1994.
Christensen, Brian D. (1993) BFA, Brigham Young U., 1990; MFA, Washington U., 1993.
Honey, Peggy (1994) BA, Brigham Young U., 1982; MS, U. of Missouri, Columbia, 1997.
Moss, LaVelle R. (1987) BS, U. of Utah, 1964; MA, Brigham Young U., 1969.
Nielson, Karla (1974) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1974, 1979.
Ostraff, Joseph E. (1993) BFA, Brigham Young U., 1982; MFA, U. of Washington, 1984.
Sipherd, John W. (1976) BS, Utah State U., 1962; MA, California State U., Los Angeles, 1964.
Sullivan, Linda (1991) BA, Brigham Young U., 1981; MFA, U. of Utah, 1993.

Instructor
Magleby, Mark (1997) MA, Ohio State U., 1982.

Adjunct Faculty
Gray, Campbell (1997) BE, Sydney Coll., Australia, 1982; MLP, U. of New England, Australia, 1986; PhD, U. of Sussex, England, 1994.

Emeriti
Allen, Murray F. (1969) BS, U. of Utah, 1947; MA, Brigham Young U., 1968.
Allen, Phyllis Sloan (1968) BA, U. of California, Berkeley, 1931.
Barrus, Wallace M. (1969) BS, Brigham Young U., 1964; MFA, Utah State U., 1975.
Christensen, James Cal (1976) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1967, 1968.
Cindrich, Lawrence A. (1983) BFA, Carnegie Mellon U., 1959; MFA, Cranbrook Academy of Art, 1961.
Dansie, R. E. (Ted) (1972) BA, Brigham Young U., 1972.
Darais, Alexander B. (1954) BS, Brigham Young U., 1948; MFA, Claremont Graduate School, 1952.
Eddington, Keith (1979) BA, MFA, U. of Utah, 1947, 1950.
Gunn, Richard L. (1948) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1947, 1950; EdD, Stanford U., 1955.
Johansen, Franz M. (1956) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1955, 1960.
Magleby, Francis R. (1959) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1950, 1951; EdD, Columbia U., 1967.
Raty, Thomas Laine (1963) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1950, 1961; EdD, Arizona State U., 1985.
Stout, W. Douglas (1969) BFA, U. of Utah, 1958; MS, Illinois Inst. of Technology, 1961; PhD, U. of Utah, 1977.
Takasaki, Fred Y. (1961) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1958; MA, U. of Michigan, 1968.
Tippetts, Frank M. (1958) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1953, 1962; EdD, Arizona State U., 1968.
Weaver, Max D. (1961) BS, MA, Utah State U., 1949, 1955.

Welsh

See Linguistics.

Western Studies

See Charles Redd Center for Western Studies.

Women's Research Institute

Bonnie Ballif-Spanvill, Director
978 SWKT, (801) 378-4609

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences Advisement Center
2254 SFLC, (801) 378-3541

Research and Scholarship

The Women's Research Institute seeks to promote the scholarly investigation of female perspectives and experiences in diverse cultural and historical contexts. It provides access to a worldwide network of scholarship through the ongoing collaborative research it directs and its sponsorship of academic conferences and visiting scholars. Research projects focusing on women's unique patterns of development and learning, their viewpoints and contributions, and their involvement in families, religions, and societies throughout the world are created and funded through the institute. The institute also houses a minor in women's studies.

Women's Studies Discipline

The women's studies minor educates students in the findings, theories, and methodologies fundamental to the women's studies field, while fostering critical thinking and superior scholarship. Considering traditional academic discourse from the female perspective allows new insights into our historical and cultural traditions.

Career Opportunities

A women's studies minor enhances and broadens educational and employment opportunities in any discipline or field. The women's studies minor trains students to look at issues and questions from unique perspectives, develop research skills, learn current theory, and deal with practical gender issues in society. This training prepares students to be more successful in graduate and professional schools, business and industry, and government or community service.

Minor Women's Studies (19 hours)

1. Complete the following:
   WS 222, 492.
   Soc 367.
2. Complete two semesters of the following:
   WS 392R.
3. Select two courses from the following:
   Engl 396.
   FamSc 371.
   Hist 384.
   Soc 323.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Anthr 390R.
   ArtHC 420.
   Comms 495R.
   Engl 495, 510R.
   FamSc 367, 395R, 461.
   Germ 441R, 498R.
   Hlth 450.
   Hist 382, 394R, 398.
   HonP 228R, 241R.
   PlSc 472.
   Psych 308.
   SocW 390R.
   Soc 460.

   Note 1: To qualify as an elective toward a minor in women's studies, courses must contain specific subject matter emphasizing women's studies. Periodically departments offer appropriate courses not listed above. See the Women's Research Institute each semester for current elective courses that count toward the minor.

   Note 2: R-designated courses change from semester to semester. See offering departments to ensure the course topic is related to women's studies.

Women's Studies Courses (WS)

222. Introduction to Women's Studies. (3:3:0)
Survey of scholarship about women's lives; new historical, sociological, psychological, and literary approaches that inform our understanding of women's experience.

392R. Women's Studies Colloquium. (0.5:Arr.:0 ea.)
Scholarly findings presented by researchers in the field on topics relating to women's lives and experiences throughout history, across the world, and within ethnic, educational, and economic segments of society.

492. Women's Studies Senior Research Seminar. (3:3:0)
Prerequisite: WS 222.
Synthesis of interdisciplinary studies of women; comparative analysis of methods used in research on women; group or individual senior research papers required.

Youth Leadership

See Recreation Management and Youth Leadership.

Zoology

Richard R. Tolman, Chair
574 WIDB, PO Box 25254, (801) 378-2006

College of Biology and Agriculture Advisement Center
380 WIDB, PO Box 25189, (801) 378-3042

Admission to Degree Program

All degree programs in the Department of Zoology are open enrollment. However, special limitations apply for teaching majors.

The Discipline

Zoology requires broad training in biological and physical sciences and mathematics. Each degree program is designed to provide this broad background as well as more specific training in a particular discipline. Students are expected to master the subject material and to develop skills in scientific reasoning that will allow them to make intelligent, informed decisions on biological issues.

Career Opportunities

Students who major in zoology and demonstrate academic competence find numerous employment options, ranging from technical work in research laboratories to field technicians for environmental research companies. Majors may develop expertise and interest in such diverse areas as environmental biology, evolutionary biology, freshwater biology, human biology, marine biology, molecular biology, pest control, taxonomy, and wildlife management.

Students who complete the zoology core course requirements and take the recommended chemistry, mathematics, and physics courses satisfy the requirements for medical and dental schools, as well as for graduate studies in almost all areas of biological teaching and research. Those planning to teach biology and general science in secondary school or biology in junior college may also certify with a major in this department.

Selecting a major like zoology is very important because not all who wish to enter a professional school such as medical, dental, law, or business school are accepted. The selected major should be in an area that best fulfills the interests, personal needs, and alternative career plans of the student while also fulfilling the fundamental requirements for professional schools. The zoology curriculum is not only intellectually rewarding to the serious student, but it is also rigorous enough to prepare students for careers in a wide variety of professional fields.

Graduation Requirements

To receive a bachelor's degree a student must fill three groups of requirements: (1) general education requirements; (2) university requirements; and (3) major requirements.

General Education Requirements

Please see your college advisement center for information about general education courses you should take to dovetail with your major program.

Languages of Learning

Precollege Math (zero to one course) (or Math ACT score of at least 22)	0–3.0 hours
First-Year Writing (one course)	3.0
Advanced Writing (one to four courses) (Engl 316 is highly recommended.)	3–8.0
Advanced Languages/Math/Music (one to four courses)	3–20.0

Liberal Arts Core

Biological Science (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Physical Science (one to two courses)	3–7.0
American Heritage (one to two courses)	3–6.0
Wellness (one to three courses)	1.5–3.0
Civilization (two courses)	6.0

Arts and Sciences Electives

Arts and Letters (one course)	3.0
Natural Sciences (one course)	3–4.0
Social and Behavioral Sciences (one course)	3.0

Note 1: For a complete list of courses that will fill each GE category, see the General Education section of the current class schedule.

Note 2: Additional information about general education requirements can be found in the General Education section of the current class schedule or this catalog.

Minimum University Requirements

Religion	14.0
Upper-division hours	40.0
Residency	30.0
Total hours	128.0

Cumulative GPA must be at least 2.0.

Note: See the Graduation section of this catalog for more information.

Major Requirements

Complete the major requirements listed under one of the following undergraduate degree programs.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BS Zoology
Emphases:
Entomology
Human Biology
BS Conservation Biology
Emphases:
Conservation
Wildlife Biology
BS Biology Composite Teaching
Minors Biology Teaching
Zoology

For help or information on the undergraduate programs, please see your college advisement center.

Note: For the molecular biology program, see the Molecular Biology section of this catalog.

Graduate Programs and Degrees

MS Zoology
MS Biological Science Education
MS Molecular Biology (collegewide interdisciplinary degree)
PhD Zoology
PhD Molecular Biology (collegewide interdisciplinary degree)

For more information see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

BS Zoology (59–61 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Select one of the following options:
   Either Zool 101, 102.
   Or Biol 130.
2. Complete the following:
   Zool 204, 350, 371, 372, 373, 374, 460, 475.
3. Select at least 6 hours from the following:
   Zool 312, 317, 318, 330, 331, 338M, 344, 351, 361, 363, 380, 402, 407, 410, 414, 416, 418, 443, 445, 446, 447, 457, 472, 484, 510, 526, 532, 536, 537, 546, 547, 556, 561, 562, 565, 566, 572, 585.
4. Select one course from the following:
   Math 112 or 119 (prerequisite: Math 110 or equivalent).
5. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 107, 351, 352, 353 (1 or 2 hours; see MAPs)
6. Select one of the following physics options:
   Either Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108
   Or Phscs 121, 122, 221.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Zoology: Entomology Emphasis (71–75 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Select one of the following options:
   Either Zool 101, 102.
   Or Biol 130.
2. Complete the following:
   Zool 204, 330, 331, 350, 351, 371, 372, 373, 460, 475, 532, 536, 537.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Math 112 or 119 (prerequisite: Math 110 or equivalent).
4. Select one course from the following:
   Stat 221, 501.
5. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 107, 351, 352, 353 (1 or 2 hours; see MAPs)
6. Select one of the following physics options:
   Either Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108
   Or Phscs 121, 122, 221.

Recommended Courses

Mcbio 221, 222.
Botny 210.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Zoology: Human Biology Emphasis (72–75 hours*)

Major Requirements

1. Select one of the following options:
   Either Zool 101, 102.
   Or Biol 130.
2. Complete the following:
   Zool 204, 260, 350, 371, 372, 373, 374, 460, 475.
3. Select one of the following options:
   Either RelC 491, 492
   Or Zool 338M.

   Note: RelC 491 and 492 are to be taken simultaneously; because these courses are the same as Zool 338M, you may register for RelC 491 and 492 or for Zool 338M, but not for both.
4. Select two courses from the following (not more than one class from each department):
   Anthr 300.
   FamSc 210, 360.
   FSN 100, 200.
   Hlth 451, 460.
   Mcbio 221, 311.
5. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 107, 351, 352, 353.
   Phscs 105, 106, 107, 108.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Math 112 or 119. (Prerequisite: Math 110 or equivalent.)
7. Select one course from the following:
   Chem 481.
   Zool 317, 361, 380, 484, 526, 561, 565, 585.
8. Select one course from the following:
   Psych 350, 359, 370, 375, 381, 382.
   Zool 562.

   Note: Psych 350 and Soc 350 are the same course. Only one should be taken.
9. Select one course from the following:
   Soc 311, 329, 345, 350, 365, 389.

   Note: Psych 350 and Soc 350 are the same course. Only one should be taken.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Conservation Biology: Conservation Emphasis (60–62 hours*)

The conservation emphasis is designed to provide students with a broad scientific background in preparation for a career in conservation fields. Graduates will be equipped to deal with the issues and problems of sustainable resource usage, conservation of endangered biota, long-term preservation of biodiversity, development and preservation of natural resources, and management and conservation of ecosystems. This track is recommended for those contemplating graduate school.

Major Requirements

1. Only 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses and no grades lower than C– in any botany, range science, or zoology course will be accepted for graduation.
2. Select one of the following options:
   Either Zool 101, 102.
   Or Biol 130.
3. Complete the following:
   Botny 105, 210.
   Botny-Zool 350, 351, 407, 475.
   Zool 204.
4. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 107, 152.

5. Complete the following:
   Math 119.
6. Select one of the following options:
   Either Botny 341.
   Or Zool 371, 372.
7. Select one course from the following:
   Stat 221, 501.
8. Select one course from the following:
   Botny 400.
   PlSc 535.
9. Select one course from the following:
   Botny 440.
   Chem 281.
   Zool 460.
10. Complete an additional 8 hours in botany, range science, or zoology courses, 300-level or above.

Recommended courses and substitutions for graduate school preparation:

Chem 351, 352, 353 (instead of 152).
Physcs 105, 106.
Stat 501 (instead of 221).
Zool 373.

Federal Register Requirements:

The federal register requirements for botany or zoology can be met by registering under botany or zoology listings, respectively, when taking the core courses. The major fills the ecology requirements for the Federal Register.

GIS Applications:

Students interested in GIS applications should consider a minor in geographical systems (18 hours). See the Geography Department for details.

Natural Resource Policy:

Students interested in natural resource policy should consider completing a minor in public policy (18 hours). See the Political Science Department for details.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Conservation Biology: Wildlife Biology Emphasis (61–65 hours*)

This emphasis focuses on the educational requirements suggested by the Wildlife Society for its Professional Wildlife Biologist Certification Program. Students with this emphasis can meet the Federal Register requirements for wildlife biologists. Students are also prepared for employment with state wildlife agencies as well as a number of federal and international agencies.

Major Requirements

1. Only 5 hours of D credit in required supporting courses and no grades lower than C– in any botany, range science, or zoology course will be accepted for graduation.
2. Select one of the following options:
   Either Zool 101, 102.
   Or Biol 130.
3. Complete the following:
   Botny 210.
   Botny-Zool 350, 351, 407, 475.
   Range 225, 505.
   Zool 204.
4. Complete the following:
   Chem 105, 106, 107.
5. Complete the following:
   Math 119.
6. Select one course from the following:
   Botny 440.
   Chem 281.
   Zool 460.
7. Select one of the following options:
   Either Botny 341.
   Or Zool 371, 372.
8. Select one course from the following:
   Stat 221, 501.
9. Select one course from the following:
   Botny 120, 205, 331, 332, 510, 515, 527.
   Range 330.
10. Select two courses from the following:
    Zool 445, 446, 447.
11. Select one course from the following:
    Range 565.
    Zool 457.

Recommended Courses

Students interested in pursuing postgraduate studies should consider the following:
Chem 351, 352, 353.
Stat 501 (instead of 221).

Wildlife Society Certification has additional requirements that need to be filled if certification is desired. The following are recommended courses for filling these requirements:
Physical Science 1: Complete the following:
Either Chem 152.
Or Chem 351, 352, 353.
Physical Science 2: Complete one course from the following:
AgHrt 282.
Geog 212.
Geol 101, 111.
Phscs 105 *and* 106.
PhyS 100.
Quantitative 2: Complete one course from the following:
AgHrt 240.
Botny 551.
CS 130, 142.
Communications: Select 6 hours from the following:
Comms 150, 307, 310, 495R.
Policy, Administration, and Law: Complete one course from the following:
PI Sc 535, 536, 539R.
Humanities and Social Sciences: Complete the following:
Econ 240.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

BS Biology Composite Teaching (94–98 hours,* including certification hours)

Major Requirements

1. Select one of the following options:
   Either Zool 101, 102.
   Or Biol 130.
2. Complete the following:
   Botny 105, 205.
   Geol 101.
   Math 110.
   Mcbio 221, 222.
   Phscs 105, 106.
   Zool 204, 260, 261, 276, 331, 344, 350, 475, 493.
3. Select one of the following options:
   Either Zool 338M.
   Or RelC 491, 492.
4. Select one of the following chemistry options:
   Either Chem 101, 152, 281
   Or Chem 105, 106, 107, 351.
5. Complete the Professional Education Component (28–29 hours): see the Secondary Education section of this catalog for certification requirements.

Recommended Courses

AgHrt 282, 283.
Botny 120, 210, 321, 331, 332, 480, 527.
Geol 103, 111, 112.
Math 111, 119.
Mcbio 311.
Range 225, 565.
Zool 134, 312, 317, 330, 363, 371, 372, 380, 445, 446, 447, 460, 561, 562.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Biology Teaching (29–30 hours*)

1. Complete the following:
   Botny 105.
   Botny-Zool 350, 475.
   Mcbio 221, 222.
   Zool 204, 276, 331.
2. Select one course from the following:
   Botny 205, 210.
3. Select one course from the following:
   Zool 260, 261.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Minor Zoology (14 hours*)

1. Select one of the following options:
   Either Zool 101, 102.
   Or Biol 130.
2. Complete the following:
   Zool 204.
3. Select 6 hours from the following:
   Zool 261, 312, 317, 330, 331, 344, 350, 351, 361, 371, 372, 373, 380, 402, 407, 410, 418, 443, 445, 446, 447, 457, 484, 493.

*Hours include courses that may fulfill GE or university requirements.

Zoology

Undergraduate Courses

Biology Courses (Biol)

See Biology Department for descriptions.

†100. Principles of Biology. (3:3:0)

†101. Principles of Biology Laboratory. (1:0:2)

†130. Introduction to Biology. (4:5:0)

†150. Environmental Biology. (3:3:0)

†398R. Biology Teaching Seminar. (1–2:0:0 ea.)

Zoology Courses (Zool)

101. Biological Diversity. (2:2:0) F, W, Sp
Introduction to all biological kingdoms; diversity of successful life strategies; historical and research importance of selected representatives of viruses, bacteria, protists, fungi, plants, and animals.

102. The Science of Biology. (2:2:0) F, W, Su
Nature, tools, and results of experimental inquiry; practice in logic, quantitative reasoning, and data analysis; case histories of seminal discoveries.

134. Appreciation of Nature. (3:2:2) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: basic biology course.
Identifying common plants and animals; techniques for teaching natural history.

139. Freshman Premedical Seminar. (0.5:0.5:0) F, W
Introduces freshman students to BYU premedical program.

204. Vertebrate and Invertebrate Strategies. (4:3:3) F, W, Su Prerequisite: Biol 130 or Zool 101 or instructor's consent.
Comparative organization and evolutionary significance of adaptive morphological, physiological, behavioral, reproductive, and ecological differences in vertebrates and invertebrates.

205. Human Biology. (3:3:0) F, W
Metabolism, physiology of nervous system, endocrinology, reproduction, embryology, and genetics. For nonbiology majors.

221. History of Medicine. (2:2:0) F Prerequisite: Zool 139.
Growth of medicine and its role in society, the art of medicine, intellectual and ethical legacy of earlier practitioners.

227. Preview into Optometry. (1:Arr.:0) F, W For sophomores and juniors.
Advantages and disadvantages of the optometric profession. Applying to and preparing for optometry school. For sophomores and juniors. Not acceptable for zoology major credit.

229. Preview into Dentistry. (1:Arr.:0) F, W For freshmen and sophomores.
Advantages and disadvantages of the dental profession. Application to and preparation for dental school. Not acceptable for zoology major credit.

260. Elementary Human Anatomy. (3:2:2) F, W, Su Honors also.
Primarily for students of physical education, physical therapy, and nursing. Not acceptable for zoology major credit except for Human Biology emphasis.

261. Elementary Human Physiology. (4:3:2) F, W, Sp Honors also. Prerequisite: Chem 101 or equivalent. Recommended: one biology course. This course not equivalent to Zool 460.
Normal functions and integrations of major body organ systems. Not acceptable for zoology major credit.

276. Human Heredity and Reproduction. (3:3:0) F, W, Alt. term Prerequisite: any biology course or instructor's consent.
Principles of inheritance and reproduction for nonscience majors and biological education majors.

312. Introduction to Marine Biology. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Zool 204.
Marine life, the sea as an environment, and research methods.

317. (Zool-Micro) Medical Parasitology. (3:2:3) F Prerequisite: Biol 100 or equivalent.
Pathogenesis, diagnosis, and epidemiology of parasitic diseases of humans.

318. Veterinary Parasitology. (3:2:3) W odd yr.
Diagnosis, pathogenesis, and epidemiology of parasitic diseases of domestic animals.

329. Dental School Preparation. (2:1:1) F, W Prerequisite: Zool 229.
Practical experience in the areas of dental anatomy, terminology, carving teeth, and dental operatory techniques. Not acceptable for zoology major credit.

330. Field Entomology. (2:0:Arr.) Su even yr.
Training in field observation of insect habits and behavior in collecting, preparing, and preserving insects.

331. Introductory Entomology. (3:2:3) F, Su Prerequisite: Biol 100 or equivalent.
Structure, classification, and biology of insects and selected arthropod relatives.

338M. Bioethics. (2:1:2) F, W Prerequisite: introductory biology course.
Lectures and small groups, in-depth discussion of a variety of bioethical issues. LDS Church positions emphasized when appropriate.

339. Preview into Medicine. (2:2:0) F, W For sophomore, junior, and transfer students.
Medical education (admission procedures, curriculum), medical specialties in practice, ethics, legal and governmental concerns, health care delivery systems, and related professions. Not acceptable for zoology major credit.

344. Natural History of the Vertebrates. (3:2:2) F, Sp Prerequisite: Zool 204.
Intensive study of selected vertebrate species stressing natural history and systematics. Designed to accommodate needs of biology teaching majors.

350. (Zool-Botny) Ecology. (3:3:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Zool 204 or Botny 105 or 210; Math 110.
Principles and theory of plant and animal ecology. Analyzing distribution and abundance of life on earth.

351. (Zool-Botny) Ecology Laboratory. (1:0:3) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Botny-Zool 350 or concurrent registration.
Introduction to major ecological concepts through field or laboratory exercises, emphasizing appropriate methods for measuring variation under field conditions. Field trips and one major paper required.

360. Dissection Techniques in Human Anatomy. (2:1:3) W Prerequisite: Zool 260.
Techniques of human cadaveric dissection. In-depth study of anatomical structure and anatomically significant facts; regional rather than systemic emphasis.

361. Pathophysiology. (4:4:0) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Chem 281 or 351 or concurrent registration in either; Zool 261 or 460.
Variations in physiological mechanisms that account for development of common disturbances of normal control and activities of organs and organ systems of the body.

363. Comparative Vertebrate Anatomy. (4:3:3) W Prerequisite: Zool 204.
Basic phylogenetic principles, classification, paleontology, and evolutionary history of vertebrates; anatomy, functional morphology, and adaptations of vertebrates.

371. Molecular Biology. (2:2:1) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Biol 130 or Zool 101, 102; Chem 152, 351, or concurrent registration; Math 110.
Biochemistry of proteins and nucleic acids.

372. Genetics. (2:2:1) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Zool 371.
General genetics integrated with molecular biology.

373. Cellular Biology. (3:3:1) F, W, Su Prerequisite: Zool 372; Chem 281 or 352.
Function of subcellular structures; physiological and developmental regulation of genes.

374. Genetics and Cellular Biology Laboratory. (1:0:3) F, W, Alt. term Prerequisite: Zool 372 or concurrent registration.

380. Histology. (4:3:3) F, W, Su Prerequisite: Biol 130 or Zool 101.
Cellular and tissue structure of animals.

399R. Cooperative Education: Zoology Internship. (1–9:0:0 ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: department cooperative education coordinator's consent.
On-the-job experience with government, industry, etc.

402. Advanced Invertebrate Zoology. (5:4:2) F even yr. Prerequisite: Zool 204.
Functional morphology, cladistics, ecology, behavior and interrelationships of invertebrates.

407. (Zool-Botny) Principles of Conservation Biology and Ecology. (3:3:0) F Prerequisite: Biol 130, Zool 204; Botny-Zool 350 or Range 354.
Scientific principles of conservation, applications of population genetic, phylogenetic and ecological theory to preservation of biological diversity; developing sustainable ecological systems compatible with human resource use.

410. Freshwater Biology. (3:2:3) F odd yr. Prerequisite: Zool 204, 350.
Biology, systematics, ecology, and distribution of freshwater organisms. Field trips required.

414. Marine Ecology. (3:2:3) Sp Prerequisite: Zool 312 and instructor's consent.
Principles of marine ecology of planktonic, sublittoral, rocky shore, sandy shore, and mudflat communities. Extensive field trips.

416. Development of Marine Animals. (2:0:6) Sp Prerequisite: Zool 312 and instructor's consent.
Techniques of culturing, studying, and reporting on the development of eggs, embryos, and larvae of marine animals.

418. Aquaculture. (3:2:2)W even yr.
Programs and methods for the culturing of economic freshwater and marine animals.

429. Clinical Observation for Predental Students. (2:1:3) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Zool 329.
Experience in local dental offices for junior and senior predental students. Not acceptable for zoology major credit.

439. Clinical Observation for Premedical Students. (2:1:3) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Zool 339; junior or senior standing and instructor's consent.
Observing with practicing physician and in hospitals. Not acceptable for zoology major credit.

443. Ichthyology. (3:2:3) F odd yr. Prerequisite: Zool 204.
In-depth study of fish systematics, evolution, morphology, distribution, and natural history.

445. Herpetology. (4:3:2) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Zool 204.
In-depth study of reptile and amphibian evolution, systematics, morphology, distribution, and natural history. Lab emphasizes taxonomy, classification, and distribution of western U.S. species.

446. Ornithology. (3:2:2) W Prerequisite: Zool 204.
In-depth study of avian systematics, evolution, distribution, and natural history.

447. Mammalogy. (3:2:2) W Prerequisite: Zool 204.
In-depth study of mammalian diversity, distribution, and natural history. Three-day field trip required.

449R. Undergraduate Research. (1–3:Arr.:Arr. ea.) F, W, Sp, Su Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

457. Wildlife and Fishery Management Techniques. (3:2:3) W Prerequisite: Zool 350.
Practical study of current methods used to assess and manage wildlife and fish resources.

460. Principles of Physiology. (4:4:3) F, W, Sp Prerequisite: Zool 373; Phscs 106 or 221.
General physiological principles and control of organ systems.

472. Molecular Biology Laboratory. (2:0:6) F Prerequisite: Mcbio 441 or concurrent registration.
Molecular biology of gene expression, emphasizing eukaryotic organisms.

475. (Zool-Botny) Evolutionary Science. (3:3:0) F, W, Alt. term Prerequisite: Botny 210 or Zool 204; Biol 150 or Botny-Zool 350; Zool 276, 372, or Botny 341; or instructor's consent.
Observed organic change and apparent history of life on earth. Comparing study methods, interpreting data, evaluating evidence.

484. Human Embryology. (3:3:0) Alt. sem. Prerequisite: Zool 204.
Developmental milestones of prenatal life; etiology of congenital malformations, emphasizing cellular changes and their functional consequences.

493. History and Philosophy of Biology. (3:2:1) F, W Prerequisite: zoology core courses through 475.
Development of fundamental generalizations of biology; nature of science; applications to major philosophical issues of current science.

499R. Senior Honors Thesis. (1–3:0:3 ea.)
Honors thesis. Topic to be cleared with Honors Program and Zoology Department.

500-Level Graduate Courses (available to advanced undergraduates)

503. Research Orientation. (1:1:0) F
Departmental graduate procedures; techniques used in researching zoological literature. Required first fall semester of graduate study.

510. Genetics of Natural Populations. (4:4:0) W Prerequisite: Zool 475 or equivalent.
Basic principles of population genetics applied to natural populations; drift, selection, and nonrandom mating; inferring population subdivision, migration, and gene flow.

515R. Advanced Science In-Service. (1–5:Arr.:Arr. ea.)
In-service course for science teachers. Subjects may include:
—Advanced Topics Science In-Service
—Ecology Science In-Service
—Genetics Science In-Service
—Evolution Science In-Service
—Botany Science In-Service
—Meteorology Science In-Service

526. (Zool-Botny) Cell Biology. (3:3:0) F even yr. Prerequisite: introductory course in biochemistry.
Molecular physiology and ultrastructure of cells, emphasizing eukaryotic organisms.

532. Insect Classification. (4:1:9) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Zool 331. Recommended: Zool 330.
Insect systematics emphasizing external morphology, natural history, evolution, distribution, and phylogeny. Insect collection required.

536. Comparative Toxicology. (3:2:3) W even yr. Prerequisite: general biology and an organic chemistry course.
Modes of action and biological transformations of pesticides in living animals, plants, and the environment, emphasizing techniques.

537. Aquatic Entomology. (3:2:4) F even yr. Recommended: Zool 331 or equivalent.
Morphology, classification, biology, and functional ecology of aquatic insects.

546. World Bird Families. (4:4:0) W odd yr. Prerequisite: Zool 446 or instructor's consent.
Distribution, composition, and characteristics of world bird families, using museum specimens.

547. Raptor Biology. (2–4:Arr.:0) W even yr. Prerequisite: Zool 446 or instructor's consent.
Biology and conservation of major groups of predatory birds, using museum specimens.

549R. Advanced Topics in Zoology. (1–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Subjects may include:
—Anatomical Preparations
—Histological Techniques
—Diseases of Fish
—Advanced Mammalogy
—Advanced Ornithology
—Wildlife Diseases

551. (Zool-Botny-Range) Quantitative Ecology. (3:2:3) W Prerequisite: Botny-Zool 350 or equivalent; Stat 221 or 501 or concurrent registration.
Practical quantitative methods necessary for ecological data analysis.

556. Limnology. (4:3:3) F even yr. Prerequisite: Zool 350.
Biotic and physical-chemical properties of lakes and streams. Saturday field trips required.

559R. Advanced Topics in Ecology and Systematics. (1–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Subjects may include:
—Advanced Ecology
—Tropical Biology
—Evolutionary Biology
—Field Methods

561. Physiology and Drug Mechanisms. (3:2:3) F Prerequisite: Zool 460 or instructor's consent.
Function and regulation of organ systems in mammals. Relationships between normal functions and biological and physiological effects of drugs.

562. Neurophysiology. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Zool 460 or equivalent.
Structure and function of central and peripheral nervous systems.

565. Endocrinology. (3:3:0) W Prerequisite: Zool 460 or equivalent.
Study of mammalian hormones.

566. Experimental Endocrinology. (2:0:6) W Prerequisite: Zool 565. Recommended: Chem 481.
Techniques used in research.

569R. Advanced Topics in Entomology. (1–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.
Subjects may include:
—Insect Taxonomy
—Insect Ecology
—Insect Physiology
—Acarology

572. Gene Regulation. (2:2:0) W even yr. Prerequisite: Zool 373.
Molecular basis of gene regulation in eukaryotic cells. Emphasis on transcriptional and post-transcriptional controls in nuclear and organellar genomes of animals and plants.

579R. Advanced Topics in Genetics. (1–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

585. Developmental Biology. (3:3:0) F odd yr. Prerequisite: Zool 373.
Cellular and biochemical mechanisms that achieve differentiation in the developing embryo.

589R. Advanced Topics in Physiology. (1–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.) Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

591R. Special Problems in Zoology. (1–4:Arr.:Arr. ea.) On dem. Prerequisite: instructor's consent.

Graduate Courses

For 600- and 700-level courses, see the 1998–99 BYU Graduate Catalog.

Zoology Faculty

Professors
Barnes, James R. (1969) BS, Brigham Young U., 1963; MS, PhD, Oregon State U., 1967, 1972.
Baumann, Richard W. (1975) BA, MS, PhD, U. of Utah, 1965, 1967, 1970.
Black, Hal L. (1975) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1966, 1968; PhD, U. of New Mexico, 1972.
Booth, Gary M. (1972) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1963, 1966; PhD, U. of California, Riverside, 1969.
Bradshaw, William S. (1970) BA, Harvard U., 1963; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1968.
Busath, David D. (1995) BA, MD, U. of Utah 1974, 1978.
Farmer, James L. (1969) BS, California Inst. of Technology, 1960; PhD, Brown U., 1966.
Heckmann, Richard A. (1972) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1954, 1958; PhD, Montana State U., 1970.
Heninger, Richard W., Associate Dean (1966) BS, Brigham Young U., 1957; MS, PhD, Oklahoma State U., 1959, 1961.
Jeffery, Duane E. (1969) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1962, 1963; MA, PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1966, 1972.
Rhees, Reuben Ward (1973) BS, U. of Utah, 1967; PhD, Colorado State U., 1971.
Seegmiller, Robert E. (1972) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1965, 1967; PhD, McGill U., Canada, 1970.
Shiozawa, Dennis Kenji (1978) BA, Weber State Coll., 1972; MS, Brigham Young U., 1975; PhD, U. of Minnesota, St. Paul, 1978.
Sites, Jack W., Jr. (1982) BS, MS, Austin Peay State U., 1973, 1975; PhD, Texas A&M U., 1980.
Smith, H. Duane (1969) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1966; PhD, U. of Illinois, 1969.
Tolman, Richard R. (1982) BS, MS, U. of Utah, 1963, 1964; PhD, Oregon State U., 1969.
White, Clayton M. (1970) BA, PhD, U. of Utah, 1961, 1968.
Winder, William W. (1982) BS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1971.

Associate Professors
Bell, John D. (1990) BS, Brigham Young U., 1982; PhD, U. of California, San Diego, 1987.
Braithwaite, Lee F. (1964) BS, MS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1959, 1962, 1970.
Judd, Allan M. (1991) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1973, 1978; PhD, West Virginia U., 1982.
Maurer, Brian A. (1986) BS, Brigham Young U., 1977; MS, West Virginia U., 1980; MS, PhD, U. of Arizona, 1982, 1984.
Rogers, Duke S. (1989) BS, MS, Texas A&M U., 1976, 1979; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1986.
Whitehead, Armand T. (1969) BS, Brigham Young U., 1965; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1969.

Assistant Professors
Belk, Mark C. (1992) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1987; PhD, U. of Georgia, 1992.
Bennett, Randy L. (1995) BA, Western Maryland Coll., 1985; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1993.
Crandall, Keith A. (1995) BA, Kalamazoo Coll., 1987; AM, PhD, Washington U., 1993.
Evans, R. Paul (1987) BS, Brigham Young U., 1995; PhD, Medical Coll. of Virginia, 1983.
Lephart, Edwin D. (1994) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1979, 1982; PhD, U. of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, 1989.
Whiting, Michael (1997) BS, Brigham Young U., 1990; PhD, Cornell U., 1994.

Collaborators and Adjunct Faculty
Sanford Bingham, David R. Bolick, Gordon J. Christensen, Sherman Cloward, Ted Hanks, Joseph B. Platt, Phil R. Taylor, Charles Thompson, LaVar A. Ware, D. Keith Whatcott.

Part-Time Faculty
Craig Miyagishima, Eric G. Vogel.

Emeriti
Allen, A. Lester (1954) BA, PhD, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1946, 1951.
Allman, Verl Phillips (1950) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1948, 1952.
Andersen, Ferron L. (1967) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1957, 1960; MS, U. of Illinois, 1962; PhD, Utah State U., 1963.
Chapman, Arthur O. (1959) BA, Brigham Young U. 1941; MA, U. of Kansas, 1949; PhD, U. of Nebraska, Omaha, 1953.
Frost, Herbert H. (1960) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1941, 1947; PhD, Cornell U., 1955.
Hayward, C. Lynn (1930) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1927, 1931; PhD, U. of Illinois, Chicago, 1941.
Jaussi, August W. (1962) BS, U. of Idaho, 1953; MS, Brigham Young U., 1955; PhD, Oklahoma State U., 1960.
Jorgensen, Clive D. (1960) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1954, 1957; PhD, Oregon State U., 1964.
Nicholes, Henry J. (1946) BA, Brigham Young U., 1935; PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1941.
Pritchett, Clyde L. (1967) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1962; PhD, U. of Wyoming, 1977.
Smith, Lamont W. (1970) BS, Brigham Young U., 1960; MS, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1962; PhD, West Virginia U., 1970.
Tanner, Wilmer W. (1949) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1936, 1937; PhD, U. of Kansas, 1949.
Tipton, Vernon J. (1968) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1948, 1949; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1959.
Wood, Stephen L. (1956) BS, MS, Utah State U., 1946, 1948; PhD, U. of Kansas, 1953.

Division of Continuing Education

399 HCEB, PO Box 21534, (801) 378-4146

Dean: Richard C. Eddy
Associate Dean: Kenneth W. Anderson
Associate Dean: Wayne J. Lott
Assistant to the Dean—Financial and Administrative Services: Darin R. Oviatt

The purpose of the Division of Continuing Education is to provide educational programs and university services for part-time and off-campus students. These educational opportunities also assist regular daytime students. BYU cooperates with the Continuing Education programs as sponsored by the Church Educational System and its various components. The same university standards required of regular day students apply to those enrolled through the Division of Continuing Education while they are on campus.

Organization. Because the Continuing Education programs represent both BYU and the Church Educational System, the department and center descriptions will be distinguished in the material that follows.

Requirements for Enrollment in Continuing Education Classes

Noncredit classes are open to anyone having the desire and the necessary ability.

Credit classes are open to:

1. Matriculated students.
2. Anyone twenty-three years of age or older.
3. Individuals desiring to audit courses.
4. High school students in their junior or senior year who have a 3.0 GPA (may concurrently enroll in selected workshops and seminars if authorized by the University Admissions Committee).

Students who have been suspended from Brigham Young University or any other institution of higher learning for any reason are not eligible to register in Continuing Education credit classes until such suspension is cleared.

Enrollment Limitations. Persons enrolling in credit courses offered by the Division of Continuing Education who are officially admitted to the university can take any courses offered to a maximum of 18 credit hours per semester (9 hours per term). All others, twenty-three years of age and older, who have not been formally admitted to the university are limited to a maximum of 7 credit hours per semester (4 hours during spring or summer term). Contact the Division of Continuing Education for any additional conditions of enrollment.

Student Responsibility. Acceptance in a Continuing Education course *does not* constitute acceptance by BYU or any other university on a degree-seeking basis. It is the student's responsibility to gain admission to the university of his or her choice as a degree-seeking student through the normal procedures. At BYU students may accomplish this through the Office of Admissions and Records.

Note: Students enrolled in the Division of Continuing Education would not be eligible for university employment, housing, or financial aid except for that assistance available to part-time students through the Division of Continuing Education.

Departments and Programs

Evening Classes

Ralph V. Larson, Director (105 HCEB, PO Box 21513, [801] 378-2872)

The Department of Evening Classes' major responsibility is to provide college-level educational opportunities for adults age twenty-three and older. In addition, the department is a service for daytime students who experience scheduling difficulties or prefer the evening sections. Classes contributing to baccalaureate and graduate degrees are offered.

A schedule of courses is published each semester and is available on request at the Evening Classes Office (120 HCEB). Evening classes are also listed in the daytime class schedule as sections 400 and above.

Independent Study

R. Dwight Laws, Director (206 HCEB, PO Box 21514, [801] 378-2868)

Independent Study is the university's "portable program" that can bring BYU to students anytime, anywhere. Through Independent Study, BYU offers nearly 350 college-level credit courses, providing a practical and flexible solution for university students with scheduling problems and for working students, armed forces personnel, teachers, and others who cannot take all their classes in residence.

Up to 36 semester hours of work completed through Independent Study can be used toward a bachelor's degree from BYU, and courses are also available for teacher recertification. Individual high school–level courses, a full high school diploma program, and noncredit courses for personal development and enrichment are also available.

Students may register for an Independent Study course at any time during the year. Formal admission to BYU is not required. Catalogs are available without charge and list all the courses available, current fees, and enrollment policies and procedures. Students are given one year to complete a course, although most do so in less time.

Conferences and Workshops

Steven W. Taggart, Director (109 HCEB, PO Box 21516, [801] 378-3559)

The Department of Conferences and Workshops offers a variety of programs each year (approximately 500) in the BYU Conference Center, other campus facilities, or off-campus locations. These programs are sponsored by the university's colleges, as well as by campus departments and LDS Church

organizations. Credit and noncredit programs include classes, conferences, workshops, training sessions, enrichment experiences, seminars, sports and dance camps, available to professionals, college students, faculty, staff, adults, and youth.

BYU Conference Center

Spencer E. Hansen, Manager (2255 CONF, PO Box 21522, [801] 378-7700)

The BYU Conference Center is located east of the Marriott Center and adjacent to the Harman Continuing Education Building. The primary host facility for conference guests on campus, it is especially equipped to provide a favorable learning environment for guests participating in conferences, workshops, institutes, training seminars, and other educational programs. The programs may be sponsored by a university unit or cosponsored with an off-campus professional, government, corporate, civic, recreational, religious, or community organization. The center is not available for entrepreneurial programs.

Those interested in scheduling programs in the center are invited to contact the BYU Conference Center.

Travel Study

George J. Talbot, Director (303 HCEB, PO Box 21525, [801] 378-3946)

Students who wish to enhance their education with experience abroad will want to take advantage of Travel Study programs. Utilizing modern transportation and communication, participants find the world literally at their doorsteps. Horizons are expanded, knowledge is increased, and the mind is challenged as participants study and travel with professional university educators. On-site experience with the cultures and people of other lands truly makes the world BYU's campus. BYU Travel Study programs effectively combine academic, spiritual, and intercultural goals in a unique way.

Educational Travel

A variety of programs visiting the following areas of the world offers optional university credit (1–3 hours):

Europe
Scandinavia
The Middle East, emphasizing Bible lands and Egypt
Asia
Australia, New Zealand
Latin America (Mexico, Central America, South America)
USA (Church history, American heritage, Alaska)
Canada
Africa (Kenya and South Africa)
Russia
Nauvoo Semester

CES Continuing Education Programs—North and Northern Utah

Frank Santiago, Director (209 HCEB, PO Box 21533, [801] 378-6216)

This department provides Church Continuing Education programs for the northwestern and eastern United States, northern Utah, and Canada. Primary programs include Know Your Religion, Scripture Symposia, Best of Especially for Youth, and other religious education. The department also administers all adult religion classes in the United States and Canada.

CES Continuing Education Programs—South

R. Neil Carlile, Director (278 HCEB, PO Box 21507, [801] 378-2087)

Church Continuing Education—South provides approximately 600 Church Continuing Education programs in 140 locations throughout the eight-state geographical region of California, Nevada, central/southern Utah, Arizona, New Mexico, Texas, Oklahoma, and western Arkansas. The primary programs offered are Best of Especially for Youth, the Know Your Religion lecture series, and Scripture Symposia.

In addition, CES—South sponsors the Campus Education Week that has been held at BYU—Provo since 1922. This one-week program serves more than 30,000 students who come to campus from each of the United States and many other countries.

CES Continuing Education Youth and Family Programs

Susan V. Overstreet, Director (164 HCEB, PO Box 21504, [801] 378-3817)

Especially for Youth, Academy for Girls, youth conferences, programs for the deaf, and other enrichment programs are offered to youth and adults by CES Youth and Family Programs, both on the BYU campus and at localities nationwide. More than 40,000 participants are served, coming from virtually every state and province in the United States and Canada and from several foreign countries.

Centers for Continuing Education

Sensing the obligation of the Church university to provide educational opportunities in harmony with LDS standards for persons living away from Provo, the BYU Board of Trustees has established Continuing Education centers to offer educational programs to people in outlying areas. See the Graduation Requirements section of this catalog for residence requirements. Continuing Education centers represent both BYU and the Church Educational System in their program offerings.

BYU-Ricks Center for Continuing Education

Ronald W. Campbell, Director
Ricks College
Rexburg, ID 83460-8011
Telephone (208) 356-1040
and
1776 Science Center Drive
University Place
Idaho Falls, ID 83405
Telephone (208) 523-4682

This center provides off-campus BYU credit classes throughout Idaho, cooperating with Ricks College in other adult and Continuing Education programs.

BYU-Salt Lake Center for Continuing Education

3760 South Highland Drive. Suite 200
Salt Lake City, UT 84106
Telephone (801) 273-3434

As the continuing education arm of the university in the Salt Lake valley, the BYU Salt Lake Center offers courses through most colleges and departments of the university. Most classes are held at night, making it possible for full-time and part-time students to take many of their required courses as well as general education and elective courses in Salt Lake City.

Students admitted to the university as concurrent enrolling high school seniors can also take classes at the BYU Salt Lake Center.

The executive MPA (Master of Public Administration) program is offered at the Center, allowing students to pursue a master's degree by attending classes one night each week while continuing to work during the day.

Professional development courses, certification programs in family history and in dietary management, and personal enrichment courses are also offered at the BYU Salt Lake Center.

Degrees by Independent Study

Ralph A. Rowley, Director (305 HCEB, PO Box 21514, [801] 378-4351)

The Degrees by Independent Study admissions requirements, curriculum, and areas of study are currently being reorganized. The latest information can be obtained by writing to the director at the above address.

Admission to Degree Program

Admission to the bachelor's degree program is by completion of the admissions procedure through Degrees by Independent Study. The application fee is $20.

The Discipline

The bachelor of independent studies degree involves study in a broad range of courses under the direction of university faculty and advisors. It is designed especially for the adult student (twenty-one years of age and older) who:

1. Has not been able to complete a regular university degree, and who wants to do so.
2. Has varied interests, a thirst for knowledge, and a desire to complete an extensive general education degree.
3. Is a self-starter, has an inquiring mind, and is motivated to learn in a home study environment.
4. Has a wide range of interests and enjoys reading on an organized, continuing basis.

Career Opportunities

This degree does not lead to specific career opportunities.

Undergraduate Programs and Degrees

BIS Bachelor of Independent Studies

General Information

Transfer Credits and Waivers. Students who have previously earned college credit may apply for transfer of these credits into the program.

When previous college credits fully satisfy a required area of study, both the area of study and its corresponding seminar may be considered completed.

Seminars. The Foundations seminar is held in June and January; remaining seminars are held during the summer.

Area of Study. On enrollment in an area of study, students will be given a complete study guide outlining that part of the program. There are introductory and basic readings in the beginning. Experienced students may not need to dwell on these, but each student will be expected to acquire certain basic knowledge found in the assignments for a given area. Normally, students will write to, talk with, or send a cassette tape to the instructor at least once each month during the period of independent study in a given area. The instructor is the key person who counsels in these assignments.

Obtain information and degree application materials by contacting Degrees by Independent Study.

BIS Independent Studies (128 hours)
Requirements for graduation with the BIS degree include completion of three major phases of study: (1) Preparation Phase, (2) Growth Phase, and (3) Closure Phase. These phases are broken down into study areas as follows:

Preparation Phase

Foundations	*Credit hours*
How to think	4
How to communicate	4
Seminar	2

Growth Phase

Religion and Philosophy	
Scriptures, Church history, philosophy, world religions, learning adventures	24
Seminar	3
Social Sciences	
Personality, social order, family, utopias, economics, political science, race relations, history	24
Seminar	3
Arts and Humanities	
Literary, theatre, visual, and auditory arts	24
Seminar	3
Biological and Physical Sciences	
Physics, astronomy, mathematics, chemistry, geology, botany, biology, zoology	24
Seminar	3

Closure Phase

Project	7
Seminar	3
Total hours	128

Degrees by Independent Study (DIS)

Undergraduate Courses

211. How to Think. (4:4:0)
Companion course to DIS 212. Assessment as a thinker, with emphasis on logical development of ideas.

212. How to Communicate. (4:4:0)
Companion course to DIS 211. Assessment as a communicator, with emphasis on written and oral communications.

220. Seminar. (2:2:0)
Two-week, full-time, on-campus, midcourse experience with other students and faculty advisors improving skills used in college-level work.

251. Scriptures. (1–10:10:0)
Four standard works of the LDS Church.

252. Church History. (2:2:0)
Events and processes in LDS Church history that influence lives today.

253. Philosophy. (3:3:0)
Selected philosophical positions and questions.

254. World Religions. (3:3:0)
Selected world religions, their influences and contributions.

255. Learning Adventures. (6:6:0)
Scriptures, Church history, philosophy, and world religion studies focused on solving everyday problems.

260. Seminar. (3:3:0)
Two-week, full-time, on-campus experience with other students and faculty advisors integrating all religion and philosophy courses.

321. Personality. (3:3:0)
Man's behavior relative to personality development and acquiring and modifying beliefs and values.

322. History. (3:3:0)
Selected themes in the history of Western civilization.

323. Family. (3:3:0)
Kinship, marriage, and family behavior in various cross-cultural perspectives.

324. Social Order. (3:3:0)
Groups and social systems that influence lives.

325. Politics. (3:3:0)
Social-psychological foundations of political behavior, basic processes, and institutions.

326. Economics. (3:3:0)
Relationship between the individual and the modern economic environment.

327. Utopia. (3:3:0)
"Possible societies" or utopias, analyzing both problems and solutions.

328. Race Relations. (3:3:0)
Carefully designed social study of race relations.

330. Seminar. (3:3:0)
Two-week, full-time, on-campus experience with other students and faculty advisors investigating the social sciences.

341. Literary Arts. (6:6:0)
Language, literary forms, times, and traditions, and the values by which literary artistry is assessed.

342. Theatre Arts. (6:6:0)
Visual, auditory, emotional, and spiritual dimensions involved in theatre, motion picture, television, and dance.

343. Visual Arts. (6:6:0)
Developing objective standards for evaluating both traditional and environmental arts.

344. Auditory Arts. (6:6:0)
Increasing involvement with and pleasure in music; increasing perception.

350. Seminar. (3:3:0)
Two-week, full-time, on-campus experience with other students and faculty advisors enhancing appreciation of the arts.

361. Mathematics. (2:2:0)
Significant mathematical ideas, themes, and principles; examining their influences.

362. Physics. (4:4:0)
Physics involving history, reasoning processes, social attitudes, and scientific views.

363. Chemistry. (4:4:0)
Selected discoveries and ideas in chemistry, emphasizing philosophy of this science.

364. Geology. (4:4:0)
Uniformitarianism, geological times, and history and physical composition of our planet.

365. Botany. (2:2:0)
Plants, life and energy, and man's impact on environment.

366. Zoology. (2:2:0)
Environmental stewardship and the science of animal life, including theories of organic development.

367. Biology. (4:4:0)
Critical concepts of biology, with examples of their relevance to modern life and society.

368. Astronomy. (2:2:0)
Broad study of geometry and motions of the earth, moon, sun, planets, and stars in space.

370. Seminar. (3:3:0)
Two-week, full-time, on-campus experience with other students and faculty advisors focusing on biological and physical sciences.

480. Closure Project. (7:7:0)
Using skills and knowledge acquired in various DIS courses to create through research and study an academic project and report.

490. Closure Seminar. (3:3:0)
One-week on-campus experience presenting closure project to classmates before participating in university commencement.

Degrees by Independent Study Faculty

Professors
Bowen (Church History and Doctrine)
Chadwick (Sociology)
Durham (Music)
Griffen (Geology)
Harrison (Physics)
Johnson (Sociology)
Packard (Philosophy)
Palmer (Astronomy)
Paulsen (Philosophy)
Pixton (History)
Wimmer (Economics)

Associate Professors
Anderson (Church History and Doctrine)
Buckwalter (Political Science)
Choi (World Religions)
Hunsaker (English)
Reeve (Ancient Scripture)
Nielson (Psychology)
Scanlon (Theatre and Media Arts)
St. Clair (Botany and Range Science)
Tippetts (Art)
Tolman (Mathematics)

Assistant Professors
Norton (English)
Wood (Chemistry)

Professional Professor
Furniss (Biology/Botany)

Services Available on Campus

Academic Support Office

(2500 ELWC, PO Box 25548, [801] 378-2723; e-mail: academic_support@byu.edu.)

The primary purpose of the Academic Support Office is to promote academic success and assist those experiencing difficulty. Various programs involving faculty cooperation, policy development, student contact and counseling, research, and remedial or preventive activities are administered and developed by this office.

Students with deficient academic standing are notified after each semester or term of attendance. This notification and the follow-up contact program are positive in nature and are oriented toward aiding students to increase their academic effectiveness and eventually to attain their educational goals.

Specialized counseling and referral services are provided by personnel in the Academic Support Office. Faculty members may request information about the academic status of a student as well as materials to improve study skills. Teachers are also encouraged to refer students who show academic deficiencies to the Academic Support Office for help.

See the Academic Standards section of this catalog for details of BYU's academic standards.

Alumni Association

Background

The Alumni Association was organized in 1893 to promote the general welfare of Brigham Young University. Today it serves more than 300,000 alumni and provides several valuable services and programs for students still at the university.

Membership Prerequisites

All graduates and former students with 24+ credits are eligible for membership in the Alumni Association. There are no dues or membership drives; the association conducts solicitation for contribution to the BYU Senior Pledge Fund and special projects.

Services to Students

Services to students on the campus include a college-related student/alumni council, BYU Alumni Association Replenishment Grants (for students), meeting facilities in the Alumni House, the annual commencement banquets, the commencement checklist for graduates, and operation of the Student Alumni Association.

Services to Alumni

Services to alumni include many on-campus programs during Homecoming and commencement and other times of the year; alumni receptions held throughout the world; alumni travel programs with or without credit; the *Brigham Young Magazine*; the *BYU Alumni Newspaper*; the Aspen Grove Family Camp, located behind Mt. Timpanogos; low-cost term life and health insurance programs; a BYU-oriented merchandising program; access to bookstore, library, and physical education facilities; and career counseling and job placement assistance.

Information

Obtain further information on these programs and any others by contacting the Alumni Association (Alumni House, [801] 378-4663 or 1-800-437-4663).

Bookstore

The BYU Bookstore offers a variety of academic and convenience merchandise for sale at competitive prices. This merchandise includes: textbooks, school supplies, general books, computer hardware and software, cards and gift items, candy and snacks, men and women's clothing and accessories, photo supplies, sports apparel and BYU specialty sportswear, and engineering and art goods.

The Bookstore offers such services as check cashing, money orders, travelers checks, UTA monthly bus passes, special orders for books and merchandise, gift wrapping, packaging/shipping and mailing services, photo processing, and rentals.

The Bookstore is open Monday through Friday from 7:50 a.m. to 6:00 p.m. and Saturday from 10:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m. The Twilight Zone annex is open Monday through Friday from 7:30 a.m. to 9:30 p.m. and Saturdays from 9:30 a.m. to 6:00 p.m. For further information call (801) 378-2400.

Campus Life

Services for Students with Disabilities

(1520 ELWC, PO Box 27920, [801] 378-2767)

The purpose of this office is to assure that students with disabilities are provided access to university programs. A variety of services and extensive information are available.

Mobility impaired students are encouraged to seek help in ensuring the accessibility of classes and other facilities. Hearing impaired students may obtain the services of qualified sign language interpreters and TDD communications by contacting this office. A list of volunteer readers is maintained for visually impaired or learning-disabled students. Library lockers, study rooms, VisualTeks, taped textbooks, braille writers, and an adapted computer with enlarged characters and speech synthesis are also available.

Services for students with learning disabilities include educational assessment, learning advisement, and, as needed, classroom or curriculum accommodations. Services to students with Attention Deficit Disorder or qualifying psychiatric disabilities are provided that may include reasonable academic accommodations. In addition, help is offered in determining appropriate class loads and preparing for a career.

Women's Services and Resources

(1520 ELWC, PO Box 27919, [801] 378-4877)

Women's Services and Resources is a comprehensive support and referral source for all women on the BYU campus. Individual help in utilizing needed services and programs sponsored by the WSR, campus departments, and community agencies is furnished. Specific information and support is provided for nontraditional students.

Campus Visits

Students desiring to visit campus are encouraged to schedule a tour through the Office of School Relations—Campus Visits (Visitors Center [VCTR], PO Box 23201, [801] 378-4431). Daily tours are available at 9:00 a.m., 10:30 a.m., noon, 1:30 p.m., and 3:00 p.m. Tours are tailored to the individual student's needs, and appointments with advisement centers can be arranged as requested. Please schedule tours at least one week prior to your campus visit.

Comprehensive Clinic

M. Gawain Wells, Director (244 TLRB, PO Box 28604, [801] 378-7759/[801] 378-7758)

The Comprehensive Clinic is a training and research center that houses several of the clinical training programs of the university. These include clinical psychology, marriage and family therapy, social work, audiology and speech-language pathology, LDS Social Services, and the research and staff development arm of LDS Social Services. Services of the Comprehensive Clinic are available to community people and BYU staff, faculty, couples, and families. These services include:

1. Counseling for depression, anxiety, low self-esteem, strong fears, marital discord, divorce adjustment, child behavior and family problems, premarital concerns, sexual dysfunction, adoption, foster care, and unwed mothers.
2. Speech disorders and voice disorders.
3. Evaluation of hearing loss, adequacy of hearing aids, learning disabilities, and physical health status.

Depending on the services provided, fees may be charged. Family size and income, university affiliation, equipment utilized, and other factors are considered in the fees, which range from no charge to full professional fees.

Computer Support

University Computing Services

Kelly C. McDonald, Executive Director (167 TMCB, PO Box 26540, [801] 378-5025)

University Computing Services provides extensive computing, and communications facilities to faculty, staff, and students. In addition to equipment, experienced personnel and a library of computer programs are available to help with particular problems or training.

CougarNet

Shawn Hansen, Manager (156 TMCB, [801] 378-3699)

CougarNet provides networked computer services for the campus community. These services include student e-mail and Route Y support, off-campus Internet dial-up accounts, and on-campus Ethernet connections. CougarNet also offers data recovery, file conversion, and anti-virus services. Students and employees typically purchase their personal Internet access through this office, although some departments provide similar help to their students at low or no cost.

Instructional Applications Services

Monte F. Shelley, Director (192 TMCB, PO Box 26553, [801] 378-5026)

Student and teacher evaluation services, computer lab services, and consultation regarding computer-based curriculum materials are all offered by Instructional Applications Services.

Computers

Students who are considering the purchase of a personal computer should note the following information:

BYU offers a significant savings on the purchase of various computer hardware and software products. These educational discounts are available to registered students, faculty, and staff. (Some vendors do require full-time status.)

For specific information please contact the Bookstore ([801] 378-3740).

Counseling and Career Center

Ronald K. Chapman, Director (2514 ELWC, PO Box 27906, [801] 378-4007; fax [801] 378-5921; e-mail: counseling_career@byu.edu.)

The Counseling and Career Center, a department of Student Life, supports Brigham Young University's mission to help students realize their full potential. It is recognized that reaching such potential involves growth and development in emotional, spiritual, social, and physical areas as well as in the intellectual area. As students experience the challenge of a university education, they often encounter problems in one or more of these areas that can be disruptive to their happiness and progress in school. The professionally trained staff at the Counseling and Career Center offers students a variety of services to help solve such problems when they occur.

Academic Support

(2500 ELWC, PO Box 27906, [801] 378-2723; e-mail: academic_support@byu.edu.)

Academic counseling is available for students who are experiencing difficulty with their studies. This counseling includes help in working through and overcoming obstacles to successful academic performance. Information about the university's academic standards, a student's academic standing, or help with learning problems is available at this office as well. (See also Academic Standards in the Policies and Procedures section of this catalog.)

Career and Learning Information Center

(2590 ELWC, PO Box 27906, [801] 378-2689)

Printed, audiovisual, and computer- generated information about career options and learning skills are available in the Career and Learning Information Center (CLIC). These materials provide useful information for making educational and career decisions and for acquiring skills needed in the academic setting.

Career Placement Services

(2410 ELWC, PO Box 27905, [801] 378-3000; fax [801] 378-3444)

Career Placement Services can best assist BYU students with their job search when they register during the fall semester of the academic year in which they plan to graduate.

Students who register gain access to many valuable services, including individual and group counseling, on-campus student interviews with employer representatives, and information about specific job opportunities submitted by employers from business, industry, education, and government. Career Placement Services also maintains a complete collection of books, articles, magazines, brochures, and videotapes relating to employing organizations. Materials and workshops are available on such matters as how to write letters of application, prepare resumés, and conduct oneself in personal interviews.

To maximize the number of employment contacts available to graduating students, Career Placement Services works in close cooperation with personnel in each academic department. Ongoing communication is also maintained with the college advisement centers.

Career Placement Services also offers services to alumni needing career assistance.

Open Major Advisement

(2500 ELWC, PO Box 27906, [801] 378-3826; e-mail: openmajor@byu.edu.)

The Open Major Advisement Center at BYU serves (1) the students who have not yet decided on their academic major and (2) those students whose interests and abilities do not match the major they have already chosen. The services of Open Major Advisement include help in selecting classes, meeting general education requirements, and deciding upon majors. **All students who are undecided about a major,** whether coded *open major* or not, are welcome to use the many services and resources available to help them make an informed decision about a career or major. Students who have already chosen a major but who are not finding it to be a good match with their abilities and interests are also encouraged to work with Open Major Advisement.

Personal and Career Counseling Services

(1500 ELWC, PO Box 27906, [801] 378-3035; e-mail: counseling@byu.edu.)

Full-time day students can receive assistance in learning to cope with personal problems that interfere with their education and with career decision making. Counseling is provided by professional counselors who operate within established limits of confidentiality. Without written permission from the student, personal information is not released to any third party.

Individual and group counseling services are oriented toward short-term intervention and helping students develop self-reliance. Stress management, including biofeedbank training, is also offered as part of the counseling services.

Career services are available to help students explore the career process, including information and counseling about academic majors, occupational interests, and transitions to the world of work. Interest inventories, information banks, computer networking, workshops, and student development courses are available to assist students in making decisions about career offerings.

Testing Services

(2548 ELWC, PO Box 27906, [801] 378-2688)

Tests and inventories are available to help students acquire personal information about career interests, learning styles, emotional adjustment, and personality. Most of the tests and inventories require a referral from a counselor, advisor, or class instructor to ensure an appropriate interpretation and availability of resources. Modest fees are charged for most tests.

Workshops

(2590 ELWC, PO Box 27906, [801] 378-2689)

A variety of workshops are offered each semester to help students improve their academic, social, and interpersonal skills. Topics such as test taking, note taking, time management, stress management, choosing a major, self-awareness, and assertiveness are addressed. Printed self-help materials used in the workshops are available.

Dining Services

Samuel Brooks, Director (180 SASB, PO Box 21840, [801] 378-4935; dining@byu.edu; www.byu.edu/stlife/sas/ds/)

BYU Dining Services is nationally recognized as a leader in collegiate food service programs, serving an average of 30,000 meals daily. Options range from full-service dining to grab-and-go meals. The **Skyroom Restaurant,** on the sixth floor of the ELWC, offers full-service dining weekdays for lunch and a Friday evening buffet. The **Cougareat Food Court,** on the main level of the ELWC, includes choices such as Taco Bell Express, Pizza Hut, and Subway in addition to grill items, salad and soup, Asian and Italian selections, grab-and-go, pastries and sweets, and traditional meat and potatoes. The **Museum Cafe,** in the Museum of Art, features specialty sandwiches, soups, desserts, and beverages. The **Morris Center** and **Cannon Center** cafeterias are located at Deseret Towers and Helaman Halls, respectively, and provide students and guests alike buffet-style all-you-care-to-eat selections for every meal. Menus and hours for each area are posted on the Web. The **Creamery,** a dairy outlet and convenience store, and **Take-Out Food to Go,** a carry-out service for all food products produced at BYU, are located at the northeast corner of campus. **Easy Pickin's** offers a lunch-time, on-campus delivery service. **Catering** can provide refreshments for a small group or a complete meal for thousands.

The Signature Card is welcomed in most Dining Services locations.

Equal Opportunity Office

Delora P. Bertelsen, Manager (A-289 ASB, PO Box 21220, [801] 378-6878)

Brigham Young University does not allow unlawful discrimination based on race, color, national origin, religion, sex, age, veteran status, or disability in the academic or employment setting. This includes unlawful sexual harassment, which is a violation of university standards as well as state and federal laws and may be considered grounds for discipline. Persons who believe they have been unlawfully discriminated against or unlawfully sexually harassed should contact the Equal Opportunity Office.

ID Center

Nancy Carson (2310 ELWC, PO Box 27908, [801] 378-5092)

The ID Center makes available to every BYU student a photo identification card with magnetic stripe. During the first week or two of each semester or term, the photo ID cards are produced and distributed to students in 394–396 ELWC. Distribution hours are advertised before and during distribution. After that, the cards are distributed at the ID Center (2310 ELWC). In order to receive a card, students *must* be registered for classes. Dress and grooming standards as outlined by the university must be observed. Services are available Monday through Friday from 8:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m. during fall and winter semesters and from 9:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. during spring and summer terms.

Multicultural Student Services

(1320 ELWC, PO Box 27918, [801] 378-3065)

Vernon Heperi, Director
Ken Sekaquaptewa, Assistant Director

Multicultural Student Services is a unique team of multicultural specialists who value the total development of the multicultural student within the aims of a BYU education. The staff seeks to

develop a BYU environment of "fellow citizenry" where multiculturalism can flourish: "Ye are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellowcitizens" (Eph. 2:19).

Office Management

Vernon Heperi, Director
Alicia Long, Office Manager

Multicultural Counseling

Ken Sekaquaptewa, Assistant Director and Multicultural Counseling Coordinator
LaVay Talk, Multicultural Counselor

Multicultural Student Services is an available support system that helps multicultural students to be successful by the university's standards. Counselors take advantage of every opportunity to assist the students and help them discover services on campus that will further their academic and spiritual success.

Off-Campus Education

Liana Brown, Coordinator
Mili McQuivey, Financial Aid Counselor

We have a unique ability and expectation to create a solid, quality, recruiting process that selects choice multicultural students who are prepared socially, academically, and spiritually for a BYU experience. Programs and scholarships are available to ensure that every need is met before their college career begins and while it is in progress.

On-Campus Education

Richelle Andersen, Coordinator
James Slaughter, Multicultural Programming Counselor

Because multicultural diversity contributes positively to the development of students, staff, faculty, and the community, students are valued for what they bring culturally to campus. Special programs are designed to awaken students to a sense of value and self-worth.

Publications

Lynette Simmons, Coordinator

Students report on campus interests, activities, and issues in the *Eagle's Eye*, a multicultural student magazine published twice a year. The publication has a national circulation list that includes alumni, universities, businesses, and a wide range of minority organizations.

Preprofessional Programs

Students can complete preprofessional study at BYU before professional academic training here or elsewhere. There are no majors at the university in these preprofessional areas because professional schools generally make no specification of majors. Students may major in any department but are encouraged to select majors and related preprofessional studies as outlined below.

Architecture

Jay Newitt, Advisor (230 SNLB, PO Box 28200, [801] 378-2021)

Prearchitecture students have several options, depending on the intended future architectural degree. One approach is to study only a year or two at BYU before transferring to another institution to pursue a baccalaureate degree in architecture. In these instances, students should plan their period of study at BYU to include, as nearly as possible, course work that will transfer directly into the future architecture program.

Students who plan to obtain a graduate degree or certificate in architecture elsewhere following completion of an undergraduate degree at BYU are advised to consider a baccalaureate program in art, civil engineering, construction management, or design. The choice depends on career and personal interests, academic preparation, and the requirements of the intended architectural program. Students pursing this approach should select their future program early and become familiar with all requirements, thereby avoiding potential disappointments.

Interested students should see a faculty advisor in the construction management program within the Department of Technology Education and Construction Management.

Dentistry

Don Bloxham, PhD, Advisor (380 WIDB, PO Box 25176, [801] 378-3044)

The acceptance rate of BYU applicants to dental school last year was considerably above the national average.

Both high grades and Dental Admission Test scores are helpful for admission to a good dental school. Minimum course requirements for most dental schools are: Engl 115, 316 (or 312 or 315), Math 110, Chem 105–107, 351–353, Phscs 105–108, Biol 130, and Zool 261 or 460. Zool 229, 329, and 429 are highly recommended. Consult dental school catalogs for other prerequisites (380 WIDB). Zool 229 should be taken as soon as possible.

A few dental schools will accept BYU students after three years of predental education. A BS degree in biology from BYU is still possible after completion of the first year of dental school. Most students graduate from BYU before going to dental school. Check in 380 WIDB for details.

Students should plan major requirements with the departmental advisor and predental study with the predental advisor (380 WIDB).

Law

Eileen Crane, Prelaw Advisor (2240 SFLC, PO Box 25524, [801] 378-2318)

The study of law prepares the student to work in a variety of settings. Traditional private practice, business, government, consulting, public interest/nonprofit organizations, banking, and education are just some of the many types of settings in which lawyers use their legal education

The grade point average and Law School Admissions Test score are the primary factors on which law schools base their admission decisions. Law schools require a bachelor's degree but no specified majors; the presence or absence of particular courses does not affect admission decisions.

Students should consider selecting a major field that interests them and that may provide an alternative vocation should they choose not to attend law school. Even though no particular prelaw major is best for all students, students should emphasize intellectually demanding courses in the major and in other studies. These courses ought to include the skills expected of law students and lawyers: the ability to analyze, reason, read carefully, think abstractly, and speak and write precisely. These characteristics can be developed in many intellectually stimulating courses, such as those in which one studies the English language and literature, philosophy, accounting, sciences, and engineering.

For a personalized prelaw program, please contact the Prelaw Advisement Center. The prelaw advisor is prepared to help students (1) create a study program for the LSAT, (2) teach research skills for the law school application process, (3) provide data on likelihood of acceptance, and (4) provide debt and career management training for graduate school.

Students should strongly consider signing up for StDev 198R. This course is a prelaw seminar, taught during the first block of fall and winter semesters, that provides students with information about specific areas of the law. Through speakers

and text, students preview legal issues and have the opportunity of writing law-related articles that may be selected for publication in the *Prelaw Review*.

Management

K. Fred Skousen, Dean (730 TNRB, PO Box 23113, [801] 378-4122)

Advisors:
MAcc Program Director, W. Steve Albrecht (540 TNRB, PO Box 23095, [801] 378-3154)
MBA Program Director, Gary F. McKinnon (640 TNRB, PO Box 23111, [801] 378-7641)
MISM Program Director, Owen Cherrington (510 TNRB, PO Box 23068, [801] 378-2815)
MPA Program Director, Lawrence C. Walters (760 TNRB, PO Box 23158, [801] 378-7495)
MOB Program Director, W. Gibb Dyer (790 TNRB, PO Box 23018, [801] 378-2664)

The programs in the Marriott School of Management are designed to prepare qualified students for rewarding careers in management and administration. Classes and study group activities stress the acquisition of professional managerial leadership attributes that will enable students to obtain work in public, private, and not-for-profit organizations. High ethical values and behavior are reinforced.

Applicants to the programs are carefully evaluated in four areas: (1) previous academic performance; (2) completion of a bachelor's degree (except for students applying to the master of accountancy program); (3) test scores on the Graduate Management Admission Test; and (4) work experience, extracurricular activities, leadership potential, motivation, and maturity.

Marriott School of Management programs, leading to the master of business administration, master of public administration, and master of organizational behavior degrees, actively recruit good students from many undergraduate majors. Applicants to the master of accountancy program, who are required to have previous educational background in accounting, can be admitted as early as their senior year. Interested students should contact the specific program advisor to determine any prerequisites.

Medicine

Don Bloxham, PhD, Advisor (380 WIDB, PO Box 25176, [801] 378-3044)

Students who wish to enter medical school should plan to graduate with a major that reflects interests and allows for an alternate career. Any major can serve as a premedical major. Come to 380 WIDB for help.

Courses needed to fulfill the requirements of most medical schools are: Engl 115, 316 (or 312 or 315), Math 110, 111, Chem 105–107 (or 111, 112, 226), 351–353, Phscs 105–108 (or 121, 221), Biol 130, and Zool 261 or 460. Zool 139, 339, and 439 are highly recommended.

Plan major requirements with the departmental advisor and premedical study with the premedical advisor. The acceptance rate of BYU applicants to medical school has been above the national average, but it is decreasing because the number of applicants nationwide is increasing and acceptance is becoming extremely competitive. The majority of students accepted to medical school have a GPA of 3.5 or higher in science classes.

Physical Therapy

Shane Schulthies, PhD, PT, ATC, Advisor (122 RB, PO Box 22096, [801] 378-3982)

Physical therapy graduate programs base their admissions on cumulative GPA, the Graduate Record Exam, and clinical exposure, plus a BS degree in a preprofessional course of study. Competition is arduous, and a student must maintain a 3.5 or better cumulative GPA. Students changing majors to pre–physical therapy must have a 3.5 cumulative GPA to be admitted to the program.

Basic course work should include: mathematics, two semesters; physics, two semesters; chemistry, two semesters; psychology, two semesters; and zoology, two semesters.

Veterinary Medicine

Beverly L. Roeder (386 WIDB, PO Box 25156, [801] 378-6873) and Richard N. Thwaits (357 WIDB, PO Box 25169, [801] 378-6872), Advisors

Competition for freshman class spaces in veterinary school is keen, and students should expect to achieve above a 3.5 GPA. Many successful applicants have completed the bachelor's degree. Because course requirements differ with individual veterinary schools, students should familiarize themselves with entrance requirements for the schools to which they will apply.

Course work typically includes the following: English, two semesters; mathematics, one semester; chemistry, five semesters; biology, three semesters; physics, two semesters; humanities, three semesters; social science, three semesters; and statistics, one semester. It is also important to have experience working with veterinarians and with animals.

Students are encouraged to incorporate the preveterinary curriculum into an academic program leading to a career alternative.

Dental Hygiene, Optometry, Pharmacy, Physician's Assistant, and Podiatry

Don Bloxham, PhD, Advisor (380 WIDB, PO Box 25776, [801] 378-3044)

Students who are interested in the above health professions may receive help in planning preprofessional course work and applying to the appropriate professional and graduate schools. Catalogs and other materials are available in the Health Professions Advisement Office.

Risk Management and Safety

J. Wesley Sherwood, Managing Director (TOMH, PO Box 20100, [801] 378-4468)

The department ensures proper safety programs and procedures, consults with campus personnel regarding safety concerns, and provides safety-related training. Training topics include hazardous communication (HazCom), radiation safety, driving courses (van, defensive, straight truck, CDL, and equipment), lab safety, fire safety, and CPR/first aid.

Compliance and training in federal, state, and local life safety, OSHA, and environmental regulations are also coordinated by the department, as are university insurance and workers' compensation programs for all full- and part-time employees.

The department manages the university emergency preparedness programs and coordinates with local and state emergency preparedness agencies to furnish information to all BYU personnel and students. This information includes CERT training, earthquake preparedness, building evacuation, and stake, ward, personal, and department preparedness.

Services for Single Parents

"The Resource Book for Successful Single Parent Students" is available at the Women's Services and Resources Office (1520 ELWC, PO Box 27919). Individuals interested in networking with other single parents on campus can contact the Single Parents Association through Jean Taylor Scott at (801) 378-4877.

Signature Card

(100 SASB, PO Box 21860, [801] 378-3866;
signature_card@byu.edu; www.byu.edu/stlife/sas/sc/)

The Signature Card is a debit card, utilizing the university ID card. Nearly all retail outlets on campus accept Signature Card, including Dining Services, vending machines, the Bookstore, ELWC retail operations, copy centers, designated copy machines, and ticket offices. Deposits and balance inquiries are available at most outlets.

Student Center: Ernest L. Wilkinson Center

Jerry L. Bishop, Director (3326 ELWC, PO Box 27915, [801] 378-3111)

The newly remodeled and expanded Ernest L. Wilkinson Center (ELWC) serves as the gathering place for the university, the center of college community life. The ELWC is a place where students can go to relax and participate in out-of-class activities that foster balanced growth and development. Many student services have been housed in the new addition of the Wilkinson Center for convenience and easy access to students.

First floor: The outdoor rental area, games center, post office, computer lab, copy center/multimedia area, craft and floral store, barbershop, lost and found, and the Multicultural Student Services, International Student Services, Services for Students with Disabilities, Women's Resources and Services, and personal counseling offices are all on the first floor.

Second floor: Facilities and services on the second floor now include a bookstore, movie theater, juice bar, information center, ID center, and memorial hall; ballrooms and lounges; and a new food court with Pizza Hut, Taco Bell, Subway, and other dining areas. The offices for Dining Services, Off-Campus Housing, Academic Support, and Campus Scheduling, as well as the Campus Involvement, Student Employment, Placement, Open Major Advisement, and Counseling and Career Centers are also on the second floor.

Third floor: The third floor houses offices for administrative and business support, the dean of students, those involved with student activities and Wright Leadership, as well as conference rooms and lounge areas (with student data/connection switches).

The Wilkinson Center also houses a faculty center, Honor Code offices, Honor Code Council rooms, the student newspaper publication offices, and the Skyroom restaurant.

Information Center

(Main Floor ELWC, PO Box 27915, [801] 378-4313)

The Information Center answers questions for hundreds of people each day. It has current pamphlets, directories, catalogs, class schedules, bus schedules, and other informational packets. Fall/Winter hours are Monday through Friday from 8 a.m. to 8 p.m. and Saturday from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. Spring/Summer hours are Monday through Friday from 9 a.m. to 6 p.m. and Saturday from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m.

Lost and Found

(First Floor, ELWC, PO Box 27915, [801] 378-3024)

The Lost and Found serves both those who have lost items of value and those who find them. The university strongly urges students and others to put their names and other personal information on their possessions and encourages everybody to turn found items in to the Lost and Found immediately.

Approximately 60 percent of the items turned in to Lost and Found are quickly returned to their owners. All unclaimed items are held for two months.

Hours are from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. Monday through Friday and from 9 a.m. to 1 p.m. Saturday.

BYU Student Service Association (BYUSA)

(Third Floor, ELWC, PO Box 27903, [801] 378-3901)

The mission of the BYU Student Service Association is to strengthen students in their social relationships, civic duty, and service to humankind. Through student leadership, the university community works together to achieve our goal that all who "enter to learn" will be prepared by training and experience to "go forth to serve."

Any student who wants to serve as a volunteer in community service programming or campus activities, in a campus club, on the Homecoming committee, or with programs such as Y Days is invited to become involved.

Ideas for making our university community a better place to learn and to live are also warmly accepted. Students may either come to the Involvement Office or call. There is a place for everyone in the BYU Student Service Association.

Student Employment Services

(C-40 ASB, PO Box 21004, [801] 378-3561)

To be employed on campus all students must have a U.S. social security number. Students who are ready to seek employment should also bring proof of acceptance as a full-time student to the Student Employment Services.

Undergraduates and non-degree-seeking graduates are required to carry and maintain 8.5 credit hours per semester. Graduate students are required to carry 2 credit hours and be accepted into a graduate program. Secretarial applicants must take an office skills evaluation test before applying for clerical positions on campus.

Certain governmental restrictions are placed on students from foreign countries. All international students are required to contact the International Student Office to determine their employment status the first time they work on campus.

Federal immigration regulations require everyone hired in the USA to prove work eligibility. A U.S. citizen may use a social security card, state-certified birth certificate, or U.S. passport. One of these documents, along with a current BYU identification card, will satisfy the immigration regulation. International students need a current passport with attached I-20 ID.

Finding a job depends on class schedule, skills, experience, and willingness to accept reasonable employment. Students will find it is a good idea to arrange their class schedule so that a four-hour block is free the same time each day. Some of the most common work shifts are:

4:00 a.m.–7:00 a.m.
6:00 a.m.–10:00 a.m.
8:00 a.m.–Noon
10:00 a.m.–2:00 p.m.
11:00 a.m.–3:00 p.m.
Noon–4:00 p.m.
1:00 p.m.–5:00 p.m.

The university cannot guarantee a job to any student before arrival on campus. Because competition for jobs is keen, students would be wise to come to the university with enough money to support themselves until they find work.

Most jobs on campus are listed at Student Employment Services. However, some departments hire skilled students without listing the positions with Student Employment. Academic departments select from their own students for reading, grading, and research assistant positions. The Missionary Training Center (MTC) accepts applications to fill teaching positions directly from returned missionaries or those who have native foreign language skills.

Student Health Center

(170 MHC, PO Box 24800, [801] 378-2771)

Val H. Christensen, Administrative Director
James P. Clarke, M.D., Medical Director
Gary B. Brimley, Assistant Director

Student health services are available at the Student Health Center for all students, spouses, and dependents of students at rates lower than those the community offers. Any student may receive services at the Health Center regardless of his or her insurance policy, although students can receive health care at an even greater discount by utilizing the student health insurance plan. The Student Health Center is not a Medicare, Medicaid or Champus provider.

Health services are available from 8:00 a.m. until 6:00 p.m. Monday through Friday and from 8:00 a.m. until noon on Saturday. The Health Center is closed on Sunday and on all BYU holidays. Students can make an appointment by calling (801) 378-5156.

Services available at the Health Center include:

1. Consultation with a physician or nurse-practitioner
2. Immunizations
3. Pharmacy
4. Physical therapy
5. Laboratory services
6. X-ray services
7. Pediatrics
8. Urgent care
9. Consultation with specialists in ENT, ophthalmology, orthopedics, internal medicine, podiatry, psychology and psychiatry, surgery, rheumatology, gynecology, dietary and nutritional counseling, etc.

For more information contact the Health Center. The Health Center is bound by federal confidentiality laws. Personal information will not be released to a third party without written permission from the patient.

Telecommunication Services

(1206 SFLC, PO Box 26798, [801] 378-7524)

This office provides the university, including *on-campus* student housing, with voice and data communications, local and long-distance telephone services, and PhoneMail (voice mail) service. Questions regarding on-campus student telephone services should be directed to (801) 378-7813. For repair for such services, call 378-7524, or go to 310 SFLC, PO Box 26798.

University Police, Parking, Traffic, and Security

The University Police Department is established for the benefit and protection of students, faculty, and staff. The department's state-certified police officers are entrusted with enforcing laws and, when applicable, campus rules and regulations. Noncertified security, traffic, and parking control officers are also utilized by the university to enforce campus rules and regulations.

All persons requiring emergency police assistance or fire or ambulance services should call 911. Receive nonemergency police assistance by calling (801) 378-2222 or by visiting the department at B-66 ASB.

Parking control is the responsibility of the University Police and the Parking and Traffic Division, which is located east of the Carillon Bell Tower at 700 East 1430 North. All BYU students must register their motor vehicles with the Parking and Traffic Division if they intend to park in student lots during restricted hours (from 7:00 a.m. to 4:00 p.m. Monday through Friday).

Automobile Registration

To obtain a parking permit, the following must be presented at the Parking and Traffic Office between the hours of 7:30 a.m. and 5:00 p.m. Monday through Friday:

1. Current state vehicle registration certificate
2. Proof of emissions compliance. Vehicles registered in areas that do not have an emissions program meeting Utah County requirements will need to pass an emissions test. Contact the Traffic Office if you are unsure about your emissions requirements (telephone [801] 378-3906).
3. The appropriate fee
4. University identification card
5. Proof of housing residency, such as contract or room key (on-campus single housing only)

Parking Permits

Zone G
Priority to graduate students (valid in G, Y, and R lots) . *$40.00
Zone Y
Students living off campus (valid in Y and R lots) 15.00
Zone Y/C
Student motorcycle
(valid in student motorcycle areas) 10.00
Zone R
Students living off campus (valid in R lots) 5.00
Zone C
On-campus single housing (valid in C and R lots) 7.00

*Student permits are valid from the beginning of fall semester through the following September 15.

Faculty and staff employees with out-of-state plates must license their vehicles with the state of Utah and clear them for tax payment before they can receive their parking permits.

Bicycle Registration

All bicycles operated or parked on campus must be licensed with a Utah County municipality. Provo city licenses are available at the Traffic Office for a fee of $1.

Bicyclists must:

1. Always park bicycles in racks.
2. Never ride on sidewalks during class breaks.
3. Yield to pedestrians.
4. Obey *all* traffic rules.

Bicycles not parked in racks will be impounded. BYU will not be responsible for cut locks, chains, or cables. Locks, chains, or cables may be cut only when uniformed police or traffic personnel are present.

Other Regulations and Information

Owners/operators of motor vehicles operated in Utah County should be prepared to pass Utah County Vehicle Emissions Inspection Maintenance requirements.

Neighborhoods adjoining campus are sometimes inundated with parked vehicles. Students are encouraged to obtain BYU parking permits and to park in university parking lots authorized by the permit.

Traffic regulation information may be obtained from the Parking and Traffic Services Office. It is the responsibility of all students, faculty, and staff members to obey all traffic rules and regulations.

Questions may be directed to Traffic Office personnel at (801) 378-3906.

Veterans Support

(B-150 ASB, PO Box 21113, [801] 378-2768)

The Veterans Support Office certifies the enrollment of eligible veterans or their dependents for educational benefits from the U.S. Department of Veterans Affairs (VA). Information and help in applying for these benefits are available from this office.

Accreditation and Affiliations

Brigham Young University is fully accredited by the Northwest Association of Schools and Colleges. In addition, many professional programs of the university are reviewed, evaluated, and accredited by national and state associations and boards.

The following organizations have given full accreditation to related programs at the university:

Accreditation Board for Engineering and Technology, Inc. (ABET) for the four-year programs leading to bachelor of science degrees in chemical engineering, civil engineering, electrical engineering, manufacturing engineering, mechanical engineering; (TAC/ABET); electronics engineering technology and manufacturing engineering technology.
Accrediting Council for Education in Journalism and Mass Communications
American Alliance for Health, Physical Education, Recreation, and Dance
American Assembly of Collegiate Schools of Business
American Association for Marriage and Family Therapy
American Bar Association
American Council for Construction Education
American Dietetic Association
American Institute of Graphic Arts
American Political Science Association
American Psychological Association
American Research Center in Egypt
American Speech, Language, Hearing Association
American Veterinary Medical Association
Commission on Accreditation of Allied Health Education Programs (CAAHEP)
Computing Science Accreditation Board
Council of Baccalaureate and Higher Degree Programs of the National League for Nursing
Council on Accreditation, National Recreation and Park Association/American Association of Leisure and Recreation
Council on Social Work Education
Joint Review Committee on Educational Programs in Athletic Training
National Accrediting Agency for Clinical Laboratory Sciences
National Association for the Education of Young Children
National Association of Schools of Art and Design
National Association of Schools of Dance
National Association of Schools of Music
National Association of Schools of Public Affairs and Administration
National Association of Schools of Theatre
National Association of Sport and Physical Education
National Association of State Directors of Teacher Education and Certification
National Athletic Trainers' Association/Joint Review Committee—Athletic Training
National Council for Accreditation of Teacher Education
National Environmental Health Association
National League for Nursing
Northwest Association of Schools and Colleges
Northwest Association of Secondary and Higher Schools
Utah State Bar Association
Utah State Board of Nursing
Utah State Department of Education
Utah State Department of Public Instruction in cooperation with the United States Office of Education for the training of vocational home economics teachers.

Brigham Young University is affiliated with the following educational and professional associations:

Academia de la Investigacion Cientifica
Academy for Health Services Marketing
Academy of Financial Services
Academy of International Business
Academy of Management
Academy of Marketing Science
Acoustical Society of America
Actors Equity Association
Administrative Management Society
Alpha Kappa Delta
American Academy of Advertising
American Academy of Management
American Academy of Nurse Practitioners
American Academy of Religion
American Accounting Association
American Advertising Association
American Advertising Federation
American Agricultural Economics Association
American Alliance for Theatre and Education (AATE)
American Anthropological Association
American-Arab Affairs Council
American Association for Advances in Health Care Research
American Association for Artificial Intelligence
American Association for Counseling and Development
American Association for Italian Studies
American Association for Leisure and Recreation
American Association for the Advancement of Science
American Association for the Advancement of Slavic Studies
American Association of Adult and Continuing Education
American Association of Bovine Practitioners
American Association of Colleges
American Association of Colleges for Teacher Education
American Association of Colleges of Nursing
American Association of Collegiate Registrars and Admissions Officers
American Association of Equine Practitioners
American Association of Family and Consumer Sciences
American Association of Higher Education
American Association of Investments
American Association of Petroleum Geologists
American Association of Physics Teachers
American Association of Presidents of Independent Colleges and Universities
American Association of Real Estate Appraisers
American Association of School Administrators
American Association of Small Ruminant Practitioners
American Association of Teachers of Arabic
American Association of Teachers of French
American Association of Teachers of German
American Association of Teachers of Italian
American Association of Teachers of Slavic and East European Languages

American Association of Teachers of Spanish and Portuguese
American Association of University Women
American Astronomical Society
American Business Law Association
American Chemical Society
American Choral Directors Association
American College of Health Administrators
American College of Health Care Executives
American College of Nutrition
American College of Sports Medicine
American College Personnel Association
American College Theatre Association (ACTA)
American Collegiate Retailing
American Comparative Literature Association
American Conference on Romanticism
American Council for the Teaching of Foreign Languages (ACTFL)
American Council of Teachers of Russian
American Council on Consumer Interests
American Council on Education
American Crystallographic Association
American Dairy Science Association
American DDR Studies Association
American Economics Association
American Educational Research Association
American Federation of Musicians
American Federation of Television and Radio Employees (AFTRA)
American Film Institute
American Finance Association
American Geophysical Union
American Guild of Musical Artists
American Guild of Organists
American Historical Association
American Hospital Association
American Institute for Maghribi Studies
American Institute of Aeronautics and Astronautics
American Institute of Certified Public Accountants
American Institute of Chemical Engineers
American Institute of Design and Drafting
American Institute of Organ Builders
American Institute of Physics
American Institute of Plant Engineers
American Journalism Historians Association
American Library Association
American Liszt Society
American Management Association
American Marketing Association
American Mathematical Society
American Meat Science Association
American Museum Association
American Musical Instrument Society
American Musicological Society
American Newspaper Publishers Association
American Nurses Association
American Philological Association
American Philosophical Association
American Physical Society
American Production and Inventory Control Society
American Public Radio
American Public Television Association
American Risk and Insurance Association
American Schools of Construction
American Schools of Oriental Research
American Society for Biochemistry and Molecular Biology
American Society for Clinical Nutrition
American Society for Engineering Education
American Society for Engineering Management
American Society for Horticultural Science
American Society for Microbiology
American Society for Nutritional Sciences
American Society for Public Administration
American Society for Quality Control
American Society for Theatre Research (ASTR)
American Society of Agronomy
American Society of Animal Science
American Society of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology
American Society of Civil Engineers
American Society of Composers, Authors, and Publishers
American Society of Eighteenth-Century Studies
American Society of Interior Design
American Society of Mammalogists
American Society of Mechanical Engineers
American Society of Public Accountants
American Society of Training and Development
American Sociological Association
American Statistical Association
American String Teachers Association
American Taxation Association
American Theatre Association
American Translators Association
American Viola d'amore Society
American Viola Society
American Vocational Association
American Women in Radio and Television
Archaeological Conservancy, The
Asian Pacific Communication Association
Associated Builders and Contractors
Associated General Contractors of America
Associated Schools of Construction
Associated Writing Programs
Association for Advances in Health Care Research
Association for Asian Studies
Association for Business Communication
Association for Childhood Education International
Association for Comparative Economic Studies
Association for Comparative Studies
Association for Computational Linguistics
Association for Computers and the Humanities
Association for Computing Machinery
Association for Consumer Research
Association for Counselor Education and Supervision
Association for Education in Journalism and Mass Communications
Association for Educational Communications and Technology
Association for Library and Information Science Education
Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing
Association for Manufacturing Excellence
Association for Mormon Counselors and Psychotherapists
Association for Mormon Letters
Association for Practical and Professional Ethics
Association for Public Policy Analysis and Management
Association for Student Judicial Affairs
Association for Systems Management
Association for Theatre in Higher Education (ATHE)
Association of American Colleges
Association of American Law Schools
Association of American University Presses
Association of Asian Studies
Association of Baccalaureate Social Work Programs
Association of College Unions—International
Association of Continuing Higher Education
Association of Departments of English
Association of Departments of Foreign Languages
Association of General Contractors
Association of Higher Education Facilities Officers
Association of Interior Designers
Association of Performing Arts Presenters
Association of Professional Genealogists
Association of Psychology Postdoctoral and Internship Centers

Association of Research Libraries
Association of Supervision and Curriculum Development
Association of Teacher Educators
Association of Teachers of Chinese
Association of Teachers of Japanese
Association of the United States Army
Association of Western Universities
Association of Women in Radio and Television
Astronomical Society of the Pacific
Audio Engineering Society
Australia/New Zealand Communication Association
Beta Alpha Psi
Bibliographic Center for Research, Rocky Mountain Region
Broadcast Education Association
Broadcast Music Inc.
Cantonese Language Association
Catgut Acoustical Society
Center for Applied Linguistics (CAL)
Center for Arabic Study Abroad
Center for International Scholarly Exchange (CISE)
Center for Research Libraries
Central Education Network
Central Opera Service
Changes in Liberal Education
Classical Association of the Middle West and South
College and University Machine Records Conference
College and University Personnel Association
College Art Association
College Band Directors National Association
College Entrance Examination Board
College Media Advisors
College Music Society
College Reading Association
College Reading and Learning Association
Computer-Assisted Language Instruction Consortium (CALICO)
Computer Science Accreditation Commission
Computing Research Association
Confederation of International Organizers of Folkdance Festivals
Conference on Christianity and Literature
Congress on Research in Dance
Consumer Research Association
Co–op America
Correctional Educational Association
Council for European Studies
Council for Programs in Technical and Scientific Communication
Council for the Advancement and Support of Education
Council for Undergraduate Research
Council of Editors of Learned Journals
Council of Graduate Departments of Psychology
Council of Graduate Schools in the United States
Crop Science Society of America
Dance and the Child International
Dante Society of America
Data Processing Management Association
Decision Sciences Institute
Econometric Society
EDP Auditors Association
Educational Films Library Association
Educational Society for Resource Management
Educational Theatre Association (ETA)
Environmental Historians Association
Eta Kappa Nu
Eta Sigma Gamma
Eugene O'Neill Society of America
European Accounting Association
European Association of Exploration Geophysicists
European Physical Society
European Trade Association
Executive MBA Council
Federation of American Societies for Experimental Biology
Federation of Schools of Accountancy
Financial Management Association
Friends of the Permian
Geological Society of America
German Studies Association
Goal/QPC, Inc.
Goethe Institute (U.S. and West Germany)
Golden Key National Honor Society
Graduate Management Admissions Council: Career Services Council
Guild of Carillonneurs in North America
Health Care Financial Association
Ibsen Society of America
Imperial Society of Dance
Industrial Relations Research Association
Institute of Business Designers
Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
Institute of Food Technologists
Institute of Industrial Engineers
Institute of Internal Auditors
Institute of International Education (IIE)
Institute of Management Accountants
Institute of Management Science/Operations Research Society of America
Institute of Management Sciences
Institute of Noise Control Engineering
Interior Design Education Council
International Arts Medicine Association
International Association for Dance Medicine and Science
International Association for Financial Planning
International Association for Korean Language Educators (IAKLE)
International Association for Mass Communication Research
International Association for the Study of Popular Music
International Association of Jazz Educators
International Association of Learning Laboratories
International Association of Scholarly Publishers
International Association of Theatre for Children and Young People (ASSITEJ/USA)
International Association of Theatrical and Screen Employees (IATSE)
International City Management Association
International Communication Association
International Comparative Literature Association
International Conference for Computers in the Humanities
International Congress of Meat Science and Technology
International Congress of University Adult Education
International Double Reed Society
International Facility Management Association
International Federation for Theatre Research (IFTR)
International Horn Society
International Institute of Forecasters
International Meat Processors
International Musicological Society
International Newspaper Advertising and Marketing Executives
International Organization of Scenographers, Architects, and Technicians of Theatre (OISTAT)
International Personnel Management Associations
International Public Relations Association
International Reading Association
International Schools of Theatre
International Society for Music in Medicine
International Society on General Relativity and Gravitation
International Studies Association
International Technology Education Association
International Viola Society
Joint National Committee for Languages
Kappa Tau Alpha
Kennedy Center American College Theatre Festival (KC/ACTF)
Linguistic Society of America

Marketing Science Institute
Master Piano Technicians, Inc.
Mathematical Association of America
Mathematical Sciences Research Institute
McBride Round Table
Medical Group Management Association
Medieval Academy of America
Microscopy Society of America
Middle East Studies Association of North America
Midwest Association of Colleges and Employers
Mineralogical Society of America
Modern Language Association
Mormon History Association
Mountain Plains Adult Education Association
Mountain Plains Library Association
Mu Sigma Rho
Music and Entertainment Industry Educators' Association
Music Educators National Conference
Music Library Association
Music Teachers National Association
National Academic Advising Association
National Academy of Songwriters
National Academy of Television Arts and Sciences (EMMY)
National Art Education Association
National Association for Campus Activities
National Association for Humanities Education
National Association for Institutional Research
National Association for Internships and Experiential Education
National Association for Music Therapy
National Association for Physical Education in Higher Education
National Association for the Education of Young Children
National Association of Art Administrators
National Association of Broadcasters
National Association of Business Economists
National Association of Certified Fraud Examiners
National Association of College Wind and Percussion Instructors
National Association of Colleges and Employers
National Association of Elementary Principals
National Association of Foreign Student Affairs
National Association of Geology Teachers
National Association of Home Builders
National Association of Independent Colleges and Universities
National Association of Purchasing Management
National Association of Secondary School Principals
National Association of Student Financial Aid Administrators
National Association of Student Personnel Administrators
National Association of Teachers
National Association of Teachers of Singing
National Association of Television Programming Executives
National Band Association
National Business Educators Association
National Center for Employee Ownership
National Collegiate Honors Council
National Commission of Accrediting
National Commission on Cooperative Education
National Communication Association
National Computer Graphics Association
National Council of Teachers of English
National Council of Teachers of Mathematics
National Council of University Research Administrators
National Council on Family Relations
National Dance Association
National Dance Council of America
National Financial Association
National Flute Association
National Folk Organization of the United States of America
National Intramural Recreational Sports Association
National League for Nursing
National Network of Graduate Business School Women
National Opera Association
National Organization on Legal Problems in Education
National Orientation Directors Association
National Press Women
National Public Radio
National Reading Conference
National Recreation and Parks Association
National School Boards Association
National University Continuing Education Association
National Writing Centers Association
Network of Quality and Productivity Center
New York Academy of Sciences
North American Case Research Association
North American Steel Band Association
North American Veterinary Technology Association
Northern Rocky Mountain Educational Research Association
Office Systems Research Association
Online Computer Library Center, Inc.
Operations Management Association
Operations Research Society of America
Organization of American Historians
Organization of American Kodaly Educators
Organizational Development Institute
Pacific Islands News Association
Pacific Mountain Network
Paleontological Society
Pander Society, (Hans Christian)
Percussive Arts Society
Phi Delta Kappa
Phi Kappa Phi
Pi Delta Phi
Pi Kappa Lambda
Pi Mu Epsilon
Pi Sigma Alpha
Piano Technicians Guild, Inc.
Poultry Science
Production and Operations Management Society
Professional and Organizational Development Network in Higher Education
Psi Chi
Public Broadcasting Service
Public Radio News Directors Association
Public Radio Program Directors Association
Public Relations Society of America
Public Relations Student Society of America
Public Telecommunications Financial Managers Association (PTFMA)
Radio Television News Directors Association
Renaissance Society of America
Research Libraries Group
Research Workers in Animal Disease
Rocky Mountain Association of Colleges and Employers
Rocky Mountain Collegiate Media Association
Rocky Mountain Mathematics Consortium
Rocky Mountain Medieval and Renaissance Association
Rocky Mountain Modern Language Association
Rocky Mountain Public Radio
Rocky Mountain Theatre Association (RMTA)
Royal Asiatic Society—Korean Branch
Rural Sociological Society
Scientific Research Society, Sigma Xi
Screen Actors Guild (SAG)
Sigma Alpha Iota
Sigma Pi Sigma
Sigma Theta Tau
Sigma Xi
Small Business Institute Directors Association
Society for Applied Sociology
Society for Cinema Studies (SCS)
Society for College and University Planners
Society for Computer Simulation

Society for Consumer Psychology
Society for Human Resource Management
Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics (SIAM)
Society for International Development
Society for Manufacturing Engineers
Society for Music Theory
Society for Research in Child Development
Society for Scholarly Publishing
Society for Technical Communication
Society for the Advancement of Materials and Process Engineering
Society for the Advancement of Scandinavian Studies
Society of American Military Engineers
Society of Automotive Engineers
Society of Biblical Literature
Society of Broadcast Engineers
Society of Core Analysts
Society of Dance History Scholars
Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists
Society of Engineering and Mineral Exploration Geophysicists
Society of Exploration Geophysicists
Society of Illustrators—New York Institutional Member
Society of Manufacturing Engineers
Society of Motion Picture and TV Engineers
Society of Newspaper Design
Society of Physics Students
Society of Professional Audio Recording Studios
Society of Professional Journalists
Society of Research Administrators
Society of Vertebrate Paleontology
Society of Women Engineers
Soil and Water Conservation Society
Soil Science Society of America
Sonneck Society for American Music
Southwest Association of Colleges and Employers
Southwest Conference on Language Teaching
Southwest District American Alliance for Health, Physical Education, Recreation, and Dance
Strategic Management Society
Suburban Newspapers Association
Systematics Association
Tau Alphi Pi
Tau Beta Pi
Teachers of English to Speakers of Other Languages (TESOL)
Theta Alpha Phi
Treasury Management Association
United Scenic Artists (USAA)
United States Association for Small Business and Entrepreneurship Group
United States Institute of Theatre Technology (USITT)
University Film and Video Association (UFVA)
UNIX and Advanced Computing Systems Professional and Technical Association
Utah Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters
Utah Advertising Federation
Utah Association for Health, Physical Education, Recreation, and Dance
Utah Association of Certified Public Accountants
Utah Association of Sciences, Arts, and Letters
Utah Broadcasters Association
Utah Flute Association
Utah Foreign Language Association
Utah Genealogical Association
Utah Geological Association
Utah Library Association
Utah Museums Association
Utah Music Teachers Association
Utah Press Association
Utah Professionals of Student Activities
Utah Recreation and Park Association
Utah Recreation Therapy Association
Utah State Office of Education
Utah Theatre Association (UTA)
Vocational Industrial Clubs of America
West Coast Journalism Historians
Western Academy of Management
Western Alliance of Arts Administrators
Western Agricultural Economics Association
Western American Literature Association
Western Association of Colleges and Employers
Western Association of Cooperative and Work Experience Educators
Western Association of Graduate Schools
Western Association of Schools and Colleges
Western College Association
Western College Physical Education Society
Western Economics Association
Western Finance Association
Western Governmental Research Association
Western History Association
Western Institute of Nursing
Western Interstate Commission on Higher Education
Western Marketing Educators Association
Western Political Science Association
Western Region Collegiate Honors Council
Western Risk and Insurance Association
Western Society for Research in Nursing
Women in Communications
Women in Management
World Association for Case Method Research and Application
World Future Society
World Poultry Science
World Rabbit Science Association
World Trade Association
Writing Program Administrators

Administration

Church Board of Education and BYU Board of Trustees

Gordon B. Hinckley . . . . . Chairman
Thomas S. Monson . . . . . First Vice Chairman
James E. Faust . . . . . Second Vice Chairman

L. Tom Perry
David B. Haight
M. Russell Ballard
Joseph B. Wirthlin
Richard G. Scott
Henry B. Eyring
L. Aldin Porter
Mary Ellen Smoot
Margaret D. Nadauld
G. Paul Sorenson, Secretary

Office of the Church Commissioner of Education

Henry B. Eyring . . Commissioner—Church Educational System
Stanley A. Peterson . . Administrator—Religious Education and Elementary and Secondary Education
G. Paul Sorenson . . . . . Administrator—Finance and Budgets

University Administrative Officers

Bateman, Merrill J. . . . . President
Bramhall, Eugene H. . . . . Assistant to the President—General Counsel and Secretary
Orme, Michael R. . . . . Associate General Counsel
Visick, H. Hal . . . . . Associate General Counsel
Hill, Ned C. . . . . Assistant to the President—Planning and Budgeting
Webb, L. Robert . . . . . Executive Director—Planning and Assessment
Wilkins, Alan L. . . . . Academic Vice President
Brown, Cheryl . . . . . Associate Academic Vice President—International, Distance, and Continuing Education
Gordon, James D., III . . . Associate Academic Vice President—Faculty
Hooper, Gary R. . . . . Associate Academic Vice President—Research and Graduate Studies
Tanner, John S. . . . . Associate Academic Vice President—Undergraduate Studies
Denna, Eric L.. . . . . Assistant Academic Vice President—Computing
Brad W. Farnsworth . . . . . Administrative Vice President
Cozzens, Edwin . . Assistant Administrative Vice President—Physical Facilities
Henrie, Carolyn Lloyd . . . . . Assistant Administrative Vice President—Human Resource Services
Morrell, Clyde R. . Assistant Administrative Vice President—Finance
Stohlton, John B. . . Assistant Administrative Vice President—Campus Communication Services
White, Richard P. University Treasurer
Wade, Alton L. . . . . Student Life Vice President
Hunt, David A. . . . . Assistant Student Life Vice President—Student Auxiliary Services
Scharman, Janet S.. . . . Assistant Student Life Vice President and Dean of Students
Snow, R. J. . . . . Advancement Vice President
Bowie, George H. . . Assistant Advancement Vice President—University Relations and Executive Director, Alumni Association
Bybee, M. McClain . Assistant Advancement Vice President—Development
Fehlberg, Rondo . Assistant Advancement Vice President and Director of Men's Athletics
Bartlett, Lee . . . . . Assistant Vice President—University Communications

Administrative Officers BYU—Hawaii Campus

Bateman, Merrill J. . . . . President of Brigham Young University and Chief Executive Officer
Shumway, Eric B. . . . . President
Durrant, S. Olani . . . . . Vice President—Academics
Evans, R. Kirk . . . . . Vice President for Administrative Services
Bramhall, Eugene H. . . . . Assistant Secretary and General Counsel
Kongaika, Isileli T. . . . . Vice President for Student Life and Dean of Student Life
Baker, V. Napua . . . . . Vice President for University Advancement

Deans of Academic Units

Biology and Agriculture
Dean . . . . . Clayton S. Huber
Associate Dean . . . . . Richard W. Heninger
Associate Dean . . . . . William L. Park
Assistant Dean . . . . . Steven L. Taylor
Engineering and Technology
Dean . . . . . Douglas M. Chabries
Associate Dean . . . . . Jordan J. Cox
Associate Dean . . . . . Linton G. Salmon
Assistant Dean . . . . . David K. Anthony
Family, Home, and Social Sciences
Dean . . . . . Clayne L. Pope
Associate Dean . . . . . Paul B. Pixton
Associate Dean . . . . . Dennis L Thomson
Fine Arts and Communications
Dean . . . . . Bruce L. Christensen
Associate Dean . . . . . K. Newell Dayley
Assistant Dean . . . . . Scott M. Boyter
Assistant Dean . . . . . Stephen M. Jones
Assistant Dean . . . . . James D. Murphy
General and Honors Education
Acting Dean . . . . . James E. Faulconer
Associate Dean . . . . . Steven E. Benzley
Associate Dean . . . . . Susan Easton Black
Associate Dean . . . . . Douglas F. Tobler
Assistant Dean . . . . . Neal W. Kramer
Graduate Studies
Dean . . . . . Addie Fuhriman
Health and Human Performance
Dean . . . . . Robert K. Conlee
Associate Dean . . . . . Joyce M. Harrison

Associate Dean . . . . . Jay H. Naylor
Humanities
Dean . . . . . Van C. Gessel
Associate Dean . . . . . Melvin J. Luthy
Associate Dean . . . . . John R. Rosenberg
Law School
Dean . . . . . H. Reese Hansen
Associate Dean . . . . . Scott W. Cameron
Associate Dean . . . . . J. Clifton Fleming
Associate Dean . . . . . Constance K. Lundberg
Assistant Dean . . . . . Kathy D. Pullins
Marriott School of Management
Dean . . . . . K. Fred Skousen
Associate Dean . . . . . Kim S. Cameron
Associate Dean . . . . . Gary C. Cornia
McKay School of Education
Dean . . . . . Robert S. Patterson
Associate Dean . . . . . Bonnie Brinton
Associate Dean . . . . . D. Ray Reutzel
Assistant Dean . . . . . Sally M. Todd
Nursing
Dean . . . . . Sandra Rogers
Associate Dean . . . . . Lynn C. Callister
Associate Dean . . . . . Elaine S. Marshall
Associate Dean . . . . . Mary Williams
Physical and Mathematical Sciences
Dean . . . . . Bill R. Hays
Associate Dean . . . . . Larry C. Christensen
Associate Dean . . . . . Nolan F. Mangelson
Religious Education
Dean . . . . . Robert L. Millet
Associate Dean . . . . . Paul Y. Hoskisson
Associate Dean . . . . . Brent L. Top

Deans and Directors of Academic Support Services

Admissions and Records
Dean . . . . . Erlend D. Peterson
Associate Dean—Academic Advisement/ Graduation Evaluation/Orientation/ Registraton/ Records . . . . . Gary L. Kramer
Associate Dean—Admissions/ High School and College Relations . . . . Jeffery M. Tanner
Associate Dean—Financial Aid/ Scholarship . . . . . Ford L. Stevenson
Assistant Dean—USI Director . . . . . Roger E. Goodrich
Academic Advisement/Graduation Evaluation Director . . . . . Raylene J. Hadley
Admissions Director . . . . . Jeffery M. Tanner
Financial Aid Director . . . . . Norman B. Finlinson
High School and College Relations Director . . . . . R. Kirk Strong
Registrar and Records/Registration Director . . . . . Gene F. Priday
Scholarship Director . . . . . Sue H. DeMartini
Continuing Education
Dean . . . . . Richard C. Eddy
Associate Dean . . . . . Kenneth W. Anderson
Associate Dean . . . . . Wayne J. Lott
Institutional Studies
Director of Institutional Analysis and Data Administration . . . . . H. Bruce Higley
Director of Assessment . . . . . Danny Olsen
Instructional Applications Services Director . . Monte F. Shelley
Libraries
University Librarian . . . . . Sterling J. Albrecht
Associate University Librarian . . . . . A. Dean Larsen
Deputy University Librarian . . . . . Randy J. Olsen
Assistant University Librarian . . . . . H. Julene Butler
Assistant University Librarian . . . . . Scott H. Duvall
Assistant University Librarian . . . . . Susan Fales
Assistant University Librarian . . . . . Larry J. Ostler
Research and Creative Activities, Office of . . . . Brent W. Webb
Student Life
Dean of Students . . . . . Janet S. Scharman
Associate Dean . . . . . H. Nolan Reed

Directors of University Support Services

Dining Services . . . . . Samuel Brooks
Housing and General Services . . . . . Julie L. Franklin
Media Services . . . . . D. Dean VanUitert
Planning and Architecture . . . . . Norman Faldmo
University Computing Services . . . . . Kelly C. McDonald

Chairs or Directors of Departments of Instruction

Aerospace Studies . . . . . Col. Maurice L. Stocks
Agronomy and Horticulture . . . . . Richard E. Terry
Ancient Scripture . . . . . Andrew C. Skinner
Animal Science . . . . . Richard N. Thwaits
Anthropology . . . . . John P. Hawkins
Asian and Near Eastern Languages . . . Dilworth B. Parkinson
Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology . David McPherson
Botany and Range Science . . . . . Bruce A. Roundy
Business Management . . . . . J. Michael Pinegar
Chemical Engineering . . . . . Kenneth A. Solen
Chemistry and Biochemistry . . . . . Francis R. Nordmeyer
Church History and Doctrine . . . . . Raymond S. Wright
Civil and Environmental Engineering . . . . . T. Leslie Youd
Clothing and Textiles . . . . . Charlene Lind
Communications . . . . . Laurie J. Wilson
Computer Science . . . . . William A. Barrett
Counseling and Career Center . . . . . Ronald K. Chapman
Counseling and Special Education . . . . . Ronald D. Bingham
Dance . . . . . Sara Lee Gibb
Economics . . . . . Farrell E. Jensen
Educational Leadership and Foundations . . . . E. Vance Randall
Electrical and Computer Engineering . . . . . Richard L. Frost
English . . . . . C. Jay Fox
Family Sciences . . . . . James M. Harper
Food Science and Nutrition . . . . . Lynn V. Ogden
French and Italian . . . . . Madison U. Sowell
Geography . . . . . Richard H. Jackson
Geology . . . . . Bart J. Kowallis
Germanic and Slavic Languages . . . . . Alan F. Keele
Health Sciences . . . . . Keith J. Karren
History . . . . . Kendall W. Brown
Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature . . . . . George S. Tate
Instructional Psychology and Technology . . . . . Paul F. Merrill
International and Area Studies Director . . Donald B. Holsinger
Linguistics and Special Languages . . . . . John S. Robertson
Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology . . . . . Robert H. Todd
Mathematics . . . . . Wayne W. Barrett
Mechanical Engineering . . . . . Alan R. Parkinson
Microbiology . . . . . Shauna C. Anderson
Military Science . . . . . Lt. Col. John J. Sullivan
Music . . . . . David M. Randall
Organizational Leadership and Strategy . . . . . Paul R. Timm
Philosophy . . . . . K. Codell Carter
Physical Education . . . . . Earlene Durrant
Physics and Astronomy . . . . . Dorian M. Hatch
Political Science . . . . . David B. Magleby
Psychology . . . . . Erin D. Bigler

Recreation Management and Youth Leadership . . . . . S. Harold Smith
Social Work . . . . . Kyle Lynn Pehrson
Sociology . . . . . Stephen J. Bahr
Spanish and Portuguese . . . . . Christopher C. Lund
Statistics . . . . . Gale Rex Bryce
Teacher Education . . . . . M. Winston Egan
Technology Education and Construction Management . . . . . Garth A. Hill
Theatre and Media Arts . . . . . Robert A. Nelson
Visual Arts . . . . . Mark J. Johnson
Zoology . . . . . Richard R. Tolman

Chairs or Directors of Professional Institutes and Programs

Institute of Public Management . . . . . Lawrence C. Walters
Institute of Marketing: Retail, Sales, and Services . . . . . Bill Price
Master of Business Administration . . . . . Gary F. McKinnon
Master of Organizational Behavior . . . . . W. Gibb Dyer
School of Accountancy and Information Systems . . . . . W. Steve Albrecht

Coordinators or Directors of Academic Areas

Cooperative Education . . . . . James H. Backman
David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies . . . . . Donald B. Holsinger
Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies
Director . . . . . R. J. Snow
Associate Director . . . . . Clark T. Thorstenson
Assistant Director—Administration . . . . . Rex Bennion
BYU-California Center for Continuing Education Director . . . . . Duane C. Lemley
BYU-Ricks Center for Continuing Education Director . . . . . Ronald W. Campbell
BYU–Salt Lake Center for Continuing Education Director . . . . . Lee J. Glines
CES Continuing Education Programs—North Director . . . . . Milton L. Sharp
CES Continuing Education Programs—Northern Utah Director . . . . . Frank Santiago
CES Continuing Education Programs—South Director . . . . . E. Mack Palmer
CES Continuing Education Youth and Family Programs Director . . . . . Susan Overstreet
BYU Conference Center . . . . . Spencer E. Hansen
Conferences and Workshops Director . . . . Steven W. Taggart
Evening Classes Director . . . . . Ralph V. Larson
Independent Study Director . . . . . R. Dwight Laws
Degrees by Independent Study Director . . . . Ralph A. Rowley
Travel Study Director . . . . . George J. Talbot

College Advisement Centers

Director . . . . . Raylene J. Hadley
Biology and Agriculture . . . . . Audrey L. Megerian
McKay School of Education . . . . . Sally M. Todd
Engineering and Technology . . . . . Pam Williamson
Family, Home, and Social Sciences . . . . . Larry K. Taylor
Fine Arts and Communications . . . . . Brenda Butterfield
Health and Human Performance . . . . . Shirlene Hindmarsh
Humanities . . . . . Mary Anne Rich
Marriott School of Management . . . . . Eldon Bott
Nursing . . . . . Linda Stevens
Open Major . . . . . Susan Wilkins
Physical and Mathematical Sciences . . . . . Merle White

Preprofessional Advisement Personnel

Architecture . . . . . Jay Newitt
Dentistry . . . . . Don D. Bloxham
Law . . . . . Eileen Crane
MBA . . . . . Gary F. McKinnon
MPA . . . . . Lawrence C. Walters
MAcc . . . . . W. Steve Albrecht
MOB . . . . . W. Gibb Dyer
Medicine . . . . . Don D. Bloxham
Physical Therapy . . . . . Shane Schulthies
Veterinary Medicine . . . . . Beverly L. Roeder
Biomedical Engineering, Dental Hygiene, Health Administration, Optometry, Pharmacy, Physician's Assistant, Podiatry, and Public Health . . . . . Don D. Bloxham

Research Centers and Institutes

Advanced Combustion Engineering Research Center . . . . . Thomas H. Fletcher
Advanced Composites Manufacturing and Engineering Center . . . . . A. Brent Strong
Agriculture Station . . . . . William L. Park
Monte L. Bean Life Science Museum
Director . . . . . H. Duane Smith
Assistant Director . . . . . Douglas C. Cox
Ezra Taft Benson Agriculture and Food Institute . . . . . N. Paul Johnston
Cancer Research Center . . . . . Daniel L. Simmons
Center for Entrepreneurship . . . . . Donald H. Livingstone
Center for Statistical Research . . . . . Leland J. Hendrix
Center for Studies of the Family . . . . . Alan J. Hawkins
Center for the Study of Christian Values in Literature . . . . . Richard H. Cracroft
Associate Director . . . . . John J. Murphy
Center for the Study of Values in Organizations David Whetten
Center for International Business Education and Research . . . . . Lee H. Radebaugh
Communications Research Center, Fine Arts . . . . . Joseph D. Straubhaar
Comprehensive Clinic . . . . . Leslie L. Feinauer
Computer-Aided Engineering, Design, and Manufacturing Center . . . . . J. Brent Smith
Earth Science Museum . . . . . Kenneth L. Stadtman
Humanities Research Center . . . . . Jerry W. Larson
Museum of Art . . . . . Campbell B. Gray
Museum of Peoples and Cultures . . . . . Joel C. Janetski
Charles Redd Center for Western Studies, Social Sciences . . . . . Edward A. Geary
Religious Studies Center . . . . . Robert L. Millet
Joseph Fielding Smith Institute for Church History . . . . . Ronald K. Esplin
Women's Research Institute . . . . . Bonnie Ballif-Spanvill

Other Areas of Service

Academic Support . . . . . Craig Orme
Benefits/Employee Relations . . . . . Blair Condie
Bookstore . . . . . Roger E. Utley
Campus Involvement Services . . . . . Kerry Hammock
Counseling and Career Services . . . . . Ronald K. Chapman
Faculty Center . . . . . David Whetten
Honor Code Office . . . . . Kenneth Rush Sumpter
ID Center . . . . . Nancy Carson
International Student Support . . . . . Enoc Flores
McDonald Health Center . . . . . Val Christensen
Men's Athletics . . . . . Rondo Fehlberg
Multicultural Services . . . . . Vernon Heperi
Payroll Director . . . . . Randall L. Morgan
Salary and Employment Services . . . . . R. Wayne Hansen
Publications & Graphics . . . . . Norman A. Darais
Services for Students with Disabilities . . . . . Paul Byrd
Student Activities . . . . . David M. R. Lucero
University Police . . . . . Robert W. Kelshaw
Women's Athletics . . . . . Elaine Michaelis
Women's Services and Resources . . . . . Jean Taylor Scott

Chairs and Professorships

Some faculty members hold appointments at the university that are partially or fully supported through the generosity of private donors. These professorships recognize and support important scholarly contributions by the recipients in the various disciplines of the university. Chairs and professorships for faculty members within disciplines are noted in the departmental listing of faculty.

Maeser Professorships and Alcuin Fellows

Brigham Young University also encourages strong commitment by its faculty to undergraduate teaching, particularly in the university's General Education Program. The Karl G. Maeser Professorships, named for the spiritual architect of Brigham Young Academy and established in 1987, acknowledge truly outstanding efforts in the development and teaching of General Education and Honors courses balanced with serious and committed scholarship.

Alcuin Fellowships, established in 1986 and named for the founder of the court schools during the Carolingian renaissance of Charlemagne, acknowledge outstanding and innovative efforts in working with students within the university's General Education and Honors curriculum.

Karl G. Maeser Professors

College of Biology and Agriculture

St. Clair, Larry L., *Botany and Range Science*

College of Humanities

Browning, Gary L., *Germanic and Slavic Languages*
Keele, Alan F., *Germanic and Slavic Languages*

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences

Reynolds, Noel B., *Political Science*

Alcuin Fellows

College of Biology and Agriculture

Rex G. Cates, *Botany and Range Science*
Robison, Richard, *Microbiology*
Weber, Darrell J., *Botany and Range Science*

College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences

Kunz, Phillip, *Sociology*

College of Fine Arts and Communications

Bule, Steven, *Visual Arts*
Myer, Peter, *Visual Arts*

College of Humanities

Call, Michael J., *Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature*
Cowles, David L., *English*
Rhee, Honam, *Asian and Near Eastern Languages*
Walker, Steven C., *English*

College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences

Allred, David D., *Physics and Astronomy*
Lamb, John D., *Chemistry and Biochemistry*
Zimmerman, S. Scott, *Chemistry and Biochemistry*

Religious Education

Griggs, C. Wilfred, *Ancient Scripture*

Harold B. Lee Library Personnel

Senior Librarians

Albrecht, Sterling J. (1966) BS, U. of Utah, 1962; MLS, Brigham Young U., 1971.
Benson, Larry D. (1970) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1965, 1971.
Bradford, Janet B. (1987) BA, Brigham Young U., 1978; MS, U. of Illinois, 1986.
Broadway, Marsha D. (1985) BS, U. of Northern Alabama, 1972; MS, Alabama A&M U., 1978; MLS, Brigham Young U., 1981; PhD, Florida State U., 1985.
Butler, Helen Julene (1971) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1971.
Christensen, John Owen (1981) BS, U. of Washington, 1973; MLS, Brigham Young U., 1975.
D'Arc, James V. (1985) BA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1986.
Dahlin, Therrin C. (1974) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1973, 1974.
Daniel, Milton R. (1986) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1983.
Day, David (1986) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1981; MS, U. of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, 1985.
Draper, Larry (1997) BA, California State U., Fresno, 1976; MLS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1988.
Duvall, Scott H. (1975) BA, MLS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1975, 1977.
Espinosa, Robert (1986) BA, U. of New Mexico, 1976.
Fales, Susan L. (1974) BS, Utah State U., 1965; MLS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1973, 1984.
Gillum, Gary P. (1971) BA, Concordia Senior Coll., 1968; MLS, Brigham Young U., 1971.
Grover, Mark L. (1973) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1973; MA, PhD, Indiana U., 1979, 1985.
Hacken, Richard D. (1981) BA, Brigham Young U., 1969; MA, PhD, U. of California, Davis, 1971, 1975.
Hoopes, Helen (1986) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1974.
King, Gail O. (1982) BA, U. of Colorado, 1970; MA, PhD, U. of Chicago, 1972, 1982.
Lamb, Connie (1979) BA, MS, U. of Utah, 1969, 1972; MLS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1976, 1987.
Norton, Beverly (1986) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1984, 1985.
Olsen, Randy J. (1972) BA, Utah State U., 1971; MLS, MPA, Brigham Young U., 1973, 1981.
Ostler, Larry J. (1984) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1971; EdD, Nova U., 1985.
Swenson, Dale (1984) BS, U. of Utah, 1979; MLS, Brigham Young U., 1985.
Whittaker, David J. (1982) BA, Brigham Young U., 1967; MA, California State U., Northridge, 1973; PhD, Brigham Young U., 1982.
Wiggins, Marvin E. (1967) AS, Weber State Coll., 1961; BS, Brigham Young U., 1965; MLS, Rutgers U., 1967.
Winkler, Albert L. (1979) BA, MA, Utah State U., 1973, 1976; MA, Catholic U. of America, 1980; MLS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1981, 1982.

Associate Librarians

Adams, K. Haybron (1976) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1973.
Angerhofer, Paul J. (1988) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1988.
Baker, LeGrand L. (1974) BS, Brigham Young U., 1963; MS, PhD, U. of Wisconsin, Madison, 1965, 1972.
Barainca, Denice (1986) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1986, 1991.
Barrios, Pamela C. (1990) BA, Lehman Coll. of City U. of New York, 1977.
Bernards, Dennis (1986) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1972, 1991.
Brown, Linda W. (1983) BS, Utah State U., 1961.
Bybee, Howard C. (1988) BA, Brigham Young U., 1968; MA, Duke U., 1971; MS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1987, 1988.
Champion, Brian (1995) BA, U. of Alberta, Canada, 1977; MLS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1981, 1982.
Dick, Gerald K. (1970) BA, MMu, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1962, 1967, 1968.
Ellenburg, Doris (1986) BA, MA, California State U., Los Angeles, 1974, 1975; MLS, Brigham Young U., 1980.
Francis, Janet O. (1977) BA, Brigham Young U., 1955.
Halliday, Irene (1992) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1963, 1988.
Hansen, Kathleen (1986) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1989.
Heath, Harvard (1984) BA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1977, 1990.
Houze, Annick (1988) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1985, 1987.
Howard, Donald Hugh (1969) BA, U. of Idaho, 1963; MLS, U. of California, Berkeley, 1964.
Jensen, Richard D. (1971) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1970, 1976.
Johansen, Kathleen D. (1986) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1971, 1978.
Kupitz, Carla (1988) BA, U. of Utah, 1979; MLS, Brigham Young U., 1987.
Lo, Howard, Wen-Hao (1969) BA, 1961; MLS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1985.
Memmott, Howard Kirk (1973) BS, MLS, EdD, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1973, 1986.
Parkinson, Diane R. (1989) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1986, 1989.
Ramsey, Christiane E. (1989) BA, MA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1984, 1989, 1992.
Siegmund, Marianne (1997) BA, U. of Oklahoma, 1966; MA, MLS, Indiana U., 1969, 1978.
Slater, Bill G. (1970) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1975.
Soares, Richard E. (1987) BA, Chico State U., 1985; MLS, San Jose State U., 1986.
Stirling, Keith H. (1972) BS, MS, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1966; PhD, U. of California, Berkeley, 1977.
Turnblom, Grant W. (1969) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1969.
Urquiga, Laureen C. (1989) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1981, 1985.
Wells, Thomas (1986) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1982, 1989.
Westover, Keith R. (1991) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1970; MA, Indiana U., 1975.
Westwood, Brad (1995) BA, Brigham Young U., 1985; MS, U. of Pennsylvania, 1994.
Willey, Kayla (1986) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1978, 1987.
Wright, John (1992) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1987, 1989.
Yang, Basil P. (1981) MLS, MA, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1974, 1984, 1992.

Assistant Librarians

Baer, Lisa (1991) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1989, 1993.
Baer, William (1993) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1992, 1993.
Beier, Michael A. (1995) BS, MLIS, Brigham Young U., 1980, 1993.
Casper, Gordon C. (1967) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1964, 1969.
Child, Kierstin (1998) BS, Brigham Young U., 1996; MLS, U. of Texas, Austin, 1997.
Flick, Roger C. (1970) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1973.
Frade, Patricia A. (1992) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1981, 1986.
Griggs, Karen (1997) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1966, 1986.
Hoffman, Shannon L. (1994) BA, Chandron State Coll., 1987; MLS, Brigham Young U., 1989.
Kupitz, Gabriele (1994) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1991, 1993.
McAfee, Christopher (1995) BA, Brigham Young U., 1993; MFA, U. of Alabama, 1995.
Means, Robert (1996) BA, MLS, MA, Brigham Young U., 1990, 1992, 1994.
Pollei, Mark B. (1995) BA, Brigham Young U., 1992; Certificate in Bookbinding/Conservation, North Bennet St. School, 1994.
Rabner, Lanell (1997) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1974, 1976.
Wright, Thomas C. (1995) BS, Bemidji State U., 1976; MLIS, Brigham Young U., 1992.

Emeriti

Astin, J. Sterling (1969) BS, U. of Utah, 1940.
Flake, Chad J. (1953) BA, Brigham Young U., 1953; MA, U. of Denver, 1955.
Hall, Blaine H. (1963) BS, MA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1960, 1965, 1971.
Hawker, Alora Jane (1966) BS, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1952, 1974.
Jensen, Allene (1961) BA, MS, U. of Utah, 1930, 1957.
Jenson, Gloria Dawn (1954) BS, Brigham Young U., 1950; MS, Columbia U., 1954.
Jenson, Janet (1976) BA, MA, Brigham Young U., 1958, 1960; MS, Columbia U., 1966.
Jordan, K. Paul (1964) BS, Brigham Young U., 1964; MLS, U. of Southern California, 1969.
Lamson, Merle E. (1961) AS, Yakima Valley Coll., 1953; BS, Brigham Young U., 1955; MLS, Columbia U., 1960; PhD, U. of Utah, 1975.
Larsen, A. Dean (1956) BS, Brigham Young U., 1954; MA, U. of Michigan, 1960.
Miner, Afton McGrath (1972) BA, Arizona State U., 1954; MLS, U. of California, Berkeley, 1963.
Moffat, Helen (1975) BA, U. of Utah, 1942; MA, Arizona State U., 1955; MA, U. of Denver, 1958.
Nelson, Donald K. (1961) BS, Utah State U., 1938; MLS, MBA, U. of Denver, 1945, 1948.
Nixon, John D. (1961) BS, Brigham Young U., 1957; MA, U. of Denver, 1961.
Pope, Elizabeth D. (1964) BA, MLS, Brigham Young U., 1943, 1971.
Richey, Melva (1985) BS, Utah State U., 1943; MLS, Brigham Young U., 1976.
Robertson, Russell C. (1973) BA, U. of California, Los Angeles, 1949; MLS, U. of Illinois, 1960; MEd, Brigham Young U., 1977.
Scott, Hollis (1961) BS, Brigham Young U., 1949.
Shields, Dorothy M. (1974) BA, Muskingum Coll., 1952; MLS, Case Western Reserve U., 1964; EdD, Brigham Young U., 1977.
Smith, Carol T. (1949) BA, Brigham Young U., 1940; MS, U. of Southern California, 1962.
Smith, Nathan M.(1966) BS, Eastern Oregon State Coll., 1961; MS, Oregon State U., 1965; MLS, PhD, Brigham Young U., 1969, 1972.
Webb, Beth R. (1966) BA, Brigham Young U., 1940; MA, U. of Denver, 1944.

Faculty

A

Abbott, Scott 206
Abegglen, JoAnn 302
Adams, Brent 399
Adams, K. Haybron 430
Adams, L. LaMar 359
Adams, Linda H. 173
Addy, George M. 218
Adolphson, Donald L. 256
Alba, Orlando 353
Albrecht, Sterling J. 430
Albrecht, Wm. Steve 75
Aldana, Steve 312
Alder, Zane G. 173
Alexander, Thomas G. 218
Alldredge, Joseph 370
Allen, A. Lester 407
Allen, Dell K. 265
Allen, James B. 60
Allen, James Vincent 117
Allen, Marti Lu 95
Allen, Murray F. 399
Allen, Phil S. 84
Allen, Phyllis Sloan 399
Allen, Sandra Birch 153
Allen, Von 399
Alley, Laura Ellen 302
Allman, Glenn Walker 279
Allman, Verl Phillips 407
Allred, David D. 319
Allred, G. Hugh 179
Allred, Keith W. 147
Allred, Mildred T. Ravsten 107
Allred, R. Chase 84
Allred, Ruel A. 370
Allred, Wallace E. 370
Allsen, Philip Edmond 312
Andersen, Blaine W. 275
Andersen, Dan W. 159
Andersen, Ferron L. 407
Andersen, H. Verlan 76
Andersen, Rayola H. 302
Andersen, William R. 117
Andersen, Wilson Kay 339
Anderson, C. Dixon 353
Anderson, Colleen 153
Anderson, Enid R. 370
Anderson, Neil J. 247
Anderson, Richard L. 337
Anderson, Richard Paul 297
Anderson, Shauna C. 279
Anderson, Stephen J. 141
Anderson, Travis T. 305
Anderson, Val Jo 117
Anderson, Vickie Lane 301
Andrus, Edwin K. 95
Andrus, Merritt B. 127
Andrus, Roman R. 253
Angerhofer, Paul J. 430
Arbizu, Ray L. 298
Archibald, James K. 164
Armstrong, Gerald M. 269
Arnold, David V. 165
Arnold, Marilyn 173
Arnoldsen, Larry M. 369
Arrington, Leonard J. 60
Ashby, Nadine T. 255
Ashford, Josette B. 189
Ashton, Alan C. 145
Ashton, Clarence D. 84
Ashworth, Peter P. 353
Astin, J. Sterling 431
Atwood, N. Duane 117
Austin, Edwin G. 153

B

Bachelder, Daniel F. 297
Backman, Milton V., Jr. 339
Baer, James L. 197
Baer, Lisa 431
Baer, William 431
Bahr, Howard M. 346
Bahr, Kathleen S 179
Bahr, Stephen J. 346
Baird, James E. 369
Baird, Joseph Hugh 370
Baker, Joseph O. 206
Baker, LeGrand L. 430
Baker, Roger C. 269
Baker, Sherry L. 141
Baker, William H. 255
Baldwin, Joan 301
Ball, Terry B. 337
Ballantyne, VerDon W. 172
Ballif, Jae R. 319
Ballif-Apanvill, Bonnie 331
Balling, Richard J. 133
Baltes, Paul J. 172
Bangerter, Blauer L. 312
Bankhead, Reid E. 337
Barainca, Denice 430
Barber, Brian K. 346
Barker, Dee H. 121
Barker, Ruel M. 312
Barlow, Brent Alvin 178
Barlow, Frances P. 179
Barlow, Sally H. 332
Barnes, Howard W. 254
Barnes, James R. 407
Barnes, Michael D. 211
Barnett, J. Dean 319
Barney, Ralph D. 141
Barrett, Ivan J. 339
Barrett, Robert 399
Barrett, Wayne W. 269
Barrett, William A. 145
Barrios, Pamela C. 430
Barron, Howard H. 339
Barrus, George S. 141
Barrus, Wallace M. 399
Barsch, Wulf E. 399
Bartholomew, Calvin H. 121
Bartholomew, Jewel A. 302
Bartholomew, Karen 107
Bartlett, Leonard L. 141
Barton, Garold C. 399
Bassett, Arthur R. 227
Bastian, Beth S. 179
Bateman, J. LaVar 141
Bates, Peter W. 269
Bates, Winifred W. 184
Bauer, Edith B. 147
Baugh, Alexander L. 339
Baugh, Dawna 135
Baumann, Richard W. 407
Beaman, Bruce W. 104
Bearce, Charles F. 376
Beard, Randal W. 165
Bearnson, Leroy W. 164
Beattie, Donna Kay 399
Beck, Jay V. 279
Beckham, Raymond E. 141
Beckstead, Merrill W. 121
Beckstrand, Renea L. 301

Beckwith, Scott W. 275
Bednar, Richard L. 331
Beecher, Maureen Ursenbach 60
Beier, Michael A. 431
Bekker, Demoyne 360
Belk, Mark C. 407
Bell, Douglas J. 360
Bell, Elouise M. 173
Bell, John D. 284
Bell, Mark E. 189
Bell, R. DerMont 255
Belnap, Parley L. 298
Belnap, R. Kirk 104
Belt, W. Dwayne 370
Benfell, V. Stanley 227
Bennett, Randy L. 284
Bennett, Richard E. 338
Bennion, George C. 173
Bennion, John S. 172
Bennion, Lynne A. 360
Bennion, Robert C. 332
Benson, Alvin K. 197
Benson, Larry D. 430
Benson, Reed Amussen 336
Bentley, Joseph T. 76
Bentley, Marion J. 387
Benzley, Steven E. 133
Berge, Dale L. 95
Berges, David A. 127
Bergin, Allen E. 331
Bernards, Dennis 430
Berrett, Lamar C. 339
Berrett, Marilyn 153
Berrett, Paul O. 165
Berrondo, Manuel 319
Berry, Judith 301
Berryessa, Max J. 370
Best, Brian S. 172
Best, Lorna Ruth Nielsen 172
Best, Myron G. 197
Bestor, Rollie R. 312
Beus, Gary B. 359
Beus, H. Lynn 145
Beutler, Ivan F. 178
Bigler, Erin D. 331
Bills, James L. 127
Bingham, Ronald D. 147
Bird, Penny C. 173
Birrell, James 369
Black, Catherine H. 153
Black, Hal L. 407
Black, Jan 370
Black, Susan Easton 338
Blackham, Angus Udell 128
Blackinton, David P. 297
Blake, Reed H. 342
Blakemore, Connie L. 312
Blanch, Mae (Mable) 173
Bloch, George J. 332
Blood, Dwight M. 253
Boerio-Goates, Juliana 127
Bohac, Rodney D. 218
Bohn, David Earle 327
Bond, Elaine 302
Boone, David F. 339
Booth, Eileen E. 360
Booth, Gary M. 407
Booth, Gordon D. 359
Boothe, Randall W. 297
Boren, Murray E. 297
Borup, M. Brett 133
Bosco, Robbie 312
Boswell, Grant M. 172
Bott, Randy L. 339
Boucher, William W., CPT 282
Bourgerie, Dana S. 104
Bowen, Donna Lee 327
Bowen, Walter D. 339
Bowles, Catherine 370
Bowman, Lawrence S. 165
Bowman, W. Jerry 275
Boyer, Glen L. 75
Bradford, Janet B. 430
Bradshaw, Jerald S. 127
Bradshaw, Merrill K. 298
Bradshaw, Willard H. 279
Bradshaw, William S. 284
Brady, F. Neil 256
Braithwaite, Lee F. 407
Brasher, Ruth E. 179
Brewerton, Cortney S. 78
Brimhall, Willis H. 197
Brinley, Douglas E. 338
Brinton, Bonnie 107
Britsch, R. Lanier 218
Britsch, Todd A. 227
Broadbent, H. Smith 128
Broadway, Marsha D. 430
Brockbank, Bruce 312
Broomhead, Paul G. 297
Brotherson, Jack D. 117
Brough, Ronald P. 297
Brower, Stephen L. 257
Brown, Bruce L. 332
Brown, Cheryl 247
Brown, Gail W. 147
Brown, J. Richard 228
Brown, Jack V. 353
Brown, Kendall W. 218
Brown, Linda W. 430
Brown, Lora Beth 184
Brown, Ralph 346
Brown, S. Kent 336
Brown, Thomas H. 189
Browning, Gary L. 206
Bryce, Gale Rex 359
Bryner, Gary 327
Bryson, Phillip J. 253
Buckwalter, Doyle W. 256
Budge, Harold S. 332
Budge, W. Don 133
Bule, Steven 399
Bullock, Kenneth C. 197
Bunderson, C. Victor 228
Bunker, Gary L. 332
Bunker, Robert E. 312
Burgener, O. Robert 211
Burlingame, Gary M. 332
Burnett, M. Dallas 141
Burnham, Catherine 135
Burr, Wesley R. 178
Burton, Alma P. 339
Burton, Gideon 172
Burton, Robert C. 145
Burton, Robert Preece 145
Busath, David D. 284
Bush, Douglas E. 297
Bush, Michael D. 189
Bushman, Jess R. 197
Butler, Eliot A. 128
Butler, Helen Julene 430
Butler, Lee A. 218
Butler, Mark H. 179
Butler, Terrell M. 227
Butterfield, Dennie D. 159
Butterworth, Edwin 141
Bybee, Howard C. 430

C

Cahoon, Owen W. 179
Calder, Glen H. 133
Calder, Rose Eyring 173
Caldwell, C. Max 339
Call, Ara O. 184
Call, C. Boyd 312
Call, Ivan T. 253
Call, Michael J. 227
Call, R. Steven 297
Call, Vaughn 346
Callister, Lynn Clark 301
Cameron, James B. 76
Cameron, Kim S. 255
Campbell, Douglas M. 145
Campbell, Jeffery L. 376
Campbell, L. Howard 359
Campbell, Lora Jean 301
Campbell, Milo Kay 369
Cannon, Brian Q. 218
Cannon, Donald Q. 338
Cannon, James W. 269
Cannon, John Francis 127
Cannon, John N. 275
Cannon, Kenneth Lynn 179
Card, Willard R. 370

Cardon, James H. 158
Cardon, Louis B. 218
Carlson, Gary 76
Carpenter, Bruce N. 332
Carter, K. Codell 305
Carter, Melvin W. 359
Carter, Perry W., II 265
Casper, Gordon C. 431
Castle, Raymond N. 128
Cates, Rex G. 117
Catherall, Thomas S. 335
Chabries, Douglas M. 164
Chadwick, Bruce A. 346
Chaffin, Beverly H. 302
Chahal, Jasbir S. 269
Chai, Henry K. 370
Chamberlain, Diane 312
Champion, Brian 430
Channell, Ron W. 107
Chapman, Arthur O. 407
Chapman, Don W. 172
Chapman, Ronald K. 360
Chase, Kenneth W. 275
Chaston, A. Norton 165
Chatterley, Louis J. 270
Cherrington, David J. 255
Cherrington, Jay Owen 75
Chilcoat, George 369
Child, Kierstin 431
Childs, Margaret S. 135
Choi, Dong Sull 338
Chow, Norman Y. H. 312
Chow, Shue-Sum 269
Christensen, Brian D. 399
Christensen, Bruce L. 141
Christensen, Clark G. 319
Christensen, Dean C. 159
Christensen, Edward L. 254
Christensen, Howard B. 359
Christensen, James Cal 399
Christensen, John Owen 430
Christensen, Kip W. 376
Christensen, Larry C. 145
Christensen, Maribeth 178
Christensen, Matthew B. 104
Christensen, Merrill J. 184
Christensen, Raymond V. 327
Christiansen, Eric H. 197
Christiansen, Henry N. 133
Christiansen, John R. 342
Christiansen, Nancy L. 172
Christiansen, Richard W. 164
Christofferson, Jay P. 376
Cindrich, Lawrence A. 399
Clark, Bruce B. 173
Clark, D. Cecil 369
Clark, David A. 270
Clark, Gregory 172
Clark, H. Clifford 370
Clark, Hazel C. 370
Clark, Hoover W. 189
Clark, John E. 95
Clark, Marden J. 173
Clark, Wayne Walter 158
Clark, Welsford Hone 370
Clarke, Darral G. 256
Clarke, Mark S. 312
Clawson, Robert G. 270
Clayton, Claudia J. 332
Clayton, Jackie 301
Clegg, J. Halvor 353
Clegg, John C. 165
Clement, Mark J. 145
Clemmer, Janice White 369
Clites, Willard E. 78
Cluff, Coran L. 128
Cluff, Jamie 247
Cluff, Russell M. 353
Cockayne, Susan 279
Coe, Donald A., LTC 282
Coleman, Craig E. 117
Collings, Bruce J. 359
Collings, Patti Burton 359
Collins, Kathryn 247
Comer, David J. 164
Comer, Donald T. 164
Compton, Lane A. 370
Compton, Merlin D. 353
Condie, Spencer J. 336
Conger, Cynthia O'Neill 301
Conlee, Robert K. 312
Conner, Gregory R. 270
Cook, R. Don 297
Coombs, C. Garn 369
Coon, Paul E. 211
Cope, Maxine J. 302
Corbridge, Ivan L. 158
Cornell, Aurel 145
Cornia, Gary C. 256
Cornwall, Marie 346
Cottle, Michaela V. 189
Cottrell, David M. 76
Coverston, Catherine R. 302
Covey, Stephen R. 256
Cowan, Richard O. 338
Cowles, David L. 172
Cox, Charles M. 254
Cox, Jordan 275
Cox, Paul Alan 117
Cox, Shirley E. 342
Cox, Soren F. 173
Cox, Troy 247
Cracroft, Richard H. 172
Craig, Marshall R. 173
Crandall, David P. 95
Crandall, Keith A. 284
Crandell, John M. 147
Crane, D. Russell 178
Crawford, Robert G. 254
Crawley, Peter L. 269
Crisler, Jesse S. 172
Cronin, Gloria L. 172
Crosland, Ivan A. 387
Crowe, Christopher E. 172
Cryer, Walter 312
Cundick, Bert P. 332
Curtis, Brandt B. 298
Curtis, George 312
Curtis, S. Rand, MAJ 282
Cutchins, Dennis R. 172
Cutler, Beverly R. 369
Cutler, Edward S. 172

D

D'Arc, James V. 387
Dahl, Larry Evans 338
Dahlin, Therrin C. 430
Daines, Delva 370
Daines, Robert H. 256
Daines, Russell L. 275
Dalebout, Richard S. 75
Dalley, Nelson Kent 127
Dalton, David 297
Daniel, Milton R. 430
Daniels, Philip B. 332
Dansie, R. E. 399
Dant, Doris R. 173
Darais, Alexander B. 399
Davidson, Bertha B. 370
Davies, J. Kenneth 254
Davis, Garold Neil 207
Davis, James A. 193
Davis, Norma 227
Davis, Richard 327
Davis, Susanne Johnson 153
Day, David 430
Day, Michael D. 399
Dayley, K. Newell 297
Daynes, Byron W. 327
Daynes, John Gary 218
Daynes, Kathryn 218
De Hoyos, Benjamin F. 335
De Hoyos, Genevieve 342
De Lassen, Jan 76
Dean, C. Edwin 145
Dearden, David V. 127
Debenham, Hadd Patrick 153
DeBloois, Nanci 227
Decker, Daniel L. 319
Denna, Eric L. 76
Dennis, Ronald D. 353
Detienne, Kristen B. 255
Devey, Ottella T. 179
Dibble, William E. 319

Dick, Gerald K. . . . 430
Dixon, Dwight R. . . . 319
Dollahite, David C. . . . 178
Donaldson, David M. . . . 279
Dorius, Guy L. . . . 339
Dowdle, Harold L. . . . 353
Downing, Lester N. . . . 147
Downs, Robert H. . . . 298
Downs, Wayne C. . . . 133
Doxey, Cynthia . . . 339
Doxey, Gary B. . . . 218
Doxey, Ruth T. Walker . . . 184
Drake, Richard . . . 301
Draper, David . . . 312
Draper, Larry . . . 430
Draper, Richard D. . . . 336
Draper, Thomas W. . . . 178
Duckwitz, Norbert H. O. . . . 227
Dudley, J. Duane . . . 319
Duerden, Richard Y. . . . 172
Duke, James T. . . . 346
Duncan, Dean W. . . . 387
Dunn, James W. . . . 370
Dunn, Paul, CPT . . . 282
Durham, Thomas L. . . . 297
Durrant, Earlene . . . 312
Durrant, George D. . . . 339
Dutton, Dean S. . . . 158
Duvall, Scott H. . . . 430
Dyches, Tina Taylor . . . 147
Dyer, Elaine D. . . . 302
Dyer, W. Gibb, Jr. . . . 256

E

Earl, Don L. . . . 298
Earle, Rodney S. . . . 369
Eastman, Paul F . . . 275
Eatough, Delbert J. . . . 127
Eddington, Keith . . . 399
Edwards, Clifford H. . . . 369
Edwards, Kay P. . . . 179
Edwards, Paul S. . . . 327
Edwards, R. LaVell . . . 312
Egan, Kathryn S. . . . 141
Egbert, Parris . . . 145
Eggington, William G. . . . 172
Ehlert, Michael B. . . . 332
Eide, Eric R. . . . 158
Eldredge, J. Lloyd . . . 369
Eliason, Eric A. . . . 172
Ellenburg, Doris . . . 430
Ellinger, Patricia R. . . . 302
Ellsworth, Carol . . . 179
Ellsworth, D. Delos . . . 84
Ellsworth, Richard G. . . . 173
Elton, Terry S. . . . 127
Embley, David W. . . . 145
Embry, Jessie L. . . . 219
Emmett, Chad F. . . . 193
England, Eugene . . . 172
England, J. Lynn . . . 346
Erickson, Dena . . . 247
Erickson, Lynnette B. . . . 369
Ervin, Gregory . . . 332
Espinosa, Robert . . . 430
Esplin, Patricia B. . . . 360
Esplin, Ronald K. . . . 60
Evans, David Louis . . . 173
Evans, Mark S. . . . 275
Evans, R. Paul . . . 284
Evenson, William E. . . . 319

F

Fails, Willis Clark . . . 353
Fairbanks, Daniel J. . . . 117
Fales, Susan L. . . . 430
Farahnakian, Mary . . . 135
Farmer, James L. . . . 407
Farnsworth, Dean B. . . . 173
Farnsworth, Lee W. . . . 327
Farnsworth, Paul B. . . . 127
Faulconer, James E. . . . 305
Fawcett, Stanley E. . . . 254
Fawson, Parker C. . . . 369
Fearnley, Lawrence . . . 269
Feinauer, Leslie L. . . . 178
Fellingham, Gilbert W. . . . 359
Felt, Paul E. . . . 337
Felt, Richard G. . . . 313
Ferguson, Daniel D. . . . 335
Ferguson, Stanley P. . . . 387
Fielding, Eric . . . 387
Firmage, D. Allan . . . 133
Fischer, Lane . . . 147
Fisher, A. Garth . . . 313
Flake, Chad J. . . . 431
Flammer, Philip M. . . . 218
Flanagan, Kelly J. . . . 145
Fleming, Donovan E. . . . 332
Fleming, Steven A. . . . 127
Fletcher, Charles T. . . . 327
Fletcher, Harvey J., Jr. . . . 270
Fletcher, Thomas H. . . . 121
Flick, Roger C. . . . 431
Flinders, Jerran T. . . . 117
Flinders, Neil J. . . . 159
Folsom, Marvin H. . . . 207
Fonseca, Fernando . . . 133
Forcade, Rodney W. . . . 269
Forste, Renata T. . . . 346
Forster, Merlin H. . . . 353
Forsyth, David P. . . . 141
Forsyth, Donald W. . . . 95
Fosbinder, Donna . . . 301
Fox, Charles Jay . . . 172
Fox, Frank W. . . . 218
Fox, William . . . 218
Frade, Patricia A. . . . 431
Francis, Janet O. . . . 430
Francis, Rulon S. . . . 313
Franz, Kay B. . . . 184
Free, Joseph C. . . . 275
Freeman, Robert C. . . . 339
French, Roger W. . . . 312
Friend, Tressa J. . . . 107
Fronk, Camille . . . 337
Frost, Herbert H. . . . 407
Frost, Richard L. . . . 164
Fry, Earl Howard . . . 327
Fugal, John P. . . . 339
Fuhriman, Dean K. . . . 133
Fujiki, Martin . . . 107
Fullmer, Susan . . . 184
Furhiman, Addie . . . 332
Furniss, H. Blaine . . . 117

G

Galbraith, David B. . . . 327
Galbraith, Richard C. . . . 178
Gale, Darwin F. . . . 147
Gale, Larrie E. . . . 387
Gandy, Max L. . . . 78
Garbe, Douglas G. . . . 269
Garcia, Ignacio . . . 218
García, Mara Lucy . . . 353
Gardner, Andrew L. . . . 319
Gardner, B. Delworth . . . 158
Gardner, John H. . . . 319
Gardner, John S. . . . 117
Gardner, Robert L. . . . 75
Gardner, Robert W. . . . 90
Garfield, Rulon Roy . . . 159
Garner, Lynn E. . . . 269
Garr, Arnold . . . 338
Garrard, Lamar E. . . . 339
Garrett, H. Dean . . . 338
Garrison, Carolyn . . . 179
Garrison, Ray H. . . . 76
Gassman, Byron W. . . . 173
Geary, Edward A. . . . 172
Gee, Burton C. . . . 270
George, Jim . . . 312
Germane, Geoffrey J. . . . 275
Gessel, Van C. . . . 104
Geurts, Michael D. . . . 253
Gheen, W. Lloyd . . . 376
Giauque, William C. . . . 253
Gibb, Gordon S. . . . 147
Gibb, Sara Lee . . . 153
Gibbons, Rendol L. . . . 298
Gibbons, W. Eugene . . . 342
Gibson, M. Carl . . . 353
Giddings, Luther D. . . . 127
Gill, Gurcharan S. . . . 269

Gillum, Gary P. . . . 430
Giovannetti, Geralyn . . . 297
Gleave, Robert L. . . . 360
Gledhill, Preston R. . . . 387
Glover, Steven M. . . . 76
Goates, J. Rex . . . 128
Goates, Steven R. . . . 127
Godfrey, Paul C. . . . 256
Gonzales, Ronald F. . . . 376
Goodliffe, Jay M. . . . 327
Goodman, A. Harold . . . 298
Goodwin, Reese J. . . . 133
Gowans, Frederick R. . . . 218
Graham, Charles Ray . . . 247
Graham, Daniel W. . . . 305
Grandstaff, Mark R. . . . 218
Grant, Charles . . . 370
Grant, Christopher P. . . . 270
Grant, David M. . . . 127
Grass, Nan Osmond . . . 173
Gray, Campbell . . . 399
Gray, Howard R. . . . 335
Green, Arnold H. . . . 218
Green, Edward E. . . . 228
Green, John A. . . . 189
Green, Jon D. . . . 227
Gregersen, Hal B. . . . 256
Grey, Alan H. . . . 193
Grierson, Sirpa T. . . . 172
Griffen, Dana Thomas . . . 197
Griffin, John R. . . . 327
Griffiths, Thomas A. . . . 141
Griggs, C. Wilfred . . . 336
Griggs, Karen . . . 431
Grimshaw, Scott D. . . . 359
Grover, Jerry D. . . . 376
Grover, Mark L. . . . 430
Gruppman, Igor . . . 297
Gubler, Clark J. . . . 128
Gubler, Donworth V. . . . 207
Gunn, Richard L. . . . 399

H

Hacken, Richard D. . . . 430
Hadlock, Neil . . . 399
Hafen, Brent Q. . . . 211
Hafen, William J. . . . 335
Hague, Daryl R. . . . 353
Hainsworth, Brad E. . . . 141
Hall, Blaine H. . . . 431
Hall, H. Tracy . . . 128
Hall, John F. . . . 227
Hall, Larry Thomas . . . 312
Hall, Wendell H. . . . 353
Hallen, Cynthia L. . . . 247
Halliday, Irene . . . 430
Haltern, Hagen G. . . . 399
Hamblin, William J. . . . 218
Hamblin, Wm. Kenneth . . . 197
Hamilton, Charles Mark . . . 399
Hammond, Kathleen B. . . . 301
Hammond, Marilyn . . . 302
Hammond, Ruth K. . . . 147
Hammond, Scott C. . . . 141
Hancock, Ralph C. . . . 327
Hanks, Richard W. . . . 121
Hanks, Wendy . . . 107
Hansen, Gary W. . . . 76
Hansen, H. Kimball . . . 319
Hansen, J. Merrell . . . 369
Hansen, James V. . . . 75
Hansen, John L. . . . 335
Hansen, Kathleen . . . 430
Hansen, Kristine . . . 172
Hansen, Lee Duane . . . 127
Hansen, Mark H. . . . 256
Hansen, Richard A. . . . 269
Hansen, Sharon . . . 370
Hanson, Garth A. . . . 255
Hanson, Kaye T. . . . 255
Harb, John N. . . . 121
Hardin, Perry J. . . . 193
Hardy, Garry Ray . . . 369
Hardy, John W. . . . 75
Hardy, Kenneth R. . . . 332
Harker, Alan R. . . . 279
Harker, Brian C. . . . 297
Harline, Craig E. . . . 218
Harmon, Frank W. . . . 370
Harms, Callis R. . . . 159
Haroldsen, Edwin O. . . . 141
Harper, James M. . . . 178
Harper, Kimball T. . . . 117
Harrell, Charles R. . . . 265
Harris, Claudia W. . . . 172
Harris, H. Jarolde . . . 298
Harris, James M. . . . 147
Harris, James R. . . . 337
Harris, John B. . . . 173
Harris, John S. . . . 173
Harris, R. Carl . . . 369
Harris, Richard . . . 107
Harrison, B. Kent . . . 319
Harrison, Bertrand F. . . . 117
Harrison, Betty D. . . . 147
Harrison, Grant V. . . . 228
Harrison, Joyce M. . . . 312
Harrison, Roger G. . . . 127
Hart, Craig H. . . . 179
Hart, David Kay . . . 206
Hart, David Kirkwood . . . 256
Hart, Edward L. . . . 173
Hart, Grant W. . . . 319
Hartley, William G. . . . 60
Hartman, Larry D. . . . 255
Hartshorn, Leon R. . . . 339
Haslam, Gerald M. . . . 218
Hassett, Michael J. . . . 172
Hatch, Dorian M. . . . 319
Hatch, Gary L. . . . 172
Hatton, Gaylen A. . . . 298
Haupt, Floyd E. . . . 270
Hawker, Alora Jane . . . 431
Hawkes, Lynda . . . 370
Hawkes, Nena Rey . . . 312
Hawkins, Alan J. . . . 179
Hawkins, Ernest W. . . . 90
Hawkins, John P. . . . 95
Hawkins, Richard T. . . . 128
Hawks, Val D. . . . 265
Hayes, Darwin L. . . . 173
Hays, Bill . . . 145
Hayward, C. Lynn . . . 407
Heaps, Richard A. . . . 360
Heath, Harvard . . . 430
Heaton, Alma . . . 335
Heaton, Hal B. . . . 253
Heaton, Howard S. . . . 275
Heaton, Israel C. . . . 159
Heaton, Tim B. . . . 346
Hecker, William C. . . . 121
Heckmann, Richard A. . . . 407
Hedengren, Paul C. . . . 305
Hedges, Andrew H. . . . 339
Hedman, Paul O. . . . 121
Hegstrom, Valerie . . . 353
Heil, Lillian H. . . . 370
Heiner, Barta . . . 387
Heiner, Steven W. . . . 211
Helps, C. Richard . . . 265
Henderson, E. Dean . . . 370
Hendrichsen, Lynn E. . . . 247
Hendrickson, A. Lemar . . . 173
Hendrix, Leland J. . . . 359
Heninger, Richard W. . . . 407
Henson, Charles A. . . . 387
Herlin, Wayne R. . . . 360
Hess, Brett C. . . . 319
Hess, Wilford M. . . . 117
Hicks, Michael D. . . . 297
Higbee, Kenneth L. . . . 332
Higgins, John C. . . . 145
Hill, Garth A. . . . 376
Hill, John M. . . . 184
Hill, Marvin S. . . . 218
Hill, Max W. . . . 319
Hill, Ned C. . . . 253
Hill, Sherron D. . . . 399
Hillam, Kenneth L. . . . 270
Hillam, Ray C. . . . 327
Hilton, H. Gill . . . 359
Hilton, John L. . . . 359
Hilton, Laurence M. . . . 107
Hilton, Sterling C. . . . 359

Hinckley, Edwin C. 376
Hinckley, Thomas K. 193
Hinshaw, Barbara C. 127
Hintze, Lehi F. 197
Hirschi, Willard M. 211
Hirst, Cyntha C. 313
Hite, Steven 159
Hobbins-Garbett, Debra 301
Hoffman, Shannon L. 431
Holley, Bruce F. 335
Hollist, W. Ladd 327
Holman, Curt 153
Holman, Thomas B. 179
Holman, William M. 297
Holmes, Andrew L. 254
Holmes, Blair R. 218
Holsinger, Donald 159
Holt, Ivin L. 265
Holzapfel, Richard Neitzel 339
Honey, David B. 104
Honey, Peggy 399
Hooker, Joyce S. 173
Hooper, Gary C. 117
Hoopes, Helen 430
Hoopes, Keith H. 90
Hoopes, Margaret H. 179
Hopkin, J. Arden 297
Horiuchi, Russell N. 193
Horrocks, Rodney Dwain 84
Horsley, A. Burt 339
Horton, Anne L. 342
Horton, Frank K. 173
Horton, George A., Jr. 337
Hoskisson, Joaquina Valtierra de . . 353
Hoskisson, Paul Y. 336
Houston, Stephen D. 95
Houze, Annick 430
Howard, Donald Hugh 430
Howard, Gary Ray 312
Howard, Janet M. 255
Howe, Keith R. 76
Howe, Susan 172
Howell, Larry L. 275
Howell, Robert J. 332
Hubbard, Ernest Dee 76
Huber, Clayton S. 184
Hudman, Lloyd E. 193
Hudson, Valerie M. 327
Hughes, John R. 141
Hull, Richard 399
Humpherys, Deverl S. 165
Humphries, Stephen P. 270
Hungerford, Curtiss R. 159
Hunsaker, O. Glade 172
Hunsman, Eric D. 227
Hunt, H. Keith 253
Hunter, Norah T. 84
Hunter, Tana 301
Huntington, Ray L. 337
Hurlbut, Jesse D. 189
Hurley, D. Richard 211
Hutchings, Brad 164
Hutchings, D. Mark 376
Hyatt, Norman F. 159
Hyer, Eric 327
Hyer, Paul V. 218

I

Infanger, Carlton A. 158
Ingle, Tony 312
Ingram, Cregg F. 147
Inouye, Dillon K. 228
Isaacs, Patricia C. 302
Isakson, Richard L. 360
Ivie, Evan Leon 145
Ivie, William E. 145
Izatt, Reed M. 128

J

Jaccard, Jerry 297
Jackson, Aaron P. 360
Jackson, Kent P. 336
Jackson, Richard H 193
Jackson, Robert B. 76
Jackson, T. Wendell 354
Jackson, W. Burke 256
Jacobs, Briant S. 173
Jacobs, James S. 369
Jacobson, Cardell K. 346
Jagchid, Sechin 218
Jakeman, M. Wells 95
James, Sherald W. 211
James, Sydney C. 158
Jamison, Ronald D. 269
Janetski, Joel C., ... 95
Jarman, Boyd O. 313
Jarvis, Donald K. 206
Jarvis, Tyler 270
Jaussi, August W. 407
Jeffery, Duane E. 407
Jeffery, Larry S. 84
Jeffs, Brian D. 164
Jellen, Eric N. 84
Jenkins, James 254
Jenkins, Jean R. 387
Jenkins, Ronda H. 376
Jensen, Allene 431
Jensen, C. Gregory 275
Jensen, Clayne R. 313
Jensen, David W. 133
Jensen, De Lamar 218
Jensen, Don C. 189
Jensen, Farrell E. 158
Jensen, Gordon K. 353
Jensen, James B. 279
Jensen, Larry C. 332
Jensen, Marcus M. 279
Jensen, Marian 302
Jensen, Mary Bee 154
Jensen, Michael 165
Jensen, Richard D. 430
Jensen, Richard L. 60
Jenson, Gloria Dawn 431
Jenson, Janet 431
Jerome, Emerald A. 141
Jessee, Dean C. 60
Jessop, Scott Gordon 297
Johansen, Franz M. 399
Johansen, Kathleen D. 430
Johansson, Carl-Erik 218
Johns, Sharon K. 76
Johnsen, Vickie 302
Johnson, A. Kent 265
Johnson, Barry L. 346
Johnson, Clark V. 338
Johnson, David J. 95
Johnson, Eldred A. 76
Johnson, F. Brent 279
Johnson, G. Wesley 327
Johnson, Garth 247
Johnson, John Hal 184
Johnson, Mark J. 399
Johnson, Mary Jayne 302
Johnson, Richard E. 346
Johnson, Richard W. 360
Johnson, Stanley 336
Johnson, Steven P. 297
Johnston, N. Paul 90
Johstoneaux, Raphael 172
Jolley, Von Dale 84
Jones, Dawnell 247
Jones, Douglas E. 319
Jones, J. Richard 313
Jones, Norman L. 133
Jones, Randall L. 206
Jones, Stephen M. 297
Jones, Steven E. 319
Jonsson, Jens J. 165
Jordan, K. Paul 431
Jorgensen, B. W. 172
Jorgensen, Clive D. 407
Jorgensen, Eleanor 135
Jorgensen, Evelyn P. 302
Judd, Allan M. 284
Julkunen, A. Olavi 312

K

Kagel, Richard I. 141
Kalt, Percy G. 298
Karren, Keith J. 211
Kaspar, Robert L. 284
Kaspar, Roger L. 127
Kearl, J. R. 158
Keele, Alan F. 206

Keith, Jeffrey D. 197
Kellems, Richard O. 90
Keller, David C. 302
Keller, Roger R. 339
Kelling, Hans-Wilhelm 206
Kelly, Michael R. 206
Kenney, Susan Hobson 297
Kim, Cha Bong 104
Kimball, C. Rodney 313
Kimball, M. Douglas 189
Kimball, W. Wayne, Jr. 399
King, Arthur Henry 173
King, Gail O. 430
Kirkham, Kate L. 256
Klein, Ilona 189
Klein, Shirley R. 179
Knapp, Stan J. 346
Knight, Larry V. 319
Knighton, Lennis M. 256
Knowles, Elmer M. 179
Knowles, John E. 90
Kohkonen, Kent E. 265
Kokol, Martin L. 369
Koller, Roland H., II 256
Kooyman, David L. 90
Koplin, Joanne W. 370
Kowallis, Bart J. 197
Kuchar, Marvin C. J. 127
Kunz, Phillip R. 346
Kunzler, John J., Jr. 265
Kupitz, Carla 430
Kupitz, Gabriele 431

L

Labrum, Marian B. 353
Laird, Robert William 370
Lamb, Barry 312
Lamb, Connie 430
Lamb, John D. 127
Lambert, L. Gary 189
Lambert, Michael J. 332
Lambert, Neal E. 172
Lambert, William R. 254
Lambson, Val E. 158
Lamoreaux, Jack W. 269
Lamson, Merle E. 431
Lang, William E. 269
Largey, Dennis L. 336
Larsen, A. Dean 431
Larsen, Jean M. 178
Larsen, Kenneth M. 270
Larsen, Lance E. 172
Larsen, Vernon W. 346
Larson, Everett Gerald 319
Larson, Jeffry H. 178
Larson, Jerry W. 353
Lawlor, Gary R. 270
Lawrence, A. Keith 172
Lawson, Jane M. 360
Lawson, John S. 359
Lawton, Robert A. 165
Laycock, Harold R. 298
Laycock, Ralph G. 298
Layton, Robert L. 193
Le Bras, Yvon R. 189
Leavitt, Ronald W. 279
LeBaron, E. Dale 338
Lee, Daryl P. 189
Lee, Evelyn Monson 135
Lee, John D. 279
Lee, Milton L. 127
Lee, Terry Nels 254
Lee, Tsaifeng (Mazie) 104
Leifson, June 302
Leishman, Courtney M. 312
Lephart, Edwin D. 284
Lewis, Kathryn 313
Lewis, Stella D. 179
Liddle, Stephen W. 76
Liechty, Elizabeth L. 135
Liechty, William R. 117
Lind, Charlene 135
Lindeman, Stephan D. 297
Lindsay, Gordon B. 211
Livingstone, Donald H. 76
Lloyd, Linda 370
Lo, Howard, Wen-Hao 430
Lockhart, Barbara D. 312
Lofgreen, Charlotte D. 173
Long, David G. 164
Lonsdale, Deryle W. 247
Losee, Ferril A. 165
Lounsbury, Richard C. 227
Low, Gordon M. 107
Lowe, Laurence 297
Lu, Kening 270
Lucido, Bonnie Rae 107
Luckau, Paul F. 207
Ludlow, Victor L. 336
Lund, Christopher C. 353
Lund, Randall J. 206
Lundquist, Michael E. 270
Lundquist, Suzanne E. 172
Lunt, Barry M. 265
Luthy, Melvin J. 247
Lyman, Emerson S. 154
Lyon, James K. 206
Lyon, Thomas E. 353
Lyons, Marilyn 301

M

Mabey, Matthew A. 197
Mabey, Melvin P. 327
MacArthur, James D. 360
Macfarlane, Roger T. 227
MacKay, Ruth Mary 173
Madrigal, Joseph L. 359
Madsen, Carol Cornwall 60
Madsen, John M. 336
Madsen, Truman G. 305
Magleby, David Blyth 327
Magleby, Francis R. 399
Magleby, Mark 399
Magleby, Spencer P. 275
Mandleco, Barbara L. 301
Mangelson, Nolan F. 127
Mangum, John H. 128
Mangum, Sandra 301
Manning, Alan D. 247
Marett, Kevin M. 342
Marlow, H. Carleton 218
Marostica, Matthew 327
Marshall, Donald R. 227
Marshall, Elaine S. Sorensen 301
Marshall, John F. 399
Marshall, Robert L. 399
Martin, Dennis G. 141
Martin, Loren 376
Martinez, Tony R. 145
Mason, Grant W. 319
Mason, James A. 298
Matheny, Ray T. 95
Mather, C. Glayd 265
Matheson, Kenneth W. 342
Matthews, Robert J. 337
Maughan, Michael L. 332
Maurer, Brian A. 407
Maynes, R. Daniel 275
Mayo, Alan L. 197
McAfee, Christopher 431
McAllister, LeRay L. 76
McArthur, Ross J. 376
McCleary, William R. 279
McClurg, Lynn E. 145
McConkie, Joseph F. 336
McCoy, J. Kelly 179
McDonald, James B. 158
McGown, Carl M. 312
McGuire, Diana L. 184
McKay, Steven 270
McKee, Trevor R. 179
McKell, Lynn J. 75
McKell, William E. 376
McKellar, J. Glen 173
McKendrick, John E. 173
McKinlay, Lynn A. 141
McKinnon, Gary F. 253
McKinnon, Max E. 376
McLain, Timothy W. 275
McNamara, D. Harold 319
McPherson, David L. 107
McQuay, Mardson Queiroz 275
McQueen, Grant R. 254
Mead, D. Eugene 178

Means, Robert 431
Measom, Gary 301
Meek, Christopher B. 256
Melby, Alan K. 247
Meléndez, Gloria S. 353
Memmott, Howard Kirk 430
Memmott, Rae Jeanne 301
Meredith, Robert Alan 353
Merrill, Byron 337
Merrill, Craig B. 254
Merrill, Ella E. 302
Merrill, John J. 319
Merrill, Paul F. 228
Merrill, R. Gaye 312
Merritt, LaVere B. 133
Meservy, Keith H. 337
Meservy, Raymond D. 76
Metten, Charles L. 387
Michaelis, Elaine 312
Michailova, Victoria V. 206
Midgley, Louis C. 327
Miller, A. Woodruff 133
Miller, Elva K. 370
Miller, Harold L., Jr. 332
Miller, J. Scott 104
Miller, Kevin R. 376
Miller, Shawn W. 218
Miller, Wade E. 197
Millet, Robert L. 336
Millet, W. Floyd 313
Mills, Debra Ann 302
Mills, Gordon E. 256
Miner, Afton McGrath 431
Miner, Gayle F. 165
Mitchell, Ana W. 184
Moffat, Helen 431
Moffitt, J. Weldon 256
Molinari, Deana 302
Monson, Samuel C. 173
Montgomery, David C. 218
Moody, J. Ward 319
Moody, Richard A. 360
Moon, H. Kay 354
Moore, Blaine H. 370
Moore, Glen 117
Moore, Hal G 270
Morgan David 387
Morrell, Barbara 360
Morrell, Edwin B. 327
Morrell, Jeannette 173
Morris, Thomas H. 197
Morrison, Timothy G. 369
Morse, Bryan S. 145
Mortensen, Kay S. 275
Moss, J. Joel 179
Moss, LaVelle R. 399
Mouritsen, Russell H. 141
Muhlestein, Daniel K. 172
Murphy, Elaine 302
Murphy, John J. 172
Murphy, Millene F. 302
Murray, Byron K. 279
Murray, Robert B. 254
Muse, Ivan D. 159
Musil, Pam 154
Myer, Peter L. 399
Myrer, William 312

N

Nadauld, Stephen D. 253
Naylor, Jay H. 335
Neiger, Brad L. 211
Nelson, Brent E. 164
Nelson, Donald K. 431
Nelson, Douglas C. 335
Nelson, George D. 387
Nelson, George Edward 255
Nelson, Glen T. 158
Nelson, H. Mark 319
Nelson, Jack Adolph 141
Nelson, Joyce 172
Nelson, K. LeRoi 128
Nelson, Laurie M. 228
Nelson, Marvin N. 370
Nelson, Ray D. 254
Nelson, Robert A. 387
Nelson, Sheldon D. 84
Nelson, Stephen T. 197
Nelson, Tracy W. 265
Nemirovskaya, Julia 206
Nemrow, Norman R. 76
Newitt, Jay S. 376
Newman, Parley W. 107
Ng, Yiu Kai (Dennis) 145
Nibley, Hugh W. 337
Nibley, Reid N. 298
Nicholes, Henry J. 407
Nielsen, Fred Kent 305
Nielsen, Kendall L. 370
Nielsen, Stevan L. 332
Nielson, Daniel L. 327
Nielson, Howard C. 359
Nielson, Karla 399
Nish, Dale L. 376
Nixon, John D. 431
Nixon, R. Paul 197
Noble, Cinzia D. 189
Noel, Robert Edward 312
Nordgren, Quentin R. 298
Nordmeyer, Francis R. 127
Norman, Judith L. 342
Norman, Theodore A. 145
Norris, Leslie 172
North, James A. 279
Norton, Beverly 430
Norton, Don E. 172
Norton, Elizabeth J. 332
Nyland, Nora K. 184
Nyman, Monte S. 337

O

O'Neill, Kim L. 279
Oakes, Keith R. 159
Oaks, Dallin D. 172
Oaks, Harold R. 387
Ogden, D. Kelly 337
Ogden, Lynn V. 184
Olsen, Burton K. 335
Olsen, Dan R. 145
Olsen, Randy J. 430
Olsen, Steven L 95
Olsen, Susanne Frost 179
Olson, Mel J. 312
Olson, Terrance D., ... 178
Orme, G. Craig 360
Orme, Leon E. 90
Orton, Bryce B. 76
Oscarson, John L. 121
Osguthorpe, Russell T. 228
Ostler, Craig J. 339
Ostler, Larry J. 430
Ostlund, Margaret F. 370
Ostraff, Joseph E. 399
Ott, J. Bevan 127
Otten, Leaun G. 339
Otterstrom, Samual M. 193
Ouyand, Tiancheng 270
Ovard, Glen F. 159
Oveson, Richard M. 254
Owen, Earl F. 265
Owen, Noel L. 127

P

Pace, George W. 339
Pace, R. Wayne 256
Pace, Ronald T. 90
Pack, Melvin Deloy 104
Packard, Dennis Jay 305
Packer, Thane J. 335
Palmer, Allen W. 141
Palmer, E. Paul 319
Palmer, Gary K. 335
Palmer, Glen O. 76
Palmer, Spencer J. 339
Park, Robert L. 90
Park, William Laird 158
Parkinson, Alan R. 275
Parkinson, Diane R. 430
Parkinson, Dilworth B. 104
Parrish, Alan K. 337
Parry, Catherine Corman 172
Parry, Donald W. 104
Parry, Joseph D. 227
Parsons, Robert Ernest 337

Parsons, Robert J. 256
Patch, Robert C. 337
Patterson, Kelly D. 327
Patterson, Robert S. 159
Paul, Danette 172
Paul, Edward G. 128
Paulsen, David L. 305
Paxman, David B. 172
Paxman, Monroe J. 327
Payne, I. Reed 332
Peacock, Martha M. 399
Pearce, Wayne E. 254
Pearcy, Thomas L. 218
Pearson, Dale F. 342
Peatross, Justin B. 319
Pedersen, Darhl M. 332
Pedersen, Elray 172
Peek, Cecilia M. 227
Peer, Larry H. 227
Peery, Irene W. 297
Peery, J. Craig 178
Pehrson, Kyle Lynn 342
Pella, Chris 312
Perkins, George W. 104
Perkins, Jerome M. 339
Perkins, Keith W. 338
Perry, Devern J. 255
Perry, Lee T. 256
Petersen, Betty J. 255
Petersen, Melvin J. 339
Petersen, Morris S. 197
Petersen, Ray A. 211
Petersen, Zina N. 172
Peterson, Blake 270
Peterson, Brent D. 256
Peterson, Bryan G. 319
Peterson, Daniel C. 104
Peterson, Donald L. 297
Peterson, Evan T. 346
Peterson, Fredric G. 76
Peterson, Mark A. 104
Peterson, Matt A. 127
Peterson, Paul H. 339
Pettys, Gregory L. 342
Phelan, C. Michael 335
Phillips, Kerk L. 158
Phillips, Michael D. 227
Phillips, R. Douglas 227
Phillips, Rebecca 154
Phillips, Wm. Revell 197
Pike, Oscar A. 184
Pincock, Stephen 312
Pinegar, J. Michael 253
Pinnegar, Stafinee 369
Pitt, William G. 121
Pixton, Paul B. 218
Plewe, Brandon 193
Plummer, Louise R. 172
Plummer, Thomas G. 206
Poduska, Bernard E. 179
Pollei, Mark B. 431
Pollei, Paul C. 297
Pollington, Andrew D. 269
Polve, James H. 275
Poole, R. Craig 312
Pope, Bill J. 121
Pope, C. Arden, III 158
Pope, Clayne L. 158
Pope, Elizabeth D. 431
Pope, Karl T. 387
Pope, Rulon D. 158
Porter, Blaine R., ... 179
Porter, Bruce D. 327
Porter, Christin L. 179
Porter, Larry C. 338
Porter, William C. 141
Potter, Norma 302
Powers, Timothy J. 312
Powley, E. Harrison 297
Pratt, Dale J. 353
Pratt, David H. 218
Pratt, Rosalie Rebollo 297
Pratte, Paul Alfred 141
Prawitt, Douglas F. 76
Price, Alvin H. 178
Pritchett, B. Michael 256
Pritchett, Clyde L. 407
Probst, Glen W. 247
Proctor, Paul D. 197
Prohosky, Caroline 153
Pugmire, Ronald J. 127
Pulfer, Adrian 399
Pullins, Gary D. 312

Q

Quackenbush, L. Howard 353
Quass, Dallan W. 76

R

Rabner, Lanell 431
Radebaugh, Lee Howard 75
Raisor, E. Max 275
Ramage, Thomas J. 312
Ramsey, Christiane E. 430
Ramsey, Myriam 354
Randall, Boyd C. 75
Randall, David M. 297
Randall, Vance 159
Ransom, Michael R. 158
Rasband, Mima 370
Rasband, S. Neil 319
Rasmussen, Dennis F. 305
Rasmussen, Ellis T. 337
Raty, Thomas Laine 399
Ream, Susan E. 173
Red, W. Edward 265
Reeder, Jesse W. 327
Rees, Lawrence B. 319
Reeve, JoAnn 370
Reeve, Rex C., Jr. 337
Reimschussel, Ernest F. 84
Rencher, Alvin C. 359
Reutzel, D. Ray 369
Reynolds, Lance 312
Reynolds, Noel B. 327
Rhee, Honam 104
Rhees, Reuben Ward 407
Rhoads, Gary K. 254
Rhodes, Ronald L. 211
Ricard, Mark 312
Rice, Michael D. 164
Rich, Owen S. 141
Richards, A. LeGrand 159
Richards, Dale O. 359
Richards, J. Morris 141
Richards, Mary Stovall 218
Richards, P. Scott 147
Richardson, Jed J. 141
Richardson, Matthew O. 339
Richey, Melva 431
Rickenback, J. Dean 254
Ricks, Stephen David 104
Riddle, Chauncey C. 305
Riddle, Lana B. 301
Ridenhour, Ted E. 173
Ridge, Robert D. 332
Rigby, J. Keith 197
Rigby, W. Dean 173
Riggs, Robert E. 327
Ripplinger, Donald H. 298
Ritchie, J. Bonner 256
Ritter, Scott M. 197
Robertson, Blaine 370
Robertson, John S. 247
Robertson, Russell C. 431
Robins, Morris J. 127
Robinson, Burton W. 332
Robinson, Clyde C. 179
Robinson, Donald W. 269
Robinson, Paul W. 332
Robinson, Stephen E. 336
Robinson, Todd F. 90
Robison, Clarence F. 211
Robison, Clayne W. 297
Robison, Laren R. 84
Robison, Parley P. 145
Robison, Richard A. 279
Roeder, Beverly L. 90
Rogers, Duke S. 407
Rogers, J. Keith 370
Rogers, Leon R. 376
Rogers, R. Max 207
Rogers, Sandra 301
Rogers, Thomas F. 206

Rollins, Boyd C. 346
Rollins, Kyle M. 133
Rollins, L. McKay 211
Rollins, Ralph L. 133
Romney, Marshall B. 75
Root, Richard R., CPT 282
Rose, Darrell E. 165
Rosen, Harold E. 354
Rosenberg, John R. 353
Rotz, Christopher A. 265
Roundy Bruce A. 117
Roundy, Elmo S. 313
Rowe, Fred A. 147
Rowe, Mark J. 184
Rowley, Maxine Lewis 179
Rowley, Richard L. 121
Rudy, Jill Terry 172
Rugh, Susan Sessions 218
Ruiz, Chris C. 360
Rush, J. R. 141
Rushforth, Samuel R. 117
Rushton, Patricia 301
Russell, Keith 312
Russell, Robert A. 104
Ryskamp, George R. 218

S

Sagers, Richard D., ... 279
Saito, Mitsuru 133
Sakamoto, Makato 312
Salazar, Richard D. 211
Salmon, Linton G. 165
Sampson, Scott E. 254
Samuelsen, Eric 387
Sanders, Wm. Gerard 256
Sargent, David H. 297
Savage, Paul B. 127
Sawaya, William J., Jr. 254
Scanlon, Rory R. 387
Schaalje, G. Bruce 359
Scharman, Janet S. 360
Schill, Ronald Lynn 253
Schmidt, Alice M. 302
Schmidt, Kenneth 312
Schulthies, Shane S. 312
Schwartz, Rosanne 301
Scoresby, A. Lynn 179
Scott, Del T. 359
Scott, Hollis 431
Seamons, Rhonda 370
Searle, June G. 370
Seawright, Kristie W. 254
Sederberg, Thomas W. 145
Seegmiller, Robert E. 407
Seely, David R. 337
Seggar, John F. 346
Seipel, Michael M. O 342
Selfridge, Richard H. 165
Shakespeare, William O. 172
Shane, Patrick 312
Shelley, Monte 247
Shields, Dorothy M. 431
Shields, L. Grant 337
Shiozawa, Dennis Kenji 407
Shirts, Randall B. 127
Shively, Ann Pye 360
Showalter, Mark H. 158
Shreeve, Lyman Sidney 354
Shumway, E. Gene 342
Shumway, J. Matthews 193
Shumway, Jeffrey L. 297
Shumway, Larry V. 227
Shumway, R. Phil 90
Shumway, Steven L. 376
Shupe, Merrill Grant 90
Shute, R. Wayne 159
Siebach, James L. 305
Siegfried, Brandie R. 172
Siegmund, Marianne 430
Silcox, Roy W. 90
Silvester, L. Jay 312
Simmons, Daniel L. 127
Simmons, Val E. 275
Simonsen, John M. 275
Sipherd, John W. 399
Sites, Jack W., Jr. 407
Skarda, R. Vencil 270
Skinner, Andrew C. 337
Skinner, Rulon Dean 335
Skousen, K. Fred 75
Skousen, Karl M. 76
Skousen, Royal 172
Skousen, W. Cleon 337
Slade, J. Keith 189
Slater, Bill G. 430
Slife, Brent D. 332
Slover, Robert H. 327
Slover, Tim 387
Smart, David 360
Smart, Karl L. 255
Smart, Merrill J. 265
Smith, Bruce Hixson 399
Smith, Bruce Nephi 117
Smith, C. Raymond 297
Smith, Carol T. 431
Smith, Christian B. 297
Smith, Craig C. 275
Smith, H. Duane 407
Smith, Harold T. 76
Smith, Jay M. 76
Smith, Kay H. 332
Smith, Kevin 265
Smith, Lamont W. 407
Smith, Marion K. 172
Smith, Marvin A. 128
Smith, Milton E. 254
Smith, Murray F. 207
Smith, Nathan M. 431
Smith, Ralph B. 159
Smith, Robert Baily 298
Smith, Robert J., ... 76
Smith, S. Harold 335
Smith, Scott M. 253
Smith, Stephanie Z. 370
Smith, Steven A. 360
Smith, Wilford E. 346
Smith, William V. 269
Smoot, L. Douglas 121
Snow, Donald Ray 269
Snow, Karl N. 158
Snow, Karl N., Jr. 257
Snow, Richard L. 128
Snyder, Phillip A. 172
Soares, Richard E. 430
Solen, Kenneth A. 121
Solovyova, Raisa 206
Sommerfeldt, Scott D. 319
Sommerfeldt, Vern 337
Sonderegger, Emory O. 76
Sondrup, Steven P. 227
Sorensen, Alma Don 327
Sorensen, Carl D. 265
Sorensen, Peter J. 172
Sorensen, Rodger D. 387
Sorenson, David M. 360
Sorenson, John L. 95
Sowell, Debra Hickenlooper 154
Sowell, Madison U. 189
Spaid, Wanda M. 342
Spangler, Diane 332
Speidel, Walter H. 207
Speiser, Robert David 269
Spencer, David E. 158
Spencer, Ross L. 319
Sperry, Kip 339
Spilker, Brian C. 76
Sprenger, Scott M. 189
St. Clair, Larry Lee 117
Staheli, Ronald J 297
Stahmann, Robert F. 178
Steed, Robin 370
Steele, Frost M. 184
Steineckert, Della N 135
Stephan, Eric G. 256
Stevens, Mikel R. 84
Stevenson, J. Grant 339
Stewart, Dave Nelson 75
Stice, James D. 76
Stiggins, Charles 312
Stimpson, David V. 332
Stirling, Keith H. 430
Stirling, Wynn C. 164
Stocking, Larry 370
Stocks, Kevin D. 75

Stocks, Maruice L. 78
Stoddard, Ted D. 255
Stokes, Gordon E. 145
Stokes, Harold T. 319
Stone, Bernell K. 253
Storrs, Jane G. 370
Stott, Michelle 206
Stout, Daniel A., Jr. 141
Stout, W. Douglas 399
Straubhaar, Joseph D. 141
Straubhaar, Sandra B. 206
Streuling, G. Fred 75
Strong, A. Brent 265
Strong, William J. 319
Strong-Krause, Diane 247
Stuart, Lila R. 297
Stubbs, Darrel W. 298
Stutz, Howard C. 117
Sucher, Floyd 370
Sudweeks, Richard R. 228
Sullivan, Clyde E. 332
Sullivan, Linda 399
Sutherland, Carolyn 302
Swain, Monte R. 76
Swensen, Albert D. 128
Swenson, Dale 430
Swenson, Janet L. 387
Swenson, Michael J. 254
Swenson, Sharon L. 387
Swindlehurst, A. Lee 165
Swinyard, William R. 253

T

Takasaki, Fred Y. 399
Talmage, Carol 302
Tanner, Elvin R. 342
Tanner, John S. 172
Tanner, Mark W. 247
Tanner, Stephen L. 172
Tanner, Wilmer W. 407
Tarbox, Norman C. 141
Tate, Charles D. 173
Tate, George S. 227
Tate, Karen E. 145
Taylor, Barbara J. 179
Taylor, Benjamin J. 319
Taylor, Celestia J. 173
Taylor, Dale H. 76
Taylor, David A. 399
Taylor, Hal L. 337
Taylor, James Scott 353
Taylor, Sally T. 172
Taylor, Stanley A. 327
Taylor, Weldon J. 254
Taylor-Ortega, Jacqueline 270
Telford, John 399
Terry, Elvis B. 298
Terry, Richard Ellis 84
Terry, Ronald E. 121
Thackeray, Renee 135
Thayer, Douglas H. 172
Thomas, Darwin L. 346
Thomas, Glen E. 147
Thomas, Gordon K. 173
Thomas, John Alfred 173
Thomas, M. Catherine 337
Thomas, Paul R. 172
Thomas, Robert K. 173
Thompson, Chantal P. 189
Thompson, Dennis L 327
Thompson, Mary J. 135
Thompson, Michael P. 255
Thomsen, Steven R. 141
Thomson, Woodruff C. 173
Thorley, Steven R. 254
Thorne, James M. 127
Thorp, Malcolm Ray 218
Thorstenson, Clark T. 335
Threlfall, Timothy A. 387
Thurgood, Glen S. 133
Thursby, Jacqueline 172
Thurston, Norman K 158
Thwaits, Richard N. 90
Thygerson, Alton L. 211
Tidwell, William D. 117
Tiedeman, Mary E. 301
Tillery, Chloe Ann 301
Timm, Paul Roy 255
Timothy, Darren P. 158
Tingey, David G. 197
Tippetts, Frank M. 399
Tipton, Vernon J. 407
Tobler, Douglas F. 218
Todd, Henry S. 145
Todd, Robert 265
Todd, Sally M. 147
Tolley, H. Dennis 359
Tolman, L. Kirk 270
Tolman, Marvin N. 369
Tolman, Richard R. 407
Tolman, Wilford J. 265
Top, Brent 339
Toronto, James A. 339
Torres, John C. 346
Tree, Dale R. 275
Tucker, Karl L. 313
Tucker, Larry 312
Tuckett, Glen C. 211
Tullis, F. LaMond 327
Tunnell, Michael O. 369
Turley, Jeffrey 353
Turley, R. Steven 319
Turnblom, Grant W. 430
Turner, Lavell G. W. 184
Turner, Norman C. 189
Turner, Rodney 337
Tuttle, Marie 370

U

Ulrich, Richard D. 275
Unlandt, Nicolaas G. W. 189
Urie, Paul McKay 145
Urquiga, Laureen C. 430

V

Valenti, JoAnn M. 141
Valentine, Amy Y. 354
Valentine, Ann 312
Vallentine, John F. 117
Van Alfen, Curtis N. 159
Van Mondfrans, Adrian P. 228
Van Orden, Bruce A. 338
Vance, Barbara Jane 179
VanCott, John W. 117
Vanfleet, Howard B. 319
VanHuele, Jean-François S. 319
Vernon, Leo P. 128
Vetterli, R. Richard 327
Vickers, Betty J. 313
Vincent, Lawrence P. 297

W

Wahlquist, Elizabeth 172
Wakefield, Bernard Lee 153
Walker, DeWayne M. 312
Walker, Oscar Lee 387
Walker, Ronald W. 60
Walker, Steven C. 172
Wallace, Lu 313
Wallace, Lynn P. 133
Wallentine, Max V. 90
Walter, Charles N. 270
Walters, Lawrence C. 256
Walton, Elaine 342
Walton, Wilbur T. 147
Ward, Carol 346
Ward, David M. 165
Ward, G. Robert 360
Warner, C. Terry 305
Warner, Charles Y. 275
Warner, Ted J. 218
Warnick, J. Paul 104
Warnick, Myrna 301
Wasden, F. Del 159
Watabe, Masakazu 104
Waters, Max L. 255
Waterstradt, Jean Anne 173
Watkins, Arthur R. 207
Watson, Wendy L. 178
Watt, Gerald D. 127
Watts, Stanley H. 313
Weatherford, Douglas 353

Weaver, Max D. 399
Webb, Beth R. 431
Webb, Brent W. 275
Webb, Bruce L. 84
Webb, Clark D. 159
Weber, Darrell Jack 117
Weight, David G. 332
Wells, M. Gawain 332
Wells, Thomas 430
Welsh, Stanley L. 117
Wentworth, Nancy M. 370
West, Dale H. 173
Westover, Keith R. 430
Westover, V. Robert 218
Westwood, Brad 430
Wheeler, Barbara R. 342
Wheeler, Gloria E. 256
Whetten, David A. 256
Whipple, Walter 206
White, Clayton M. 407
White, J. Morgan 76
Whitehead, Armand T. 407
Whitehurst, Alan 145
Whiting, David G. 359
Whiting, Gordon C. 141
Whiting, Michael 284
Whitlark, David B. 254
Whitman, Charles W. 387
Whittaker, David J. 430
Whitton, Leslie 117
Wickes, Harry E. 270
Widmer, Mark A. 335
Wiggins, Marvin E. 430
Wight, Marjorie 173
Wight, Theodore A. 270
Wiker, Kathleen M. 301
Wilberg, Mack J. 297
Wilcox, Brad 370
Wilcox, Ray T. 370
Wilde, Doran 165
Wilding, W. Vincent 121
Wilkes, Doran F. 275
Wilkins, Alan L. 256
Wilkinson, Carol 312
Willardson, Barry M. 127
Wille, Milton G. 275
Willey, Kayla 430
Williams, C. Frank 84
Williams, Carwin C. 327
Williams, Clyde 337
Williams, David D. 228
Williams, Gary S. 104
Williams, Glenn R. 298
Williams, Marleen S. 360
Williams, Mary 301
Williams, Ray S. 173
Williams, Richard N. 332
Williams, Steven R. 270
Willmuth, Thomas J., MAJ 282
Wilson, Arnold 133
Wilson, Brent D. 254
Wilson, Byron J. 128
Wilson, Keith J. 337
Wilson, Laurie 141
Wilson, Mary Louise 302
Wilson, Sven E. 327
Wilson, William A. 173
Wimmer, Larry T. 158
Winder, William W. 407
Windley, Phillip J. 145
Winkler, Albert L. 430
Winterrose, Geneva 370
Witbeck, Alan R. 312
Wolfgramm, Harold F. 370
Woller, Gary M. 256
Wolsey, Heber G. 141
Wood, Camilla S. 302
Wood, Joseph S. 218
Wood, Larry Eugene 332
Wood, Stephen L. 407
Woodbury, Lael J. 387
Woodbury, Richard C. 165
Woodfield, Brian F. 127
Woodfield, Leon W. 75
Woodfield, Scott N. 145
Woodward, Ralph 298
Woodward, Scott R. 279
Woodworth, Warner P. 256
Wooley, Kenneth M. 254
Woolley, Bruce H. 184
Woolley, Earl M. 127
Woolley, Ronald L. 275
Woolstenhulme, Loreen Allphin . . . 117
Wootton, Richard R. 147
Worsham, Ronald G. 76
Worthen, Vaughn E. 360
Wrathall, Mark A. 327
Wright III, Raymond S. 338
Wright, David C. 218
Wright, David G. 269
Wright, Dennis A. 339
Wright, Donald N. 279
Wright, Doris Lewis 135
Wright, John 430
Wright, N. Dale 256
Wright, Norman Edgar 218
Wright, Norman Edward 145
Wright, Thomas C. 431
Wynn, Jan Eugene 270

Y

Yang, Basil P. 430
Yarn, David H. 305
York, Neil Longley 218
Youd, T. Leslie 133
Young, Bruce W. 172
Young, James R. 147
Young, Janet R. 370
Young, Lawrence A. 346

Z

Zanandrea, Maria 312
Zimmerman, Beverly B. 172
Zimmerman, S. Scott 127

Index

A

Abbreviations and Symbols vi
ABC Report 2
Abroad, Study 232
Academic Advisement 2
Academic Areas, Coordinators or Directors of 428
Academic Environment 1
Academic Freedom at Brigham Young University, Statement on . . xvii
Academic Honesty Policy 6
Academic Integrity, Faculty 8
Academic Plan (MAP), Major 2
Academic Progress
See Academic Standards 34
Academic Progress, Satisfactory 21
Academic Recognition
See Scholastic Recognition 40
Academic Record Appeals Committee, Student 39
Academic Scholarships 17
Academic Standards 34
Academic Support Office 3, 413
Academic Support Services, Deans and Directors of 427
Academic Units, Deans of 426
Accountancy and Information Systems, School of 73
Accreditation and Affiliations 421
ACT
See American College Test 11
Acting
See Theatre and Media Arts 377
Adding and Dropping Classes 32
Adherence to University Standards 40
Administration 426
Administration, Business
See Marriott School of Management 248
Administration, Educational
See Educational Leadership and Foundations 159
Administrative Officers BYU—Hawaii Campus 426
Administrative Officers, University 426
Admission Deadlines 10
Admission, Early 11
Admissions 10
Admissions Deferment
See Deferment 12
Admissions Policy 10
Advanced Degrees
See Graduate Studies 3
Advanced Languages
See General Education 45
Advanced Placement (AP) Credit . . 13
Advanced Writing
See General Education 45
Advantages of Honors, The 50
Advertising
See Communications 136
Advisement, Academic 2
Advisement Centers, College 2, 428
Advisement Personnel, Preprofessional 428
Aerospace Studies, (Air Force ROTC) 77
Affiliations, Accreditation and 421
African Studies 233
Afrikaans Courses 198
Agribusiness
See Agronomy and Horticulture 79
See Animal Science 86
See Botany and Range Science . . . 110
See Economics 155
Agricultural Economics
See Economics 155
Agriculture and Food Institute, Ezra Taft Benson 56
Agriculture Station, BYU 56
Agriculture, College of Biology and 55
Agronomy and Horticulture 79
Aid and Scholarships, Financial . . . 17
AIM 2
Aims of a BYU Education, The xiii
Air Force ROTC
See Aerospace Studies 77
Akkadian Language
See Asian and Near Eastern Languages 96
Alcuin Fellows 429
Alumni Association 413
American College Test (ACT) 11
American Heritage 85
American Indian Languages
See Linguistics 243
American Indian Student Services
See Multicultural Student Services 415
American Minorities Student Services
See Multicultural Student Services 415
American Sign Language Courses 246
American Studies 234
American Studies, Latin 239
American Studies, Native 217
Ancient Scripture
See Religious Education 43, 336
Animal Science 86
Anthropological Collections
See Museum of Peoples and Cultures 4
Anthropology 91
Apartments
See Housing 23
Apparel Studies
See Clothing and Textiles 134
AP Credit 13
Appeals Committee, Student Academic Record 39
Applicants, Former Student 12
Applicants, Graduate Nondegree . . . 13
Applicants, International Student . . . 12
Applicants, New Freshman 10
Applicants-U.S., Transfer 11
Application Fee
See Admissions 10
Application for Graduation 40
Applications for Campus Housing 23
Approved Housing, University- . . . 24
Arabic 102
Aramaic Language
See Asian and Near Eastern Languages 96
Archaeology
See Anthropology 91

Architecture
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
See Technology Education and Construction Management 371
Army ROTC
See Military Science 280
Art
See Visual Arts 388
Art, Museum of 4
Arts and Communications, College of Fine 61
Arts and Sciences
See General Education 45
Arts Series, Performing 4
Arts, Fine 180
Arts, Theatre and Media 377
Arts, Visual 388
Asian and Near Eastern Languages 96
Asian Studies 234
Assemblies
See Devotionals and CES Firesides 1
See University Forums 2
Astronomy, Physics and 315
Athletic Facilities 5
Athletic Training
See Physical Education 306
Athletics
See Recreational Environment 5
Attendance at Commencement 40
Audiology and Speech-Language Pathology 105
Auditing Classes 33
Austronesian Languages 246
Automobile Registration 419
Awards
See Financial Aid and Scholarships 17

B

Baccalaureate Degree Requirements 41
Bachelor of Independent Studies (BIS)
See Degrees by Independent Study 411
Bachelor's Program, Professional
See College of Engineering and Technology 57
Ballet
See Dance 148
Ballroom Dance
See Dance 148
Bean Life Science Museum, M. L. . . 4, 56
Behavioral Sciences, Social and
See General Education 45
Benson Agriculture and Food Institute, Ezra Taft 56
Bicycle Registration 419
Biochemistry, Chemistry and 122
Biology 108
Biology and Agriculture, College of 55
Biology, Molecular 283
See both the College of Biology and Agriculture and the Department of Chemistry and Biochemistry. 55, 122
BIS
See Degrees by Independent Study 411
Block, Registration
See Academic Standards 34
Board and Room
See Housing 23
Board of Education and BYU Board of Trustees, Church 426
Book of Mormon
See Religious Education 43
Bookstore 413
Botanical Collections
See M. L. Bean Life Science Museum 4, 56
Botany and Range Science 110
Boy Scouts of America
See Recreation Management and Youth Leadership 333
Brigham Young University, The Mission of xii
Broadcasting
See Communications 136
Bulgarian Courses 198
Business
See Marriott School of Management 248
Business Administration
See Marriott School of Management 248
Business Management, Institute of 251
BYU Agriculture Station 56
BYU Conference Center 410
BYU Honor Code 6
BYU Housing Referral Service 24
BYU Stakes and Wards 1
BYU Student Service Association (BYUSA) 418
BYU—Hawaii Campus, Administrative Officers 426
BYUSA
See BYU Student Service Association (BYUSA) 418

C

Calendar, University viii
Campus Life 413
Campus Visiting Hours 8
Campus Visits 414
Canadian Studies 236
Cantonese
See Chinese 97
Cantonese Courses 101
Career Center, Counseling and . . . 414
Career Planning Services 3
Cartography
See Geography 190
Catalog, Using This vi
Center for International Studies, David M., Kennedy 231
Center for Near Eastern Studies, Jerusalem 229
Center for Studies of the Family 59
Center for the Study of Christian Values in Literature 63
Center for Western Studies, Charles Redd 219
Center, BYU Conference 410
Center, Counseling and Career . . . 414
Center, English Language 63
Center, Humanities Research 64
Center, Religious Studies 44
Center, Student 418
Center, Student Health 419
Centers and Institutes, Research . . . 428
Centers for Continuing Education 410
Central, and South American Indian Languages, North, ... 247
Ceramics
See Visual Arts 388
Certification (For Students with a Baccalaureate Degree), Teacher . . . 13
Certification, Application for 70
CES Continuing Education Programs
See Division of Continuing Education 409
CES Firesides, Devotionals and 1
Chair of Religious Understanding, Richard L. Evans 44
Chairs and Professorships 429
Chairs or Directors of Departments of Instruction 427
Chairs or Directors of Professional Institutes and Programs 428
Challenge Examinations, Exemption and 48

Change Between Part-Time and Full-Time, Tuition Adjustment—Status 14
Change Courses, Reservation of Right to iii
Changes, Grade 35
Changes in Registration
See Adding and Dropping Classes 32
Charles Redd Center for Western Studies 219
Cheating 7
Chemical Engineering 118
Chemistry and Biochemistry 122
Childhood Education, Early 361
Chinese 97
Choosing a Major, On 25
Choral Music
See School of Music 285
Christian Values in Literature, Center for the Study of 63
Church Educational System Employment, Preparation for 44
Church History and Doctrine
See Religious Education 43, 337
Church History, Joseph Fielding Smith Institute for 60
Cinema
See Theatre and Media Arts 377
Civil and Environmental Engineering 129
Civilization
See General Education 45
Clark Law School, J. Reuben 67
Class Fees 15
Class Preparation Time 33
Classical Languages
See Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature 220
Classics, and Comparative Literature, Humanities 220
Classification of Students 36
CLEP Credit 13
Clothing and Textiles 134
Coaching
See Physical Education 306
Code, BYU Honor 6
Collection Fees, Debt 16
Collections, Anthropological
See Museum of Peoples and Cultures 4, 60
Collections, Botanical
See M. L. Bean Life Science Museum 4, 56
Collections, Zoological
See M. L. Bean Life Science Museum 4, 56
College Advisement Centers 2, 428
College Expenses, Estimated 16
College Level Examination Program (CLEP) Credit 13
College of Biology and Agriculture 55
College of Engineering and Technology 57
College of Family, Home, and Social Sciences 59
College of Fine Arts and Communications 61
College of Health and Human Performance 62
College of Humanities 63
College of Nursing 65
College of Physical and Mathematical Sciences 66
Colloquia, Honors 50
Commencement, Attendance at . . . 40
Communication, Management
See Organizational Leadership and Strategy
Communications 136
Communications, College of Fine Arts and 61
Community Health Education
See Health Sciences 208
Community Planning
See Geography 190
Community School
See Educational Leadership and Foundations 159
Comparative Literature, Humanities, Classics, and 220
Competition, Extramural 5
Competition, Intercollegiate 5
Composition
See English 167
See School of Music 285
Comprehensive Clinic 414
Computer Engineering, Electrical and 160
Computer Science 142
Computer Support 414
Computers 414
Computers and the Humanities
See Linguistics 243
Concurrent Credit Transfer Policy 11
Concurrent Enrollment at BYU 11
Conduct
See BYU Honor Code 6
Conducting
See School of Music 285
Conference Center, BYU 410
Conferences and Workshops 409
Conservation
See Botany and Range Science . . . 110
Construction Management, Technology Education and 371
Continuing Education, Centers for 410
Continuing Education, Division of 409
Continuing Student Ecclesiastical Endorsement 9
Cooperative Education and Internships 3
Coordinators or Directors of Academic Areas 428
Correspondence Courses
See Independent Study 409
Correspondence, and Incomplete Credit, Deadlines for Transfer, ... 40
Cost of Attending BYU
See Estimated College Expenses 16
Costume Design
See Clothing and Textiles 134
CougarNet 414
Counseling and Career Center 414
Counseling and Special Education 146
Course Numbering System vi
Creative Activities at BYU, Research and 3
Credit Completed at Centers for Continuing Education, Religion . . . 44
Credit from Non-LDS Colleges and Universities, Religion 44
Credit Transfer Policy, Concurrent 11
Credit While on Suspension, Earning BYU 38
Credit, Advanced Placement (AP) 13
Credit, College Level Examination Program (CLEP) 13
Credit, Correspondence
See Independent Study Credit 40
Credit, D Grade 41
Credit, Deadlines for Transfer, Correspondence, and Incomplete 40
Credit, Independent Study 40
Credit, International Baccalaureate (IB) 13
Credit, Purchasing. See Credits. 37
Credit-Hour Designations vi
Credit-Hour Requirement, Total . . . 41
Credits 37
Crop and Soil Science
See Agronomy and Horticulture 79
Cultural Environment 4

Cultures, Museum of Peoples and 4, 60
Cum Laude 40
Czech Courses 199

D

D Grade Credit 41
Daily Universe
See Communications 136
Dance 148
Dance Theatre, Music
See Dance 148
See School of Music 285
See Theatre and Media Arts 377
Danish Courses 205
David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies 231
David O. McKay School of Education 69
Deadlines for Transfer, Correspondence, and Incomplete Credit 40
Deadlines, Admission 10
Deans and Directors of Academic Support Services 427
Deans of Academic Units 426
Debt Collection Fees 16
Deferment 12
Degrees by Independent Study . . . 411
Degrees Offered
See Alphabetical List of Undergraduate Majors at Brigham Young University 26
Dental Hygiene
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Dentistry
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Departmental Honors General Education Courses 53
Departmental Honors Sections 51
Departments of Instruction, Chairs or Directors of 427
Design
See Visual Arts 388
Design, Fashion
See Clothing and Textiles 134
Design, Graphic
See Visual Arts 388
Design, Industrial
See Visual Arts 388
Design, Interior
See Visual Arts 388
Development, Human
See Family Sciences 174
Development, International 237
Development, Student 360
Devotionals and CES Firesides 1
Dietetics
See Food Science and Nutrition . . . 181
Dining Services 415
Directing
See Theatre and Media Arts 377
Directors of Academic Areas, Coordinators or 428
Directors of Academic Support Services, Deans and 427
Directors of Departments of Instruction, Chairs or 427
Directors of Professional Institutes and Programs, Chairs or 428
Directors of University Support Services 427
Directory iii
Disabilities
See Services for Students with Disabilities 413
Discontinuance 39
Discontinuance, Tuition Charge/Refund— 15
Discrimination
See Equal Opportunity Office 415
See Statement of Nondiscrimination iii
Dismissal
See Academic Standards 34
Division of Continuing Education 409
Doctrine, Church History and
See Religious Education 43, 337
Dormitories
See On-Campus Housing 23
Double Major 41
Drafting
See Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology 258
Dramatic Arts
See Theatre and Media Arts 377
Drawing
See Visual Arts 388
Dress and Grooming Standards 8
Driver Safety Education
See Health Sciences 208
Dropping Classes, Adding and 32
Dutch Courses 199

E

EAC
See David O. McKay School of Education 69
Early Admission 11
Early Childhood Education 361
Earning BYU Credit While on Suspension 38
Earning Lower Degree After Receiving Higher Degree 40
Earth and Space Science Education
See Geology 194
Ecclesiastical Endorsement, Continuing Student 9
Ecology
See Botany and Range Science . . . 110
Economics 155
Economics Courses, Managerial
See Business Management 251
Economics, Home
See Family Sciences 174
Education and Construction Management, Technology 371
Education and Internships, Cooperative 3
Education Certification, Elementary 13
Education Certification, Secondary 13
Education Internships 70
Education, Counseling and Special 146
Education, David O. McKay School of 69
Education, Division of Continuing 409
Education, Early Childhood 361
Education, Elementary 362
Education, Engineering and Technology 166
Education, General 45
Education, Physical 306
Education, Religious 43, 336
Education, Secondary 365
Education, Teacher 361
Education, University Honors 50
Educational Leadership and Foundations 159
Egyptian Language
See Asian and Near Eastern Languages 96
Electrical and Computer Engineering 160
Electronics Engineering Technology 259
Elementary Education 362
Elementary Education Certification 13
Eligibility
See Registration 32
Eligibility Requirements
See Financial Aid and Scholarships 17
Employment Services, Student . . . 418
Endorsement, Continuing Student Ecclesiastical 9

Engineering and Technology Education . . . 166
Engineering and Technology, College of . . . 57
Engineering Technology, Electronics . . . 259
Engineering Technology, Manufacturing Engineering and . . . 258
Engineering Technology, Manufacturing Engineering and Manufacturing . . . 261
Engineering, Chemical . . . 118
Engineering, Civil and Environmental . . . 129
Engineering, Electrical and Computer . . . 160
Engineering, Mechanical . . . 271
English . . . 167
English as a Second Language
See Linguistics . . . 243
English to Students of Other Languages (TESOL) Teaching . . . 244
English Language Center . . . 63
Enrollment at BYU, Concurrent . . . 11
Entomology
See Zoology . . . 401
Entrance Requirements
See Admissions . . . 10
Entrepreneurship
See Marriott School of Management . . . 248
Environment, Academic . . . 1
Environment, Cultural . . . 4
Environment, Recreational . . . 5
Environment, Religious . . . 1
Environmental and Occupational Health and Safety
See Health Sciences . . . 208
Environmental Engineering, Civil and . . . 129
Environmental Science
See Agronomy and Horticulture . . . 79
Equal Opportunity Office . . . 415
Ernest L. Wilkinson Center . . . 418
ESL
See Teaching English to Students of Other Languages . . . 244
Estimated College Expenses . . . 16
Estonian Courses . . . 199
European Studies . . . 236
Evans Chair of Religious Understanding, Richard L. . . . 44
Evening Classes . . . 409
Examination Program (CLEP) Credit, College Level . . . 13
Examinations, Final . . . 33
Examinations, Exemption and Challenge . . . 48
Exception to University Financial Aid Policy . . . 22
Exception to University Policy
See Student Academic Record Appeals Committee . . . 39
Exemption and Challenge Examinations . . . 48
Exercise
See Dance . . . 148
See Physical Education . . . 306
Exhibitions, and Showcases, Faculty and Student Performances, . . . 5
Expenses, Estimated College . . . 16
Extramural Competition . . . 5
Ezra Taft Benson Agricultural and Food Institute . . . 56

F

Fabrication or Falsification . . . 7
Facilities Management
See Technology Education and Construction Management . . . 371
Faculty Academic Integrity . . . 8
Faculty Advisors . . . 2
Faculty and Student Performances, Exhibitions, and Showcases . . . 5
Falsification, Fabrication or . . . 7
Families, Residences for . . . 23
Family Health
See Health Sciences . . . 208
Family History–Genealogy . . . 212
Family Living
See Family Sciences . . . 174
Family Programs, CES
Continuing Education Youth and . . . 410
Family Sciences . . . 174
Family, Center for Studies of the . . . 59
Family, Home, and Social Sciences, College of . . . 59
Farm and Ranch Management
See College of Biology and Agriculture . . . 55
Fashion Design
See Clothing and Textiles . . . 134
Fashion Merchandising
See Clothing and Textiles . . . 134
Federal Financial Aid
See Financial Aid and Scholarships . . . 17
Federal Pell Grant . . . 20
Federal Parent Loan for Undergraduate Students (PLUS) . . . 21
Federal Programs . . . 20
Fee, Application
See Admissions . . . 10
Fees, Tuition and . . . 14
Field Studies and Internships, International . . . 232
Fijian Language
See Austronesian Languages . . . 246
Film
See Theatre and Media Arts . . . 377
Final Examinations . . . 33
Finance
See Marriott School of Management . . . 248
Financial Aid and Scholarships . . . 17
Fine Arts . . . 180
Fine Arts and Communications, College of . . . 61
Fines, Miscellaneous Fees and . . . 15
Finnish Courses . . . 205
Firesides, Devotionals and CES . . . 1
First-Year Writing
See General Education . . . 45
Folk Dance
See Dance . . . 148
Food Institute, Ezra Taft Benson Agriculture and . . . 56
Food Science and Nutrition . . . 181
Forages
See Botany and Range Science . . . 110
Foreign Language Requirement, Mathematics or
See General Education . . . 45
Foreign Language Student Residence . . . 23, 63
Foreign Relations
See David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies . . . 231
Former Student Applicants . . . 12
Forums, University . . . 2
Found, Lost and . . . 418
Freedom at Brigham Young University, Statement on Academic . . . xvii
French and Italian . . . 185
Freshman Applicants, New . . . 10
Full Disclosure
See Admissions . . . 10
Full- or Part-Time Status . . . 33
Full-Time Status for Graduate Students, Verification of . . . 33

G

GE
See General Education . . . 45
GE and the Honors Program . . . 47

Gender Awareness Training
See Equal Opportunity Office . . . 415
Genealogy
See History 212
General Education 45
General Education Courses, Honors Departmental 53
General Education Program (table) 46
General Education Requirements for the Baccalaureate Degree 41
Genetics
See Agronomy and Horticulture 79
See Animal Science 86
See Botany and Range Science . . . 110
See Zoology 401
Geography 190
Geology 194
German 199
Germanic and Slavic Languages . . . 198
Government
See Political Science 320
GPA
See Grade Point Average Requirement 41
Grade Changes 35
Grade Credit, D 41
Grade Point Average Requirement 41
Grade Reports 36
Grade Values, Letter 35
Grade Values, Numeric 36
Grading 35
Graduate Nondegree Applicants . . . 13
Graduate Studies 3, 71
Graduation 40
Graduation Requirements 40
Graduation with University Honors, Requirements for 51
Graduation, Application for 40
Grant, Federal Pell 20
Grants
See Financial Aid and Scholarships 17
Graphic Design
See Visual Arts 388
Greek
See Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature 220
Grievances, Resolving Academic . . . 36
Grooming Standards, Dress and 8
Guidance
See Counseling and Career Center 414

H

Handicapped Student Services
See Services for Students with Disabilities 413
Harassment
See Equal Opportunity Office 415
Harold B. Lee Library 1
Harold B. Lee Library Personnel
See Harold B. Lee Library 431
Hawaii Campus, Administrative Officers, BYU— 426
Hazardous Materials
See Risk Management and Safety 417
Health and Human Performance, College of 62
Health and Human Performance Services 62
Health Center, Student 419
Health Insurance Requirement 16
Health Professions Advisement Center 55
Health Sciences 208
Hebrew 103
Heritage, American 85
Heritage Halls 23
High School Preparation 10
Higher Education
See Educational Leadership and Foundations 159
Hindi Courses 102
History 212
History and Doctrine, Church
See Religious Education 43, 337
History, Joseph Fielding Smith Institute for Church 60
Holds, Registration 33
Holds, Transcript Record 37
Home Economics
See Family Sciences 174
Home Study
See Independent Study 40, 409
Home, and Social Sciences, College of Family, ... 59
Honesty Policy, Academic 6
Honor Code, BYU 6
Honors at Graduation, University 50
Honors Center and Special Honors Activities 51
Honors Colloquia 50
Honors Education, University 50
Honors General Education
See GE and the Honors Program 47
Honors General Education Courses, Departmental 53
Honors Program, GE and the 47
Honors Sections, Departmental 51
Honors Seminars 51
Honors, Academic
See Scholastic Recognition 40
Honors, University 40, 51
Horticulture, Agronomy and 79
Hours per Semester/Term, Maximum 33
Housing Referral Service, BYU 24
Housing, Off-Campus 24
Housing, On-Campus 23
Housing, University-Approved 24
Human Development
See Family Sciences 174
Human Performance, College of Health and 62
Human Resources
See Organizational Leadership and Strategy 255
Humanities Research Center 64
Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature 220
Humanities, College of 63
Hungarian Courses 202
Hygiene, Dental
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416

I

IAS
See International and Area Studies 233
IB Credit 13
Icelandic Courses 205
ID Center 415
Illustration
See Visual Arts 388
Incomplete Credit, Deadlines for Transfer, Correspondence, and . . . 40
Incomplete Grade Policy
See Grading 35
Independent Study 409
Independent Study Credit 40
Independent Study, Degrees by . . . 411
Indian Languages, American
See Linguistics 243
Indonesian Language
See Austronesian Languages . . . 246
Industrial Design
See Visual Arts 388
Industrial Education
See Technology Education and Construction Management . . . 371
Information Center 418
Information Systems, School of Accountancy and 73
Institute for Church History, Joseph Fielding Smith 60

Institute of Public Management, Romney 256
Institute of Marketing: Retail, Sales, and Services 257
Institute, Ezra Taft Benson Agriculture and Food 56
Institute, Summer Language 64
Institute, Women's Research 400
Institutes and Programs, Chairs or Directors of Professional 428
Institutes, Research Centers and . . . 428
Instructional Applications Services 414
Instructional Psychology and Technology 228
Insurance Requirement, Health 16
Integrity, Faculty Academic 8
Intercollegiate Competition 5
Interdisciplinary Courses vii
Interior Design
See Visual Arts 388
International and Area Studies (IAS) Courses 233
International Baccalaureate (IB) Credit 13
International Business
See David M. Kennedy Center for International Studies 231
International Development 237
International Field Studies and Internships 232
International Option (Engineering) 58
International Student Applicants . . . 12
International Studies 238
International Studies, David M. Kennedy Center for 231
Internships, College of Education . . . 70
Internships, Cooperative Education and 3
Internships, International Field Studies and 232
Intramural Activities 5
Italian 188
Italian, French and 185

J

J. Reuben Clark Law School 67
Japanese 99
Jerusalem Center for Near Eastern Studies 229
Jobs
See Student Employment Services 418
Joseph Fielding Smith Institute for Church History 60
Journalism
See Communications 136

K

Karl G. Maeser Professors 429
Kennedy Center for International Studies, David M. 231
Korean 100

L

Landscaping
See Agronomy and Horticulture 79
Language Center, English 63
Language Credit by Examination . . . 63
Language Institute, Summer 64
Language Pathology, Audiology and Speech- 105
Language Student Residence, Foreign 23, 63
Language, Mathematics, Requirement, Foreign
See General Education 45
Languages
American Sign 246
Asian and Near Eastern 96
Austronesian 246
English 167
French and Italian 185
Germanic and Slavic 198
North, Central, and South American Indian 247
Spanish and Portuguese 347
Welsh 247
Languages of Learning 45
Late Registration 32
Late Tuition Payment Fee 15
Latin
See Humanities, Classics, and Comparative Literature 220
Latin American Studies 239
Latin Scholastic Distinctions 40
Latvian Courses 202
Law
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Law School, J. Reuben Clark 67
LDS Seminary 11
Leadership and Foundations, Educational 159
Leadership and Strategy, Organizational 255
Leadership, Recreation Management and Youth 333
Learning Disabilities
See Services for Students with Disabilities 413
Learning Information Center, Career and 414
Learning Resource Centers 1
Lee Library Personnel, Harold B. . . . 431
Lee Library, Harold B. 1
Letter Grade Values 35
Liberal Arts Core 47
Library Personnel, Harold B. Lee . . 431
Library, Harold B. Lee 1
Life Science Museum, M. L. Bean . . 4, 56
Linguistics 243
Literature
See English 167
Literature, Center for the Study of Christian Values in 63
Literature, Humanities, Classics and Comparative 220
Literature, Near Eastern Languages and 102
Lithuanian Courses 202
Living Standards, Residential 8
Loan, BYU Short-Term 20
Loans
See Financial Aid and Scholarships 17
Logic
See Philosophy 303
London
See Study Abroad 232
Long-Term Loans
See Financial Aid and Scholarships 17
Lost and Found 418
Lower Degree After Receiving Higher Degree, Earning 40
LRCs
See Learning Resource Centers 1
Lytle Preserve 56

M

Maeser Professors, Karl G. 429
Magna Cum Laude 40
Major Academic Plan (MAP) 2
Major Education 45
Major Requirements 41
Major, Double 41
Major, On Choosing a 25
Majors at Brigham Young University, Alphabetical List of Undergraduate 26
Management
See Marriott School of Management 248
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Management and Youth Leadership, Recreation 333
Management Communication Courses 255
Management, Business 251
Management, Romney Institute of Public 256
Management, Marriott School of . 68, 248

Management, Technology Education and Construction 371
Managerial Economic Courses 254
Mandarin Chinese
See Chinese 97
Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering Technology 258
Manufacturing Engineering and Manufacturing Engineering Technology 261
Maori Language
See Austronesian Languages 246
MAP 2
Marketing: Retail, Sales, and Service, Institute of 257
Marriage and Family
See Family Sciences 174
Marriott School of Management . 68, 248
Materials/Service Fees 15
Mathematical Sciences, College of Physical and 66
Mathematics 266
Mathematics, Requirement, Foreign Language or
See General Education 45
Maximum Hours per Semester/Term 33
McKay School of Education, David O. 69
Mechanical Engineering 271
Media
See Communications 136
See Theatre and Media Arts 377
Medical Services
See Student Health Center 419
Medical Technology
See Microbiology 276
Medicine
See Nursing 65, 299
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Merchandising, Fashion
See Clothing and Textiles 134
Microbiology 276
Military Science (Army ROTC) 280
Military Service, Credit for
See Admissions 10
Mineralogy
See Geology 194
Minorities Student Services
See Multicultural Student Services 415
Minors at Brigham Young University, Alphabetical Listing of Undergraduate 29
Mission of Brigham Young University, The xii
Modern Dance
See Dance 148
Molecular Biology 283
See also the College of Biology and Agriculture and the Department of Chemistry and Biochemistry. 55, 122
Mormon, Book of
See Religious Education 43
Motion Pictures
See Theatre and Media Arts 377
Multicultural Student Services 415
Multimedia
See Theatre and Media Arts 377
Museum of Art 4
Museum of Peoples and Cultures . . 4, 60
Museum, M. L. Bean Life Science . . 4, 56
Music, School of 285
Music Dance Theatre
See Dance 148
See School of Music 285
See Theatre and Media Arts 377
Music Fees
See Tuition and Fees 14
Music Requirement, Foreign Language, Mathematics,
See General Education 45
Musicology
See School of Music 285

N

Native American Studies 217
Natural Sciences
See General Education 45
Navajo Language
See North, Central, and South American Indian Languages . . . 247
Near Eastern Languages and Literature 102
Near Eastern Languages, Asian and 96
Near Eastern Studies 240
Near Eastern Studies, Jerusalem Center for 229
New Freshman Applicants 10
New Student Orientation 2
New Testament
See Religious Education 43
Night School
See Evening Classes 409
Niuean Language
See Austronesian Languages 246
Non-LDS Colleges and Universities, Religion Credit from 44
Non-Mormons
See Other Religious Denominations 1
Nondegree Applicants, Graduate . . 13
Nondiscrimination, Statement of iii
North, Central, and South American Indian Languages 247
Norwegian Courses 206
Notations on Transcript, Special 37
Numbering System, Course vi
Numeric Grade Values 36
Nursery Science
See Agronomy and Horticulture 79
Nursing 299
Nursing, College of 65
Nutrition, Food Science and 181

O

Off-Campus Housing 24
Off-Campus Visiting Hours 8
"Old" Graduation Requirements and Credit, Policy on 41
Old Testament
See Religious Education 43
On-Campus Housing 23
Open Major Advisement 415
Operations Management
See Business Management 251
Optometry
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Organizational Leadership and Strategy 255
Orientation, New Student 2
Other Religious Denominations 1
Outdoor Recreation
See Recreation Management and Youth Leadership 333
Outdoors, A Great 5

P

Painting
See Visual Arts 388
Paleontology
See Geology 194
Parent Loan for Undergraduate Students (PLUS) 21
Parent, Services for Single 417
Parking Permits 419
Part-Time Status, Full- or 33
PE
See Dance 148
See Physical Education 306
Pearl of Great Price
See Religious Education 43
Pell Grant, Federal 20
Peoples and Cultures, Museum of 4, 60
Performance
See Dance 148
See School of Music 285
See Theatre and Media Arts 377

Performances, Exhibitions, and Showcases, Faculty and Student 5
Performing Arts Series 4
Personal and Career Counseling Services 415
Petrology
See Geology 194
Pharmacy
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Philosophy 303
Photography
See Visual Arts 388
Physical and Mathematical Sciences, College of 66
Physical Education 306
Physical Science 314
Physical Therapy
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Physician's Assistant
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Physics and Astronomy 315
Physiology
See Physical Education 306
See Zoology 401
Placement Center
See Counseling and Career Services 414
Placement (AP) Credit, Advanced 13
Plagiarism 6
Playwriting
See Theatre and Media Arts 377
PLUS Loan, Federal
See Parent Loan for Undergraduate Students 21
Podiatry
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Police, Parking, Traffic, and Security, University 419
Policy on "Old" Graduation Requirements and Credit 41
Policy, Admissions 10
Policy, Concurrent Credit Transfer 11
Policy, Exception to University Financial Aid 22
Policy, Student Records 36
Polish Courses 202
Political Science 320
Portuguese, Spanish and 347
Practicum Fees, Student Teaching/ 15
Pre–Physical Therapy
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Prearchitecture
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
See Technology Education and Construction Management 371
Precollege Mathematics
See General Education 45
Predentistry
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Prelaw
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Premedicine
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Preparation Time, Class 33
Preparation, High School 10
Preprofessional Advisement Personnel 428
Preprofessional Programs 416
Preserve, Lytle 56
Preveterinary Medicine
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Printing
See Technology Education and Construction Management 371
Printmaking
See Visual Arts 388
Probation
See Academic Standards 34
Professional Bachelor's Program
See College of Engineering and Technology 57
Professional Institutes and Programs, Chairs or Directors of 428
Professorships, Chairs and 429
Progress, Rate of
See Academic Standards 34
Progress, Satisfactory Academic . . . 21
Psychology 328
Psychology and Technology, Instructional 228
Public Management, Romney Institute of 256
Public Policy
See Political Science 320
Public Relations Studies
See Communications 136
Public School Administration
See Educational Leadership and Foundations 159

R

Radio
See Communications 136
Ranch Management, Farm and
See College of Biology and Agriculture 55
Range Science, Botany and 110
Rarotongan Language
See Austronesian Languages . . . 246
Rate of Progress
See Academic Standards 34
Recognition Each Semester, Scholastic 36
Recognition, Scholastic 40
Record Appeals Committee, Student Academic 39
Record Holds, Transcript 37
Records 36
Records Policy, Student 36
Recreation Management and Youth Leadership 333
Recreational Environment 5
Redd, Center for Western Studies, Charles 219
Referral Service, BYU Housing 24
Refund—Discontinuance, Tuition Charge/ 15
Refund Rate Schedule 15
Refunds for Class Fees 15
Regional Planning
See Geography 190
Registration 32
Registration Block
See Academic Standards 34
Registration, Automobile 419
Registration, Bicycle 419
Registration, Changes in
See Adding and Dropping Classes 32
Registration, Late 32
Rehabilitation
See Physical Education 306
Religion Credit Completed at Centers for Continuing Education 44
Religion Credit from Non-LDS Colleges and Universities 44
Religion Requirements 43
Religion Requirements for the Baccalaureate Degree 41
Religious Denominations, Other 1
Religious Education 43, 336
Religious Environment 1
Religious Studies Center 44
Religious Understanding, Richard L. Evans Chair of 44
Repeating Classes 38
Replenishment, Alumni Association 18
Reports, Grade 36
Requirement, Grade Point Average 41
Requirement, Residency 41
Requirement, Total Credit Hour 41
Requirement, Upper-Division 41

Requirements and Credit, Policy on "Old" Graduation 41
Requirements for Graduation with University Honors 51
Requirements, Baccalaureate Degree 41
Requirements, Graduation 40
Requirements, Major 41
Requirements, Religion 43
Research and Creative Activities at BYU 3
Research Centers and Institutes . . . 428
Research Institute, Women's 400
Reservation of Right to Change Courses iii
Reserve Officers Training Corps (ROTC)
See Aerospace Studies, (Air Force ROTC) 77
See Military Science (Army ROTC) 280
Residence Halls for Men and Women 23
Residence, Foreign Language Student 23, 63
Residences for Families 23
Residency Requirement 41
Residential Living Standards 8
Resource Centers, Learning 1
Resource Management
See Geography 190
Retail, Sales, Service, Institute of Marketing: 257
Richard L. Evans Chair of Religious Understanding 44
Ricks Center for Continuing Education, BYU- 410
Right to Change Courses, Reservation of iii
Risk Management and Safety 417
Romney Institute of Public Management 256
Room and Board
See Housing 23
ROTC
See Aerospace Studies, (Air Force ROTC) 77
See Military Science (Army ROTC) 280
Russian 202

S

Safety
See Risk Management and Safety 417
Safety Education
See Health Sciences 208
Salt Lake Center for Continuing Education, BYU- 410
Samoan Language
See Austronesian Languages 246
SAT
See International Student Applicants 12
Satisfactory Academic Progress 21
Scandinavian Studies 204
Scholarship Policies, General University 20
Scholarships, Financial Aid and . . . 17
Scholastic Aptitude Test
See International Student Applicants 12
Scholastic Recognition 40
Scholastic Recognition Each Semester 36
Scholastic Standards
See Academic Standards 34
School Administration
See Educational Leadership and Foundations 159
School Health Education
See Health Sciences 208
School of Accountancy and Information Systems 73
School of Education, David O. McKay 69
School of Management, Marriott . 68, 248
School of Music 285
School of Social Work 340
School Teaching
See Teacher Education 361
School, J. Reuben Clark Law 67
Science and Nutrition, Food 181
Science Education, Earth and Space
See Geology 194
Science Museum, M. L. Bean Life . . 4, 56
Science, Computer 142
Science, Physical 314
Science, Political 320
Sciences, College of Family, Home, and Social 59
Sciences, College of Physical and Mathematical 66
Sciences, Family 174
Sciences, Health 208
Scouting
See Recreation Management and Youth Leadership 333
Scripture, Ancient
See Religious Education 43
Sculpture
See Visual Arts 388
Second Degree (Second Major/Additional Major) 13
Secondary Education 365
Secondary Education Certification 13
Security, University Police, Parking, Traffic, and 419
Semester System vi
Semester, Scholastic Recognition Each 36
Semesters Offered
See Using This Catalog vi
Seminars, Honors 51
Seminary, LDS 11
Seminary Teaching
See Religious Education 43
Serbo-Croatian Courses 204
Service
See BYU Student Service Association (BYUSA) 418
Service Fees, Materials/ 15
Services Available on Campus 413
Services for Single Parents 417
Services for Students with Disabilities 413
Services, Health and Human Performance 62
Sewing
See Clothing and Textiles 134
Sexual Harassment
See Equal Opportunity Office . . . 415
Short-Term Loan, BYU 20
Showcases, Faculty and Student Performances, Exhibitions, and 5
Sign Language, American 246
Signature Card 418
Single Parents, Services for 417
Slavic Languages, Germanic and . . 198
Smith Institute for Church History, Joseph Fielding 60
Social and Behavioral Sciences
See General Education 45
Social Sciences, College of Family, Home, and 59
Social Security Number
See Admissions 10
Social Work, School of 340
Sociology 343
Soil Science, Crop and
See Agronomy and Horticulture 79
South American Indian Languages, North, Central, and . . 247
Space Science Education, Earth and
See Geology 194
Spanish and Portuguese 347
Special Courses and Conferences
See Conferences and Workshops 409
Special Education, Counseling and 146

Speech
See Communications 136
Speech-Language Pathology, Audiology and 105
Sports
See Physical Education 306
See Recreational Environment 5
Stafford Loans
See Federal Programs 20
Stakes and Wards, BYU 1
Standards
See BYU Honor Code 6
Standards, Academic 34
Standards, Adherence to University 40
Standards, Dress and Grooming 8
Standards, Residential Living 8
Statistics 355
Status Change Between Part-Time and Full-Time, Tuition Adjustment— 14
Status, Full- or Part-Time 33
Strategy, Organizational Leadership and 255
Student Academic Record Appeals Committee 39
Student Center: Ernest L. Wilkinson Center 418
Student Development 360
Student Development Course Work 4
Student Employment Services 418
Student Health Center 419
Student Health Plan
See Health Insurance Requirement 16
Student Housing
See Housing 23
Student Loans
See Financial Aid and Scholarships 17
Student Performances, Exhibitions, and Showcases, Faculty and 5
Student Records Policy 36
Student Residence, Foreign Language 23, 63
Student Service Association (BYUSA), BYU 418
Student Teaching/Practicum Fees 15
Study Abroad 232
Summa Cum Laude 40
Summer Language Institute 64
Support Office, Academic 3, 413
Suspension
See Academic Standards 34
Suspension, Earning BYU Credit While on 38
Swedish Courses 206
Symbols, Abbreviations and vi

T

Tagalog Language
See Austronesian Languages 246
Tahitian Language
See Austronesian Languages 246
Tax Information, Important 21
Teacher Certification (For Students with a Baccalaureate Degree 13
Teacher Education 361
Teaching
See Teacher Education 361
Teaching English to Students of Other Languages (TESOL) 244
Teaching/Practicum Fees, Student 15
Technology Education and Construction Management 371
Technology Education, Engineering and 166
Technology Management Degree Programs, Engineering/ 254
Technology, College of Engineering and 57
Technology, Electronics Engineering 259
Technology, Instructional Psychology and 228
Technology, Manufacturing Engineering and Engineering 258
Technology, Manufacturing Engineering and Manufacturing Engineering 261
Telecommunication Services 419
Television
See Communications 136
See Theatre and Media Arts 377
TESOL
See Teaching English to Students of Other Languages . . . 244
Testing Services 415
Textiles, Clothing and 134
Thai Courses 102
Theatre and Media Arts 377
Theatre, Music Dance
See Dance 148
See School of Music 285
See Theatre and Media Arts 377
Theatrical Costume Design
See Clothing and Textiles 134
Therapeutic Recreation
See Recreation Management and Youth Leadership 333
Therapy, Physical
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Time, Class Preparation 33
Tongan Language
See Austronesian Languages . . . 246
Total Credit-Hour Requirement 41
Tourism, Travel and
See Geography 190
Traffic, and Security, University Police, Parking, ... 419
Training, Athletic
See Physical Education 306
Transcript Record Holds 37
Transcript, Special Notations on 37
Transfer Applicants—U.S. 11
Transfer College Credit
See Admissions 10
Transfer Policy, Concurrent Credit 11
Transfer, Correspondence, and Incomplete Credit, Deadlines for 40
Travel and Tourism
See Geography 190
Travel Study 410
Trustees, Church Board of Education and BYU Board of 426
Tuition Adjustment—Status Change Between Part-Time and Full-Time 14
Tuition and Fees 14
Tuition Charge/Refund—Discontinuance 15
TV
See Communications 136
See Theatre and Media Arts 377

U

Ukrainian Courses 204
Undergraduate Education at BYU 45
Undergraduate Majors at Brigham Young University, Alphabetical List of 26
Undergraduate Minors at Brigham Young University, Alphabetical List of 29
Universe, Daily
See Communications 136
University Administrative Officers 426
University-Approved Housing 24
University Calendar viii
University Computing Services . . . 414
University Forums 2
University Honors 40
University Honors at Graduation . . . 50
University Honors Education 50

University Honors,
Requirements for Graduation
with 51
University Library
See Harold B. Lee Library 1
University Police, Parking,
Traffic, and Security 419
University Standards,
Adherence to 40
University Support Services,
Directors of 427
University-Approved Housing 24
Upper-Division Requirement 41
Using This Catalog vi
Utah State Legislature Internship . . 320

V

Values in Literature, Center for the
Study of Christian 63
Verification of Full-Time Status
for Graduate Students 33
Veterans Support 420
Veterinary Medicine
See Preprofessional Programs . . . 416
Vienna
See Study Abroad 232
Vietnamese Courses 102
Visiting Hours, Campus 8
Visiting Hours, Off-Campus 8
Visits, Campus 414
Visual Arts 388
Visual Communication
See Visual Arts 388

W

Wards, BYU Stakes and 1
Warning
See Academic Standards 34
Washington Seminar
See Political Science 320
Welsh Courses 247
Western Studies, Charles Redd
Center for 219
Wildlands and Wildlife
See Botany and Range Science . . . 110
See Zoology 401
Wilkinson Center
See Student Center 418
Withdrawal from Classes 33
Withdrawal from the University
See Discontinuance 39
Withdrawn Ecclesiastical
Endorsement 9
Women's Research Institute 400
Women's Services and Resources . . . 413
Women's Studies 400
Women's Studies Minor 59
Work
See Student Employment
Services 418
Workers' Compensation
See Risk Management and
Safety 417
Workshops, Conferences and 409
World Travel
See Geography 190
See Study Abroad 232
See Travel Study 410
Wymount Terrace 23
Wyview Park 23

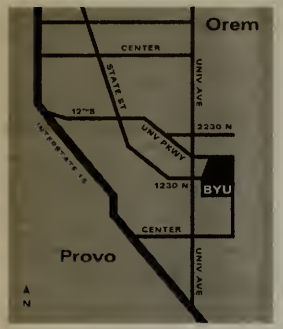
Y

Youth and Family Programs, CES
Continuing Education 410
Youth Leadership, Recreation
Management and 333

Z

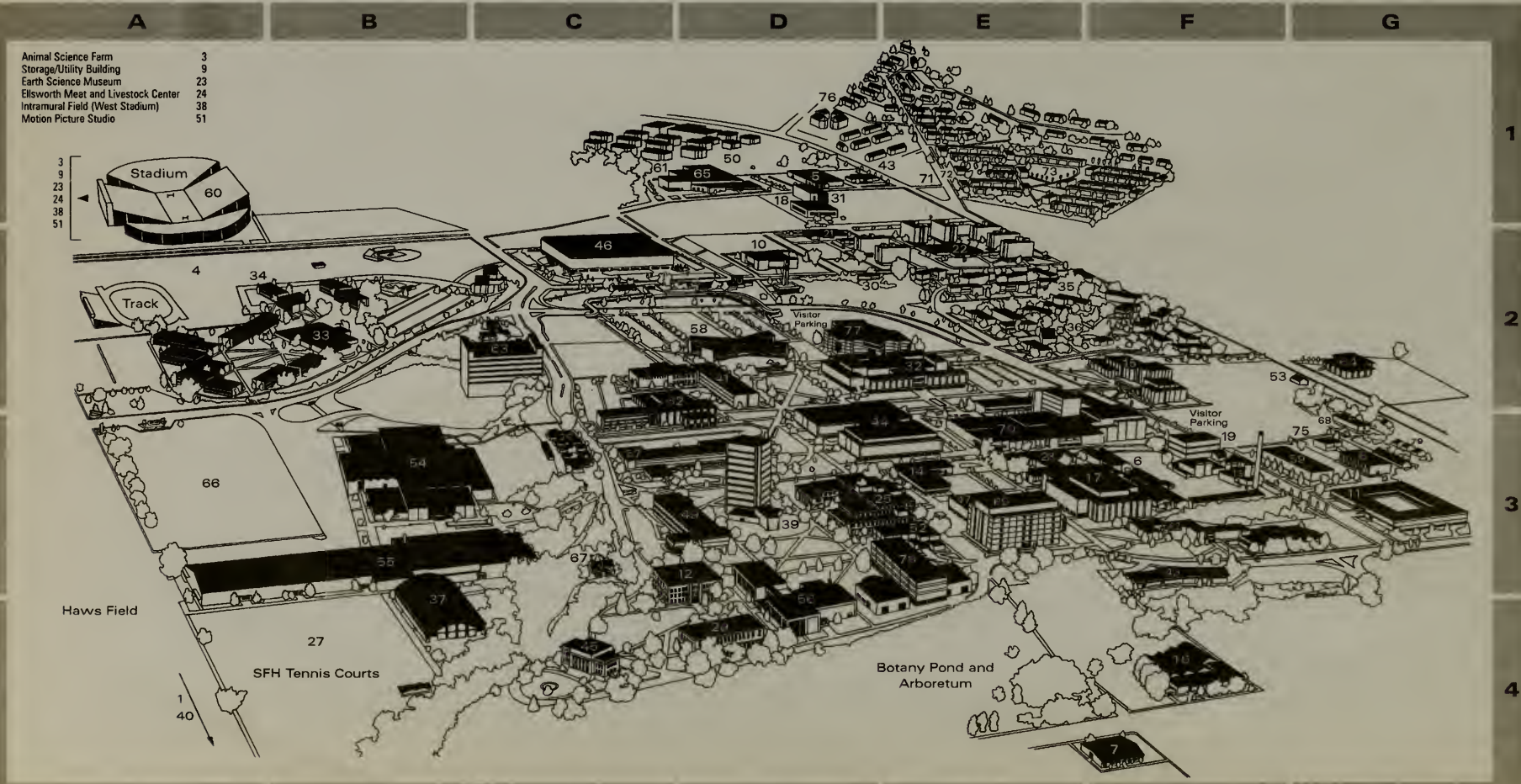
Zoological Collections
See M. L. Bean Life Science
Museum 4, 56
Zoology 401

BRIGHAM YOUNG UNIVERSITY CAMPUS



Building Index

AKH	Knight Hall, Amanda	A-4	40
ALLN	Allen Hall (Museum of Peoples and Cultures)	A-4	1
ALUM	Alumni House	C-2	2
ASB	Smoot Administration Building, Abraham O.	D-2	58
AXLB	Auxiliary Laundry Building	E-1	43
AXMB	Auxiliary Maintenance Building	D-1	5
B-21, B-32	Automotive Lab and Classroom	F-3	6
B-34	Instructional Technology Ctr	F-3	6
B-38, B-41, B-51	Miscellaneous Temporary Buildings	F-3	6
B-49	Benson Institute	F-4	7
B-66	Classroom/Lab Building	G-3	8
B-67	Storage/Utility Building	A-1	9
BNSN	Benson Building, Ezra Taft	E-3	78
BRMB	Brimhall Building, George H.	D-3	12
BRWB	Brewster Building, Sam F. (and Grounds Complex)	G-3	11
CANC	Cannon Center	B-2	33
CB	Clyde Engineering Building, W. W.	F-3	17
CLFB	Cluff, Jr., Plant Science Laboratory, Benjamin	F-4	16
CMB	Chemicals Management Building	G-3	75
CONF	Conference Center	D-1	18
CRTS HEL-A,B	Heleman Halls Tennis Courts	B-2	34
CRWH	Crandall House West	D-2	20
CTB	Crabtree Technology Building, Roland A.	F-3	19
DPL	Dairy Products Laboratory (Creamery)	D-2	21
DT	Deseret Towers	E-2	22
ELWC	Wilkinson Center, Ernest L.	E-3	70
EMLC	Ellsworth Meat and Livestock Center, Leo B.	A-1	24
ESC	Eyring Science Center, Carl F.	D-3	25
ESM	Earth Science Museum	A-2	23
FARM	Animal Science Farm	A-1	3
FB	Fletcher Building, Harvey L.	E-3	28
FLD FBFLD	Varsity Practice (West of RB)	A-3	66
FLD HEL	Helaman Fields	B-2	4
FLD IMFLD	Intramural Field (West Stadium)	A-2	38
FLD SFH-S	(South of SFH)	B-4	27
FLD WYMNT	Wymount Field	E-1	71
FLSR	Foreign Language Student Residence	D-1	76
FOB	Faculty Office Building	C-3	26
FULH	Fulreth House (Camera Services)	G-3	79
HBLL	Lee Library, Harold B.	D-3	44
HCEB	Harman Continuing Education Building, Caroline Hemenway	D-1	31
HFAC	Harris Fine Arts Center, Franklin S.	E-2	32
HGB	Grant Building, Heber J.	D-4	29
HL	Helaman Halls	B-2	33
HR	Heritage Halls	E-2	35
HRCB	Clark Building, Herald R.	E-3	14
HRCN	Heritage Halls Central Building	F-2	36
JKHB	Knight Humanities Building, Jesse	D-2	41
JRCB	Clark Law Building, J. Reuben	F-2	15
JSB	Smith Building, Joseph	D-3	56
KMB	Knight Mangum Building	F-3	42
MARB	Martin Building, Thomas L. (North)	E-3	47
MC	Marriott Center, J. Willard	C-2	46
MCKB	McKay Building, David O.	D-3	49
MHC	McDonald Health Center, Howard S.	F-3	48
MLBM	Bean Life Science Museum, Monte L.	D-2	10
MDA	Museum of Art	D-2	77
MORC	Morris Center	E-2	22
MPS	Motion Picture Studio	A-1	51
MSRB	2230 N 300 W	C-4	45
MTC	Maeser Building, Karl G.	D-1	50
NICB	Missionary Training Center	E-3	52
OLVH	Nicholes Building, Joseph K.	G-2	53
PTSB	Oliver House (Performing Arts Management)	D-2	30
RB	Parking and Traffic Services Building	D-3	54
ROTC	Richards Building, Stephen L	G-3	68
	Wells ROTC Building, Daniel H.		
SASB	Student Auxiliary Services Building	C-1	61
SFH	Smith Fieldhouse, George Albert	B-3	55
SFLC	Smith Family Living Center, Joseph F.	C-3	57
SNLB	Snell Building, William H.	G-3	59
STAD	Stadium	A-1	60
SWKT	Kimball Tower, Spencer W.	D-3	39
TCB	Indoor Tennis Courts	B-4	37
TLRB	Taylor Building, John	G-2	64
TMCB	Talmage Mathematical Sciences/Computer Building, James E.	C-2	62
TNRB	Tanner Building, N. Eldon	C-2	63
UPB	University Press Building	D-1	65
VCTR	Visitors Center	C-3	67
WIDB	Widtsoe Building, John A. (South)	E-3	69
WOAD	Wymount Terrace Administration Building	E-1	72
WT	Wymount Terrace	E-1	73



LARRY DRAPER 3754
26877 HBLL